# V60 Cross Country 2021 (20w46) User Manual

Version 2026-04-17

**Disclaimer**

Due to the dynamic nature of our software-based product, the content of this PDF represents the most up-to-date version of the user manual as of the time of printing. As we continuously update and improve our product, certain content may not reflect the most up-to-date information in a future instance. Therefore, we strongly recommend utilizing the digital user manual app in your car's center display for the most accurate and up-to-date information. You can also access information in the Volvo Cars mobile app.

Please note that if you choose to print the manual, we cannot guarantee the validity of the information in future instances, as updates may have occurred since the time of printing. To ensure the highest level of safety and optimal product usage, we strongly advise relying on the digital user manual, which can be easily accessed through your car's center display.

This printable version is generic and does not correspond to your car. If there are discrepancies between this printable manual and the manual you see in your car's center display, the latter takes precedence.

## Contents


1. Owner's information
   - 1.1 Owner's information
   - 1.2 The Owner's Manual and the environment
   - 1.3 Using the Owner's Manual
   - 1.4 Owner's Manual in the center display
   - 1.5 Navigate in the Owner's Manual in the center display
   - 1.6 Owner's manual in mobile devices
2. Your Volvo
   - 2.1 Volvo's innovation areas
     - 2.1.1 Drive-E – purer driving pleasure
     - 2.1.2 IntelliSafe – driver support and safety
     - 2.1.3 Sensus - connection and entertainment
   - 2.2 Volvo ID
     - 2.2.1 Volvo ID
     - 2.2.2 Creating a Volvo ID
     - 2.2.3 Problems logging in with Volvo ID
   - 2.3 Type approval and licenses
     - 2.3.1 License agreement for instrument panel
     - 2.3.2 Type approval for HomeLink®
     - 2.3.3 License agreement for audio and media
     - 2.3.4 Type approval Radio Equipment Directive
     - 2.3.5 Certificate for wireless charger
     - 2.3.6 Start and lock system type designations
     - 2.3.7 Customer Privacy Policy
     - 2.3.8 Terms and Conditions for Services
     - 2.3.9 Navigation license agreements
     - 2.3.10 Spotify license agreement
   - 2.4 Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive vehicle
   - 2.5 Technician certification
   - 2.6 Connecting equipment to the vehicle's data link connector
   - 2.7 Driver distraction

2.8 Change of market when importing or relocating
2.9 Viewing the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
2.10 Data recording
2.11 Accessory installation
2.12 Volvo Structural Parts Statement
2.13 Contacting Volvo
2.14 Software Updates
2.15 Important information on accessories and extra equipment

3. Safety
3.1 Seat belts
3.1.1 Seat belts
3.1.2 Buckling and unbuckling seat belts
3.1.3 Seat belt tensioners
3.1.4 Resetting the electric seat belt tensioners
3.1.5 Door and seat belt reminders
3.2 Airbags
3.2.1 Airbags
3.2.2 Driver/passenger side front airbags
3.2.3 Occupant weight sensor
3.2.4 Inflatable curtain
3.2.5 Side airbags
3.3 Child safety
3.3.1 Attachment points for child seats
3.3.1.1 Lower child seat attachment points
3.3.1.2 ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors
3.3.1.3 Top tether anchors
3.3.2 Activating and deactivating child locks
3.3.3 Child safety
3.3.4 Child restraints
3.3.5 Infant seats
3.3.6 Booster cushions
3.3.7 Convertible seats
3.3.8 Occupant weight sensor
3.4 Safety mode
3.4.1 Safety mode
3.4.2 Starting and moving the vehicle when it is in safety mode
3.5 Safety
3.6 Recall information
3.7 Occupant safety
3.8 Safety during pregnancy
3.9 Reporting safety defects
3.10 Whiplash Protection System

4. Displays and voice control
4.1 Instrument panel
4.1.1 Gauges and indicators in the instrument panel
4.1.1.1 Fuel gauge
4.1.1.2 Ambient temperature sensor
4.1.2 Trip computer
4.1.2.1 Trip computer
4.1.2.2 Displaying trip data in the instrument panel
4.1.2.3 Resetting the trip odometer
4.1.2.4 Displaying trip statistics in the center display

4.1.2.5 Trip statistics settings
4.1.3 Instrument panel
4.1.4 Instrument panel settings
4.1.5 License agreement for instrument panel
4.1.6 App menu in instrument panel
4.1.7 Handling the App menu in the instrument panel
4.1.8 Indicator and warning symbols
4.1.9 Messages in the instrument panel
4.1.10 Date and time
4.2 Center display
4.2.1 Settings
4.2.1.1 Resetting user data when the vehicle changes owners
4.2.1.2 Changing settings in the center display's Top view
4.2.1.3 Resetting center display settings
4.2.1.4 Opening contextual setting in the center display
4.2.1.5 Changing system units of measurement
4.2.1.6 Turning off and adjusting the volume of the center display system sounds
4.2.1.7 Changing system language
4.2.1.8 Changing the appearance of the center display
4.2.1.9 Displaying trip data in the instrument panel
4.2.1.10 Trip statistics settings
4.2.1.11 Instrument panel settings
4.2.1.12 Date and time
4.2.1.13 Head-up display settings
4.2.1.14 Terms of use and data sharing
4.2.1.15 Activating and deactivating data sharing
4.2.1.16 Settings for remote and inside door unlock
4.2.1.17 Care Key settings
4.2.1.18 Lock confirmation settings
4.2.1.19 Keyless unlock settings
4.2.1.20 Settings for automatically activating the parking brake
4.2.2 Driver profiles
4.2.2.1 Driver profiles
4.2.2.2 Changing a driver profile's name
4.2.2.3 Linking a remote key to a driver profile
4.2.2.4 Protecting a driver profile
4.2.2.5 Selecting a driver profile
4.2.2.6 Resetting driver profile settings
4.2.3 Center display overview
4.2.4 Activating and deactivating the center display
4.2.5 Handling the center display
4.2.6 Navigating in the center display's views
4.2.7 Handling tiles in the center display
4.2.8 Symbols in the center display status bar
4.2.9 Function view in the center display
4.2.10 Moving apps and buttons in the center display
4.2.11 Messages in the center display
4.2.12 Keyboard in the center display
4.2.13 Entering characters, letters and words by hand in the center display
4.2.14 Changing keyboard language in the center display
4.2.15 Displaying trip statistics in the center display
4.2.16 Owner's Manual in the center display

4.2.17 Navigate in the Owner's Manual in the center display
4.3 Head-up display
4.3.1 Head-up display
4.3.2 Replacing a windshield with head-up display
4.3.3 Activating and deactivating the head-up display
4.3.4 Head-up display settings
4.3.5 Cleaning the head-up display
4.3.6 Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display
4.3.7 Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display
4.3.8 Navigation system in head-up display
4.4 Symbols and messages
4.4.1 Handling messages
4.4.1.1 Messages in the center display
4.4.1.2 Handling messages in the center display
4.4.1.3 Handling messages saved from the center display
4.4.1.4 Messages in the instrument panel
4.4.1.5 Handling messages in the instrument panel
4.4.1.6 Handling messages saved from the instrument panel
4.4.2 BLIS messages
4.4.3 City Safety messages
4.4.4 Cross Traffic Alert messages
4.4.5 Electronic Stability Control symbols and messages
4.4.6 Symbols and messages for Adaptive Cruise Control
4.4.7 Pilot Assist symbols and messages
4.4.8 Lane Keeping Aid symbols and messages
4.4.9 Lane Keeping Aid display
4.4.10 Park Assist Pilot messages
4.4.11 Park Assist symbols and messages
4.4.12 Park Assist Camera symbols and messages
4.4.13 Symbols and messages for steering assistance during collision risks
4.4.14 Symbols in the center display status bar
4.4.15 Indicator and warning symbols
4.4.16 Parking climate symbols and messages
4.4.17 Overheating of engine and transmission
4.4.18 Automatic transmission symbols and messages
4.5 Voice recognition
4.5.1 Climate control system voice commands
4.5.2 Voice control for radio and media
4.5.3 Voice Control
4.5.4 Use voice recognition
4.5.5 Updating voice control
4.5.6 Tips for improving voice control
4.5.7 Voice control settings
4.5.8 Voice control command list for the navigation system
4.5.9 Voice control for cellular phones
4.5.10 Text message voice recognition
4.5.11 Voice control for navigation system
4.6 Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive vehicle
5. Lighting
5.1 Exterior lighting
5.1.1 Active Bending Lights
5.1.2 Active high beam

5.1.3 Using turn signals
5.1.4 Brake lights
5.1.5 Rear fog light
5.1.6 Front fog lights/corner illumination
5.1.7 Low beams
5.1.8 Using high beam
5.1.9 Using home safe lighting
5.1.10 Emergency brake lights
5.1.11 Parking lights
5.1.12 Welcome Light
5.1.13 Hazard warning flashers
5.1.14 Daytime running lights
5.1.15 Checking trailer lights
5.2 Interior lighting
5.2.1 Interior Lighting
5.2.2 Adjusting interior lighting
5.3 Adjusting light functions via the center display
5.4 Lighting control and panel

6. Windows, glass and mirrors
6.1 Rearview and door mirrors
6.1.1 HomeLink®
6.1.2 Rearview/door mirrors
6.1.3 Adjusting the door mirrors
6.1.4 Adjusting the rearview mirror dimming function
6.1.5 Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display
6.1.6 Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display
6.1.7 Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.1.8 Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.2 Windshield and rear window
6.2.1 Replacing a windshield with head-up display
6.2.2 Wiper blades and washer fluid
6.2.3 Using automatic rear window wiping when backing up
6.2.4 Using the rear window wiper/washer
6.2.5 Using the rain sensor
6.2.6 Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function
6.2.7 Using the windshield and headlight washers
6.2.8 Using the windshield wipers
6.2.9 Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.2.10 Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.3 Door windows and panoramic roof
6.3.1 Power windows
6.3.2 Operating the power windows
6.3.3 Panoramic roof
6.3.4 Operating the panoramic roof
6.3.5 Auto closing the panoramic roof sun curtain
6.4 Windows, glass and mirrors
6.5 Pinch protection for windows and sun curtains
6.6 Reset procedure for pinch protection
6.7 Activating and deactivating max defroster

7. Seats and steering wheel
7.1 Front seat
7.1.1 Climate controls for front seat

7.1.1.1 Activating and deactivating power front seats
7.1.1.2 Activating and deactivating the heated front seat
7.1.1.3 Setting the blower speed for the front seats
7.1.1.4 Setting the temperature for the front seats
7.1.1.5 Synchronize temperature
7.1.1.6 Activating and deactivating front seat ventilation
7.1.2 Memory function for front seat
7.1.2.1 Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display
7.1.2.2 Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display
7.1.3 Front seats
7.1.4 Power front seats
7.1.5 Adjusting the power front seats
7.1.6 Adjusting the passenger seat from the driver's seat
7.1.7 Manual front seats
7.1.8 Multifunctional front seat function overview
7.1.9 Front seat massage settings
7.1.10 Adjusting front seat massage settings
7.1.11 Adjusting front seat side bolster settings
7.1.12 Adjusting front seat cushion length
7.1.13 Adjusting front seat lumbar support
7.2 Rear seat
7.2.1 Climate controls for rear seat
7.2.1.1 Activating and deactivating the heated rear seats
7.2.1.2 Setting the blower speed for the rear seats
7.2.1.3 Setting the temperature for the rear seats
7.2.2 Rear seat
7.2.3 Adjusting the rear seat head restraints
7.2.4 Folding down the rear seat backrests
7.2.5 Rear seat ski hatch
7.3 Steering wheel
7.3.1 Speed-dependent steering wheel resistance
7.3.2 Steering wheel controls and horn
7.3.3 Adjusting the steering wheel
7.3.4 Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel
7.3.5 Activating and deactivating automatic steering wheel heating

8. Climate control
8.1 Climate controls
8.1.1 Climate controls for passenger compartment
8.1.1.1 Activating auto climate control
8.1.1.2 Setting the blower speed for the rear seats
8.1.1.3 Setting the blower speed for the front seats
8.1.1.4 Activating and deactivating air conditioning
8.1.1.5 Activating and deactivating recirculation
8.1.1.6 Activating and deactivating the recirculation timer setting
8.1.1.7 Setting the temperature for the rear seats
8.1.1.8 Setting the temperature for the front seats
8.1.1.9 Synchronize temperature
8.1.1.10 Adjusting air distribution
8.1.2 Climate controls for seats and steering wheel
8.1.2.1 Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel
8.1.2.2 Activating and deactivating automatic steering wheel heating
8.1.2.3 Activating and deactivating the heated rear seats

8.1.2.4 Activating and deactivating power front seats
8.1.2.5 Activating and deactivating the heated front seat
8.1.2.6 Activating and deactivating front seat ventilation
8.1.3 Climate controls for windows and mirrors
8.1.3.1 Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
8.1.3.2 Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
8.1.3.3 Activating and deactivating max defroster
8.1.4 Climate system controls
8.2 Air distribution
8.2.1 Activating and deactivating recirculation
8.2.2 Activating and deactivating the recirculation timer setting
8.2.3 Activating and deactivating max defroster
8.2.4 Air distribution
8.2.5 Adjusting air distribution
8.2.6 Air distribution options
8.2.7 Opening, closing and directing air vents
8.3 Air quality
8.3.1 Air purification
8.3.2 Advanced Air Cleaner
8.3.3 Advanced Air Cleaner certificate
8.3.4 CleanZone
8.3.5 Clean Zone Interior Package
8.3.6 Interior Air Quality System
8.3.7 Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor
8.3.8 Passenger compartment air filter
8.3.9 Air purification
8.3.10 Starting and stopping air purification
8.3.11 Air Quality app
8.4 Parking climate
8.4.1 Preconditioning
8.4.1.1 Preconditioning
8.4.1.2 Starting and stopping preconditioning
8.4.1.3 Preconditioning timer
8.4.1.4 Activating and deactivating preconditioning timer
8.4.1.5 Deleting preconditioning timer settings
8.4.1.6 Adding and editing timer settings for preconditioning
8.4.2 Pre-cleaning
8.4.2.1 Air purification
8.4.2.2 Starting and stopping air purification
8.4.3 Parking climate comfort
8.4.3.1 Climate comfort retaining function
8.4.3.2 Starting and switching off the climate retaining function when parking
8.4.4 Parking climate
8.4.5 Parking climate symbols and messages
8.5 Climate
8.6 Climate control system voice commands
8.7 Climate control system service
8.8 Climate control sensors
8.9 Climate zones
8.10 Perceived temperature
9. Key, locks and alarm
9.1 Remote key

9.1.1 Driver profiles
9.1.1.1 Driver profiles
9.1.1.2 Changing a driver profile's name
9.1.1.3 Linking a remote key to a driver profile
9.1.1.4 Protecting a driver profile
9.1.1.5 Selecting a driver profile
9.1.1.6 Resetting driver profile settings
9.1.2 Linking a remote key to a driver profile
9.1.3 Electronic immobilizer
9.1.4 Remote key
9.1.5 Ordering additional remote keys
9.1.6 Replacing the remote key's battery
9.1.7 Locking and unlocking using the remote key
9.1.8 Care Key – restricted remote key
9.1.9 Care Key settings
9.1.10 Unlocking the tailgate using the remote key
9.1.11 Detachable key blade
9.1.12 Locking and unlocking with detachable key blade
9.1.13 Remote key range
9.1.14 Start and lock system type designations
9.1.15 Antenna locations for the start and lock system
9.1.16 Ignition modes
9.1.17 Selecting ignition mode
9.2 Locking and unlocking
9.2.1 Keyless locking and unlocking
9.2.1.1 Operating the tailgate with a foot movement
9.2.1.2 Antenna locations for the start and lock system
9.2.1.3 Keyless with touch-sensitive surfaces
9.2.1.4 Keyless locking and unlocking
9.2.1.5 Keyless unlock settings
9.2.1.6 Closing and locking the tailgate using the buttons
9.2.1.7 Keyless tailgate unlock
9.2.2 Remote key
9.2.3 Locking and unlocking using the remote key
9.2.4 Settings for remote and inside door unlock
9.2.5 Unlocking the tailgate using the remote key
9.2.6 Locking and unlocking with detachable key blade
9.2.7 Automatic locking when driving
9.2.8 Setting maximum opening height for the power tailgate
9.2.9 Locking and unlocking from inside the vehicle
9.2.10 Unlocking the tailgate from inside the vehicle
9.2.11 Private Locking
9.2.12 Activating and deactivating private locking
9.2.13 Locking and unlocking
9.2.14 Activating and deactivating child locks
9.2.15 Lock indication
9.2.16 Lock confirmation settings
9.3 Alarm
9.3.1 Alarm
9.3.2 Arming and disarming the alarm
10. Driver support
10.1 Cruise Control functions

10.1.1 Cruise control
10.1.1.1 Cruise control
10.1.1.2 Cruise control standby mode
10.1.1.3 Adjusting set speed for speed-controlling functions
10.1.2 Adaptive Cruise Control
10.1.2.1 Adaptive Cruise Control
10.1.2.2 Symbols and messages for Adaptive Cruise Control
10.1.2.3 Adaptive Cruise Control standby mode
10.1.2.4 Auto-hold braking with speed-controlling functions
10.1.2.5 Adjusting set speed for speed-controlling functions
10.1.2.6 Switching target vehicles with speed-controlling functions
10.1.2.7 Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead
10.1.2.8 Collision risk warning from speed-controlling functions
10.1.3 Pilot Assist
10.1.3.1 Auto-hold braking with speed-controlling functions
10.1.3.2 Adjusting set speed for speed-controlling functions
10.1.3.3 Switching target vehicles with speed-controlling functions
10.1.3.4 Pilot Assist
10.1.3.5 Adaptive Cruise Control and Pilot Assist displays
10.1.3.6 Pilot Assist symbols and messages
10.1.3.7 Pilot Assist standby mode
10.1.3.8 Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead
10.1.3.9 Differences between Pilot Assist and Lane Keeping Aid
10.1.3.10 Collision risk warning from speed-controlling functions
10.1.4 Curve Speed Assist (CSA)
10.1.4.1 Curve Speed Assist (CSA)
10.1.4.2 Activating and deactivating Curve Speed Assist (CSA)
10.1.4.3 Curve Speed Assist (CSA) limitations
10.1.5 Passing assistance
10.1.5.1 Passing assistance
10.1.5.2 Using passing assistance
10.1.6 Cruise control functions
10.1.7 Steering wheel buttons for speed-controlling functions
10.1.8 Selecting and activating speed-controlling functions
10.1.9 Deactivating speed-controlling functions
10.2 Distance Alert
10.2.1 Distance Alert
10.2.2 Activating and deactivating Distance Alert
10.2.3 Distance Alert limitations
10.2.4 Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead
10.2.5 Collision risk warning from speed-controlling functions
10.3 Blind Spot Information
10.3.1 BLIS
10.3.2 Activating and deactivating BLIS
10.3.3 BLIS messages
10.3.4 BLIS limitations
10.4 Cross Traffic Alert
10.4.1 Cross Traffic Alert
10.4.2 Activating and deactivating Cross Traffic Alert
10.4.3 Cross Traffic Alert messages
10.4.4 Cross Traffic Alert limitations
10.5 Rear Collision Warning

10.5.1 Rear Collision Warning
10.5.2 Rear Collision Warning limitations
10.6 Connected Safety
10.6.1 Connected Safety
10.6.2 Activating and deactivating Connected Safety
10.6.3 Connected Safety limitations
10.7 City Safety
10.7.1 City Safety™
10.7.2 City Safety sub-functions
10.7.3 Setting a warning distance for City Safety
10.7.4 City Safety messages
10.7.5 City Safety limitations
10.7.6 City Safety braking for oncoming vehicles
10.7.7 City Safety in crossing traffic
10.7.8 Limitations of City Safety in crossing traffic
10.7.9 City Safety steering assistance for evasive maneuver
10.7.10 City Safety steering assistance limitations during evasive maneuvers
10.7.11 Automatic braking during delayed evasive maneuvers with City Safety
10.7.12 Detecting obstacles with City Safety
10.8 Steering assistance during collision risks
10.8.1 Steering assistance at risk of collision
10.8.2 Activating or deactivating steering assistance during collision risks
10.8.3 Symbols and messages for steering assistance during collision risks
10.8.4 Steering assistance during collision risks limitations
10.8.5 Run-Off Mitigation with steering assistance
10.8.6 Steering assistance during collision risks from oncoming traffic
10.8.7 Steering assistance during collision risks from behind
10.9 Driver Alert Control
10.9.1 Driver Alert Control
10.9.2 Activating and deactivating Driver Alert Control
10.9.3 Selecting guidance to a rest area if the Driver Alert Control warning has been given
10.9.4 Driver Alert Control limitations
10.10 Lane Keeping Aid
10.10.1 Lane Keeping Aid
10.10.2 Activating and deactivating Lane Keeping Aid
10.10.3 Differences between Pilot Assist and Lane Keeping Aid
10.10.4 Selecting type of assistance for Lane Keeping Aid
10.10.5 Lane Keeping Aid symbols and messages
10.10.6 Lane Keeping Aid display
10.10.7 Lane Keeping Aid limitations
10.11 Electronic Stability Control
10.11.1 Electronic Stability Control
10.11.2 Electronic Stability Control symbols and messages
10.11.3 Electronic Stability Control in sport mode
10.11.4 Activating and deactivating Sport mode for Electronic Stability Control
10.12 Road Sign Information
10.12.1 Road Sign Information
10.12.2 Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation
10.12.3 Activating and deactivating Road Sign Information
10.12.4 Road Sign Information limitations
10.12.5 Speed limit and speed camera warnings from Road Sign Information
10.12.6 Activating and deactivating warnings from Road Sign Information

10.12.7 Road Sign Information display
10.13 Parking functions
10.13.1 Parking Assist
10.13.1.1 Park Assist
10.13.1.2 Park Assist front, rear and sides
10.13.1.3 Activating and deactivating the Park Assist system
10.13.1.4 Park Assist symbols and messages
10.13.1.5 Park Assist limitations
10.13.2 Park Assist Pilot
10.13.2.1 Park Assist Pilot
10.13.2.2 Types of parking with Park Assist Pilot
10.13.2.3 Using Park Assist Pilot
10.13.2.4 Leaving a parallel parking space with Park Assist Pilot
10.13.2.5 Park Assist Pilot messages
10.13.2.6 Park Assist Pilot limitations
10.13.3 Park Assist Camera
10.13.3.1 Park Assist Camera
10.13.3.2 Activating Park Assist Camera
10.13.3.3 Park Assist Camera symbols and messages
10.13.3.4 Park Assist Camera trajectory lines
10.13.3.5 Location and field of vision of Park Assist Cameras
10.13.3.6 Park Assist sensor field
10.14 Camera and radar sensor
10.14.1 Recommended maintenance for the camera and radar units
10.14.2 Camera and radar unit symbols and messages
10.14.3 Camera and radar unit limitations
10.14.4 Camera
10.14.5 Radar sensor
10.14.6 Radar sensor type approval
10.15 Driver support systems
10.16 Driver support safety check at start
10.17 Driver support warnings
10.18 Speed-dependent steering wheel resistance
10.19 Drive modes when using time interval to vehicle
10.20 IntelliSafe – driver support and safety
10.21 Braking assist after a collision

11. Starting and driving
11.1 Starting and switching off vehicle
11.1.1 Electronic immobilizer
11.1.2 Starting the vehicle
11.1.3 Jump starting using another battery
11.1.4 Switching off the vehicle
11.1.5 Ignition modes
11.1.6 Selecting ignition mode
11.2 Transmission
11.2.1 The kickdown function
11.2.2 The Launch function
11.2.3 Transmission
11.2.4 Automatic transmission
11.2.5 Shifting gears with automatic transmission
11.2.6 Automatic transmission symbols and messages
11.2.7 All Wheel Drive (AWD)

11.2.8 Shiftlock
11.2.9 Deactivating the automatic shiftlock
11.3 Brakes
11.3.1 Brakes
11.3.1.1 Brake Assist System
11.3.1.2 Braking on salted roads
11.3.1.3 Braking on wet roads
11.3.1.4 Brakes
11.3.1.5 Maintenance of the brake system
11.3.2 Parking brake
11.3.2.1 Parking brake
11.3.2.2 Activating and deactivating the parking brake
11.3.2.3 Parking on a hill
11.3.2.4 Settings for automatically activating the parking brake
11.3.2.5 Parking brake malfunction
11.3.3 Brake fluid specifications
11.3.4 Brake functions
11.3.5 Auto-hold brakes
11.3.6 Activating and deactivating Auto-hold at a standstill
11.3.7 Braking assist after a collision
11.3.8 Hill Start Assist
11.3.9 Regenerative braking
11.3.10 Low Speed Control
11.3.11 Hill Descent Control
11.4 Drive modes
11.4.1 Regenerative braking
11.4.2 Drive modes
11.4.3 Changing drive mode
11.4.4 Eco drive mode
11.4.5 Activating and deactivating Eco drive mode using the function button
11.4.6 The Launch function
11.4.7 Low Speed Control
11.4.8 Activating and deactivating Low Speed Control
11.4.9 Leveling control and suspension
11.4.10 Hill Descent Control
11.4.11 Activating and deactivating Hill Descent Control
11.4.12 All Wheel Drive (AWD)
11.5 Start/stop function
11.5.1 Start/Stop function
11.5.2 Activating and deactivating the Start/Stop function
11.6 Driving recommendations
11.6.1 Towing using a towline
11.6.2 Hill Start Assist
11.6.3 Braking on salted roads
11.6.4 Braking on wet roads
11.6.5 Parking on a hill
11.6.6 Service stations
11.6.7 Eco drive mode
11.6.8 Economical driving
11.6.9 Preparing for a long trip
11.6.10 Battery drain
11.6.11 Driving through standing water

11.6.12 Winter driving
11.6.13 Overheating of engine and transmission
11.6.14 Driving with a trailer
11.7 Trailer hitch and trailer
11.7.1 Towing capacity and tongue weight
11.7.2 Foldable towbar hitch
11.7.3 Retractable hitch
11.7.4 Low Speed Control
11.7.5 Driving with a trailer
11.7.6 Trailer Stability Assist
11.7.7 Checking trailer lights
11.8 Fuel
11.8.1 Fuel gauge
11.8.2 Fuel
11.8.3 Octane rating
11.8.4 Emission controls
11.9 Refueling
11.9.1 Service stations
11.9.2 Fuel tank volume
11.9.3 Refueling
11.9.4 Opening/closing the fuel filler door
11.10 Emission control system
11.10.1 Emission controls
11.11 HomeLink
11.11.1 HomeLink®
11.11.2 Using HomeLink®
11.11.3 Programming HomeLink®
11.11.4 Type approval for HomeLink®
11.12 Compass
11.12.1 Compass
11.12.2 Activating and deactivating the compass
11.12.3 Calibrating the compass
11.13 Towing
11.13.1 Towing using a towline
11.13.2 Attaching and removing the towing eyelet
11.13.3 Recovery
11.13.4 Safety mode
11.13.5 Starting and moving the vehicle when it is in safety mode

12. Audio, media and Internet
12.1 Radio
12.1.1 HD Radio
12.1.1.1 HD Radio™
12.1.1.2 HD Radio™ sub-channels
12.1.1.3 Activating and deactivating the HD Radio™
12.1.1.4 HD Radio™ limitations
12.1.2 Sirius XM satellite radio
12.1.2.1 SiriusXM® Satellite radio
12.1.2.2 Using SiriusXM® Satellite radio
12.1.2.3 Settings for SiriusXM® Satellite radio
12.1.2.4 SiriusXM Travel Link®
12.1.2.5 SiriusXM Travel Link® – Fuel
12.1.2.6 SiriusXM Travel Link® – Sports

12.1.2.7 SiriusXM Travel Link® – Notifications
12.1.2.8 SiriusXM Travel Link® – Weather
12.1.3 Voice control for radio and media
12.1.4 Radio
12.1.5 Starting the radio
12.1.6 Changing waveband and radio station
12.1.7 Searching for a radio station
12.1.8 Radio settings
12.1.9 RBDS
12.1.10 Storing radio channels in the Radio favorites app
12.2 Media player
12.2.1 Video
12.2.1.1 Video
12.2.1.2 Playing video
12.2.1.3 Playing DivX®
12.2.1.4 Video settings
12.2.2 Streaming media via Bluetooth®
12.2.3 Connecting a device via Bluetooth®
12.2.4 Voice control for radio and media
12.2.5 Media player
12.2.6 Playing media
12.2.7 Controlling and changing media
12.2.8 Media searches
12.2.9 Compatible file formats for media
12.2.10 Gracenote®
12.2.11 Updating Gracenote®
12.2.12 Playing media via the USB port
12.2.13 Connecting a device via the USB port
12.2.14 Technical specifications for USB devices
12.3 Phone
12.3.1 Connecting a phone
12.3.1.1 Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically
12.3.1.2 Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time
12.3.1.3 Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone
12.3.1.4 Switch between phones connected via Bluetooth
12.3.1.5 Disconnecting Bluetooth-connected devices
12.3.1.6 Bluetooth profiles for Sensus Connect
12.3.1.7 Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually
12.3.2 Apple CarPlay
12.3.2.1 Apple® CarPlay®
12.3.2.2 Using Apple® CarPlay®
12.3.2.3 Tips for using Apple® CarPlay®
12.3.2.4 Settings for Apple® CarPlay®
12.3.3 Android Auto
12.3.3.1 Android Auto
12.3.3.2 Using Android Auto
12.3.3.3 Tips for using Android Auto
12.3.3.4 Settings for Android Auto
12.3.4 Settings for Bluetooth devices
12.3.5 Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone
12.3.6 Phone
12.3.7 Voice control for cellular phones

12.3.8 Phone settings
12.3.9 Managing the phone book
12.3.10 Handling phone calls
12.3.11 Handling text messages
12.3.12 Text message settings
12.3.13 Wireless phone charger
12.3.14 Using the wireless phone charger
12.3.15 Certificate for wireless charger
12.4 Apps
12.4.1 Available apps in vehicle
12.4.1.1 Android Auto
12.4.1.2 Available apps
12.4.1.3 Apple® CarPlay®
12.4.1.4 Air Quality app
12.4.1.5 Google Local Search
12.4.1.6 Pandora
12.4.1.7 Park and Pay
12.4.1.8 Record & Send
12.4.1.9 Spotify
12.4.1.10 TuneIn
12.4.1.11 Using TuneIn
12.4.1.12 Weather
12.4.1.13 WikiLocations
12.4.1.14 Yelp
12.4.1.15 Vehicle status
12.4.1.16 Download Center
12.4.2 Apps
12.4.3 Download apps
12.4.4 Deleting apps
12.4.5 Updating apps
12.4.6 Volvo ID
12.4.7 Creating a Volvo ID
12.5 Internet connection
12.5.1 Internet-based services
12.5.1.1 Connected Safety
12.5.1.2 Apps
12.5.1.3 Terms of use and data sharing
12.5.1.4 Activating and deactivating data sharing
12.5.1.5 Data sharing for Volvo On Call
12.5.1.6 Driver profile data sharing
12.5.1.7 Data sharing for services
12.5.1.8 Volvo ID
12.5.1.9 Creating a Volvo ID
12.5.1.10 Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI)
12.5.1.11 Volvo On Call
12.5.2 Tips when using a Bluetooth connection
12.5.3 Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone
12.5.4 Internet-connected vehicle
12.5.5 Tips for handling Internet connection problems
12.5.6 Sharing Internet from the vehicle via Wi-Fi hotspot (tethering)
12.5.7 Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi)
12.5.8 Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via vehicle modem (SIM card)

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

12.5.9 Vehicle modem settings
12.5.10 No or poor Internet connection
12.5.11 Deleting Wi-Fi networks
12.5.12 Wi-Fi technology and security
12.6 Audio, media and Internet
12.7 License agreement for audio and media
12.8 Hard disk storage space
12.9 Sound settings
12.10 Sound experience
12.11 Customer Privacy Policy
12.12 Sensus - connection and entertainment
12.13 Terms and Conditions for Services

13. Volvo On Call
13.1 Volvo On Call services
13.1.1 Assistance with Volvo On Call
13.1.2 Emergency assistance with Volvo On Call
13.1.3 Automatic Crash Notification with Volvo On Call
13.1.4 Remote Vehicle Immobilizer (RVI) with Volvo On Call
13.1.5 Remote Door Unlock (RDU) with Volvo On Call
13.1.6 Stolen Vehicle Tracking (SVT) with Volvo On Call
13.1.7 Theft notification (TN) with Volvo On Call
13.1.8 Help during a trip with Volvo On Call
13.1.9 Customer service via Volvo On Call
13.2 Practical information about Volvo On Call
13.2.1 Getting started with Volvo On Call
13.2.2 Volvo On Call PIN code
13.2.3 Backup battery for Volvo On Call
13.2.4 Volvo On Call abroad
13.2.5 Volvo On Call availability
13.2.6 Change of ownership with Volvo On Call
13.3 Volvo On Call app
13.3.1 Volvo Cars app
13.4 Data sharing for Volvo On Call
13.5 Volvo On Call
13.6 Volvo On Call subscription
13.7 Extend Volvo On Call subscription
13.8 Right to cancel purchase of Volvo On Call subscription extension
13.9 Volvo On Call messages

14. Navigation
14.1 Entering a destination
14.1.1 Entering a destination directly on the map
14.1.2 Entering a destination using an address
14.1.3 Entering a destination with a free text search
14.1.4 Entering a POI as a destination
14.1.5 Entering a destination using Recent/Favorites/Library
14.1.6 Entering a destination with Send to Car
14.1.7 Selecting a detour in the navigation system
14.2 Itinerary and route
14.2.1 Information cards in the navigation system
14.2.2 Viewing points of interest along the route
14.2.3 Itinerary
14.2.4 Viewing alternative routes

14.2.5 Editing or clearing an itinerary
14.2.6 Viewing an itinerary
14.2.7 Show guidance in the itinerary
14.2.8 Selecting a detour in the navigation system
14.3 Traffic information
14.3.1 Information cards in the navigation system
14.3.2 Selecting a detour in the navigation system
14.3.3 Traffic disruptions on map
14.3.4 Show traffic disruptions along the route
14.3.5 Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI)
14.3.6 Activating and deactivating enhanced traffic information
14.4 Navigation settings
14.4.1 Map settings
14.4.2 Navigation system settings
14.4.3 Route settings and guidance
14.4.4 Traffic information settings
14.5 Map updates
14.5.1 Updating maps from a vehicle with Internet connection
14.5.2 Updating maps with a computer and USB flash drive
14.5.3 Map updating
14.6 Voice control command list for the navigation system
14.7 Sensus Navigation
14.8 Activating and deactivating the navigation system
14.9 Voice control for navigation system
14.10 Frequently Asked Questions regarding the navigation system
14.11 Navigation system symbols and buttons
14.12 Navigation license agreements
14.13 Navigation system in center display
14.14 Navigation system in the instrument panel
14.15 Activating and deactivating the navigation system in the instrument panel
14.16 Navigation system in head-up display
14.17 Suggest new map information with Map Creator
14.18 Traffic information providers

15. Wheels and tires
15.1 Changing a wheel
15.1.1 Changing a wheel
15.1.2 Jack
15.1.3 Wheel bolts
15.1.4 Spare wheel
15.1.5 Handling the spare wheel
15.1.6 Snow chains
15.1.7 Snow tires
15.1.8 Flat tire
15.1.9 Tool kit
15.2 Tires
15.2.1 Tire sidewall designations
15.2.2 Uniform Tire Quality Grading
15.2.3 Tire terminology
15.2.4 Approved tire pressure
15.2.5 Tire direction of rotation
15.2.6 Tread wear indicator
15.3 Tire inflation pressure

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

15.3.1 Tire inflation pressure monitoring
15.3.1.1 Tire Pressure Monitoring System
15.3.1.2 Viewing tire pressure status in the center display
15.3.1.3 Action when warned of low tire pressure
15.3.1.4 Saving new reference values for tire inflation pressure monitoring
15.3.1.5 Tire inflation pressure monitoring system messages
15.3.2 Checking tire pressure
15.3.3 Adjusting tire pressure
15.3.4 Location of tire pressure decal
15.4 Temporary tire sealing
15.4.1 Tire sealing system
15.4.2 Inflating tires using the compressor included in the tire sealing system
15.4.3 Using the tire sealing system
15.5 Driving in winter
15.5.1 Snow chains
15.5.2 Snow tires
15.5.3 Preparing for a long trip
15.5.4 Winter driving
15.6 Tires
15.7 Determining the vehicle's permitted weight
16. Loading, storage and passenger compartment
16.1 Loading
16.1.1 Loading recommendations
16.1.2 Determining the vehicle's permitted weight
16.1.3 Grocery bag holders
16.1.4 Operating the cargo compartment cover
16.1.5 Installing and removing the cargo compartment cover
16.1.6 Cargo anchoring eyelets
16.1.7 Installing and removing the steel cargo grid
16.1.8 Installing and removing the cargo net
16.1.9 Roof loads and load carriers
16.1.10 Driving with a trailer
16.2 Cargo compartment
16.2.1 Cargo net, steel cargo grid and cargo compartment cover
16.2.1.1 Operating the cargo compartment cover
16.2.1.2 Installing and removing the cargo compartment cover
16.2.1.3 Installing and removing the steel cargo grid
16.2.1.4 Installing and removing the cargo net
16.2.2 Cargo compartment
16.2.3 Grocery bag holders
16.2.4 Cargo anchoring eyelets
16.2.5 Unlocking the tailgate using the remote key
16.2.6 Setting maximum opening height for the power tailgate
16.2.7 Operating the tailgate with a foot movement
16.2.8 Unlocking the tailgate from inside the vehicle
16.2.9 Keyless tailgate unlock
16.2.10 Fuses in the cargo compartment
16.3 Storage and passenger compartment
16.3.1 Passenger compartment interior
16.3.2 Electrical outlets
16.3.3 Using the electrical outlets
16.3.4 Using the glove compartment

16.3.5 Sun visors
16.3.6 Tunnel console
16.3.7 Fuses under the glove compartment
16.4 Rear seat ski hatch

17. Maintenance and service
17.1 Vehicle care
17.1.1 Interior cleaning
17.1.1.1 Cleaning the center display
17.1.1.2 Cleaning the instrument panel
17.1.1.3 Cleaning the head-up display
17.1.1.4 Cleaning the leather steering wheel
17.1.1.5 Cleaning the seat belt
17.1.1.6 Cleaning the interior
17.1.1.7 Cleaning textile floor and inlay mats
17.1.1.8 Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood surfaces
17.1.1.9 Cleaning leather upholstery
17.1.1.10 Cleaning fabric upholstery and ceiling liner
17.1.2 Exterior cleaning
17.1.2.1 Cleaning exterior lights
17.1.2.2 Cleaning the wiper blades
17.1.2.3 Paintwork
17.1.2.4 Color codes
17.1.2.5 Touching up minor paint damage
17.1.2.6 Cleaning the exterior
17.1.2.7 Corrosion protection
17.1.2.8 Automatic car washes
17.1.2.9 Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components
17.1.2.10 Cleaning rims
17.1.2.11 Hand washing
17.1.2.12 High-pressure washing
17.1.2.13 Polishing and waxing
17.2 Wiper blades and washer fluid
17.2.1 Wiper blades and washer fluid
17.2.2 Putting the wiper blades in service position
17.2.3 Refilling washer fluid
17.2.4 Changing rear window wipers
17.2.5 Replacing windshield wiper blades
17.3 Replacing bulbs
17.3.1 Replacing bulbs
17.3.2 Checking trailer lights
17.4 Engine compartment
17.4.1 Refilling washer fluid
17.4.2 Brake fluid specifications
17.4.3 Opening and closing the hood
17.4.4 Engine compartment overview
17.4.5 Coolant
17.4.6 Refilling coolant
17.4.7 Engine oil
17.4.8 Checking and filling engine oil
17.4.9 Engine oil specifications
17.4.10 Fuses in the engine compartment
17.5 Tools and accessories

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

17.5.1 Jack
17.5.2 Tire sealing system
17.5.3 Tool kit
17.6 Fuses
17.6.1 Fuses and fuseboxes
17.6.2 Replacing fuses
17.6.3 Fuses under the glove compartment
17.6.4 Fuses in the cargo compartment
17.6.5 Fuses in the engine compartment
17.7 Battery
17.7.1 Replacing the remote key's battery
17.7.2 Battery drain
17.7.3 Jump starting using another battery
17.7.4 Power supply
17.7.5 Recycling of batteries
17.7.6 Battery symbols
17.7.7 Start battery
17.7.8 Support battery
17.8 Service
17.8.1 Climate control system service
17.8.2 Volvo's service program
17.9 Vehicle status
17.9.1 Vehicle status
17.9.2 Sending vehicle information to the workshop
17.10 Download Center
17.10.1 Download Center
17.10.2 Updating software via Download Center
17.10.3 Tips in the event of problems updating via the Download Center
17.11 Recommended maintenance for the camera and radar units
17.12 Maintenance of the brake system
17.13 Data transfer between vehicle and workshop over Wi-Fi
17.14 Hoisting the vehicle

18. Specifications
18.1 Dimensions and weights
18.1.1 Towing capacity and tongue weight
18.1.2 Dimensions
18.1.3 Weights
18.2 Engine specifications
18.2.1 Engine specifications
18.2.2 Engine oil specifications
18.3 Specifications for fluids and lubricants
18.3.1 Refilling washer fluid
18.3.2 Air conditioning specifications
18.3.3 Brake fluid specifications
18.3.4 Transmission fluid specifications
18.3.5 Fuel tank volume
18.3.6 Engine oil specifications
18.4 Specifications for wheels and tires
18.4.1 Approved tire pressure
18.5 Type designations


**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 1. Owner's information

# 1.1. Owner's information

Owner's information is available in several different formats, both digital and printed. The Owner's Manual is available on the vehicle's center display and on Volvo Cars' support site[1]. There is also a supplement to the Owner's Manual containing information about e.g. fuses, specifications, etc. in the glove compartment. A printed Owner's Manual can be ordered.

## Vehicle's center display[2]

In the center display, pull down Top view and tap **Owner's manual**. This gives you access to visual navigation with exterior and interior images of the vehicle. The information is searchable and is divided into categories.

## Volvo Cars support site[1]

Volvo Cars' website and support site contain additional information about your vehicle.

Go to volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] and select your country. The website is available on most markets.

Contact information for customer support and your nearest Volvo retailer are available on the support site. If your vehicle is equipped with Sensus Navigation, it is also possible to download maps.

## Printed information

The glove compartment contains a printed supplement to the Owner's Manual[2], which contains information on fuses and specifications as well as a summary of important and practical information.

Other printed information may also be provided in the vehicle, depending on equipment level, market, etc.

A printed Owner's Manual and accompanying supplement can also be ordered. Contact a Volvo retailer to order.

> **Important**
>
> The driver is always responsible for operating the vehicle in a safe manner and adhering to all applicable laws and regulations. It is also important that the vehicle is operated, maintained and serviced according to Volvo's recommendations provided in the owner's information.
>
> If the information in the center display differs from the printed information, the printed information always takes precedence.

**Note**

Changing languages in the center display could mean that certain owner's information will not comply with national or local laws and regulations. Do not change to a language you do not speak well, as it can be difficult to find your way back through the menu.

[1] Not available in all markets.

[2] For markets without Owner's Manuals in the center display, a complete printed manual is provided along with the vehicle.

---

# 1.2. The Owner's Manual and the environment

The Owner's Manual is printed on paper from responsibly managed forests.

The Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)® symbol certifies that the paper pulp in the printed Owner's Manual comes from FSC®-certified forests or other responsibly managed sources.

---

# 1.3. Using the Owner's Manual

To get to know your new vehicle, read the Owner's Manual before driving it for the first time.

Reading your Owner's Manual is a way to familiarize yourself with new features and functions, get advice on how to handle your vehicle in different situations, and to learn how to take advantage of everything your Volvo has to offer. Pay particular attention to the safety warnings provided in the Owner's Manual.

Volvo continuously works to develop and improve our products. Modifications can mean that information, descriptions and illustrations in the Owner's Manual differ from the equipment in the vehicle. We reserve the right to make changes without prior notice.

© Volvo Car Corporation

## Option/accessory

In addition to standard equipment, the Owner's Manual also describes options (factory-installed equipment) and certain accessories (extra retrofitted equipment).

All, at the time of publication known, options and accessories are marked with an asterisk: *.

The equipment described in the Owner's Manual is not available in all vehicles. Vehicles may be equipped differently depending on market requirements and national or local laws and regulations.

The intention of this owner's information is to explain all of the possible features, functions, options and accessories included in a Volvo vehicle. It is not intended as an indication or guarantee that all of these features, functions, options and accessories are included in every vehicle. Some terminology used may not exactly match terminology used in sales, marketing and advertising materials.

For more information on which equipment is standard and which is an option or accessory, please contact your Volvo retailer.

## Decals

There are various types of decals affixed in the vehicle to communicate important information in a clear manner. The importance of these decals is explained as follows, in descending order of importance.

**Risk of injury**

Black ISO symbols on a yellow warning field, white text/image on a black message field. Used to indicate potential danger. Ignoring a warning of this type could result in serious injury or death.

**Risk of damage**

White ISO symbols and white text/image on a black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate potential danger. Ignoring a warning of this type could result in damage.

White ISO symbols and white text/image on a black message field.

> **Note**
>
> The decals shown in the Owner's Manual do not claim to be exact reproductions of those found in the vehicle. The purpose is to show approximately how they look and about where they are located. The information that applies for your vehicle in particular is found on the decal on the vehicle.

### Illustrations, images and video clips

Illustrations, images and video clips used in the Owner's Manual are sometimes generic and are intended to provide an overview or an example of a certain function or feature. They may vary depending on equipment level and market and may differ from the appearance of your vehicle.

* Option/accessory.

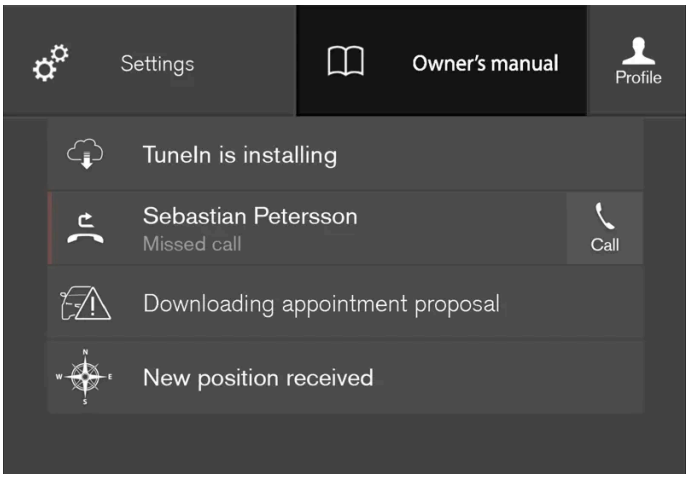
---

# 1.4. Owner's Manual in the center display

A digital version of the Owner's Manual is available in the vehicle's center display [1].

The digital Owner's Manual can be accessed from Top view and in certain cases, the contextual Owner's Manual can also be accessed from Top view.

> **Note**
>
> The digital Owner's Manual is not available during driving.

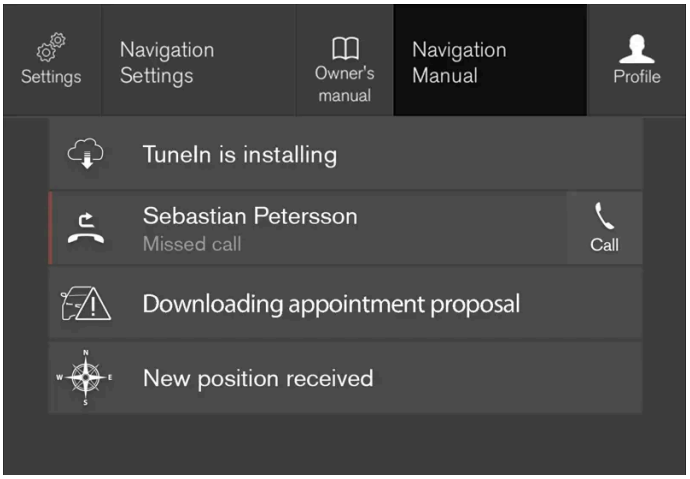



Top view with button for Owner's Manual.

To open the Owner's Manual, pull down Top view in the center display and tap **Owner's manual**.

The information in the Owner's Manual can be accessed directly via the Owner's Manual start page or via its Top menu.

**Contextual Owner's Manual**




Top view with button for contextual Owner's Manual.

The contextual Owner's Manual is a shortcut to an article in the Owner's Manual describing the active function displayed on the screen. When a contextual Owner's Manual is available, it will be shown to the right of **Owner's manual** in Top view.

Tap the contextual Owner's Manual to open an article in the Owner's Manual related to the information displayed on the screen. For example, tap **Navigation Manual** to open an article related to navigation.

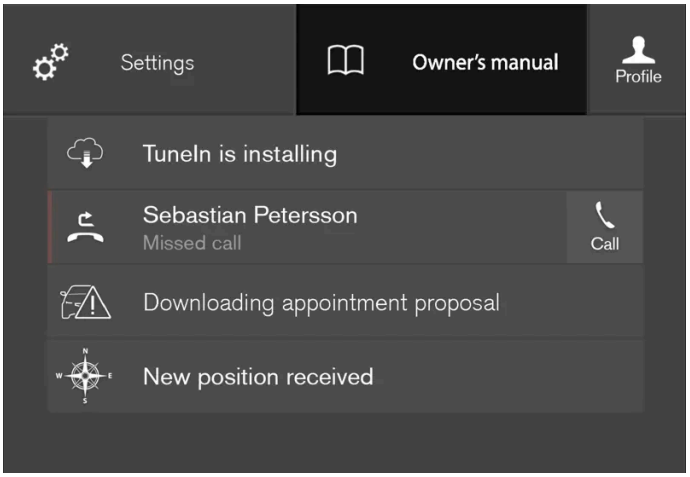
Certain apps in the vehicle only. For downloaded third-party apps, it is e.g. not possible to access app-specific articles.

[1] Available in most markets.

---

# 1.5. Navigate in the Owner's Manual in the center display

The digital Owner's Manual can be accessed from the center display's Top view. The contents are searchable and the sections are designed to be easy to navigate.




The Owner's Manual is accessed from Top view.

1. To open the Owner's Manual, pull down Top view in the center display and tap **Owner's manual**.

There are a number of ways to find information in the Owner's Manual. The options can be accessed from the Owner's Manual start page and from the Top menu.

## Opening the menu in the Top menu

1. Tap ☰ in the upper list in the Owner's Manual.

> A menu will open, displaying different options for finding information:

**Start page**

Tap the symbol to return to the Owner's Manual start page.

**Categories**

The articles in the Owner's Manual are structured into main and sub-categories. The same article may appear in several relevant categories in order to help make them easier to find.

1. Tap **Categories**.

> The main categories are listed.

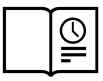
**2.** Tap a main category ( ).

**>** A list of sub-categories ( ) and articles ( ) will appear.

**3.** Tap an article to open it.

To go back, tap the left arrow.

#### Featured articles



Tap the symbol to go to a page with links to a selection of useful articles about the vehicle's more commonly used features and functions. The articles can also be accessed via categories, but have been collected here for quicker access. Tap an article to read it in its entirety.

#### Exterior and interior hotspots

Exterior and interior overviews of the vehicle. Hotspots are provided for certain functions, components, etc. Tap a hotspot to come to a relevant article.

**1.** Press **Exterior** or **Interior**.

**>** Exterior or interior images of the vehicle are shown with hotspots. The hotspots lead to articles about the corresponding function, component, etc. Swipe the screen horizontally to scroll between the images.

**2.** Tap a hotspot.

**>** The title of a relevant article will be displayed.

**3.** Tap the title to open the article.

To go back, tap the left arrow.

#### Favorites

Tap the symbol to go to articles saved as favorites. Tap an article to read it in its entirety.

#### Saving or deleting favorite articles

Save an article as a favorite by tapping the ☆ at the upper right when the article is open. When an article has been saved as a favorite, the star symbol will be filled in: ★.

To remove an article from the list of favorites, tap its star again.

**Video**

Tap the symbol to go to brief instructive videos for various functions in the vehicle.

**Information**

Tap the symbol for information about the current version of the Owner's Manual in your vehicle and other useful information.

### Using the search function in the Top menu

1. Tap Q in the Owner's Manual upper menu. A keyboard will appear at the bottom of the screen.
2. Enter a search word, e.g. "seat belt".

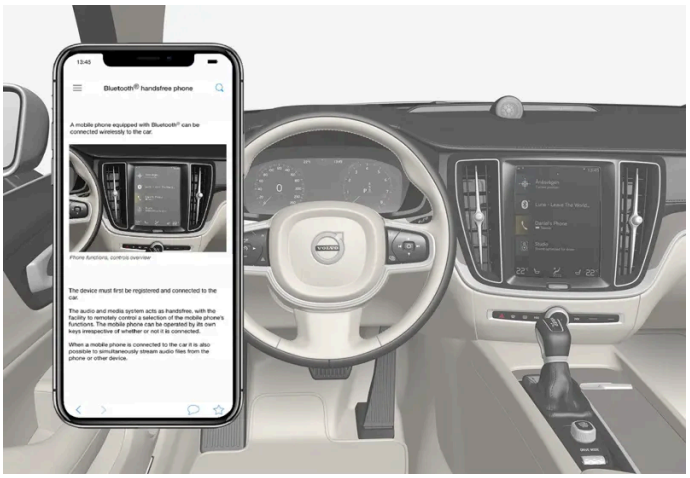
> Suggested articles and categories will be displayed as characters are entered.

3. Tap the article or category to read it.

---

## 1.6. Owner's manual in mobile devices

The Owner's Manual is available as a mobile app[1] and can be downloaded from the App Store and Google Play. The app is adapted for both smartphones and tablets. The Owner's Manual can also be accessed from the Volvo On Call app.




The Owner's Manual can be downloaded as a mobile app on App Store or Google Play.

The app contains videos and exterior/interior images of the vehicle. These images contain hotspots for various functions, components, etc., which lead directly to related information. The contents are searchable and the sections are designed to be easy to

navigate.

[1] Certain mobile devices.

---

# 2. Your Volvo

## 2.1. Volvo's innovation areas

### 2.1.1. Drive-E – purer driving pleasure

Volvo is committed to the well-being of its customers. As a natural part of this commitment, we care about the environment in which we all live. Concern for the environment means an everyday involvement in reducing our environmental impact.

Volvo's environmental activities are based on a holistic view, which means we consider the overall environmental impact of a product throughout its complete life cycle. In this context, design, production, product use, and recycling are all important considerations. In production, Volvo has partly or completely phased out several chemicals including CFCs, lead chromates, asbestos, and cadmium; and reduced the number of chemicals used in our plants 50% since 1991.

Volvo was the first in the world to introduce into production a three-way catalytic converter with a Lambda sond, now called the heated oxygen sensor, in 1976. The current version of this highly efficient system reduces emissions of harmful substances (CO, HC, NOx) from the exhaust pipe by approximately 95 - 99% and the search to eliminate the remaining emissions continues. Volvo is the only automobile manufacturer to offer CFC-free retrofit kits for the air conditioning system of all models as far back as the 1975 model 240. Advanced electronic engine controls and cleaner fuels are bringing us closer to our goal. In addition to continuous environmental refinement of conventional gasoline-powered internal combustion engines, Volvo is actively looking at advanced technology alternative-fuel vehicles.

When you drive a Volvo, you become our partner in the work to lessen the vehicle's impact on the environment. To reduce your vehicle's environmental impact, you can:

- Maintain proper air pressure in your tires. Tests have shown decreased fuel economy with improperly inflated tires.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule in your Warranty and Service Records Information booklet.
- Drive at a constant speed whenever possible.
- See a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible for inspection if the check engine (malfunction indicator) light illuminates, or stays on after the vehicle has started.
- Properly dispose of any vehicle-related waste such as used motor oil, used batteries, brake pads, etc.
- When cleaning your vehicle, please use genuine Volvo car care products. All Volvo car care products are formulated to be environmentally friendly.

### 2.1.2. IntelliSafe – driver support and safety

IntelliSafe is Volvo Cars' philosophy regarding vehicle safety. IntelliSafe consists of a number of systems [1] that are designed to help make driving safer, prevent accidents and protect passengers and other road users.

> **Warning**
>
> The functions are supplementary aids – they cannot manage all situations in all conditions.
>
> The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and in accordance with applicable traffic rules and regulations.

## Support

IntelliSafe has the following functions designed to help the driver operate the vehicle more safely.

- Active high beam
- Tunnel detection
- Pilot Assist
- Cross Traffic Alert*
- Blind Spot Information*
- Park Assist*
- Park Assist Pilot*
- Park Assist Camera*
- Road Sign Information*
- Electronic Stability Control
- Roll Stability Control
- Cruise control
- Adaptive Cruise Control*
- Rear Collision Warning
- Driver Alert Control
- All-Wheel Drive (AWD) [2]

## Prevention

IntelliSafe has the following functions designed to help the driver prevent accidents.

- City Safety
- Distance Alert*
- Lane Keeping Aid
- **Collision Avoidance**

## Protection

IntelliSafe has the following interacting functions to help protect the driver and passengers in certain situations in the event of an accident.

- Whiplash Protection System
- Seat belt with seat belt tensioner

- Airbags

> **Note**
>
> Read the individual parts about each system to fully understand the functions and be notified of important warnings.

[1] Some of these systems are standard, while others are options. This may vary depending on market, vehicle model and model year.

* Option/accessory.

[2] All Wheel Drive

---

# 2.1.3. Sensus - connection and entertainment

Sensus makes it possible to use apps and turn your vehicle into a Wi-Fi hotspot.

## This is Sensus

Sensus provides an intelligent interface and Internet connection to the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure offers access to relevant assistance, information and entertainment when it is needed, without distracting the driver.

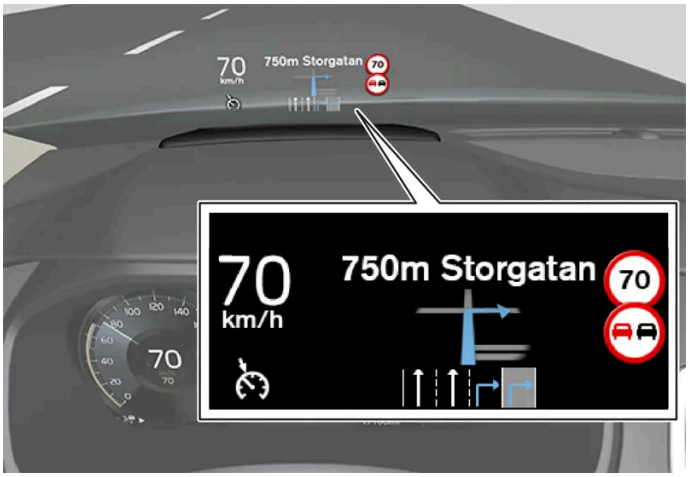
Sensus includes all of the solutions in the vehicle related to entertainment, Internet connection and navigation*, and serves as the user interface between the driver and the vehicle. Sensus is what makes communication between you, the vehicle and the world around you possible.

## Information when it's needed, where it's needed

The vehicle's displays present the right information at the right time. Information is presented in different displays depending on how it should be prioritized by the driver.

Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritized.

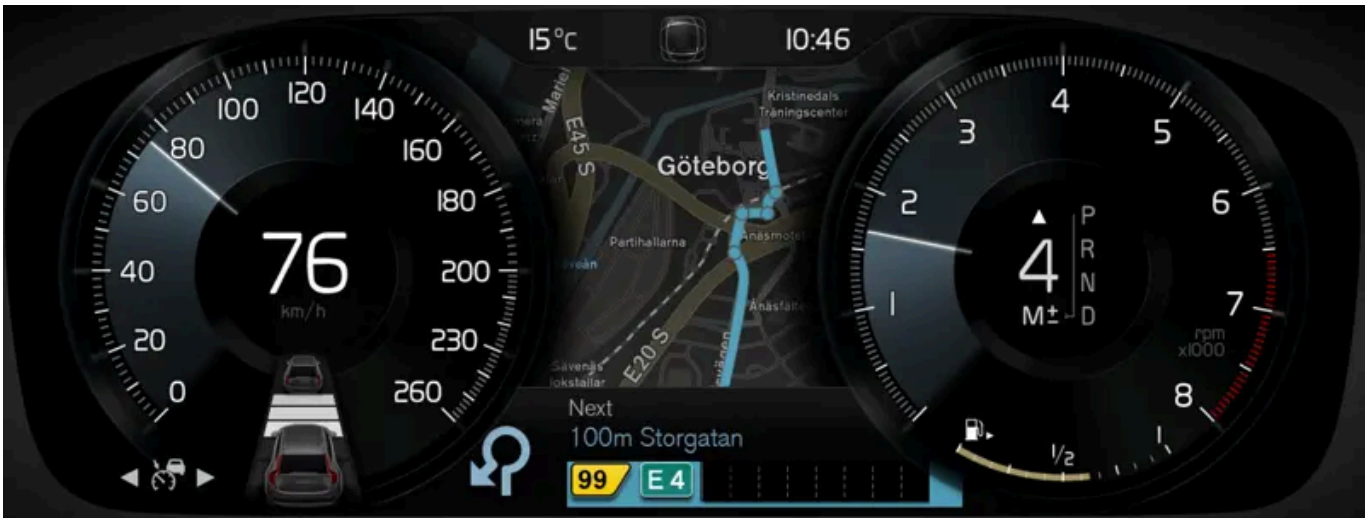
**Head-up display***



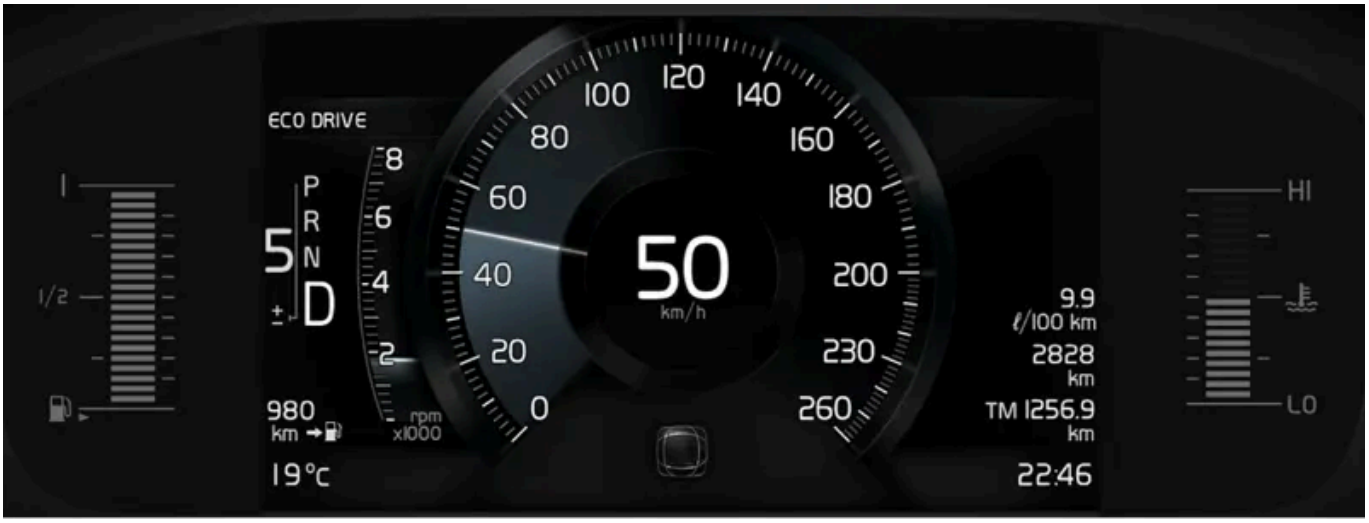

The head-up display presents information that the driver should react to immediately. For example, traffic warnings, speed information and navigation messages*. Road sign information and incoming phone calls are also shown in the head-up display. These can be handled using the right-side steering wheel keypad or the center display.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Instrument panel**




12"* instrument panel.




8-inch instrument panel.

The instrument panel displays information such as speed, incoming phone calls or the track currently playing. It is controlled using the steering wheel keypads.

**Center display**

Many of the vehicle's main functions are controlled from the center display, a touchscreen that reacts to taps and other gestures. This minimizes the number of physical buttons and controls needed in the vehicle. The screen can also be operated while wearing gloves.

The center display is used to control e.g. the climate and entertainment systems and to adjust the power seats*. The information presented in the center display can be handled by the driver or by someone else in the vehicle.

**Voice control system**

The voice control system enables the driver to control certain vehicle functions without taking their hands off the wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice commands to e.g. play a song, make a phone call, increase the temperature in the passenger compartment or have a text message read aloud.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 2.2. Volvo ID

---

## 2.2.1. Volvo ID

Volvo ID is a personal ID that gives you access to a range of services using a single username and password.

> **Note**
>
> The available services can vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

One example of a service in which a Volvo ID is needed is to check the vehicle via your phone using the Volvo Cars app[1].

> **Note**
>
> If the username/password for a service (e.g. Volvo On Call) is changed, the change will also automatically be applied to other services.

A Volvo ID can be created from the vehicle, at volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or in the Volvo Cars app.

When a Volvo ID is registered in the vehicle, additional services are available. Multiple Volvo IDs can be used for the same vehicle, and multiple vehicles can be linked to the same Volvo ID.

* Option/accessory.

[1] For Volvo On Call* users.

# 2.2.2. Creating a Volvo ID

A Volvo ID can be created in various ways. If your Volvo ID was created on volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or with the Volvo Cars app, the Volvo IDmust also be registered to the vehicle to enable access to the Volvo ID services.

#### Creating a Volvo ID with the Volvo ID app

1. Download the Volvo ID app from **Download Center** in the center display's App view.
2. Start the app and register a personal email address or a cellular phone number.
3. Follow the instructions that will be sent automatically to this email address/cell phone number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is automatically registered to the vehicle. The Volvo ID services can now be used.

#### Creating a Volvo ID with the Volvo Cars app

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo Cars app to your phone[1].
2. Choose to create a Volvo ID.
3. The website for creating a Volvo ID will appear.
4. Enter a personal email address or cell phone number.
5. Follow the instructions that will be sent automatically to this email address/cell phone number.

> A Volvo ID is created and ready for use.

#### Creating a Volvo ID on the Volvo Cars website

1. Go to volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/]. Choose to create a Volvo ID.
2. Enter a personal email address or cell phone number.
3. Follow the instructions that will be sent automatically to this email address/cell phone number.

> A Volvo ID is created and ready for use.

## Registering your Volvo ID to the vehicle

If your Volvo ID was created using the Volvo Cars app, follow these steps to register the ID to the vehicle:

1. If you have not already done so, download the Volvo ID app from **Download Center** in the center display's App view.

> **Note**
>
> To download apps the vehicle must be connected to the internet.

2. Start the app and enter your Volvo ID.
3. Follow the instructions that will be automatically sent to the email address/cell phone number connected to your Volvo ID.

> Your Volvo ID has now been registered to the vehicle. The Volvo ID services can now be used.

[1] Can be downloaded from e.g. the Apple App Store or Google Play.

---

# 2.2.3. Problems logging in with Volvo ID

This article describes problems that may arise when logging in with Volvo ID. For example if you have forgotten your password or your Volvo ID username.

#### Forgotten your password

To reset your password, follow the instructions below:

In the Volvo Cars app[1]

1. Open the Volvo Cars app.
2. Select **Log in**.
3. Press **Forgot password?** and follow the instructions.

You can also change your password at volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] .

#### Login error after creating a new account

Sometimes there may be a delay in the process which can result in an account not being available directly after it has been created. Try again after 24 hours and if the problem persists contact your local Volvo retailer or Volvo Cars customer service for further assistance.

#### What is my Volvo ID (user name)?

If your Volvo ID is connected to the vehicle, you can also access your username in the Volvo ID app in the center display's App view. Your Volvo ID is the same as the registered email address/cellular phone number.

#### Unlock your Volvo ID

Your account will be locked after 5 failed attempts to log in to the Volvo Cars app[1]. You can unlock your account by clicking **Forgot password?** in the login screen.

#### Changed email address

If you get a new email address and still have access to your previous address, you can log in using your old credentials and change your username yourself. If you no longer have access to your old email address, you should create a new Volvo ID using your new address.

#### Login error after changing Volvo ID (user name)

Make sure you receive a confirmation message verifying your new username. When this has been done you should be able to login using the new username. If you did not receive the confirmation message, your old username will remain. Log in and try again to change the username.

#### Login error after changing password

Try logging in with your previous password. If this doesn't work, try to reset your password.

#### Account registered to another market

An account is registered to a specific market and cannot be moved to a different market. To be able to reuse the same email address/cellular phone number, we advise you to first delete your account for the old market and then create a new account for the new market.

#### E-mail error

If you have entered an email address as username and did not receive a confirmation message after registration, check that you provided a valid email address and that the message was not stopped by a junk mail filter. Try to register your email address again.

## Further assistance

If you have not found the solution to a problem regarding Volvo ID and need further assistance, contact your local Volvo retailer or Volvo Cars customer service.

> **Note**
>
> Services available on volvocars.com and for Volvo On Call* may vary depending on market.

[1] Certain markets only.

* Option/accessory.

# 2.3. Type approval and licenses

## 2.3.1. License agreement for instrument panel

A license is an agreement on the right to conduct a certain activity or the right to use someone else's right according to terms and conditions specified in the agreement. The following text is Volvo's agreement with the manufacturer or developer.

**Boost Software License 1.0**

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the "Software") to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to do so, all subject to the following: The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a source language processor.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

**BSD 4-clause "Original" or "Old" License**

Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1990, 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

**BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License**

Copyright (c) 2011-2014, Yann Collet.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the organisation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derive from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

**BSD 2-clause “Simplified” license**

Copyright (c) <YEAR>, <OWNER> All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The views and conclusions contained in the software and documentation are those of the authors and should not be interpreted as representing official policies, either expressed or implied, of the FreeBSD Project.

**FreeType Project License**

1. 1 Copyright 1996-1999 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg Introduction The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG

Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that: o We don't promise that this software works. However, we are be interested in any kind of bug reports. (`as is' distribution) o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (`royalty-free' usage) o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you've used the FreeType code. (`credits') We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products, provided that all warranty or liability claims are assumed by the product vendor. Legal Terms 0. Definitions Throughout this license, the terms `package', `FreeType Project', and `FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the `FreeType project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. `You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where `using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program' or `executable'. This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType archive, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this. The FreeType project is copyright (C) 1996-1999 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below. 1. No Warranty THE FREETYPE ARCHIVE IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

2. Redistribution Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`licence.txt') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType code, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

3. Advertising The names of FreeType's authors and contributors may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project', `FreeType Engine', `FreeType library', or `FreeType Distribution'.

4. Contacts There are two mailing lists related to FreeType: o freetype@freetype.org Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation. o devel@freetype.org Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc. o http://www.freetype.org Holds the current FreeType web page, which will allow you to download our latest development version and read online documentation. You can also contact us individually at: David Turner <david.turner@freetype.org> Robert Wilhelm <robert.wilhelm@freetype.org> Werner Lemberg <werner.lemberg@freetype.org>

**Libpng License**

This copy of the libpng notices is provided for your convenience. In case of any discrepancy between this copy and the notices in the file png.h that is included in the libpng distribution, the latter shall prevail.

COPYRIGHT NOTICE, DISCLAIMER, and LICENSE:

If you modify libpng you may insert additional notices immediately following this sentence.

libpng versions 1.0.7, July 1, 2000, through 1.0.13, April 15, 2002, are Copyright (c) 2000-2002 Glenn Randers-Pehrson and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-1.0.6 with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors

Simon-Pierre Cadieux

Eric S. Raymond

Gilles Vollant

and with the following additions to the disclaimer:

There is no warranty against interference with your enjoyment of the library or against infringement. There is no warranty that our efforts or the library will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. This library is provided with all faults, and the entire risk of satisfactory quality, performance, accuracy, and effort is with the user.

libpng versions 0.97, January 1998, through 1.0.6, March 20, 2000, are Copyright (c) 1998, 1999 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.96, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Tom Lane

Glenn Randers-Pehrson

Willem van Schaik

libpng versions 0.89, June 1996, through 0.96, May 1997, are Copyright (c) 1996, 1997 Andreas Dilger Distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.88, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

John Bowler

Kevin Bracey

Sam Bushell

Magnus Holmgren

Greg Roelofs

Tom Tanner

libpng versions 0.5, May 1995, through 0.88, January 1996, are Copyright (c) 1995, 1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Contributing Authors" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Andreas Dilger

Dave Martindale

Guy Eric Schalnat

Paul Schmidt

Tim Wegner

The PNG Reference Library is supplied "AS IS". The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability and of fitness for any purpose. The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. assume no liability for direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages, which may result from the use of the PNG Reference Library, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this source code, or portions hereof, for any purpose, without fee, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this source code must not be misrepresented.
2. Altered versions must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source.
3. This Copyright notice may not be removed or altered from any source or altered source distribution.

The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. specifically permit, without fee, and encourage the use of this source code as a component to supporting the PNG file format in commercial products. If you use this source code in a product, acknowledgment is not required but would be appreciated.

A "png_get_copyright" function is available, for convenient use in "about" boxes and the like:

printf("%s",png_get_copyright(NULL));

Also, the PNG logo (in PNG format, of course) is supplied in the files "pngbar.png" and "pngbar.jpg (88x31) and "pngnow.png" (98x31).

Libpng is OSI Certified Open Source Software. OSI Certified Open Source is a certification mark of the Open Source Initiative.

Glenn Randers-Pehrson randeg@alum.rpi.edu April 15, 2002

**MIT License**

Copyright (c) <year> <copyright holders>

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

**zlib License**

The zlib/libpng License Copyright (c) <year> <copyright holders>

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

**SGI Free Software B License Version 2.0.**

SGI FREE SOFTWARE LICENSE B (Version 2.0, Sept. 18, 2008)

Copyright (C) [dates of first publication] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

---

# 2.3.2. Type approval for HomeLink® * [1]

Type approval for HomeLink® is provided below.

| Country/Area | Type approval |
|---|---|
| USA and Canada | This device complies with FCC rules part 15 and Industry Canada RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation. |
| Europe | Gentex Corporation hereby declares that HomeLink® Model UAHL5 complies with the Radio equipment directive 2014/53/EU.<br>Wavelengths within which the radio equipment operates:<br>• 433.05MHz-434.79MHz <10mW E.R.P.<br>• 868.00MHz-868.60MHz <25mW E.R.P.<br>• 868.70MHz-868.20MHz <25mW E.R.P.<br>• 869.40MHz-869.65MHz <25mW E.R.P.<br>• 869.70MHz-870.00MHz <25mW E.R.P.<br>Certificate holder address: Gentex Corporation, 600 North Centennial Street, Zeeland MI 49464, USA |

**Warning**

The transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.[2]

* Option/accessory.

[1] Certain markets only.

[2] The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

# 2.3.3. License agreement for audio and media

A license is an agreement on the right to conduct a certain activity or the right to use someone else's right according to terms and conditions specified in the agreement. The following texts are Volvo's agreements with manufacturers/developers.

## Bowers & Wilkins

Bowers & Wilkins and B&W are trademarks of the B&W Group Ltd. Nautilus is a trademark of B&W Group Ltd. Continuum is a trademark of Bowers & Wilkins. Trademarks of Bowers & Wilkins are applicable in selected markets.

## Dirac Unison®

Dirac Unison co-optimizes the loudspeakers in frequency, time and space for the best possible bass integration and clarity. It enables a faithful reproduction of the acoustic characteristics of specific performance venues. Using advanced algorithms, Dirac Unison controls all loudspeakers digitally based on acoustic high-precision measurements. Like a conductor of an orchestra, it guarantees that the loudspeakers perform in perfect unison.

## DivX®

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, LLC and are used under license.

This DivX Certified® device can play DivX® Home Theater video files up to 576p (including .avi, .divx). Download free software at www.divx.com to create, play and stream digital video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) movies. To obtain your registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in your device setup menu. Go to vod.divx.com for more information on completing the registration process.

**Patent number**

Covered by one or more of the following patents in the US: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 8,656,183; 8,731,369; RE45,052.

## Gracenote®

Portions of the content are copyright © of Gracenote or its providers.

Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote" and Gracenote MusicID are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

**Gracenote® End User License Agreement**

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. in Emeryville, California, United States (“Gracenote”). The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online servers or embedded databases (collectively “Gracenote Servers”) and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in all Gracenote data, all Gracenote software and all Gracenote servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote software and each item of Gracenote data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote data from in the Gracenote servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

## Sensus software

This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California.All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved

## Linux software

This product contains software licensed under GNU General Public License (GPL) or GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

You have the right of acquisition, modification, and distribution of the source code of the GPL/LGPL software.

You may download Source Code from the following website at no charge: http://www.embedded-carmultimedia.jp/linux/oss/download/TVM_8351_013

The website provides the Source Code "As Is" and without warranty of any kind.

By downloading Source Code, you expressly assume all risk and liability associated with downloading and using the Source Code and complying with the user agreements that accompany each Source Code.

Please note that we cannot respond to any inquiries regarding the source code.

## camellia:1.2.0

Copyright (c) 2006, 2007

NTT (Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer as the first lines of this file unmodified.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NTT ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NTT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Unicode: 5.1.0

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

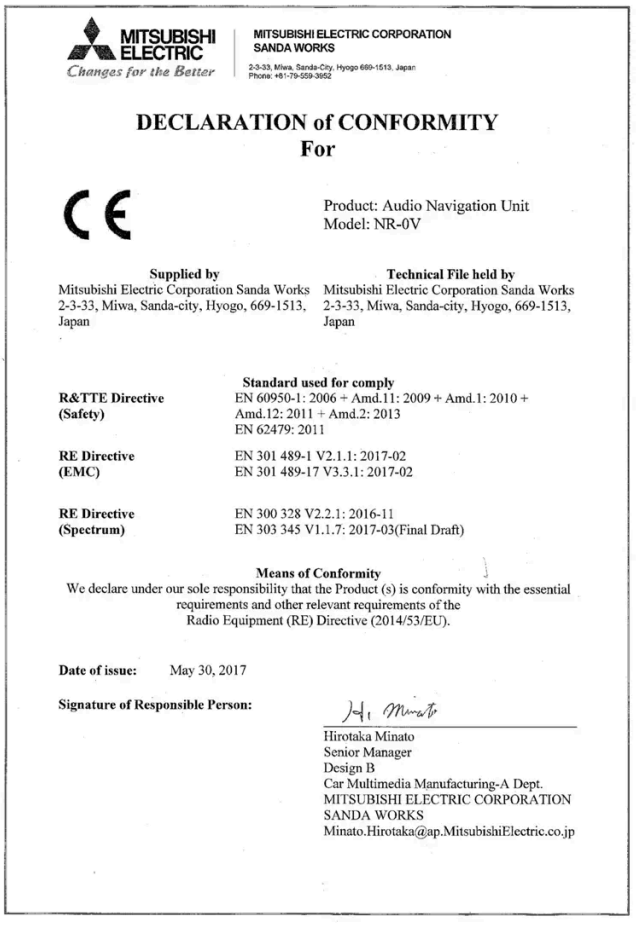
Copyright c 1991-2013 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified.

THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

## Declaration of Conformity



MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC
Changes for the Better

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-City, Hyogo 669-1513, Japan
Phone: +81-79-559-3652

**DECLARATION of CONFORMITY**
**For**

CE

Product: Audio Navigation Unit
Model: NR-0V

| **Supplied by** | **Technical File held by** |
|---|---|
| Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works<br>2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan | Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works<br>2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan |

**Standard used for comply**

| | |
|---|---|
| **R&TTE Directive (Safety)** | EN 60950-1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2009 + Amd.1: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011 + Amd.2: 2013<br>EN 62479: 2011 |
| **RE Directive (EMC)** | EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1: 2017-02<br>EN 301 489-17 V3.3.1: 2017-02 |
| **RE Directive (Spectrum)** | EN 300 328 V2.2.1: 2016-11<br>EN 303 345 V1.1.7: 2017-03(Final Draft) |

**Means of Conformity**
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU).

**Date of issue:** May 30, 2017

**Signature of Responsible Person:**

Hirotaka Minato
Senior Manager
Design B
Car Multimedia Manufacturing-A Dept.
MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
Minato.Hirotaka@ap.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp

USA

FCC CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

| Country/Area | |
|---|---|
| Brazil: | <br>Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário isto e, náo tem direito a protecão contra interferéncia prejudicial, mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferéncia a sistemas operando em caráter primário.<br>Para consultas, visite: www.anatel.gov.br |
| United Arab Emirates: |  |
| Kazakhstan: | <br>Model name: NR-0V<br>Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation<br>Export country: Japan |
| China: | 1.<br>■□用频率：2.4 - 2.4835 GHz<br>■等效全向辐射功率(EIRP)： 天线增益＜10dBi 时：≤100 mW 或≤20 dBm ①<br>■最大功率谱密度： 天线增益＜10dBi 时：≤20 dBm / MHz(EIRP) ①<br>■载频容限：20 ppm<br>■带外发射功率(在 2.4-2.4835GHz 频段以外) ≤-80 dBm / Hz (EIRP)<br>■杂散发射(辐射)功率(对应载波±2.5 倍信道带宽以外)：<br>• ≤-36 dBm / 100 kHz (30 - 1000 MHz)<br>• ≤-33 dBm / 100 kHz (2.4 - 2.4835 GHz)<br>• ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (3.4 - 3.53 GHz)<br>• ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (5.725 - 5.85 GHz)<br>• ≤-30 dBm / 1 MHz (其它1 - 12.75 GHz)<br>2.不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率(包括额外加装射频功率放大器)，不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线；<br>3.□用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止□用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续□用；<br>4.□用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰；<br>5.不得在飞机和机场附近□用。 |

| Country/Area | |
|---|---|
| Korea: | B급 기기 (가정용 방송통신기자재)<br>이 기기는 가정용(B급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로<br>가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든<br>지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.<br>해당 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다 . |
| Malaysia: | <br>This device has been certified under the Communications & Multimedia Act of 1998, Communications and Multimedia (Technical Standards) Regulations 2000. To retrieve your device's serial number, please visit (volvocars.com/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support]) and search for “SIRIM Label Verification”.<br>Device category: Navigation equipment for vehicle (Bluetooth)<br>Model: NR-0V<br>Type Approval No.:<br>RBAY/18A/1015S(15-4067) |
| Mexico: |  |
| EU: | <br>Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city. Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan<br>Mitsubishi Electric Corporation hereby declares that this type of radio equipment [Audio Navigation Unit] conforms with directive 2014/53/EU.<br>For further details, search for support information on www.volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] . |
| Taiwan: | 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法<br>第十二條<br>經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或□用者均不得擅自<br>變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。<br>第十四條<br>低功率射頻電機之□用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應<br>立停用，改善至無干擾時方得繼續□用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線<br>電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備<br>之干擾。 |

## MPEG4-AVC (H.264):

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM

## VC-1:

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND

NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM

### MPEG-4 VISUAL:

USE OF THE PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

---

# 2.3.4. Type approval Radio Equipment Directive

## Radio Equipment Directive 2014/53/EU

CE_DECL_Telestart_EN_DE

Declaration of Conformity (ALCOGUARD) 22 September 2017

Declaration of Conformity (DY-1VW0F-T)

Declaration of Conformity (TU-6)

Declaration of Conformity_UAHL5_English

DoC (Declaration of Conformity)_for_NR-0V

DoC_RED2014_RS4 - Hella radar

DoC-RED-L2C0054TR

DoC-RED-L2C0055TR

DoC-RED-V03-134TRX

DoC_Volvo_Ref_31438104_NB1948_ZS170654004021_signed

DoC_Volvo_Ref_31472201_NB1948_ZS170654004023_signed

DoC_Volvo_Ref_31483411_NB1948_ZS170654004010_signed

DoC_Volvo_Ref_31483412_NB1948_ZS170654004022_signed

DoC_Volvo_Ref_31483416_NB1948_ZS170654004011_signed

EU-Konformitätserklärung_L538_RHS_V3.0

HUF8423_EU

HUF8432_EU

**Applicable from and including 2020**

NR-0V 002 IHU 3.2 EU Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/2020/NR-0V_002_IHU_3.2_Melco_EU_Declaration_of_Conformity.pdf]

30761717 Master3 Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/RED-Master3-DoC.pdf]

AMFM Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/DoC_AMFM.pdf]

APN IAM21 Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/APN_IAM21_DoC_20171010.pdf]

AV9257382 F12 EU Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/EU_Konformitaetserklaerung_F12_V20sign.pdf]

DAB tuner CQ-0VE MITSUBISHI Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/2017-06-12_Declaration_of_ConformityCQ-0VE_MITSUBISHI.pdf]

ED9253993 MCV EU Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/EU-Konformit--tserkl--rung_MCV_V4_0_En_De.pdf]

FMDAB Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/DoC_FMDAB.pdf]

GJ32-18C901-BB L538 RHS Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/EU-Konformit--tserkl--rung_L538_RHS_V3-0.pdf]

GM5T-19G461-FA B479 EU Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/EU-Konformitaetserklaerung_B479_2_sign.pdf]

GNSS Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/DoC_GNSS.pdf]

HUF8423MS EU Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/HUF8423MS_EU_DoC_2019-06-07.pdf]

HUF8432MS EU TEC Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/HUF8432MS_EU_TEC_2019-06-07.pdf]

IHU-4-0 Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/doc-red-ihu-4-0.pdf]

MAM Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/DoC_MAM.pdf]

TVamp Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/DoC_TVamp.pdf]

VCM Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/VCM_Declaration_of_Conformity_RED.pdf]

Wireless charger Aptiv Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/DoC_scanned.pdf]

**Applicable from and including 2021**

NR-0V(No RQZY4-0062) EU Declaration of Conformity [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/2021/Declaration_of_Conformity_for_RED_NR-0V_RQZY4-0062.pdf]

---

# 2.3.5. Certificate for wireless charger

| Country/Area | |
|---|---|
| China: | （一）符合“微功率短距离无线电发射设备目录和技术要求”的具体条款和□用场景，采用的天线类型和性能，控制、调整及开关等□用方法；<br>（二）不得擅自改变□用场景或□用条件、扩大发射频率范围、加大发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器），不得擅自更改发射天线；<br>（三）不得对其他合法的无线电台（站）产生有害干扰，也不得提出免受有害干扰保护；<br>（四）应当承受辐射射频能量的工业、科学及医疗（ISM）应用设备的干扰或其他合法的无线电台（站）干扰；<br>（五）如对其他合法的无线电台（站）产生有害干扰时，应立即停止□用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续□用；<br>（六）在航空器内和依据法律法规、国家有关规定、标准划设的射电天文台、气象雷达站、卫星地球站（含测控、测距、接收、导航站）等军民用无线电台（站）、机场等的电磁环境保护区域内□用微功率设备，应当遵守电磁环境保护及相关行业主管部门的规定；<br>（七）禁止在以机场跑道中心点为圆心、半径5000米的区域内□用各类模型遥控器；<br>（八）微功率设备□用时温度和电压的环境条件。 |
| Mexico: | RCPVAPVO 18-1919 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/VOLVO_Mexico_57442C.pdf] |
| Paraguay: | CONATEL<br>NR: 2018-11-1-000541<br>2018-11-1-000541 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/Volvo_Paraguay_57442C.pdf] |
| Taiwan: | 根據NCC低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 規定:<br>第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或□用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。<br>第十四條<br>低功率射頻電機之□用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續□用。<br>前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。<br>低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。 |
| Ukraine: | Ци<br>Діапазон частот: 107 кГц - 115 кГц<br>Максимальна потужність радіосигналу: 5 Вт (сполучена), 63 Вт наномасштабів (випромінюється)<br>Коефіцієнт викидів: N / A<br>Модуляції: 2 кГц<br>NFC<br>Діапазон частот: 13,56 МГц, у межах +/- 0,01%<br>Максимальна вихідна потужність РФ: 10 мВт<br>–<br>виробник: Ел-Джі Електронікс Інк.(LG Electronics Inc) 10, Магок'юнганг 10-ро, Гангсео-гу, Сеул, 07796, Корея<br>Frequency range 111 кГц / Максимальна потужність РЧ: 42 дБмк А / м<br>справжнім Ел-Джі Електронікс Інкзаявляє, що тип радіообладнання WC510MVV20 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc.<br>імпортер : Віннер Імпортс Україна<br>Вул. Дачна, 5-А, с.Капітанівка, Київська область, 08112, Україна<br>Тел.: +38(044) 585 63 00<br>Контактна особа : Alla Haidai (ahaidai@winner.ua) |
| US/Canada | FCC ID : BEJWC510MVV20<br>IC : 2703H-WC510MVV20<br>This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-Gen,RSS-216 rules of Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:<br>(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and<br>(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.<br>Any changed or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.<br>FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 15cm between the radiator and your body.<br>–<br>IDéclaration d'avertissement ISED<br>Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes:<br>(1) Cet appareil ne doit pas provoquerd'interferences nuisibles, et<br>(2) Cet appareil doit accepter toute interference recue, y compris les interferences pouvant entrainerun fonctionnement indesirable.<br>Les changements ou modifications non expressement approuves par LG Vehicle Components Company pourraient annuler l'autorite de l'utilisateura utilizer l'equipement.<br>Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations RF de l'ISED: Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements RF de l'ISED définies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet appareil et son antenne ne doivent pas être situés ou fonctionner conjointement avec une autre antenne ou un autre émetteur.<br>Cet équipement doit être installé pour fonctionner avec une distance minimale de 10cm entre le radiateuret le corps de l'utilisateur final. |

# 2.3.6. Start and lock system type designations

The following information contains type designations for the start and lock system.

## Alarm system

USA FCC ID: MAYDA 5823(3)

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada IC: 4405A-DA 5823(3)

This device is subject to the following conditions: (1) This device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## Remote keys (Passive Entry*/Passive Start)

**USA**

Volvo Standard Key FCC ID: YGOHUF8423MS

Volvo Tag ID FCC ID: YGOHUF8432MS

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Canada**

Volvo Standard Key IC: 4008C-HUF8423MS

Volvo Tag ID IC: 4008C-HUF8432MS

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

## Immobilizer and Passive Entry*/Passive Start systems

USA-FCC ID: LTQVO3134

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any changes or modification not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Canada-IC:3659A-VO3134

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 2.3.7. Customer Privacy Policy

Volvo respects and safeguards the personal privacy of everyone who visits our websites.

This policy refers to the handling of customer data and personal information. The purpose is to give current, past and potential customers a general understanding of:

- The circumstances in which we collect and process your personal data.
- The types of personal data we collect.
- Why we collect your personal data.
- How we process your personal data.

For more information on the policy, search for support information on volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

---

# 2.3.8. Terms and Conditions for Services

Volvo offers services that help enhance the vehicle's safety and comfort.

These services comprise everything from assistance in emergencies to navigation and various maintenance services.

Before using the services, it is important to read support information about terms and conditions for the services at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

---

# 2.3.9. Navigation license agreements*

The following is information for the end-user of the Sensus Navigation system.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR DISTRIBUTION BY HERE

FOR THE AMERICAS/ASIA PACIFIC

**END-USER TERMS**

The content provided ("Data") is licensed, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or HERE North America, LLC (as defined below) within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact HERE, please visit www.here.com. The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. For purposes of these terms, "HERE" shall mean

(a) HERE North America, LLC with respect to Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region and (b) HERE Europe B.V. for Data for Europe, the Middle East and/or Africa. The Data includes certain information and related content provided under license to HERE from third parties and is subject to the applicable supplier terms and copyright notices set forth at the following URL:

here.com/supplierterms

**TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

**License Limitations on Use**: You agree that your li¬cense to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, noncommercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**License Limitations on Transfer**: Your limited license does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CDROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multidisc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

**Additional License Limitations**: Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your license is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning**: This Data may contain inaccurate or incom¬plete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty**: This Data is provided to you "as is", and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty**: HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NONINFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability**: HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CON¬DITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control**: You agree not to export from any¬where any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and ap¬provals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. De¬partment of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement**: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Severability**: You and HERE agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

**Governing Law**: The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois (for Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region) or The Netherlands (for Data for Europe, the Middle East and Africa), without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. For any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data ("Claims"), you agree to submit to the personal juris¬diction of (a) the State of Illinois for Claims related to Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region pro¬vided to you hereunder, and (b) The Netherlands for Data for Europe, the Middle East and/or Africa provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users**: If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use", and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

**NOTICE OF USE**

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME:

HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 1987-2015 HERE. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

© 1987-2015 HERE. All rights reserved.

## (Canadian models) ACCORD DE LICENCE D'UTILISATEUR FINAL DESTINÉ À LA DISTRIBUTION

PAR HERE EN LES AMÉRIQUES / ASIE PACIFIQUE

#### MODALITÉS D'UTILISATION FINALE

Le contenu (« Données ») est livré en mode licence et non de vente. L'ouverture, l'installation, la copie du produit ou autre emploi des Données impliquent le consentement aux modalités de licence. En cas de désaccord avec les modalités de la licence, il est interdit d'installer, copier, utiliser ou transférer les Données. S'il n'y a pas consentement à certaines des modalités de la licence et que les Données ne sont pas déjà installées, copiées ou utilisées le titulaire peut obtenir le rem¬boursement du prix d'achat, en en faisant part dans les trente (30) jours au détaillant HERE North America, LLC (« HERE ») où l'achat a été fait. Pour les coorDonnées de HERE, consulter www.here.com Le disque de Données cartographiques (« Données »), est prévu pour une utilisation personnelle, un usage uniquement interne et ne peut en aucun cas être revendu. Il est protégé par les droits d'auteurs et assujetti aux modalités suivantes du présent « Accord de licence d'utilisateur final », ainsi qu'aux conditions convenues entre l'acquéreur du produit et HERE North America, LLC (« HERE ») ou ses concédants (comprenant concédants et fournisseurs). Aux fins des présentes, "Here" signifie

(a) Here North America, LLC pour ce qui concerne des Données pour les régions Amériques et/ou Asie Pacifique et (b) Here Europe B.V. pour ce qui concerne des Données pour l'Europe, le Moyen¬Orient et/ou l'Afrique. Les Données incluent certaines informations et contenus concédés sous licence à HERE par des tiers. Les Données font l'objet des conditions de fourniture applicables ainsi que des mentions de copyright indiquées sous l'URL suivant:

here.com/supplierterms

#### MODALITÉS

**Restrictions de la licence d'utilisation** : Le titulaire de la licence consent à utiliser les Données en question à des fins exclusivement personnelles, non commer¬ciales pour lesquelles la licence a été accordée et non à des fins d'offre de services informatiques, d'exploitation partagée ou autres fins du même type. Le titulaire de la licence consent également à ne reproduire, ne copier, ne modifier, ne décompiler, ne désassembler ou ne concevoir à rebours aucune partie de ces Données et à ne les transférer ni les distribuer sous quelque forme ni à aucune autre fin, sauf dans la mesure permise par les lois prescrites en cette matière.

**Restrictions du transfert de la licence** : Cette licence restreinte ne permet pas de transférer ou de revendre les Données, sauf à la condition où le transfert des Données et de tous les outils associés est permis sur une base définitive lorsque : (a) aucune copie des Données n'est conservée par le titulaire de la licence; (b) le bénéficiaire accepte les modalités de l'accord de licence de l'utilisateur final; (c) les Données sont transférées sous strictement la même forme qu'à l'achat par cession physique du média original (par ex. le CD-ROM ou DVD d'origine), de l'emballage d'origine, de tous les manuels et autres documents. Les séries multidisques ne peu¬vent être transférées ou vendues que sous leur forme intégrale d'origine et non comme une partie de celle-ci.

**Restrictions additionnelles de la licence** : Sous réserve des consignes particulières d'utilisation transmises par HERE dans la licence et sans limiter la portée du paragraphe précédent, l'utilisation des Données de la licence est sujette aux conditions du présent accord qui prévoit que l'utilisateur ne peut en aucun cas (a) utiliser les Données avec les produits, les systèmes ou les applications faisant l'objet d'une installation sur des véhicules dotés d'un système de navigation, de positionnement, de

répartition, de radioguidage routier en temps réel, de gestion de parcs automobiles et d'applications semblables ou (b) les utiliser avec des dispositifs de positionnement et des appareils électroniques ou informatiques mobiles ou sans fil, y compris les téléphones cellulaires, les ordinateurs de poche ou portables, les téléavertisseurs et les assistants numériques personnels ou PDA.

**MISE EN GARDE** : Ces Données peuvent comporter des informations inexactes ou incomplètes en raison du passage du temps, de l'évolution des circonstances, des sources utilisées et des difficultés par nature de la collecte exhaustive de Données géographiques, de tout ce qui peut conduire à des résultats incorrects.

**No Warranty**: This Data is provided to you “as is”, and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

**Non-garantie** : Ces Données sont fournies « telles quelles», l’acquéreur de cette licence accepte de l’u¬tiliser à ses risques et périls. HERE et ses titulaires de licences (et leurs concédants et fournisseurs) n'offrent aucune garantie ou déclaration de quelque nature que ce soit, expresse ou implicite, issue du droit ou autrement, quant au contenu, à la qualité, à l'utilité, à l'exactitude, à l'intégralité, à l'efficacité, à la fiabilité, à l'aptitude à l'emploi, à l'usage ou aux résultats découlant de l'emploi des Données, et ne garantissent pas non plus que ces dernières ou le serveur en assurant la transmission fonctionneront sans interruption et sans erreur.

**Exonération de garantie** : HERE ET SES TITULAIRES DE LICENCES (Y COMPRIS LEURS PROPRES CONCÉDANTS ET FOURNISSEURS) DÉCLINENT TOUTE GARANTIE, EXPRESSE OU IMPLICITE, DE QUALITÉ, DE PERFORMANCE, DE VALEUR MARCHANDE, D'ADÉQUATION À UN USAGE PARTICULIER OU DE NON-CONTREFAÇON. Certains États, territoires et pays n'autorisent pas certaines exclusions de garantie, et, dans cette mesure, les exclusions ci-dessus pourraient ne pas s’appliquer.

**Exonération de responsabilité** : HERE ET SES CONCÉDANTS (Y COMPRIS LEURS PROPRES CONCÉDANTS ET FOURNISSEURS) NE PEUVENT ÊTRE TENUS RESPONSABLES PAR LE TITULAIRE DE LA LICENCE À L'ÉGARD DE TOUTE RÉCLAMATION, DEMANDE OU ACTION, QUELLE QUE SOIT LA NATURE DE LA CAUSE DE LA REVENDICATION, DEMANDE OU ACTION ALLÉGUANT TOUTE PERTE, BLESSURE OU DES DOMMAGES, DIRECTS OU INDIRECTS, QUI POURRAIENT RÉSULTER DE L'UTILISATION OU LA POSSESSION DE CES DONNÉES, OU DE TOUTE PERTE DE BÉNÉFICES, REVENUS, CONTRATS OU ÉCONOMIE ATTENDUE OU DE TOUT AUTRE DOMMAGE DIRECT, INDIRECT, ACCESSOIRE, PARTICULIER OU CONSÉCUTIF, DÉCOULANT DE L’UTILISATION DU TITULAIRE OU DE L'IMPOSSIBILITÉ D'UTILISER CES DONNÉES, DE TOUT DÉFAUT DE CES DONNÉES, OU DE LA VIOLATION DE CES MODALITÉS OU CONDITIONS, QUE CE SOIT DANS UNE ACTION EN RESPONSABILITÉ CONTRACTUELLE OU DÉLICTUELLE OU FONDÉE SUR UNE GARANTIE, MÊME SI HERE OU SES CONCÉDANTS DE LICENCE ONT ÉTÉ AVISÉS DE LA POSSIBILITÉ D’UN TEL DOMMAGE. Certains États, territoires et pays n'autorisent pas certaines exclusions de responsabilité ou limitations des dommages-in-térêts, dans cette mesure, la disposition ci-dessus pourrait ne pas s’appliquer.

**Contrôle des exportations** : Le titulaire de la licence accepte, où qu’il soit, de n’exporter aucune partie des Données de tout produit direct des présentes sauf en conformité, ainsi qu’à toutes les licences et autorisations requises ci-après, aux lois applicables relatives à l’exportation, aux règles et règlements, y compris, mais pas uniquement aux lois, règles et règlements administrés par le Bureau du contrôle des avoirs étrangers du département du Commerce des États-Unis et le Bureau de l’industrie et de la sécurité du département du Com¬merce des États¬Unis. HERE est dispensée de ses ob¬ligations en vertu des présentes dans la mesure ou de telles lois, règles ou règlements relatifs à l’exportation de cette nature l’empêcheraient de s’y conformer.

**Intégralité de l’accord** : Ces modalités constituent l’intégralité de la licence entre HERE (et ses concédants, y compris leurs concédants et fournisseurs) et le titulaire de la licence eu égard à l’objet des présentes et remplace la totalité de toutes les ententes écrites ou orales antérieures conclues entre les parties concernant l’objet des présentes.

**Divisibilité** : Le titulaire de la licence et HERE reconnaissent que toute partie de l’accord jugée illégale ou inexécutable devra être enlevée et que le reliquat de l’accord restera entièrement en vigueur.

**Droit Applicable** : les termes et conditions ci-dessus sont assujetties aux lois de l'Etat du Illinois (pour les Données pour les régions Amériques et/ou Asie Pacifique) ou au droit néerlandais (pour les Données pour l'Europe, le Moyen-Orient et/ou l'Afrique), à l'exclusion

(i) des dispositions de conflit des lois, (ii) de la Conven¬tion des Nations Unies sur les Contrats de Vente Internationale de Marchandises, qui est expressément exclue.

Tout litige, réclamation, ou action découlant ou survenant en relation avec les Données (« Réclamations ») sera soumis à la compétence exclusive (a) des tribunaux de l'Etat de l'Illinois pour toutes Réclamations concernant les Données qui vous sont fournies au titre des présentes pour les régions Amériques et/ou Asie Pacifique et, (b) des tribunaux néerlandais pour les Données qui vous sont fournies au titre des présentes pour l'Europe, le Moyen-Orient et/ou l'Afrique.

**Utilisateurs finaux du gouvernement** : Si les Don¬nées sont en cours d'acquisition par ou pour le compte du gouvernement des États-Unis ou toute autre personne qui cherche à obtenir ou à appliquer des droits similaires à ceux habituellement réclamés par le gouvernement des États-Unis, ces Données sont considérées comme « article commercial » tel que ce terme est défini dans la réglementation 48 CFR ( « FAR ») 2,101, dont l'usage est autorisé conformément à la présente licence de l'utilisateur final. Chaque copie de Données livrée ou fournie par d'autres moyens doit être marquée et inscrite, le cas échéant, avec le texte suivant « Avis d'utilisation » et devra être traitée conformément aux Avis de ce type:

**AVIS D'UTILISATION**

NOM DE L'ENTREPRENEUR (FABRICANT/FOURNISSEUR) :

HERE

ADRESSE :

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

Ces Données commerciales sont des éléments tels que définis dans la FAR 2.101 qui sont soumis à la licence de l'utilisateur final en vertu de laquelle ces Données ont été fournies.

© 1987 – 2015 HERE. Tous droits réservés.

Si l'agent de négociation des contrats, un organisme du gouvernement fédéral, ou tout autre fonctionnaire fédéral refuse d'utiliser la légende fournie dans les présentes, le responsable des marchés, l'organisme du gouvernement fédéral, ou tout autre fonctionnaire fédéral doit en aviser HERE avant de rechercher des moyens supplémentaires ou autres droits dans les Données.

© 1987 – 2015 HERE. Tous droits réservés.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 2.3.10. Spotify license agreement

Volvo provides a wide range of services, apps and programs with the aim of making it more convenient, more pleasant and safer for you to use your Volvo. Some of the apps and programs are made by third party companies, and contain software licensed by the third party manufacturer.

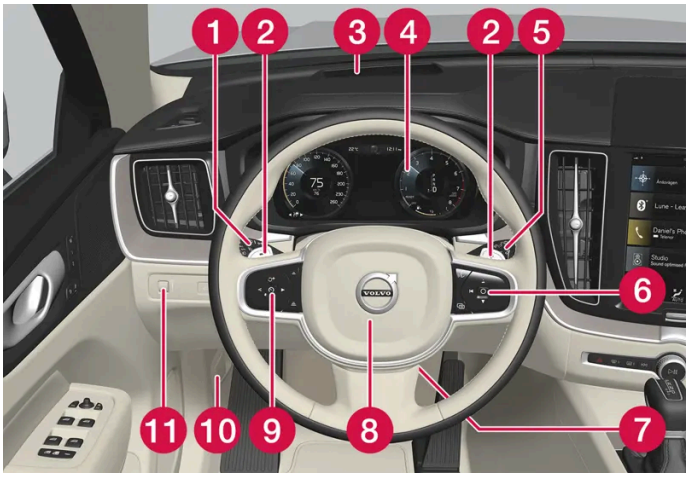
## Spotify license agreement

This product contains third party software licensed by Spotify: www.spotify.com/connect/third-party-licenses [https://www.spotify.com/connect/third-party-licenses] .

# 2.4. Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive vehicle

The overviews show the location of the vehicle's displays and controls.

## Steering wheel and dashboard




1. Parking lights, daytime running lights, low beams, high beams, turn signals, front fog lights/cornering illumination*, rear fog light, trip computer reset
2. Steering wheel paddles for manual shifting*
3. Head-up display*
4. Instrument panel
5. Wipers and washers, rain sensor*
6. Right-side steering wheel keypad
7. Steering wheel adjustment
8. Horn
9. Left-side steering wheel keypad
10. Hood open
11. Display lighting, tailgate unlock/open*/close*, halogen headlight height adjustment

## Ceiling console

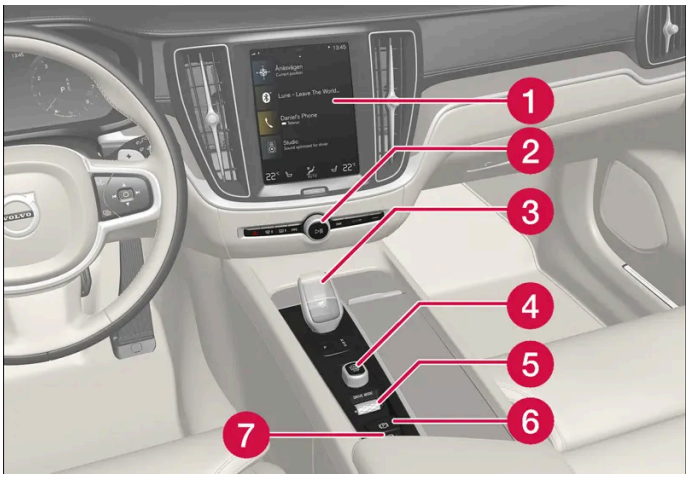
1 Front reading lights and courtesy lighting

2 Panoramic roof*

3 Ceiling console display ON CALL button

4 HomeLink® *

## Center and tunnel console




1 Center display

2 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media

3 Gear selector

4 Start knob

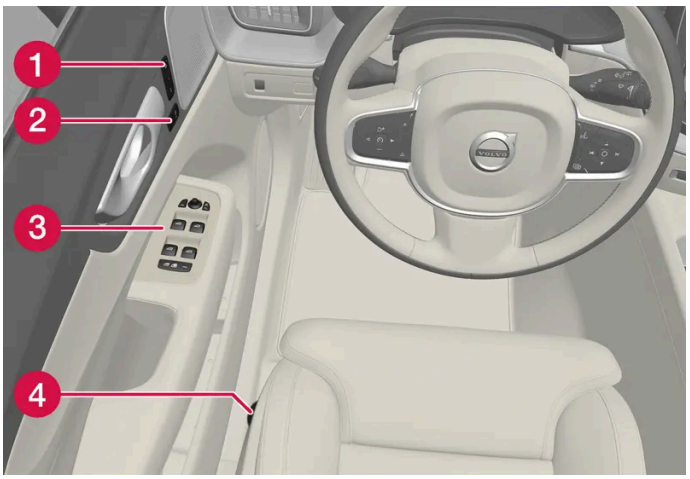
5 Drive modes*

6 Parking brake

7 Auto-hold brakes

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

### Driver's door




1 Memory for power front seat settings*, door mirrors and head-up display*

2 Central locking

3 Power windows, door mirrors, electric child locks*

4 Controls for front seat

* Option/accessory.

---

## 2.5. Technician certification

In addition to Volvo factory training, Volvo supports certification by the National Institute for Automotive Service Excellence (A.S.E.).

Certified technicians have demonstrated a high degree of competence in specific areas. Besides passing exams, each technician must also have worked in the field for two or more years before a certificate is issued. These professional technicians are best able to analyze vehicle problems and perform the necessary maintenance procedures to keep your Volvo at peak operating condition.

#### Electrified vehicles

Technicians performing work on a vehicle with electrification should also have the necessary training and specialized certification required for performing repairs and/or maintenance on a vehicle with electrification.

**Warning**

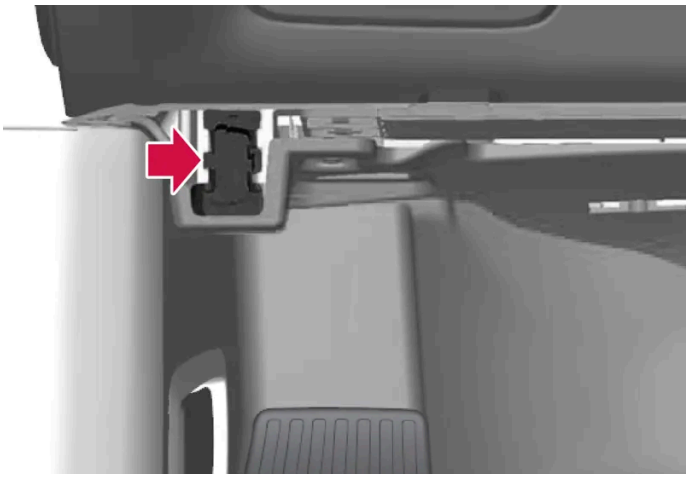
A number of electrical components in electrified vehicles use high-voltage current and can be extremely dangerous if handled incorrectly. These components and any orange wiring in the vehicle may only be handled by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians.

---

# 2.6. Connecting equipment to the vehicle's data link connector

Incorrectly connected or installed software or diagnostic tools may have an adverse effect on the vehicle's electronics.

Volvo strongly recommends that Volvo owners use only genuine, Volvo-approved accessories, and that accessory installations be performed only by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician. Certain accessories only work when the associated software is installed in the vehicle's computer system.



On-board Diagnostic (OBDII) socket under the dashboard on the driver's side.

**Note**

Volvo Cars takes no responsibility for the consequences of connecting non-authorized equipment to the On-board Diagnostic (OBDII) socket. This socket should only be used by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

## Type approval

**USA**

FCC ID: 2AGKKACUII-06

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Warning**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Canada**

IC: 20839-ACUII06

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

---

# 2.7. Driver distraction

A driver has a responsibility to do everything possible to ensure his or her own safety and the safety of passengers in the vehicle and others sharing the roadway. Part of this responsibility is avoiding distractions, including performing activities that are not directly related to controlling the vehicle in the driving environment.

Your new Volvo is equipped with feature-rich entertainment and communication systems. You may also own other portable electronic devices for your own convenience. Use these systems and devices safely to avoid distraction.

For all of these systems, we want to provide the following warning that reflects the strong Volvo concern for your safety. Never use these devices or any feature of your vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely. Distraction can lead to a serious accident. In addition to this general warning, we offer the following guidance regarding specific new features that may be found in your vehicle:

**Warning**

- Never use a hand-held cellular telephone while driving. Some jurisdictions prohibit cellular telephone use by a driver while the vehicle is moving.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, set and make changes to your travel itinerary only with the vehicle parked.
- Never program your audio system while the vehicle is moving. Program radio presets with the vehicle parked, and use your programmed presets to make radio use quicker and simpler.
- Never use portable computers or personal digital assistants while the vehicle is moving.

---

# 2.8. Change of market when importing or relocating

If you import a vehicle or move to another country, it is important that you register the vehicle in the new market to help ensure that online services work correctly, that the vehicle meets local laws and regulations, etc.

## Visit an authorized Volvo retailer

Visit an authorized Volvo retailer for assistance registering the vehicle in the new market.

If you do not do this then you may experience that apps, Volvo On Call[1], software downloads and other online services are affected and do not work correctly.

#### Creating a new Volvo ID in your new home market

When you relocate to another country you should create a Volvo ID in the new country.

If you have already created a Volvo ID in another country and want to use the same email address, you must first delete your Volvo ID in the region you originally created it. You can also create a new Volvo ID with another email address.

#### For vehicles with Volvo On Call[1]

Download the Volvo Cars app from the country the vehicle will be used in and pair the app with your vehicle.

> **Note**
>
> Visit an authorized Volvo retailer if you have imported or relocated with your vehicle to a new country.
>
> Available services may vary depending on market and car model.

> **Note**
>
> If the vehicle is exported to another market, Volvo is not responsible for any adaptations to the vehicle in order to meet applicable requirements or laws in the country of import. For more information, see the Warranty and Service Records Information booklet or contact your Volvo workshop.

[1] Applicable only to markets that have access to Volvo On Call.

---

# 2.9. Viewing the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

All vehicles have a unique identification number, a VIN[1]. This number is needed when contacting a Volvo retailer regarding Volvo On Call or with other questions.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Proceed to **System** → **System Information** → **Vehicle Identification Number**.

> The vehicle identification number will be displayed.

The VIN can also be found:

- on the first page of the Warranty and Service Records Information booklet
- on the vehicle's registration card

- by looking at the dashboard through the vehicle's windshield.

The VIN has a similar location on all models.

[1] Vehicle Identification Number

---

# 2.10. Data recording

As part of Volvo's commitment to safety and quality, certain information is recorded regarding vehicle operation, functionality and incidents.

**US market only:**

**EDR**

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

**ASDR**

This vehicle is equipped with an Active Safety Data Recorder (ASDR). This data recorder can record information related to the usage of the car, functional errors and active safety actuations (e.g. auto brake). The information saved is used by technicians for service and maintenance to diagnose and repair possible faults that has occurred in the vehicle and to fulfil certain legal requirements. The registered data can also, in congregated form, be used for research- and product development –purposes to continuously improve the safety and quality of Volvo Cars. For more information contact your local Volvo retailer.

**Canadian market only:**

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). The main purpose of the EDR is to register and record data in traffic accidents or accident-like situations, e.g. if an airbag deploys or if the vehicle hits an obstacle in the road. This data is recorded in order to help understand how the vehicle's systems perform in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data in traffic accidents or accident-like situations such as:

- How the various systems in the vehicle performed;
- Whether the driver and passenger seat belts were tightened/buckled;
- The driver's use of the accelerator/brake pedal;
- How fast the vehicle was moving.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which traffic accidents and injuries occur. The EDR records data only if a non-trivial accident situation occurs. EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. The system also never registers data on who is driving the vehicle or the geographical location of the accident or near-accident. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifiable information that is routinely acquired during an accident investigation. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to read this recorded data.

In addition to the EDR, the vehicle is equipped with a number of computers that continuously control and monitor the vehicle's performance. These computers may record data during normal driving conditions, particularly if they detect a fault relating to the vehicle's operation and functionality or upon activation of the vehicle's active driver support functions (e.g. City Safety or the auto-brake function).

Some of this recorded data is required by technicians performing service and maintenance in order to diagnose and rectify any faults that may have occurred in the vehicle. The recorded information is also needed to enable Volvo to fulfill legal and other regulatory requirements. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computers until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the recorded information may be used in aggregated form for research and product development purposes in order to continuously improve the safety and quality of Volvo vehicles.

Volvo will not provide this information to any third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. However, national legislation and regulations may require Volvo to disclose this type of information to law enforcement or other authorities that can claim a legal right to the information. Special technical equipment, which Volvo and workshops that have entered agreements with Volvo have access to, is required to read and interpret the recorded data. Volvo is responsible for ensuring that information provided to Volvo in conjunction with service and maintenance is stored and handled securely and in compliance with applicable legal requirements. For more information, please contact a Volvo retailer.

## Vehicle Connectivity Module (VCM High)

Vehicles equipped with VCM High can collect data on the vehicle's safety functions as well as other functions in the vehicle. This data is collected for product development, quality follow-up, safety work and to improve and monitor the vehicle's quality

and its safety functions. Data is also collected in order to manage Volvo Cars' warranty commitments and to comply with legal requirements related to engine emission data.

> **Note**
>
> When collecting data, Volvo may use a small portion of the vehicle's data plan, up to 10 MB a month.

---

# 2.11. Accessory installation

We strongly recommend that Volvo owners install only genuine, Volvo-approved accessories, and that accessory installations be performed only by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician. Certain functions only work when the associated software is installed in the vehicle's computer system.

- Genuine Volvo accessories are tested to ensure compatibility with the performance, safety, and emission systems in your vehicle. Additionally, a trained and qualified Volvo service technician knows where accessories may and may not be safely installed in your Volvo. In all cases, please consult a trained and qualified Volvo service technician before installing any accessory in or on your vehicle.
- Accessories that have not been approved by Volvo may or may not be specifically tested for compatibility with your vehicle.
- Any of your vehicle's performance and safety systems could be adversely affected if you install accessories that Volvo has not tested, or if you allow accessories to be installed by someone unfamiliar with your vehicle.
- Damage caused by unapproved or improperly installed accessories may not be covered by your new vehicle warranty. See your Warranty and Service Records Information booklet for more warranty information. Volvo assumes no responsibility for death, injury, or expenses that may result from the installation of non-genuine accessories.

---

# 2.12. Volvo Structural Parts Statement

Volvo is one of the leading companies for car safety.

Volvo engineers and manufactures vehicles designed to help protect vehicle occupants in the event of a collision.

Volvos are designed to absorb the impact of a collision. This energy absorption system including, but not limited to, structural components such as bumper reinforcement bars, bumper energy absorbers, frames, rails, fender aprons, A-pillars, B-pillars and body panels must work together to maintain cabin integrity and protect the vehicle occupants.

The supplemental restraint system including but not limited to air bags, side curtain air bags, and deployment sensors work together with the above components to provide proper timing for air bag deployment.

Due to the above, Volvo Car USA does not support the use of aftermarket, alternative or anything other than original Volvo parts for collision repair.

Volvo Car USA also recommends using Volvo-approved replacement glass. The use of aftermarket glass, particularly a windshield, can have an adverse effect on collision avoidance and advanced lighting systems.

In addition Volvo does not support the use or re-use of structural components from an existing vehicle that has been previously damaged. Although these parts may appear equivalent, it is difficult to tell if the parts have been previously replaced with non-

OE parts or if the part has been damaged as a result of a prior collision. The quality of these used parts may also have been affected due to environmental exposure.

---

# 2.13. Contacting Volvo

Use the following contact information if you would like to get in touch with Volvo in the United States or Canada.

**In the USA:**

Volvo Car USA, LLC

Customer Care Center

1 Volvo Drive,

P.O. Box 914

Rockleigh, New Jersey 07647

1-800-458-1552

volvocars.com/us

**In Canada:**

Volvo Car Canada Ltd.

Customer Care Centre

9130 Leslie Street, Suite 101

Richmond Hill, Ontario L4B 0B9

1-800-663-8255

volvocars.com/ca

---

# 2.14. Software Updates

So that you as a Volvo customer shall have the best possible experience from your car, Volvo is continuously developing the systems in the cars and the services that you are offered.

The software in your Volvo will be updated to the latest version when the vehicle is serviced at an authorized Volvo retailer. With the latest software update, you can take advantage of available improvements, including those that came with previous software updates.

**Note**

Functionality after updating may vary depending on market, model, model year and options.

---

# 2.15. Important information on accessories and extra equipment

Incorrectly connected or installed accessories or extra equipment may have an adverse effect on the vehicle's electronics.

Volvo strongly recommends that Volvo owners use only genuine, Volvo-approved accessories, and that accessory installations be performed only by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician. Certain accessories only work when the associated software is installed in the vehicle's computer system.

The equipment described in the Owner's Manual is not available in all vehicles. Vehicles may be equipped differently depending on market requirements and national or local laws and regulations.

Optional or accessory equipment may not be available in all countries or markets. Please note that some vehicles may be equipped differently, depending on special legal requirements. For more information on which equipment is standard and which is an option or accessory, please contact your Volvo retailer.

**Note**

Do not export your Volvo to another country before investigating that country's applicable safety and exhaust emission requirements. In some cases it may be difficult or impossible to comply with these requirements. Modifications to the emission control system(s) may render your Volvo not certifiable for legal operation in the U.S., Canada and other countries.

**Warning**

CALIFORNIA proposition 65

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

**Warning**

Certain components of this vehicle such as air bag modules, seat belt tensioners, adaptive steering columns, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

**Warning**

The driver is always responsible for operating the vehicle in a safe manner and for complying with current statutes and regulations.

It is also essential to maintain and service the vehicle according to Volvo's recommendations as stated in the owner's information and the Warranty and Service Records Information booklet.

If the on-board information differs from the printed owner's manual, the printed information always takes precedence.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

# 3. Safety

# 3.1. Seat belts

# 3.1.1. Seat belts

Seat belts should always be worn by all occupants in your vehicle. Children should be properly restrained using an infant seat, adjustable child seat or booster cushion as determined by age, weight and height.

Most states and provinces make it mandatory for occupants of a vehicle to use seat belts.

### Seat belt maintenance

Check periodically that the seat belts are in good condition. Use water and a mild detergent for cleaning. Check the seat belt mechanism's function as follows: attach the seat belt and pull rapidly on the strap.

**Warning**

- Never repair the belt yourself. Repairs should only be performed by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- Any device used to induce slack into the shoulder belt portion of the three-point belt system will have a detrimental effect on the amount of protection available in the event of a collision.
- The seat back should not be tilted too far back. The shoulder belt must be taut in order to function properly.
- Do not use any type of child restraint in the front passenger seat. We recommend that children who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt properly fastened.

# 3.1.2. Buckling and unbuckling seat belts

Make sure that all passengers have buckled their seat belts before starting to drive.

### Buckling seat belts

1. Pull out the belt slowly and make sure it is not twisted or damaged.

**Note**

The seat belt is equipped with a seat belt retractor that will lock up in the following situations:

- if the belt is pulled out too quickly.
- during braking and acceleration.
- if the vehicle is leaning excessively.
- when driving in sharp turns.
- if the automatic locking retractor/emergency locking retractor (ALR/ELR) is activated. Each seat belt (except for the driver's) is equipped with an ALR function, which is designed to keep the seat belt taut when installing a child restraint. ALR is activated when the seat belt is pulled out as far as possible. If this is done, a sound from the seat belt retractor will be audible, which is normal. The seat belt can now only be fed into the retractor, not pulled out. This function is automatically disabled when the seat belt is unbuckled and fully retracted.

2. Buckle the seat belt by pushing the latch plate into the receptacle.

> A distinct "click" indicates that the belt is locked into place.

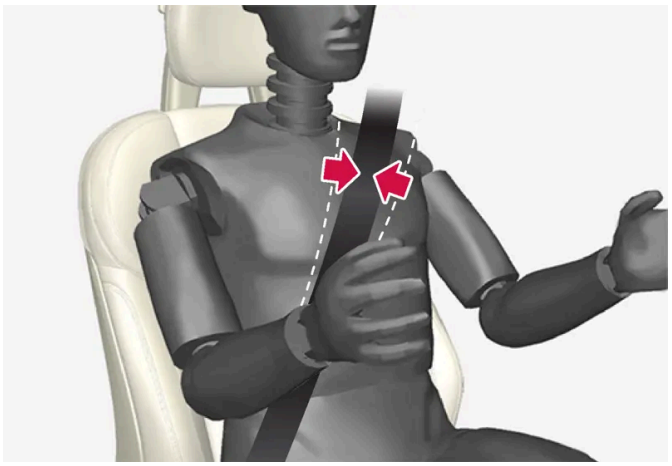
**Warning**

Always insert the seat belt latch plate into the belt buckle on the correct side. Failure to do so could cause the seat belts and belt buckles to malfunction in a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.

3. The height of the seat belts in the front seats can be adjusted.

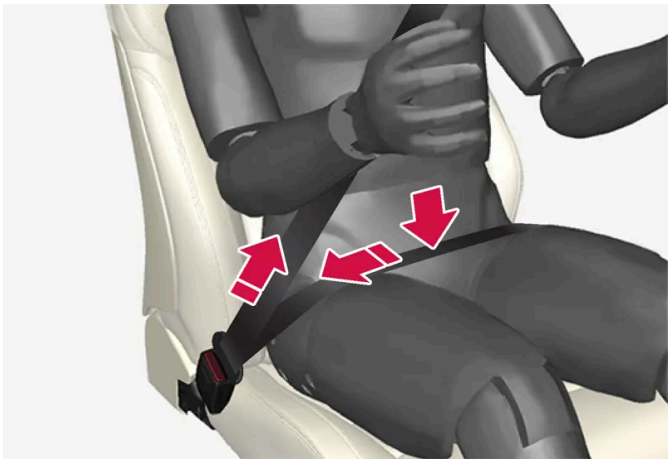
Press the button on the seat belt holder and move the belt up or down.

Position the belt as high as possible without it chafing against the neck.



The belt should be positioned closely over the shoulder (against the collarbone, not down over the arm).

4. Tighten the lap section of the seat belt over the hips by pulling the diagonal section upward toward the shoulder.



The lap section of the seat belt should be positioned low on the hips (not against the abdomen).

**Warning**

Never use a seat belt for more than one occupant. Never wear the shoulder portion of the belt under the arm, behind the back or otherwise out of position. Such use could cause injury in the event of an accident. As seat belts lose much of their strength when exposed to violent stretching, they should be replaced after any collision, even if they appear to be undamaged.

**Warning**

Do not use clips or fasten the belts around hooks or other parts of the interior. This will prevent the seat belt from fitting properly.

**Warning**

Never damage the seat belts and never insert any foreign objects into the belt buckle. This may cause the seat belts and belt buckles to malfunction in a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.

### Unbuckling seat belts

1. Press the red button on the seat belt receptacle and make sure the seat belt retracts fully into the retractor slot.
2. If it does not fully retract, guide the belt manually into the slot and make sure it does not hang loose.

---

# 3.1.3. Seat belt tensioners

The vehicle is equipped with standard and electric* seat belt tensioners that can help tension the seat belt in a critical situation or collision.

## Standard seat belt tensioners

All seat belts are equipped with a standard seat belt tensioner.

In a collision of sufficiently violent force, the seat belt tensioners will tension the seat belts in order to more effectively restrain the occupants.

## Electric seat belt tensioners*

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts are equipped with electric seat belt tensioners.

The seat belt tensioners interact and can be activated in conjunction with the assistance during collision risks and Rear Collision Warning driver support systems. In critical situations, such as if the vehicle brakes suddenly, begins to skid or runs off the road (e.g if the vehicle rolls into a ditch, lifts off the ground or hits an obstacle in the road), or if there is a risk of collision, the seat belts can be pulled taut by the seat belt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seat belt tensioner helps to position the occupant more effectively in the seat, which reduces the risk of the occupant striking the interior of the passenger compartment and improves the effect of other safety systems such as the airbags.

When a critical situation has passed, the seat belt and the electric seat belt tensioner are reset automatically. However, they can also be reset manually.

> **Important**
>
> If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the passenger-side electric seat belt tensioner may also be deactivated.

**Warning**

Never attempt to alter or repair the seat belt on your own. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop.

If the seat belt has been exposed to extreme forces, e.g. in conjunction with a collision, the entire seat belt must be replaced. Even if the seat belt appears undamaged, some of its protective properties may have been lost. Also replace the seat belt if it is worn or damaged. The new seat belt must be type approved and intended for the same seating position as the replaced seat belt.

* Option/accessory.

## 3.1.4. Resetting the electric seat belt tensioners*

The electric seat belt tensioners are designed to be reset automatically, but if the seat belt remains taut it can be reset manually.

1. Stop the vehicle in a safe location.
2. Unbuckle the seat belt and then rebuckle it.

> The seat belt and the electric seat belt tensioner will be reset.

**Warning**

Never attempt to alter or repair the seat belt on your own. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop.

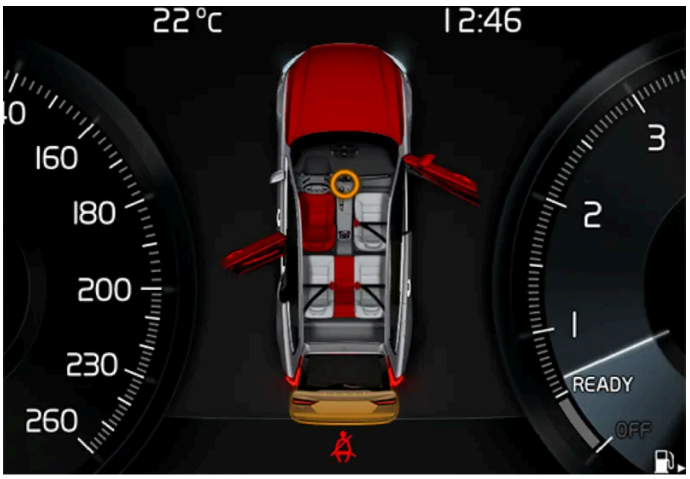
If the seat belt has been exposed to extreme forces, e.g. in conjunction with a collision, the entire seat belt must be replaced. Even if the seat belt appears undamaged, some of its protective properties may have been lost. Also replace the seat belt if it is worn or damaged. The new seat belt must be type approved and intended for the same seating position as the replaced seat belt.

* Option/accessory.

## 3.1.5. Door and seat belt reminders

This system is intended to remind occupants to buckle their seat belts and to alert the driver if a door, hood or other opening (trunk, sunroof, etc.) is open.

## Graphics in the instrument panel




Graphics in the instrument panel with various types of warnings. The warning colors for the doors/tailgate vary depending on the vehicle's speed.

The instrument panel graphic shows the seats where seat belts are buckled and not buckled.

The same graphic also indicates if the hood, tailgate or any door is open.

Confirm the graphic by briefly pressing the O button on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

## Seat belt reminder

Reminder light in ceiling console.

A seat belt reminder light illuminates in the ceiling console and a warning symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

The audible reminder varies depending on the vehicle's speed, driving time and distance driven.

A seat belt status graphic in the instrument panel indicates when the driver's or a passenger's seat belt is buckled or unbuckled.

Child seats are not included in the seat belt reminder system.

#### Front seats

An audible signal and an indicator light remind unbuckled occupants to fasten their seat belts.

#### Rear seat

The rear seat belt reminder has two functions:

- To indicate which seat belts are buckled in the rear seats. This will also be displayed in an instrument panel graphic.
- To provide audio and visual reminders if any seat belt in the rear seat is removed while the vehicle is in motion. The reminder will stop when the seat belt has been rebuckled.

### Door/hood/tailgate and fuel filler door reminder

If the hood, tailgate, fuel filler door or any door is not properly closed, this will be indicated by a graphic in the instrument panel. Stop the vehicle safely and close the open door, hood, etc.

If the vehicle is moving at a speed under approx. 10 km/h (6 mph), the information symbol will illuminate in the instrument panel.

If the vehicle is moving at a speed above approx. 10 km/h (6 mph), the warning symbol will illuminate in the instrument panel.

---

# 3.2. Airbags

---

## 3.2.1. Airbags

The vehicle is equipped with a number of different airbags to help protect the driver and passengers.

**Warning**

- If the airbag warning light stays on after the engine has started or if it illuminates while you are driving, have the vehicle inspected by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible.
- Never attempt to alter or repair any of the vehicle's safety systems yourself. Incorrectly performed repairs to any system could impair function and lead to serious injury. All work on these systems should be performed by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

**Warning**

If your vehicle has become water-damaged in any way (e.g., soaked floor mats/standing water on the floor of the vehicle), do not attempt to start the engine. This may cause airbag deployment, which could result in serious injury. Volvo recommends towing the vehicle directly to an authorized Volvo workshop.

Before attempting to tow the vehicle:

1. Switch off the ignition for at least 10 minutes and disconnect the battery.
2. Follow the instructions for manually overriding the shiftlock system.

### Deployed airbags

**Warning**

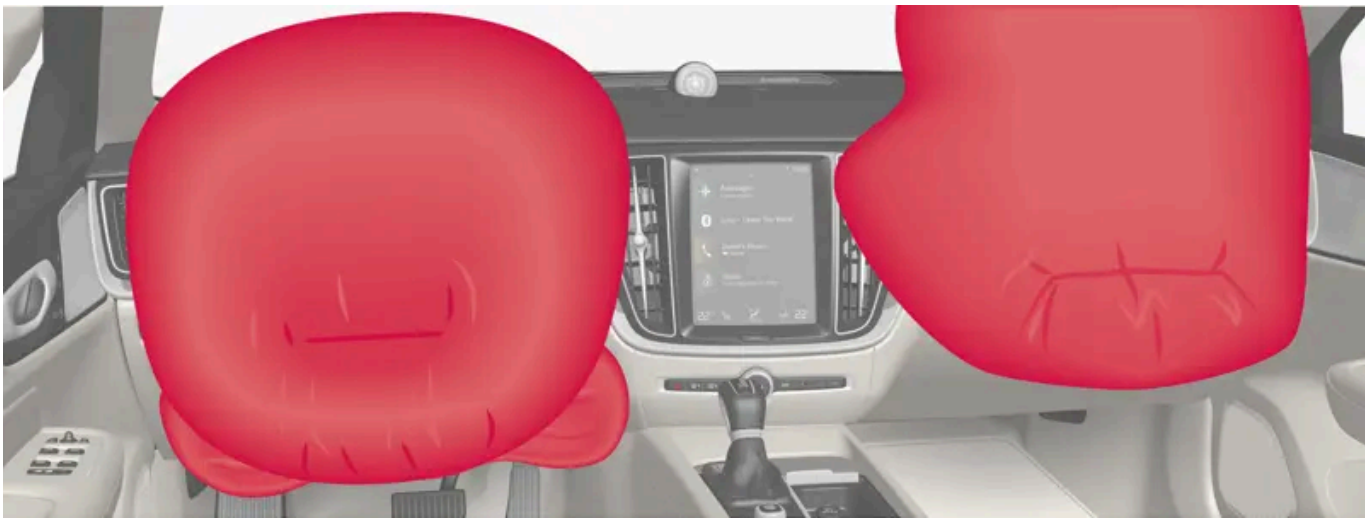
If any of the airbags have deployed:

- Do not attempt to drive the vehicle. Have it towed to an authorized workshop.
- If necessary, seek medical attention.

---

## 3.2.2. Driver/passenger side front airbags

As a supplement to the seat belts, the vehicle is equipped with driver and passenger side front airbags.



Driver/passenger side front airbags.

In a frontal collision, the airbags help protect the driver's and passenger's head, neck, face and chest and the driver's knees and legs.

A collision of a sufficiently violent force will trigger the sensors and one or more airbags will inflate. The airbag helps cushion the initial impact of the collision for the passenger. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. A small amount of powder will also be released from the airbag. This may appear to be smoke and is normal. The entire process, from inflation to deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

**Note**

The sensors react differently depending on the circumstances of the accident and whether or not the seat belt is used. This applies to all belt positions.

There may therefore be accident situations in which only one (or none) of the airbags are deployed. The sensors monitor the impact of the collision and react accordingly to deploy one, several or no airbags.

**Warning**

The seat belt and the airbag work together. If the seat belt is not used or is used incorrectly, the airbag may not provide the intended protection in a collision.

To help prevent injury in the event the airbag is deployed, passengers should sit as upright as possible, with their feet on the floor and their backs against the seat backrest.

**Warning**

Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop for repairs. Incorrectly performed repairs to the airbag system could impair function and lead to serious injury.

## The front airbag system

The front airbag system includes gas generators surrounded by the airbags, and deceleration sensors that activate the gas generators, causing the airbags to be inflated with nitrogen gas.

As the movement of the seats' occupants compresses the airbags, some of the gas is expelled at a controlled rate to provide better cushioning. The belt tensioners minimize slack in the seat belts and are activated for occupants wearing their seat belts. The entire process, from inflation to deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

The location of the front airbags is indicated by the AIRBAG marking on the steering wheel pad and above the glove compartment, and by decals on both sun visors and on the front and far right side of the dashboard.

The **driver's side front airbag** is folded and located in the steering wheel hub.

The **knee airbag** is folded on the underside of the dashboard on the driver's side. AIRBAG is embossed on the panel.

The **passenger's side front airbag** is folded behind a panel located above the glove compartment.

**Warning**

- The airbags in the vehicle are designed to be a SUPPLEMENT to-not a replacement for-the three-point seat belts. For maximum protection, wear seat belts at all times. Be aware that no system can prevent all possible injuries that may occur in an accident.
- Never drive with your hands on the steering wheel pad/airbag housing.
- The front airbags are designed to help prevent serious injury. Deployment occurs very quickly and with considerable force. During normal deployment and depending on variables such as seating position, one may experience abrasions, bruises, swellings, or other injuries as a result of deployment of one or both of the airbags.
- When installing any accessory equipment, make sure that the front airbag system is not damaged. Any interference in the system could cause malfunction.

## Front airbag deployment

- The front airbags are designed to deploy during certain frontal or front-angular collisions, impacts, or decelerations, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and object impacted. The airbags may also deploy in certain non-frontal collisions where rapid deceleration occurs.

- The airbag system's sensors, which trigger the front airbags, are designed to determine if the collision is powerful enough to activate the belt tensioners and/or the airbags.

However, not all frontal collisions activate the front airbags.

- If the collision involves a nonrigid object (e.g., a snow drift or bush), or a rigid, fixed object at a low speed, the front airbags will not necessarily deploy.
- Front airbags do not normally deploy in a side impact collision, in a collision from the rear or in a rollover situation.
- The amount of damage to the bodywork does not reliably indicate if the airbags should have deployed or not.

**Note**

- Deployment of front airbags occurs only one time during an accident. In a collision where deployment occurs, the airbags and seat belt tensioners activate. Some noise occurs and a small amount of powder is released. The release of the powder may appear as smoke-like matter. This is a normal characteristic and does not indicate fire.
- Volvo's front airbags use special sensors that are integrated with the front seat buckles. The point at which the airbag deploys is determined by whether or not the seat belt is being used, as well as the severity of the collision.
- Collisions can occur where only one of the airbags deploys. If the impact is less severe, but severe enough to present a clear injury risk, the airbags are triggered at partial capacity. If the impact is more severe, the airbags are triggered at full capacity.

**Warning**

- Do not use child safety seats or child booster cushions/backrests in the front passenger's seat. We also recommend that occupants under 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) in height who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt fastened. See also the Occupant Weight Sensor information.
- Never drive with the airbags deployed. The fact that they hang out can impair the steering of your vehicle. Other safety systems can also be damaged.
- The smoke and dust formed when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation in the event of prolonged exposure.

Should you have questions about any component in the SRS system, please contact a trained and qualified Volvo service technician or Volvo customer support:

**In the United States**

Volvo Car USA, LLC

Customer Care Center

1 Volvo Drive

P.O. Box 914

Rockleigh, New Jersey 07647

1-800-458-1552

www.volvocars.com/us

**In Canada**

Volvo Car Canada Ltd.

Customer Care Centre

9130 Leslie Street, Suite 101

Richmond Hill, Ontario L4B 0B9

1-800-663-8255

www.volvocars.com/ca

## Airbag decals

Airbag decal on the outside of both sun visors.

Passenger's side airbag decal.

**Warning**

- Children must never be allowed in the front passenger's seat.
- Occupants in the front passenger's seat must never sit on the edge of the seat, sit leaning toward the instrument panel or otherwise sit out of position.
- The occupant's back must be as upright as comfort allows and be against the seat back with the seat belt properly fastened.
- Feet must be on the floor, e.g., not on the dash, seat or out of the window.

**Warning**

- No objects or accessory equipment, e.g. dashboard covers, may be placed on, attached to, or installed near the air bag cover (the area above the glove compartment) or the area affected by airbag deployment.
- There should be no loose articles, such as coffee cups on the floor, seat, or dashboard area.
- Never try to open the airbag cover on the steering wheel or the passenger's side dashboard. This should only be done by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury to the vehicle's occupants.

---

# 3.2.3. Occupant weight sensor

The Occupant Weight Sensor (OWS) is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and is designed to disable (will not inflate) the passenger's side front airbag under certain conditions.

Occupant Weight Sensor (OWS) indicator light

## Disabling the passenger's side front airbag

Volvo recommends that ALL occupants (adults and children) shorter than 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) be seated in the back seat of any vehicle with a front passenger side airbag and be properly restrained for their size and weight.

The OWS works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and seat belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the passenger's side front airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or disabled (will not inflate).

The OWS will disable (will not inflate) the passenger's side front airbag when:

- the front passenger's seat is unoccupied, or has small/medium objects in the front seat,
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat,
- a child or a small person occupies the front passenger's seat.

The OWS uses a PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp which will illuminate and stay on to remind you that the passenger's side front airbag is disabled. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is located in the overhead console, near the base of the rearview mirror.

**Note**

When the ignition is switched on, the OWS indicator light will illuminate for several seconds while the system performs a self-diagnostic test.

However, if a fault is detected in the system:

- The OWS indicator light will stay on
- The SRS warning light will come on and stay on and a text message will be displayed.

**Warning**

If a fault in the system is detected and indicated as described, be aware that the passenger's side front airbag will not deploy in the event of a collision. In this case, the SRS system and Occupant Weight Sensor should be inspected by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible.

**Warning**

- Never try to open, remove or repair any components in the OWS system. This could cause the system to malfunction. Maintenance or repairs should only be carried out by an a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- The front passenger's seat should not be modified in any way. This could reduce pressure on the seat cushion, which might interfere with the OWS system's function.

| Passenger's seat occupancy status | OWS indicator light status | Passenger's side front airbag status |
|---|---|---|
| Seat unoccupied | OWS indicator light lights up | Passenger's side front airbag disabled |
| Seat occupied by low weight occupant/object[1] | OWS indicator light lights up | Passenger's side front airbag disabled |

| Passenger's seat occupancy status | OWS indicator light status | Passenger's side front airbag status |
|---|---|---|
| Seat occupied by heavy occupant/object | OWS indicator light is **not** lit | Passenger's side front airbag enabled |

The OWS is designed to enable (may inflate) the passenger's side front airbag in the event of a collision anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger's seat. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp will be off and remain off.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is on, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp remains on even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

This indicates limitations in OWS classification capability. It does not indicate OWS malfunction.

## Modifications

If you are considering modifying your vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, for example by altering or adapting the driver's or front passenger's seat(s) and/or airbag systems, please contact Volvo at:

**In the United States**

Volvo Car USA, LLC

Customer Care Center

1 Volvo Drive

P.O. Box 914

Rockleigh, New Jersey 07647

1-800-458-1552

**In Canada**

Volvo Car Canada Ltd.

Customer Care Centre

9130 Leslie Street, Suite 101

Richmond Hill, Ontario L4B 0B9

1-800-663-8255

**Warning**

- No objects that add to the total weight on the seat should be placed on the front passenger's seat. If a child is seated in the front passenger's seat with any additional weight, this extra weight could cause the OWS system to enable the airbag, which might cause it to deploy in the event of a collision, thereby injuring the child.
- The seat belt should never be wrapped around an object on the front passenger's seat. This could interfere with the OWS system's function.
- The front passenger's seat belt should never be used in a way that exerts more pressure on the passenger than normal. This could increase the pressure exerted on the weight sensor by a child, and could result in the airbag being enabled, which might cause it to deploy in the event of a collision, thereby injuring the child.

**Warning**

- Keep the following points in mind with respect to the OWS system. Failure to follow these instructions could adversely affect the system's function and result in serious injury to the occupant of the front passenger's seat.
- The full weight of the front seat passenger should always be on the seat cushion. The passenger should never lift him/herself off the seat cushion using the armrest in the door or the center console, by pressing the feet on the floor, by sitting on the edge of the seat cushion, or by pressing against the backrest in a way that reduces pressure on the seat cushion. This could cause OWS to disable the front, passenger's side airbag.

**Warning**

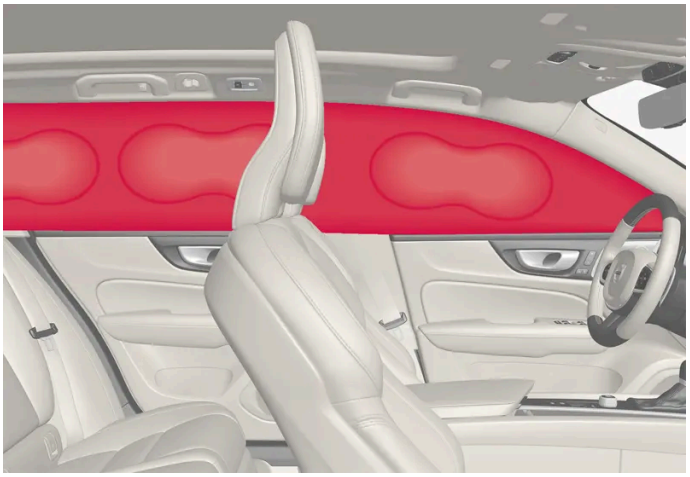
- Do not place any type of object on the front passenger's seat in such a way that jamming, pressing, or squeezing occurs between the object and the front seat, other than as a direct result of the correct use of the Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) seat belt.
- No objects should be placed under the front passenger's seat. This could interfere with the OWS system's function.

[1] Volvo recommends that children always be properly restrained in appropriate child restraints in the rear seats. Do not assume that the passenger's side front airbag is disabled unless the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is lit. Make sure the child restraint is properly installed. If there is any doubt as to the status of the passenger's side front airbag, move the child restraint to the rear seat.

---

# 3.2.4. Inflatable curtain

The inflatable curtain, Inflatable Curtain (IC), helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the vehicle during a collision.



The inflatable curtains are installed along both sides of the inside of the roof and help protect occupants in the vehicle's outer seats. IC AIRBAG is embossed on the panels.

A collision of a sufficiently violent force will trigger the sensors and the inflatable curtain will inflate.

**Warning**

Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop for repair. Incorrectly performed repairs to the inflatable curtain system could impair function and lead to serious injury.

**Warning**

Never hang or attach heavy objects in the handle in the ceiling. The hooks are only intended for lightweight garments (not for hard objects such as umbrellas).

Never screw or mount anything to the vehicle's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could impair the intended protective properties. Volvo recommends only using Volvo original parts that are approved for placement in these areas.

**Warning**

If objects are loaded higher than the upper edge of the side windows, leave a 10 cm (4 in.) space between the objects and the window. Objects placed closer to this could impede the function of the inflatable curtain concealed inside the headlining.

**Warning**

The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seat belt. Always wear your seat belt.

# 3.2.5. Side airbags

The side airbags, on the driver's and passenger sides, protect the chest and hip in a collision.

The side airbags are located in the front seats' outer backrest frames and help protect the driver and front seat passenger.

A collision of a sufficiently violent force will trigger the sensors and one or more side airbags will inflate. The side airbags inflate between the seat occupant and the door panel to help cushion the initial impact of the collision. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The side airbags are normally only deployed on the side of the vehicle impacted by the collision.

**Warning**

Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop for repairs. Incorrectly performed repairs to the side airbag system could impair function and lead to serious injury.

**Warning**

Do not place any objects in the area between the outer edges of the seats and the door panels, as this could impair the function of the side airbags.

Volvo recommends only using seat covers approved by Volvo. Other seat covers could prevent the side airbags from functioning properly.

**Warning**

The side airbag is a supplement to the seat belt. Always wear your seat belt.

# 3.3. Child safety

# 3.3.1. Attachment points for child seats

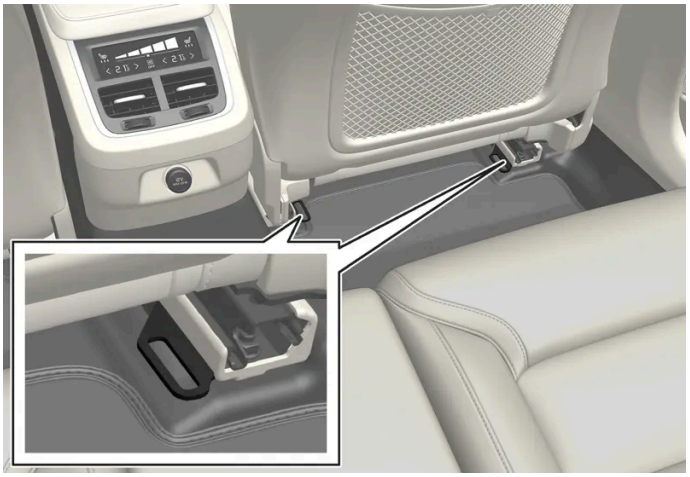
## 3.3.1.1. Lower child seat attachment points

The rear seats are equipped with lower child seat attachment points.

The lower child seat attachment points are intended for use with certain rear-facing child restraints.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when attaching a child seat to the lower child seat attachment points.

### Location of child seat attachment points



Location of child seat attachment points in the rear seat.

The child seat attachment points in the rear seat are located on the rear section of the front seat floor rails.

## 3.3.1.2. ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors

Lower anchors for ISOFIX/LATCH-equipped child seats are located in the rear, outboard seats, hidden below the backrest cushions.

# Using the ISOFIX/LATCH lower child seat anchors

Location of the ISOFIX/LATCH anchors

Symbols on the seat back upholstery mark the ISOFIX/LATCH anchor positions as shown. To access the anchors, kneel on the seat cushion and locate the anchors by feel. Always follow your child seat manufacturer's installation instructions, and use both ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors and top tethers whenever possible.

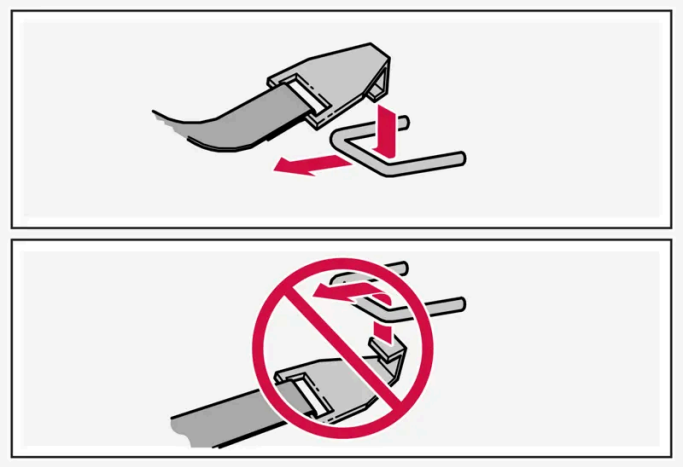
**To access the anchors**

1. Put the child restraint in position.
2. Kneel on the child restraint to press down the seat cushion and locate the anchors by feel.
3. Fasten the attachment on the child restraint's lower straps to the ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors.
4. Firmly tension the lower child seat straps according to the manufacturer's instructions.

> **Warning**
>
> Volvo's ISOFIX/LATCH anchors conform to FMVSS/CMVSS standards. Always refer to the child restraint system's manual for weight and size ratings.

**Note**

- The rear center seat is not equipped with ISOFIX/LATCH lower tether anchors. If a child restraint is used in this seat, attach the restraint's upper anchor strap (if equipped with these) to the top tether anchor point for this strap and secure the child restraint with the vehicle's center seat belt.
- Always follow your child seat manufacturer's installation instructions, and use both ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors and top tethers whenever possible.



Fasten the attachment correctly to the ISOFIX/LATCH lower anchors

**Warning**

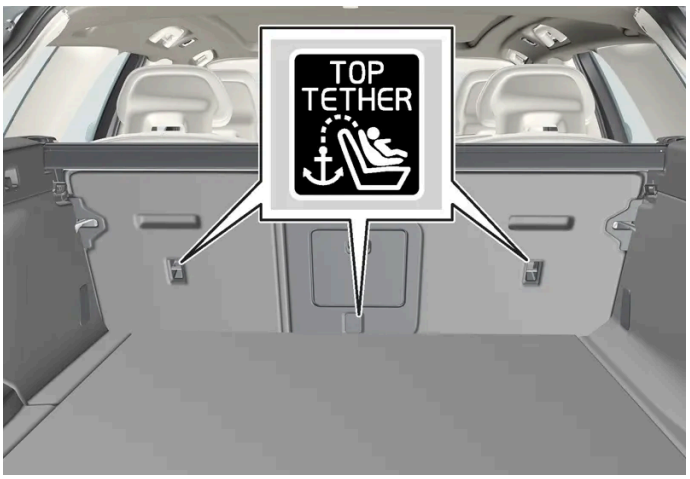
- Be sure to fasten the attachment correctly to the anchor (see the illustration). If the attachment is not correctly fastened, the child restraint may not be properly secured in the event of a collision.
- The ISOFIX/LATCH lower child restraint anchors are only intended for use with child seats positioned in the outboard seating positions. These anchors are not certified for use with any child restraint that is positioned in the center seating position. When securing a child restraint in the center seating position, use only the vehicle's center seat belt.

---

# 3.3.1.3. Top tether anchors

Your Volvo is equipped with child restraint top tether anchorages for all three seating positions in the rear seat. They are located on the rear side of the backrests.

## Child restraint anchorages




Top tether anchors and symbols on the rear side of the rear seat backrests. There is no symbol for the center anchor position.

**Securing a child seat**

1. Place the child restraint on the rear seat.
2. Route the top tether strap under the head restraint and attach it to the anchor.
3. Attach the strap for the lower anchors in the lower ISOFIX/LATCH attachment points. If the child restraint is not equipped with straps for the lower anchors, or if the child restraint is used on the center seating position, follow the instructions for attaching a child restraint using the automatic locking seat belt.
4. Firmly tension all straps.

Refer also to the child seat manufacturer's instructions for information on securing the child seat.

> **Note**
>
> If the vehicle is equipped with a cargo compartment cover, this must be removed before a child seat can be attached in the tether anchors.

**Warning**

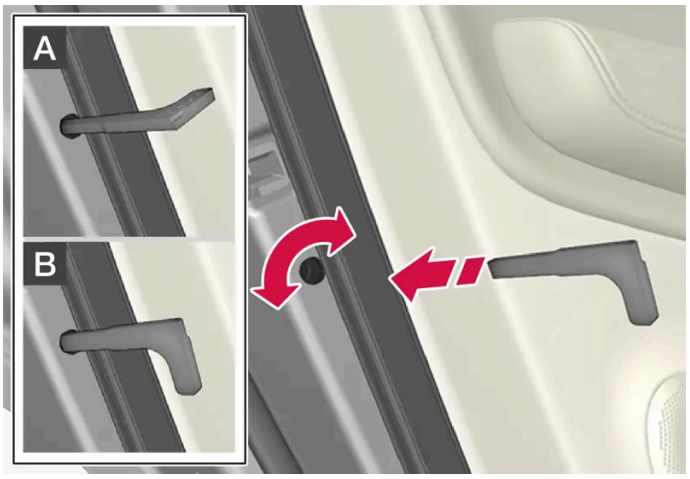
- Always refer to the recommendations made by the child restraint manufacturer.
- Volvo recommends that the top tether anchors be used when installing a forward-facing child restraint with upper tether straps.
- Never route a top tether strap over the top of the head restraint. The strap should be routed beneath the head restraint.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses. The anchorages are not able to withstand excessive forces on them in the event of collision if full harness seat belts or adult seat belts are installed to them. An adult who uses a belt anchored in a child restraint anchorage runs a great risk of suffering severe injuries should a collision occur.
- Do not install rear speakers that require the removal of the top tether anchors or interfere with the proper use of the top tether strap.

# 3.3.2. Activating and deactivating child locks

The child locks help prevent the rear doors from being able to be opened from the inside. With the electric child lock, the power windows are also prevented from being operated from the rear seat.

The child lock can be either manual or electric*.

## Manual child lock




Manual child lock. This is not the manual door lock.

1. Use the detachable key blade in the remote key to turn the control.

A The door cannot be opened from the inside.

B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

**Note**

- The door's knob control only locks that specific door, not both rear doors simultaneously.
- There are no manual child locks on models equipped with electronic child locks.

## Electric child lock*

The electric child lock can be activated and deactivated in any ignition mode higher than **0**. The lock can be activated and deactivated up to 2 minutes after the ignition is turned off if no door has been opened.

Button for activation and deactivation.

**Rear child lock activated**

When the indicator light in the button is lit, the child lock is activated.

If the child lock is activated when the vehicle is switched off, it will remain activated the next time the vehicle is started.

- Rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- Rear power windows can only be operated from the driver's door.

**Rear child lock deactivated**

When the indicator light in the button is off, the child lock is deactivated.

- Rear doors can be opened from the inside and power windows can be operated from the rear seat.

## Symbols and messages

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Rear child lock Activated | The child lock is activated. |
| | Rear child lock Deactivated | The child lock is deactivated. |

* Option/accessory.

---

# 3.3.3. Child safety

Children should always be seated safely when traveling in the vehicle.

## General information

Volvo recommends the proper use of restraint systems for all occupants including children. Remember that, regardless of age and size, a child should always be properly restrained in a vehicle.

Your vehicle is also equipped with ISOFIX/LATCH attachments, which make it more convenient to install child seats.

Some restraint systems for children are designed to be secured in the vehicle by lap belts or the lap portion of a lap-shoulder belt. Such child restraint systems can help protect children in vehicles in the event of an accident only if they are used properly. However, children could be endangered in a crash if the child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. Failure to follow the installation instructions for your child restraint can result in your child striking the vehicle's interior in a sudden stop.

Holding a child in your arms is NOT a suitable substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, a child held in a person's arms can be crushed between the vehicle's interior and an unrestrained person. The child could also be injured by striking the interior, or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. The same can also happen if the infant or child rides unrestrained on the seat. Other occupants should also be properly restrained to help reduce the chance of injuring or increasing the injury of a child.

All states and provinces have legislation governing how and where children should be carried in a vehicle. Find out the regulations existing in your state or province. Recent accident statistics have shown that children are safer in rear seating positions than front seating positions when properly restrained. A child restraint system can help protect a child in a vehicle. Here's what to look for when selecting a child restraint system:

It should have a label certifying that it meets applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS 213) - or in Canada, CMVSS 213.

Make sure the child restraint system is approved for the child's height, weight and development - the label required by the standard or regulation, or instructions for infant restraints, typically provide this information.

In using any child restraint system, we urge you to carefully look over the instructions that are provided with the restraint. Be sure you understand them and can use the device properly and safely in this vehicle. A misused child restraint system can result in increased injuries for both the infant or child and other occupants in the vehicle.

When a child has outgrown the child safety seat, you should use the rear seat with the standard seat belt fastened. The best way to help protect the child here is to place the child on a cushion so that the seat belt is properly located on the hips. Legislation in your state or province may mandate the use of a child seat or cushion in combination with the seat belt, depending on the child's age and/or size. Please check local regulations.

A specially designed and tested booster cushion and backrest can be obtained from your Volvo retailer. See also the article "Integrated booster cushion."

**Warning**

- Do not use child safety seats or child booster cushions/backrests in the front passenger's seat. We also recommend that children under 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) in height who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt fastened.
- On hot days, the temperature in the vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure to these high temperatures for even a short period of time can cause heat-related injury or death. Small children are particularly at risk. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle.

Child seats should always be registered.

## Volvo's recommendations

Why does Volvo believe that no child should sit in the front seat of a vehicle? It's quite simple really. A front airbag is a very powerful device designed, by law, to help protect an adult.

Because of the size of the airbag and its speed of inflation, a child should never be placed in the front seat, even if he or she is properly belted or strapped into a child safety seat. Volvo has been an innovator in the field of safety since it was founded. And we have no intention of resting on our laurels. But we need your help. Please remember to put your children in the back seat, and buckle them up.

**Warning**

A child restraint should never be reused if:

- The vehicle has been involved in a collision, no matter how minor
- Its history is unknown
- It is older than the manufacturer's expiration date

**Volvo has some very specific recommendations**

- Always wear your seat belt.

- Airbags are a SUPPLEMENTAL safety device which, when used with a three-point seat belt can help reduce serious injuries during certain types of accidents. Volvo recommends that you do not disconnect the airbag system in your vehicle.
- Volvo strongly recommends that everyone in the vehicle be properly restrained.
- Volvo recommends that ALL occupants (adults and children) shorter than 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) be seated in the rear seat of any vehicle with a front passenger side airbag.
- Drive safely!

---

# 3.3.4. Child restraints

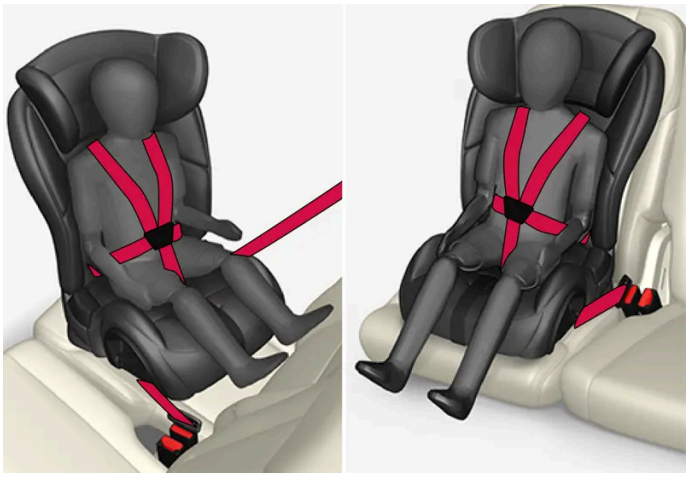
Suitable child restraints should always be used when children travel in the vehicle.

## Child restraint systems

Infant seat

There are three main types of child restraint systems: infant seats, convertible seats and booster cushions. They are classified according to the child's age and size.

The child restraint should be secured using a three-point seat belt, ISOFIX/LATCH anchors or top tether anchors.



Convertible seat

**Warning**

A child seat should never be used in the front passenger seat of any vehicle with a front passenger airbag - not even if the "Passenger airbag off" symbol near the rear-view mirror is illuminated. If the severity of an accident were to cause the airbag to inflate, this could lead to serious injury or death to a child seated in this position.

Booster cushion

**Warning**

Always refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for detailed information on securing the restraint.

**Warning**

- When not in use, keep the child restraint system secured or remove it from the passenger compartment to help prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- A small child's head represents a considerable part of its total weight and its neck is still very weak. Volvo recommends that children up to age 4 travel, properly restrained, facing rearward. In addition, Volvo recommends that children should ride rearward facing, properly restrained, as long as possible.

**Note**

Prolonged installation and use of the child restraint may damage the vehicle's interior. Volvo recommends using the kick guard accessory to help protect the vehicle's interior.

## Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR)

To make child seat installation easier, each seat belt (except for the driver's belt) is equipped with a locking mechanism to help keep the seat belt taut.

**When attaching the seat belt to a child seat:**

1. Position the child seat and secure it using the seat belt according to the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Pull the seat belt out as far as possible.
3. Insert the seat belt latch plate into the buckle (lock) in the usual way.
4. Release the seat belt and pull it taut around the child seat.

A sound from the seat belt retractor will be audible at this time and is normal. The belt will now be locked in place. This function is automatically disabled when the seat belt is unlocked and the belt is fully retracted.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not use child safety seats or child booster cushions/backrests in the front passenger's seat. We also recommend that children who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt properly fastened.

### Child restraint registration and recalls

Child restraints could be recalled for safety reasons. You must register your child restraint to be reached in a recall. To stay informed about child safety seat recalls, be sure to fill out and return the registration card that comes with new child restraints.

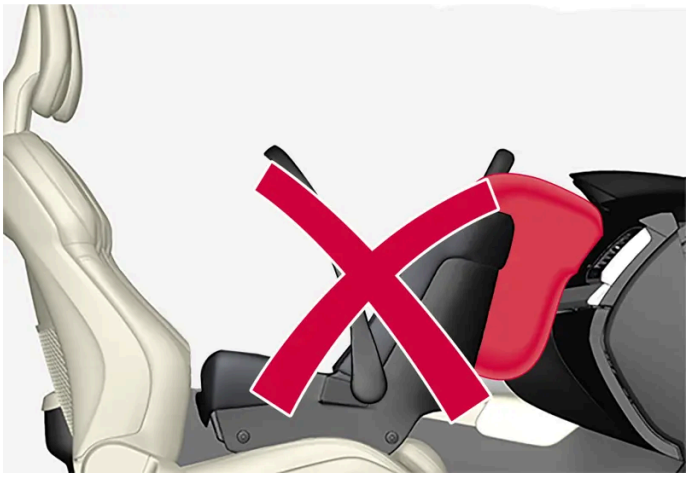
Child restraint recall information is readily available in both the U.S. and Canada. For recall information in the U.S., call the U.S. Government's Auto Safety Hotline at 1-800-424-9393 or go to https://www-odi.nhtsa.dot.gov/owners/SearchSafetyIssues [https://www-odi.nhtsa.dot.gov/owners/SearchSafetyIssues] . In Canada, visit Transport Canada's Child Safety website at https://www.tc.gc.ca/en/services/road/child-car-seat-safety.html [https://www.tc.gc.ca/en/services/road/child-car-seat-safety.html] .

---

## 3.3.5. Infant seats

Suitable child restraints should always be used when children (depending on their age/size) are seated in the vehicle.

### Securing an infant seat with a seat belt



Do not place the infant seat in the front passenger's seat

1. Place the infant seat in the rear seat of the vehicle.
2. Secure the child seat for small children using the seat belt according to the manufacturer's instructions.
3.

Route the seat belt through the infant seat.

> **Warning**
>
> - An infant seat must be in the rear-facing position only.
> - The infant seat should not be positioned behind the driver's seat unless there is adequate space for safe installation.

> **Warning**
>
> A child seat should never be used in the front passenger seat of any vehicle with a front passenger airbag - not even if the "Passenger airbag off" symbol near the rear-view mirror is illuminated. If the severity of an accident were to cause the airbag to inflate, this could lead to serious injury or death to a child seated in this position.

Fasten the seat belt.

Fasten the seat belt by inserting the latch plate into the buckle (lock) until a distinct click is audible.

Pull out the shoulder section of the seat belt.

4. Pull the shoulder section of the seat belt out as far as possible to activate the belt's automatic locking function.

5. 

> **Note**
>
> The locking retractor will automatically release when the seat belt is unbuckled and allowed to retract fully.

Press the infant seat firmly in place, let the seat belt retract and pull it taut. A sound from the seat belt retractor's automatic locking function will be audible at this time and is normal. The seat belt should now be locked in place.

Check that the infant seat is properly secured.

6. Press and pull the infant seat along the direction of the seat belt to check that it is properly held in place by the seat belt.

> **Warning**
>
> It should not be possible to move the child restraint more than 2.5 cm (1 in.) in any direction along the seat belt path.

When installing infant seats in the rear seat, Volvo recommends maintaining a distance of at least 50 mm (2 inches) from the front-most part of the infant seat to the rearmost part of the seat in front.

The infant seat can be removed by unbuckling the seat belt and letting it retract completely.

---

# 3.3.6. Booster cushions

Suitable child restraints should always be used when children (depending on their age/size) are seated in the vehicle.

## Securing a booster cushion

Position the child correctly on the booster cushion.

Booster cushions are recommended for children who have outgrown convertible seats.

1. Place the booster cushion in the rear seat of the vehicle.

2. With the child properly seated on the booster cushion, attach the seat belt to or around the cushion according to the manufacturer's instructions.

3. Fasten the seat belt by inserting the latch plate into the buckle (lock) until a distinct click is audible.

Positioning the seat belt.

4. Ensure that the seat belt is pulled taut and fits snugly around the child.

**Warning**

- The hip section of the three-point seat belt must fit snugly across the child's hips, not across the stomach.
- The shoulder section of the three-point seat belt should be positioned across the chest and shoulder.
- The shoulder belt must never be placed behind the child's back or under the arm.

---

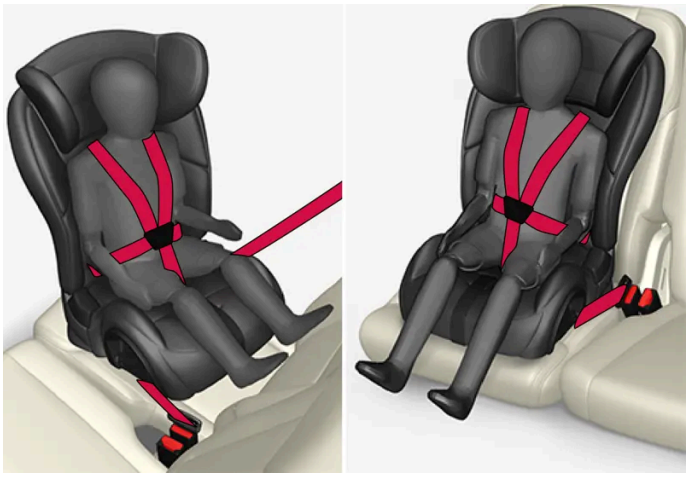
# 3.3.7. Convertible seats

Suitable child restraints should always be used when children (depending on their age/size) are seated in the vehicle.

## Securing a convertible seat with a seat belt

Do not place the convertible seat in the front passenger's seat.

Convertible seats can be used in either a forward or rearward-facing position, depending on the age and size of the child.



Route the seat belt through the convertible seat.

> **Warning**
>
> Always use a convertible seat that is suitable for the child's age and size. See the convertible seat manufacturer's recommendations.

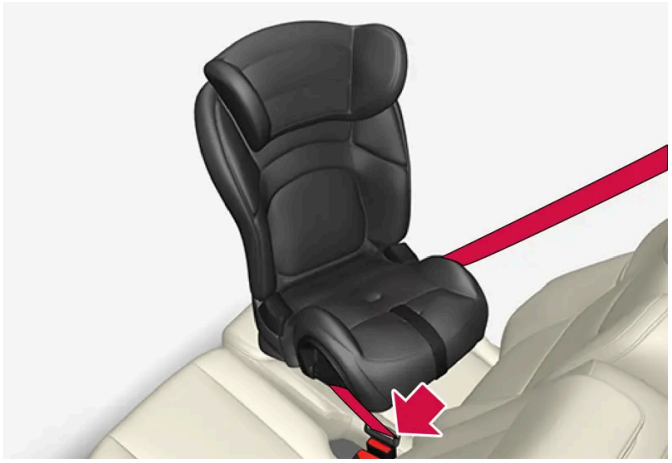
1. Place the convertible seat in the rear seat of the vehicle.

2.

**Warning**

- A small child's head represents a considerable part of its total weight and its neck is still very weak. Volvo recommends that children up to age 4 travel, properly restrained, facing rearward. In addition, Volvo recommends that children should ride rearward facing, properly restrained, as long as possible.
- Convertible child seats should be installed in the rear seat only.
- A rear-facing convertible seat should not be positioned behind the driver's seat unless there is adequate space for safe installation.

Attach the seat belt to the convertible seat according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.



Fasten the seat belt.

3. Fasten the seat belt by inserting the latch plate into the buckle (lock) until a distinct click is audible.

4. Pull the shoulder section of the seat belt out as far as possible to activate the belt's automatic locking function.

5.

**Note**

The locking retractor will automatically release when the seat belt is unbuckled and allowed to retract fully.

Press the convertible seat firmly in place, let the seat belt retract and pull it taut. A sound from the seat belt retractor's automatic locking function will be audible at this time and is normal. The seat belt should now be locked in place.

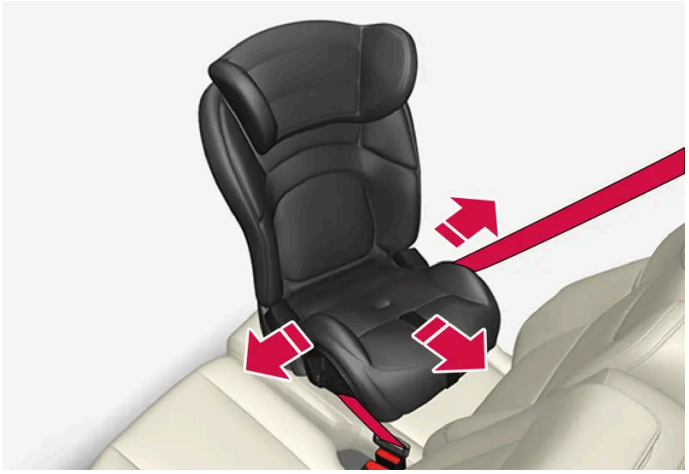
Pull out the shoulder section of the seat belt.

6. Push and pull the convertible seat along the seat belt path to ensure that it is held securely in place by the seat belt.

**Warning**

It should not be possible to move the child restraint more than 2.5 cm (1 in.) in any direction along the seat belt path.

The convertible seat can be removed by unbuckling the seat belt and letting it retract completely.



Ensure that the convertible seat is securely in place.

**Warning**

A child seat should never be used in the front passenger seat of any vehicle with a front passenger airbag - not even if the "Passenger airbag off" symbol near the rear-view mirror is illuminated. If the severity of an accident were to cause the airbag to inflate, this could lead to serious injury or death to a child seated in this position.

---

## 3.3.8. Occupant weight sensor

The Occupant Weight Sensor (OWS) is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and is designed to disable (will not inflate) the passenger's side front airbag under certain conditions.

## Disabling the passenger's side front airbag

Volvo recommends that ALL occupants (adults and children) shorter than 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) be seated in the back seat of any vehicle with a front passenger side airbag and be properly restrained for their size and weight.

The OWS works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and seat belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the passenger's side front airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or disabled (will not inflate).

The OWS will disable (will not inflate) the passenger's side front airbag when:

- the front passenger's seat is unoccupied, or has small/medium objects in the front seat,
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat,
- a child or a small person occupies the front passenger's seat.

The OWS uses a PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp which will illuminate and stay on to remind you that the passenger's side front airbag is disabled. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is located in the overhead console, near the base of the rearview mirror.

**Note**

When the ignition is switched on, the OWS indicator light will illuminate for several seconds while the system performs a self-diagnostic test.

However, if a fault is detected in the system:

- The OWS indicator light will stay on
- The SRS warning light will come on and stay on and a text message will be displayed.

**Warning**

If a fault in the system is detected and indicated as described, be aware that the passenger's side front airbag will not deploy in the event of a collision. In this case, the SRS system and Occupant Weight Sensor should be inspected by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible.

**Warning**

- Never try to open, remove or repair any components in the OWS system. This could cause the system to malfunction. Maintenance or repairs should only be carried out by an a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- The front passenger's seat should not be modified in any way. This could reduce pressure on the seat cushion, which might interfere with the OWS system's function.

| Passenger's seat occupancy status | OWS indicator light status | Passenger's side front airbag status |
|---|---|---|
| Seat unoccupied | OWS indicator light lights up | Passenger's side front airbag disabled |
| Seat occupied by low weight occupant/object[1] | OWS indicator light lights up | Passenger's side front airbag disabled |
| Seat occupied by heavy occupant/object | OWS indicator light is **not** lit | Passenger's side front airbag enabled |

The OWS is designed to enable (may inflate) the passenger's side front airbag in the event of a collision anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger's seat. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp will be off and remain off.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is on, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp remains on even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

This indicates limitations in OWS classification capability. It does not indicate OWS malfunction.

## Modifications

If you are considering modifying your vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, for example by altering or adapting the driver's or front passenger's seat(s) and/or airbag systems, please contact Volvo at:

**In the United States**

Volvo Car USA, LLC

Customer Care Center

1 Volvo Drive

P.O. Box 914

Rockleigh, New Jersey 07647

1-800-458-1552

**In Canada**

Volvo Car Canada Ltd.

Customer Care Centre

9130 Leslie Street, Suite 101

Richmond Hill, Ontario L4B 0B9

1-800-663-8255

**Warning**

- No objects that add to the total weight on the seat should be placed on the front passenger's seat. If a child is seated in the front passenger's seat with any additional weight, this extra weight could cause the OWS system to enable the airbag, which might cause it to deploy in the event of a collision, thereby injuring the child.
- The seat belt should never be wrapped around an object on the front passenger's seat. This could interfere with the OWS system's function.
- The front passenger's seat belt should never be used in a way that exerts more pressure on the passenger than normal. This could increase the pressure exerted on the weight sensor by a child, and could result in the airbag being enabled, which might cause it to deploy in the event of a collision, thereby injuring the child.

**Warning**

- Keep the following points in mind with respect to the OWS system. Failure to follow these instructions could adversely affect the system's function and result in serious injury to the occupant of the front passenger's seat.
- The full weight of the front seat passenger should always be on the seat cushion. The passenger should never lift him/herself off the seat cushion using the armrest in the door or the center console, by pressing the feet on the floor, by sitting on the edge of the seat cushion, or by pressing against the backrest in a way that reduces pressure on the seat cushion. This could cause OWS to disable the front, passenger's side airbag.

**Warning**

- Do not place any type of object on the front passenger's seat in such a way that jamming, pressing, or squeezing occurs between the object and the front seat, other than as a direct result of the correct use of the Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) seat belt.
- No objects should be placed under the front passenger's seat. This could interfere with the OWS system's function.

[1] Volvo recommends that children always be properly restrained in appropriate child restraints in the rear seats. Do not assume that the passenger's side front airbag is disabled unless the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is lit. Make sure the child restraint is properly installed. If there is any doubt as to the status of the passenger's side front airbag, move the child restraint to the rear seat.

# 3.4. Safety mode

# 3.4.1. Safety mode

Safety mode is a feature that is triggered after a collision if there is potential damage to an important function in the vehicle, such as the fuel lines, sensors for one of the safety systems, the brake system, etc.

If the vehicle has been involved in a collision, the text **Safety mode See Owner's manual** may appear in the instrument panel along with the warning symbol if the panel is undamaged and the vehicle's electrical system is intact. The message indicates that one or more of the vehicle's functions may be reduced.

> **Warning**
>
> Never attempt to restart the vehicle if you smell fuel fumes when the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is displayed in the instrument panel. Leave the vehicle immediately.

If safety mode has been set, it may be possible to reset the system in order to start and move the vehicle a short distance, for example, if it is blocking traffic.

> **Warning**
>
> Never attempt to perform repairs or reset electrical components on your own after the vehicle has been in safety mode. This could result in injury or prevent the vehicle from functioning properly. Volvo recommends having the vehicle inspected and reset to normal operating status by an authorized Volvo workshop after **Safety mode See Owner's manual** has been displayed.

> **Warning**
>
> When the vehicle is in safety mode, it should not be towed behind another vehicle. It should be towed from the site on a tow truck. Volvo recommends towing the vehicle directly to an authorized Volvo workshop.

---

# 3.4.2. Starting and moving the vehicle when it is in safety mode

If safety mode has been set, it may be possible to reset the system in order to start and move the vehicle a short distance, for example, if it is blocking traffic.

## Resetting and starting the vehicle when it is in safety mode

1. Check the vehicle for damage, particularly for fuel leakage. Make sure you do not detect any gasoline fumes.

   If the damage to the vehicle is minor and there is no fuel leakage/fumes, you may attempt to start the engine.

> **Warning**
>
> Never attempt to restart the vehicle if you smell fuel fumes when the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is displayed in the instrument panel. Leave the vehicle immediately.

2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Then try to start the vehicle.

> The vehicle's electrical system will perform a system check and then attempt to reset to normal operating mode.

> **Important**
>
> If the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is still displayed, the vehicle should not be driven or towed behind another vehicle. If the vehicle needs to be moved, it must be towed on a tow truck. Even if no damage is apparent, there may be hidden damage that could make the vehicle impossible to control.

### Moving the vehicle when it is in safety mode

1. If the message **Normal mode The car is now in normal mode** is displayed after attempting to start the engine, the vehicle may be moved carefully from its present position if, for example, it is blocking traffic.
2. Do not move the vehicle farther than absolutely necessary.

> **Warning**
>
> When the vehicle is in safety mode, it should not be towed behind another vehicle. It should be towed from the site on a tow truck. Volvo recommends towing the vehicle directly to an authorized Volvo workshop.

---

# 3.5. Safety

The vehicle is equipped with a number of safety systems that work together to help protect the vehicle's driver and passengers in the event of an accident.

The vehicle is equipped with a number of sensors that may react in the event of an accident and activate different safety systems, such as the airbag system and seat belt tensioners. Depending on the specific conditions of the accident, e.g. collisions at certain angles, overturning or swerving, the systems react differently to help provide good protection.

There are also mechanical safety systems such as the Whiplash Protection System. The vehicle is also built so that a large part of the force of a collision is distributed to the vehicle's members, pillars, floor, roof and other parts of the body.

After an accident, the vehicle's safety mode may be activated if any important function in the vehicle has been damaged.

### Warning symbol in the instrument panel

The warning symbol in the instrument panel illuminates when the vehicle's electrical system is in ignition mode **II**. The symbol will go out after approx. 6 seconds if no faults are detected in the vehicle's safety systems.

> **Warning**
>
> If the warning symbol remains illuminated or switches on while driving and the message **SRS airbag Service urgent Drive to workshop** is displayed in the instrument panel, this indicates that something in the safety system is not functioning properly. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop for repairs as soon as possible.

> **Warning**
>
> Never attempt to alter or repair any of the vehicle's safety systems yourself. Incorrectly performed repairs to any system could impair function and lead to serious injury. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop.

If this dedicated warning symbol is not functioning, the general warning symbol will illuminate instead and the same message will be displayed in the instrument panel.

---

# 3.6. Recall information

On our website, click the "Owner" tab in the upper left-hand side of the screen and then click on the heading "Recall Information". Enter the vehicle identification number (VIN), which can be found at the bottom of the windshield. If your vehicle has any open Recalls, they will be displayed on this page.

You can also enter the Vehicle Identification Number in the search field on the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration's (NHTSA) website at: www.nhtsa.gov [https://www.nhtsa.gov/] .

#### Volvo customers in Canada

For any questions regarding open recalls for your vehicle, please contact your authorized Volvo retailer. If your retailer is unable to answer your questions, please contact Volvo Customer Relations at 800-663-8255, Monday through Friday, 8:30 A.M. to 5:00 P.M. EST or volvocars.com/ca [https://volvocars.com/ca] . You may also write us at:

Volvo Car Canada Ltd.

Customer Care Centre

9130 Leslie Street, Suite 101

Richmond Hill, Ontario L4B 0B9

www.tc.gc.ca

# 3.7. Occupant safety

Safety is Volvo's cornerstone.

## Volvo's concern for safety

Our concern for safety dates back to 1927 when the first Volvo rolled off the production line. Three-point seat belts (a Volvo invention), safety cages, and energy-absorbing impact zones were designed into Volvo vehicles long before it was fashionable or required by government regulation.

We will not compromise our commitment to safety. We continue to seek out new safety features and to refine those already in our vehicles. You can help. We would appreciate hearing your suggestions about improving automobile safety. We also want to know if you ever have a safety concern with your vehicle. Call us in the U.S. at: 1-800-458-1552 or in Canada at: 1-800-663-8255.

#### Occupant safety reminders

How safely you drive doesn't depend on how old you are but rather on:

- How well you see.
- Your ability to concentrate.
- How quickly you make decisions under stress to avoid an accident.

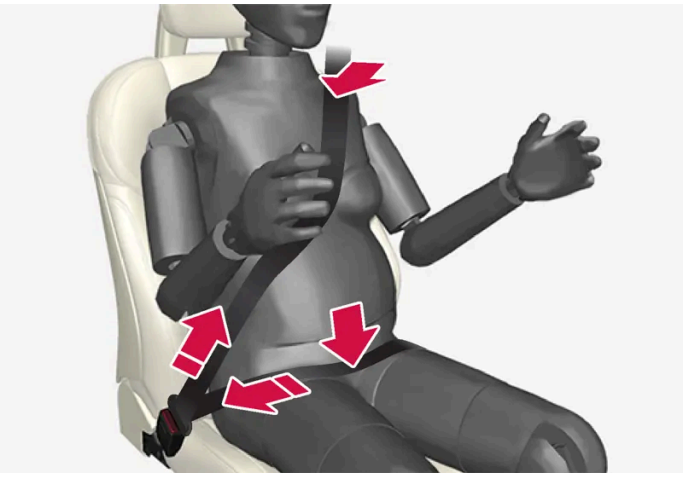
The following suggestions are intended to help you cope with the ever changing traffic environment.

- Never drink and drive.
- If you are taking any medication, consult your physician about its potential effects on your driving abilities.
- Take a driver-retraining course.
- Have your eyes checked regularly.
- Keep your windshield and headlights clean.
- Replace wiper blades when they start to leave streaks.
- Take into account the traffic, road, and weather conditions, particularly with regard to stopping distance.
- Never text while driving.
- Refrain from using or minimize the use of a cell phone while driving.

# 3.8. Safety during pregnancy

It is important that seat belts are worn correctly during pregnancy and that pregnant drivers adjust their seating position accordingly.

### Seat belt



The seat belt should fit closely against the shoulder, with the diagonal section between the breasts and to the side of the stomach.

The lap section of the seat belt should lie flat over the thighs and as far as possible under the stomach. Never let it ride upward. Remove unnecessary slack and make sure the seat belt fits as close as possible to the body. Make sure there are no twists in the seat belt.

### Seating position

As pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers should adjust the seat and steering wheel to a position that allows them to retain full control of the vehicle (which means they should be able to easily reach the steering wheel and foot pedals). Try to maintain as much distance as possible between the stomach and the steering wheel.

---

## 3.9. Reporting safety defects

The following information will help you report any perceived safety-related defects in your vehicle.

### Reporting safety defects in the U.S.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Volvo Car USA, LLC. If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your retailer, or Volvo Car USA, LLC. To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline tollfree at

1-888-327-4236

(TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or write to: NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington D.C. 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov, where you can also enter your vehicle's VIN (Vehicle Identification Number) to see if it has any open recalls.

Volvo strongly recommends that if your vehicle is covered under a service campaign, safety or emission recall or similar action, it should be completed as soon as possible. Please check with your local retailer or Volvo Car USA, LLC if your vehicle is covered under these conditions.

NHTSA can be reached at:

Internet:

http://www.nhtsa.gov

Telephone:

1-888-327-4236

### Reporting safety defects in Canada

If you believe your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying Volvo Car Canada Ltd.

**Transport Canada can be contacted at:**

1-800-333-0510

Teletypewriter (TTY): 613 990-4500

Fax: 1-819-994-3372

Mailing Address: Transport Canada - Road Safety, 80 rue Noël, Gatineau, (Quebec) J8Z 0A1

---

# 3.10. Whiplash Protection System

The Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS) is designed to help reduce the risk of whiplash-type injuries. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and seat cushions as well as specially designed head restraints in the front seats.

WHIPS is activated in the event of a rear-end collision and adapted to the angle and speed of the collision and to the characteristics of the colliding vehicle.

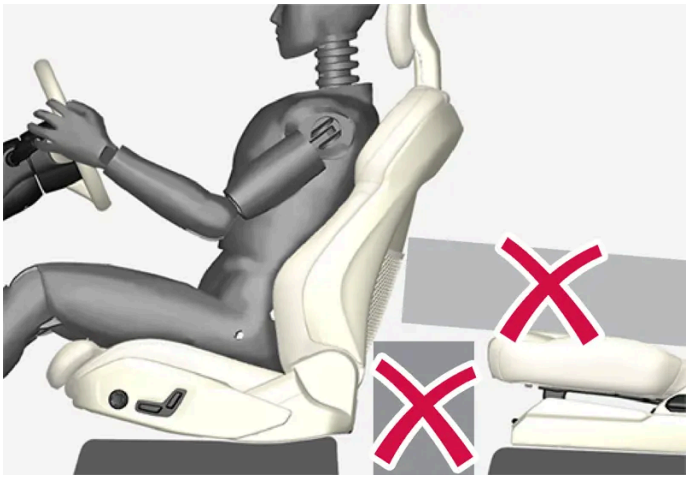
When WHIPS is activated, the front seat backrests move rearward and the seat cushions move downward to change the seating positions of the driver and front seat passenger. This movement helps absorb some of the forces that could result in whiplash.

> **Warning**
>
> WHIPS is a supplement to the seat belt. Always wear your seat belt.

**Warning**

Do not attempt to alter or repair the seat or WHIPS on your own. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop.

If the front seats have been subjected to severe stress, e.g. in a collision, the seats must be replaced. Even if the seats appear undamaged, some of their protective properties may have been lost.



Do not place any objects on the floor behind or under the front seats or on the rear seat that could prevent WHIPS from functioning correctly.

**Warning**

Do not squeeze box-like cargo between the rear seat cushion and the front seat backrest.

If the rear seat backrests are folded down, cargo must be secured to prevent it from sliding forward against the front seat backrests in the event of a collision.

**Warning**

If a rear seat backrest is folded down or if a rear-facing child restraint is being used in the rear seat, the seat in front must be moved forward so that it does not come into contact with the backrest or child restraint.

## Seating position

For WHIPS to provide good protection, the driver and passenger must be seated correctly and the system's function must not be impeded in any way.

Set the front seat to the correct seating position before starting to drive.

The driver and the front seat passenger should sit in the center of the seat with their heads as close as possible to the head restraints.

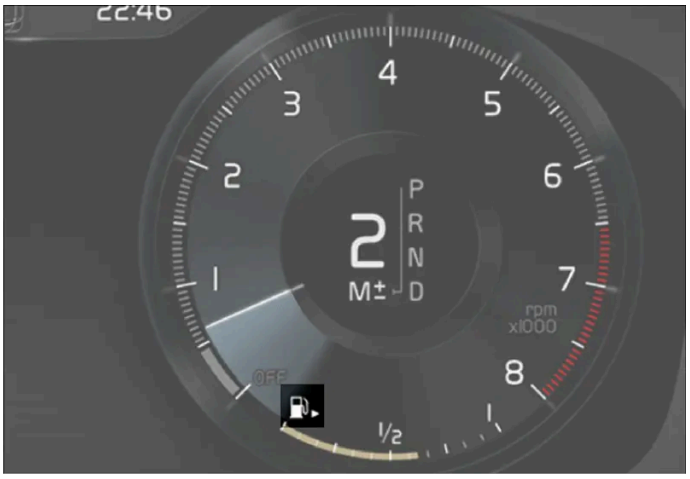
# 4. Displays and voice control

## 4.1. Instrument panel

## 4.1.1. Gauges and indicators in the instrument panel

### 4.1.1.1. Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge in the instrument panel shows the fuel level in the tank.




The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

**Fuel gauge in 12" instrument panel:**

The beige area in the fuel gauge indicates the amount of fuel left in the tank.

When the fuel level is low, the fuel pump symbol will illuminate with an amber-colored light. The trip computer also indicates the approximate distance that can be driven on the fuel remaining in the tank.

The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

**Fuel gauge in 8" instrument panel:**

The bars in the fuel gauge indicate the amount of fuel left in the tank.

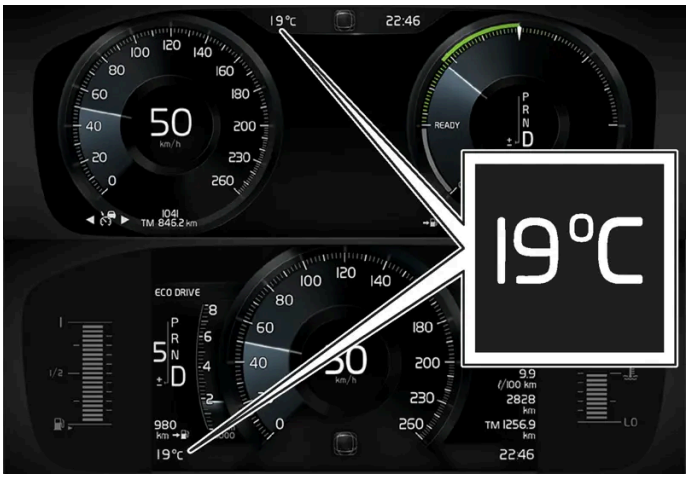
When the fuel level is low, the fuel pump symbol will illuminate with an amber-colored light. The trip computer also indicates the approximate distance that can be driven on the fuel remaining in the tank.

---

# 4.1.1.2. Ambient temperature sensor

The ambient temperature is shown in the instrument panel.

The sensor detects the temperature outside the vehicle.




Location of the ambient temperature sensor in 12"* and 8" instrument panels. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

If the vehicle has been stationary, the sensor reading may be higher than the actual temperature.

When the ambient temperature is between −5 °C and +2 °C (23 °F and 36 °F), a snowflake symbol will illuminate to alert the driver of the risk of slippery conditions.

The symbol is also temporarily lit in the head-up display* if the vehicle is equipped with one.

Change the measurement standard for the temperature sensor etc. via system settings in the center display's Top view.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.1.2. Trip computer

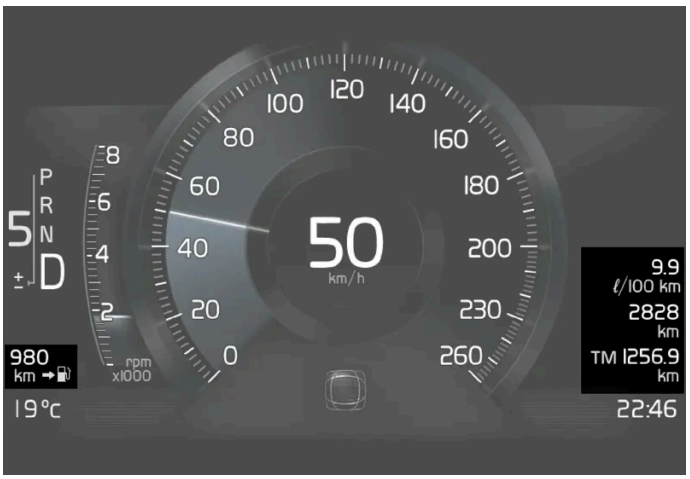
---

# 4.1.2.1. Trip computer

The vehicle's trip computer registers data while driving such as mileage, fuel consumption and average speed.

To help promote fuel-efficient driving, data is recorded on both current and average fuel consumption. Data from the trip computer can be displayed in the instrument panel.

Example of trip computer information in a 12-inch instrument panel*. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.




Example of trip computer information in an 8-inch instrument panel. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

The trip computer includes the following gauges:

- Trip odometer
- Odometer
- Current fuel consumption
- Distance to empty tank
- Tourist - alternative speedometer

Unit standards for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the center display.

## Trip odometer

There are two trip odometers: TM and TA.

TM can be reset manually and TA is reset automatically if the vehicle is not used for four hours.

During a drive, the trip odometer registers data on:

- Mileage
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption

The readings since the trip odometer's last reset are displayed.

## Odometer

The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage. This reading cannot be reset.

## Current fuel consumption

This gauge shows the vehicle's fuel consumption at that moment. The reading is updated about once a second.

### Distance to empty tank

The trip computer calculates the distance that can be driven on the fuel remaining in the tank.

This calculation is based on average fuel consumption during the last 30 km (20 miles) and the amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

When the gauge displays "----", there is not enough fuel remaining to calculate the remaining mileage. Refuel as soon as possible.

> **Note**
>
> The information will change based on your driving style.

An economical driving style will generally increase how far you can drive on a certain amount of fuel.

### Tourist - alternative speedometer

The alternative digital speedometer makes it easier to drive in countries where speed limit signs are shown in a different measurement unit than the one shown in the vehicle's gauges.

When used, the digital speed is displayed in the opposite unit to that shown in the analog speedometer. If mph is used in the analog speedometer, the equivalent speed in km/h will be shown in the digital speedometer.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.1.2.2. Displaying trip data in the instrument panel

Data recorded and calculated by the trip computer can be displayed on the instrument panel.

This data is stored in a trip computer app. You can choose which information the instrument panel will display in the app menu.

Open and navigate in the app menu[1] using the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

1. App menu
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Confirm

1. Open the app menu in the instrument panel by pressing (1).

   (The App menu cannot be opened while there is an unacknowledged message in the instrument panel. The message must be acknowledged by pressing the O button (4) before the App menu can be opened).

2. Navigate to the trip computer app by moving left or right using (2).

> The top four menu rows show measured values for trip odometer TM. The next four menu rows show measured values for trip odometer TA. Scroll up or down in the list using (3).

3. Scroll down to the option buttons to choose which information to show in the instrument panel:
   - Odometer
   - Distance to empty tank
   - Tourist (alternative speedometer)
   - Mileage for trip odometer TM, TA or no display of mileage
   - Current fuel consumption, average fuel consumption for TM or TA, or no display of fuel consumption

   Select or clear a selection using the O button (4). The change will apply immediately.

[1] The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

# 4.1.2.3. Resetting the trip odometer

Resetting the trip odometer using the left-side steering wheel lever.

1. Reset all information in trip odometer TM (i.e. mileage, average fuel consumption, average speed and driving time) by pressing and holding the RESET button on the left-hand steering wheel lever.

   Pressing the RESET button only resets the distance driven.

The TA trip odometer can not be manually reset. It resets automatically if the vehicle is not used for four hours or more.

---

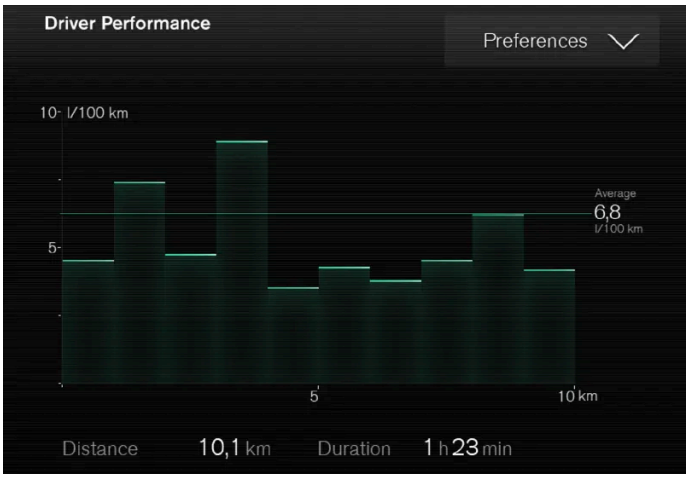
# 4.1.2.4. Displaying trip statistics in the center display

Trip computer statistics can be displayed graphically in the center display, providing an overview that facilitates more fuel-efficient driving.

Open the **Driver performance** app in the App view to display trip statistics.

Each bar in the graph represents a driving distance of 1 kilometers, 10 kilometers or 100 kilometers (or miles). The bars are added from the right as you drive. The bar at the far right shows the data for the current trip.

Average fuel consumption and total driving time are calculated from the most recent reset of the trip statistics.




Trip computer statistics [1].

[1] The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

---

# 4.1.2.5. Trip statistics settings

Trip statistics settings can be reset or adjusted.

1. Open the **Driver performance** app in the App view to display trip statistics.

2. Tap **Preferences** to
   - change the graph scale. Select 1, 10 or 100 km/miles for the bar.
   - reset data after each trip. Performed when the vehicle remains stationary for more than 4 hours.
   - reset data for current trip.

   Trip statistics, calculated average consumption, and total driving time are always reset simultaneously.

Unit standards for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the center display.

---

# 4.1.3. Instrument panel

The instrument panel displays information related to the vehicle and driving.

The instrument panel contains gauges, indicators and monitoring and warning symbols. What is shown in the instrument panel varies depending on the equipment, settings and functions currently active.

The instrument panel is activated as soon as a door is opened, i.e. in ignition mode 0. The panel will power down after a short period of time if it is not used. To reactivate it, do one of the following:

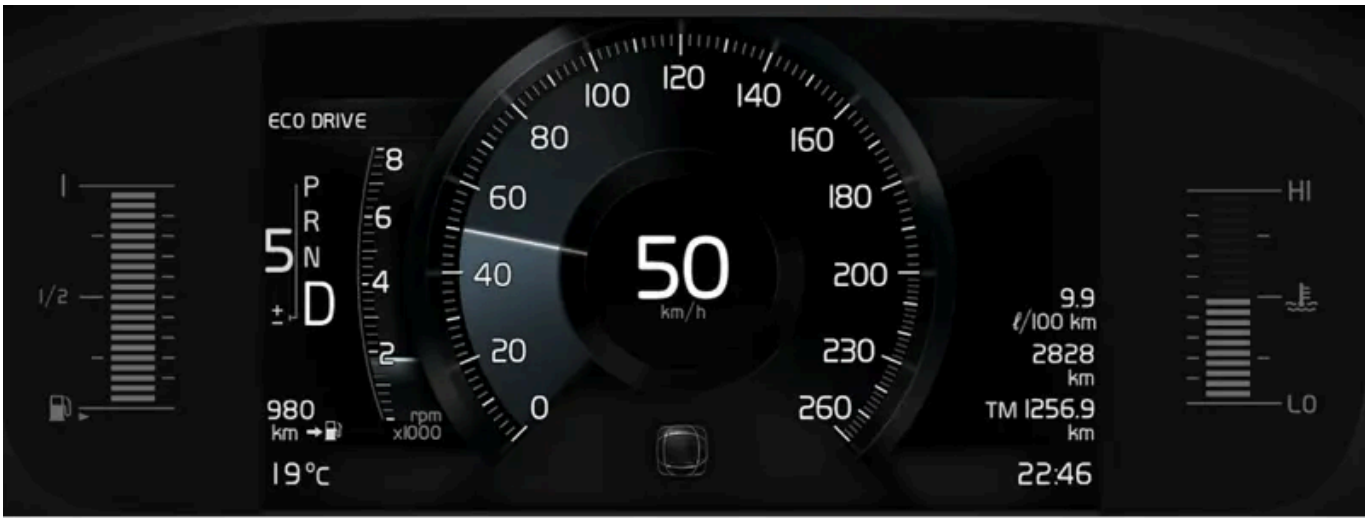
- Activate ignition mode I.
- Open one of the doors.

The instrument panel is available in two versions: 8" and 12"*.

> **Warning**
>
> If the instrument panel turns off, does not activate when the ignition is switched on, or part/all of the panel cannot be read, do not drive the vehicle. Consult a workshop immediately. Volvo recommends an authorized Volvo workshop.

> **Warning**
>
> If the instrument panel is not functioning properly, information about brakes, airbags or other safety-related systems may not be displayed. The driver will then not be able to check the status of the vehicle systems or receive relevant warnings and information.

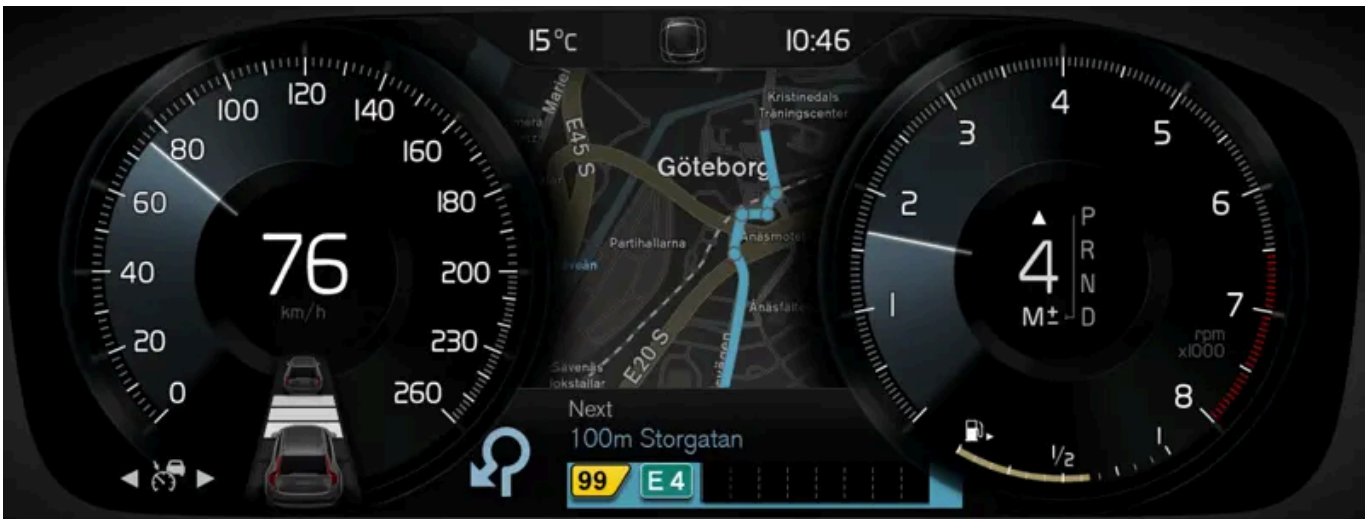
## Instrument panel 8"




The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

| Location in the instrument panel: | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Left side** | **In the center** | **Right side** |
| Fuel gauge | Speedometer | Media player |
| Drive Mode | Road sign information* | Phone |
| Gear indicator | Cruise control/speed limiter information | Navigation information* |
| Tachometer/ECO gauge[1] | Door and seat belt status | Clock |
| Distance to empty tank | Start/Stop function status | App menu (activated using steering wheel keypad) |
| Ambient temperature sensor | – | Current fuel consumption |
| Indicator and warning symbols | – | Odometer[2] |
| – | – | Trip odometer |
| – | – | Indicator and warning symbols |
| – | – | Voice control |
| – | – | Engine temperature gauge |
| – | – | Message (also graphics in some cases) |
| – | – | Compass[1] |

# Instrument panel 12"*




The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

| Location in the instrument panel: | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Left side** | **In the center** | **Right side** |
| Speedometer | Indicator and warning symbols | Tachometer/ECO gauge [1] |
| Trip odometer | Ambient temperature sensor | Gear indicator |
| Odometer [2] | Clock | Drive Mode |
| Cruise control/speed limiter information | Message (also graphics in some cases) | Fuel gauge |
| Road sign information* | Door and seat belt status | Start/Stop function status |
| – | Media player | Distance to empty tank |
| – | Navigation system map* | Current fuel consumption |
| – | Phone | App menu (activated using steering wheel keypad) |
| – | Voice control | – |
| – | Compass [1] | – |

## Dynamic symbol

Dynamic symbol in basic mode.

In the center of the instrument panel is a dynamic symbol that changes appearance according to the type of message displayed. The severity of the control or warning symbol is indicated by a red or amber-colored marking around the symbol.

Example with indicator symbol.

An animation may be used to change the symbol into a graphic image to depict the location of a problem or to clarify information.

The symbol in the instrument panel changes shape.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Depends on selected drive mode.

[2] Total distance.

---

# 4.1.4. Instrument panel settings

Display settings for the instrument panel can be set in the instrument panel's App menu and in the center display's Settings menu.

## Settings via instrument panel's app menu

The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

The app menu will open and can be controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad.

The app menu can be used to set what information will be displayed in the instrument panel

- trip computer
- media player
- phone
- navigation system*.

## Settings via center display

**Selecting type of information**

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Displays** → **Driver Display Information**.
3. Select a background:
   - **Show no information in the background**
   - **Show information for current playing media**
   - **Show navigation even if no route is set**[1]

**Select theme**

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Displays** → **Display Themes**

3. Select a theme (appearance) for the instrument panel:
   - **Glass**
   - **Minimalistic**
   - **Performance**
   - **Chrome Rings**

#### Select language

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **System** → **System Languages and Units** → **System Language** to select language.

> A change made here will affect the language in all displays.

The settings are personal and saved automatically in the active driver profile.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Map is displayed on 12-inch* instrument panels. 8-inch instrument panels display only guidance.

---

# 4.1.5. License agreement for instrument panel

A license is an agreement on the right to conduct a certain activity or the right to use someone else's right according to terms and conditions specified in the agreement. The following text is Volvo's agreement with the manufacturer or developer.

#### Boost Software License 1.0

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the "Software") to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to do so, all subject to the following: The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a source language processor.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

**BSD 4-clause "Original" or "Old" License**

Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1990, 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

**BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License**

Copyright (c) 2011-2014, Yann Collet.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the organisation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derive from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

**BSD 2-clause “Simplified” license**

Copyright (c) <YEAR>, <OWNER> All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The views and conclusions contained in the software and documentation are those of the authors and should not be interpreted as representing official policies, either expressed or implied, of the FreeBSD Project.

**FreeType Project License**

1. 1 Copyright 1996-1999 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg Introduction The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that: o We don't promise that this software works. However, we are be interested in any kind of bug reports. (`as is' distribution) o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (`royalty-free' usage) o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you've used the FreeType code. (`credits') We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products, provided that all warranty or liability claims are assumed by the product vendor. Legal Terms 0. Definitions Throughout this license, the terms `package', `FreeType Project', and `FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the `FreeType project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. `You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where `using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program' or `executable'. This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType archive, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this. The FreeType project is copyright (C) 1996-1999 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below. 1. No Warranty THE FREETYPE ARCHIVE IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.
2. Redistribution Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`licence.txt') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the

distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType code, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

3. Advertising The names of FreeType's authors and contributors may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project', `FreeType Engine', `FreeType library', or `FreeType Distribution'.
4. Contacts There are two mailing lists related to FreeType: o freetype@freetype.org Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation. o devel@freetype.org Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc. o http://www.freetype.org Holds the current FreeType web page, which will allow you to download our latest development version and read online documentation. You can also contact us individually at: David Turner <david.turner@freetype.org> Robert Wilhelm <robert.wilhelm@freetype.org> Werner Lemberg <werner.lemberg@freetype.org>

**Libpng License**

This copy of the libpng notices is provided for your convenience. In case of any discrepancy between this copy and the notices in the file png.h that is included in the libpng distribution, the latter shall prevail.

COPYRIGHT NOTICE, DISCLAIMER, and LICENSE:

If you modify libpng you may insert additional notices immediately following this sentence.

libpng versions 1.0.7, July 1, 2000, through 1.0.13, April 15, 2002, are Copyright (c) 2000-2002 Glenn Randers-Pehrson and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-1.0.6 with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors

Simon-Pierre Cadieux

Eric S. Raymond

Gilles Vollant

and with the following additions to the disclaimer:

There is no warranty against interference with your enjoyment of the library or against infringement. There is no warranty that our efforts or the library will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. This library is provided with all faults, and the entire risk of satisfactory quality, performance, accuracy, and effort is with the user.

libpng versions 0.97, January 1998, through 1.0.6, March 20, 2000, are Copyright (c) 1998, 1999 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.96, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Tom Lane

Glenn Randers-Pehrson

Willem van Schaik

libpng versions 0.89, June 1996, through 0.96, May 1997, are Copyright (c) 1996, 1997 Andreas Dilger Distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.88, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

John Bowler

Kevin Bracey

Sam Bushell

Magnus Holmgren

Greg Roelofs

Tom Tanner

libpng versions 0.5, May 1995, through 0.88, January 1996, are Copyright (c) 1995, 1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Contributing Authors" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Andreas Dilger

Dave Martindale

Guy Eric Schalnat

Paul Schmidt

Tim Wegner

The PNG Reference Library is supplied "AS IS". The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability and of fitness for any purpose. The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. assume no liability for direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages, which may result from the use of the PNG Reference Library, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this source code, or portions hereof, for any purpose, without fee, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this source code must not be misrepresented.
2. Altered versions must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source.
3. This Copyright notice may not be removed or altered from any source or altered source distribution.

The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. specifically permit, without fee, and encourage the use of this source code as a component to supporting the PNG file format in commercial products. If you use this source code in a product, acknowledgment is not required but would be appreciated.

A "png_get_copyright" function is available, for convenient use in "about" boxes and the like:

printf("%s",png_get_copyright(NULL));

Also, the PNG logo (in PNG format, of course) is supplied in the files "pngbar.png" and "pngbar.jpg (88x31) and "pngnow.png" (98x31).

Libpng is OSI Certified Open Source Software. OSI Certified Open Source is a certification mark of the Open Source Initiative.

Glenn Randers-Pehrson randeg@alum.rpi.edu April 15, 2002

**MIT License**

Copyright (c) <year> <copyright holders>

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify,

merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

#### zlib License

The zlib/libpng License Copyright (c) <year> <copyright holders>

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

#### SGI Free Software B License Version 2.0.

SGI FREE SOFTWARE LICENSE B (Version 2.0, Sept. 18, 2008)

Copyright (C) [dates of first publication] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

---

# 4.1.6. App menu in instrument panel

The App menu in the instrument panel provides quick access to commonly used functions for certain apps.

The illustration is generic.

The App menu in the instrument panel can be used instead of the center display and is then controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad. The app menu makes it easier to switch between different apps or functions within the apps without having to let go of the steering wheel.

## App menu functions

Different apps provide access to different types of functions. The following apps and their functions can be controlled from the App menu:

| App | Functions |
|---|---|
| Trip computer | Select a trip odometer, change instrument panel display settings, etc. |
| Media player | Select active source for media player. |
| Phone | Call a contact from the call list. |
| Navigation | Guide to destination, etc. |

# 4.1.7. Handling the App menu in the instrument panel

The App menu in the instrument panel is controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad.

App menu and right-side steering wheel keypad. The illustration is generic.

1. Open/close
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Confirm

## Opening and closing the app menu

1. Tap open/close (1).

> The App men opens/closes.

> **Note**
>
> The App menu cannot be opened while there is an unacknowledged message in the instrument panel. The message must be acknowledged before the App menu can be opened.

The App menu turns off automatically after a period of inactivity or after certain selections are made.

## Navigating and making selections in the App menu

1. Navigate between apps by tapping left or right (2).

> Functions for the previous/next app will be shown in the App menu.

2. Scroll through the functions for the selected app using the up or down arrows (3).
3. Confirm or make a selection for the function by pressing confirm (4).

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

> The function will be activated and, for some selections, the App menu will then close.

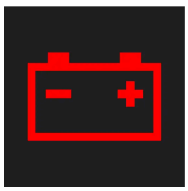
The next time the App menu is opened, the functions for the most recently selected app will be displayed automatically.

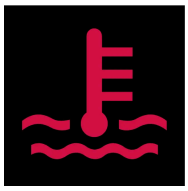
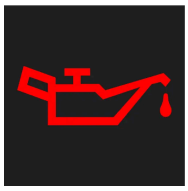
---

## 4.1.8. Indicator and warning symbols

Indicator and warning symbols alert the driver that a function is active, that a symbol is working, or that an error or serious fault has occurred.

# Red symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| | **WARNING**<br>The red warning symbol illuminates to indicate that a fault has been detected that could affect safety or driveability. An explanatory message will be simultaneously displayed in the instrument panel.<br>The warning symbol may also illuminate in combination with other symbols. |
| | **Seat belt reminder**<br>Lights up or flashes when a someone in the vehicle has not fastened their seat belt. |
| | **Airbags**<br>A fault has been detected in one of the vehicle's safety systems.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. |
| <br>[1]<br> <br>[2] | **Fault in brake system**<br>A fault has occurred in the brake system.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. |
| <br>[1]<br> <br>[2] | **Parking brake**<br>Steady glow: the parking brake is activated.<br>Flashing: a fault has occurred in the parking brake. Read the message in the instrument panel. |
|  | **Fault in electrical system**<br>A fault has occurred in the electrical system.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. |

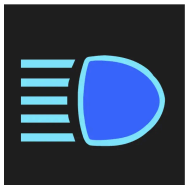
| | |
|---|---|
|  | **High engine temperature**<br>The engine's temperature is too high. Read the message in the instrument panel. |
| | **Collision risk**<br>City Safety warns the driver if there is a risk of a collision with another vehicle, pedestrian, cyclist or large animal. |
|  | **Low oil pressure**<br>The engine's oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level. Add oil if necessary.<br>If this symbol lights up and the oil level is normal, read the message in the instrument panel and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. |

## Amber symbols

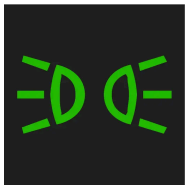
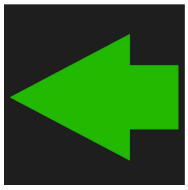
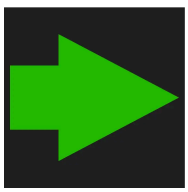
| | |
|---|---|
| | **Information**<br>A problem has occurred in one of the vehicle's systems. Read the message in the instrument panel.<br>The information symbol may also illuminate in combination with other symbols. |
| <br>[1]<br> <br>[2] | **Fault in brake system**<br>A fault has occurred in the brake system. Read the message in the instrument panel. |
| <br>[1]<br> <br>[2] | **Fault in ABS system**<br>The system is not functioning properly. The vehicle's regular brakes will still work, but without the ABS function. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Emission control system**<br>Fault in emission control system. Have the vehicle checked by a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. |
| | **Rear fog light**<br>Rear fog light on. |
| | **Tire pressure system**<br>Tire pressure low.<br>If there is a fault in the tire pressure system, the symbol will first flash for approximately 1 minute and then glow steadily. This may occur if the system cannot detect or alert the driver of low tire pressure as intended. |
| | **Fault in headlight system**<br>A fault has occurred in the headlight system. Read the message in the instrument panel. |
| | **Lane Keeping Aid**<br>Lane Keeping Aid is alerting/intervening. |
| | **Stability system**<br>Steady glow: a fault has occurred in the system.<br>Flashing: the system is working. |
| | **Stability system, Sport mode**<br>Sport mode is activated. |

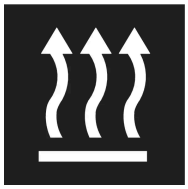
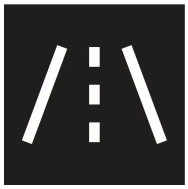
## Blue symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Active high beam**<br>Active high beam is activated and on. |
|  | **High beams**<br>High beams on. |

## Green symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| <br>[1] | **Auto-hold brake**<br>The function is activated and the brakes or the parking brake are being used. |
| | **Front fog light**<br>Front fog light on. |
|  | **Parking lights**<br>Parking lights on. |
|  <br>  | **Left/right turn signals**<br>Turn signal in use. |

## White/gray symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Active high beam**<br>Active high beam is activated but not on. |
|  | **Preconditioning**<br>Engine and passenger compartment heater/air conditioning is preconditioning the vehicle. |
|  | **Lane Keeping Aid**<br>White symbol: Lane Keeping Aid is on and lane marker lines are detected.<br>Gray symbol: Lane Keeping Aid is on but no lane marker lines are detected. |
| | **Rain sensor**<br>The rain sensor is activated. |

[1] Canadian models.

[2] US models.

# 4.1.9. Messages in the instrument panel

The instrument panel shows messages in certain circumstances to inform or assist the driver.

Example of message in an 8-inch instrument panel. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

Example of message in the instrument panel. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

High-priority messages for the driver are displayed in the instrument panel.

The messages may appear in different parts of the instrument panel depending on what other information is currently being displayed. The message will disappear from the instrument panel after a short period of time or after it has been acknowledged or any required action has been taken. Messages that need to be saved are stored in the **Car Status** app, which can be opened from the App view in the center display.

The message may be shown along with graphics, symbols or buttons to e.g. acknowledge the message or accept a request.

#### Service messages

The following table lists a selection of important service messages and what they mean.

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Stop safely [1] | Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - contact a workshop [2]. |
| Turn off engine [1] | Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - contact a workshop [2]. |
| Service urgent Drive to workshop [1] | Contact a workshop [2] to have the vehicle inspected immediately. |
| Service required [1] | Contact a workshop [2] to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible. |
| Regular maintenance<br>Book time for maintenance | Time for service - contact a workshop [2]. Shown before the next service date. |
| Regular maintenance<br>Time for maintenance | Time for service - contact a workshop [2]. Shown on the next service date. |
| Regular maintenance<br>Maintenance overdue | Time for service - contact a workshop [2]. Shown when the date for service has passed. |
| Temporarily off [1] | A function has been temporarily deactivated and will be reactivated automatically while driving or after the engine is restarted. |

[1] Part of message, shown along with information on the location of the problem.

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

# 4.1.10. Date and time

The clock is displayed in both the instrument panel and the center display.

## Location of clock

Location of clock in 12"* and 8" instrument panels. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

Certain messages and other information may obscure the clock in the instrument panel.

In the center display, the clock is located on the upper right-hand side in the status bar.

## Settings for date and time

1. Select **Settings** → **System** → **Date and Time** in the center display's Top view to change settings for time and date format.

   Adjust the date and time by tapping the up or down arrows on the touchscreen.

#### Automatic time for vehicles with GPS

When the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, **Auto Time** is also available. The time zone will then be automatically set to the vehicle's location. In some navigation systems, the current location must also be set to determine the correct time zone. If **Auto Time** is not selected, the time and date can be adjusted using the up and down arrows on the touchscreen.

#### Daylight savings time

In some countries, the **Auto Daylight Saving Time** setting can be selected to automatically change to daylight savings time. For other countries, the **Daylight Saving Time** setting can be selected manually.

## If the battery has been disconnected

If the clock was reset after the vehicle's battery was disconnected, e.g. after a visit to a service workshop, you many need to re-set the clock. If the clock is not set, it can affect the vehicle's Internet connection.

* Option/accessory.

# 4.2. Center display

# 4.2.1. Settings

## 4.2.1.1. Resetting user data when the vehicle changes owners

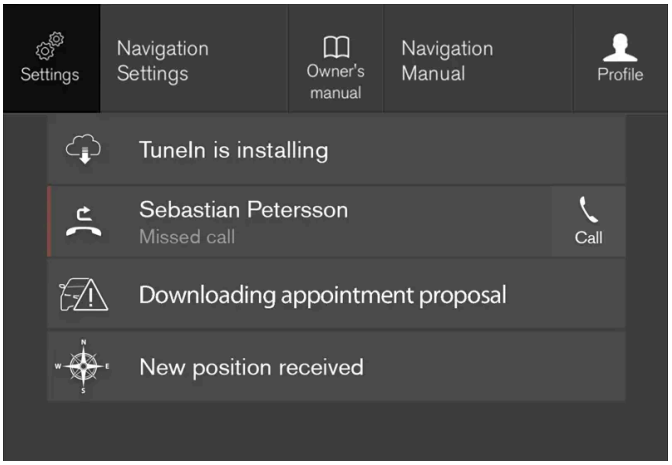
If the vehicle changes owners, all user data and system settings should be reset to factory defaults.

Vehicle settings can be reset at different levels. Reset all user data and system settings to their original factory defaults when the vehicle changes owner. It is also important to change the owner of the Volvo On Call service.

## 4.2.1.2. Changing settings in the center display's Top view

You can change settings and information for many of the vehicle's functions via the center display.

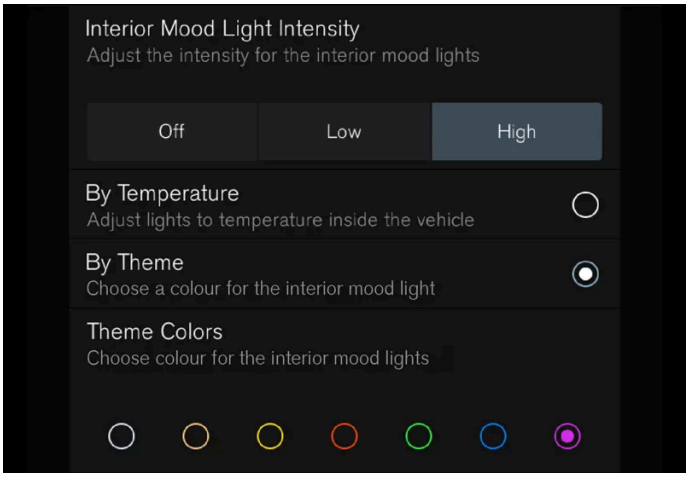
1. Open Top view by tapping the tab at the top of the screen or by dragging/swiping from the top of the screen downward.
2. Tap **Settings** to open the Settings menu.




Top view with **Settings** button.

3. Tap one of the categories and sub-categories to navigate to the desired setting.
4. Change the setting(s). Different types of settings are changed in different ways.

> Changes are saved immediately.




A sub-category in the Settings menu with various possible settings; has a multi-selection button and radio buttons.

---

# 4.2.1.3. Resetting center display settings

All settings made in the center display's Settings menu can be reset to default values.

## Two types of reset

There are two types of reset in the Settings menu:

- **Factory Reset**- erases all data and files and resets all settings to factory default.
- **Reset Personal Settings**- erases personal data and resets personalized settings to factory default.

## Resetting settings

Follow these instructions to reset the settings.

> **Note**
>
> **Factory Reset** is only possible when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Proceed to **System** → **Factory Reset**.
3. Select the type of reset you would like to do.

> A pop-up window will appear.

4. Tap **OK** to confirm the reset.

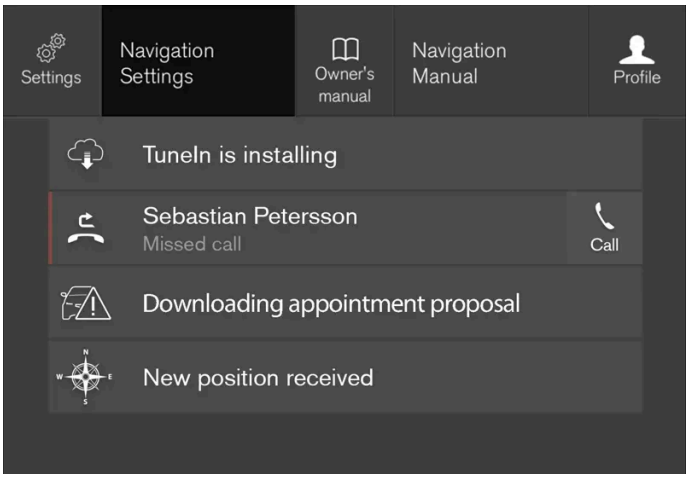
For **Reset Personal Settings**, confirm the reset by tapping **Reset for the active profile** or **Reset for all profiles**.

> The selected settings will be reset.

---

# 4.2.1.4. Opening contextual setting in the center display

Most of the settings for the vehicle's basic apps can be changed directly in Top view in the center display via contextual settings.




Top view with button for contextual settings.

Contextual setting is a shortcut for accessing specific settings related to the active function displayed on the screen. Apps that are factory-installed in your vehicle, e.g. **FM radio** and **USB**, are part of Sensus and are used to control the vehicle's integrated functions. The settings for these apps can be changed directly via contextual setting in Top view.

When contextual setting is available:

1. Pull down Top view when an app is in expanded form, e.g. **Navigation**.
2. Tap **Navigation Settings**.

> The navigation settings page will open.

3. Change the desired settings and confirm.

Tap **Close** or press the Home button under the center display to close Settings view.

Most of the vehicle's basic apps have this contextual setting option, but not all.

## Third-party apps

Third-party apps are apps that are not factory-installed in the vehicle's system, but can be downloaded, e.g. **Volvo ID**. Settings for these apps are changed in the apps themselves, not in Top view.

---

# 4.2.1.5. Changing system units of measurement

Unit settings are adjusted in the **Settings** menu in the center display.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Proceed to **System** → **System Languages and Units** → **Units of Measurement**.
3. Choose a measurement standard:
   - **Metric** - kilometers, liters and degrees Celsius.
   - **Imperial** - miles, gallons and degrees Celsius.
   - **US** - miles, gallons and degrees Fahrenheit.

> The units in the instrument panel, center display and head-up display are changed.

---

# 4.2.1.6. Turning off and adjusting the volume of the center display system sounds

The volume of the center display system sounds can be adjusted or turned off completely.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Sound** → **System Volumes**.
3. Pull the control under **Touch Sounds** to adjust the volume or turn off screen tap sounds. Pull the control to the desired sound level.

---

# 4.2.1.7. Changing system language

Language settings are adjusted in the **Settings** menu in the center display.

> **Note**
>
> Changing languages in the center display could mean that certain owner's information will not comply with national or local laws and regulations. Do not change to a language you do not speak well, as it can be difficult to find your way back through the menu.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Proceed to **System** → **System Languages and Units**.
3. Select **System Language**.

   A voice control symbol indicates that the language can be used for voice commands.

> Languages in the instrument panel, center display and head-up display are changed.

---

# 4.2.1.8. Changing the appearance of the center display

The appearance of the center display can be changed by selecting a different theme.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Displays** → **Display Themes**.
3. Select a theme, e.g. **Minimalistic** or **Chrome Rings**.

In addition to these themes, you can also choose between **Normal** and **Bright**. In **Normal**, the background of the screen is dark and the text is light. This option is the default setting for all themes. If the bright version is selected, the background will be light and the text will be dark. This option can, for example, make the screen easier to see in bright daylight conditions.

These alternatives are always available for selection and are not affected by the ambient lighting.

---

# 4.2.1.9. Displaying trip data in the instrument panel

Data recorded and calculated by the trip computer can be displayed on the instrument panel.

This data is stored in a trip computer app. You can choose which information the instrument panel will display in the app menu.

Open and navigate in the app menu [1] using the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

1. App menu
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Confirm

1. Open the app menu in the instrument panel by pressing (1).

   (The App menu cannot be opened while there is an unacknowledged message in the instrument panel. The message must be acknowledged by pressing the O button (4) before the App menu can be opened).

2. Navigate to the trip computer app by moving left or right using (2).

> The top four menu rows show measured values for trip odometer TM. The next four menu rows show measured values for trip odometer TA. Scroll up or down in the list using (3).

3. Scroll down to the option buttons to choose which information to show in the instrument panel:
   - Odometer
   - Distance to empty tank
   - Tourist (alternative speedometer)
   - Mileage for trip odometer TM, TA or no display of mileage
   - Current fuel consumption, average fuel consumption for TM or TA, or no display of fuel consumption

   Select or clear a selection using the O button (4). The change will apply immediately.

[1] The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

# 4.2.1.10. Trip statistics settings

Trip statistics settings can be reset or adjusted.

1. Open the **Driver performance** app in the App view to display trip statistics.

2. Tap **Preferences** to
   - change the graph scale. Select 1, 10 or 100 km/miles for the bar.
   - reset data after each trip. Performed when the vehicle remains stationary for more than 4 hours.
   - reset data for current trip.

   Trip statistics, calculated average consumption, and total driving time are always reset simultaneously.

Unit standards for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the center display.

---

# 4.2.1.11. Instrument panel settings

Display settings for the instrument panel can be set in the instrument panel's App menu and in the center display's Settings menu.

## Settings via instrument panel's app menu

The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

The app menu will open and can be controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad.

The app menu can be used to set what information will be displayed in the instrument panel

- trip computer
- media player
- phone
- navigation system*.

## Settings via center display

#### Selecting type of information

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Displays** → **Driver Display Information**.
3. Select a background:
   - **Show no information in the background**
   - **Show information for current playing media**
   - **Show navigation even if no route is set**[1]

#### Select theme

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Displays** → **Display Themes**
3. Select a theme (appearance) for the instrument panel:
   - **Glass**
   - **Minimalistic**
   - **Performance**
   - **Chrome Rings**

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **System** → **System Languages and Units** → **System Language** to select language.

> A change made here will affect the language in all displays.

The settings are personal and saved automatically in the active driver profile.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Map is displayed on 12-inch* instrument panels. 8-inch instrument panels display only guidance.

---

# 4.2.1.12. Date and time

The clock is displayed in both the instrument panel and the center display.

## Location of clock

Location of clock in 12"* and 8" instrument panels. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

Certain messages and other information may obscure the clock in the instrument panel.

In the center display, the clock is located on the upper right-hand side in the status bar.

## Settings for date and time

1. Select **Settings** → **System** → **Date and Time** in the center display's Top view to change settings for time and date format.

   Adjust the date and time by tapping the up or down arrows on the touchscreen.

#### Automatic time for vehicles with GPS

When the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, **Auto Time** is also available. The time zone will then be automatically set to the vehicle's location. In some navigation systems, the current location must also be set to determine the correct time zone. If **Auto Time** is not selected, the time and date can be adjusted using the up and down arrows on the touchscreen.

#### Daylight savings time

In some countries, the **Auto Daylight Saving Time** setting can be selected to automatically change to daylight savings time. For other countries, the **Daylight Saving Time** setting can be selected manually.

## If the battery has been disconnected

If the clock was reset after the vehicle's battery was disconnected, e.g. after a visit to a service workshop, you many need to re-set the clock. If the clock is not set, it can affect the vehicle's Internet connection.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.2.1.13. Head-up display settings*

Adjusting settings for the head-up display.

Settings can be adjusted when the vehicle is started and a projected image is displayed on the windshield.

## Selecting display options

Select the functions to be shown in the head-up display.

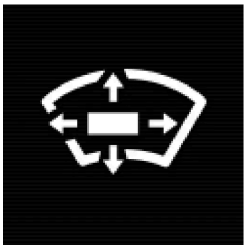
1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Displays** → **Head-Up Display Options**.
3. Select one or more functions:
   - **Show Navigation**
   - **Show Road Sign Information**
   - **Show Driver Support**

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

- Show Phone

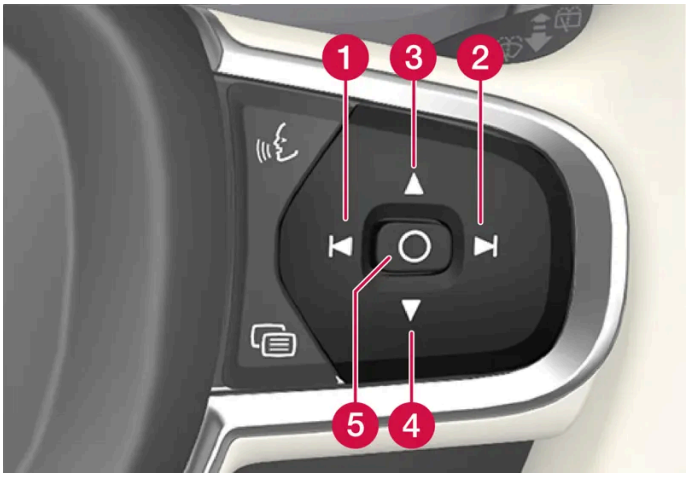
This setting is stored as a personal setting in the driver profile.

## Adjusting brightness and height position

1. 

   Press the **Head-up Display Adjustments** button in the center display's Function view.

2. Adjust the brightness of the projected image and the height position in the driver's field of vision using the right-side steering wheel lever.




1 Decreasing brightness

2 Increasing brightness

3 Raising position

4 Lowering position

5 Confirm

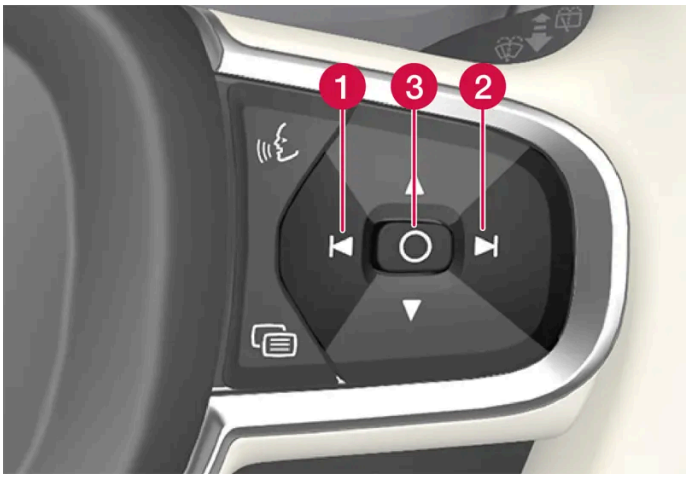
The brightness of the graphic is automatically adapted to the light conditions in its background. Brightness is also affected by adjustments to the brightness of the other displays in the vehicle.

The height position can be stored in the front power seat's* memory function using the keypad in the driver's door.

## Calibrating the horizontal position

If the windshield or display unit has been replaced, the head-up display's horizontal position may need to be calibrated. Calibration means that the projected image is rotated clockwise or counterclockwise.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **Displays** → **Head-Up Display Options** → **Head-Up Display Calibration**.
3. Calibrate the horizontal position of the image using the right-side steering wheel keypad.




1 Rotate counterclockwise

2 Rotate clockwise

3 Confirm

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.2.1.14. Terms of use and data sharing

The first time certain services and apps are started, a pop-up window with the heading **Terms and conditions** and **Data sharing** may open.

The aim is to inform the user about Volvo's terms of use and data sharing policy. By accepting data sharing, the user accepts that certain information will be sent from the vehicle. This is required for certain services and apps to work with full functionality.

The data sharing function for connected services and apps is disabled by default[1]. For certain connected services and apps in the vehicle to work, data sharing must be activated. Data sharing can be set from the center display's settings menu or when the services or apps are started in the center display.

## Privacy and data sharing

The software update that became available in November 2017 introduced privacy and data sharing settings for connected services and downloaded apps. These settings can be found under **Privacy and data** in the settings menu in the vehicle's center display.

There, you can choose which connected services will be allowed to share data. Data sharing for downloaded apps can also be disabled there. Note that services and apps cannot be used as intended if data sharing is disabled.

After a factory reset or e.g. a workshop visit or a software update, your data sharing preferences may be reset to default settings. You will then need to reactivate data sharing for connected services and downloaded apps.

> **Note**
>
> Settings for privacy and data sharing are unique for each driver profile.

[1] Does not apply to Volvo On Call.

---

# 4.2.1.15. Activating and deactivating data sharing

Data sharing for relevant services and apps can be set via the Settings menu in the center display.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **System** → **Privacy and data**.
3. Select to activate or deactivate data sharing for individual services and all apps.

If data sharing for a connected service or downloaded apps is not activated, this can be done when they are started in the center display. If this is the first time that a service is started, or e.g. after a factory reset or certain software updates, Volvo's terms and conditions for connected services must be accepted. Note that data sharing will then also be activated for other services or apps that sharing has already been accepted for.

> **Note**
>
> After visiting a Volvo workshop, you may need to reactivate data sharing so that services and apps will work again.

---

# 4.2.1.16. Settings for remote and inside door unlock

Several different sequences are available for remote unlocking.

To change this setting:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Locking** → **Remote and Interior Unlock**.
3. Select alternative:
   - **All Doors** – unlocks all doors at the same time.
   - **Single Door** – unlocks the driver's door. Press the remote key unlock button twice to unlock all doors.

The settings made here also affect central locking using the inside door handle.

---

# 4.2.1.17. Care Key settings

Change maximum speed for a Care Key via the center display.

#### Setting options

The following limitations are available:

- Speed range: 50-180 km/h (30-112 mph)
- Increments: 1 km/h (1 mph)

#### Adjusting settings

1. Unlock the vehicle using a regular remote key (not Care Key).
2. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
3. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Care Key**.
4. Check the box to activate restrictions and set the desired restrictions.

---

# 4.2.1.18. Lock confirmation settings

Settings for how the vehicle confirms locking and unlocking can be adjusted in the center display's Settings menu.

To change the locking response settings:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Locking**.
3. Tap **Visible Locking Feedback** to select when the vehicle should provide a visible response:
   - **Lock**
   - **Unlock**
   - **Both**

   Or turn off the function by marking **Off** .
4. Select to receive an audible response when locking the vehicle by marking **Audible Locking Feedback**.

To change the settings for folding door mirrors* when locking:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Select **Fold Mirror When Locked** to activate or deactivate the function.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.2.1.19. Keyless unlock settings*

Several different sequences are available for keyless unlocking.

To change this setting:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Locking** → **Keyless Unlock**.
3. Select alternative:
   - **All Doors** – unlocks all doors at the same time.
   - **Single Door** – unlocks the selected door.

* Option/accessory.

## 4.2.1.20. Settings for automatically activating the parking brake

Choose whether the parking brake should be activated automatically when the vehicle is switched off.

To change this setting:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car → Parking Brake and Suspension** and select or deselect the **Auto Activate Parking Brake** function.

## 4.2.2. Driver profiles

## 4.2.2.1. Driver profiles

Many of the vehicle's settings can be customized to the driver's personal preferences and saved in one or more driver profiles.

These personal settings are automatically saved in the active driver profile. Every remote key, except the Care Key, can be connected to a personal driver profile. When the connected key is used, the vehicle is adapted to the settings for that specific driver profile. Care Key is always connected to the last-used profile and the set maximum speed. This profile cannot be protected as its own personal profile.

## Which settings are saved in driver profiles?

Many of the settings made in the vehicle will be automatically stored in the active driver profile if the profile is not protected. The vehicle has settings that can be made either personal or global. The personal settings are saved in driver profiles.

Settings that can be saved in a driver profile include, among other things, screens, mirrors, front seats, navigation*, audio and media system, language and voice control.

Some settings are global settings. These settings can be changed but are not saved to a specific driver profile. Changes to global settings affect all profiles.

**Global settings**

Global settings do not change when driver profiles are changed. They remain the same regardless of which driver profile is currently active.

Keyboard layout is an example of a global setting. If driver profile X is used to add additional keyboard languages, these languages will also be available for driver profile Y. The settings for keyboard layout are not saved to a specific driver profile - the settings are global.

**Personal settings**

If driver profile X has been used to e.g., set the brightness for the center display, driver profile Y will not be affected by this setting. It will only be saved to driver profile X because brightness setting is a personal setting.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.2.2.2. Changing a driver profile's name

It is possible to change the names of the different driver profiles used in the vehicle.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select **Edit Profile**.

> A menu will open in which the driver profile can be changed.

4. Tap the **Profile Name** box.

> A keyboard will be displayed and can be used to change the name. Tap ▽ to close the keyboard.

5. Save the name change by pressing **Back** or **Close**.

> The name has now been changed.

> **Note**
>
> Profile names may not begin with a space. If a space is entered first, the profile name will not be saved.

---

# 4.2.2.3. Linking a remote key to a driver profile

A remote key can be linked to a driver profile. This driver profile and all of its settings will then automatically be selected every time the vehicle is used with that particular remote key.

The first time the remote key is used, it is not linked to any specific driver profile. The **Guest** profile is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

A driver profile can also be selected manually without linking it to any key. When the vehicle is unlocked, the last active driver profile will be activated. If the key has ever been linked to a driver profile, it is not necessary to manually select a driver profile when using that particular key.

### Linking a remote key to a specific driver profile

> **Note**
>
> A remote key can only be connected to a driver profile when the vehicle is stationary.

First select the profile you would like to link to the key (if that profile is not already active). The active profile can then be linked to the key.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Mark the desired profile. The display will return to Home view. The **Guest** profile cannot be linked to a remote key.
4. Pull down Top view again and tap **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile**.
5. Select **Connect key** to link the profile with the key. A driver profile can only be linked to the key currently being used in the vehicle. If there are any other keys in the vehicle, **More than one key is found, put the key you want to connect on backup reader** will be displayed.

Location of the backup reader in the tunnel console.

> When **Profile connected to key** is displayed, the key and driver profile have been linked.

6. Tap **OK**.

> The key used is now linked to the driver profile and will remain so as long as the **Connect key** box is not deselected.

---

# 4.2.2.4. Protecting a driver profile

It may not always be desirable to store settings made in the vehicle to the active driver profile. In these instances, the driver profile can be protected.

> **Note**
>
> Protecting a driver profile is only possible when the vehicle is stationary.

To protect a driver profile:

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select **Edit Profile**.

> A menu will open in which the driver profile can be changed.

4. Tap **Protect Profile** to protect the profile.
5. Confirm your selection to protect the profile by tapping **Back**/**Close**.

> When the profile is protected, settings made in the vehicle will not be automatically stored to the profile. The changes must instead be saved manually under **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile** by tapping **Save current settings to the profile**. If the profile is not protected, the settings will be automatically stored to the profile.

---

# 4.2.2.5. Selecting a driver profile

When the center display starts up, the selected driver profile will be shown at the top of the screen. The most recently used driver profile will be active the next time the vehicle is unlocked. A different driver profile can be selected once the vehicle has been unlocked. However, if the remote key has been linked to a driver profile, this profile will be used instead.

There are three options for switching between driver profiles.

Option 1:

1. Tap the name of the driver profile shown at the top of the center display when the display starts up.

> A list will appear, showing driver profiles that can be selected.

2. Select desired driver profile.
3. Tap **Confirm**.

> The driver profile has now been selected and the system will load the settings stored in that profile.

Option 2:

1. Pull down Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Profile**.

> The same list as in option 1 will be displayed.

3. Select desired driver profile.
4. Tap **Confirm**.

> The driver profile has now been selected and the system will load the settings stored in that profile.

Option 3:

1. Pull down Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
3. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles**.

> A list will appear, showing driver profiles that can be selected.

4. Select desired driver profile.

> The driver profile has now been selected and the system will load the settings stored in that profile.

---

# 4.2.2.6. Resetting driver profile settings

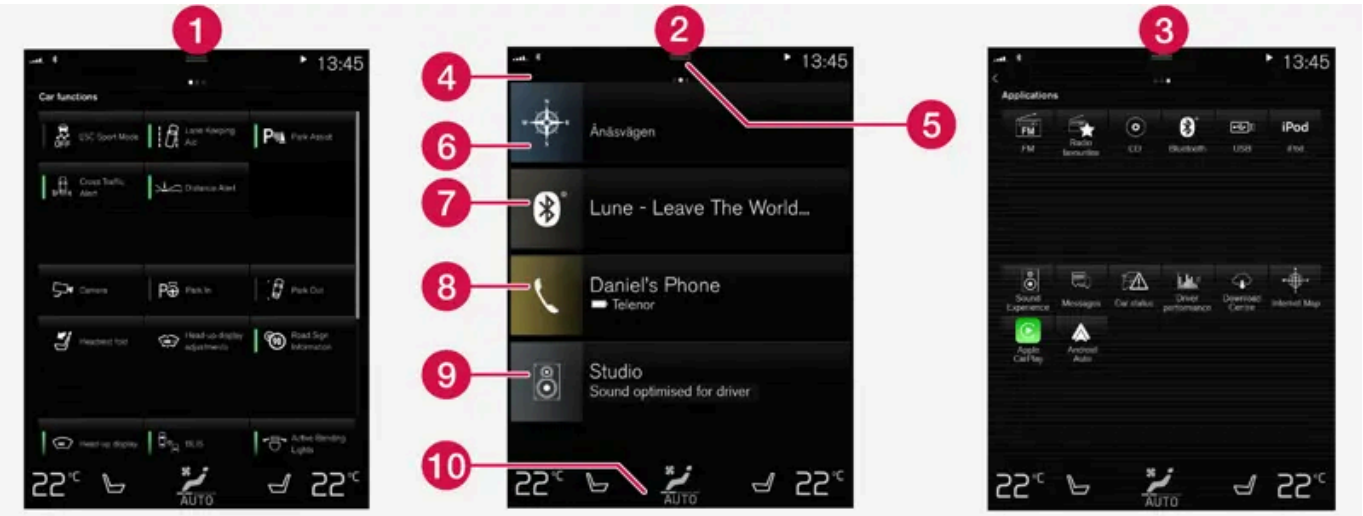
Settings that have been saved for one or more driver profiles can be reset when the vehicle is stationary.

> **Note**
>
> **Factory Reset** is only possible when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **System** → **Factory Reset** → **Reset Personal Settings**.
3. Select option **Reset for the active profile**, **Reset for all profiles** or **Cancel**.

# 4.2.3. Center display overview

Many of the vehicle's functions can be controlled from the center display. The center display and its possibilities are presented below.




Three of the center display's basic views. Swipe to the right/left to access Function or App view[1].

1. Function view – vehicle functions that can be activated or deactivated with one tap. Certain functions, called "trigger functions", open windows with settings options. One example is the **Camera**. Settings for the head-up display* are also started from Function view, but adjusted using the right-side steering wheel keypad.
2. Home view – the initial view displayed when the screen is turned on.
3. App view – shows downloaded apps (third-party apps) as well as apps for integrated functions, such as **FM radio**. Tap an app icon to open that app.
4. Status bar – current vehicle activities are shown at the top of the screen. Network and connection information is shown to the left of the status bar. Media-related information, the clock and information about background activities are shown to the right.
5. Top view – pull the tab down to open Top view. From here, you can access **Settings**, **Owner's manual**, **Profile** and messages stored in the vehicle. In certain cases, contextual setting (e.g. **Navigation Settings**) and the contextual Owner's Manual (e.g. **Navigation Manual**) can also be accessed in Top view.
6. Navigation – takes you to map navigation with e.g. Sensus Navigation*. Tap the tile to expand it.
7. Media – most recently used media-related apps. Tap the tile to expand it.
8. Phone – used to access phone-related functions. Tap the tile to expand it.
9. Fourth tile – most recently used apps or vehicle functions not associated with the other tiles. Tap the tile to expand it.
10. Climate row - information and direct interaction to set temperature and seat heating for example*. Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view and additional setting options.

> **Note**
>
> The climate system can be used to cool down the media system in the center display if needed. In these cases, the message **Climate system Cooling the infotainment system** will be shown in the instrument panel.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

[1] In right-hand drive vehicles, these views are mirror images of the ones shown here.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.2.4. Activating and deactivating the center display

The center display can be temporarily switched off and reactivated using the home button under the screen.

Center display's home button.

When the home button is used, the screen will go dark and the touchscreen no longer reacts to touch. The climate bar will remain visible. All functions connected to the screen continue to operate, such as climate, audio, navigation* and apps. The center display screen can be cleaned when the display is dimmed.

The dimming function can also be used to darken the screen so it is not a distraction while driving.

1. Press and hold the button beneath the screen.

> The screen will go dark (the climate bar will remain visible). All functions connected to the screen continue to operate.

2. To reactivate the screen, briefly press the Home button.

> The view that was displayed before the screen was turned off will be displayed again.

**Note**

The screen cannot be turned off when a prompt to perform an action is being displayed on the screen.

**Note**

The center display is turned off automatically when the engine is off and the driver's door is opened.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.2.5. Handling the center display

Many of the vehicle's functions and features can be controlled and adjusted from the center display. The center display is a touchscreen that reacts to taps and other gestures.

## Using the center display's touchscreen

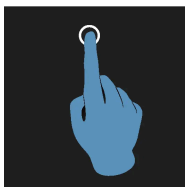
The screen reacts differently depending on whether it is touched by dragging, swiping or tapping. It is possible to e.g. move between different views, mark objects and scroll in a list by touching the screen in various ways.

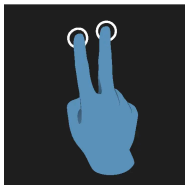
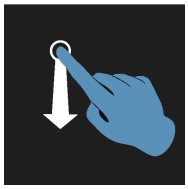
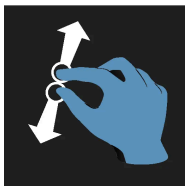
An infrared light curtain just above the surface of the screen enables the screen to detect when a finger is directly in front of the screen. This technology makes it possible to use the screen even while wearing gloves.

Two people can interact with the screen at the same time, e.g. to adjust climate system settings for both the driver and passenger sides.

> **Important**
>
> Do not use sharp objects on the screen as this could cause scratches.

The following table presents the various procedures for using the screen:

| Procedure | Gesture | Result |
|---|---|---|
|  | Tap once. | Marks an object, confirms a selection or activates a function. |
| | Double-tap. | Zooms in on a digital object, such as a map. |

| Procedure | Gesture | Result |
|---|---|---|
| | Press and hold. | Grabs hold of an object so it can be moved. Can be used to move apps or points on a map. Press and hold your finger on the screen and drag the object to the desired position. |
|  | Tap once with two fingers. | Zooms out from a digital object, such as a map. |
| | Drag | Moves between screen views or scrolls in a list, text or a view. Press and hold to drag apps or points on a map. Drag horizontally or vertically over the screen. |
|  | Swipe | Moves between screen views or scrolls in a list, text or a view. Drag horizontally or vertically over the screen.<br>Note that touching the upper part of the screen could cause Top view to open. |
|  | Stretch | Zooms in. |
| | Pinch | Zooms out. |

## Returning to Home view from another view

1. Briefly press the home button below the center display.

> The most recent Home view mode will be displayed.

2. Press briefly again.

> All of the Home view's tiles will return to standard mode.

**Note**

In Home view's standard mode – short press on the Home button. An animation describing access to the various views is shown on the screen.

## Scrolling in lists, articles or views

A scroll indicator is displayed on the screen when it is possible to scroll up or down in the view. Swipe down/up anywhere in the view.

The scroll indicator will be shown in the center display when it is possible to scroll in the view.

### Using the center display controls

Temperature control.

Digital controls are available for many of the vehicle's functions. For example, to set the temperature:

- drag the control to the desired temperature,
- tap + or − to raise or lower the temperature by degrees, or
- tap the desired temperature on the control.

---

# 4.2.6. Navigating in the center display's views

There are five different basic views in the center display: Home view, Top view, Climate view, App view and Function view. The screen is automatically activated when the driver's door is opened.

## Home view

Home view is the view displayed when the screen is activated. It consists of four tiles: **Navigation**, **Media**, **Phone** and a fourth tile.

An app or vehicle function selected from the App or Function views will start in the respective tile in Home view. **FM radio**, for example, will start in the **Media** tile.

The extra tile displays the most recently used app or vehicle function that is not related to the other three tiles.

The tiles display brief information about the respective apps.

> **Note**
>
> When the vehicle is started, information on the current status of apps will be displayed in the respective tile in Home view.

> **Note**
>
> In Home view's standard mode – short press on the Home button. An animation describing access to the various views is shown on the screen.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Note**

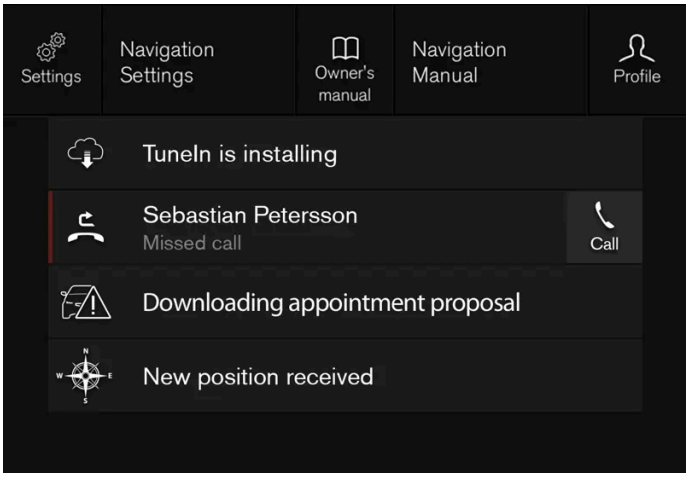
**When the vehicle is moving:**

- Certain functions (e.g. using the center display's keyboard) may be deactivated.
- Certain texts (e.g. those generated by apps) will be shortened to three rows. Tap the **Read out** button to have the entire message read aloud.
- Text messages will be shortened to one row. Tap the **Read out** button to have the entire message read aloud.

## Status bar

Current vehicle activities are shown at the top of the screen in the status bar. Network and connection information is shown to the left of the status bar. Media-related information, the clock and information about background activities are shown to the right.

## Top view




Top view when expanded.

There is a tab in the center of the status bar at the top of the screen. Open Top view by tapping the tab or by dragging/swiping from the top of the screen downward.

Top view always provides access to:

- **Settings**
- **Owner's manual**
- **Profile**
- The vehicle's stored messages.

In certain cases, Top view provides access to:

- Contextual setting (e.g. **Navigation Settings**). Change settings directly in Top view when an app (e.g. navigation) is being used.
- Contextual Owner's Manual (e.g. **Navigation Manual**). Access articles in the digital Owner's Manual related to the content shown on the screen, directly in Top view.

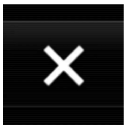
To exit Top view, tap the screen outside Top view, press the Home button or tap the screen at the bottom of Top view and swipe upward. The views behind will become visible again and can be used.

> **Note**
>
> The top view is not available at start-up/shutdown or when a message is being shown on the screen. Similarly, it is not available when the climate view is shown.

## Climate view

The climate bar is always visible at the bottom of the screen. The most common climate settings can be made directly there, such as setting temperature and seat heating*.

Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view and access additional climate system settings.



Tap the symbol to close Climate view and return to a previous view.

## App view

App view showing the vehicle's apps.

Swipe the screen from right to left[1] to access the App view from the Home view. This view displays downloaded apps (third-party apps) as well as apps for integrated functions, such as **FM radio**. Brief information will be displayed directly in App view for certain apps, such as unread text messages for **Messages**.

Tap an app to open it. It will then be opened in its associated tile, e.g. **Media**.

Depending on the number of apps, it is possible to scroll down in App view. This is done by sweeping/dragging from the bottom upwards.

To return to Home view, swipe the screen from left to right[1] or press the Home button.

## Function view

Function view with buttons for various vehicle functions.

Swipe the screen from left to right[1] to access Function view from Home view. From Function view, you can activate or deactivate various vehicle functions such as**BLIS***, **Lane Keeping Aid*** and **Park Assist***.

If there are many functions, you can also scroll downward through the view. This is done by sweeping/dragging from the bottom upwards.

Unlike in App view, where you tap an app to open it, in Function view, tapping a function activates or deactivates it. Certain functions (trigger functions) open in their own window when tapped.

To return to Home view, swipe the screen from right to left[1] or press the Home button.

* Option/accessory.

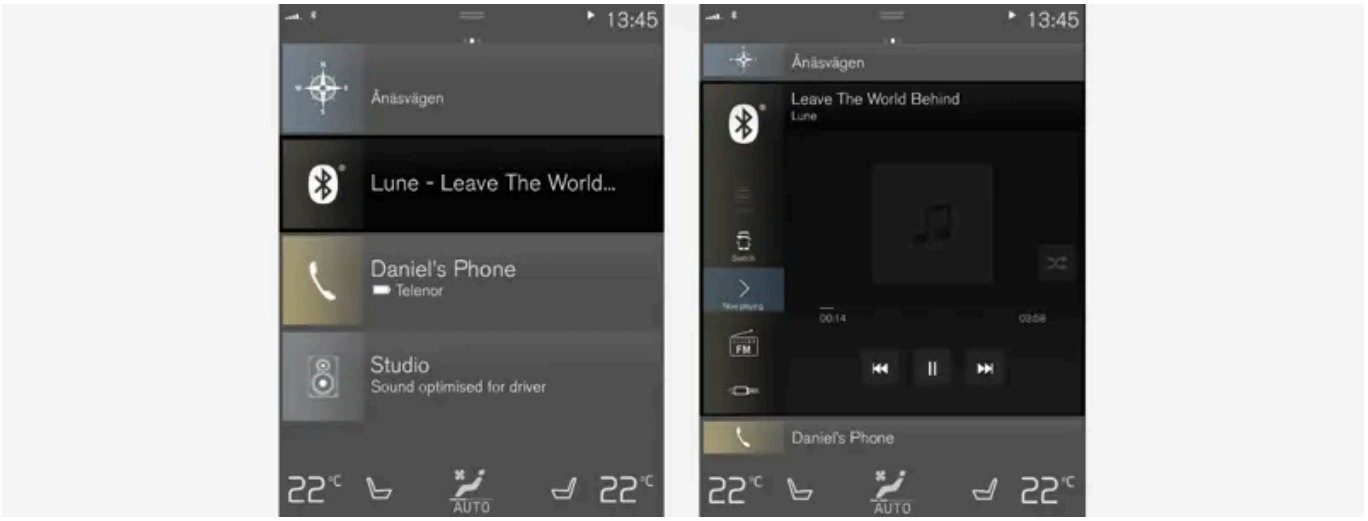
[1] Applies for left-hand drive vehicles. For right-hand drive vehicles, swipe in the other direction.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 4.2.7. Handling tiles in the center display

Home view consists of four tiles: **Navigation**, **Media**, **Phone** and a fourth tile. These views can be expanded.

## Expanding a tile from standard mode




Standard mode and expanded mode of a tile in the center display.

Expanding a tile:

1. For tiles **Navigation**, **Media** and **Phone**: Tap the screen anywhere in the tile. When a tile is expanded, the extra tile in Home view will be temporarily hidden. The other two tiles will be minimized and only show certain information. When the extra tile is tapped, the other three tiles are minimized and only certain information is displayed.

   Expanded view provides access to the basic functions of the respective apps.

Closing an expanded tile:

1. The tile can be closed in three different ways:
   - Tap the top section of the expanded tile.
   - Tap another tile (it will then be opened in expanded mode instead).
   - Press briefly on the Home button under the center display.

## Opening or closing a tile in full-screen mode

The fourth tile[1] and tile for **Navigation** can be opened in full-screen mode to show additional information and possible settings.

When a tile is opened in full-screen mode, no information from the other tiles is displayed.

In expanded mode, open the app in full-screen mode. Tap the symbol.

To return to expanded mode, tap the symbol or press the Home button under the screen.

Center display's home button.

You can always press the Home button to return to Home view. To return to Home view's standard view from full-screen mode, press the Home button twice.

[1] Does not apply to all apps or vehicle functions opened via the fourth tile.

---

# 4.2.8. Symbols in the center display status bar

Overview of symbols displayed in the center display status bar.

The status bar shows current vehicle activities and in certain cases, also their status. Due to the limited space in the status bar, not all symbols will be displayed at all times.

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Connected to the Internet. |
| | Roaming activated. |
| | Cell phone network signal strength. |
| | Bluetooth device connected. |
| | Bluetooth activated but no device connected. |
| | Information sent to and from GPS. |
| | Connected to Wi-Fi network. |
| | Tethering activated (Wi-Fi hotspot). This means that the vehicle shares an available Internet connection. |
| | Vehicle modem activated. |
| | USB sharing active. |
| | Phone is wirelessly charging. |
| | Action in progress. |
| | Timer for preconditioning active.[1] |
| | Audio source being played. |
| | Audio source paused. |
| | Phone call in progress. |
| | Audio source muted. |
| | News broadcasts from current radio station.[2] |
| | Traffic information being received.[2] |
| | Clock. |

[1] Only hybrid models.

[2] Not available in all markets.

---

# 4.2.9. Function view in the center display

Function view, which is one of the center display's basic views, contains all of the vehicle's function buttons. From the Home view, navigate to Function view by swiping from left to right over the screen[1].

## Different types of buttons

There are three different types of buttons for vehicle functions; see below:

| Type of button | Functions | Vehicle function affected |
|---|---|---|
| Function buttons | Have On/Off modes.<br>When a function is active, an LED indicator light will illuminate to the left of the button's icon. Press the button to turn the function on or off. | Most buttons in Function view are function buttons. |
| Trigger buttons | Do not have On/Off modes.<br>Pressing a trigger button opens a window for the function. This can be, for example, a window to change seat position. | • Camera<br>• Headrest Fold<br>• Head-up Display Adjustments |

| Type of button | Functions | Vehicle function affected |
|---|---|---|
| Parking buttons | Have On/Off and scanning modes.<br>Similar to function buttons, but have an extra mode for parking scanning. | • Park In<br>• Park Out |

## Button modes

When a function or parking button's LED indicator is green, the function is activated (on). For some functions, an additional text explaining the function will be shown when the function is initially activated. The text will be displayed for a few seconds and then the button will be displayed with the LED indicator illuminated.

For **Lane Keeping Aid**, for example, the text **Works only at certain speeds** will be displayed when the button is pressed.

Press the button once briefly to activate or deactivate the function.

The function is deactivated when the LED indicator light is switched off.

A warning triangle in the right-hand section of the button indicates that something is not working correctly.

[1] Applies for left-hand drive vehicles. For right-hand drive vehicles, swipe in the other direction.

---

# 4.2.10. Moving apps and buttons in the center display

The apps and buttons for vehicle functions can be moved and organized in the App and Function views.

1. Swipe from right to left[1] to access App view or swipe from left to right[1] to access Function view.
2. Press and hold an app or button.

> The app or button will change size and become slightly transparent. It can then be moved.

3. Drag the app or button to an available position in the view.

A maximum of 48 rows can be used to position apps or buttons. To move an app or button outside the visible view, drag it to the bottom of the view. New rows will be added and the app or button can be placed in one of these.

Apps or buttons placed below the view's normal display will not be visible on the screen.

Swipe the screen to scroll up or down in the view to display information outside the view.

**Note**

Hide the apps that are rarely or never used by moving them far down, outside of the visible view. This makes it easier to find the apps used more frequently.

**Note**

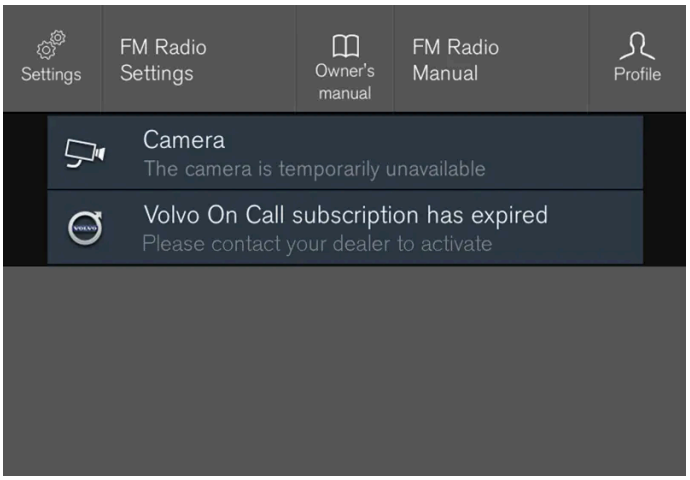
Apps and vehicle function buttons cannot be situated at spots already in use.

[1] Applies for left-hand drive vehicles. For right-hand drive vehicles, swipe in the other direction.

---

# 4.2.11. Messages in the center display

The center display shows messages in certain circumstances to inform or assist the driver.




Example of message in the center display's Top view.

Messages with lower priority for the driver are shown in the center display.

Most of the messages are shown in the center display's status bar. The message will disappear from the status bar after a short period of time or after the required action has been taken. Messages that need to be saved are stored in Top view in the center display.

The message may be shown along with graphics, symbols or a button to e.g. activate/deactivate a function connected to the message.

#### Pop-up messages

Messages are sometimes shown as pop-up windows. Pop-up messages have a higher priority than messages shown in the status bar and require acknowledgment/action before they disappear.

---

# 4.2.12. Keyboard in the center display

You can use the keyboard in the center display to enter characters or to switch to handwriting mode to "write" letters and characters on the screen.

The keyboard can be used to enter characters (letters, numbers, symbols, etc.) to e.g. send text messages from the vehicle, enter passwords or search for information in the digital Owner's Manual.

The keyboard will only appear when it is possible to enter text on the screen.

> **Note**
>
> The keyboard cannot be used while the vehicle is moving.

The illustration shows an overview of some of the buttons that may be shown on the keyboard. The appearance may vary depending on language settings and the context in which the keyboard is used.

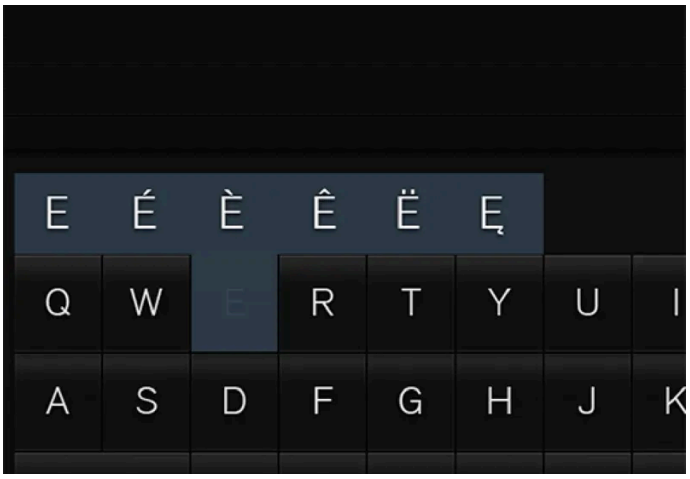
1. Row showing suggestions for words or characters[1]. The suggested words change as new letters are entered. Scroll through the list of suggested words by tapping the right or left arrows. Tap a suggestion to select it. Please note that this function is not available in all languages. When unavailable, this row will not be shown on the keyboard.
2. Available characters are adapted to the language selected for the keyboard (see number 7 below). Tap a character to enter it.
3. Different buttons are displayed here depending on the context in which the keyboard is used, e.g. **@** to enter an email address or the return key to **start a new line**.
4. This button hides the keyboard. In cases where this is not possible, the button will not be displayed.
5. Used to enter uppercase letters. Tap once to enter one uppercase letter and then continue with lowercase letters. Tap twice for caps lock (all text will be entered in uppercase letters). Tap again to return the keyboard to lowercase letters. In this mode, the first letter after a period, exclamation point or question mark will be automatically entered in uppercase form. The first letter entered in text fields will also be uppercase. In text fields intended for names or addresses, each word will be automatically started with an uppercase letter. In text fields intended for passwords, website addresses or email addresses, all letters will automatically be lowercase unless uppercase is selected.
6. Used to enter numbers. The number keyboard (2) will then be displayed. Tap ABC, which is shown instead of 123 in number mode, to return to the keyboard with letters, or #\~ to display the keyboard with special characters.
7. Used to change the keyboard language, e.g. **EN**. The available characters and word suggestions (1) vary depending on the selected language. In order to toggle between keyboard languages, the languages must first be added under Settings.
8. Space bar.

9 Delete. Tap to delete characters one at a time. Press and hold to delete multiple characters quickly.

10 Used to change to handwriting mode.

Tap the confirm button over the keyboard once to confirm the text that has been entered. The button's appearance differs depending on the context.

### Variants of letters or characters




Variants of a letter or character, e.g. **é** or **è**, can be entered by pressing and holding the letter or character. A box containing possible variants of the letter or character will appear. Tap the desired variant. If no variant is selected, the original letter/character will be used.

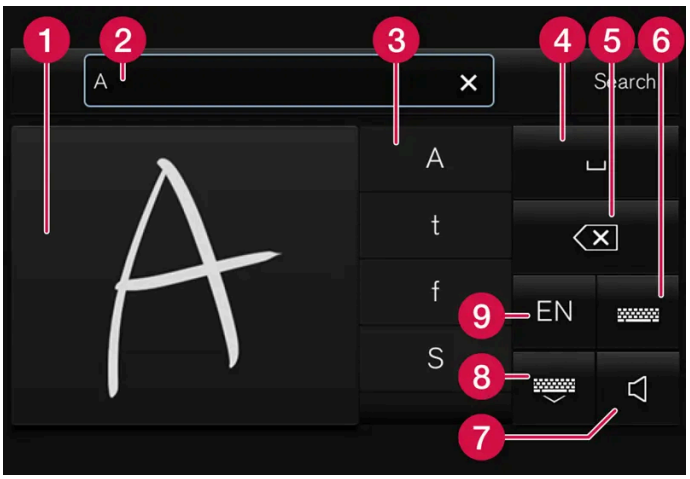
[1] For Asian languages.

---

# 4.2.13. Entering characters, letters and words by hand in the center display

Characters, letters and words can be entered in the center display by handwriting them on the touchscreen.

Tap the button on the center display's keyboard to switch from the keyboard to handwriting mode.




1. Space for entering characters/letters/words/parts of words.
2. Text field displaying suggested characters or words [1] as they are written on the screen (1).
3. Suggestions for characters/letters/words/parts of words. You can scroll through the list.
4. Space bar. Blank spaces can be created by writing a dash (–) in the field for handwritten letters (1). See "Writing blank spaces in free-text fields" below.
5. Delete. Tap once to erase one character/letter at a time. Wait a moment before tapping again to erase the next character, letter etc.
6. Return to the standard keyboard layout.
7. Switch off/on screen tap sounds.
8. Hide the keyboard. In cases where this is not possible, the button will not be displayed.
9. Change language for text input.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Handwriting characters/letters/words**

1. Write a character, a letter, a word or parts of a word in the field for handwritten letters. Write the word or part of the word vertically or horizontally.

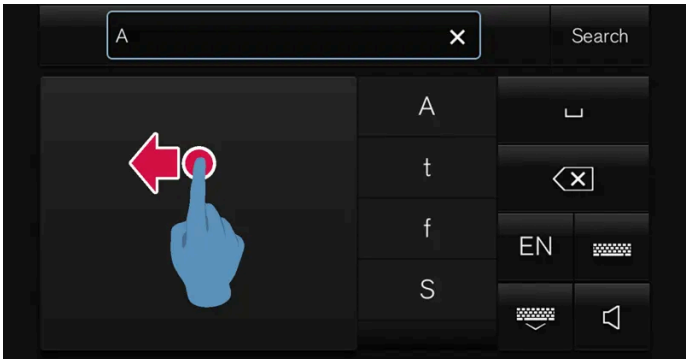
> A number of suggestions for characters, letters or words will be displayed. The most likely will be shown at the top of the list.

> **Important**
>
> Do not use sharp objects on the screen as this could cause scratches.

2. The character/letter/word will be entered automatically after a short pause if no other action is taken.

> The character/letter/word at the top of the list will be used. Tap one of the other characters/letters/words in the list to use it instead.

**Erasing/changing handwritten characters/letters**



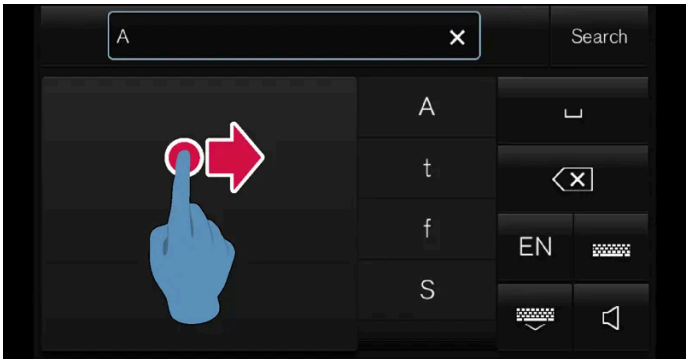

Erase text in the text field (2) by swiping over the handwriting field (1).

1. Characters/letters can be erased or changed in several ways:
   - Tap the desired letter or word in the list.
   - Tap the delete button to erase the letter and start again.
   - Swipe horizontally from right to left[2] over the handwriting field. Erase several letters at once by swiping over the area several times.
   - Tap the X box in the text field to erase all written text.

**New lines in free-text fields in handwriting mode**

Create a new line by drawing above the characters in the handwriting field as shown in the illustration[3].

**Writing blank spaces in free-text fields**




Make a blank space by drawing a line from left to right[4].

## OMRON SOFTWARE

compactWnn © OMORON SOFTWARE Co.,Ltd. 2021 All Rights Reserved.

[1] Certain system languages only.

[2] For Arabic keyboards, swipe in the other direction. Swiping from right to left will create a blank space.

[3] For Arabic keyboards, draw the same character, but in mirror image.

[4] For Arabic keyboards, draw the line from right to left.

---

# 4.2.14. Changing keyboard language in the center display

In order to toggle between keyboard languages, the languages must first be added under **Settings**.

## Adding or deleting languages in Settings

The keyboard is automatically set to the same language as the system language. The keyboard language can be manually changed without affecting the system language.

1. Tap **Settings** in Top view.
2. Tap **System** → **System Languages and Units** → **Keyboard Layouts**.
3. Select one or more languages in the list.

> It is now possible to toggle between the selected languages using the keyboard.

If no language has been selected under **Settings**, the keyboard will remain in the same language as the vehicle's system language.

### Toggling between keyboard languages

If more than one language has been selected in **Settings**, the button in the keyboard can be used to switch between the different languages.

To toggle between keyboard languages from the list:

1. Press and hold the button.

> A list will appear.

2. Select the desired language. If more than four languages have been selected under **Settings**, you can scroll through the list shown on the keyboard.

> The keyboard and word suggestions will be adapted to the selected language.

To change keyboard language without displaying the list:

1. Tap the button.

> The keyboard layout will change to the next language in the list without displaying the list.

---

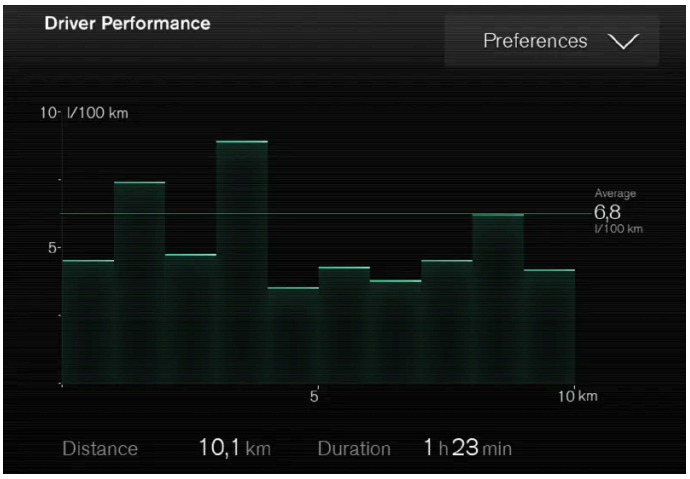
# 4.2.15. Displaying trip statistics in the center display

Trip computer statistics can be displayed graphically in the center display, providing an overview that facilitates more fuel-efficient driving.

Open the **Driver performance** app in the App view to display trip statistics.

Each bar in the graph represents a driving distance of 1 kilometers, 10 kilometers or 100 kilometers (or miles). The bars are added from the right as you drive. The bar at the far right shows the data for the current trip.

Average fuel consumption and total driving time are calculated from the most recent reset of the trip statistics.




Trip computer statistics [1].

[1] The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

---

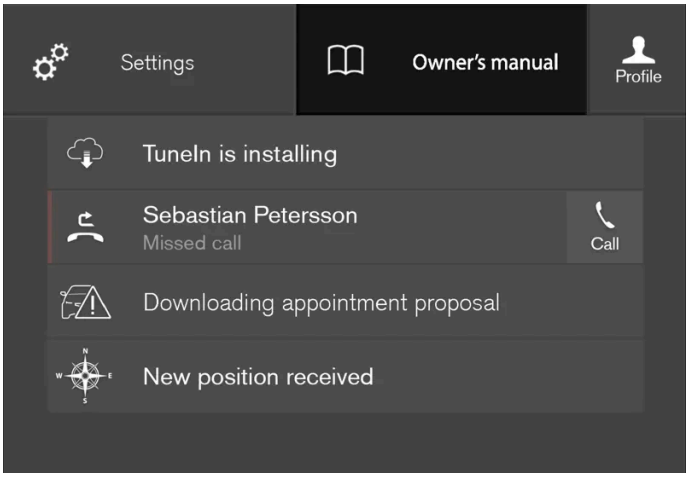
# 4.2.16. Owner's Manual in the center display

A digital version of the Owner's Manual is available in the vehicle's center display [1].

The digital Owner's Manual can be accessed from Top view and in certain cases, the contextual Owner's Manual can also be accessed from Top view.

> **Note**
>
> The digital Owner's Manual is not available during driving.

**OWNER'S MANUAL**

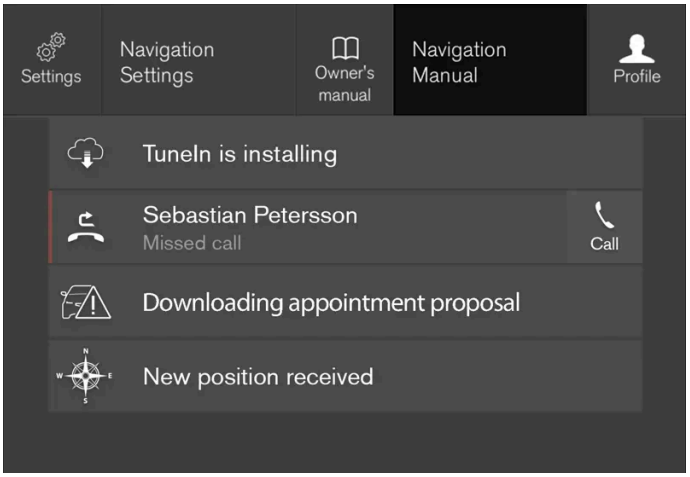



Top view with button for Owner's Manual.

To open the Owner's Manual, pull down Top view in the center display and tap **Owner's manual**.

The information in the Owner's Manual can be accessed directly via the Owner's Manual start page or via its Top menu.

**Contextual Owner's Manual**




Top view with button for contextual Owner's Manual.

The contextual Owner's Manual is a shortcut to an article in the Owner's Manual describing the active function displayed on the screen. When a contextual Owner's Manual is available, it will be shown to the right of **Owner's manual** in Top view.

Tap the contextual Owner's Manual to open an article in the Owner's Manual related to the information displayed on the screen. For example, tap **Navigation Manual** to open an article related to navigation.

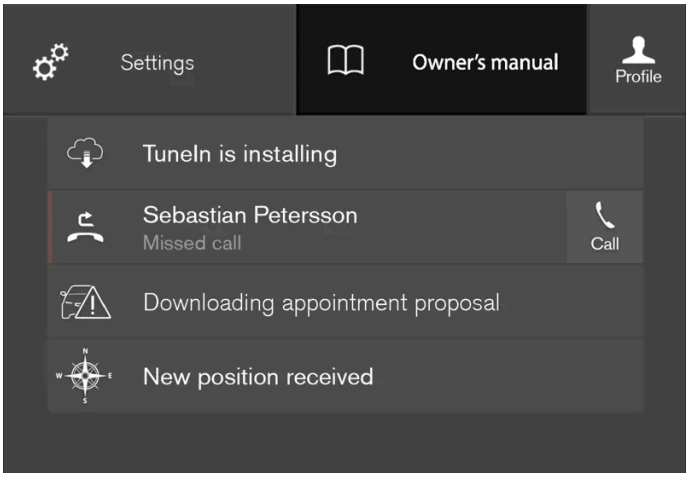
Certain apps in the vehicle only. For downloaded third-party apps, it is e.g. not possible to access app-specific articles.

[1] Available in most markets.

---

# 4.2.17. Navigate in the Owner's Manual in the center display

The digital Owner's Manual can be accessed from the center display's Top view. The contents are searchable and the sections are designed to be easy to navigate.



The Owner's Manual is accessed from Top view.

1. To open the Owner's Manual, pull down Top view in the center display and tap **Owner's manual**.

There are a number of ways to find information in the Owner's Manual. The options can be accessed from the Owner's Manual start page and from the Top menu.

## Opening the menu in the Top menu

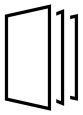
1. Tap ☰ in the upper list in the Owner's Manual.

> A menu will open, displaying different options for finding information:

**Start page**

Tap the symbol to return to the Owner's Manual start page.

**Categories**



The articles in the Owner's Manual are structured into main and sub-categories. The same article may appear in several relevant categories in order to help make them easier to find.

1. Tap **Categories**.

> The main categories are listed.

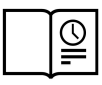
2. Tap a main category (❑).

> A list of sub-categories (❑) and articles (🗎) will appear.

3. Tap an article to open it.

To go back, tap the left arrow.

**Featured articles**



Tap the symbol to go to a page with links to a selection of useful articles about the vehicle's more commonly used features and functions. The articles can also be accessed via categories, but have been collected here for quicker access. Tap an article to read it in its entirety.

#### Exterior and interior hotspots

Exterior and interior overviews of the vehicle. Hotspots are provided for certain functions, components, etc. Tap a hotspot to come to a relevant article.

1. Press **Exterior** or **Interior**.

> Exterior or interior images of the vehicle are shown with hotspots. The hotspots lead to articles about the corresponding function, component, etc. Swipe the screen horizontally to scroll between the images.

2. Tap a hotspot.

> The title of a relevant article will be displayed.

3. Tap the title to open the article.

To go back, tap the left arrow.

#### Favorites

Tap the symbol to go to articles saved as favorites. Tap an article to read it in its entirety.

#### Saving or deleting favorite articles

Save an article as a favorite by tapping the ☆ at the upper right when the article is open. When an article has been saved as a favorite, the star symbol will be filled in: ★.

To remove an article from the list of favorites, tap its star again.

#### Video

Tap the symbol to go to brief instructive videos for various functions in the vehicle.

#### Information

Tap the symbol for information about the current version of the Owner's Manual in your vehicle and other useful information.

## Using the search function in the Top menu

1. Tap Q in the Owner's Manual upper menu. A keyboard will appear at the bottom of the screen.
2. Enter a search word, e.g. "seat belt".

> Suggested articles and categories will be displayed as characters are entered.

3. Tap the article or category to read it.

---

# 4.3. Head-up display

---

## 4.3.1. Head-up display*

The head-up display is a complement to the instrument panel and projects information from the instrument panel onto the windshield. The projected images can only be seen from the driver's seat.

The head-up display projects warnings and information related to speed, cruise control functions, navigation, etc. onto the windshield in the driver's field of vision. Traffic information and incoming phone calls can also be shown on the head-up display.

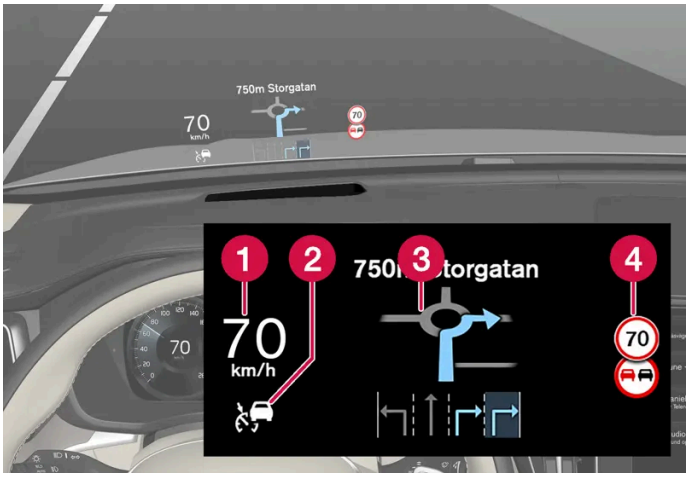
**Note**

The driver's ability to see information in the head-up display may be impeded by

- the use of polarizing sunglasses
- a driving posture in which the driver is not centered in the seat
- objects on the display unit's glass cover
- unfavorable lighting conditions.

**Important**

The information is projected from a display unit located in the dashboard. To help prevent damage to the display unit's glass cover, do not place any objects on the glass and prevent objects from falling onto it.




Examples of what might be shown on the display.

1. Speed
2. Cruise control
3. Navigation
4. Road signs

**Note**

People with certain types of vision problems may experience headaches or eye strain when using the head-up display.

## City Safety in head-up-display

If a collision warning is given, the information in the head-up display will be replaced by a City Safety warning signal. This graphic will illuminate even if the head-up display is turned off.

The warning symbol for City Safety will flash to get the driver's attention if there is a risk of collision.

### Symbols in head-up-display

A number of symbols may be projected temporarily onto the head-up display.

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Warning symbol – read the warning message in the instrument panel. |
| | Information symbol – read the message in the instrument panel. |
| | The snowflake symbol will illuminate if there is a risk of slippery conditions. |

* Option/accessory.

---

## 4.3.2. Replacing a windshield with head-up display*

Vehicles with a head-up display have a special type of windshield that meets the requirements for displaying projected information.

Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop for assistance replacing the windshield. The correct type of replacement windshield must be used in order for the head-up display to function properly.

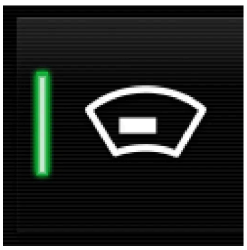
* Option/accessory.

---

## 4.3.3. Activating and deactivating the head-up display*

The head-up display can be activated and deactivated when the vehicle has been started.

Activate/deactivate the function in the center display's Function view.

1. 

   Tap the **Head-up Display** button.

> The head-up display is activated/deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.3.4. Head-up display settings*

Adjusting settings for the head-up display.

Settings can be adjusted when the vehicle is started and a projected image is displayed on the windshield.

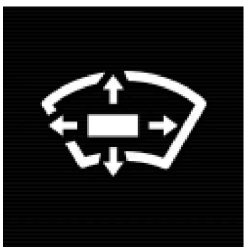
## Selecting display options

Select the functions to be shown in the head-up display.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Displays** → **Head-Up Display Options**.
3. Select one or more functions:
   - **Show Navigation**
   - **Show Road Sign Information**
   - **Show Driver Support**
   - **Show Phone**

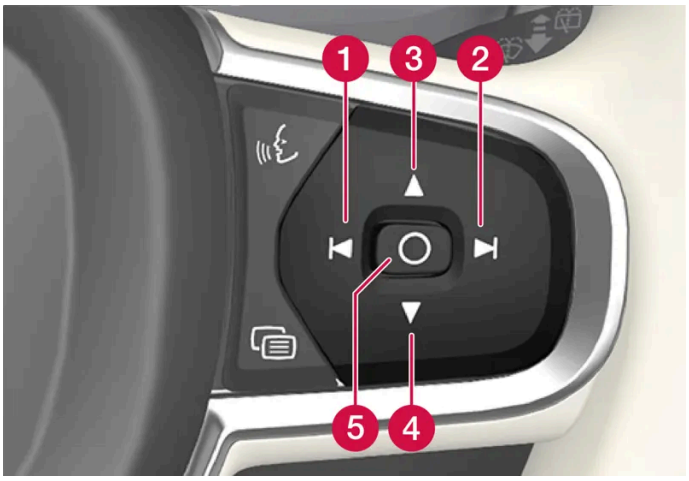
This setting is stored as a personal setting in the driver profile.

## Adjusting brightness and height position

1. 

   Press the **Head-up Display Adjustments** button in the center display's Function view.

2. Adjust the brightness of the projected image and the height position in the driver's field of vision using the right-side steering wheel lever.




1. Decreasing brightness
2. Increasing brightness
3. Raising position
4. Lowering position
5. Confirm

The brightness of the graphic is automatically adapted to the light conditions in its background. Brightness is also affected by adjustments to the brightness of the other displays in the vehicle.

The height position can be stored in the front power seat's* memory function using the keypad in the driver's door.

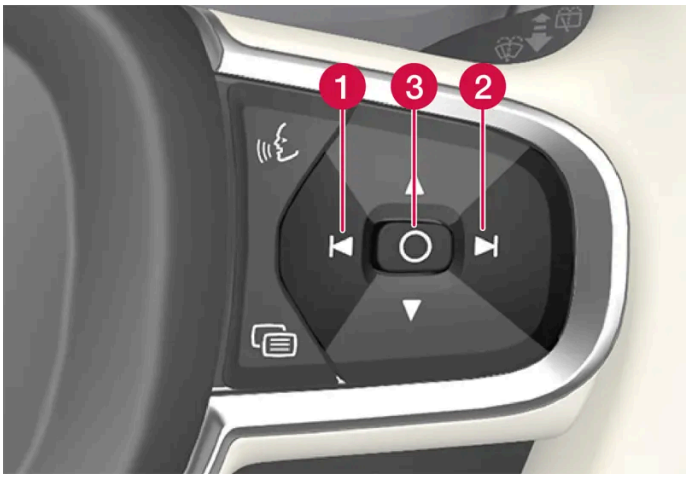
## Calibrating the horizontal position

If the windshield or display unit has been replaced, the head-up display's horizontal position may need to be calibrated. Calibration means that the projected image is rotated clockwise or counterclockwise.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.

2. Select **My Car** → **Displays** → **Head-Up Display Options** → **Head-Up Display Calibration**.

3. Calibrate the horizontal position of the image using the right-side steering wheel keypad.




1 Rotate counterclockwise

2 Rotate clockwise

3 Confirm

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.3.5. Cleaning the head-up display*

Carefully wipe the glass covering the head-up display unit with a clean and dry microfiber cloth. If necessary, the cloth may be slightly moistened.

Never use strong stain removers. For difficult cleaning conditions, a special cleaning agent can be purchased at a Volvo retailer.

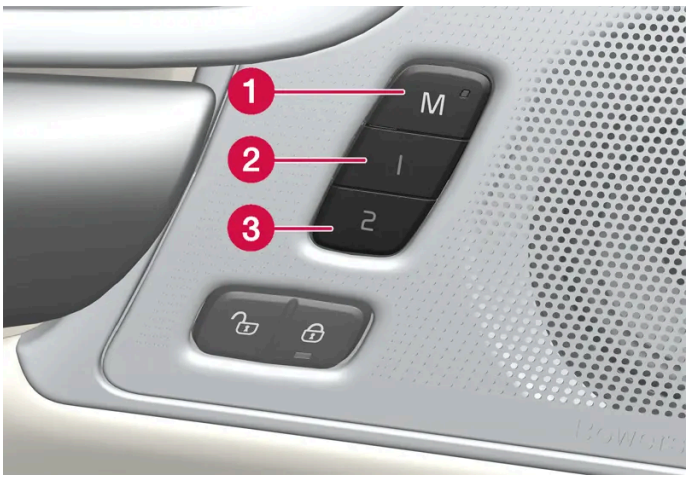
* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.3.6. Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display*

If the positions for the power* seat, door mirrors and head-up display* have been stored, they can be activated using the memory buttons.

## Using a stored position




A stored position can be used with the front door open or closed:

**Front door open**

1. Briefly press one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3). The power seats, door mirrors and head-up display will move and stop at the positions stored in that button.

**Front door closed**

1. Press and hold one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) until the seat, door mirrors and head-up display stop in the positions stored in that memory button.

If the memory button is released, the seat, door mirrors and head-up display will stop moving.

**Warning**

- This list point needs to be translated exactly to: "Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- The seat should be adjusted so that the brake pedal can be depressed fully. In addition, position the seat as far rearward as comfort and control allow.
- The seat rails on the floor must not be obstructed in any way when the seat is in motion.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Note**
>
> For the stored positions to work, all driver profiles need to be in **Protect Profile** mode.

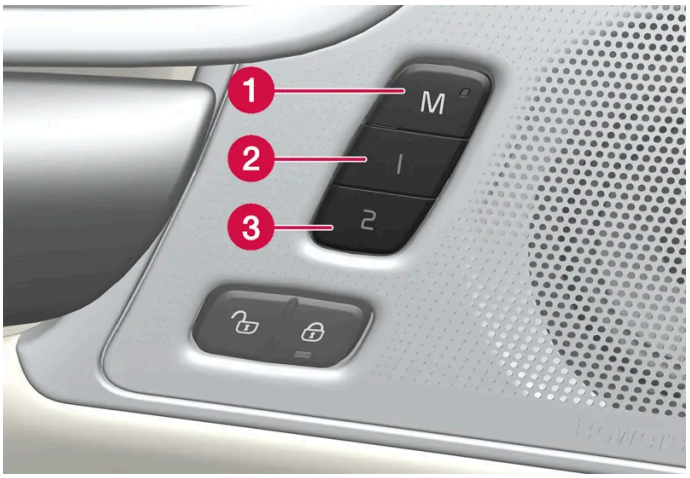
* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.3.7. Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display*

Adjustment settings for the power* seat, door mirrors and head-up display* can be stored in the memory buttons.

Two different positions for the power* seat, door mirrors and head-up display* can be stored using the memory buttons. The buttons are located on the inside of either one or both* front doors.




1 Button **M** for storing a setting.

2 Memory button.

3 Memory button.

## Storing positions

1. Adjust the seat, door mirrors and head-up display to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the M button. The indicator light in the button will illuminate.
3. Press and hold down button 1 or 2 within three seconds.

> When the position has been stored in the memory button, an audio signal will sound and the indicator light in the M button will go out.

If none of the memory buttons are pressed within three seconds, the M button will go out and no position will be stored.

The seats, door mirrors or head-up display must be readjusted before a new memory position can be set.

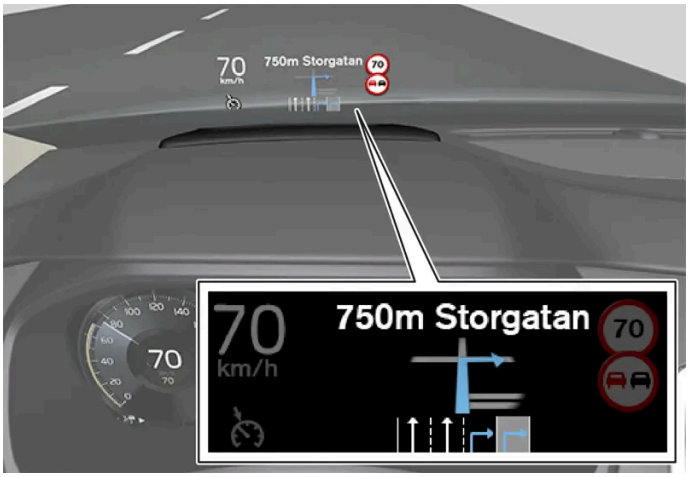
> **Note**
>
> For the stored positions to work, all driver profiles need to be in **Protect Profile** mode.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.3.8. Navigation system* in head-up display*

The navigation system can be presented and controlled in several different ways, e.g. via the head-up display.




Navigation system in windshield.

The driver can also get guidance and information from the navigation system in the head-up display on the lower section of the windshield.

You can make settings to specify if the navigation system should be shown in the head-up display, as well as the position of the information field.

* Option/accessory.

---

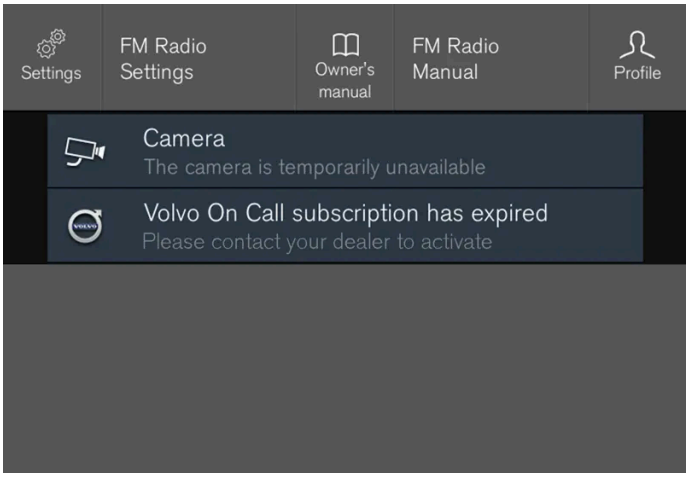
# 4.4. Symbols and messages

---

# 4.4.1. Handling messages

# 4.4.1.1. Messages in the center display

The center display shows messages in certain circumstances to inform or assist the driver.




Example of message in the center display's Top view.

Messages with lower priority for the driver are shown in the center display.

Most of the messages are shown in the center display's status bar. The message will disappear from the status bar after a short period of time or after the required action has been taken. Messages that need to be saved are stored in Top view in the center display.

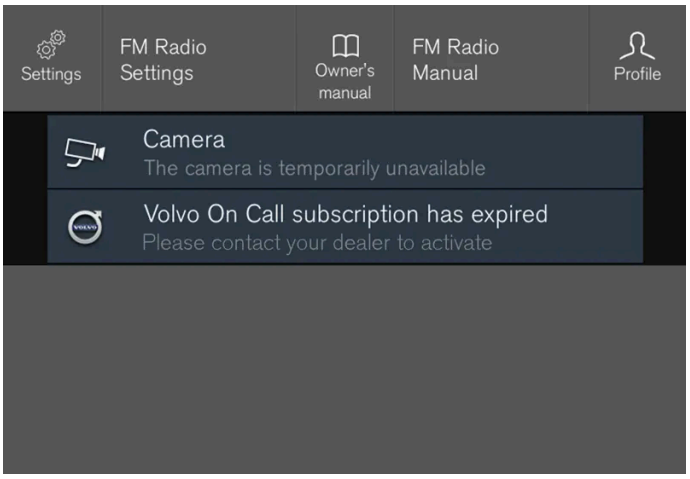
The message may be shown along with graphics, symbols or a button to e.g. activate/deactivate a function connected to the message.

#### Pop-up messages

Messages are sometimes shown as pop-up windows. Pop-up messages have a higher priority than messages shown in the status bar and require acknowledgment/action before they disappear.

# 4.4.1.2. Handling messages in the center display

Messages in the center display are handled in the center display's views.




Example of message in the center display's Top view.

Some messages in the center display have a button (or several buttons in a pop-up message) to e.g. activate/deactivate a function related to the message.

**Handling new messages**

For messages with buttons:

1. Tap the button to perform the action or let the message automatically time-out after a short period.

> The message will disappear from the status bar.

For messages without buttons:

1. Close the message by tapping it or let the message automatically time-out after a short period.

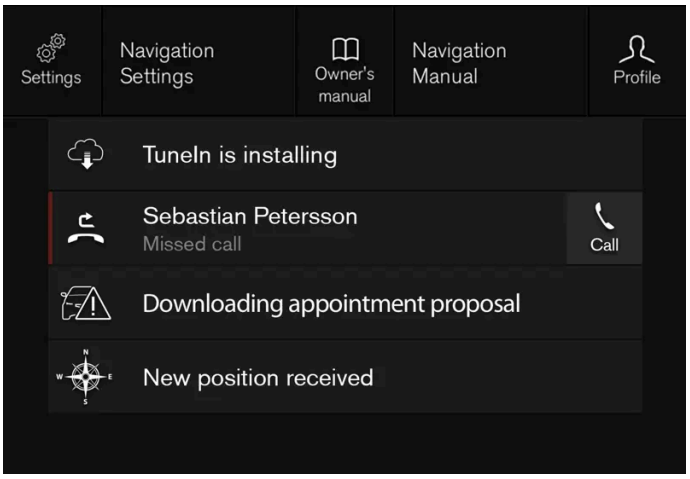
> The message will disappear from the status bar.

Messages that need to be saved are stored in Top view in the center display.

---

# 4.4.1.3. Handling messages saved from the center display

Messages saved from the instrument panel and center displays are handled in the center display.




Examples of saved messages and possible selections in Top view.

Messages that have been shown in the center display and that need to be saved are stored in the center display's Top view.

**Reading saved messages**

1. Open Top view in the center display.

> A list of saved messages will be displayed. Messages with an arrow to the right can be expanded.

2. Tap a message to expand/minimize it.

> More information about the message will appear in the list and the image to the left of the app will display information about the message in graphic form.

**Handling saved messages**

Some messages have a button to e.g. activate/deactivate a function related to the message.

1. Tap the button to perform the action.

Saved messages in Top view are automatically deleted when the ignition is switched off.

---

# 4.4.1.4. Messages in the instrument panel

The instrument panel shows messages in certain circumstances to inform or assist the driver.

Example of message in an 8-inch instrument panel. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

Example of message in the instrument panel. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

High-priority messages for the driver are displayed in the instrument panel.

The messages may appear in different parts of the instrument panel depending on what other information is currently being displayed. The message will disappear from the instrument panel after a short period of time or after it has been acknowledged or any required action has been taken. Messages that need to be saved are stored in the **Car Status** app, which can be opened from the App view in the center display.

The message may be shown along with graphics, symbols or buttons to e.g. acknowledge the message or accept a request.

#### Service messages

The following table lists a selection of important service messages and what they mean.

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| **Stop safely** [1] | Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - contact a workshop [2]. |
| **Turn off engine** [1] | Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - contact a workshop [2]. |
| **Service urgent Drive to workshop** [1] | Contact a workshop [2] to have the vehicle inspected immediately. |
| **Service required** [1] | Contact a workshop [2] to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible. |

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Regular maintenance<br>Book time for maintenance | Time for service - contact a workshop[2]. Shown before the next service date. |
| Regular maintenance<br>Time for maintenance | Time for service - contact a workshop[2]. Shown on the next service date. |
| Regular maintenance<br>Maintenance overdue | Time for service - contact a workshop[2]. Shown when the date for service has passed. |
| Temporarily off[1] | A function has been temporarily deactivated and will be reactivated automatically while driving or after the engine is restarted. |

[1] Part of message, shown along with information on the location of the problem.

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 4.4.1.5. Handling messages in the instrument panel

Messages in the instrument panel are controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Examples of messages in the instrument panel[1] and the right-side steering wheel keypad. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

Examples of messages in the instrument panel[2] and the right-side steering wheel keypad. The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

1 Left/right

2 Confirm

Some messages in the instrument panel contain one or more buttons for e.g. confirming the message or accepting a request.

**Handling new messages**

For messages with buttons:

1. Navigate between the buttons by tapping left or right (1).
2. Confirm your selection by pressing confirm (2).

> The message will disappear from the instrument panel.

For messages without buttons:

1. Close the message by pressing confirm (2) or let the message automatically time-out after a short period.

> The message will disappear from the instrument panel.

Messages that need to be saved are stored in the **Car Status** app, which can be opened from the App view in the center display. The message **Vehicle message stored in Car Status app** will simultaneously appear in the center display.

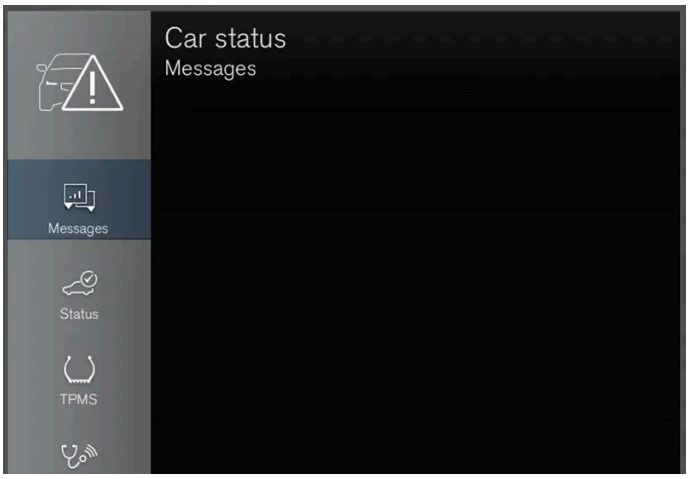
[1] With 8" instrument panel.

[2] With 12" instrument panel.

---

# 4.4.1.6. Handling messages saved from the instrument panel

Messages saved from the instrument panel and center displays are handled in the center display.




Saved messages can be viewed in the **Car Status** app.

The messages displayed in the instrument panel that need to be saved are stored in the **Car Status** app in the center display. The message **Vehicle message stored in Car Status app** will simultaneously appear in the center display.

#### Reading saved messages

To read a saved message immediately:

1. Tap the button to the right of the message **Vehicle message stored in Car Status app** in the center display.

> The saved message will be displayed in the **Car Status** app.

To read saved messages at a later time:

1. Open the **Car Status** app from App view in the center display.

> The app will open in the bottom tile of Home view.

2. Select the **Messages** tab in the app.

> A list of saved messages will be displayed.

3. Tap a message to expand/minimize it.

> More information about the message will appear in the list and the image to the left of the app will display information about the message in graphic form.

#### Handling saved messages

In expanded form, some messages have two buttons available for booking service or reading the Owner's Manual.

Booking service for saved messages:

1. With the message in expanded form, tap **Request appoint.**/**Call to make Appointment**[1] for assistance booking service.

> With **Request appoint.**: The **Appointments** tab will open in the app and create a request for a service/repair appointment. With **Call to make Appointment**: The phone app will open and call a service center to make an appointment for service or repairs.

Reading the Owner's Manual for saved messages:

1. With the message in expanded form, tap **Owner's manual** to read relevant information about the message in the Owner's Manual.

> The Owner's Manual will open in the center display and provide information related to the message.

Saved messages in the app are automatically deleted each time the engine is started.

[1] Market dependent. Volvo ID and selected workshop also need to be registered.

---

# 4.4.2. BLIS messages

A number of messages related to BLIS[1] may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| **Blind spot sensor Service required** | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[2]. |
| **Blind spot system off Trailer attached** | BLIS and CTA [3] have been deactivated because a trailer has been connected to the vehicle's electrical system. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Blind Spot Information

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[3] Cross Traffic Alert*

# 4.4.3. City Safety messages

A number of messages related to City Safety may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| City Safety<br>Automatic intervention | When City Safety is braking or has activated the automatic braking function, one or more symbols may illuminate in the instrument panel and a text message may be displayed. |
| City Safety<br>Reduced functionality Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[1]. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact a workshop[1].

[1] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

# 4.4.4. Cross Traffic Alert* messages

A number of messages related to Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Blind spot sensor<br>Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[1]. |
| Blind spot system off<br>Trailer attached | BLIS[2] and CTA have been deactivated because a trailer has been connected to the vehicle's electrical system. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[2] Blind Spot Information System

# 4.4.5. Electronic Stability Control symbols and messages

A number of symbols and messages related to Electronic Stability Control (ESC[1]) may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Steady glow for approx. 2 seconds | System check when the engine is started. |
| | Flashing light | The system is actively operating. |
| | Steady glow | Sport mode is activated. **NOTE!** The system is not deactivated in this mode, but has partially reduced functionality. |
| | ESC<br>Temporarily off | The system's functionality has been temporarily reduced due to high brake system temperatures. The function will be automatically reactivated when the brakes have cooled. |
| | ESC<br>Service required | The system is not functioning properly. Stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn off the engine and then restart it. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Electronic Stability Control

---

# 4.4.6. Symbols and messages for Adaptive Cruise Control*

A number of symbols and messages relating to Adaptive Cruise Control[1] (ACC[2]) may be displayed. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | The symbol is illuminated | The vehicle is maintaining the stored speed. |
| | **Adaptive Cruise Contr. Unavailable**<br>The symbol is extinguished | Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode. |
| | **Adaptive Cruise Contr. Service required**<br>The symbol is extinguished | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended. |
| | **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual** | Clean the windshield in front of the camera and radar sensors. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

---

# 4.4.7. Pilot Assist* symbols and messages

A number of symbols and messages relating to Pilot Assist[1] may be displayed. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Extinguished steering wheel symbol | Indicates that steering assistance is deactivated. When Pilot Assist is providing steering assistance, the steering wheel is illuminated. |
| | Symbol for hands on the steering wheel | The system cannot detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel. Place your hands on the steering wheel and actively steer the vehicle. |
| | **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual** | Clean the windshield in front of the camera and radar sensors. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

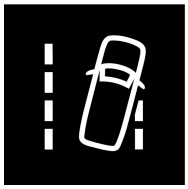
* Option/accessory.

[1] Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

---

# 4.4.8. Lane Keeping Aid symbols and messages

A number of symbols and messages related to Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Driver support system<br>Reduced functionality Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[2]. |
| | Windscreen sensor<br>Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual | The camera's ability to detect the lane in front of the vehicle is reduced. |
|  | Lane Keeping Aid<br>Apply steering | LKA's steering assistance is disabled when the driver's hands are not on the wheel. Follow the instructions and steer the vehicle. |
| | Lane Keeping Aid<br>Standby until steering applied | LKA will go into standby mode until the driver begins steering the vehicle again. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 4.4.9. Lane Keeping Aid display

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) uses symbols in the instrument panel for various situations.

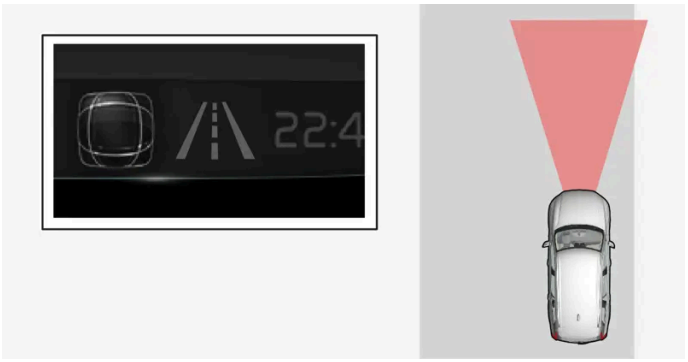
Some examples of symbols and descriptions of the situations in which they might appear are provided below.

**Available**

Available – the marker lines in the symbol are white.

Lane Keeping Aid is able to detect one or both of the traffic lane's side marker lines.

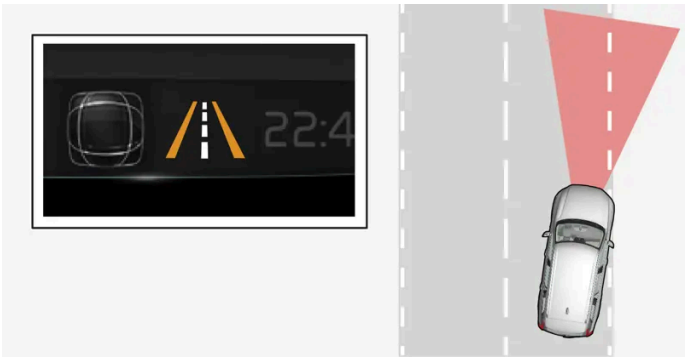
**Unavailable**



Unavailable – the marker lines in the symbol are extinguished.

Lane Keeping Aid is unable to detect the lane marker lines, the vehicle's speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

**Steering/warning indicator**



Steering/warning – the marker lines in the symbol are colored.

Indicates that the Lane Keeping Aid system is alerting the driver and/or attempting to steer the vehicle back into the lane.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

# 4.4.10. Park Assist Pilot* messages

Messages for Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) may be displayed in the instrument panel and/or the center display. Several examples are provided below.

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Park Assist System<br>Sensors blocked, cleaning needed | One or more of the sensors are blocked. Check and clean/remove the obstacle as soon as possible. |
| Park Assist System<br>Unavailable Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[2]. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Pilot

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 4.4.11. Park Assist symbols and messages

Symbols and messages for the Park Assist system (PAS[1]) may be displayed in the instrument panel and/or the center display. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | | The rear Park Assist sensors are **turned off** and no acoustic warnings for obstacles/objects will be provided. |
| | Park Assist System<br>Sensors blocked, cleaning needed | One or more of the sensors are blocked. Check and clean/remove the obstacle as soon as possible. |
| | Park Assist System<br>Unavailable Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[2]. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

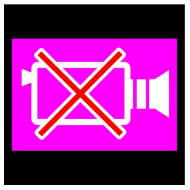
[1] Park Assist System

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 4.4.12. Park Assist Camera symbols and messages

Symbols and messages for the Park Assist Camera (PAC[1]) may be displayed in the instrument panel and/or the center display. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | | The rear Park Assist sensors are **turned off** and no acoustic warnings or field markings for obstacles/objects will be provided. |
|  | | The camera is not functioning properly. |
| | **Park Assist System Sensors blocked, cleaning needed** | One or more of the sensors are blocked. Check and clean/remove the obstacle as soon as possible. |
| | **Park Assist System Unavailable Service required** | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[2]. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

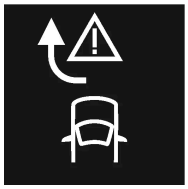
[1] Park Assist Camera

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 4.4.13. Symbols and messages for steering assistance during collision risks

A number of symbols and messages related to steering assistance may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
|  | Collision avoidance<br>Automatic intervention | When the function is activated, a message will appear to alert the driver. |
| | Windscreen sensor<br>Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual | The camera's ability to detect the lane in front of the vehicle is reduced. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists: Contact a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 4.4.14. Symbols in the center display status bar

Overview of symbols displayed in the center display status bar.

The status bar shows current vehicle activities and in certain cases, also their status. Due to the limited space in the status bar, not all symbols will be displayed at all times.

| Symbol | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | Connected to the Internet. |
| | Roaming activated. |
|  | Cell phone network signal strength. |
|  | Bluetooth device connected. |
|  | Bluetooth activated but no device connected. |
|  | Information sent to and from GPS. |
| | Connected to Wi-Fi network. |
| | Tethering activated (Wi-Fi hotspot). This means that the vehicle shares an available Internet connection. |
| | Vehicle modem activated. |
|  | USB sharing active. |
| | Phone is wirelessly charging. |
| | Action in progress. |
| | Timer for preconditioning active.[1] |
| | Audio source being played. |
| | Audio source paused. |
| | Phone call in progress. |
| | Audio source muted. |
| | News broadcasts from current radio station.[2] |
| | Traffic information being received.[2] |
|  | Clock. |

[1] Only hybrid models.

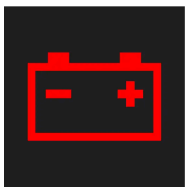
[2] Not available in all markets.

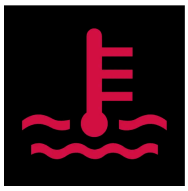
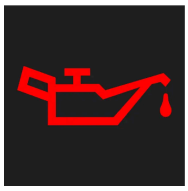
---

# 4.4.15. Indicator and warning symbols

Indicator and warning symbols alert the driver that a function is active, that a symbol is working, or that an error or serious fault has occurred.

# Red symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| | **WARNING**<br>The red warning symbol illuminates to indicate that a fault has been detected that could affect safety or driveability. An explanatory message will be simultaneously displayed in the instrument panel.<br>The warning symbol may also illuminate in combination with other symbols. |
| | **Seat belt reminder**<br>Lights up or flashes when a someone in the vehicle has not fastened their seat belt. |
| | **Airbags**<br>A fault has been detected in one of the vehicle's safety systems.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. |
| <br>[1]<br> <br>[2] | **Fault in brake system**<br>A fault has occurred in the brake system.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. |
| <br>[1]<br> <br>[2] | **Parking brake**<br>Steady glow: the parking brake is activated.<br>Flashing: a fault has occurred in the parking brake. Read the message in the instrument panel. |
|  | **Fault in electrical system**<br>A fault has occurred in the electrical system.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. |

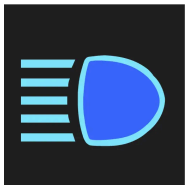
| | |
|---|---|
|  | **High engine temperature**<br>The engine's temperature is too high. Read the message in the instrument panel. |
| | **Collision risk**<br>City Safety warns the driver if there is a risk of a collision with another vehicle, pedestrian, cyclist or large animal. |
|  | **Low oil pressure**<br>The engine's oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level. Add oil if necessary.<br>If this symbol lights up and the oil level is normal, read the message in the instrument panel and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. |

## Amber symbols

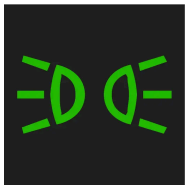
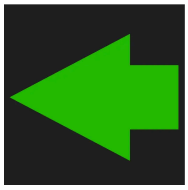
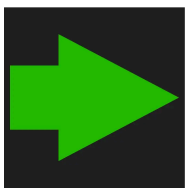
| | |
|---|---|
| | **Information**<br>A problem has occurred in one of the vehicle's systems. Read the message in the instrument panel.<br>The information symbol may also illuminate in combination with other symbols. |
| <br>[1]<br> <br>[2] | **Fault in brake system**<br>A fault has occurred in the brake system. Read the message in the instrument panel. |
| <br>[1]<br> <br>[2] | **Fault in ABS system**<br>The system is not functioning properly. The vehicle's regular brakes will still work, but without the ABS function. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Emission control system**<br>Fault in emission control system. Have the vehicle checked by a workshop. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. |
| | **Rear fog light**<br>Rear fog light on. |
| | **Tire pressure system**<br>Tire pressure low.<br>If there is a fault in the tire pressure system, the symbol will first flash for approximately 1 minute and then glow steadily. This may occur if the system cannot detect or alert the driver of low tire pressure as intended. |
| | **Fault in headlight system**<br>A fault has occurred in the headlight system. Read the message in the instrument panel. |
| | **Lane Keeping Aid**<br>Lane Keeping Aid is alerting/intervening. |
| | **Stability system**<br>Steady glow: a fault has occurred in the system.<br>Flashing: the system is working. |
| | **Stability system, Sport mode**<br>Sport mode is activated. |

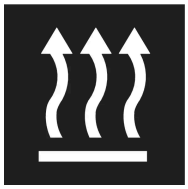
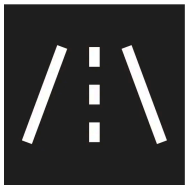
## Blue symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Active high beam**<br>Active high beam is activated and on. |
|  | **High beams**<br>High beams on. |

## Green symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| <br>[1] | **Auto-hold brake**<br>The function is activated and the brakes or the parking brake are being used. |
| | **Front fog light**<br>Front fog light on. |
|  | **Parking lights**<br>Parking lights on. |
|  <br>  | **Left/right turn signals**<br>Turn signal in use. |

## White/gray symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Active high beam**<br>Active high beam is activated but not on. |
|  | **Preconditioning**<br>Engine and passenger compartment heater/air conditioning is preconditioning the vehicle. |
|  | **Lane Keeping Aid**<br>White symbol: Lane Keeping Aid is on and lane marker lines are detected.<br>Gray symbol: Lane Keeping Aid is on but no lane marker lines are detected. |
| | **Rain sensor**<br>The rain sensor is activated. |

[1] Canadian models.

[2] US models.

# 4.4.16. Parking climate symbols and messages*

A number of symbols and messages related to parking climate may be displayed in the instrument panel.

Messages related to parking climate can also be displayed in a device that has the Volvo Cars app*.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Parking climate<br>Service required | Parking climate is not functioning properly. Contact a workshop[1] to have the system checked as soon as possible. |
| | Parking climate<br>Temporarily<br>unavailable | Parking climate is temporarily not functioning properly. If the problem persists, contact a workshop[1] to have the system checked. |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

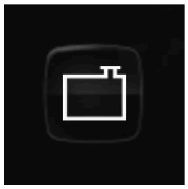
# 4.4.17. Overheating of engine and transmission

In certain driving conditions, such as driving in mountainous areas or hot weather, there is a risk of the engine or transmission overheating, especially when carrying heavy loads.

- Engine power may be temporarily limited.
- Remove any auxiliary lights mounted in front of the grille when driving in hot weather.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system becomes too high, a warning symbol will appear in the instrument panel along with the message **Engine temperature High temperature Stop safely**. Pull over to a safe location and let the engine idle for a few minutes to cool down.
- If the message **Engine temperature High temperature Turn off engine** or **Engine coolant Level low, turn off engine** is displayed, stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
- If the transmission begins to overheat, an alternative gear shifting program will be selected. An integrated protective function will also be activated, the warning symbol will illuminate and the message **Transmission warm Reduce speed to lower temperature** or **Transmission hot Stop safely, wait for cooling** will be displayed in the instrument panel. Follow the recommendations given by reducing speed or stopping the vehicle safely and letting the engine idle for a few minutes to let the transmission cool.
- If the vehicle begins to overheat, the air conditioning may be temporarily switched off.
- After a prolonged period of driving in demanding conditions, do not turn off the engine immediately after stopping.

> **Note**
>
> It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a short time after the engine is switched off.

## Symbols in the instrument panel

| Symbol | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | High engine temperature. Follow the recommendations provided. |
|  | Low coolant level. Follow the recommendations provided. |
| | Transmission hot/overheated/cooling. Follow the recommendations provided. |

# 4.4.18. Automatic transmission symbols and messages

If a problem occurs with the transmission, a symbol and a message are displayed in the instrument panel.

> **Important**
>
> Check the operating temperature of the transmission to help avoid damage to any of the drive system components. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol will appear in the instrument panel and a text message will be displayed. Follow the recommendations given.

| Symbol | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | A fault has occurred in the transmission.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel. |
| | Hot or overheated transmission.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel. |
| | Temporary fault in driveline.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel. |

# 4.5. Voice recognition

## 4.5.1. Climate control system voice commands [1]

Voice commands can be used for the climate control system to e.g. change temperature, activate seat heating* or change blower speed.

Tap and say one of the following commands:

- "**Climate**" - starts a command dialog for climate controls and provides examples of commands that can be used.
- "**Set temperature to X degrees**" - sets desired temperature.
- "**Raise temperature**"/"**Lower temperature**" - raises/lowers the set temperature.
- "**Sync temperature**" - synchronizes the temperature for all climate zones in the vehicle with the temperature set for the driver's side.
- "**Air on feet**"/"**Air on body**" - opens the desired air vent.
- "**Air on feet off**"/"**Air on body off**" - closes the desired air vent.
- "**Set fan to max**"/"**Turn off fan**" - changes blower speed to **Max**/**Off**.
- "**Raise fan speed**"/"**Lower fan speed**" - raises/lowers the set blower speed.
- "**Turn on auto**" - activates automatic climate control.
- "**Air condition on**"/"**Air condition off**" - activates/deactivates air conditioning.
- "**Recirculation on**"/"**Recirculation off**" - activates/deactivates air recirculation.
- "**Turn on defroster** "/"**Turn off defroster**" - activates/deactivates window and door mirror defrosting.
- "**Turn on max defroster**"/"**Turn off max defroster**" - activates/deactivates max defroster.
- "**Turn on rear defroster**"/"**Turn off rear defroster**" - Activates/deactivates heated rear window and door mirrors.
- "**Turn steering wheel heat on**"/"**Turn steering wheel heat off**" - activates/deactivates heated steering wheel*.
- "**Raise steering wheel heat**"/"**Lower steering wheel heat**" - raises/lowers the level of steering wheel heating*.
- "**Turn on seat heat**"/"**Turn off seat heat**" – activates/deactivates driver's seat heating*.
- "**Raise seat heat**"/"**Lower seat heat**" – raises/lowers the level of driver's seat heating*.
- "**Turn on seat ventilation**"/"**Turn off seat ventilation**" – activates/deactivates driver's seat ventilation*.
- "**Raise seat ventilation**"/"**Lower seat ventilation**" – raises/lowers the level of driver's seat ventilation*.

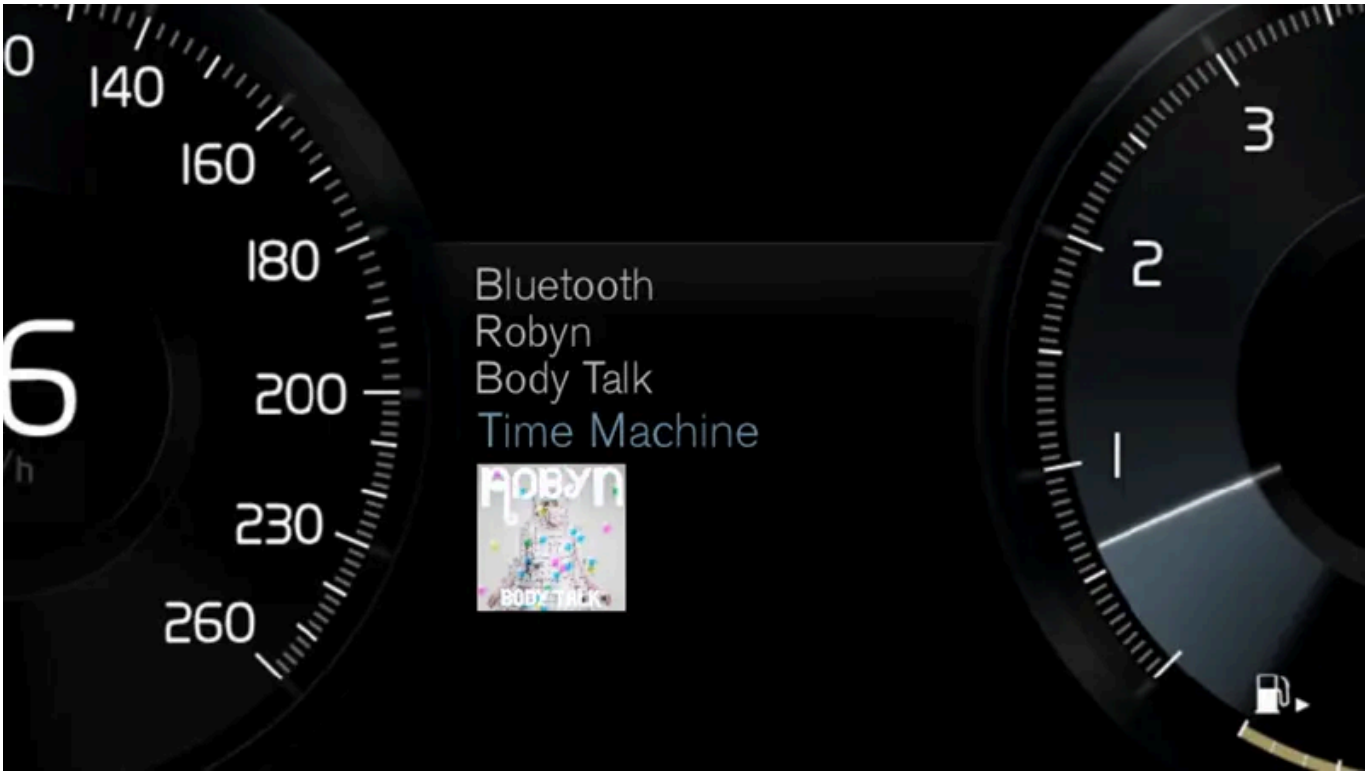
> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

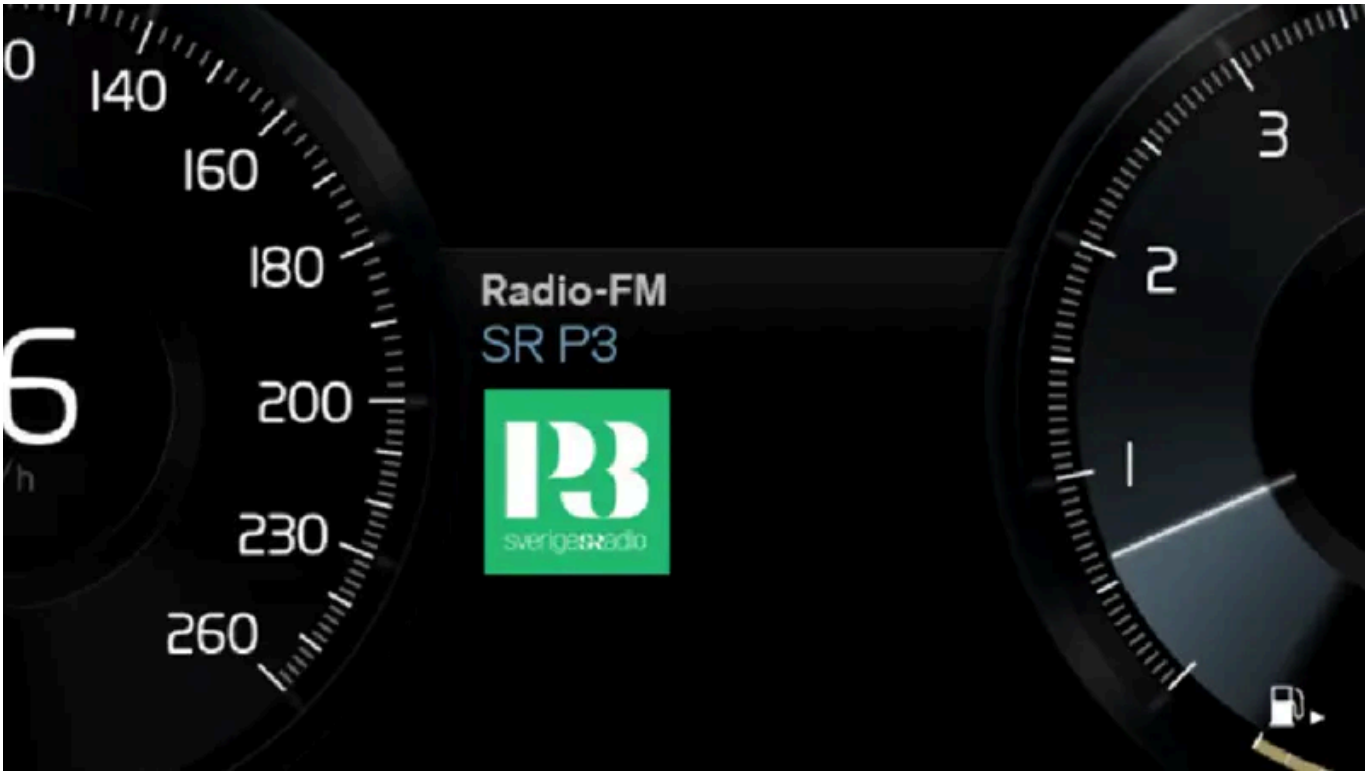
[1] Certain markets only.

* Option/accessory.

# 4.5.2. Voice control for radio and media

Voice commands for the radio and media player are shown below[1].




Tap and say one of the following commands:

- "**Media**" - initiates a dialog for media and radio and displays examples of commands.

- "**Play[artist]**" - plays music by the selected artist.
- "**Play[song title]**" - plays the selected song.
- "**Play[song title]from[album]**" - plays the selected song from the selected album.
- "**Play[radio station]**" - starts the selected radio station.
- "**Tune to [frequency]**" - tunes to the selected radio frequency in the currently active waveband. If no radio source is active, the FM band will be started as default.
- "**Tune to [frequency][waveband]**" - tunes to the selected radio frequency on the selected waveband.
- "**Radio**" - starts FM radio.
- "**Radio FM**" - starts FM radio.
- "**SiriusXM**" - starts SiriusXM radio*
- "**USB**" - starts playback from USB.
- "**iPod**" - starts playback from iPod.
- "**Bluetooth**" - starts playback from a Bluetooth-connected media source.
- "**Similar music**" - plays music from a USB-connected device with music similar to that currently playing.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

[1] Certain markets only.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 4.5.3. Voice Control

Voice control[1] allows you to control functions in the vehicle, e.g. the climate control system, radio or a Bluetooth-connected phone, using spoken commands. In vehicles equipped with Sensus Navigation*, the navigation system can also be controlled using voice commands.

## What is voice control?

Voice control is a driver support function that can simplify the use of various commands in your vehicle. To use voice control, certain specific commands must be spoken. It can therefore be a good idea to familiarize yourself with how, and in what order, a voice command should be spoken to get the desired result.

You can control certain infotainment and climate control functions through the voice control system by using voice commands. The system can respond verbally and by displaying information in the instrument panel.

**Warning**

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is operated in a safe manner and that all applicable traffic regulations are followed.

Voice control microphone

## System updates

The voice control system is continuously improved. It is recommended to always have the latest version installed.

**Note**

Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

[1] Certain markets only.

* Option/accessory.

# 4.5.4. Use voice recognition

A number of functions in the vehicle can be controlled using your voice. Here is an introduction to using voice control and examples of different commands.

## Starting voice control [1]

Voice commands are given through a "dialog" with the voice control system. Press the button for voice control on the right-side steering wheel keypad to activate the system and initiate a voice command dialog. When you press the button, a beep will sound and the voice control symbol will appear in the instrument panel.

This shows that the system has begun listening and you can now begin speaking commands. As soon as you start speaking, the system will be trained to recognize and understand your voice. This takes several seconds and is done automatically, which means that you don't need to manually initiate any voice training.

These may include:

- Wait until after the tone, and then speak in your normal voice at a normal speed.
- Do not speak while the system is responding (the system is unable to process commands during this time).
- Avoid background noises in the passenger compartment by keeping doors, windows and the panoramic roof* closed.

**Note**

Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

Generally, the system will listen for a basic command that is then followed by more detailed commands specifying what you want the system to do.

To change the audio volume of the system, turn the volume knob while the voice is speaking. It is possible to use other buttons while voice commands are being given. However, because other audio is silenced during dialog with the system, it is not possible to perform any functions connected to audio using the buttons.

## Canceling voice control

To cancel voice control, do one of the following:

- Briefly press and say "**Cancel**".
- Press and hold the steering wheel keypad's voice command button until two audible signals are given. This cancels voice control even when the system is speaking.

Voice control will also be canceled if you do not respond during a dialog. The system will first ask three times for a response and if the response is still not given, voice control will be automatically canceled.

To speed up communication and skip prompts from the system, press the voice control button on the steering wheel keypad. This will interrupt the system's response and you can say the next command.

## Voice command examples

1. Tap .
2. Say "**Call [First name][Last name][number category]**", e.g. "**Call RobynSmithcellular**".

> The system will call the selected contact from the phone book. If the contact has several phone numbers (e.g. home, cell, work), the right category must also be given.

## Commands/phrases

The following commands can usually be used in any situation:

- "**Repeat**" - repeats the most recent voice command in the current dialog.
- "**Cancel**" - cancels the dialog.[2]
- "**Help**" - initiates a help dialog. The system responds with commands that can be used in the current situation, an instruction or an example.

Commands for specific functions, such as phone and audio, are described in the sections related to that function.

#### Numbers

Number commands can be given in different ways depending on the function to be controlled:

- **Phone numbers and zip codes** should be given by stating each number individually, e.g. "zero, three, one, two, two, four, four, three" (03122443).
- **Addresses** can be given by stating each number individually or in a group, e.g. "two, two" or "twenty-two" (22). For English and Dutch language settings, groups of numbers can also be said in sequence, e.g. "twenty-two, twenty-two" (22 22). For English, double or triple digits can also be used, e.g. "double zero" (00). Numbers in the range 0-2300 can be used.

- **Frequencies** can be given as "ninety-eight point eight" (98.8), "one hundred four point two" or "hundred and four point two" (104.2).

#### Speech rate and repeat mode

The speed at which the system speaks can be adjusted.

With repeat mode on, the system will repeat what you have said.

To change the speech rate or activate/deactivate repeat mode:

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **System** → **Voice Control** and select settings.
   - **Repeat Voice Command**
   - **Speech Rate**

[1] Certain markets only.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Note that this only cancels the dialog when the system is not speaking. To cancel dialog while the system is speaking, press and hold until you hear two beeps.

---

# 4.5.5. Updating voice control

Volvo is working constantly on improving voice control in your vehicle. You can download files yourself for updating your vehicle's voice control. Updating takes place in two stages using an empty USB memory.

## Preparations

The new voice control files can be downloaded to an empty USB memory of at least 8 GB. The memory must have one of the following formats: FAT32, NTFS or exFAT.

## Downloading

You can find current updates on the support site under the tab for downloading software. You access the information for the relevant vehicle by selecting your vehicle and model year. Click on the update you wish to perform and then follow the instructions below. Voice command files are downloaded using a program that is installed on your computer.

## Instructions

1. Select the download link for either Windows or Mac, depending on which system you have.

2. Select **Execute** to install the download program.
3. Click **New download** to download the file to a USB memory.
4. You can verify that the download/copying to the USB memory has worked correctly before you install the file in the vehicle by repeating steps 1-2 and then pressing **Check downloads** in the download program.
5. Take the USB memory with the downloaded file to your vehicle and start the infotainment system.
6. Insert the USBmemory in the USB port. If there are two USB ports, the second one must not be used at the same time.
7. The system automatically detects that an update is available and during the update the screen shows how much of the process remains, counted as a percentage.
8. When the installation is complete a notification is shown advising that the updated file is available after the next restart. The USB memory can now be removed.

   If there are any problems with the update, contact your customer support or Volvo retailer.

### Updating tips

- An update takes about half an hour and the infotainment system must be on. Use a battery charger or keep the vehicle's engine running while the update is in progress, for example during a trip.
- New voice control files for download are launched twice a year.

---

# 4.5.6. Tips for improving voice control

A few tips that might be useful to bear in mind when using voice control are listed.

If the voice control system does not respond as expected, this may be due to a variety of factors. Examples include:

- Ensure you are speaking in the language that is selected as system language and that your selected language is supported by voice control.
- Try saying "**Help**" for guidance on what it is possible to say using voice control. If you feel that the system doesn't understand what you are saying, it may be that the system doesn't support that phrase.
- Speak at a natural pace and using a normal conversational tone. Do not speak so slowly that the system does not understand you, it impairs recognition.
- Remember that in certain situations, the system must search a large database to give you the right feedback, in these situations, it is difficult to provide the exact right response. A list of possible answers is then presented in the vehicle's display.
- The voice control system in your vehicle is under continuous improvement. You can download update files yourself.

---

# 4.5.7. Voice control settings

Settings for the voice control system are made here[1].

**Settings → System → Voice Control**

Settings can be personalized in the following areas:

- **Repeat Voice Command**
- **Gender**
- **Speech Rate**

### Sound settings

Select sound settings under:

**Settings → Sound → System Volumes → Voice Control**

### Language settings

The voice control system is not available for all languages. The languages available for voice commands are indicated by the icon in the list of languages.

Changing the language here will also change the language in the menus, messages and help texts.

**Settings → System → System Languages and Units → System Language**

[1] Certain markets only.

---

# 4.5.8. Voice control command list for the navigation system*

Several of the navigation system's functions can be activated with voice commands. Here is a list of these.

Tap on the right-side steering wheel keypad and say one of the following commands:

- "**Navigation**" - Starts a navigation dialog and displays examples of commands.
- "**Take me home**" - Guidance is provided to the location set as **Home**.
- "**Go to [city]**" - Inputs a city as a destination, e.g. "Go to San Francisco".
- "**Go to [address]**" - Inputs an address as a destination. An address must contain city and street. e.g. "Go to Filbert Street 5, San Francisco".
- "**Add intersection**" - Starts a dialog to input two streets. The destination will then be the intersection of these two streets.
- "**Go to [zip code]**" - Input a zip code as the destination. e.g. "Go to 1 2 3 4 5".
- "**Go to [contact]**" - Input an address from the phone book as the destination. Example "Go to Robyn Smith"[1].

- "**Search [POI category]**" - Search Points of Interest (POI) in a certain category (e.g. restaurants)[2]. To sort the list along the route, say "**Along the route**" when the list of results is displayed.
- "**Search [POI category]** in **[city]**" - Searches for POIs in a certain category and city. The list of results is sorted based on the center point of the city. Example "Search restaurant in San Francisco".
- "**Search [POI name]**". Example "Search Zuni Café".
- "**Change country/Change state**[3],[4]" - Changes the search area for navigation.
- "**Show favorites**" – Displays stored locations in the instrument panel.
- "**Clear itinerary**" - Deletes all stored waypoints and destinations in an itinerary.
- "**Repeat voice guidance**" - Repeats the most recent guidance instruction.
- "**Turn off voice guidance**" - Guidance off.
- "**Turn on voice guidance**" - Guidance on.

The following commands can usually be used in any situation:

- "**Repeat**" - repeats the most recent voice command in the current dialog.
- "**Help**" - initiates a help dialog. The system responds with commands that can be used in the current situation, an instruction or an example.
- It is possible to cancel voice control both when the system is quiet and when it is speaking.
  - "**Cancel**" – cancels the dialog when the system is quiet.
  - Press and hold until two beeps sound – cancels the dialog even if the system is speaking.

#### Addresses

When an address is entered, the search area is defined as the search area that is preset in the navigation system. You can change to another search area. If the new search area has a different language than the set system language, the system will automatically switch to another recognition engine. Because of this, the address should be given in the language used in the new search area.

> **Note**
>
> Note that addresses are searchable only for the country or state the navigation system is set to. To search for addresses in another country or state, you must first change the search area.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

* Option/accessory.

[1] For addresses to be found in the map database, they must be entered correctly in the phone book (without spelling mistakes, abbreviations, etc.). To check spelling, go to wego.here.com [https://wego.here.com]

[2] The user can choose to call the POI or enter it as a destination.

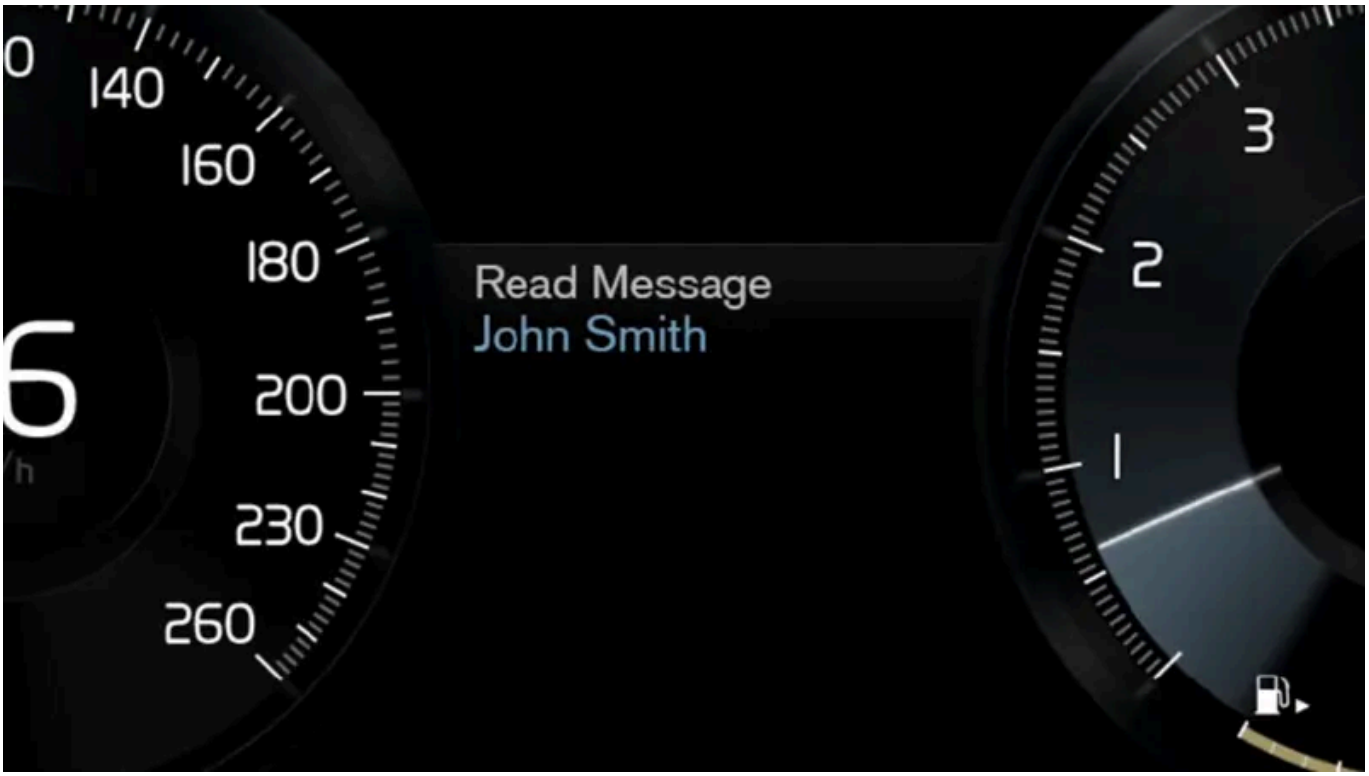
[3] For European countries, "country" is used instead of "state".

[4] For Brazil and India, search area is changed in the center display.

---

# 4.5.9. Voice control for cellular phones

Call a contact in the phone book, have a text message read aloud or dictate short messages using voice commands to a Bluetooth-connected phone.[1]




To access a contact in the phone book, the voice command must contain the contact information entered in the phone book. If a contact, e.g. **Robyn Smith**, has several phone numbers listed in the phone book, a number category such as **home** or **cellular** can also be specified, i.e. "**Call RobynSmithcellular**".

Tap and say one of the following commands:

- "**Call [contact]**" - call the selected contact from the phone book.
- "**Call[phone number]**" - call a phone number.
- "**Recent calls**" - display the list of recent calls.
- "**Read message**" - read a text message aloud. If there are several messages, select the message to read aloud.
- "**Message to [contact]**" – the user is prompted to speak a short message. The message will then be read aloud and the user can choose to send [2] or re-dictate the message. The vehicle must be connected to the Internet to access this function.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

[1] Certain markets only.

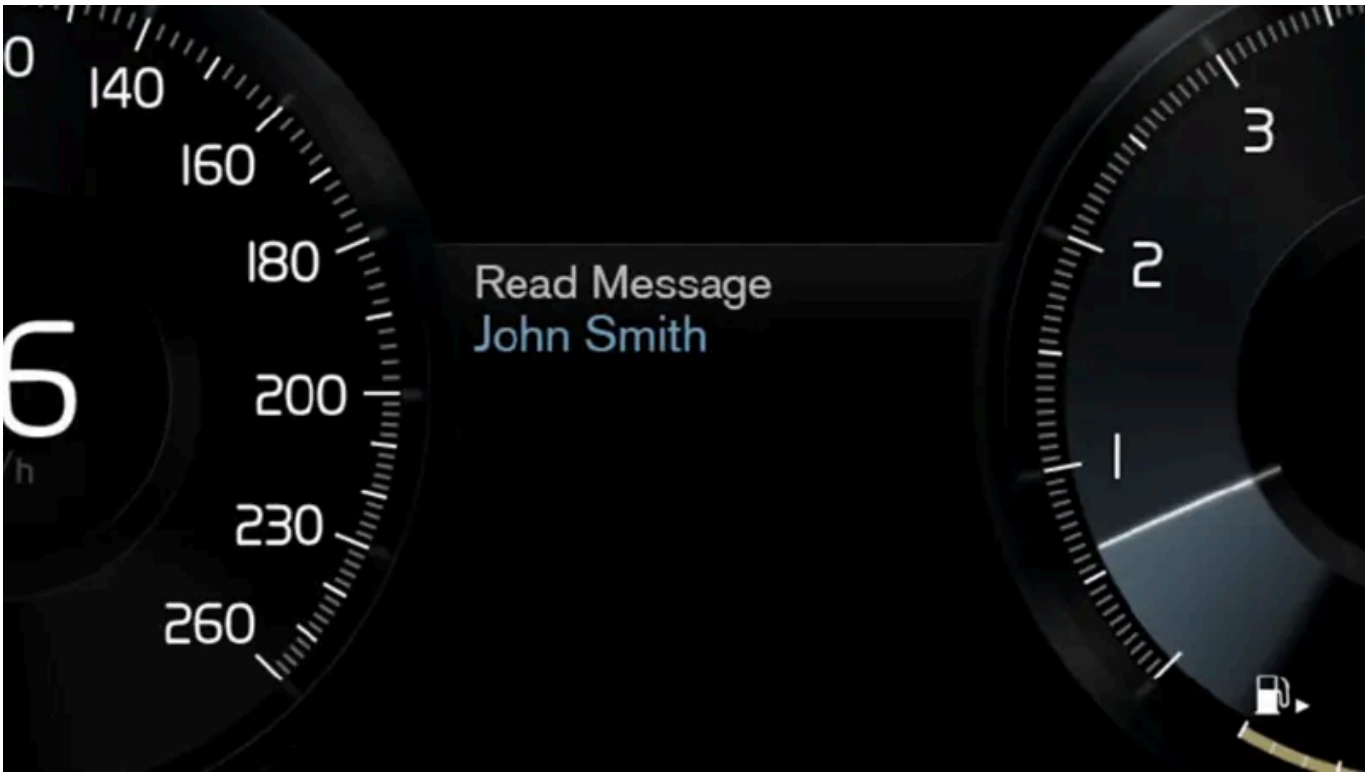
[2] Not all phones can send messages via the vehicle.

---

# 4.5.10. Text message voice recognition

Voice recognition allows you to control functions in the vehicle, e.g. reading out text messages from a connected mobile phone.

## Reading out text messages




Settings and menus in the center display vary depending on software version.

Before voice commands for the cellular phone's functions (text messages, phone calls and media player) can be used, a cellular phone must be connected to the vehicle.

To read out a text message, press the voice recognition button on the right-hand side of the steering wheel and say "**Read message**".

### Reading out text messages from an iPhone

To read out text messages from an iPhone, you must change a setting in your phone so that messages can be sent from the phone to the vehicle.

1. Go to **Settings**.
2. Select **Bluetooth**.
3. Click on the info symbol (i) for the connection to your vehicle.
4. Turn on **Show notes**.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

---

## 4.5.11. Voice control for navigation system*

If your vehicle is equipped with Sensus Navigation, you can use voice commands to control parts of your navigation system.

### Start navigation

Here is an introduction to how you can begin using voice commands to control the navigation system in your vehicle.

## To activate a navigation command

1. Press the steering wheel keypad's voice control button .

> You can now give commands, e.g. "**Navigation**", which will start a navigation dialog and show examples of commands.

**Note**

Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

## Using voice control to get directions to an address

To get directions to a specific address, use the command **Go to** followed by the address. It is important that the address is given in the right order. To use voice control for route guidance to an address, the address must be said in the following order: (1) street address, (2) house number, (3) city, as shown in the following example.

1. Give the command **Go to**.

> You can now say the address you would like route guidance to.

2. Say the street, e.g. Lombard Street"
3. Say the house number, e.g. "five"
4. Say the city, e.g. "San Francisco"

> The full command will then be: "**Go to** Lombard Street 5, San Francisco". Provided the address is found in the system, the navigation system will now provide route guidance to the address.

#### Using voice control for route guidance to an address in another country or another state

Your navigation system uploads sets of maps for the country or state it believes your vehicle is located in. This means that for accurate route guidance across country or state borders, you need to first tell the system in which country or state the address you would like route guidance to is located. You do this by using the command **Change country** or **Change state**. (Command **Change state** is primarily used in the US. In the example below, command **Change country** is used.)

1. Give the command **Change country**.

> You can now enter the country in which the address you would like route guidance to is located, e.g. "Canada".

2. Now enter the address you want route guidance to by following the procedure for "Using voice control for route guidance to an address".

> In this scenario, the full command is divided into two sub-commands:

   1. "**Change country**, Canada"
   2. "**Go to** Howe Street twenty-two, Vancouver"

   If the address is found in the system, the navigation system will now provide route guidance to Howe Street twenty-two, Vancouver, Canada

> **Note**
>
> After you have changed country, try to pronounce the address you want route guidance to in the destination country's language. This is required because the system automatically switches to the recognition language of the selected country.

## Using voice control for route guidance to an address set as Home

If you have set an address as a **Home** location in your navigation system, you can use a voice command to receive route guidance to the location.

1. Give the command **Take me home**.

> If the navigation system has a home location saved, you will now receive route guidance to the location.

## Using voice control for route guidance to a place, store or other specific business without inputting an exact address

Your navigation system can provide route guidance to specific places or types of businesses, which are referred to in the system as "points of interest" (POI [1]). Examples of points of interest are restaurants, hotels, gas stations, museums and tourist attractions.

Use the command **Search** to search for a point of interest. You can search for a specific point of interest or for categories of points of interest.

> **Note**
>
> It is important to use the right command for the option you would like route guidance for. When you want route guidance to a point of interest, use the **Search** command. The command is different for route guidance to specific addresses. Then you should use the **Go to** command instead.

#### Searching for a specific place or business

Here, **[POI name]** refers to a specific place or business (a point of interest), e.g. a hotel, a restaurant, a city park, etc.

1. Give the command **Search**.

> You can now say the specific point of interest you would like route guidance to.

2. Say **[POI name]**, e.g. "Golden Gate Bridge"

> The full command will then be: "**Search** Golden Gate Bridge". If the point of interest is found in the system, the navigation system will now provide route guidance to the location.

#### Searching for a point of interest category, e.g. stores, hotels, restaurants, museums or other tourist attractions or businesses.

Here, **[POI category]** refers to specific types of places or businesses (points of interest), e.g. hotels, restaurants, museums, etc.

1. Give the command **Search**.

> You can now say the type of point of interest you would like to find and receive route guidance to.

2. Say **[POI category]**, e.g. "restaurant"

> In this case, the full command will be: "**Search** restaurant". The navigation system will now search for restaurants around and in the vicinity of the vehicle and display a list of these in your instrument panel. The displayed list will provide suggestions from the system based on your command. Relevant categories and nearby results will be shown at the top of the list, followed by other suggestions in order of relevance.
> Since we are looking for a category in this example, it may be a good idea to select the category option that most closely matches your search.

3. Select the category from the list that best matches what you searched for, in this case "restaurant(s)", by saying the row number shown in the instrument panel for that option.

> You can now see your search results and select an option.

## Using voice control to cancel route guidance

You can use voice commands to cancel route guidance, including all waypoints and the final destination.

1. Give the command **Clear itinerary**.

> The navigation system will cancel route guidance and delete the final destination and all waypoints along the route.

## Inputing zip codes and house numbers

Number commands can be given in different ways depending on the function to be controlled:

- **Zip codes** should be given by stating each number individually, e.g. "zero three one two two four four three" (03122443).
- **Addresses** can be given by stating each number individually or in a group, e.g. two two or twenty-two (22). For some languages, it is also possible to specify hundreds, e.g. 19 hundred 22 (1922). For English and Dutch language settings, groups of numbers can also be said in sequence, e.g. twenty-two twenty-two (22 22). For English, double or triple digits can also be used, e.g. double zero (00). Numbers in the range 0-2300 can be used.

## Entering a destination using the phone book's list of contacts

You can use the command "**Go to[contact]**" to enter an address for a contact in the phone book as a destination. However, the address must be spelled correctly and entered without abbreviations in order to be found in the map database.

To check the spelling of addresses in HERE's database, go to wego.here.com [https://wego.here.com]

* Option/accessory.

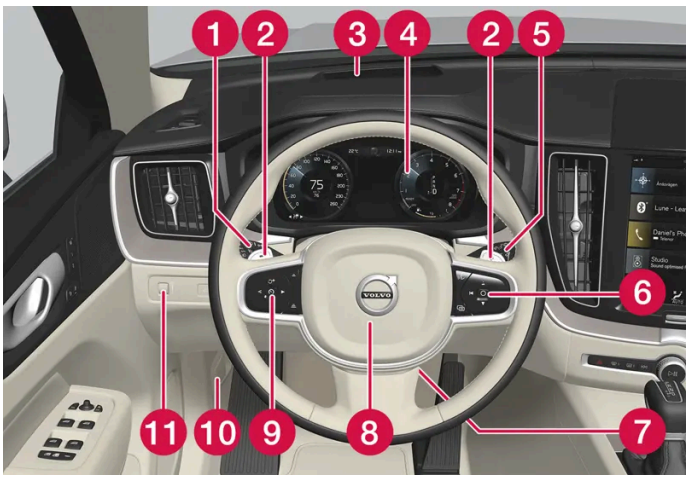
[1] Point Of Interest

---

# 4.6. Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive vehicle

The overviews show the location of the vehicle's displays and controls.

## Steering wheel and dashboard



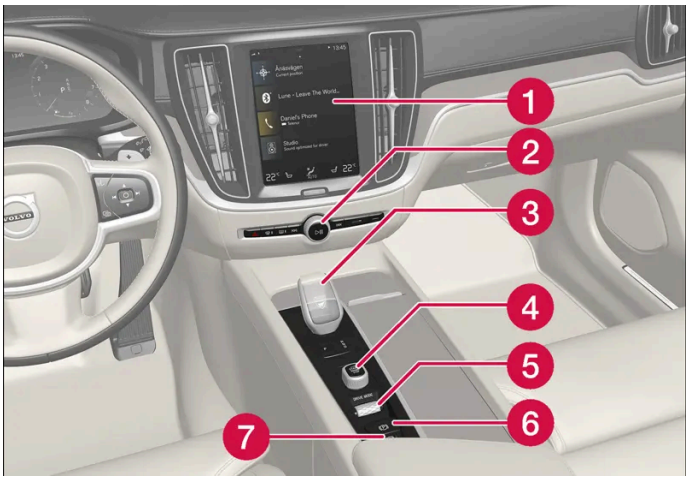

1. Parking lights, daytime running lights, low beams, high beams, turn signals, front fog lights/cornering illumination*, rear fog light, trip computer reset
2. Steering wheel paddles for manual shifting*
3. Head-up display*
4. Instrument panel
5. Wipers and washers, rain sensor*
6. Right-side steering wheel keypad
7. Steering wheel adjustment
8. Horn
9. Left-side steering wheel keypad
10. Hood open
11. Display lighting, tailgate unlock/open*/close*, halogen headlight height adjustment

## Ceiling console

1. Front reading lights and courtesy lighting
2. Panoramic roof*
3. Ceiling console display ON CALL button
4. HomeLink®*

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

## Center and tunnel console




1 Center display

2 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media

3 Gear selector

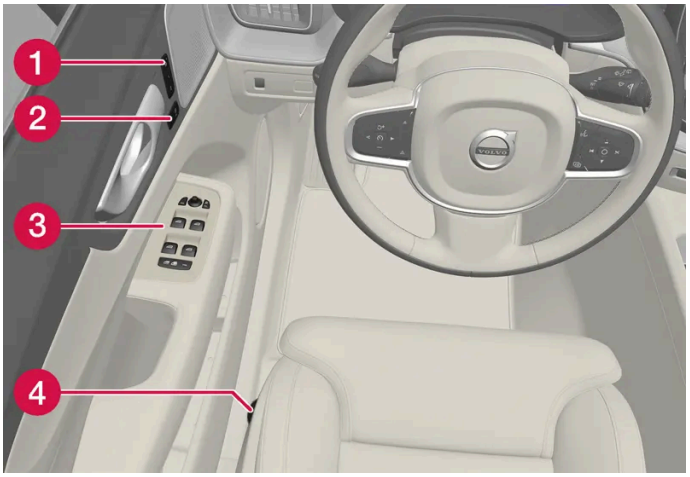
4 Start knob

5 Drive modes*

6 Parking brake

7 Auto-hold brakes

## Driver's door




1 Memory for power front seat settings*, door mirrors and head-up display*

2 Central locking

3 Power windows, door mirrors, electric child locks*

4 Controls for front seat

* Option/accessory.

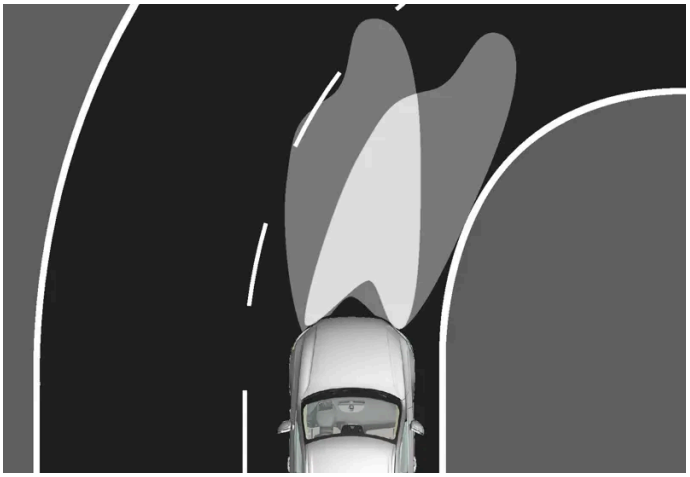
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

# 5. Lighting

# 5.1. Exterior lighting

## 5.1.1. Active Bending Lights*

Active Bending Lights (ABL) are designed to help provide extra illumination in curves and intersections. Depending on equipment level, vehicles with LED[1] headlights* may be equipped with Active Bending Lights.



Headlight pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right).

Active Bending Lights follow the movement of the steering wheel to help provide extra illumination in curves and intersections, helping to improve visibility for the driver.

The function is automatically activated when the engine is started. If a fault is detected in the system, the symbol will illuminate in the instrument panel and a message will be displayed.

The function is only active in weak daylight or dark conditions and only when the vehicle is moving and the low beams are on.

### Deactivating/activating the function

The function is activated as the default factory setting and can be activated and deactivated in the center display's Function view:

Tap the **Active Bending Lights** button.

* Option/accessory.

[1] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

# 5.1.2. Active high beam

Active high beams is a function that uses camera sensors in the upper edge of the windshield to detect the headlights of approaching vehicles or the taillights of the vehicle directly ahead. When either of these is detected, the vehicle's headlights will automatically switch from high beams to low beams.

Active high beams is indicated by the symbol.

This function can be used in dark conditions when the vehicle's speed is approx. 20 km/h (approx. 12 mph) or higher. The function can also detect street lighting. When the camera sensor no longer detects an approaching vehicle or a vehicle ahead, the headlights will return to high beams after a second or two.

## Activating active high beams

Active high beams can be activated and deactivated by turning the lighting ring on the left-side steering wheel lever to position . The lighting ring will then return to AUTO. When active high beams are activated, a white symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel. When high beams are on, the symbol will be blue.

If active high beams are deactivated when the high beams are on, the headlights will automatically switch to low beams.

## Limitations for active high beams

The camera sensor on which the function is based has limitations.

If this symbol and the message **Active High BeamTemporarily unavailable** is displayed in the instrument panel, switching between high and low beams must be done manually. The symbol will go out when the message is displayed.

The same applies if this symbol along with the message **Windscreen sensorSensor blocked, see Owner's manual** is displayed.

Active high beams may be temporarily unavailable in certain situations, e.g. heavy fog or rain. When active high beams become available again, or the windshield sensors are no longer blocked, the message will disappear and the symbol will be

displayed.

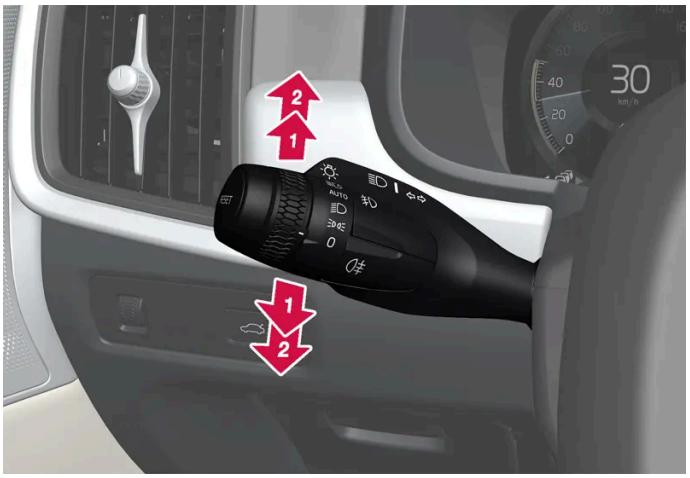
**Warning**

Automatic high beam is an aid in using the best possible light based on prevailing conditions.

The driver is always responsible for manually switching between high and low beam when traffic situations or weather conditions require this.

# 5.1.3. Using turn signals

The vehicle's turn signals are controlled using the left-side steering wheel lever. The turn signals flash three times or continuously, depending on how far up or down the lever is moved.




Turn signals.

## Triple flash indicator

1. Move the steering wheel lever up or down to the first position and release. The turn signals will flash three times. If the function is deactivated via the center display, the signals will flash once.

**Note**

- This automatic flashing sequence can be interrupted by immediately moving the lever in the opposite direction.
- If the turn signal indicator flashes more quickly than normal, refer to the message in the instrument panel.

## Continuous flashing sequence

2. Move the lever up or down as far as possible.

The lever will stop in its end position and can be moved back manually or automatically by moving the steering wheel.

# 5.1.4. Brake lights

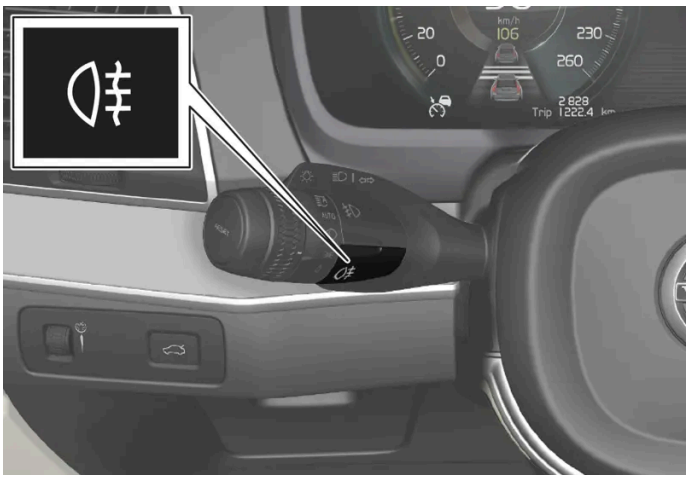
The brake lights are automatically illuminated when braking.

The brake lights are illuminated when the brake pedal is depressed and when the brakes are automatically applied by a driver support system.

---

# 5.1.5. Rear fog light

The rear fog light is considerably brighter than ordinary taillights and should only be used to help other road users see the vehicle when visibility is reduced by conditions such as fog, snow, smoke or dust.




Rear fog light button.

The fog lights are located on the right and left sides of the rear of the vehicle.

The rear fog light can only be used when:

- ignition mode II is active and the lighting ring is in position AUTO or
- the lighting ring is in the position and the front fog lights are on.

Press the button to switch on/off. The symbol in the instrument panel illuminates when the rear fog light is on.

The rear fog light turns off automatically when:

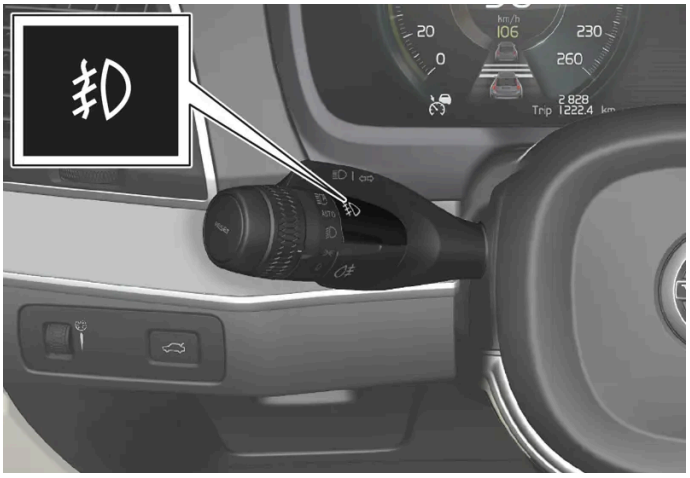
- the ignition is off or the lighting ring is in the 0 position.
- the lighting ring is in the position and the front fog lights are turned off.

> **Note**
>
> Regulations concerning rear fog light use vary from country to country.

---

# 5.1.6. Front fog lights/corner illumination*

The fog lights can be activated manually when driving in fog and are activated automatically when backing up to help augment the backup light.
If the vehicle is equipped with corner illumination*, the fog lights are activated automatically in weak daylight or dark conditions to illuminate the area diagonally in front of the vehicle.




Front fog lights button.

The front fog lights can be turned on when the ignition is in mode II and the lighting ring is in position AUTO, or .

Tap the button to activate or deactivate the function. The symbol in the instrument panel comes on when the front fog lights are on.

The front fog lights turn off automatically when the ignition is switched off or when the lighting ring is in position 0 .

> **Note**
>
> Regulations concerning fog light use vary from country to country.

## Cornering illumination*

The front fog lamps can include the cornering lights function, which temporarily illuminates the area diagonally in front of the car in the direction the steering wheel is turned on a sharp bend, or in the direction shown by the direction indicators.

The function is activated in weak daylight or dark conditions when the lighting ring is in AUTO or mode and the vehicle speed is less than about 30 km/h (about 20 mph).

Both cornering illumination are also illuminated as a complement to the taillights when reversing.

The function is activated as the default factory setting and can be activated and deactivated using the center display.

* Option/accessory.

# 5.1.7. Low beams

When driving with the lighting ring in the AUTO position, low beam will be automatically activated in weak daylight or dark conditions, when the ignition is in the II position.

Lighting ring in AUTO position.

With the lighting ring in the AUTO position, the low beams will be automatically activated if:

- the front fog lights * are activated
- the rear fog light is activated
- the rear and front fog lights are activated.

With the lighting ring in the position, low beams will always be on when the ignition is in the II position.

**Tunnel detection**

The vehicle will detect if it enters a tunnel and shift from daytime running lights to low beams.

Note that the left-hand steering wheel lever must be in AUTO position for tunnel detection to work.

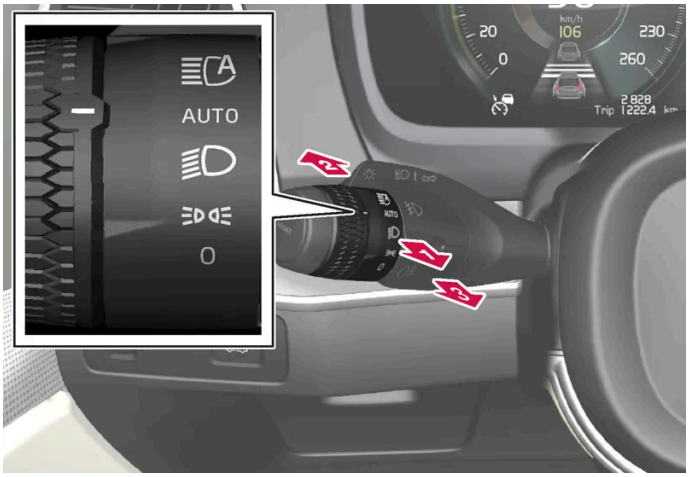
* Option/accessory.

---

# 5.1.8. Using high beam

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

High beam is operated via the left-hand steering wheel lever. High beam is the vehicle's strongest lighting and should be used when driving in dark conditions, provided it does not blind other road users, to improve visibility.




Steering wheel lever with lighting ring.

### High beam flash

1. Move the steering wheel lever slightly backward to the high beam flash mode. The high beams will illuminate until the lever is released.

### High beams

2. The high beams can be activated when the lighting ring is in mode AUTO [1] or . Activate high beams by moving the steering wheel lever forward.
3. Deactivate by moving the steering wheel lever backward.

When the high beams are activated, the symbol will be illuminated in the instrument panel.

[1] When the low beams are on.

---

# 5.1.9. Using home safe lighting

Some of the exterior lights remain on to illuminate the area around the vehicle. This is called home safe lighting.

To activate home safe lighting:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Push the left-side steering wheel lever toward the dashboard and release.
3. Exit the vehicle and lock the doors.

> A symbol in the instrument panel illuminates to indicate that the function is activated and exterior lighting switches on: Parking lights, headlights, license plate lighting and outer door handle lighting*.

The length of time home safe lighting remains illuminated can be set in the center display.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 5.1.10. Emergency brake lights

The emergency brake lights are activated to warn following vehicles of hard braking.
This function causes an additional taillight on each side of the vehicle to illuminate.

The emergency brake lights are activated in the event of hard braking or if the ABS system is activated and the vehicle is traveling at a high speed.

After the driver decelerates to a low speed and then releases the brake, the brake lights resume their normal brightness.

---

# 5.1.11. Parking lights

The parking lights can be used to help other road users see the vehicle if it is stopped or parked. Use the lighting ring on the steering wheel lever to turn on the parking lights.

Lighting ring in the parking light position.

Turn the lighting ring to the position to turn on the parking lights (the license plate lighting will also illuminate).

**Canadian models:** If the ignition is in the II position, the daytime running lights will illuminate instead of the front parking lights. With the lighting ring in this position, the parking lights will remain on regardless of what position the ignition is in.

**US models:** When AUTO mode is selected, the daytime running lights can be deactivated in the center display. The parking lights will also be deactivated. In weak daylight or dark conditions, the parking lights and low beams will be illuminated.

In dark conditions, the rear parking lights also illuminate when the tailgate is opened to alert following traffic. This happens regardless of what position the lighting ring or ignition is in.

---

## 5.1.12. Welcome Light

Approach lighting is activated when the vehicle is unlocked and can be used to provide light as you walk toward the vehicle.

The function is activated when the vehicle is unlocked. The parking lights, ceiling lights, footwell lights and trunk/cargo compartment lights are activated in daylight conditions. In weak daylight or dark conditions, the license plate lighting and outer door handle lighting* will also be activated, with the light directed toward the ground.

If no door is opened, the lights will remain illuminated for approx. 2 minutes. If a door is opened while the function is activated, the interior lighting and outer door handle lighting* will remain on for a longer period of time.

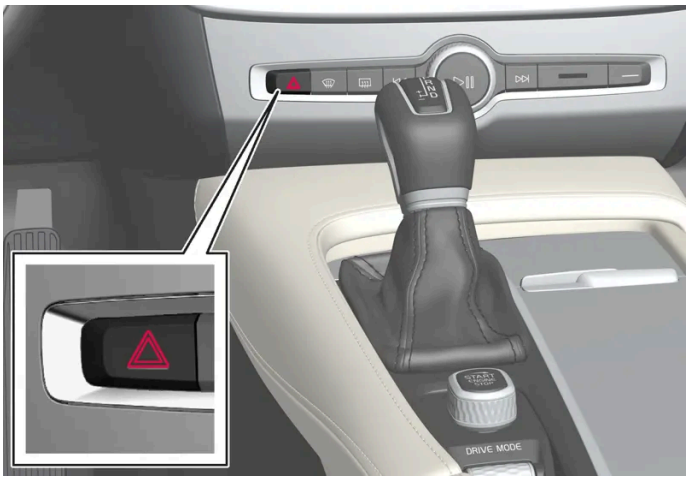
This function can be activated and deactivated in the center display.

* Option/accessory.

---

## 5.1.13. Hazard warning flashers

Hazard warning flashers warn other road users by all of the vehicle's turn signals being activated at the same time. The function can be used to warn about a traffic hazard.




Hazard warning flashers button.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers.

The hazard warning flashers are automatically activated in a collision.

**Note**

Regulations concerning the use of hazard warning flashers may vary from country to country.

---

# 5.1.14. Daytime running lights

The vehicle has sensors that detect ambient lighting conditions. With the lighting ring in the AUTO position, the daytime running lights will always be activated when the ignition is in mode II. In weak daylight or dark conditions, the headlights automatically switch to low beams.

Lighting ring in AUTO position.

With the steering wheel lever's lighting ring in the AUTO position, the daytime running lights (DRL[1]) will illuminate when the vehicle is driven in daylight conditions. The headlights will switch automatically from daytime running lights to low beams in weak daylight or dark conditions. The headlights will also switch to low beams if the front fog lights* and/or rear fog light are activated.

**US models**: When AUTO mode is selected, the daytime running lights can be deactivated in the center display. The parking lights will also be deactivated. In weak daylight or dark conditions, the parking lights and low beams will be illuminated.

**US models**: With the lighting ring in the 0 or position, the daytime running lights will be **off**.

**Canadian models**: With the lighting ring in the 0 or position, the daytime running lights will be on.

**Note**

Volvo recommends use of Daytime Running Lights in the US. Its use is mandatory in Canada.

> **Warning**
>
> The system is an energy saving aid – it cannot in all situations determine when the daylight is too weak or not strong enough, e.g. when there is fog or rain.
>
> The driver is always responsible for driving the vehicle with lighting that is safe for the traffic conditions and as specified by applicable traffic regulations.

[1] Daytime Running Lights

* Option/accessory.

---

# 5.1.15. Checking trailer lights

When connecting a trailer, make sure that the trailer's lights are functioning before starting to drive.

## Checking trailer lights *

#### Automatic check

When the trailer has been connected to the vehicle's electrical system, its lights can be checked by automatically activating them. This function helps the driver check that the trailer's lights are functioning correctly before starting to drive.

In order to perform this check, the vehicle must be switched off.

1. When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the message **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check** will appear in the instrument panel.
2. Acknowledge the message by pressing the O button on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

> The light check will begin.

3. Get out of the vehicle to perform the check.

> All of the lights on the trailer will begin flashing, and then illuminate separately one at a time.

4. Visually check that all of the trailer's lights are functioning correctly.
5. After a short time, all of the trailer's lights will start flashing again.

> The light check is completed.

#### Disabling the automatic check

The automatic light check can be disabled in the center display.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.

2. Tap **My Car → Lights and Lighting**.

3. Deselect **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check**.

#### Manual check

If the automatic check has been disabled, the check can be started manually.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.

2. Tap **My Car → Lights and Lighting**.

3. Select **Manual Trailer Lamp Check**.

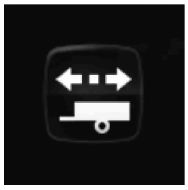
> The light check will begin. Get out of the vehicle to perform the check.

## Trailer rear fog light

When a trailer is connected, the vehicle's rear fog light may not illuminate and rear fog light functionality is instead transferred to the trailer. If this is the case, check to see if the trailer is equipped with a rear fog light before activating the vehicle's fog lights when driving with a trailer to help ensure safe operation.

## Symbols and messages in the instrument panel

If one or more of the turn signals or brake lights on the trailer is not working, a symbol and message will be displayed in the instrument panel. The other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before the vehicle is driven.

| Symbol | Message |
|---|---|
|  | • Trailer turn indicator Right turn indicator malfunction<br>• Trailer turn indicator Left turn indicator malfunction |
| | • Trailer brake light Malfunction |

If any of the trailer's turn signal lights is not working, the turn signal symbol in the instrument panel will also flash more quickly than normal.

* Option/accessory.

# 5.2. Interior lighting

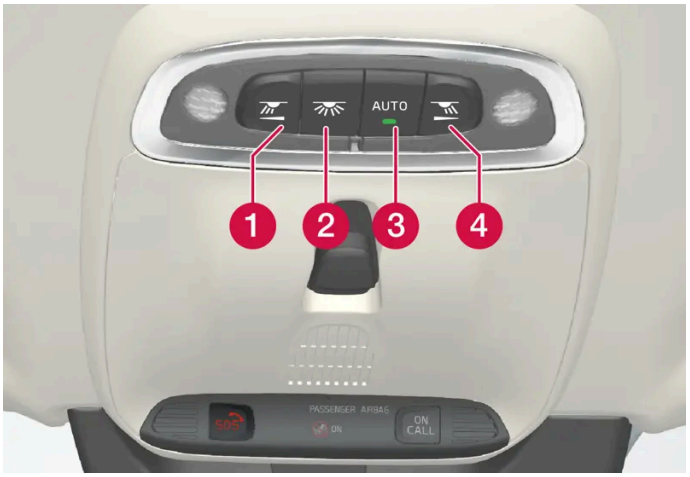
## 5.2.1. Interior Lighting

The passenger compartment is equipped with several different types of lighting, e.g. general lighting, adjustable ambient lighting and reading lights.

All lighting in the passenger compartment can be turned on and off manually within 5 minutes after:

- the engine has been switched off and the ignition is in mode 0.
- the vehicle is unlocked but has not been started.

### Front ceiling lighting




The controls in the ceiling console for the front reading lights and courtesy lighting.

1. Reading light left side
2. Passenger compartment lighting
3. Courtesy lighting auto switch
4. Reading light right side

#### Reading lights

The reading lights on the right and left sides are switched on and off by briefly pressing the buttons in the ceiling console. To adjust the brightness, press and hold the button.

#### Passenger compartment lighting

Briefly press the button in the ceiling console to switch on or off the footwell lighting and ceiling lighting.

#### Courtesy lighting auto switch

Activate the auto switch by briefly pressing the AUTO button in the ceiling console. With Auto activated, the indicator light in the button and the courtesy lighting come on and are turned off as follows.

Courtesy lighting is switched on when:

- The vehicle is unlocked
- The vehicle is switched off
- A side door is opened.

Courtesy lighting is switched off when:

- The vehicle is locked
- The engine is started
- A side door is closed
- A side door has been open for approx. 2 minutes.

## Rear ceiling lighting

Reading lights are located in the rear section of the vehicle and can also be used as passenger compartment lighting.

Reading lights over the rear seat.

In vehicles with panoramic roofs*, there are two lamp units, one on each side of the ceiling.

Briefly press the button on the light to turn on or off the reading lights. To adjust the brightness, press and hold the button.

### Glove compartment lighting

The glove compartment lighting comes on or goes off when the glove compartment is opened or closed.

### Vanity mirror lighting*

The vanity mirror lighting comes on or goes off when the cover over the mirror is opened or closed.

### Ground lighting*

The ground lighting comes on or goes off when a door is opened or closed.

### Doorsill lighting

The doorsill lighting comes on or goes off when a door is opened or closed.

### Cargo compartment lighting

The cargo compartment lighting comes on or goes off when the cargo compartment is opened or closed.

### Ambient Lighting

The ambient lighting comes on when the doors are opened and goes out when the vehicle is locked. Ambient lighting brightness can be adjusted in the center display and also fine-tuned using the thumb wheel in the dashboard.

### Mood lighting*

The vehicle is equipped with LEDs that provide faint lighting in various colors. This lighting is on when the engine is running. Mood lighting can be adjusted in the center display and also fine-tuned using the thumb wheel in the dashboard.

### Lighting in the door storage compartments

Lighting in the door storage compartments comes on when the doors are opened and goes out when the vehicle is locked. The brightness can be adjusted using the thumb wheel in the dashboard.

### Lighting in the tunnel console's front cup holder*

The lighting in front console cup holders switches on when the vehicle is unlocked and off when the vehicle is locked. The brightness can be adjusted using the thumb wheel in the dashboard.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 5.2.2. Adjusting interior lighting

Illumination in the vehicle varies depending on ignition mode. The interior lighting can be adjusted with a thumb wheel in the dashboard and certain light functions can also be adjusted via the center display.

The thumb wheel on the dashboard to the left of the steering wheel can be used to adjust the brightness of the display lighting, instrument lighting, ambient lighting and mood lighting*.

## Adjust ambient decor lighting

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting** → **Interior Lighting**.
3. Choose from among the following settings:
   - Under **Ambient Light Intensity**, select **Off**, **Low** or **High**.
   - Under **Ambient Light Level**, select **Reduced** or **Full**.

## Adjusting mood lighting*

The vehicle is equipped with several LEDs that provide faint lighting in various colors. This lighting is on when the engine is running.

#### Changing the brightness

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting** → **Interior Lighting** → **Interior Mood Lighting**.
3. Under **Interior Mood Light Intensity**, select **Off**, **Low** or **High**.

#### Changing the color of the light

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting** → **Interior Lighting** → **Interior Mood Lighting**.
3. Choose **By Temperature** or **By Color** to change the color of the light.

   If **By Temperature** is selected, the light will change according to the temperature set for the passenger compartment.

   If **By Color** is selected, the subcategory **Theme Colors** can be used to make further adjustments.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

* Option/accessory.

## 5.3. Adjusting light functions via the center display

A number of light functions can be adjusted and activated via the center display. These include home safe lighting and approach lighting.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car → Lights and Lighting**.
3. Select **Exterior Lights** or **Interior Lighting** and then select the function that you would like to adjust.

## 5.4. Lighting control and panel

The lighting panel and controls can be used to adjust both exterior and interior lighting. The lighting ring on the left-side steering wheel lever can be used to activate and adjust the exterior lighting. The brightness of the interior lighting can be adjusted using the thumb wheel on the dashboard.

# Exterior lighting

Lighting ring position.

When the vehicle's ignition is in mode II, the lighting ring positions have the following functions:

| Position | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | US: Daytime running lights and parking lights are off.<br>Canada: Daytime running lights and parking lights are on.<br>High beam flash can be used. |
| | Parking lights when the vehicle is parked.<br>US: Daytime running lights are off.<br>Canada: Daytime running lights are on.<br>High beam flash can be used. |
| | Low beams and parking lights.<br>High beams can be activated.<br>High beam flash can be used. |
| AUTO | Daytime running lights and parking lights in daylight conditions.[1]<br>Low beams and parking lights in weak daylight or dark conditions or when the front fog lights* and/or rear fog light are activated.<br>Active high beam can be activated.<br>High beams can be activated when low beams are on.<br>High beam flash can be used. |
| | Active high beams on/off. |

**Note**

Volvo recommends use of Daytime Running Lights in the US. Its use is mandatory in Canada.

Volvo recommends using position AUTO when the vehicle is in motion.

**Warning**

The vehicle lighting system cannot in all situations determine when the daylight is too weak or not strong enough, e.g. when there is fog or rain.

The driver is always responsible for driving the vehicle with lighting that is safe for the traffic conditions and as specified by applicable traffic regulations.

## Thumbwheel in instrument panel

Thumb wheel (to the left) for adjusting interior brightness.

[1] US models only: Daytime running lights and parking lights can be deactivated in the center display.

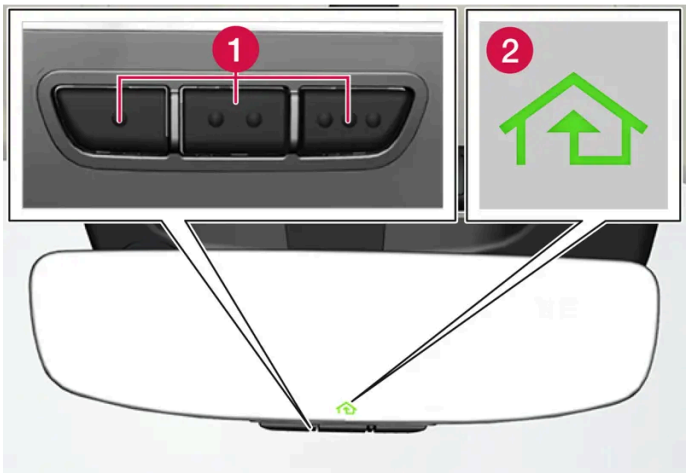
* Option/accessory.

# 6. Windows, glass and mirrors

## 6.1. Rearview and door mirrors

### 6.1.1. HomeLink® * [1]

HomeLink® [2] is a programmable remote control integrated in the vehicle's electrical system.
It can remotely control up to three different devices, such as garage door openers or alarm systems, and thereby replace the remote controls for these.




The illustration is generic – the design may vary.

1 Programmable buttons

2 Indicator light

HomeLink® is integrated in the rearview mirror and consists of three programmable buttons and an indicator light in the mirror.

> **Note**
>
> Save the original remote controls for future reprogramming (e.g. for use in another vehicle).
>
> It is also advisable to delete the button programming if the vehicle is sold.

#### More information

Visit homelink.com or call 1-800-355-3515.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Certain markets only.

[2] HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Gentex Corporation.

---

# 6.1.2. Rearview/door mirrors

The rearview mirror and door mirrors can be used to improve the driver's visibility behind the vehicle.

## Rearview mirror

The rearview mirror is equipped with HomeLink*, auto-dim* and compass*.

The rearview mirror can be adjusted manually.

## Door mirrors

> **Warning**
>
> The door mirror on the passenger side is curved to improve visibility. Objects in the mirror may appear farther away than they actually are.

The joystick in the drivers' door control panel is used to adjust the position of the door mirrors.

There are also several automatic settings that can also be connected to the memory function buttons for the power seat*.

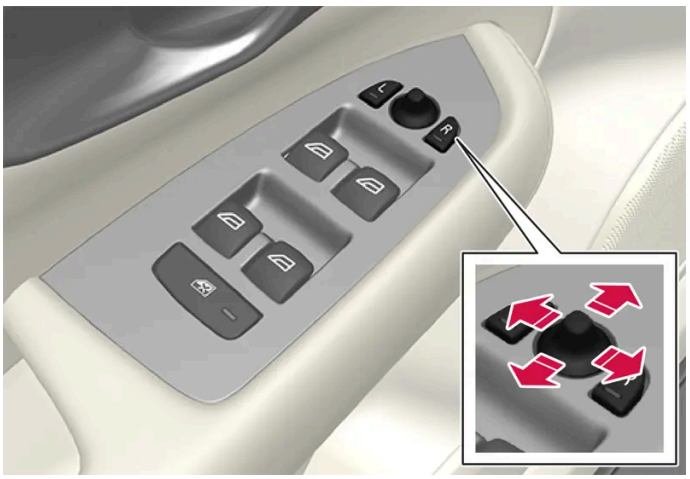
* Option/accessory.

---

# 6.1.3. Adjusting the door mirrors

To improve visibility to the rear, the door mirrors need to be adjusted to the driver's height and seating position.
There are several automatic settings that can also be connected to the memory function buttons for the power seat*.

## Controls used for door mirrors



Door mirror controls.

The joystick in the drivers' door control panel is used to adjust the position of the door mirrors. The ignition must be in at least mode I.

1. Press the L button for the left door mirror or R for the right door mirror. The button will light up.
2. Adjust the position using the joystick located between the buttons.
3. Press the L or R button again. The light in the button will go out.

## Automatically folding door mirrors*

The door mirrors can be automatically folded when driving or parking in tight spaces.

1. Press the L and R buttons at the same time.
2. Release the buttons after about 1 second. The mirrors will automatically stop when they are completely folded in.

Open the mirrors by pressing L and R at the same time. The mirrors will automatically stop when they reach the last-used setting.

## Resetting the mirrors' position

A mirror that has been moved out of position manually (e.g. hit or bumped into) must be electrically returned to its original position for automatic folding* to function properly.

1. Fold in the mirrors by pressing the L and R buttons at the same time.
2. Open them again by pressing the L and R buttons at the same time.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

3. Repeat the above procedure as needed.

The mirrors return to their original positions.

## Tilting when parking[1]

The door mirrors can be tilted down to help give the driver a better view along the sides of the vehicle, e.g. of the curb when parking.

1. Select reverse gear and press the L or R mirror button.

Please note that the button may need to be pressed twice depending on settings. When the door mirror is tilted down, the light in the button will flash. When reverse gear is engaged, the door mirrors will automatically start to move after 3 seconds and will reach their original position after about 8 seconds.

## Automatically tilting when parking[1]

With this setting, the door mirrors will automatically tilt down when reverse gear is engaged. The folded position is preset and cannot be adjusted.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Under **Exterior Mirror Tilt at Reverse**, select **Off**, **Driver**, **Passenger** or **Both** to activate/deactivate and to select which mirror to tilt.

To immediately return the door mirrors to their original position, press the L or R button twice.

## Automatic folding when the vehicle is locked*

In the center display, you can set the door mirrors to retract/extend automatically when the vehicle is locked/unlocked with the key.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Select **Fold Mirror When Locked** to activate/deactivate.

> **Note**
>
> If the door mirrors are folded in manually using the L and R buttons and then the vehicle is locked, the mirrors will not automatically fold out when the vehicle is unlocked, even if this preference has been set. In this case, the mirrors must be folded out manually.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only on models equipped with a power driver's seat with memory buttons*.

---

# 6.1.4. Adjusting the rearview mirror dimming function

Bright light entering the vehicle from behind, e.g. from the headlights of following vehicles, could reflect in the rearview mirror and door mirrors and cause a glare. Use the dimming function when light from behind is distracting.

## Auto-dim

If bright light enters the vehicle from behind, the door mirrors will automatically dim when it is dark outside or when lighting conditions are low, for example when driving in tunnels. Auto-dim is always active when the engine is running, except when reverse gear is engaged.

> **Note**
>
> Adjustments to the sensitivity level will not be noticeable immediately but will instead take effect after a short period of time.

The sensitivity level for dimming will affect both the rearview mirror and door mirrors.

To change the dimming sensitivity level:

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Under **Rearview Mirror Auto Dimming**, select **Normal**, **Dark** or **Light**.

The rearview mirror has two sensors - one pointing forward and one pointing rearward - which work together to identify and eliminate glare. The forward-pointing sensor monitors ambient light, while the rearward-pointing sensor monitors light from the headlights of following vehicles.

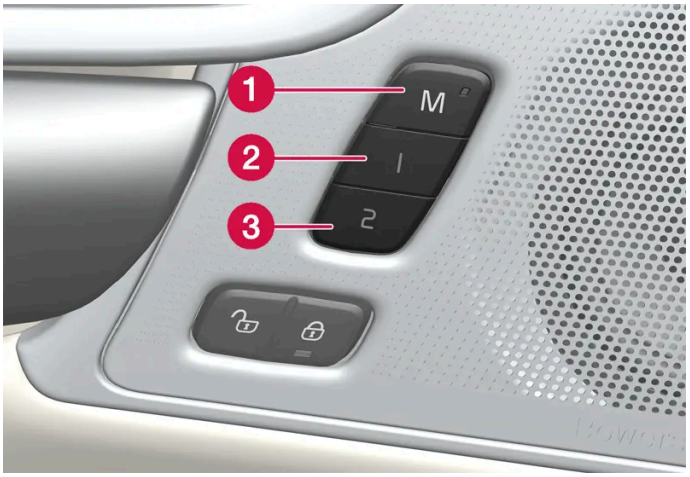
For the door mirrors to be equipped with auto-dim, the rearview mirror must also be equipped with auto-dim.

> **Note**
>
> If the sensors are obstructed by e.g. a parking permit, transponder, sunshade or objects on the seats or in the cargo compartment in a way that prevents light from reaching the sensors, the auto-dim function in the door and rearview mirrors will be reduced.

# 6.1.5. Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display*

If the positions for the power* seat, door mirrors and head-up display* have been stored, they can be activated using the memory buttons.

## Using a stored position




A stored position can be used with the front door open or closed:

**Front door open**

1. Briefly press one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3). The power seats, door mirrors and head-up display will move and stop at the positions stored in that button.

**Front door closed**

1. Press and hold one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) until the seat, door mirrors and head-up display stop in the positions stored in that memory button.

If the memory button is released, the seat, door mirrors and head-up display will stop moving.

**Warning**

- This list point needs to be translated exactly to: "Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- The seat should be adjusted so that the brake pedal can be depressed fully. In addition, position the seat as far rearward as comfort and control allow.
- The seat rails on the floor must not be obstructed in any way when the seat is in motion.

**Note**

For the stored positions to work, all driver profiles need to be in **Protect Profile** mode.

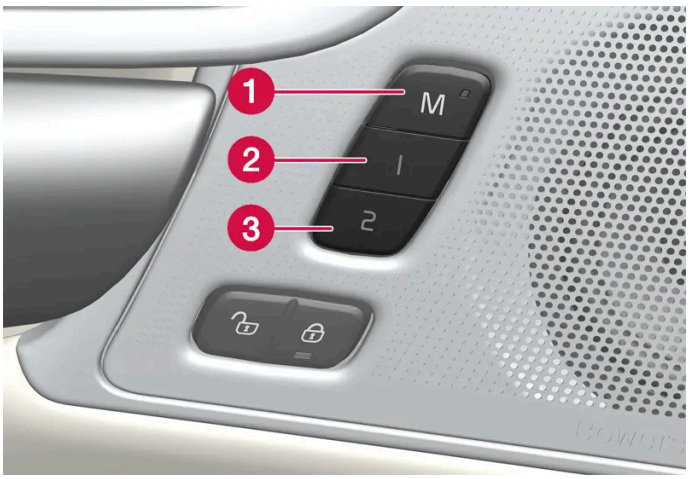
* Option/accessory.

---

# 6.1.6. Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display*

Adjustment settings for the power* seat, door mirrors and head-up display* can be stored in the memory buttons.

Two different positions for the power* seat, door mirrors and head-up display* can be stored using the memory buttons. The buttons are located on the inside of either one or both* front doors.




1 Button **M** for storing a setting.

2 Memory button.

3 Memory button.

### Storing positions

1. Adjust the seat, door mirrors and head-up display to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the M button. The indicator light in the button will illuminate.
3. Press and hold down button 1 or 2 within three seconds.

> When the position has been stored in the memory button, an audio signal will sound and the indicator light in the M button will go out.

If none of the memory buttons are pressed within three seconds, the M button will go out and no position will be stored.

The seats, door mirrors or head-up display must be readjusted before a new memory position can be set.

> **Note**
>
> For the stored positions to work, all driver profiles need to be in **Protect Profile** mode.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 6.1.7. Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the glass.

## Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors from the center console

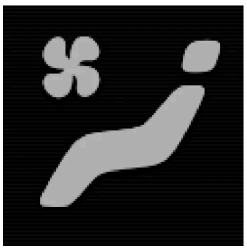
A button in the center console offers quick access to the heated rear window and door mirrors functions.

Button in center console.

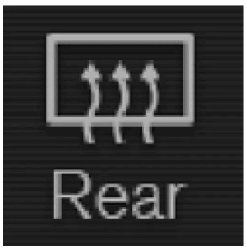
1. Tap the button.

> Heated windows and door mirrors are activated and the button lights up/goes out.

### Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors from the center display

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. 


   Tap **Rear**.

> Heated windows and door mirrors are activated and the button lights up/goes out.

---

# 6.1.8. Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the glass.

It is possible to select whether rear window and door mirror heating should be automatically activated or deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will be activated when there is a risk of ice or condensation on the windows or mirrors. Heating is automatically switched off when the window or door mirror is sufficiently warm and the condensation or ice is gone.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic rear window and door heating.

---

# 6.2. Windshield and rear window

## 6.2.1. Replacing a windshield with head-up display*

Vehicles with a head-up display have a special type of windshield that meets the requirements for displaying projected information.

Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop for assistance replacing the windshield. The correct type of replacement windshield must be used in order for the head-up display to function properly.

* Option/accessory.

## 6.2.2. Wiper blades and washer fluid

The wipers and the washer fluid are designed to improve visibility and the headlight pattern.

Washer fluid direct from the wiper blades and heating* of the wiper blades gives improved vision.

When there is approximately 1 liter (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining, a message to refill will appear in the instrument panel.

* Option/accessory.

## 6.2.3. Using automatic rear window wiping when backing up

If reverse gear is engaged while the windshield wipers are on, the rear window wipers will start. This function is deactivated when a different gear is selected.

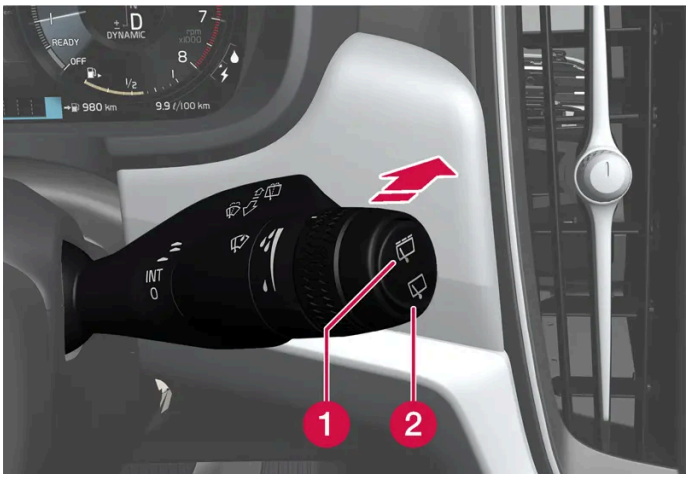
1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Wipers**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Wiper** to activate/deactivate automatic rear window wiping when backing up.

If the rear window wipers are already in continuous wiper mode, no change will be made when reverse gear is engaged.

# 6.2.4. Using the rear window wiper/washer

The rear window washer/wiper is designed to clean the rear window. Use the right-side steering wheel lever to start and control the wiper/washer.

## Activating the rear window wiper/washer




1 Select for interval rear window wiper.

2 Select for continuous rear window wiper.

1. Move the right-side steering wheel lever forward to wash/wipe the rear window.

## Automatic rear window wiping when backing up

If reverse gear is engaged while the windshield wipers are on, the rear window wipers will start. This function is deactivated when a different gear is selected.

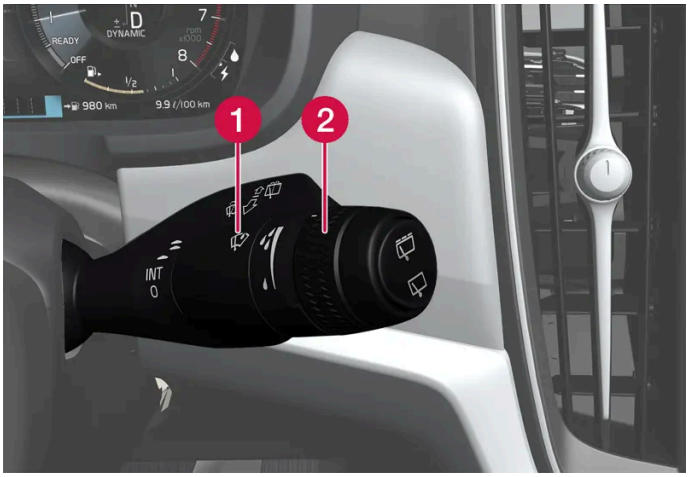
Contact an authorized Volvo workshop to deactivate the function.

> **Note**
>
> At low ambient temperatures, the automatic rear window wiper when backing up is switched off to help prevent damage to the wiper arm.

---

# 6.2.5. Using the rain sensor

The rain sensor monitors the amount of water on the windshield and automatically starts the windshield wipers. Rain sensor sensitivity can be adjusted using the thumb wheel on the right-hand steering wheel lever.




Right-hand steering wheel lever.

1 Rain sensor button

2 Thumb wheel, sensitivity/interval wiper speed

When the rain sensor is activated, the rain sensor symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel.

## Activating the rain sensor

When the rain sensor is activated, the engine must be running or the ignition in mode I or II while the windshield wiper lever is in position 0 or in the single sweep position.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button .

Move the lever downward for an extra wiper sweep.

Turn the thumb wheel upward for increased sensitivity and downward for decreased sensitivity. The wipers will make one extra sweep when the thumb wheel is turned upward.

## Deactivate the rain sensor

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button or moving the lever upward to another wiper mode.

The rain sensor is automatically deactivated in ignition mode 0 or when the engine is switched off.

The rain sensor is also automatically deactivated when the wiper blades are put in the service position. The rain sensor will reactivate when service mode is switched off.

> **Important**
>
> The windshield wipers may start inadvertently and be damaged in automatic car washes. Deactivate the rain sensor when the engine is running or when the ignition is in mode I or II. The symbol in the instrument panel will go out.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 6.2.6. Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function

The rain sensor monitors the amount of water on the windshield and automatically starts the windshield wipers.

When the memory function is activated, the rain sensor button does not need to be pressed every time the vehicle is started:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Wipers**.
3. Select **Rain Sensor Memory** to activate/deactivate the memory function.

---

# 6.2.7. Using the windshield and headlight washers

The windshield and headlight washers are designed to clean the windshield and headlights. Use the right-side steering wheel lever to start the windshield and headlight washers.

## Starting the windshield and headlight washers

Washing function, right-hand steering wheel lever.

1. Move the right-hand steering wheel lever toward the steering wheel to start the windshield and headlight washers.

> After the lever is released, the wipers make several extra sweeps.

> **Important**
>
> Avoid activating the washer system when it is frozen or the fluid reservoir is empty. Otherwise, there is a risk of damaging the pump.

### Headlight washer*

To save washer fluid, the headlights are washed automatically according to a defined interval when the headlights are on.

### Reduced washing

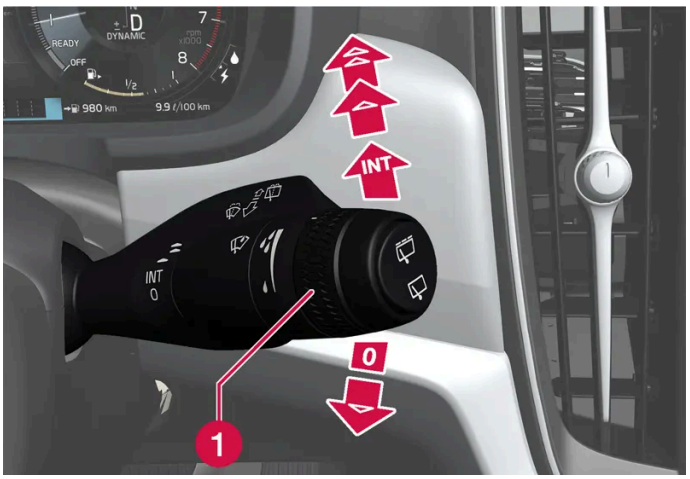
When there is about 1 liter (1 qt) of washer fluid left in the reservoir and the **Washer fluid Level low, refill** message is displayed in the instrument panel together with the symbol, the washer fluid supply to the headlights is cut off. This is to prioritize windshield cleaning and visibility through it. The headlights are only washed if high or low beam is on.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 6.2.8. Using the windshield wipers

The windshield wipers are designed to clean the windshield. The right-side steering wheel lever is used to adjust windshield wiper settings.




Right-hand steering wheel lever.

1 The thumb wheel is used to set rain sensor sensitivity and interval wiper speed.

### Single sweep

▼ Move the lever down and release for a single sweep.

### Wipers off

0 Move the lever to position 0 to turn off the windshield wipers.

### Interval wipers

INT Move the lever upward to put the wipers in interval wiping mode. Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumb wheel when interval wipers are selected.

### Continuous wipers

Move the lever upward for the wipers to operate at normal speed.

Move the lever upward again for the wipers to operate at high speed.

> **Important**
>
> Before activating the wipers, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen in place and that any snow or ice on the windshield and rear window has been scraped away.

---

# 6.2.9. Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the glass.

## Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors from the center console

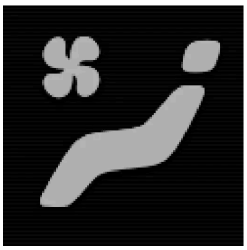
A button in the center console offers quick access to the heated rear window and door mirrors functions.

Button in center console.

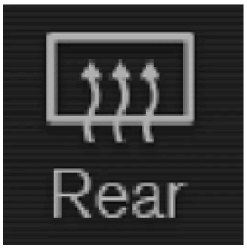
1. Tap the button.

> Heated windows and door mirrors are activated and the button lights up/goes out.

### Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors from the center display

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. 


   Tap **Rear**.

> Heated windows and door mirrors are activated and the button lights up/goes out.

---

# 6.2.10. Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the glass.

It is possible to select whether rear window and door mirror heating should be automatically activated or deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will be activated when there is a risk of ice or condensation on the windows or mirrors. Heating is automatically switched off when the window or door mirror is sufficiently warm and the condensation or ice is gone.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic rear window and door heating.

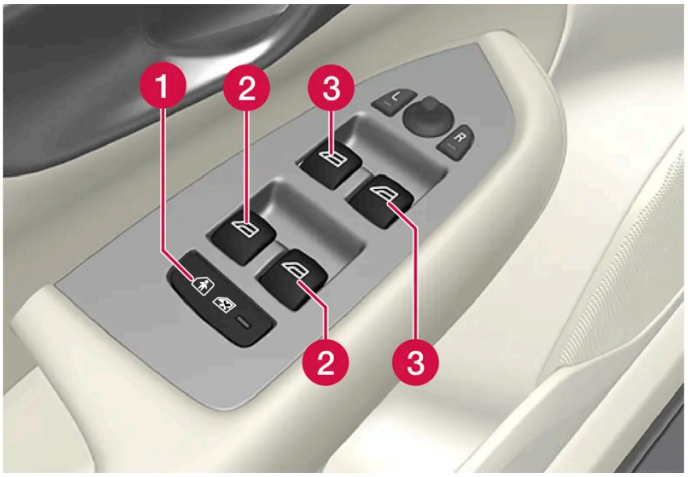
---

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 6.3. Door windows and panoramic roof

## 6.3.1. Power windows

Every door has a control panel for the power windows. The driver's door has controls for operating all windows and for activating the child safety locks.




Driver's door control panel.

1. Electric child safety locks* that deactivate the controls in the rear doors to prevent the doors or windows from being opened from the inside.
2. Rear window controls.
3. Front window controls.

**Warning**

Children, other passengers or objects can be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the operating controls.
- Never leave a child alone in the vehicle.
- Remember to always cut the current to the power windows by setting the vehicle's electrical system to ignition mode 0 and then taking the key with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Never stick objects or body parts out through the windows, even if the vehicle electrical system is completely turned off.

* Option/accessory.

# 6.3.2. Operating the power windows

All power windows can be operated using the control panel in the driver's door. The control panels in the other doors can be used to operate that particular door.

The power windows have pinch protection. If there is any problem with the pinch protection, a rest procedure can be tested.

> **Warning**
>
> Children, other passengers or objects can be trapped by the moving parts.
>
> - Always operate the windows with caution.
> - Do not allow children to play with the operating controls.
> - Never leave a child alone in the vehicle.
> - Remember to always cut the current to the power windows by setting the vehicle's electrical system to ignition mode 0 and then taking the key with you when leaving the vehicle.
> - Never stick objects or body parts out through the windows, even if the vehicle electrical system is completely turned off.

Operating the power windows.

1. Operating manually. Move one of the controls slightly up or down. The power windows go up or down while the control is held in position.
2. Operating with automatic controls. Move one of the controls up or down to its end position and release it. The window moves automatically to its fully closed/open position.

To use the power windows, the ignition must be in at least mode I or II. After the ignition has been switched off, the power windows can be operated for several minutes or until a door is opened. Only one control can be operated at a time.

It can also be operated using keyless opening* with the door handle.

> **Warning**
>
> Make sure that no child or other passenger comes into contact with the windows as they are closing with keyless closing*.

**Note**

One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise heard when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.

**Note**

The windows cannot be opened at speeds over approx. 180 km/h (ca 112 mph), but they can be closed.

The driver is always responsible for following applicable traffic regulations.

**Note**

It may not be possible to operate the windows in low temperatures.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 6.3.3. Panoramic roof*

The panoramic roof is divided into two glass sections. The front section can be opened vertically at the rear edge (ventilation position) or horizontally (open position). The rear section cannot be moved.
The panoramic roof has a wind deflector and sun curtain made of perforated fabric (located beneath the glass sections) for extra protection in e.g. bright sunlight.

The panoramic roof and sun curtain are operated using the controls in the ceiling.

To operate the panoramic roof and sun curtain, the ignition must be in mode I or II.

**Warning**

Children, other passengers or objects can be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the operating controls.
- Never leave a child alone in the vehicle.
- Remember to always cut the current to the power windows by setting the vehicle's electrical system to ignition mode 0 and then taking the key with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Never stick objects or body parts out through the windows, even if the vehicle electrical system is completely turned off.

**Important**

- Do not open the panoramic roof when load carriers are installed.
- Never place heavy objects on the panoramic roof.

**Important**

- Remove ice and snow before opening the panoramic roof. Be careful not to scratch any surfaces or damage the trim.
- Do not operate the panoramic roof if it is frozen in place.

## Wind blocker

The panoramic roof is equipped with a wind blocker that folds up when the roof is open.

* Option/accessory.

# 6.3.4. Operating the panoramic roof*

The panoramic roof and sun curtain are operated using a control in the ceiling panel, and both are equipped with pinch protection.

**Warning**

Children, other passengers or objects can be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the operating controls.
- Never leave a child alone in the vehicle.
- Remember to always cut the current to the power windows by setting the vehicle's electrical system to ignition mode 0 and then taking the key with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Never stick objects or body parts out through the windows, even if the vehicle electrical system is completely turned off.

**Important**

- Do not open the panoramic roof when load carriers are installed.
- Never place heavy objects on the panoramic roof.

**Important**

- Remove ice and snow before opening the panoramic roof. Be careful not to scratch any surfaces or damage the trim.
- Do not operate the panoramic roof if it is frozen in place.

To operate the panoramic roof and sun curtain, the ignition must be in mode I or II.

It can also be operated using keyless opening* with the door handle.

**Warning**

Make sure that no child or other passenger comes into contact with the windows as they are closing with keyless closing*.

**Important**

Check that the panoramic roof is properly closed when closing.

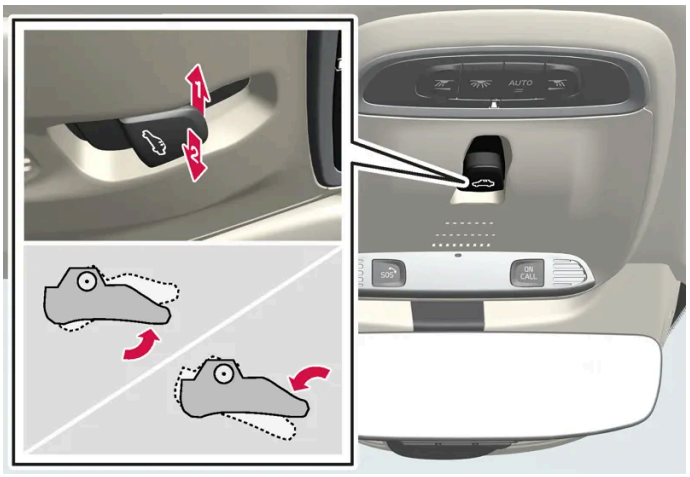
The movement of the roof will stop if the control is released during manual operation or when the glass has reached the comfort[1] or fully open/closed position. The movement of both the panoramic roof and the sun curtain is also stopped if the control in the ceiling is operated again in the direction opposite that of the current direction of movement.

The panoramic roof and sun curtain are also equipped with pinch protection. If there is any problem with the pinch protection, a rest procedure can be tested.

> **Note**
>
> For manual opening, the sun curtain must be completely open before the panoramic roof can be opened. For the reverse procedure, the panoramic roof must be completely closed before the sun curtain can be completely closed.

> **Note**
>
> It may not be possible to operate the windows in low temperatures.

## Opening and closing the panoramic roof to ventilation position using the control in the ceiling




Ventilation position, rear edge raised.

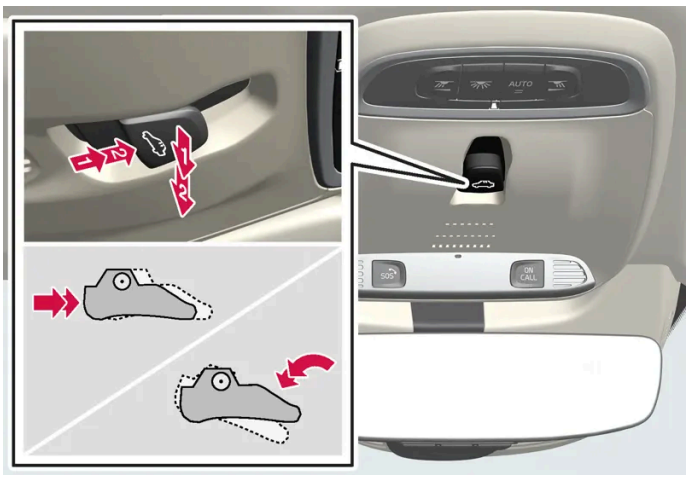
1 Open by pushing the control upward once.

2 Close by pushing the control downward once.

When ventilation mode is selected, the rear edge of the front section of the roof is raised. If the sun curtain is fully closed when ventilation position is selected, it will automatically open approx. 50 mm (approx. 2 inches).

If the panoramic roof is closed from the ventilation position, the sun curtain will also automatically close.

# Fully opening and closing the panoramic roof with the control in the ceiling




1 Operation, manual mode

2 Operation, automatic mode

**Manual operation**

1. To open the sun curtain, pull the control backward to the manual open mode.
2. To open the panoramic roof to the comfort position, pull the control backward a second time to the manual opening position.
3. To open the panoramic roof fully, pull the control backward a third time to the manual opening position.

Close by repeating the above procedure in reverse - push the control forward/down to the manual closing position.

**Auto operation**

1. To open the sun curtain to the fully open position, pull the control backward to the auto open mode and release.
2. To open the panoramic roof to the comfort position, pull the control backward a second time to the automatic opening position and release.
3. To open the panoramic roof fully, pull the control backward a third time to the automatic opening position and release.

Close by repeating the above procedure in reverse - push the control forward/down to the auto close position.

**Automatic operation - rapid opening or closing**

The panoramic roof and sun curtain can be opened or closed simultaneously:

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

1. Open - press the control backward twice to the automatic operation position and release.

1. Close - press the control forward/down twice to the automatic operation position and release.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The comfort position is a position which helps keep wind and resonance sounds to a comfortably low level.

---

# 6.3.5. Auto closing the panoramic roof* sun curtain

With this function, the sun curtain closes automatically 15 minutes after the vehicle has been locked if it is parked in hot weather. This is done to lower the passenger compartment temperature and protect the upholstery against being bleached by the sun.

The function is deactivated as the default factory setting and can be activated or deactivated using the center display.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Locking**.

   Select **Auto Close Sunroof Curtain** to activate/deactivate.

> **Note**
>
> The sun curtain also closes when all windows are closed with keyless closing*.

* Option/accessory.

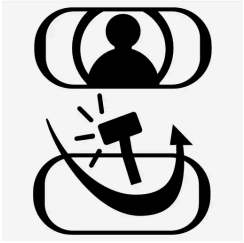
---

# 6.4. Windows, glass and mirrors

The vehicle is equipped with several different types of windows, glass and mirrors. Some of the windows in the car are laminated.

The windshield has laminated glass. Laminated glass is also available as on option for some other glass surfaces. Laminated glass is reinforced, which provides better protection against break-ins and improved soundproofing in the passenger compartment.

The panoramic roof* also has laminated glass.



The symbol shows the windows containing laminated glass. [1]

* Option/accessory.

[1] Does not apply to windshield and panoramic roof*, which are always laminated and therefore do not have this symbol.

---

# 6.5. Pinch protection for windows and sun curtains

All power windows and sun curtains* have a pinch protection function that is triggered if anything blocks them while they are opening or closing.

If pinch protection is activated, movement will stop and then retract automatically to approx. 50 mm (2 inches) from the point at which it was blocked (or to full ventilation position).

It is still possible to override pinch protection when closing is interrupted (e.g. due to ice) by pressing and holding down the control in the same direction.

If there is any problem with the pinch protection, a rest procedure can be tested.

> **Warning**
>
> If the starter battery is disconnected, the function for automatic opening and closing must be reset to function correctly. A reset is required in order for the pinch protection to work.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 6.6. Reset procedure for pinch protection

If you experience any problems with the electrical functions for the power windows, you can try to perform a reset.

> **Warning**
>
> If the starter battery is disconnected, the function for automatic opening and closing must be reset to function correctly. A reset is required in order for the pinch protection to work.

Consult a workshop[1] if you experience any problems with the panoramic roof.

#### Resetting a power window

1. Start with the window in the closed position.
2. Then move the control in manual mode three times upward toward the closed position.

> The system will be automatically activated.

If the problem persists, contact a workshop.

[1] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 6.7. Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove condensation and ice from windows.

Max defroster deactivates automatic climate control and air recirculation, activates the air conditioning, and changes blower speed to **5** and temperature to **HI**.

> **Note**
>
> The volume increases when the blower speed is changed to **5**.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate system reverts to the previous settings.

## Activating and deactivating max defroster from the center console

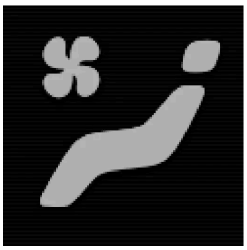
A button in the center console offers quick access to the max defroster.

Button in center console.

1. Tap the button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

## Activating and deactivating max defroster from the center display

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2.


   Tap **Max**.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 7. Seats and steering wheel

## 7.1. Front seat

## 7.1.1. Climate controls for front seat

## 7.1.1.1. Activating and deactivating power front seats*

The seats can be heated for added comfort for the driver and passengers in cold weather.

1.

   Tap the left- or right-side steering wheel and seat button in the center display's climate bar to open the controls for steering wheel and seat heating.

   If the vehicle is not equipped with ventilated seats or heated steering wheel (for the driver's side), the button for seat heating is directly accessible in the climate bar.

2.

   Tap the seat heating button repeatedly to select one of the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level is changed and the set level is displayed in the button.

> **Warning**
>
> Heated seats should not be used by people who have difficulty detecting temperature increases due to nerve damage or numbness or who for another reason may have difficulty operating the controls for seat heating.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.1.1.2. Activating and deactivating the heated front seat*

The seats can be heated for added comfort for the driver and passengers in cold weather.

Seat heating can be set to automatically activate when the engine is started. When set to automatically activate, heating will be turned on at low ambient temperatures.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Driver Seat Heating Level** and **Auto Passenger Seat Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated driver's and passenger seat.

> An "A" will be displayed next to the relevant seat heating button in the climate bar when auto start has been activated.

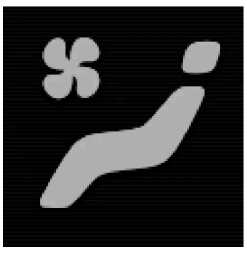
4. Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

* Option/accessory.

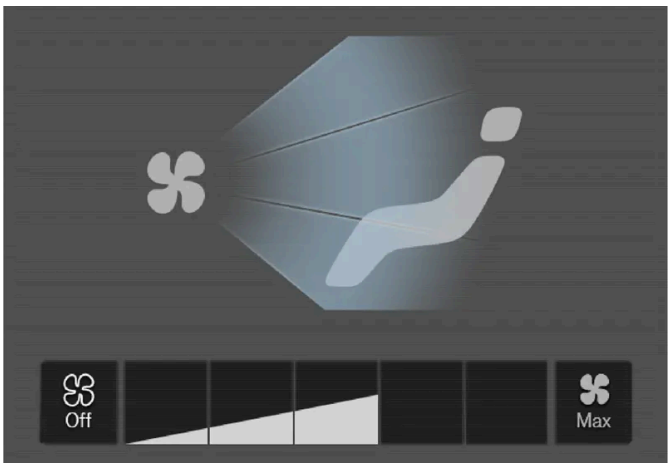
---

# 7.1.1.3. Setting the blower speed for the front seats[1]

The blower can be set to several different automatically controlled speeds for the front seat.

1. 

Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. 


Blower control buttons in Climate view.

Tap the desired blower speed: **Off**, **1-5** or **Max**.

> The blower speed will be changed and the buttons for the set speed will light up.

**Important**

The air conditioning will not engage if the blower is turned off completely, which may cause fogging on the inside of the windows.

**Note**

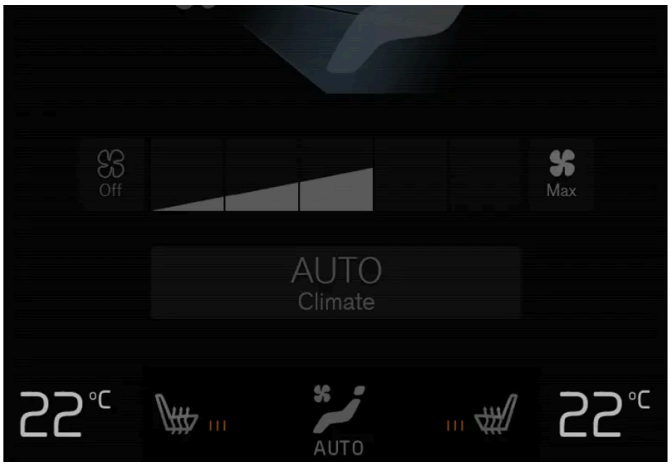
The climate system automatically adapts airflow as needed within the set blower speed, which means that airflow speed may vary slightly within the same blower speed.

[1] The same setting applies to the rear seats with the 2-zone climate system.

---

# 7.1.1.4. Setting the temperature for the front seats [1]

The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the front seat climate zones.

1. 


Temperature buttons in the climate bar.

Tap the left- or right-side temperature buttons in the center display's climate bar to open the control.

2.


Temperature control.

Set the temperature by doing one of the following:

- dragging the control to the desired temperature, or
- tapping +− to raise/lower the temperature.

> The temperature will be set and the button will display the new temperature.

**Note**

Heating/cooling cannot be accelerated by choosing a higher/lower temperature than the desired temperature.

[1] The same setting applies to the rear seats with the 2-zone climate system.

# 7.1.1.5. Synchronize temperature

The temperature in the different climate zones of the vehicle can be synchronized with the temperature set for the driver's side.

1.

Synchronization button on the driver's side temperature control.

   Tap the driver's side temperature button in the center display's climate bar to open the control.

2. Tap **Synchronize temperature**.

> The temperature for all of the vehicle's climate zones will be synchronized with the one set for the driver's side and the synchronization symbol will be displayed next to the temperature button.

Synchronization is stopped with another press on **Synchronize temperature** or by changing the temperature setting for a climate zone other than the driver's.

---

# 7.1.1.6. Activating and deactivating front seat ventilation*

The seats can be ventilated to provide increased comfort in warm weather.

The ventilation system consists of fans in the seats and backrest that draw air through the seat upholstery. The cooler the passenger compartment is, the greater the cooling effect of the ventilation. The system can be activated when the engine is running.

1.

   Tap the left- or right-side steering wheel and seat button in the center display's climate bar to open the controls for steering wheel and seat heating.

   If the vehicle is not equipped with heated seats or heated steering wheel (for the driver's side), the button for seat ventilation is directly accessible in the climate bar.

2.

   Tap the seat ventilation button repeatedly to select one of the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level is changed and the set level is displayed in the button.

* Option/accessory.

---

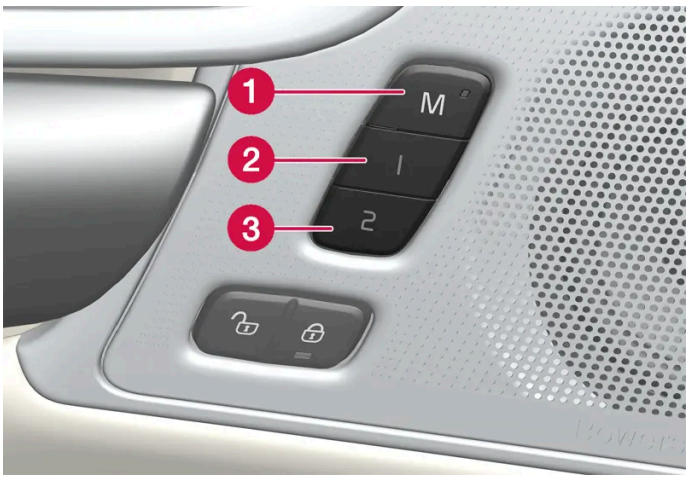
# 7.1.2. Memory function for front seat

---

## 7.1.2.1. Using stored positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display*

If the positions for the power* seat, door mirrors and head-up display* have been stored, they can be activated using the memory buttons.

## Using a stored position




A stored position can be used with the front door open or closed:

**Front door open**

1. Briefly press one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3). The power seats, door mirrors and head-up display will move and stop at the positions stored in that button.

**Front door closed**

1. Press and hold one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) until the seat, door mirrors and head-up display stop in the positions stored in that memory button.

If the memory button is released, the seat, door mirrors and head-up display will stop moving.

**Warning**

- This list point needs to be translated exactly to: "Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- The seat should be adjusted so that the brake pedal can be depressed fully. In addition, position the seat as far rearward as comfort and control allow.
- The seat rails on the floor must not be obstructed in any way when the seat is in motion.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

**Note**

For the stored positions to work, all driver profiles need to be in **Protect Profile** mode.

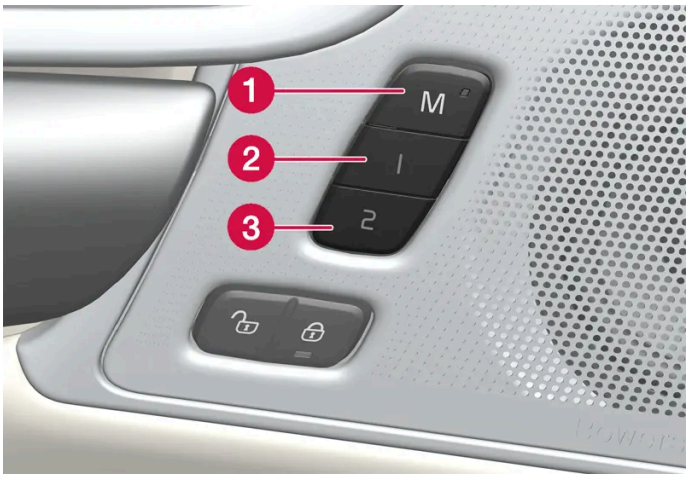
* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.1.2.2. Storing positions for seats, mirrors and head-up display*

Adjustment settings for the power* seat, door mirrors and head-up display* can be stored in the memory buttons.

Two different positions for the power* seat, door mirrors and head-up display* can be stored using the memory buttons. The buttons are located on the inside of either one or both* front doors.




1 Button **M** for storing a setting.

2 Memory button.

3 Memory button.

## Storing positions

1. Adjust the seat, door mirrors and head-up display to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the M button. The indicator light in the button will illuminate.
3. Press and hold down button 1 or 2 within three seconds.

> When the position has been stored in the memory button, an audio signal will sound and the indicator light in the M button will go out.

If none of the memory buttons are pressed within three seconds, the M button will go out and no position will be stored.

The seats, door mirrors or head-up display must be readjusted before a new memory position can be set.

> **Note**
>
> For the stored positions to work, all driver profiles need to be in **Protect Profile** mode.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.1.3. Front seats

The seat has a number of setting options to increase comfort.

---

# 7.1.4. Power* front seats

The front seats can be adjusted in a number of different ways to help enhance your seating comfort. The power seat can be moved forward/backward and up/down. The height and length* of the seat cushion and the tilt of the backrest can be adjusted. Lumbar support* can be adjusted up, down, forward and backward[1].

The seats can be adjusted when the vehicle is running and for a certain period of time after the door has been unlocked without the vehicle running. They can also be adjusted for a short period after the vehicle is turned off.

> **Important**
>
> The power seats have an overload protector that is triggered if a seat is blocked by any object. If this occurs, remove the object and attempt to adjust the seat again.

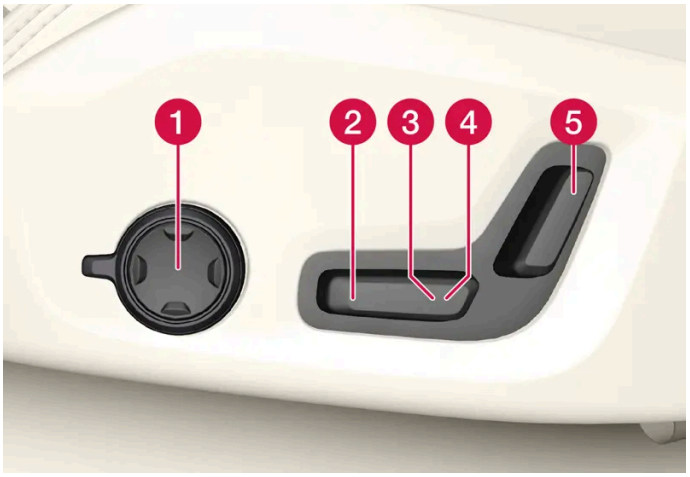
* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies for four-way lumbar support*. Two-way lumbar support* is adjusted forward/rearward.

---

# 7.1.5. Adjusting the power* front seats

Set the desired seating position using the controls on the front seat cushion. To set the convenience functions, turn the multifunction control[1] upward/downward.




The illustration shows the controls in a vehicle with four-way lumbar support*. Vehicles with two-way lumbar support* do not have the rotary multifunction control.

1. In vehicles with four-way lumbar support*, turn the multifunction control[1] up/down to set the convenience functions. In vehicles with two-way lumbar support*, use the round button to adjust the lumbar support forward/rearward.
2. Raise/lower the front edge of the seat cushion by moving the control up/down.
3. Raise/lower the seat by moving the control up/down.
4. Move the seat forward/rearward by moving the control forward/rearward.
5. Change the backrest tilt by moving the control forward/backward.

Only one movement (forward/rearward/up/down) can be performed at a time.

The front seat backrests cannot be folded down completely.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Not available in vehicles with two-way lumbar support*.

---

# 7.1.6. Adjusting the passenger seat from the driver's seat*

The front passenger seat can be adjusted from the driver's seat.

## Activating the function

The function is activated via the function view in the center display:

Tap the **Adjust Passenger Seat** button to activate.

## Adjust passenger seat

The driver must adjust the passenger seat within 10 seconds of activating the function. If no adjustment is made within this time, the function will be deactivated.

The driver adjusts the passenger seat using the controls on the driver's seat:

1. Move the passenger seat forward/rearward by moving the control forward/rearward.
2. Change the backrest tilt of the passenger seat by moving the control forward/backward.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.1.7. Manual front seats

The front seats can be adjusted in a number of different ways to help enhance your seating comfort.

1. Raise/lower the front edge of the seat cushion* by moving the control up/down.[1]
2. Change the length of the seat cushion* by pulling up the lever and moving the cushion forward/backward.
3. Move the seat forward/backing by lifting the handle and moving the seat to a suitable distance from the steering wheel and pedals. Check to make sure the seat is securely locked into place after its setting has been changed.
4. Adjust lumbar support* by pressing the button up/down/forward/rearward.[2]

5 Raise/lower the seat by moving the control up/down.

6 Change the backrest tilt by turning the knob on the backrest.

> **Warning**
>
> - Do not adjust the seat while driving. The seat should be adjusted so that the brake pedal can be depressed fully. In addition, position the seat as far rearward as comfort and control allow.
> - Check that the seat is securely locked into position after adjusting.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to the driver's seat.

[2] Applies for four-way lumbar support*. Two-way lumbar support* is adjusted forward/rearward.

---

# 7.1.8. Multifunctional* front seat function overview

Enhance seating comfort using the multifunction control*.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.1.9. Front seat massage* settings

The settings for the multifunctional seats can be adjusted using either the mutifunction control on the side of the seat or the center display. The adjustment settings are shown in the center display.

Multifunction control, located on the side of the seat cushion.

## Massage settings

The following massage settings are available:

- **On/Off**: Select **On**/**Off** to turn on/off the massage function.
- **Programs 1-5**: There are 5 preinstalled massage programs. Choose between **Swell**, **Tread**, **Advanced**, **Lumbar** and **Shoulder**.
- **Intensity**: Select **Low**, **Normal** or **High**.
- **Speed**: Select **Slow**, **Normal** or **Fast**.

**Restarting the massage function**

The massage function turns off automatically after 20 minutes. The function is reactivated manually.

1. Tap **Restart**, which is displayed in the center display, to restart the selected massage program.

> The massage program will restart. If no selection is made, the message will be stored in Top view.

* Option/accessory.

---

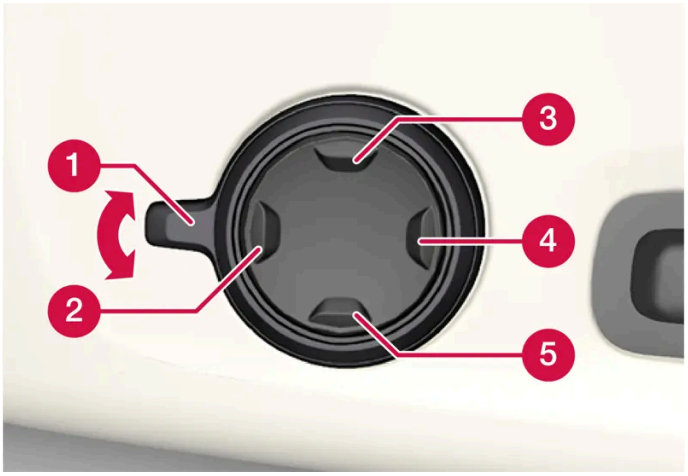
# 7.1.10. Adjusting front seat massage settings*

The settings for the multifunctional seats can be adjusted using either the mutifunction control on the seat or the center display. The adjustment settings are shown in the center display.

## Adjusting front seat massage settings

The front seat backrests have a massage function. Air-filled cushions provide the massaging action and a number of settings are available.

The massage function can only be activated when the engine is running.



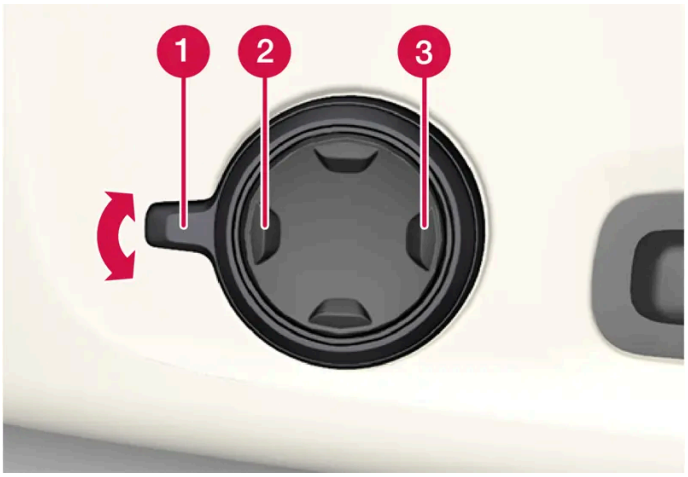

1. Activate the multifunction control by turning the control 1 upward/downward. The seat settings view will appear in the center display.
2. Select **Massage** in the seat settings view.
3. Select massage settings by tapping the center display or by moving the cursor up/down using the multifunction control's upper 3/lower 5 buttons. Change a setting in the selected function by tapping the arrows on the center display or by using the multifunction control's front 2 /rear 4 buttons.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.1.11. Adjusting front seat side bolster settings*

Enhance comfort in the front seat by adjusting the sides of the backrest.




The multifunction control is located on the side of the seat cushion.

The side bolsters in the front seat backrests can be inflated/deflated to adjust the amount of support provided. The settings for the multifunctional seats can be adjusted using either the mutifunction control on the seat or the center display. The adjustment settings are shown in the center display.

To adjust the side bolsters:

1. Activate the multifunction control by turning it upward/downward 1. The seat settings view will appear in the center display.
2. Select **Side bolsters** in the seat settings view.
   - Press the front part of the four-way button to increase side bolster support 2.
   - Press the rear part of the four-way button to decrease side bolster support 3.

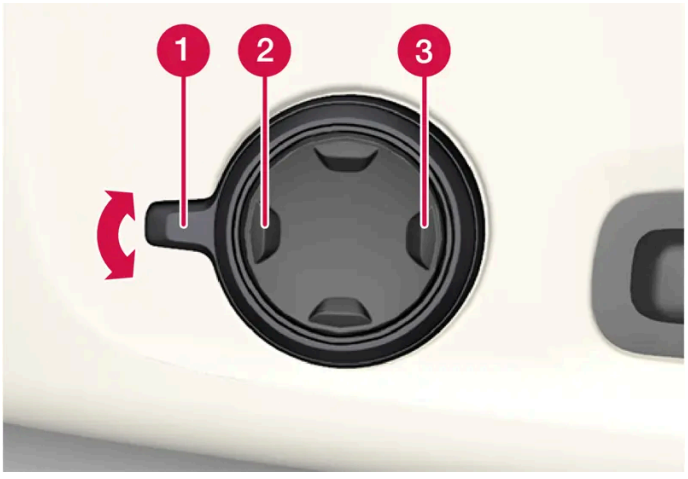
* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.1.12. Adjusting* front seat cushion length

Depending on the selected equipment level, the length of the seat cushion can either be adjusted using the multifunction control* on the side of the seat cushion, or manually adjusted using the control on the front of the seat cushion.

## Adjusting seat cushion length using the multifunction control

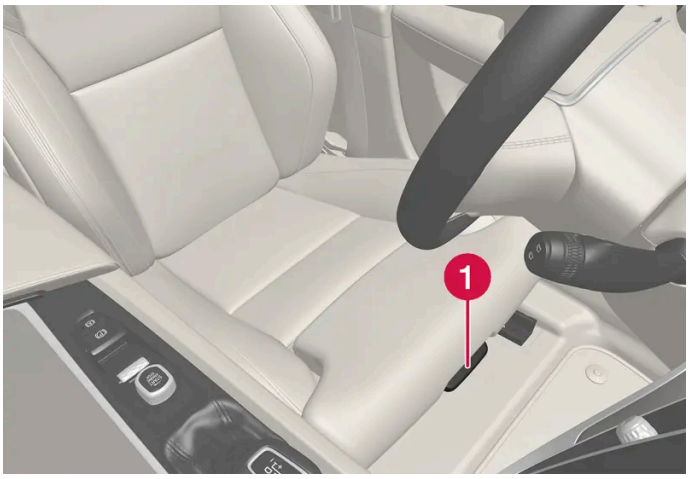



The multifunction control, located on the side of the seat cushion.

1. Activate the multifunction control by turning the control 1 upward/downward. The seat settings view will appear in the center display.
2. Select **Cushion extension** in the seat settings view.

- Push in the front part of the four-way button 2 to extend the seat cushion.
- Press the rear part of the four-way button 3 to shorten the seat cushion.

### Manually adjusting seat cushion length




Control for adjusting seat cushion.

1. Grasp the 1 handle on the front of the seat and pull upward.
2. Adjust the length of the seat cushion.
3. Release the handle and make sure the seat cushion locks into position.

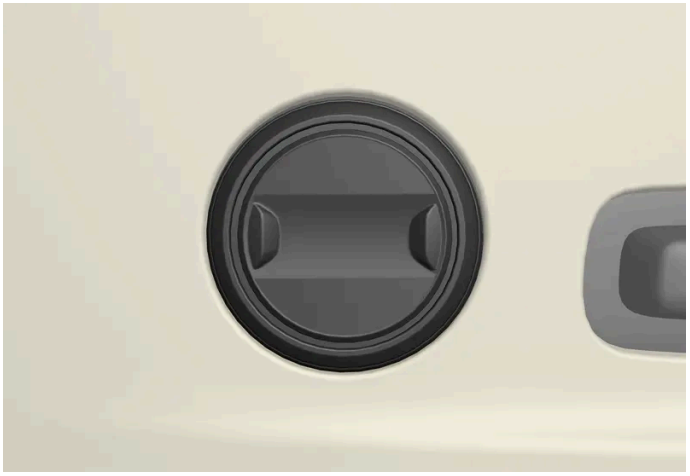
* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.1.13. Adjusting front seat lumbar support*

Use the control on the side of the seat cushion to adjust the lumbar support.

Multifunction control, in vehicles with four-way lumbar support*.

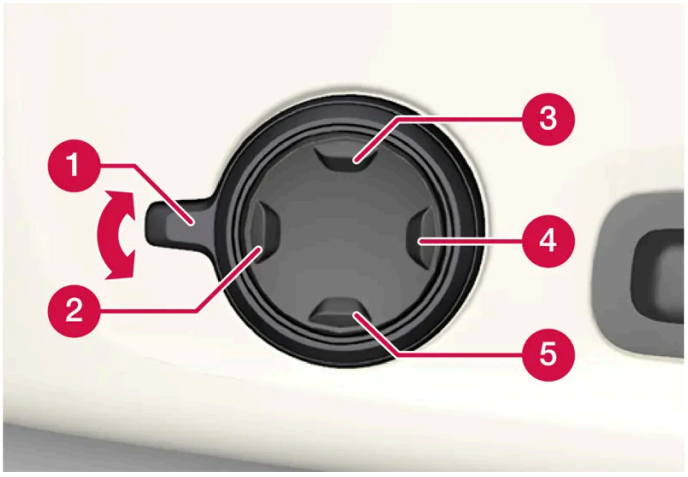


Control in vehicles with two-way lumbar support*.

Lumbar support is adjusted using the multifunction control in vehicles with four-way lumbar support*, or the round button in vehicles with two-way lumbar support*. The control is located on the side of the seat cushion. Depending on the selected equipment level, the lumbar support can be adjusted forward/rearward and up/down (four-way lumbar support) or forward/backward (two-way lumbar support).

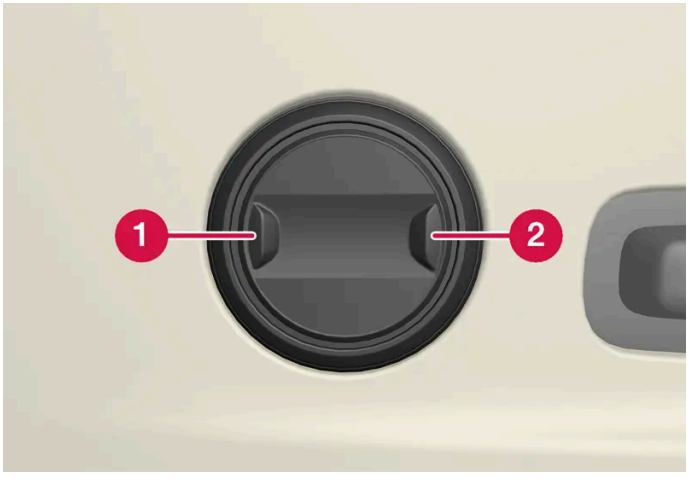
**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

## Adjusting lumbar support in vehicles with four-way lumbar support




1. Activate the multifunction control by turning the control 1 upward/downward. The seat settings view will appear in the center display.
2. Select **Lumbar** in the seat settings view.
   - Press the round button up 3/down 5 to move the lumbar support upward/downward.
   - Press the front part 2 of the button to increase lumbar support.
   - Press the rear part 4 of the button to decrease lumbar support.

## Adjusting lumbar support in vehicles with two-way lumbar support




1. Press the front part 1 of the round button to increase lumbar support.
2. Press the rear part 2 of the round button to decrease lumbar support.

* Option/accessory.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

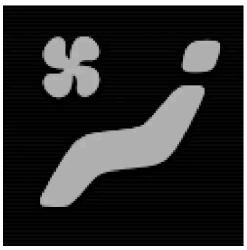
# 7.2. Rear seat

## 7.2.1. Climate controls for rear seat

### 7.2.1.1. Activating and deactivating the heated rear seats*

The seats can be heated for added comfort for the passengers in cold weather.

#### Activating and deactivating the heated rear seats from the front seats*

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Rear climate** tab.

3.

   Tap the seat heating button repeatedly to select one of the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level is changed and the set level is displayed in the button.

#### Activating and deactivating the heated rear seats from the rear seat

With 2-zone system:

1.

Buttons for seat heating on the rear side of the tunnel console.

Press repeatedly on the left or right seat heating buttons on the rear side of the tunnel console to select one of four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level is changed and the indicator lights in the button display the level.

With 4-zone system*:

1.


Seat heating controls and indicator lights on the rear side of the tunnel console.

Press repeatedly on the left or right seat heating buttons in the climate panel on the tunnel console to select one of four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level will be changed and the climate panel screen will show the new level.

**Warning**

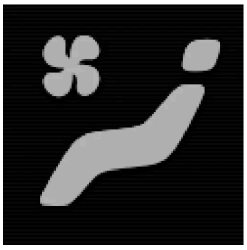
Heated seats should not be used by people who have difficulty detecting temperature increases due to nerve damage or numbness or who for another reason may have difficulty operating the controls for seat heating.

* Option/accessory.

# 7.2.1.2. Setting the blower speed for the rear seats*

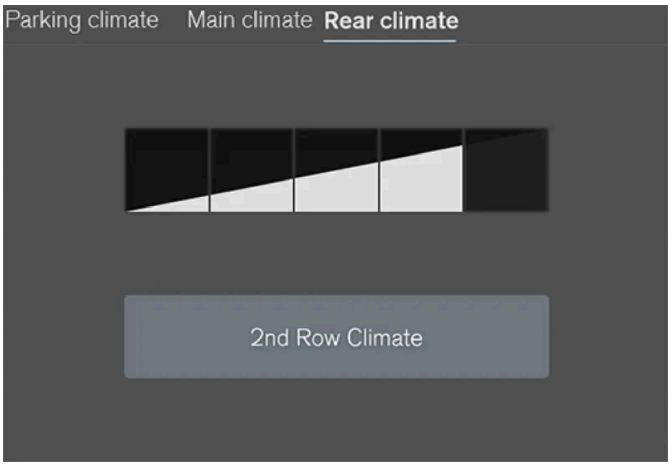
The blower can be set to several different automatically controlled speeds for the rear seat.

## Setting blower speed for the rear seats from the front seats

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Rear climate** tab.

3. 


   Blower control buttons in the **Rear climate** tab in Climate view.

   Tap the desired blower speed, **1-5**.

   The blower speed for the rear seats can be switched off by tapping **2nd row climate**.

> The blower speed will be changed and the buttons for the set speed will light up.

## Setting blower speed for the rear seats from the rear seats

1. Tap the unlock button on the tunnel console's climate panel to access the controls.
2.

Blower controls on the rear climate panel of the tunnel console.

   Tap the desired blower speed, **1-5**.

> The blower speed will be changed and the buttons for the set speed will light up.

> **Note**
>
> The blower speed for the rear seat cannot be set if the blower speed for the front seat is **Off**.
>
> To reduce the noise level, the blower speed for the rear seat is restricted depending on the mode of the front seat's blower speed.
>
> The rear seat blower speed can only be turned off from the climate view in the center display.

> **Note**
>
> The climate system automatically adapts airflow as needed within the set blower speed, which means that airflow speed may vary slightly within the same blower speed.

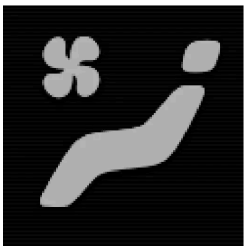
* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.2.1.3. Setting the temperature for the rear seats*

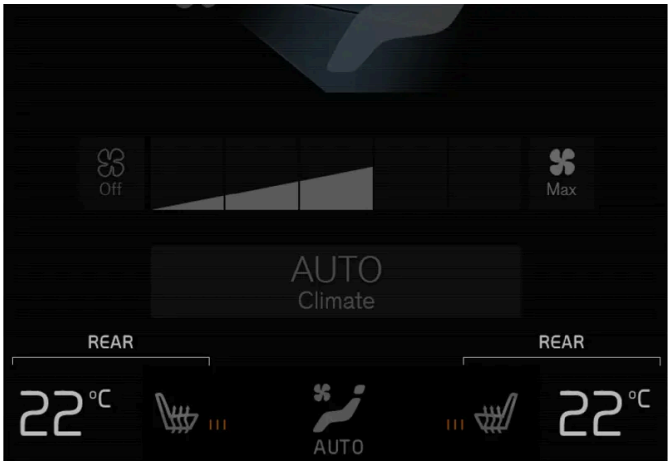
The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the rear seat climate zones.

## Setting the temperature for the rear seats from the front seats

1. 

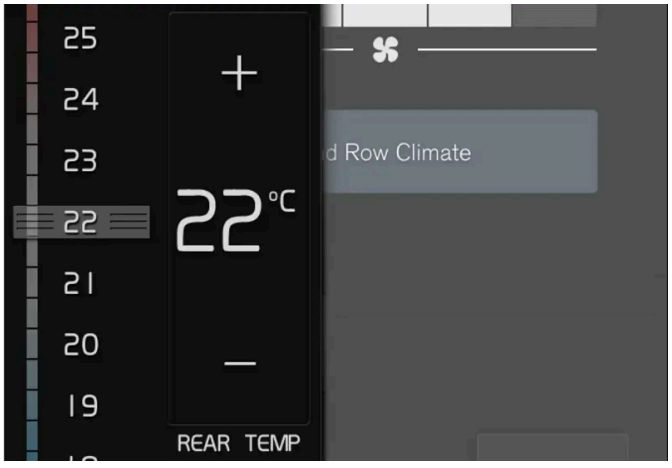
   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Rear climate** tab.

3. 


   Temperature buttons in the **Rear climate** tab in Climate view.

   Tap the left- or right-side temperature button to open the control.

4. 


   Temperature control.

   Set the temperature by:

   - dragging the control to the desired temperature.
   - tapping **+−** to raise/lower the temperature.

> The temperature will be set and the button will display the new temperature.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

### Setting the temperature for the rear seats from the rear seats

1. Tap the unlock button on the tunnel console's climate panel to access the controls.
2.

Temperature controls on the rear climate panel of the tunnel console.

   Tap the left or right side's <> buttons to lower/raise the temperature.

> The temperature will be changed and the climate panel screen will show the new temperature.

> **Note**
>
> Heating/cooling cannot be accelerated by choosing a higher/lower temperature than the desired temperature.

* Option/accessory.

---

## 7.2.2. Rear seat

The vehicle has five seats. The rear seat is divided into two folding sections. One section has two seating positions and the other has one seating position.

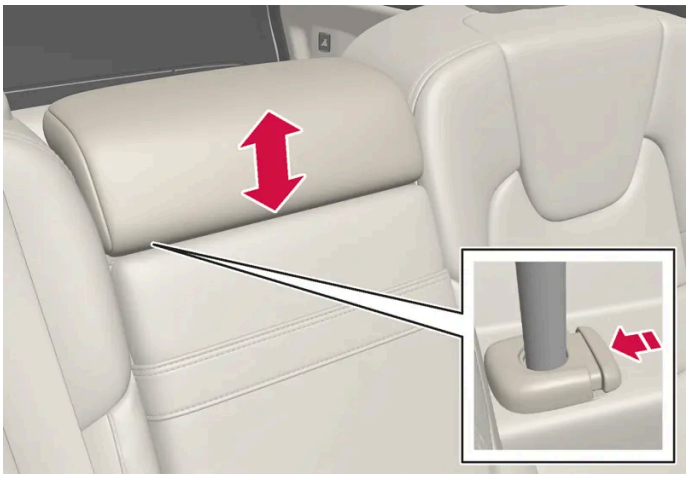
---

## 7.2.3. Adjusting the rear seat head restraints

Adjust the center head restraint in the rear seat to the seat occupant's height. Fold down the outboard head restraints* to improve rear visibility.

## Adjusting the center seat head restraint

The center head restraint should be adjusted to suit the passenger's height. The entire back of the head should be covered if possible. Manually move the restraint up or down as needed.



To lower the restraint, push and hold the button (see illustration) while carefully lowering the head restraint.

> **Warning**
>
> The center seat head restraint must be in its lowest position when the seat is not occupied. When the center seat is occupied, the head restraint must be correctly adjusted to the passenger's height, covering the entire back of the head if possible.

## Folding the rear seat outboard head restraints using the center display*

The outer head restraints can be folded via the center display's function view. The head restraint can be folded down when the vehicle is in ignition mode 0.

Tap the **Headrest Fold** button to activate/deactivate folding.

Manually push the head restraint until it clicks into position.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not lower the head restraint if there are passengers in any of the rear seats.

> **Warning**
>
> The head restraint must be locked in the upright position after it has been folded up.

## Folding the rear seat outboard head restraints using the handle

The outboard head restraints can be folded using the handle on the top of the seat (see illustration 1). Note that this method also folds down the backrests. To fold down only the head restraints, e.g. to improve visibility, use the center display* instead.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.2.4. Folding down the rear seat backrests

The rear seat backrest is split into two sections. The two sections can be folded forward individually.

**Warning**

- Adjust the seat and ensure it locks into position before driving. Use caution when adjusting the seat. Uncontrolled or careless adjustments could lead to injury.
- Long objects must always be securely tied down to help prevent injury or damage in the event of sudden braking.
- Always turn off the vehicle and apply the parking brake when loading or unloading the vehicle.
- Put the gear selector in P to help prevent the gear selector from being inadvertently moved.

**Important**

When the backrest is folded down, make sure there are no objects in the rear seat, and the seat belts are not buckled. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the upholstery.

**Important**

The armrest* in the center seat must be raised before the seat backrest is folded down.

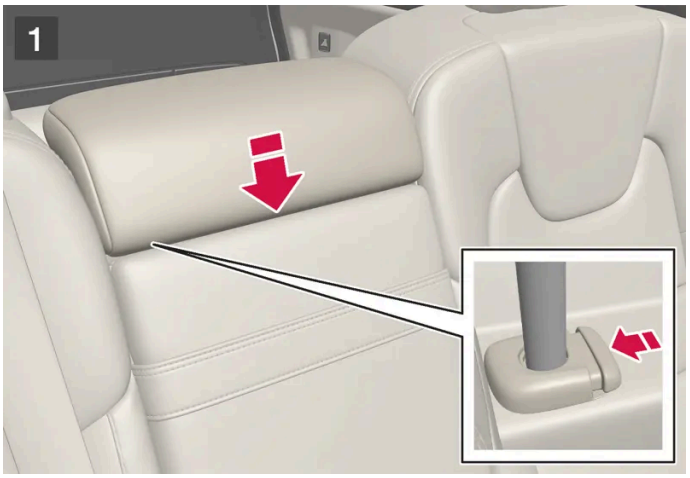
The ski hatch in the rear seat must be closed before the seat backrest is folded down.

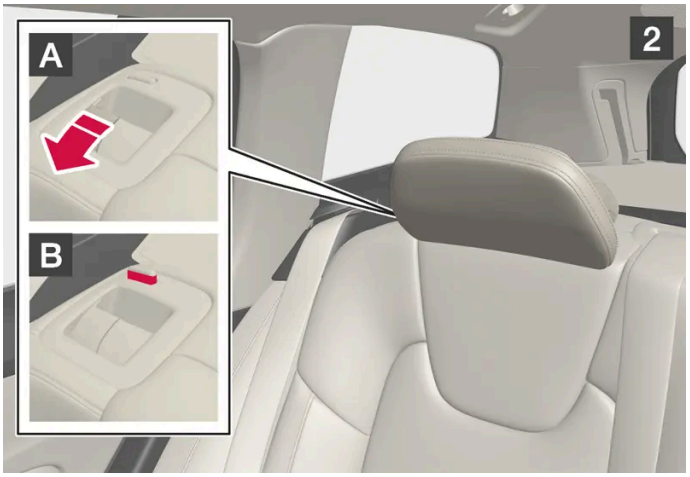
**Note**

The front seats may need to be pushed forward and/or the backrest adjusted so that the rear seat backrests can be fully lowered.

## Folding down the backrests

The vehicle must be stationary and at least one of the rear doors must be open before a backrest can be folded down.




Make sure that the rear seat is unoccupied and that there are no objects on the seat.

1. 1
   Push down the center seat's head restraint manually.

2. 2
   Pull up the handle on the backrest A while folding down the backrest. The handle for the head restraint will be automatically pulled up when the backrest is lowered. A red indicator light near the backrest lock B indicates that the backrest is no longer locked.

> **Note**
>
> When the backrest is folded down, the head restraint may come in contact with the seat cushion of the seat being folded down. Adjust the head restraints on the folded seat to help prevent damage to the fabric.

3. The backrest lock will release and the backrest will automatically fold down to the horizontal position.

## Folding up the backrest

To fold up the backrest to the upright position manually:

1. Move the backrest upward/rearward.
2. Press the backrest until it locks into position.
3. Fold up the head restraints manually.
4. Adjust the center head restraint if necessary.

> **Warning**
>
> When the backrest is restored to an upright position, the red indicator should no longer be visible. If it is still visible, the backrest is not locked in place.

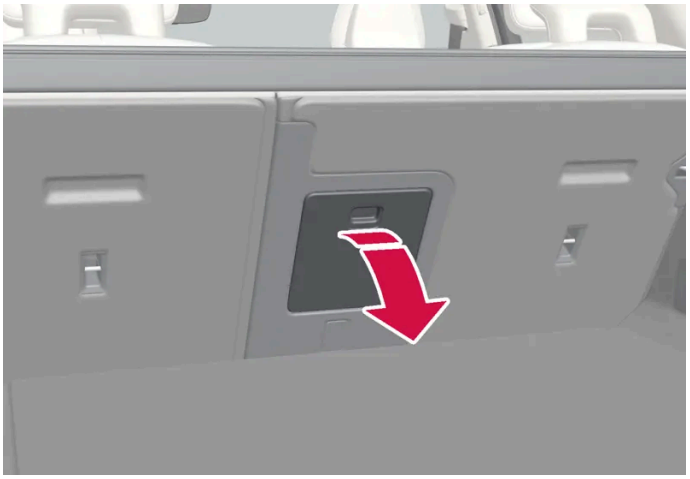
> **Warning**
>
> Make sure that the rear seat backrest and head restraint are locked securely in place after the seat is folded up.
>
> The head restraints at the outer seats must always be raised when there is a passenger in one of these spots of the rear seat.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.2.5. Rear seat ski hatch

The hatch in the rear seat backrest can be opened to transport long, narrow objects such as skis.



The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

1. In the cargo compartment, grasp the ski hatch handle and pull it down.
2. Fold down the armrest in the rear seat.

If the private locking function is used, the ski hatch must be closed.

---

# 7.3. Steering wheel

---

## 7.3.1. Speed-dependent steering wheel resistance

Speed-dependent power steering increases the steering wheel resistance in pace with the vehicle's speed, which can help give the driver an enhanced feeling of control and stability. Steering is stiffer on highways. When parking and at low speeds, it will be easier to move the steering wheel.

### Reduced power

In rare situations, the power steering may need to work at reduced power and the steering wheel may then feel more difficult to move. This may happen when the power steering becomes too hot and needs to be temporarily cooled. It can also happen if there is a disturbance in power supply.

If there is reduced power, the message **Power steering Assistance temporarily reduced** and this symbol are shown in the instrument panel.

While the power steering is working at reduced power, the driver support functions and systems with steering assistance are not available.

> **Warning**
>
> If the temperature rises too high, the power steering may be forced to switch off completely. In such a situation, the driver display shows the message **Power steering failure Stop safely** along with a symbol.

### Changing the level of steering wheel resistance*

In INDIVIDUAL drive mode, the level of steering wheel resistance can be adjusted.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **Drive Modes** → **Steering Force**.

Steering wheel resistance settings can only be accessed if the vehicle is stationary or is moving straight ahead at a low speed.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.3.2. Steering wheel controls and horn

The steering wheel has a horn and controls for e.g. driver support systems and voice control.

Steering wheel keypads and paddles*.

1 Driver support system controls.[1]

2 Paddle* for manually shifting gears (automatic transmission).

3 Controls for voice commands, accessing menus and messages, and handling phone calls.

### Horn

The horn is located in the center of the steering wheel.

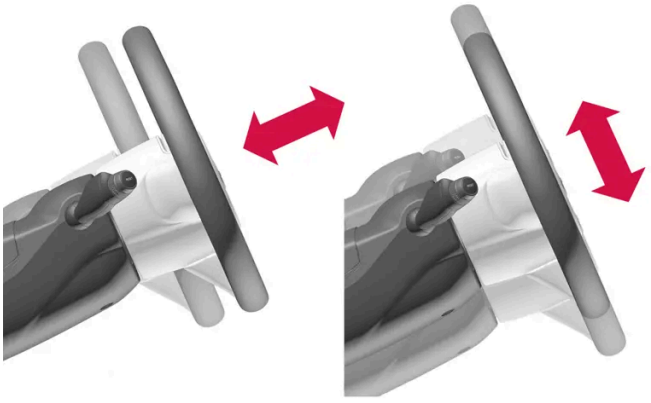
* Option/accessory.

[1] Cruise Control, Adaptive Cruise Control*, Distance Alert* and Pilot Assist.

---

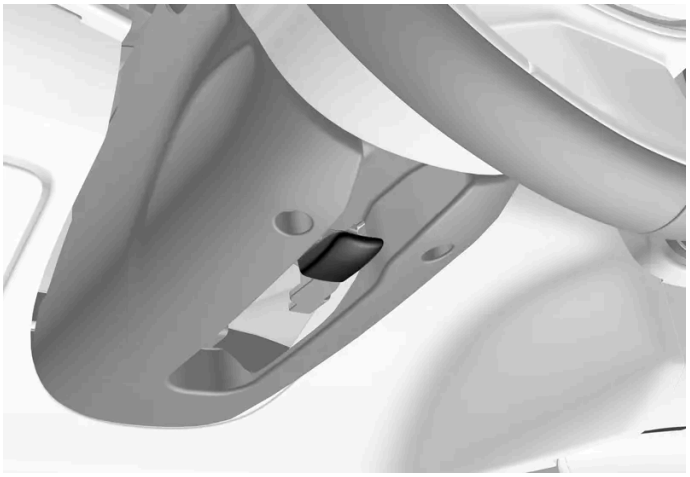
## 7.3.3. Adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to various positions.



The steering wheel's reach and height can be adjusted.

> **Warning**
>
> Adjust the steering wheel and ensure it locks into position before driving. Never adjust the steering wheel while driving.



Steering wheel adjuster lever.

1. Move the lever forward to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.
3. Pull the lever back to lock the steering wheel into place. If the lever is difficult to move, press or lift the steering wheel lightly while pulling the lever.

---

# 7.3.4. Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated for added comfort in cold weather.

1.

   Tap the driver's side steering wheel and seat button in the climate bar in the center display to open the controls for steering wheel and seat heating.

   If the vehicle is not equipped with heated or ventilated seats, the button for steering wheel heating is directly accessible in the climate bar.

2.

   Tap the steering wheel heating button repeatedly to select one of the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level is changed and the set level is displayed in the button.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 7.3.5. Activating and deactivating automatic steering wheel heating*

The steering wheel can be heated for added comfort in cold weather.

Steering wheel heating can be set to automatically activate when the engine is started. When set to automatically activate, heating will be turned on at low ambient temperatures.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Steering Wheel Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated steering wheel.

> An "A" will be displayed next to the heated steering wheel button in the climate bar when auto start has been activated.

4. Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

* Option/accessory.

---

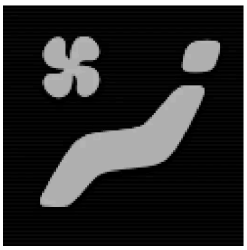
# 8. Climate control

# 8.1. Climate controls

# 8.1.1. Climate controls for passenger compartment

## 8.1.1.1. Activating auto climate control

If auto climate control is activated, several climate system functions are controlled automatically.

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. Tap or press and hold **AUTO Climate**.
   - Tap - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically.
   - Press and hold - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically. Temperature and blower speed are changed to standard settings: 22 °C (72 °F) and speed **3** (speed **2** in the rear seat[1]).

> Auto climate mode is activated and the button lights up.

> **Note**
>
> It is possible to change the temperature and blower speed without deactivating automatic climate control. Automatic climate control is deactivated when the air distribution is changed manually or when the max defroster is activated.

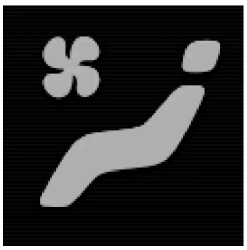
* Option/accessory.

[1] For vehicles with 4-zone climate system*.

# 8.1.1.2. Setting the blower speed for the rear seats*

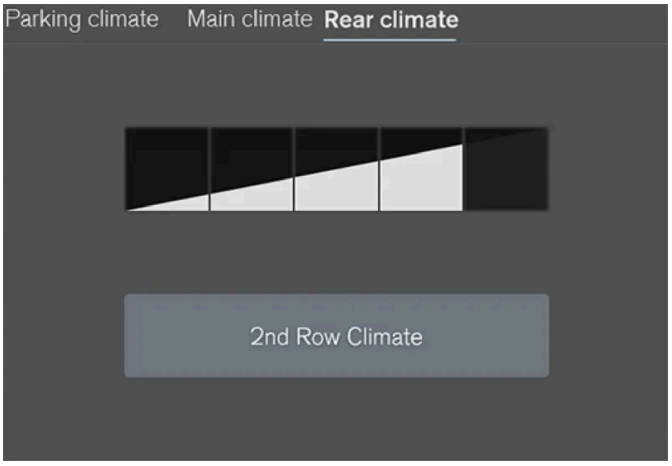
The blower can be set to several different automatically controlled speeds for the rear seat.

## Setting blower speed for the rear seats from the front seats

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Rear climate** tab.

3. 


   Blower control buttons in the **Rear climate** tab in Climate view.

   Tap the desired blower speed, **1**-**5**.

   The blower speed for the rear seats can be switched off by tapping **2nd row climate**.

> The blower speed will be changed and the buttons for the set speed will light up.

## Setting blower speed for the rear seats from the rear seats

1. Tap the unlock button on the tunnel console's climate panel to access the controls.
2.

Blower controls on the rear climate panel of the tunnel console.

   Tap the desired blower speed, 1-5.

> The blower speed will be changed and the buttons for the set speed will light up.

**Note**

The blower speed for the rear seat cannot be set if the blower speed for the front seat is **Off**.

To reduce the noise level, the blower speed for the rear seat is restricted depending on the mode of the front seat's blower speed.

The rear seat blower speed can only be turned off from the climate view in the center display.

**Note**

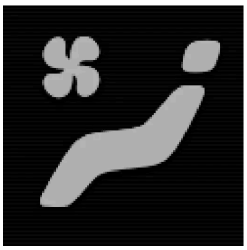
The climate system automatically adapts airflow as needed within the set blower speed, which means that airflow speed may vary slightly within the same blower speed.

* Option/accessory.

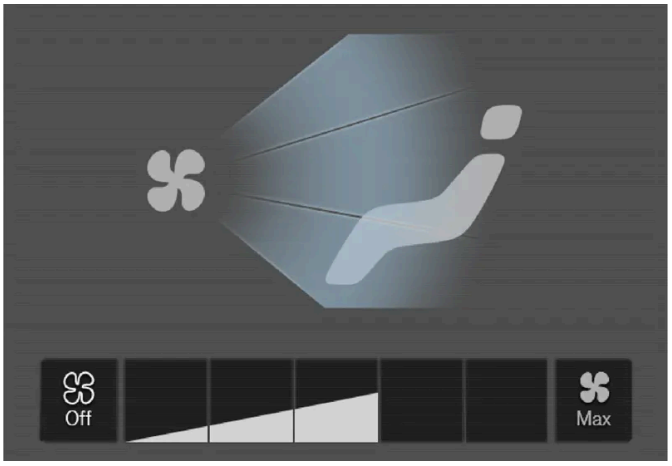
---

# 8.1.1.3. Setting the blower speed for the front seats [1]

The blower can be set to several different automatically controlled speeds for the front seat.

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. 


   Blower control buttons in Climate view.

   Tap the desired blower speed: **Off**, **1-5** or **Max**.

> The blower speed will be changed and the buttons for the set speed will light up.

**Important**

The air conditioning will not engage if the blower is turned off completely, which may cause fogging on the inside of the windows.

**Note**

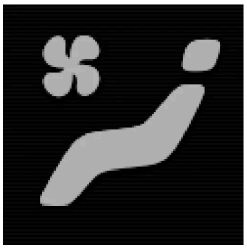
The climate system automatically adapts airflow as needed within the set blower speed, which means that airflow speed may vary slightly within the same blower speed.

[1] The same setting applies to the rear seats with the 2-zone climate system.

# 8.1.1.4. Activating and deactivating air conditioning

The air conditioning cools and dehumidifies incoming air as needed.

When the air conditioning is activated, it will be switched on and off automatically by the climate system as needed.

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2.


   Tap **AC**.

> Air conditioning is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

> **Note**
>
> For optimal air conditioning function, close all the side windows and the panoramic roof*.

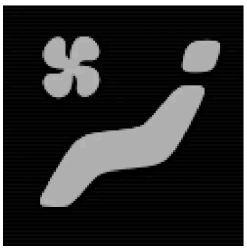
> **Note**
>
> The air conditioning cannot be activated when the fan speed is set to **Off**.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.1.1.5. Activating and deactivating recirculation

The climate system's recirculation function helps shut out smog, smoke, exhaust fumes, etc. by reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2.


   Tap **Recirc**.

> Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

**Important**

If the air in the vehicle is recirculated too long, there is a risk of fogging on the inside of the windows.

**Note**

Recirculation cannot be activated when the max defroster is on.

---

# 8.1.1.6. Activating and deactivating the recirculation timer setting

The climate system's recirculation function helps shut out smog, smoke, exhaust fumes, etc. by reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

When the recirculation timer is activated, air recirculation will switch off automatically after 20 minutes.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.

2. Tap **Climate**.

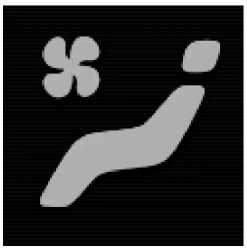
3. Tap **Recirculation Timer** to activate/deactivate the recirculation timer.

---

# 8.1.1.7. Setting the temperature for the rear seats*

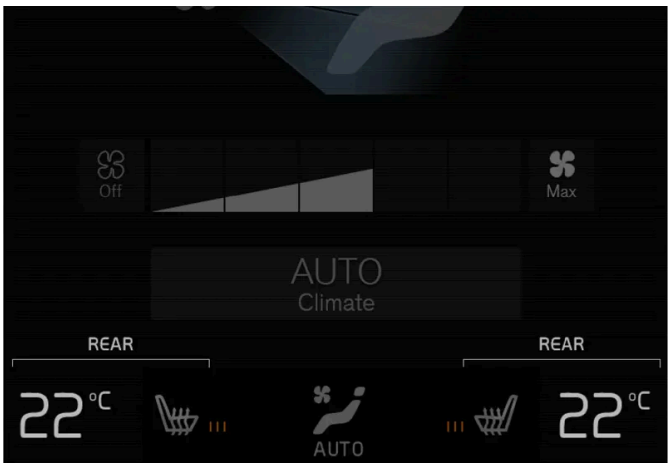
The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the rear seat climate zones.

## Setting the temperature for the rear seats from the front seats

1. 

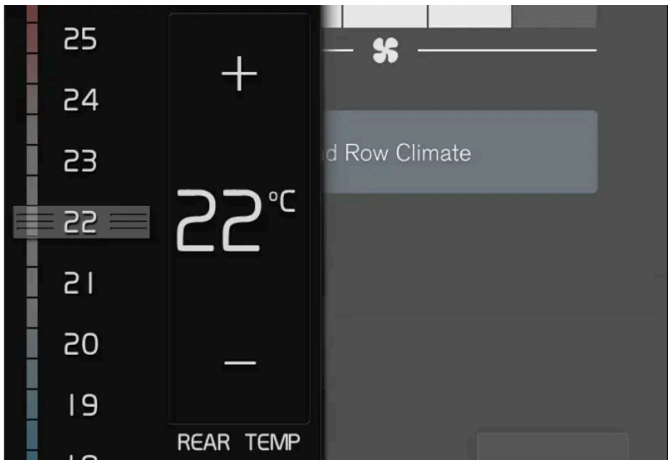
   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Rear climate** tab.

3. 


   Temperature buttons in the **Rear climate** tab in Climate view.

Tap the left- or right-side temperature button to open the control.

4. 

Temperature control.

Set the temperature by:

- dragging the control to the desired temperature.
- tapping +− to raise/lower the temperature.

> The temperature will be set and the button will display the new temperature.

## Setting the temperature for the rear seats from the rear seats

1. Tap the unlock button on the tunnel console's climate panel to access the controls.

2.

Temperature controls on the rear climate panel of the tunnel console.

Tap the left or right side's <> buttons to lower/raise the temperature.

> The temperature will be changed and the climate panel screen will show the new temperature.

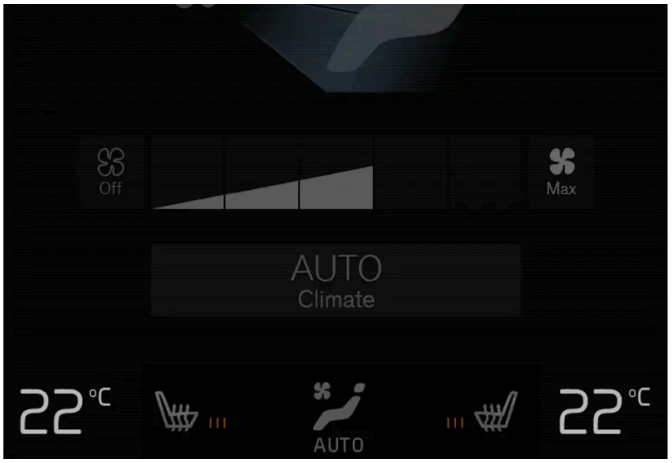
> **Note**
>
> Heating/cooling cannot be accelerated by choosing a higher/lower temperature than the desired temperature.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.1.1.8. Setting the temperature for the front seats [1]

The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the front seat climate zones.

1. 


Temperature buttons in the climate bar.

Tap the left- or right-side temperature buttons in the center display's climate bar to open the control.

2.


Temperature control.

Set the temperature by doing one of the following:

- dragging the control to the desired temperature, or
- tapping +− to raise/lower the temperature.

> The temperature will be set and the button will display the new temperature.

> **Note**
>
> Heating/cooling cannot be accelerated by choosing a higher/lower temperature than the desired temperature.

[1] The same setting applies to the rear seats with the 2-zone climate system.

---

# 8.1.1.9. Synchronize temperature

The temperature in the different climate zones of the vehicle can be synchronized with the temperature set for the driver's side.

1.

Synchronization button on the driver's side temperature control.

Tap the driver's side temperature button in the center display's climate bar to open the control.

2. Tap **Synchronize temperature**.

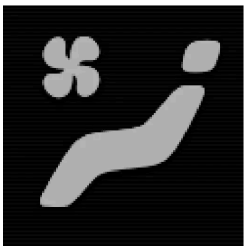
> The temperature for all of the vehicle's climate zones will be synchronized with the one set for the driver's side and the synchronization symbol will be displayed next to the temperature button.

Synchronization is stopped with another press on **Synchronize temperature** or by changing the temperature setting for a climate zone other than the driver's.

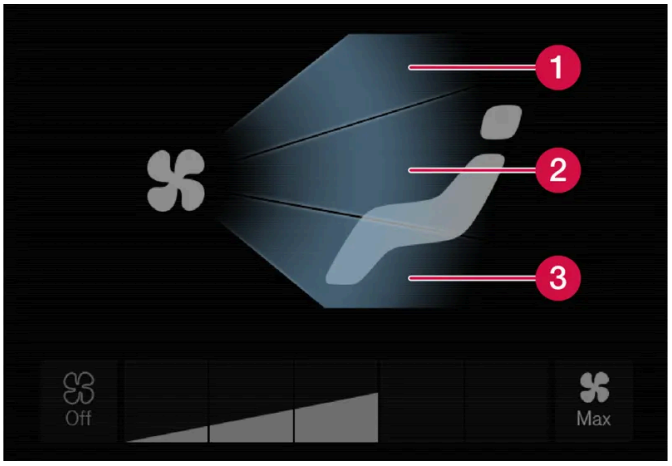
---

# 8.1.1.10. Adjusting air distribution

Air distribution can be adjusted manually if needed.

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. 


   Air distribution buttons in Climate view.

   1 Air distribution - windshield defrost vents

   2 Air distribution - dashboard and center console air vents

   3 Air distribution - floor air vents

   Tap one or more air distribution buttons to open/close the airflow for that vent.

> The air distribution changes and the buttons will light up or go out.

# 8.1.2. Climate controls for seats and steering wheel

# 8.1.2.1. Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated for added comfort in cold weather.

1.

   Tap the driver's side steering wheel and seat button in the climate bar in the center display to open the controls for steering wheel and seat heating.

   If the vehicle is not equipped with heated or ventilated seats, the button for steering wheel heating is directly accessible in the climate bar.

2.

   Tap the steering wheel heating button repeatedly to select one of the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level is changed and the set level is displayed in the button.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.1.2.2. Activating and deactivating automatic steering wheel heating*

The steering wheel can be heated for added comfort in cold weather.

Steering wheel heating can be set to automatically activate when the engine is started. When set to automatically activate, heating will be turned on at low ambient temperatures.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Steering Wheel Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated steering wheel.

> An "A" will be displayed next to the heated steering wheel button in the climate bar when auto start has been activated.

4. Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

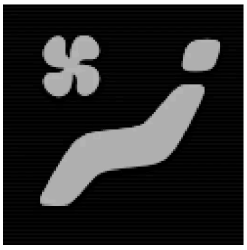
* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.1.2.3. Activating and deactivating the heated rear seats*

The seats can be heated for added comfort for the passengers in cold weather.

## Activating and deactivating the heated rear seats from the front seats*

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Rear climate** tab.

3.

   Tap the seat heating button repeatedly to select one of the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level is changed and the set level is displayed in the button.

## Activating and deactivating the heated rear seats from the rear seat

With 2-zone system:

1.

Buttons for seat heating on the rear side of the tunnel console.

Press repeatedly on the left or right seat heating buttons on the rear side of the tunnel console to select one of four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level is changed and the indicator lights in the button display the level.

With 4-zone system*:

1.


Seat heating controls and indicator lights on the rear side of the tunnel console.

Press repeatedly on the left or right seat heating buttons in the climate panel on the tunnel console to select one of four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level will be changed and the climate panel screen will show the new level.

**Warning**

Heated seats should not be used by people who have difficulty detecting temperature increases due to nerve damage or numbness or who for another reason may have difficulty operating the controls for seat heating.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.1.2.4. Activating and deactivating power front seats*

The seats can be heated for added comfort for the driver and passengers in cold weather.

1.

   Tap the left- or right-side steering wheel and seat button in the center display's climate bar to open the controls for steering wheel and seat heating.

   If the vehicle is not equipped with ventilated seats or heated steering wheel (for the driver's side), the button for seat heating is directly accessible in the climate bar.

2.

   Tap the seat heating button repeatedly to select one of the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level is changed and the set level is displayed in the button.

> **Warning**
>
> Heated seats should not be used by people who have difficulty detecting temperature increases due to nerve damage or numbness or who for another reason may have difficulty operating the controls for seat heating.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.1.2.5. Activating and deactivating the heated front seat*

The seats can be heated for added comfort for the driver and passengers in cold weather.

Seat heating can be set to automatically activate when the engine is started. When set to automatically activate, heating will be turned on at low ambient temperatures.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Driver Seat Heating Level** and **Auto Passenger Seat Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated driver's and passenger seat.

> An "A" will be displayed next to the relevant seat heating button in the climate bar when auto start has been activated.

4. Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.1.2.6. Activating and deactivating front seat ventilation*

The seats can be ventilated to provide increased comfort in warm weather.

The ventilation system consists of fans in the seats and backrest that draw air through the seat upholstery. The cooler the passenger compartment is, the greater the cooling effect of the ventilation. The system can be activated when the engine is running.

1.

   Tap the left- or right-side steering wheel and seat button in the center display's climate bar to open the controls for steering wheel and seat heating.

If the vehicle is not equipped with heated seats or heated steering wheel (for the driver's side), the button for seat ventilation is directly accessible in the climate bar.

2.

   Tap the seat ventilation button repeatedly to select one of the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

> The level is changed and the set level is displayed in the button.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.1.3. Climate controls for windows and mirrors

---

# 8.1.3.1. Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the glass.

## Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors from the center console

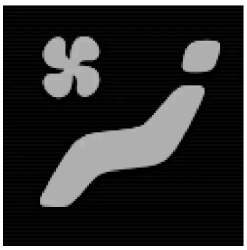
A button in the center console offers quick access to the heated rear window and door mirrors functions.

Button in center console.

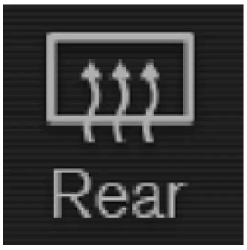
1. Tap the button.

> Heated windows and door mirrors are activated and the button lights up/goes out.

### Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors from the center display

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. 


   Tap **Rear**.

> Heated windows and door mirrors are activated and the button lights up/goes out.

---

# 8.1.3.2. Automatically activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the glass.

It is possible to select whether rear window and door mirror heating should be automatically activated or deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will be activated when there is a risk of ice or condensation on the windows or mirrors. Heating is automatically switched off when the window or door mirror is sufficiently warm and the condensation or ice is gone.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.

2. Tap **Climate**.

3. Select **Auto Rear Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic rear window and door heating.

---

# 8.1.3.3. Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove condensation and ice from windows.

Max defroster deactivates automatic climate control and air recirculation, activates the air conditioning, and changes blower speed to **5** and temperature to **HI**.

> **Note**
>
> The volume increases when the blower speed is changed to **5**.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate system reverts to the previous settings.

## Activating and deactivating max defroster from the center console

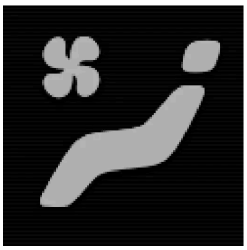
A button in the center console offers quick access to the max defroster.

Button in center console.

1. Tap the button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

### Activating and deactivating max defroster from the center display

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2.


   Tap **Max**.

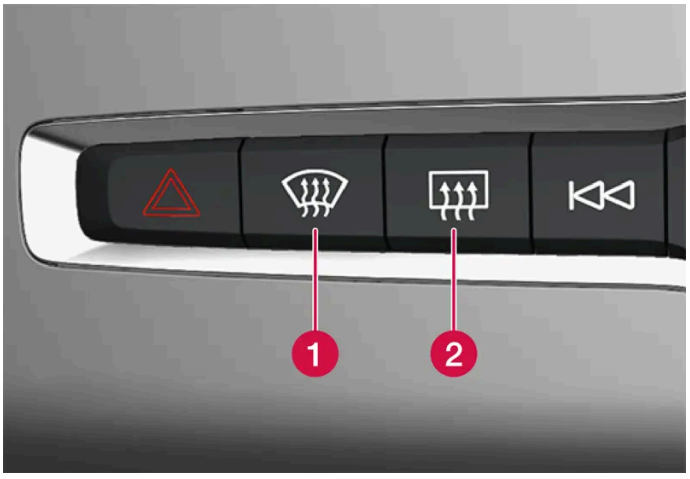
> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

---

## 8.1.4. Climate system controls

The climate system functions are controlled from physical buttons on the center console, the center display, and the climate panel on the rear side of the tunnel console*.

### Physical buttons in the center console



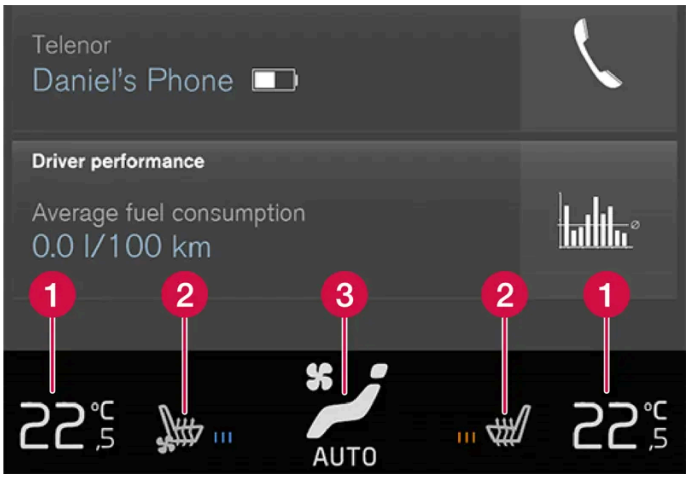

1 Button for max defroster.

2 Button for heated rear window and door mirrors.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

## Climate bar in the center display

The most common climate system functions can be controlled from the climate bar.




1 Temperature controls for driver and passenger side.

2 Controls for heated* and ventilated* driver and front passenger seat, as well as heated steering wheel*.

3 Button for opening Climate view. The graphic in the button shows activated climate system settings.

## Climate view in the center display

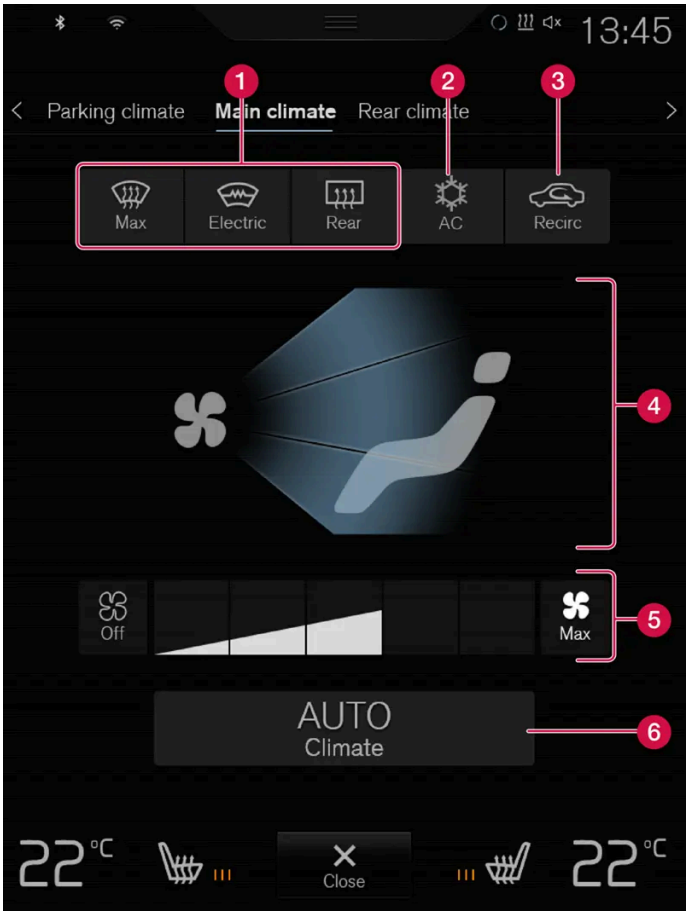
Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view.

Depending on equipment level, Climate view may be divided into several tabs. Toggle between the tabs by swiping the screen to the left/right or by tapping the desired heading.

**Main climate**

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

In addition to the functions in the climate bar, other main climate system functions can be controlled from the **Main climate** tab.




1 **Max**, **Rear** – Controls for defrosting windows and door mirrors.

2 **AC** - Air conditioning controls.

3 **Recirc** - Air recirculation controls.

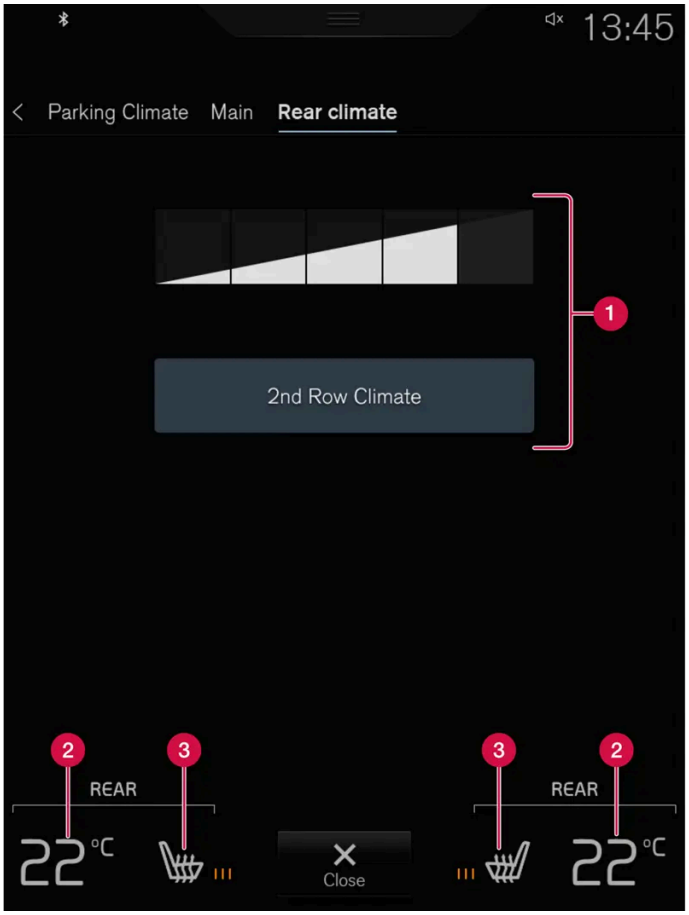
4 Air distribution controls.

5 Blower control for front seats.[1]

6 **AUTO** - Automatic climate control.

**Rear climate control***

All climate system functions for the rear seat can be controlled from the **Rear climate** tab.




1 **2nd row climate** - Rear seat climate function. Blower control for rear seats.

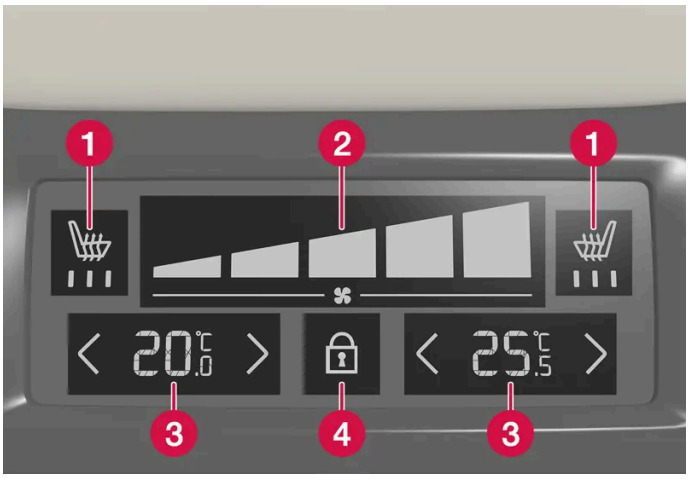
2 Rear seat temperature control.

3 Rear seat heating control*.

**Parking climate***

Parking climate functions can be controlled from the **Parking climate** tab.

## Climate controls on the rear side of the tunnel console*




1 Rear seat heating control*.

2 Blower control for rear seats.

3 Rear seat temperature control.

4 Button for locking/unlocking climate panel.

If the vehicle has heated rear seats* but does not have a climate panel on the rear side of the tunnel console, there will be buttons on the rear side of the tunnel console to control this function.

The climate panel has a screen lock to help prevent inadvertently changing blower speed and temperature. When the screen is locked, only the controls for seat adjustment* and the unlock button will be displayed.

After unlocking, blower speed and temperature can also be changed from the climate panel and all selected climate settings will be displayed. The screen locks automatically after a period of inactivity.

* Option/accessory.

[1] With the 2-zone climate system, the control is shared with the rear seat.

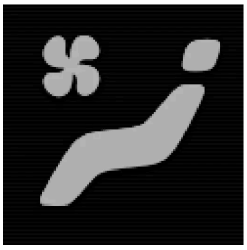
---

# 8.2. Air distribution

---

## 8.2.1. Activating and deactivating recirculation

The climate system's recirculation function helps shut out smog, smoke, exhaust fumes, etc. by reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2.


   Tap **Recirc**.

> Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

**Important**

If the air in the vehicle is recirculated too long, there is a risk of fogging on the inside of the windows.

**Note**

Recirculation cannot be activated when the max defroster is on.

---

## 8.2.2. Activating and deactivating the recirculation timer setting

The climate system's recirculation function helps shut out smog, smoke, exhaust fumes, etc. by reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

When the recirculation timer is activated, air recirculation will switch off automatically after 20 minutes.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Climate**.
3. Tap **Recirculation Timer** to activate/deactivate the recirculation timer.

---

## 8.2.3. Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove condensation and ice from windows.

Max defroster deactivates automatic climate control and air recirculation, activates the air conditioning, and changes blower speed to **5** and temperature to **HI**.

**Note**

The volume increases when the blower speed is changed to **5**.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate system reverts to the previous settings.

## Activating and deactivating max defroster from the center console

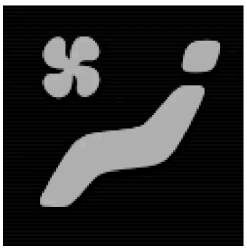
A button in the center console offers quick access to the max defroster.

Button in center console.

1. Tap the button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

## Activating and deactivating max defroster from the center display

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2.


   Tap **Max**.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 8.2.4. Air distribution

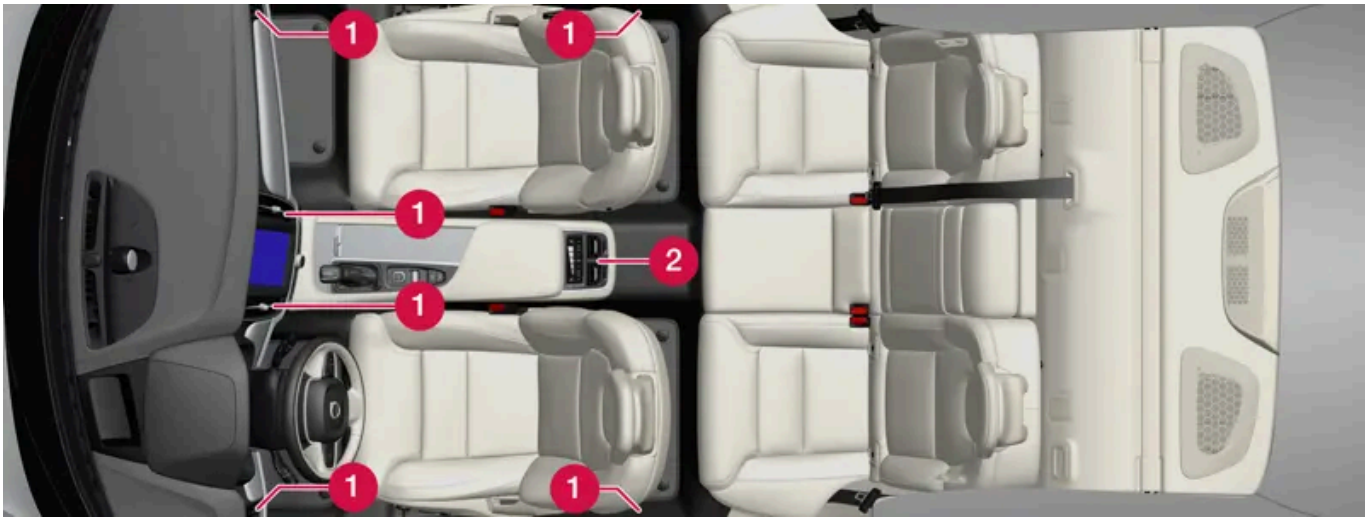
The climate system distributes incoming air through a number of vents in the passenger compartment.

## Automatic and manual air distribution

When the auto-climate feature is on, air distribution is regulated automatically. Air distribution can also be controlled manually.

## Adjustable air vents

Certain air vents in the vehicle are adjustable, which means they can be opened/closed and the direction of the air flow from the vent can be adjusted.




Location of adjustable air vents in the passenger compartment.

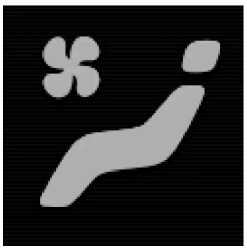
1 2-zone system - four vents on the dashboard and one on each of the pillars between the front and rear doors.

2 4-zone system* - two additional vents on the rear side of the tunnel console.

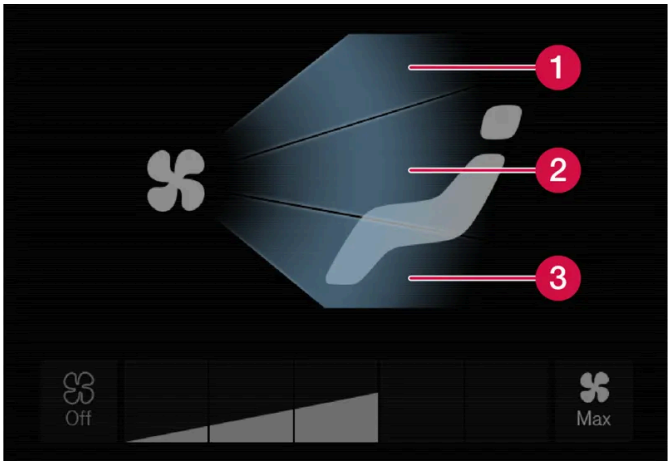
* Option/accessory.

# 8.2.5. Adjusting air distribution

Air distribution can be adjusted manually if needed.

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. 


   Air distribution buttons in Climate view.

   1 Air distribution - windshield defrost vents

   2 Air distribution - dashboard and center console air vents

   3 Air distribution - floor air vents

   Tap one or more air distribution buttons to open/close the airflow for that vent.

> The air distribution changes and the buttons will light up or go out.

---

# 8.2.6. Air distribution options

Air distribution can be adjusted manually if needed. The following options are available.

| | Air distribution | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| | If all air distribution buttons are deselected in manual mode, the climate control system will revert to automatic mode. | |
| | Main airflow from defroster vents. Some airflow from other vents. | Helps remove ice and condensation in cold and humid weather (blower speed should not be set too low). |
| | Main airflow from dashboard vents. Some airflow from other vents. | Provides effective cooling in warm weather. |
| | Main airflow from floor vents. Some airflow from other vents. | Provides heating or cooling in footwell areas. |
| | Main airflow from defroster and dashboard vents. Some airflow from other vents. | Provides a comfortable climate in warm and dry weather. |
| | Main airflow from defroster and floor vents. Some airflow from other vents. | Provides a comfortable climate and effective defogging in cold and humid weather. |
| | Main airflow from dashboard and floor vents. Some airflow from other vents. | Provides a comfortable climate in sunny, cool weather. |
| | Main airflow from defroster, dashboard and floor vents. | Provides balanced comfort in the passenger compartment. |

# 8.2.7. Opening, closing and directing air vents

Some of the air vents in the passenger compartment can be individually opened, closed and directed.

Misting can be eliminated by directing the outer air vents towards the door windows.

Direct the outer air vents into the passenger compartment to maintain a comfortable temperature in warm weather.

### Opening and closing the air vents

Air vents on the dashboard:

1. Turn the knob in the center of the air vent to open/close airflow from the vent.

   When the mark on the knob is vertical, the airflow is strongest.

Air vents on the door pillars:

1. Move the lever in the center of the air vent up/down to open/close the airflow from the vent.

   The airflow is stopped when the lever is in the lowest position. In other positions, the airflow is constant.

Air vents on the rear side of the tunnel console*:

1. Turn the thumb wheel under the air vent to open/close the airflow from the vent.

   The more white lines that are visible, the stronger the airflow.

### Directing air flow

1. Move the lever in the center of the air vent horizontally or vertically to direct the airflow from the vent.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.3. Air quality

---

# 8.3.1. Air purification

The materials used in the passenger compartment and air purification system have been selected to ensure a high level of air quality in the passenger compartment.

## Materials used in the passenger compartment

The materials in the passenger compartment are designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with asthma or allergies.

The materials have been developed and tested to reduce dust in the passenger compartment and make it easier to keep clean.

The mats in both the passenger compartment and cargo compartment can be easily removed for cleaning.

Use Volvo-recommended cleaning agents and car care products to clean the interior.

## Air purification system

In addition to the passenger compartment air filter, the vehicle is also equipped with an air purification system that helps you maintain high air quality in the passenger compartment.

---

# 8.3.2. Advanced Air Cleaner*

Advanced Air Cleaner is a fully automatic air cleaner that traps airborne particulate matter, exhaust and other pollutants in the passenger compartment air filter, which improves the climate in the passenger compartment.

The function starts automatically when the blower starts.

Airborne particulate matter are also known as $PM_{2.5}$ (particles smaller than 2.5 µm), and the concentrations of these particles in the vehicle are measured by one of the vehicle's climate control sensors. The concentration in the vehicle is presented in the downloadable app Air Quality.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.3.3. Advanced Air Cleaner* certificate

See the Advanced Air Cleaner certificate below.

## USA

Models:
AAC LHD High,
AAC LHD Low

RECOGNIZED COMPONENT
intertek 5025510
CONFORMS TO UL 867
CERTIFIED TO CSA C22.2 #187:2020

The Advanced air cleaner (Part numbers 31497530, 31497531) have been certified by the California air resource board (CARB).

The product has been tested according to the following standards:

Electrostatic Air Cleaners [UL 867:2011 Ed.5+R:16Aug2021]

Electrostatic Air Cleaners [CSA C22.2#187:2020 Ed.5]

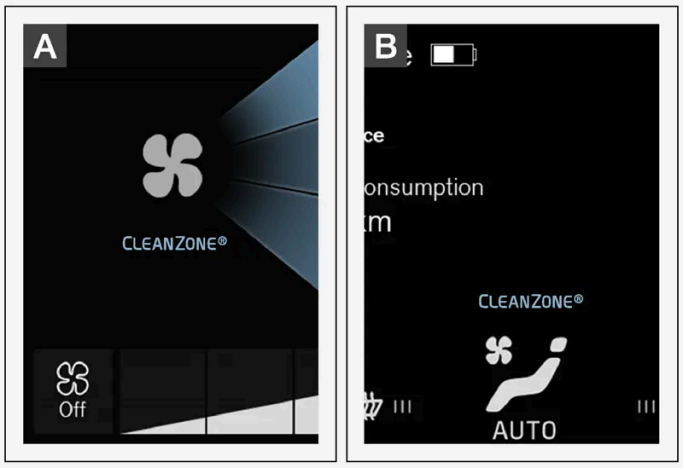
This product complies with the maximum allowable concentration of ozone of 0.050 parts per million by volume (ppmv) in a 24-h period.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.3.4. CleanZone*

The CleanZone function monitors the conditions affecting good air quality in the passenger compartment and indicates whether they are fulfilled or not.




A The indicator is shown in the center display's Climate view.

B The indicator is shown in the climate bar when Climate view is not open.

If the conditions are not met, the text **CleanZone** will be shown in white.

When all the conditions are met, the text will change to blue.

The following conditions must be met:

- All doors and tailgate are closed.
- All side windows and panoramic roof* are closed.
- The Interior Air Quality System* is activated.
- The blower is activated.
- Air recirculation is deactivated.

> **Note**
>
> CleanZone does not indicate that the air quality is good, but only that the conditions for good air quality have been met.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.3.5. Clean Zone Interior Package*

Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) is a series of modifications that filters even more allergy and asthma-inducing substances and other pollutants from the passenger compartment.

CZIP includes the following:

- An enhanced function that starts the blower when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote key. The blower will then fill the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and switches off automatically after a period of time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened. The amount of time the blower runs gradually decreases due to reduced need up until the vehicle is 4 years old.
- The fully automatic Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.3.6. Interior Air Quality System*

Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) is a fully automatic air quality system that removes gases and particles to reduce odors and contaminants in the passenger compartment.

IAQS is part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) and removes air contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitric oxides and ground-level ozone.

If the system's air quality sensors detect contaminants in the outside air, the air intake closes and air recirculation is activated.

**Note**

The air quality sensor should always be connected so that it can help improve the air quality in the passenger compartment.

Recirculation is limited in cold weather to prevent fogging.

In the event of fogging, use the defroster functions for the windshield, side windows and rear window.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.3.7. Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor*

The air quality sensor is part of the fully automated Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

The air quality sensor can be switched on or off.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **Climate**.
3. Select **Air Quality Sensor** to activate/deactivate the air quality sensor.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.3.8. Passenger compartment air filter

All air entering the passenger compartment through the climate control system intake is filtered.

## Replacing the passenger compartment filter

To maintain the high performance of the climate control system, the filter must be replaced regularly. Follow Volvo's service schedule for recommended replacement intervals. When driving in areas with a lot of smog, dust, etc., the filter may need to be changed more frequently.

**Note**

There are two types of passenger compartment filters. Make sure that the correct filter is installed.

# 8.3.9. Air purification*

Air purification of the vehicle before driving is used to improve the air quality in the passenger compartment.

It is only possible to activate air purification manually from the center display or a smartphone, but the function is also started automatically when preconditioning has finished.

The function uses the ventilation system to blow fresh air into the passenger compartment and then circulates the air through the climate system's passenger compartment air filter.

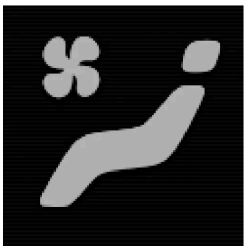
* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.3.10. Starting and stopping air purification*

Air purification improves the air quality in the passenger compartment before driving. The function can be started in the center display or from a cellular phone.

## Starting and stopping from the vehicle

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Tap **Start Pre-cleaning**.

> Air purification starts/stops and the button lights up/goes out.

## Starting from app*

A device with the Volvo On Call* app can be used to start air purification or check settings.

> **Note**
>
> Precleaning always starts automatically when preconditioning is complete.

* Option/accessory.

---

## 8.3.11. Air Quality app

The Air Quality app is a service that visualizes the measured concentration of airborne particulate matter inside the vehicle over time.

A climate sensor measures the concentration of $PM_{2.5}$ particles (particles smaller than 2.5 µm) in the passenger compartment*.

To use this app:

- The vehicle must have network access for at least 1 minute when starting the app or restarting the vehicle.
- The vehicle must be running for the $PM_{2.5}$ sensor to be able to measure.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.4. Parking climate

---

## 8.4.1. Preconditioning

---

### 8.4.1.1. Preconditioning*

Preconditioning is a climate function that, if possible, attempts to achieve a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment before driving.

Preconditioning can be started immediately or started at a preset time using a timer.

In warm weather, the climate system ventilates the passenger compartment by blowing air in from outside. The function cannot heat the passenger compartment.

> **Note**
>
> During preconditioning of the passenger compartment, the vehicle works to reach a comfortable temperature and not the temperature set in the climate system.

**Note**

Pre-cleaning* starts automatically when preconditioning is complete.

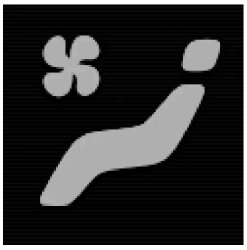
* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.4.1.2. Starting and stopping preconditioning*

Preconditioning ventilates the passenger compartment, if possible, before driving. The function can be started in the center display or from a cellular phone.

## Starting and stopping from the vehicle

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Tap **Start Pre-con. & Cleaning**.

> Preconditioning starts/stops and the button lights up/goes out.

**Note**

The vehicle doors and windows should be closed during preconditioning of the passenger compartment.

**Note**

Pre-cleaning* starts automatically when preconditioning is complete.

## Start from the mobile app

A device with the Volvo Cars app* can be used to start preconditioning or check settings. Preconditioning ventilates the passenger compartment by blowing in air from outside.

The passenger compartment can also be preconditioned using the (Engine Remote Start – ERS)[1] function via the Volvo Cars app*.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Certain markets only.

---

# 8.4.1.3. Preconditioning timer*

The timer can be set to finish preconditioning at a predetermined time.

The timer can store up to 8 preset times for

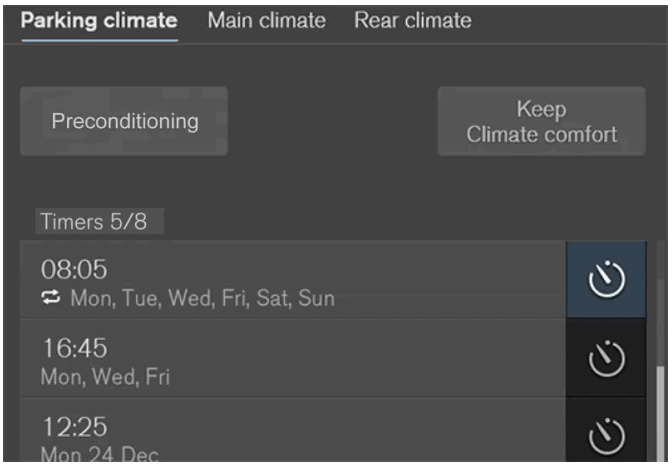
- a time on a particular date
- a time on one or more days of the week, with or without the repeat function.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.4.1.4. Activating and deactivating preconditioning timer*

Timer settings in the preconditioning timer can be activated or deactivated as needed.

1. 

Timer buttons in the **Parking climate** tab in Climate view.

   Open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Activate/deactivate a timer setting by tapping the timer button to the right of the setting.

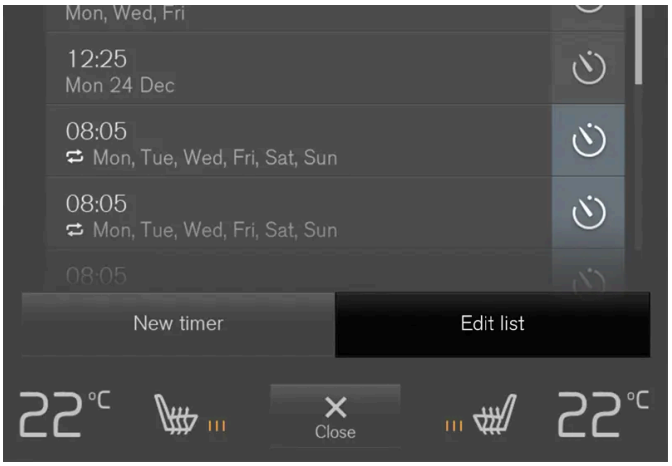
> The timer is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes out.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.4.1.5. Deleting preconditioning timer settings*

A preconditioning timer setting that is no longer needed can be deleted.

1. 

The button for editing a list/deleting a timer setting in the **Parking climate** tab in Climate view.

   Open Climate view in the center display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Tap **Edit list**.
4. Tap the editing icon to the right in the list.

> The icon will change to the text **Delete**.

5. Tap **Delete** to confirm.

> The timer setting will be deleted from the list.

* Option/accessory.

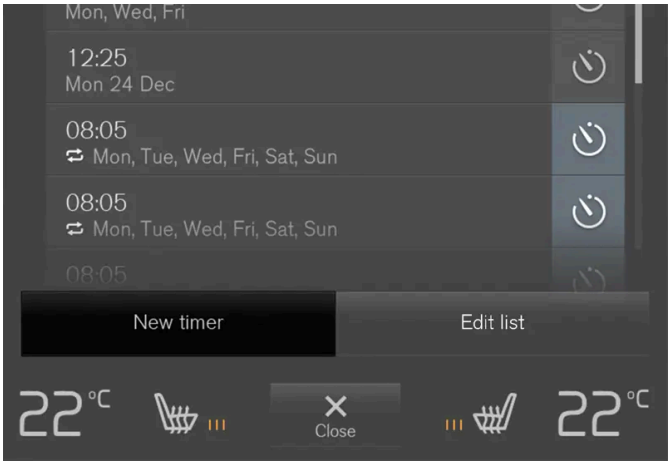
---

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 8.4.1.6. Adding and editing timer settings for preconditioning*

The preconditioning timer can store up to 8 preset timer settings.

## Adding a timer setting

1. 

Button for adding a timer setting in the **Parking climate** tab in Climate view.

   Open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Tap **Add timer**.

> A pop-up window will appear.

> **Note**
>
> It is not possible to add a time setting if there are already 8 settings for the timer. Delete a time setting to be able to add a new one.

4. Tap **Date** to set a time for a specific date.

   Tap **Days** to set a time for one or more days of the week.

   With **Days**: Activate/deactivate the repeat function by selecting/deselecting the **Repeat weekly** checkbox.

5. With **Date**: Select a date for preconditioning by scrolling in the date list using the arrows.

   With **Days**: Select days of the week for preconditioning by tapping the buttons for the days.

6. Set the time at which preconditioning should be completed by scrolling using the arrows in the clock.
7. Tap **Confirm** to add a timer setting.

> The timer setting will be added to the list and activated.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

### Editing the timer setting

1. Open Climate view in the center display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Tap the timer setting you would like to change.

> A pop-up window will appear.

4. To edit a timer setting, follow the procedures described under the heading "Adding a timer setting" above.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.4.2. Pre-cleaning

---

# 8.4.2.1. Air purification*

Air purification of the vehicle before driving is used to improve the air quality in the passenger compartment.

It is only possible to activate air purification manually from the center display or a smartphone, but the function is also started automatically when preconditioning has finished.

The function uses the ventilation system to blow fresh air into the passenger compartment and then circulates the air through the climate system's passenger compartment air filter.

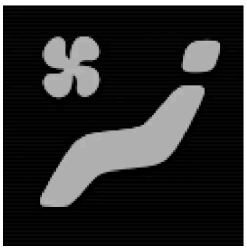
* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.4.2.2. Starting and stopping air purification*

Air purification improves the air quality in the passenger compartment before driving. The function can be started in the center display or from a cellular phone.

### Starting and stopping from the vehicle

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Tap **Start Pre-cleaning**.

> Air purification starts/stops and the button lights up/goes out.

### Starting from app*

A device with the Volvo On Call* app can be used to start air purification or check settings.

> **Note**
>
> Precleaning always starts automatically when preconditioning is complete.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.4.3. Parking climate comfort

---

# 8.4.3.1. Climate comfort retaining function*

The climate in the passenger compartment can be maintained when the vehicle is parked, e.g. if the engine is turned off but the driver or passengers remain in the vehicle.

This function can only be direct-started from the center display.

The function utilizes several of the vehicle's systems:

- Residual heat from the engine is used to help heat the passenger compartment to a comfortable temperature.
- In warm weather, the ventilation system cools the passenger compartment by blowing air in from outside.

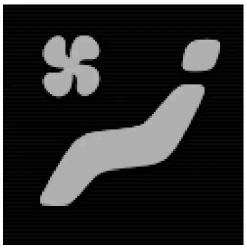
> **Note**
>
> Climate comfort maintenance will be deactivated if the vehicle is locked from the outside in order to avoid using residual engine heat unnecessarily. This function is intended to be used to maintain climate comfort when the driver or a passenger remains in the vehicle after the engine is turned off.
>
> The climate comfort retaining function is limited in duration in cold weather depending on the amount of residual warmth available.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.4.3.2. Starting and switching off the climate retaining function when parking*

The climate retaining function maintains the climate settings in the vehicle after the engine has been switched off. The function can be activated in the center display.

1. 

   Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view in the center display.

2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Tap **Keep climate comfort**.

> The climate comfort retaining function will be activated/deactivated and the button light will go on/off.

**Note**

Maintained climate comfort is not possible when there is not sufficient residual engine heat to maintain the climate settings in the passenger compartment, or if the outside temperature is above approximately 20 °C (68 °F).

**Note**

Climate comfort maintenance will be deactivated if the vehicle is locked from the outside in order to avoid using residual engine heat unnecessarily. This function is intended to be used to maintain climate comfort when the driver or a passenger remains in the vehicle after the engine is turned off.

The climate comfort retaining function is limited in duration in cold weather depending on the amount of residual warmth available.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.4.4. Parking climate*

Parking climate is an umbrella term for various functions that improve the passenger compartment climate when the vehicle is parked, e.g. preconditioning.

Parking climate functions are controlled from the **Parking climate** tab in the center display's Climate view. Tap the symbol in the center of the climate bar to open Climate view.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.4.5. Parking climate symbols and messages*

A number of symbols and messages related to parking climate may be displayed in the instrument panel.

Messages related to parking climate can also be displayed in a device that has the Volvo Cars app*.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Parking climate Service required | Parking climate is not functioning properly. Contact a workshop[1] to have the system checked as soon as possible. |
| | Parking climate Temporarily unavailable | Parking climate is temporarily not functioning properly. If the problem persists, contact a workshop[1] to have the system checked. |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 8.5. Climate

The vehicle is equipped with electronic climate control. The climate system cools, heats and dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

All of the climate system functions are controlled from the center display and the buttons on the center console.

Certain rear seat functions can also be controlled from the climate controls* on the rear of the tunnel console.

> **Note**
>
> The climate system can be used to cool down the media system in the center display if needed. In these cases, the message **Climate system Cooling the infotainment system** will be shown in the instrument panel.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.6. Climate control system voice commands[1]

Voice commands can be used for the climate control system to e.g. change temperature, activate seat heating* or change blower speed.

Tap and say one of the following commands:

- "**Climate**" - starts a command dialog for climate controls and provides examples of commands that can be used.

- "**Set temperature to X degrees**" - sets desired temperature.
- "**Raise temperature**"/"**Lower temperature**" - raises/lowers the set temperature.
- "**Sync temperature**" - synchronizes the temperature for all climate zones in the vehicle with the temperature set for the driver's side.
- "**Air on feet**"/"**Air on body**" - opens the desired air vent.
- "**Air on feet off**"/"**Air on body off**" - closes the desired air vent.
- "**Set fan to max**"/"**Turn off fan**" - changes blower speed to **Max**/**Off**.
- "**Raise fan speed**"/"**Lower fan speed**" - raises/lowers the set blower speed.
- "**Turn on auto**" - activates automatic climate control.
- "**Air condition on**"/"**Air condition off**" - activates/deactivates air conditioning.
- "**Recirculation on**"/"**Recirculation off**" - activates/deactivates air recirculation.
- "**Turn on defroster** "/"**Turn off defroster**" - activates/deactivates window and door mirror defrosting.
- "**Turn on max defroster**"/"**Turn off max defroster**" - activates/deactivates max defroster.
- "**Turn on rear defroster**"/"**Turn off rear defroster**" - Activates/deactivates heated rear window and door mirrors.
- "**Turn steering wheel heat on**"/"**Turn steering wheel heat off**" - activates/deactivates heated steering wheel*.
- "**Raise steering wheel heat**"/"**Lower steering wheel heat**" - raises/lowers the level of steering wheel heating*.
- "**Turn on seat heat**"/"**Turn off seat heat**" – activates/deactivates driver's seat heating*.
- "**Raise seat heat**"/"**Lower seat heat**" – raises/lowers the level of driver's seat heating*.
- "**Turn on seat ventilation**"/"**Turn off seat ventilation**" – activates/deactivates driver's seat ventilation*.
- "**Raise seat ventilation**"/"**Lower seat ventilation**" – raises/lowers the level of driver's seat ventilation*.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

[1] Certain markets only.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.7. Climate control system service

Service and repairs on the air conditioning system should only be done by an authorized workshop.

## Troubleshooting and repairs

The air conditioning system contains a fluorescent tracer substance. Ultraviolet light is used to search for leaks in the system.

Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop.

The climate system in the vehicle uses a freon-free R1234yf refrigerant. For information regarding the refrigerant, refer to the decal located on the inside of the frunk.

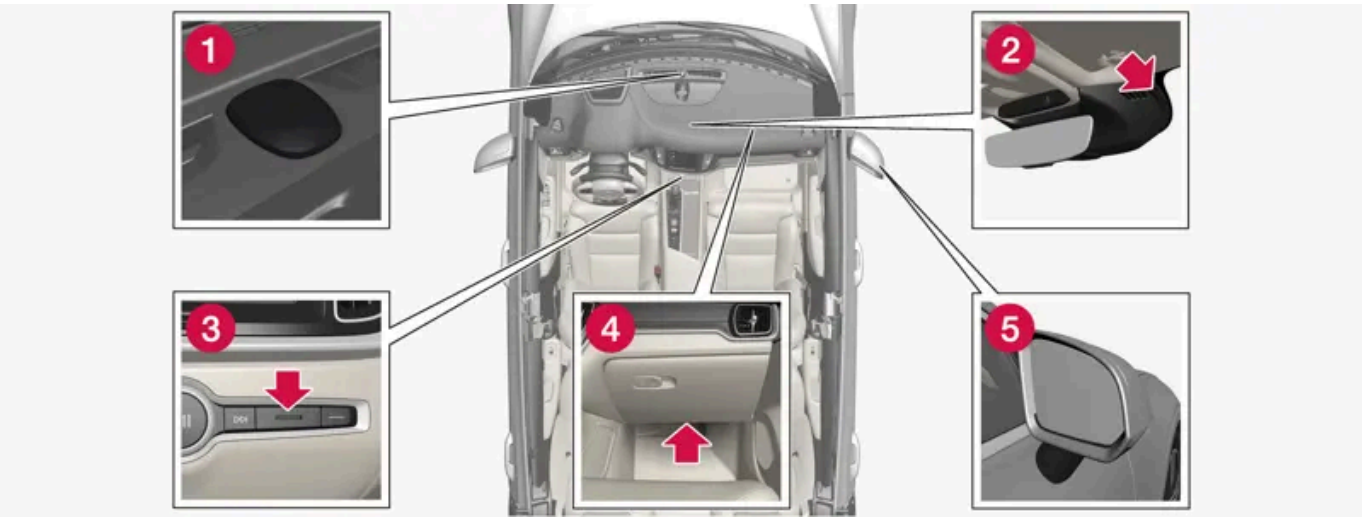
> **Warning**
>
> The air conditioning system contains the refrigerant R1234yf under pressure. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repairs to the refrigerant system may only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

---

# 8.8. Climate control sensors

The climate system has a number of sensors to help regulate the climate settings in the vehicle. Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

## Location of the sensors




1. Sunlight sensors - on the upper side of the dashboard.
2. Humidity sensor - in the rearview mirror console.
3. Passenger compartment temperature sensor - near the buttons in the center console.
4. Airborne particulate matter sensor* – on the underside of the glove compartment.
5. Ambient temperature sensor - in the right-side door mirror.

On vehicles equipped with the Interior Air Quality System*, there is also an air quality sensor in the climate system's air intake.

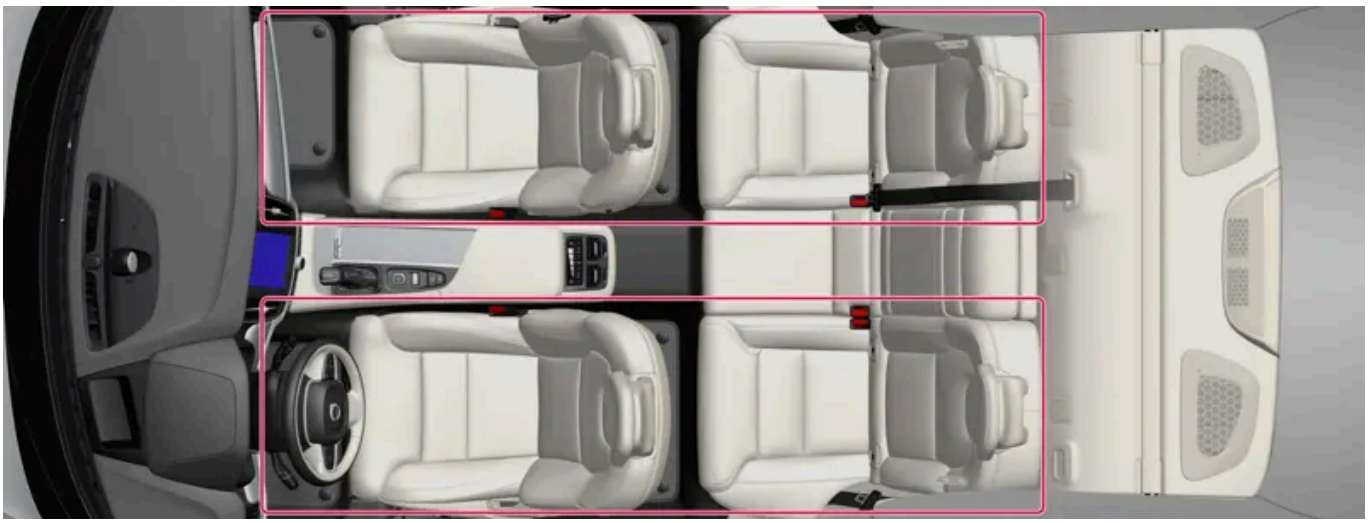
* Option/accessory.

---

# 8.9. Climate zones

The vehicle is divided into climate zones to make it possible to set different temperatures for different parts of the passenger compartment.

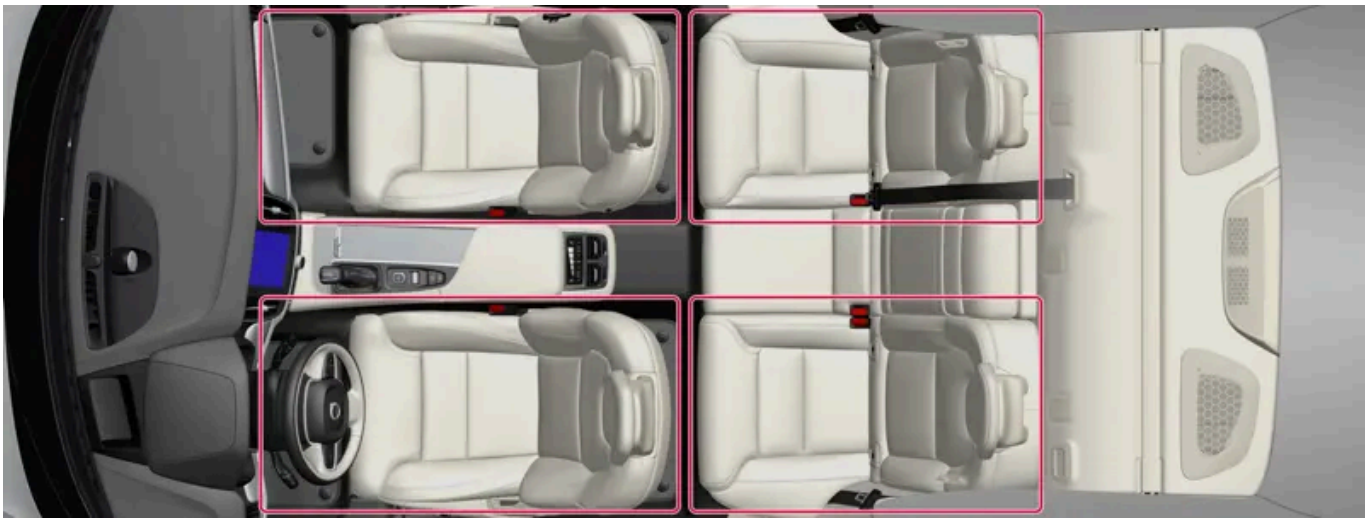
## 2-zone climate system



Climate zones with 2-zone climate system.

In 2-zone climate systems, the passenger compartment temperature can be set separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle.

## 4-zone climate system*



Climate zones with 4-zone climate system.

In 4-zone climate systems, the passenger compartment temperature can be set separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle, and for the front and rear seats.

* Option/accessory.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 8.10. Perceived temperature

The climate control system regulates the climate in the passenger compartment based on perceived temperature, not actual temperature.

The selected passenger compartment temperature is based on the physical perception of the current ambient temperature, air-flow speed, humidity, sunlight in the passenger compartment, etc.

The system has a sunlight sensor that detects which side of the vehicle the sunlight is shining on and adjusts the temperature accordingly. This means that the temperature of the air coming out of the vents may be different for the left and right sides, even if the temperature setting is the same for both sides.

# 9. Key, locks and alarm

## 9.1. Remote key

## 9.1.1. Driver profiles

## 9.1.1.1. Driver profiles

Many of the vehicle's settings can be customized to the driver's personal preferences and saved in one or more driver profiles.

These personal settings are automatically saved in the active driver profile. Every remote key, except the Care Key, can be connected to a personal driver profile. When the connected key is used, the vehicle is adapted to the settings for that specific driver profile. Care Key is always connected to the last-used profile and the set maximum speed. This profile cannot be protected as its own personal profile.

### Which settings are saved in driver profiles?

Many of the settings made in the vehicle will be automatically stored in the active driver profile if the profile is not protected. The vehicle has settings that can be made either personal or global. The personal settings are saved in driver profiles.

Settings that can be saved in a driver profile include, among other things, screens, mirrors, front seats, navigation*, audio and media system, language and voice control.

Some settings are global settings. These settings can be changed but are not saved to a specific driver profile. Changes to global settings affect all profiles.

#### Global settings

Global settings do not change when driver profiles are changed. They remain the same regardless of which driver profile is currently active.

Keyboard layout is an example of a global setting. If driver profile X is used to add additional keyboard languages, these languages will also be available for driver profile Y. The settings for keyboard layout are not saved to a specific driver profile - the settings are global.

#### Personal settings

If driver profile X has been used to e.g., set the brightness for the center display, driver profile Y will not be affected by this setting. It will only be saved to driver profile X because brightness setting is a personal setting.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.1.1.2. Changing a driver profile's name

It is possible to change the names of the different driver profiles used in the vehicle.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select **Edit Profile**.

> A menu will open in which the driver profile can be changed.

4. Tap the **Profile Name** box.

> A keyboard will be displayed and can be used to change the name. Tap ▽ to close the keyboard.

5. Save the name change by pressing **Back** or **Close**.

> The name has now been changed.

> **Note**
>
> Profile names may not begin with a space. If a space is entered first, the profile name will not be saved.

---

# 9.1.1.3. Linking a remote key to a driver profile

A remote key can be linked to a driver profile. This driver profile and all of its settings will then automatically be selected every time the vehicle is used with that particular remote key.

The first time the remote key is used, it is not linked to any specific driver profile. The **Guest** profile is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

A driver profile can also be selected manually without linking it to any key. When the vehicle is unlocked, the last active driver profile will be activated. If the key has ever been linked to a driver profile, it is not necessary to manually select a driver profile when using that particular key.

## Linking a remote key to a specific driver profile

> **Note**
>
> A remote key can only be connected to a driver profile when the vehicle is stationary.

First select the profile you would like to link to the key (if that profile is not already active). The active profile can then be linked to the key.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Mark the desired profile. The display will return to Home view. The **Guest** profile cannot be linked to a remote key.
4. Pull down Top view again and tap **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile**.
5. Select **Connect key** to link the profile with the key. A driver profile can only be linked to the key currently being used in the vehicle. If there are any other keys in the vehicle, **More than one key is found, put the key you want to connect on backup**

reader will be displayed.

Location of the backup reader in the tunnel console.

> When **Profile connected to key** is displayed, the key and driver profile have been linked.

6. Tap **OK**.

> The key used is now linked to the driver profile and will remain so as long as the **Connect key** box is not deselected.

---

# 9.1.1.4. Protecting a driver profile

It may not always be desirable to store settings made in the vehicle to the active driver profile. In these instances, the driver profile can be protected.

> **Note**
>
> Protecting a driver profile is only possible when the vehicle is stationary.

To protect a driver profile:

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select **Edit Profile**.

> A menu will open in which the driver profile can be changed.

4. Tap **Protect Profile** to protect the profile.
5. Confirm your selection to protect the profile by tapping **Back**/**Close**.

> When the profile is protected, settings made in the vehicle will not be automatically stored to the profile. The changes must instead be saved manually under **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile** by tapping **Save current settings to**

**the profile**. If the profile is not protected, the settings will be automatically stored to the profile.

---

# 9.1.1.5. Selecting a driver profile

When the center display starts up, the selected driver profile will be shown at the top of the screen. The most recently used driver profile will be active the next time the vehicle is unlocked. A different driver profile can be selected once the vehicle has been unlocked. However, if the remote key has been linked to a driver profile, this profile will be used instead.

There are three options for switching between driver profiles.

Option 1:

1. Tap the name of the driver profile shown at the top of the center display when the display starts up.

> A list will appear, showing driver profiles that can be selected.

2. Select desired driver profile.

3. Tap **Confirm**.

> The driver profile has now been selected and the system will load the settings stored in that profile.

Option 2:

1. Pull down Top view in the center display.

2. Tap **Profile**.

> The same list as in option 1 will be displayed.

3. Select desired driver profile.

4. Tap **Confirm**.

> The driver profile has now been selected and the system will load the settings stored in that profile.

Option 3:

1. Pull down Top view in the center display.

2. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.

3. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles**.

> A list will appear, showing driver profiles that can be selected.

4. Select desired driver profile.

> The driver profile has now been selected and the system will load the settings stored in that profile.

---

# 9.1.1.6. Resetting driver profile settings

Settings that have been saved for one or more driver profiles can be reset when the vehicle is stationary.

> **Note**
>
> **Factory Reset** is only possible when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **System** → **Factory Reset** → **Reset Personal Settings**.
3. Select option **Reset for the active profile**, **Reset for all profiles** or **Cancel**.

---

# 9.1.2. Linking a remote key to a driver profile

A remote key can be linked to a driver profile. This driver profile and all of its settings will then automatically be selected every time the vehicle is used with that particular remote key.

The first time the remote key is used, it is not linked to any specific driver profile. The **Guest** profile is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

A driver profile can also be selected manually without linking it to any key. When the vehicle is unlocked, the last active driver profile will be activated. If the key has ever been linked to a driver profile, it is not necessary to manually select a driver profile when using that particular key.

### Linking a remote key to a specific driver profile

> **Note**
>
> A remote key can only be connected to a driver profile when the vehicle is stationary.

First select the profile you would like to link to the key (if that profile is not already active). The active profile can then be linked to the key.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view in the center display.
2. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Mark the desired profile. The display will return to Home view. The **Guest** profile cannot be linked to a remote key.
4. Pull down Top view again and tap **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile**.
5. Select **Connect key** to link the profile with the key. A driver profile can only be linked to the key currently being used in the vehicle. If there are any other keys in the vehicle, **More than one key is found, put the key you want to connect on backup reader** will be displayed.

Location of the backup reader in the tunnel console.

> When **Profile connected to key** is displayed, the key and driver profile have been linked.

6. Tap **OK**.

> The key used is now linked to the driver profile and will remain so as long as the **Connect key** box is not deselected.

---

# 9.1.3. Electronic immobilizer

The electronic immobilizer is a start inhibitor that helps prevent the vehicle from being started by an unauthorized person.

The vehicle can only be started with the right remote key.

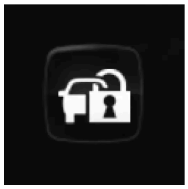
The following instrument panel error messages are related to the electronic immobilizer:

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Vehicle key not found | Remote key not recognized during start. Place the remote key on the key symbol in the cup holder and try to start the vehicle again. |

## Remote immobilizer with tracking system [1]

The vehicle is equipped with a system that makes it possible to track and locate the vehicle and to remotely activate the immobilizer to prevent the vehicle from being started. Contact your nearest Volvo retailer for more information and assistance activating the system.

The following instrument panel error messages are related to the remote immobilizer with tracking system:

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
|  | Remotely immobilised Vehicle not possible to start | The remote immobilizer with tracking system is activated. The vehicle cannot be started. Contact Volvo On Call Service Center. |

[1] Only certain markets and in combination with Volvo On Call.

# 9.1.4. Remote key

The remote key is used to lock and unlock doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler door. The remote key must be in the vehicle in order to start the engine.

Remote key[1], Care Key and button-less key (Key Tag)*.

The remote key is not physically used to start the ignition because the vehicle is standard-equipped with keyless start (Passive Start). The key only needs to be in the front section of the passenger compartment.

For vehicles equipped with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry)*, the engine can be started with the key anywhere in the vehicle. For vehicles with Passive Entry, a smaller, lighter and buttonless key (Key Tag) can be purchased as an accessory.

The remote keys[2] can be linked to different driver profiles to store personal settings in the vehicle.

**Warning**

The remote key contains a button cell battery. Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children. If batteries are swallowed, they can cause serious injury.

If any damage is detected, e.g. if the battery cover cannot be closed properly, do not use the product. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

## Remote key buttons

The remote key has four buttons, one on the left side and three on the right.

**Locking** - Press once to lock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door and arm the alarm.

Press and hold to close all windows.

**Unlocking** - Press once to unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door and disarm the alarm.

Press and hold to open all windows at the same time. This total airing function can be used to e.g. quickly air out the vehicle in hot weather.

**Tailgate** - Unlock and disarm the tailgate only. On vehicles equipped with the power tailgate*, press and hold to automatically open the tailgate. Press and hold to close an open tailgate (an audible warning signal will be given).

**Panic alarm** - Used to attract attention in emergency situations. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press twice within 3 seconds to activate the turn signals and horn. To deactivate, wait at least 5 seconds and press the button again. If no action is taken, the panic alarm will deactivate automatically after 3 minutes.

**Warning**

If anyone is left in the vehicle, make sure that power to the power windows and panoramic roof* is cut off by always taking the remote key with you when you leave the vehicle.

**Note**

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote key in the vehicle.

If the remote key or key tag is left in the vehicle, it will be deactivated when the vehicle is locked and the alarm set using another valid key. The key will be reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

## Button-less key (Key Tag)*

A buttonless key[3] can be ordered as an accessory for vehicles equipped with the keyless locking and unlocking function. A buttonless key works the same way as the regular remote key as regards keyless start and keyless locking and unlocking. The key is waterproof up to a depth of approx. 10 meters (30 feet) for up to 60 minutes. It does not have a detachable key blade and its battery cannot be replaced.

## Care Key - restricted remote key

A Care Key enables the vehicle owner to set a maximum speed limit for the vehicle. This limit is intended to promote safe use of the vehicle, e.g. when it is loaned out.

## Interference

Electromagnetic fields or obstructing objects may interfere with the remote key's functions for keyless start and keyless locking and unlocking*.

> **Note**
>
> Avoid storing the remote key near metal objects or electronic devices, e.g. cell phones, tablets, laptops or chargers – preferably no closer than 10-15 cm (4-6 in.).

If you experience interference, use the remote key's detachable blade to unlock the vehicle and then place the remote key in the backup reader in the tunnel console cup holder to disarm the alarm and start the vehicle.

> **Note**
>
> When the remote control key is placed in the cup holder, make sure that no other vehicle keys, metal objects or electronic devices (e.g. cell phones, tablets, laptops or chargers) are found in the cup holder. Multiple vehicle keys close to each other in the cup holder can disrupt their functionality.

> **Warning**
>
> **California Proposition 65**
>
> Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle [https://www.p65warnings.ca.gov/products/passenger-vehicle] .

[1] The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Does not apply to Care Key.

[3] Also called sport key.

# 9.1.5. Ordering additional remote keys

If more keys than the standard number supplied with the vehicle are needed, or if any key is lost, new keys can be ordered. If the vehicle is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*, a buttonless key (Key Tag) can also be ordered.

A total of 12 keys can be programmed and used for the same vehicle. An additional driver profile will be added for each new key. This also applies to the key tag.

## Loss of a remote key

If you lose your remote key, you can order a replacement from a workshop - an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended. Bring the other remaining remote keys to the workshop. As an anti-theft measure, the code of the lost remote key must be erased from the system.

The current number of keys registered for the vehicle can be checked via driver profiles in the center display's Top view. Select **Settings → System → Driver Profiles**.

> **Note**
>
> Volvo recommends that you order a new or duplicate remote key from an authorized Volvo workshop.
>
> You can also obtain additional or duplicate remote keys from certain independent repair facilities and locksmiths that are qualified to make remote keys. Each key must be programmed to work with your vehicle.
>
> A list of independent repair facilities and/or locksmiths known to Volvo that can cut and code replacement keys can be found:
>
> - at volvocars.com
> - by calling Volvo Customer Care 1-800-458-1552.

* Option/accessory.

# 9.1.6. Replacing the remote key's battery

The battery in the remote key must be replaced when it is discharged.

**Note**

All batteries have a limited service life and must eventually be replaced (does not apply for Key Tag). The battery's service life varies depending on how often the vehicle/key is used.

The remote key battery should be replaced if

- the information symbol illuminates and the message **Vehicle key bat. low** is displayed in the instrument panel
- the locks do not react after several attempts to lock or unlock the vehicle using the remote key within approx. 20 meter (65 feet) from the vehicle.

**Note**

Move closer to the vehicle and try to unlock it again.

The battery in the smaller key without buttons[1] (the Key Tag) cannot be replaced. A new key can be ordered from an authorized Volvo workshop.

**Important**

An end-of-life Key Tag must be turned in to an authorized Volvo workshop. The key must be deleted from the vehicle because it can still be used to start the vehicle via backup start.

## Opening the key and replacing the battery

1. 1

1

1 Hold the remote key with the front side (with the Volvo logo) facing up and move the button on the key ring section to the right. Slide the front cover slightly upward.

2. The cover will loosen and can be removed from the key.

2. **2**

**2**

1. Turn the key over, move the button to the side and slide the rear cover slightly upward.
2. The cover will loosen and can be removed from the key.

3. **3**

**3**

Use a screwdriver or similar object to turn the battery cover counterclockwise so the markers point to OPEN.

Remove the cover carefully by pressing e.g. a fingernail into the indentation.

Pry the cover up.

4. **4**

**4**

The battery's positive side (+) faces upward. Carefully pry out the battery as shown in the illustration.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Important**

Avoid touching new batteries and their contact surfaces with your fingers as this will impair their function.

5. 5

5

Insert a new battery with the positive side (+) facing upward. Do not touch the contact surfaces of the remote key battery.

1 Place the edge of the battery downward into the holder. Slide the battery forward until it locks into place under the two plastic catches.

2 Press the battery downward until it locks into place under the upper black plastic catch.

**Note**

Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.

**Note**

Volvo recommends that batteries used in the remote control key satisfy UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, sub-section 38.3. The factory installed batteries and batteries replaced by an authorized Volvo workshop satisfy the above criterion.

6. 6

6

Replace the battery cover and turn it clockwise until it points to CLOSE.

7. 7

7

1. Put the rear cover back into position and press it down until it clicks into place.
2. Slide the cover back.

> A second click indicates that the cover is correctly positioned and locked into place.

8. 8

8

1. Turn the remote key over and press the front cover down until it clicks into place.
2. Slide the cover back.

> An additional click indicates that the cover is correctly in place.

**Warning**

Make sure the battery is positioned correctly with the right polarity. If the remote key will not be used for a prolonged period of time, remove the battery to avoid battery leakage and damage. Wear protective gloves when handling damaged batteries, as batteries that are damaged or leaking can cause corrosive damage in contact with the skin.

- Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
- Do not leave batteries lying out where they could be swallowed by children or pets.
- Never disassemble, short-circuit or place a battery into open fire.
- Do not charge non-rechargeable batteries, as this could cause an explosion.

Check the remote key for damage before using it. If any damage is detected, e.g. if the battery cover cannot be closed properly, do not use the product. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Important**

Be sure to dispose of end-of-life batteries in a way that protects the environment.

**Warning**

**California Proposition 65**

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle [https://www.p65warnings.ca.gov/products/passenger-vehicle] .

* Option/accessory.

[1] Included in vehicles equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*.

# 9.1.7. Locking and unlocking using the remote key

All doors, tailgate and fuel filler door can be locked and unlocked simultaneously using the buttons on the remote key.

## Locking with remote key

The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

1. Press the button on the remote key to lock the vehicle.

To activate the locking sequence, the driver's door must be closed[1]. If any of the other doors or the tailgate are open, they will be locked and the alarm will be armed once they are closed.

> **Note**
>
> Be aware of the risk of locking the remote key in the vehicle.
>
> If the remote key or key tag is left in the vehicle, it will be deactivated when the vehicle is locked and the alarm set using another valid key. The key will be reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

#### Locking when the tailgate is open

> **Note**
>
> If the vehicle is locked and the tailgate is still open, make sure that the remote key is not left in the cargo compartment when the tailgate is closed and the entire vehicle is locked[2].

## Unlocking with remote key

1. Press the button on the remote key to unlock the vehicle.

## Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or tailgate are opened within two minutes after being unlocked, they will automatically relock. This function reduces the risk of inadvertently leaving the vehicle unlocked.

## Remote key not working

> **Note**
>
> Move closer to the vehicle and try to unlock it again.

If the remote key is not working to lock or unlock the vehicle, its battery may be discharged. Use the detachable key blade to lock/unlock the driver's door instead.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If the vehicle is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*, all side doors must be closed.

[2] If the vehicle is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking and the key is detected inside the vehicle, the tailgate will not lock when it is closed.*

# 9.1.8. Care Key – restricted remote key

A Care Key enables the vehicle owner to set a maximum speed limit for the vehicle. This limit is intended to promote safe use of the vehicle, e.g. when it is loaned out.

A maximum vehicle speed can be defined for a Care Key. Otherwise, the Red Key functions in the same way as a standard remote key.

This restriction is intended to help reduce the risk of accidents and help the driver feel more secure when handing over the vehicle to e.g. a young driver, parking attendant or workshop.

## Ordering a Care Key

One or more Care Key can be ordered from a Volvo retailer. A total of twelve keys can be programmed and used for the same vehicle. Up to ten may be restricted keys, but at least two must be standard remote keys.

## Use Care Key

The key is linked to a specific Care Key driver profile, and when it is active the key's settings cannot be changed. It is also not possible to switch to another driver profile, as this requires a regular remote key.

The driver profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked using a Care Key without a regular remote key nearby. Alternatively, the Care Key profile can be activated before the regular remote key is removed.

To activate a regular driver profile, the vehicle must be unlocked using an unrestricted key.

#### Indication in the instrument panel

When Care Key is being used, this will be indicated by a symbol in the instrument panel and a red line on the speedometer indicating the maximum speed.

| Symbol | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | Speed limitation is active. |

# 9.1.9. Care Key settings

Change maximum speed for a Care Key via the center display.

**Setting options**

The following limitations are available:

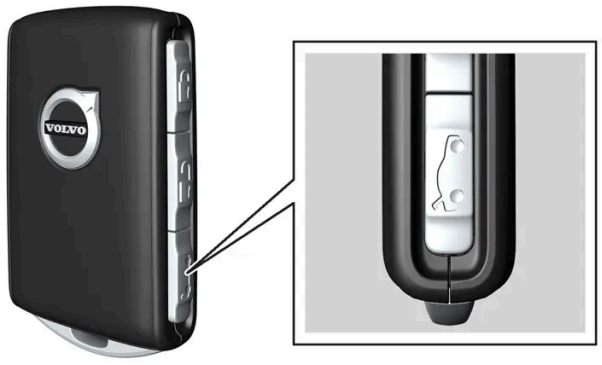
- Speed range: 50-180 km/h (30-112 mph)
- Increments: 1 km/h (1 mph)

**Adjusting settings**

1. Unlock the vehicle using a regular remote key (not Care Key).
2. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
3. Tap **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Care Key**.
4. Check the box to activate restrictions and set the desired restrictions.

# 9.1.10. Unlocking the tailgate using the remote key

The remote key can be used to unlock the tailgate while keeping the rest of the vehicle locked.



1. Press the button on the remote key.

> The tailgate will be unlocked but remain closed.

The side doors remain locked and armed. The lock and alarm indicator on the dashboard will go out to indicate that the vehicle is no longer fully locked.
Press lightly on the rubberized pressure plate under the tailgate handle to open the tailgate. If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes, it will be relocked and the alarm armed.

2. With the optional power tailgate* -

   Hold and press (about 1.5 seconds) the button on the remote key

> The tailgate will unlock and open. However, the side doors will remain locked and armed.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.1.11. Detachable key blade

The remote key contains a detachable metal key blade that can be used to activate a number of functions and preform certain actions.

A Volvo workshop can provide you with the key blade's unique code, which is recommended in case you need to order a new key blade.

## Using the detachable key blade

The detachable key blade can be used to

- manually open the left-side front door if central locking cannot be activated with the remote key
- emergency lock all doors
- activate/deactivate the rear door mechanical child locks.
- disarm and start the vehicle by placing the key in the backup reader in the tunnel console.

The button-less key[1] does not have a detachable key blade. If needed, use the standard remote key's detachable key blade.

## Detaching the key blade

1. 1

1

1. Hold the remote key with the front side (with the Volvo logo) facing up and move the button on the key ring section to the right. Slide the front cover slightly upward.
2. The cover will loosen and can be removed from the key.

2. 2

2

1. Remove the key blade by pulling it up.

3. 3

3

Put the key blade back into its designated spot in the remote key after use.

1. Replace the cover by pressing it down until it clicks into place.
2. Slide the cover back.

> An additional click indicates that the cover is correctly in place.

* Option/accessory.

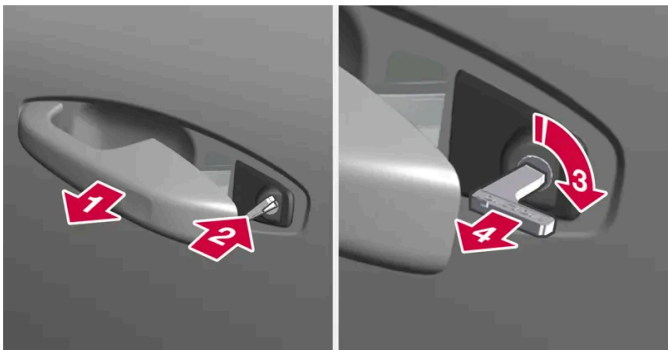
[1] Included in vehicles equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*.

---

# 9.1.12. Locking and unlocking with detachable key blade

The detachable key blade can be used to unlock the vehicle from the outside, e.g. if the battery in the remote key is discharged.

## Unlocking

1. 


   1
   Pull the front left-hand door handle to its end position to access the lock cylinder.

2. 2
   Put the key in the lock cylinder.

3. 3
   Turn the key clockwise 45 degrees so that the key blade is pointing straight rearward.

4. 4
   Turn the key blade back 45 degrees to its original position. Remove the key from the lock cylinder and release the handle so that it returns to its original position against the vehicle.

5. Pull the door handle.

> The door will open.

> **Note**
>
> When the door is unlocked using the detachable key blade and then opened, the alarm will be triggered. The alarm must be deactivated manually; see separate section.

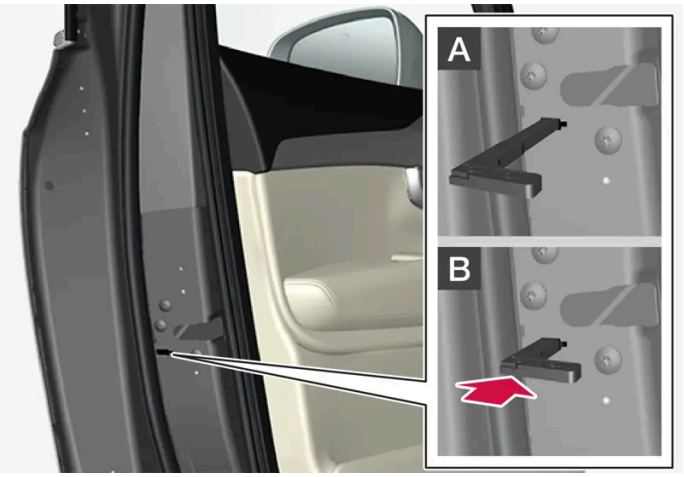
## Locking

The left-hand front door can be locked by inserting the detachable key into the door's lock cylinder.

The other doors have lock mechanisms in the side of the door that must be pushed in using the key blade. The door will then be locked mechanically and cannot be opened from the outside.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

The doors can still be opened from inside.




Manual door lock. This is not the child lock.

1. Remove the detachable key blade from the remote key.
2. Insert the key blade into the opening for the lock mechanism.
3. Push in the key until it stops, about 12 mm (0.5 inch).

A The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

B The door cannot be opened from the outside. To return to position A, open the door using the inside door handle.

**Note**

- The door's lock controls only lock that specific door, not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with activated child lock cannot be opened from either the outside or the inside. The door can only be unlocked using the buttons on the key, the central locking button, the keyless locking system * or Volvo On Call.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.1.13. Remote key range

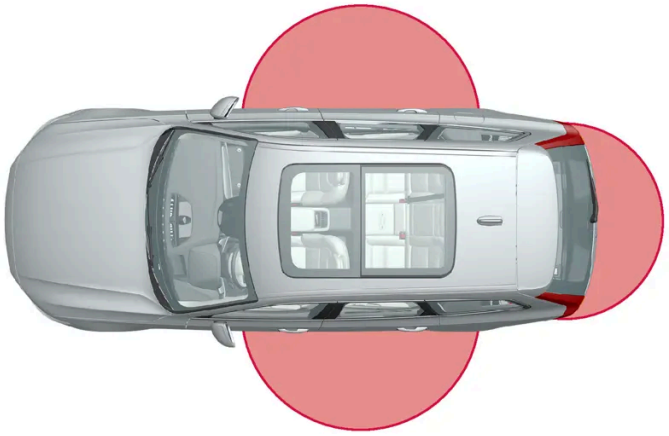
In order to function correctly, the remote key must be within a certain distance from the vehicle.

## Manual use

The remote key's functions for e.g. locking and unlocking, which are activated by pressing or , have a range of approx. 20 meters (65 feet) from the vehicle.

If the vehicle's locks do not react, move closer and try again.

## Keyless* use



The shaded areas around the vehicle illustrate the range of the system's antennas.

For keyless use, a remote key or the Key Tag must be within the shaded areas shown in the illustration, i.e. a semicircle with a radius of approx. 1.5 meter (5 feet) along the sides of the vehicle or approx. 1 meter (3 feet) from the tailgate.

> **Note**
>
> The functions of the remote control key can be disrupted by ambient radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The vehicle can always be locked/unlocked using the key blade.

## If the remote key is removed from the vehicle

If the remote key is removed from the vehicle while the engine is running, the warning message **Vehicle key not found Removed from vehicle** will be displayed in the instrument panel and an audible signal will sound when the last door is closed.

The message will disappear when the key is returned to the vehicle and the O button on the right-side steering wheel keypad is pressed or when the last door is closed again.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.1.14. Start and lock system type designations

The following information contains type designations for the start and lock system.

## Alarm system

USA FCC ID: MAYDA 5823(3)

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada IC: 4405A-DA 5823(3)

This device is subject to the following conditions: (1) This device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## Remote keys (Passive Entry*/Passive Start)

**USA**

Volvo Standard Key FCC ID: YGOHUF8423MS

Volvo Tag ID FCC ID: YGOHUF8432MS

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Canada**

Volvo Standard Key IC: 4008C-HUF8423MS

Volvo Tag ID IC: 4008C-HUF8432MS

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

## Immobilizer and Passive Entry*/Passive Start systems

USA-FCC ID: LTQVO3134

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any changes or modification not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Canada-IC:3659A-VO3134

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

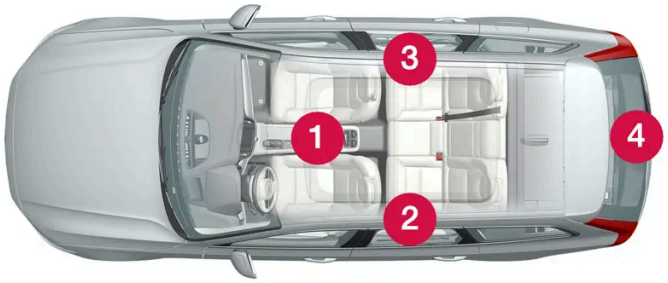
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.1.15. Antenna locations for the start and lock system

The antennas for the keyless start system and keyless locking system* are integrated in the vehicle.




Location of the antennas:

1. Under the cup holder in the front section of the tunnel console
2. In the upper front section of the left-side rear door[1]
3. In the upper front section of the right-side rear door[1]
4. In the cargo compartment[1]

> **Warning**
>
> Individuals with an implanted pacemaker should not allow the pacemaker to come closer than 22 cm (9 in.) to the Keyless system antennas. The aim of this is to prevent disturbances between the pacemaker and the Keyless system.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only in vehicles equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*.

---

# 9.1.16. Ignition modes

The vehicle's ignition can be put in various modes (levels) to make different functions available.

To enable the use of a limited number of functions when the engine is not running, the ignition can be put in one of three different levels: **0**, **I** and **II**. These levels are referred to as "ignition modes" in the Owner's Manual.

The following table shows which functions are available in each ignition mode:

| Mode | Functions |
|---|---|
| 0 | • The odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated[1].<br>• The power* seats can be adjusted.<br>• The center display is activated and can be used[1].<br>• The infotainment system can be used[1].<br>In this mode, the functions are available for a limited time and then switch off automatically. |
| I | • The panoramic roof, power windows, 12-volt electrical socket in the passenger compartment, Bluetooth, navigation, phone, blower and windshield wipers can be used.<br>• The power seats can be adjusted.<br>• The 12-volt electrical socket* in the cargo compartment can be used.<br>**Electrical current will be taken from the battery in this ignition mode.** |
| II | • The headlights illuminate.<br>• Warning/indicator lights illuminate for 5 seconds.<br>• A number of other systems are activated. However, seat and rear window heating can only be activated when the engine is running.<br>**This ignition mode uses a lot of current from the battery and should be avoided whenever possible!** |

[1] Also activated when the door is opened.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.1.17. Selecting ignition mode

The vehicle's ignition can be put in various modes (levels) to make different functions available.

## Selecting an ignition mode

Start knob in the tunnel console.

- **Ignition mode 0** – Unlock the vehicle and keep the remote key in the passenger compartment.

> **Note**
>
> To set level I or II **without** engine start – do **not** depress the brake pedal (or clutch pedal for vehicles with manual transmission) when selecting this ignition mode.

- **Ignition mode I** – Turn the start knob clockwise and release it. The control will automatically return to the original position.
- **Ignition mode II** – Turn the start knob clockwise and hold it there for approx. 5 seconds. Release the knob, which will automatically return to its original position.
- **Back to ignition mode 0** – To return to ignition mode 0 from modes I and II, turn the start knob clockwise and release it. The control will automatically return to the original position.

---

# 9.2. Locking and unlocking

---

# 9.2.1. Keyless locking and unlocking

---

# 9.2.1.1. Operating the tailgate with a foot movement*

To make it easier to operate the tailgate when your hands are full, it can be opened and closed by moving your foot in a forward kicking motion under the rear bumper.

The sensor is located to the left of center under the rear bumper.

One of the vehicle's remote keys must be within range behind the vehicle, approx. 1 meter (3 feet), for opening and closing to be possible. This applies even if the vehicle is unlocked in order to prevent the trunk lid from inadvertently opening e.g. at a car wash.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

## Foot movement operation

1.

Kicking motion within the sensor's activation area.

Make **one** forward kicking motion with your foot under the left section of the rear bumper. Take a step back. Do not touch the bumper.

> A brief audible signal will be heard when opening or closing is activated - the tailgate will open/close.

If several opening attempts have been made without the remote key in range behind the vehicle, foot movement operation will not be available for a short period of time.

Do not keep your foot under the vehicle in a kicking motion. This may prevent activation.

#### Interrupting opening or closing with a foot movement

1. Make **one** forward kicking motion while the tailgate is opening or closing to stop its movement.

The remote key does not need to be within range of the vehicle to interrupt opening or closing of the tailgate.

If the tailgate stops near the closed position, it will open the next time it is activated.

> **Note**
>
> There is a risk of reduced or lost function if there are large amounts of snow, ice, dirt, etc. on the rear bumper. Make sure to keep the bumper clean.

> **Note**
>
> Please note that the system could be inadvertently activated in a car wash or similar if the remote key is within range.

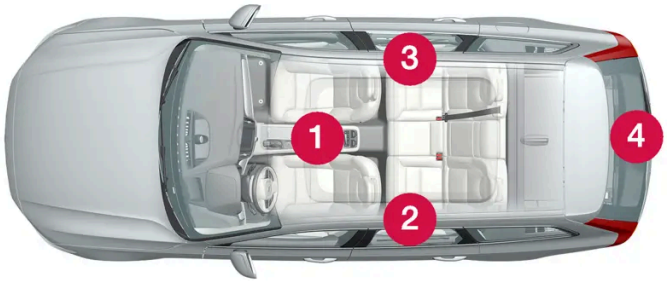
**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.2.1.2. Antenna locations for the start and lock system

The antennas for the keyless start system and keyless locking system* are integrated in the vehicle.




Location of the antennas:

1. Under the cup holder in the front section of the tunnel console
2. In the upper front section of the left-side rear door[1]
3. In the upper front section of the right-side rear door[1]
4. In the cargo compartment[1]

> **Warning**
>
> Individuals with an implanted pacemaker should not allow the pacemaker to come closer than 22 cm (9 in.) to the Keyless system antennas. The aim of this is to prevent disturbances between the pacemaker and the Keyless system.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only in vehicles equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*.

---

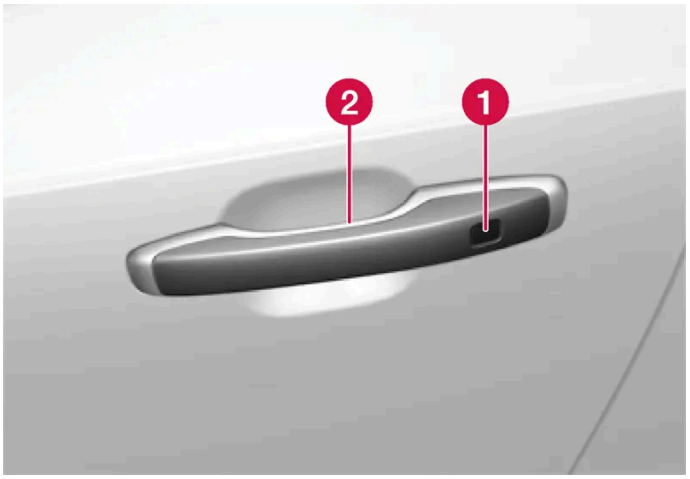
# 9.2.1.3. Keyless with touch-sensitive surfaces*

With the keyless locking and unlocking function, the remote key only needs to be within range, e.g. in a pocket or bag. The vehicle can then be locked or unlocked by touching the pressure-sensitive surface on the door handle.

## Pressure-sensitive surfaces

**Door handle**

There are indentations on the outside of the outer door handles for locking, and pressure-sensitive surfaces on the inside of the handles for unlocking.




1 Pressure-sensitive indentation for locking

2 Pressure-sensitive surface for unlocking

> **Note**
>
> It is important that only one pressure-sensitive surface is activated at a time. If the handle is grasped at the same time as the lock area is pressed, there is a risk that double commands may be sent. This may cause the requested action (locking/unlocking) to be delayed or not performed at all.

**Tailgate handle**

The tailgate handle has a rubberized pressure plate that can only be used for unlocking.

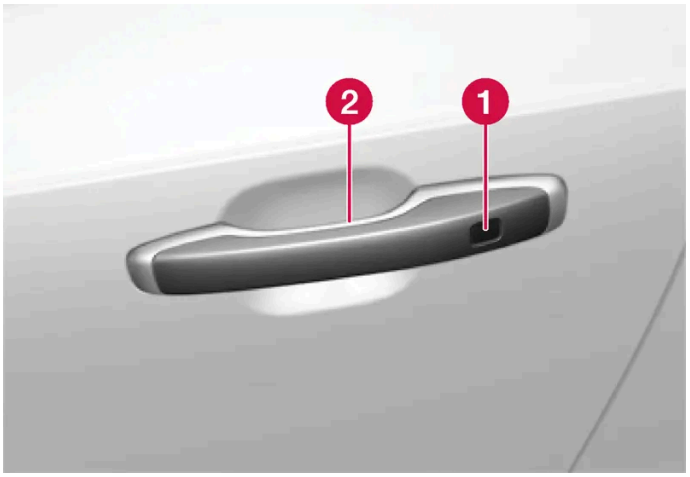
> **Note**
>
> Please be aware that the system could be activated in a car wash if the remote key is within range.

* Option/accessory.

# 9.2.1.4. Keyless locking and unlocking*

With keyless locking and unlocking, touching the pressure-sensitive indentation on the door handle will lock or unlock the vehicle.

> **Note**
>
> One of the vehicle's remote keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to be possible.




1 Pressure-sensitive indentation for locking

2 Pressure-sensitive surface for unlocking

> **Note**
>
> Please be aware that the system could be activated in a car wash if the remote key is within range.

## Keyless locking

All of the doors have to be closed before the vehicle can be locked. However, the tailgate can be open when a door handle is used for locking.

1. Touch the marked area on the outside of one of the door handles after the door is closed. Or press the button on the lower edge of the tailgate before it is closed.

> The lock indicator light on the dashboard will flash to confirm that the vehicle is locked.

To close all door windows at the same time - place your finger on the pressure-sensitive indentation on the outside of the door handle and hold it there until the side windows have closed.

**Locking when the tailgate is open**

If the vehicle is locked and the tailgate is still open, make sure that the remote key is not left in the cargo compartment when the tailgate is closed.

> **Note**
>
> If the key is detected in the vehicle, the tailgate will not lock when it is closed.

## Keyless unlocking

1. To unlock, grasp a door handle or lightly press the rubberized button on the underside of the tailgate handle.

> The lock indicator light on the dashboard will stop flashing to confirm that the vehicle is unlocked.

The rubberized button on the tailgate can only be used for unlocking.

## Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or tailgate are opened within two minutes after being unlocked, they will automatically relock. This function reduces the risk of inadvertently leaving the vehicle unlocked.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.2.1.5. Keyless unlock settings*

Several different sequences are available for keyless unlocking.

To change this setting:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Locking** → **Keyless Unlock**.
3. Select alternative:
   - **All Doors** – unlocks all doors at the same time.
   - **Single Door** – unlocks the selected door.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.2.1.6. Closing and locking the tailgate using the buttons*

The buttons on the underside of the tailgate can be used to close and lock the vehicle automatically.

Location of button(s) on underside of tailgate.

> **Important**
>
> When operating the tailgate manually, open and close it slowly. If you encounter resistance, do not use force. This could lead to damage and loss of function.

**Closing**[1]

1. Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.

> The tailgate will close automatically and remain unlocked.

> **Note**
>
> - The button remains active 24 hours after the tailgate was opened. After this time, the tailgate must be closed manually.
> - If the tailgate has been open for more than 30 minutes, it will automatically close slowly.

#### Locking[2]

1. Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.
2. Close the trunk lid manually.

> The tailgate and doors will lock[3].

#### Closing and locking[4]

1. Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.

> The tailgate closes automatically and the vehicle locks[3].

> **Note**
>
> - One of the vehicle's remote keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to be possible.
> - When the keyless locking or closing* functions are used, three audible signals will sound if the key is not detected close enough to the tailgate.

#### Interrupting closing

- Press the button on the dashboard.
- Press the button on the remote key.
- Press the close button on the underside of the tailgate[1].
- Press the rubberized pressure plate on the underside of the tailgate's outer handle.
- Using a foot movement*.

Tailgate movement is interrupted and stops. The tailgate can then be opened or closed manually.

If the tailgate stops near the closed position, it will open the next time it is activated.

## Pinch protection

If anything obstructs the tailgate with enough force to prevent it from opening or closing, pinch protection will be activated.

- When opening - the tailgate will stop moving and an audible signal will sound.
- When closing - the tailgate will stop, a long audible signal will sound and the tailgate will return to the programmed maximum opening position.

> **Warning**
>
> Be aware of the risk of injury when opening and closing.
>
> Before opening or closing, make sure that no one is near the tailgate's range of motion. Serious injury could occur.
>
> Always operate the tailgate with caution.

## Preloaded springs

Preloaded springs for the power tailgate.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not attempt to open or access the preloaded springs in the power tailgate struts. They are preloaded with high pressure and can cause injury if opened.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Vehicles with power-operated trunk lid.

[2] Vehicles equipped with keyless locking/unlocking.

[3] All doors must be closed for the vehicle to lock.

[4] Vehicles with keyless locking/unlocking and power-operated tailgate.

# 9.2.1.7. Keyless tailgate unlock*

With keyless locking and unlocking, the tailgate can be unlocked by lightly touching the rubberized button on the tailgate handle.

> **Note**
>
> One of the vehicle's remote keys must be within range behind the vehicle for unlocking to be possible.

The tailgate is held closed by an electronic locking mechanism.

To open:

1. Lightly press the rubberized pressure plate on the underside of the tailgate handle.

> The lock will disengage.

2. Lift the outer handle to open the tailgate.

> **Important**
>
> - Only light pressure on the rubberized pressure plate is necessary to release the tailgate's locking mechanism.
> - Use the handle to lift the tailgate and do not apply force to the rubberized pressure plate. Too much force can damage the pressure plate's electrical connections.

Hands-free unlocking of the tailgate is also possible using a foot movement under the rear bumper; see the separate section.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not drive with the tailgate open. Toxic exhaust fumes can be sucked into the vehicle through the cargo compartment.

* Option/accessory.

## 9.2.2. Remote key

The remote key is used to lock and unlock doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler door. The remote key must be in the vehicle in order to start the engine.

Remote key[1], Care Key and button-less key (Key Tag)*.

The remote key is not physically used to start the ignition because the vehicle is standard-equipped with keyless start (Passive Start). The key only needs to be in the front section of the passenger compartment.

For vehicles equipped with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry)*, the engine can be started with the key anywhere in the vehicle. For vehicles with Passive Entry, a smaller, lighter and buttonless key (Key Tag) can be purchased as an accessory.

The remote keys [2] can be linked to different driver profiles to store personal settings in the vehicle.

> **Warning**
>
> The remote key contains a button cell battery. Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children. If batteries are swallowed, they can cause serious injury.
>
> If any damage is detected, e.g. if the battery cover cannot be closed properly, do not use the product. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

## Remote key buttons

The remote key has four buttons, one on the left side and three on the right.

**Locking** - Press once to lock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door and arm the alarm.

Press and hold to close all windows.

**Unlocking** - Press once to unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door and disarm the alarm.

Press and hold to open all windows at the same time. This total airing function can be used to e.g. quickly air out the vehicle in hot weather.

**Tailgate** - Unlock and disarm the tailgate only. On vehicles equipped with the power tailgate*, press and hold to automatically open the tailgate. Press and hold to close an open tailgate (an audible warning signal will be given).

**Panic alarm** - Used to attract attention in emergency situations. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press twice within 3 seconds to activate the turn signals and horn. To deactivate, wait at least 5 seconds and press the button again. If no action is taken, the panic alarm will deactivate automatically after 3 minutes.

> **Warning**
>
> If anyone is left in the vehicle, make sure that power to the power windows and panoramic roof* is cut off by always taking the remote key with you when you leave the vehicle.

**Note**

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote key in the vehicle.

If the remote key or key tag is left in the vehicle, it will be deactivated when the vehicle is locked and the alarm set using another valid key. The key will be reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

## Button-less key (Key Tag)*

A buttonless key[3] can be ordered as an accessory for vehicles equipped with the keyless locking and unlocking function. A buttonless key works the same way as the regular remote key as regards keyless start and keyless locking and unlocking. The key is waterproof up to a depth of approx. 10 meters (30 feet) for up to 60 minutes. It does not have a detachable key blade and its battery cannot be replaced.

## Care Key - restricted remote key

A Care Key enables the vehicle owner to set a maximum speed limit for the vehicle. This limit is intended to promote safe use of the vehicle, e.g. when it is loaned out.

## Interference

Electromagnetic fields or obstructing objects may interfere with the remote key's functions for keyless start and keyless locking and unlocking*.

**Note**

Avoid storing the remote key near metal objects or electronic devices, e.g. cell phones, tablets, laptops or chargers – preferably no closer than 10-15 cm (4-6 in.).

If you experience interference, use the remote key's detachable blade to unlock the vehicle and then place the remote key in the backup reader in the tunnel console cup holder to disarm the alarm and start the vehicle.

**Note**

When the remote control key is placed in the cup holder, make sure that no other vehicle keys, metal objects or electronic devices (e.g. cell phones, tablets, laptops or chargers) are found in the cup holder. Multiple vehicle keys close to each other in the cup holder can disrupt their functionality.

**Warning**

**California Proposition 65**

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle [https://www.p65warnings.ca.gov/products/passenger-vehicle] .

[1] The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Does not apply to Care Key.

[3] Also called sport key.

---

# 9.2.3. Locking and unlocking using the remote key

All doors, tailgate and fuel filler door can be locked and unlocked simultaneously using the buttons on the remote key.

## Locking with remote key

The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

1. Press the button on the remote key to lock the vehicle.

To activate the locking sequence, the driver's door must be closed[1]. If any of the other doors or the tailgate are open, they will be locked and the alarm will be armed once they are closed.

> **Note**
>
> Be aware of the risk of locking the remote key in the vehicle.
>
> If the remote key or key tag is left in the vehicle, it will be deactivated when the vehicle is locked and the alarm set using another valid key. The key will be reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

**Locking when the tailgate is open**

> **Note**
>
> If the vehicle is locked and the tailgate is still open, make sure that the remote key is not left in the cargo compartment when the tailgate is closed and the entire vehicle is locked[2].

### Unlocking with remote key

1. Press the button on the remote key to unlock the vehicle.

### Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or tailgate are opened within two minutes after being unlocked, they will automatically relock. This function reduces the risk of inadvertently leaving the vehicle unlocked.

### Remote key not working

> **Note**
>
> Move closer to the vehicle and try to unlock it again.

If the remote key is not working to lock or unlock the vehicle, its battery may be discharged. Use the detachable key blade to lock/unlock the driver's door instead.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If the vehicle is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*, all side doors must be closed.

[2] If the vehicle is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking and the key is detected inside the vehicle, the tailgate will not lock when it is closed.*

---

## 9.2.4. Settings for remote and inside door unlock

Several different sequences are available for remote unlocking.

To change this setting:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Locking** → **Remote and Interior Unlock**.

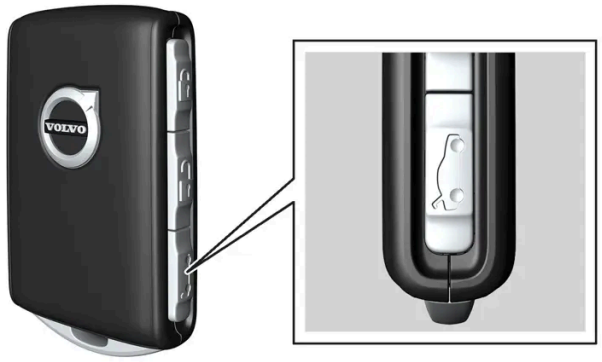
3. Select alternative:
   - **All Doors** – unlocks all doors at the same time.
   - **Single Door** – unlocks the driver's door. Press the remote key unlock button twice to unlock all doors.

The settings made here also affect central locking using the inside door handle.

---

# 9.2.5. Unlocking the tailgate using the remote key

The remote key can be used to unlock the tailgate while keeping the rest of the vehicle locked.



1. Press the button on the remote key.

> The tailgate will be unlocked but remain closed.
> The side doors remain locked and armed. The lock and alarm indicator on the dashboard will go out to indicate that the vehicle is no longer fully locked.
> Press lightly on the rubberized pressure plate under the tailgate handle to open the tailgate. If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes, it will be relocked and the alarm armed.

2. With the optional power tailgate* -

   Hold and press (about 1.5 seconds) the button on the remote key

> The tailgate will unlock and open. However, the side doors will remain locked and armed.

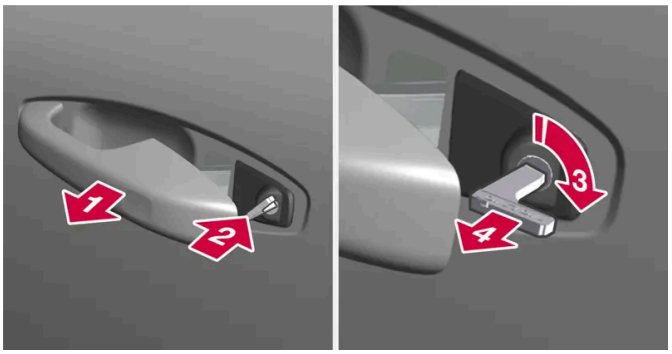
* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.2.6. Locking and unlocking with detachable key blade

The detachable key blade can be used to unlock the vehicle from the outside, e.g. if the battery in the remote key is discharged.

## Unlocking

1. 


   1
   Pull the front left-hand door handle to its end position to access the lock cylinder.

2. 2
   Put the key in the lock cylinder.

3. 3
   Turn the key clockwise 45 degrees so that the key blade is pointing straight rearward.

4. 4
   Turn the key blade back 45 degrees to its original position. Remove the key from the lock cylinder and release the handle so that it returns to its original position against the vehicle.

5. Pull the door handle.

> The door will open.

> **Note**
>
> When the door is unlocked using the detachable key blade and then opened, the alarm will be triggered. The alarm must be deactivated manually; see separate section.

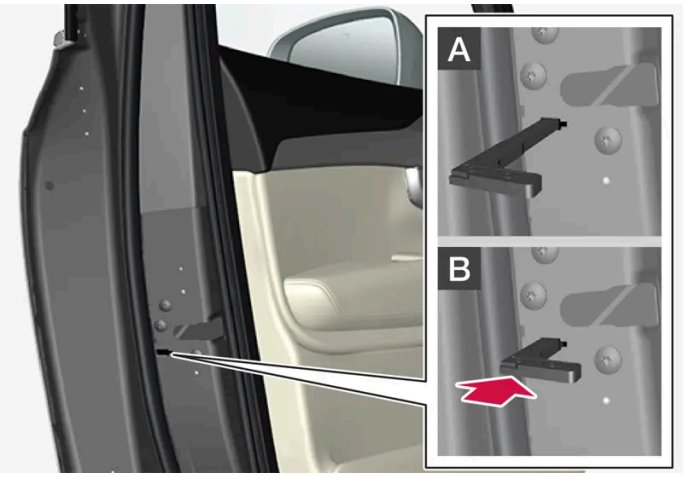
## Locking

The left-hand front door can be locked by inserting the detachable key into the door's lock cylinder.

The other doors have lock mechanisms in the side of the door that must be pushed in using the key blade. The door will then be locked mechanically and cannot be opened from the outside.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

The doors can still be opened from inside.




Manual door lock. This is not the child lock.

1. Remove the detachable key blade from the remote key.
2. Insert the key blade into the opening for the lock mechanism.
3. Push in the key until it stops, about 12 mm (0.5 inch).

A The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

B The door cannot be opened from the outside. To return to position A, open the door using the inside door handle.

**Note**

- The door's lock controls only lock that specific door, not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with activated child lock cannot be opened from either the outside or the inside. The door can only be unlocked using the buttons on the key, the central locking button, the keyless locking system * or Volvo On Call.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.2.7. Automatic locking when driving

The doors and tailgate will automatically lock when the vehicle begins to move.

---

# 9.2.8. Setting maximum opening height for the power tailgate*

The tailgate can be set to stop opening at a certain height, for example if the tailgate needs to be opened in a garage with a low ceiling.

## Setting maximum opening height

1. Open the tailgate manually to the desired opening height.
2. Press the button on the lower edge of the tailgate and hold it for about 3 seconds.

> Two audio signals will sound to indicate that the position has been stored.

**Note**

It is not possible to program an opening position lower than half-open tailgate.

## Resetting maximum opening position

1. Open the tailgate manually to the fully open position.
2. Press the button on the lower edge of the tailgate and hold it for about 3 seconds.

> Two audio signals will sound to indicate that the stored position has been erased.

**Note**

- If the system has been working continuously for a prolonged period of time, it will be switched off to avoid overload. It can be used again after approximately 2 minutes.

* Option/accessory.

# 9.2.9. Locking and unlocking from inside the vehicle

The doors and tailgate can be locked and unlocked from inside the vehicle using the central lock buttons in the front doors.

## Central locking

Button with indicator light for locking and unlocking in front door.

## Unlocking using the front door buttons

1. Press the button to unlock all side doors and the tailgate.

**Alternative unlocking method**

Alternative unlocking method using side door opening handle[1].

1. Pull either of the side door inside opening handles and release.

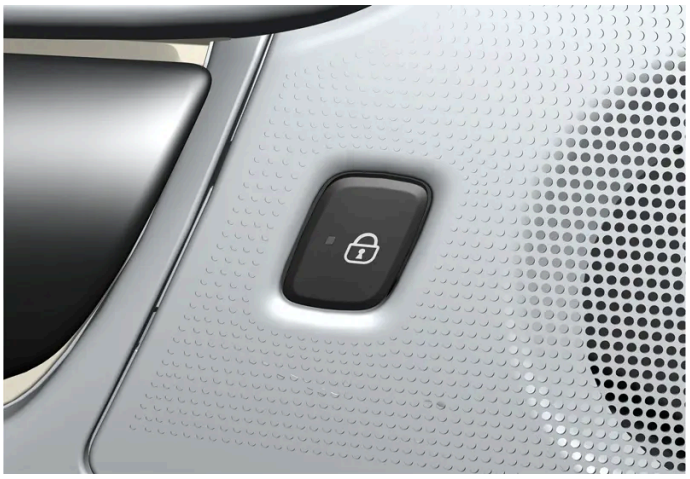
> Depending on the remote key settings, either all doors will be unlocked or just the selected door will be unlocked and opened.
> To change this setting, tap **Settings** → **My Car** → **Locking** → **Remote and Interior Unlock** in the Top view of the center display.

## Locking using the front door buttons

1. Press the button (both front doors must be closed).

> All doors and the tailgate will lock.

## Locking using the rear door button*



Button with indicator light for locking/unlocking in rear door.

The lock buttons in the rear doors lock/unlock that particular door.

## Unlocking the rear door

1. Pull the opening handle to unlock the rear door.
2. Pull the opening handle again to open the rear door[2].

[1] The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

* Option/accessory.

[2] If the child lock is not activated.

# 9.2.10. Unlocking the tailgate from inside the vehicle

The tailgate can be unlocked from the inside using the button on the dashboard.

1. Press the button on the dashboard.

> The tailgate will unlock and can be opened from the outside by pressing the rubberized button on the handle.

With the optional power tailgate*:

1. Press and hold the button on the dashboard.

> The tailgate will open.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.2.11. Private Locking

The tailgate can be locked using the private locking function to prevent it from being opened, e.g. when the vehicle is left at a workshop or with a valet.

The function button for private locking is located in the center display's Function view. Depending on the current status of the lock, **Private Locking Unlocked** or **Private Locking Locked** will be displayed.

---

# 9.2.12. Activating and deactivating private locking

Private locking is activated using the function button in the center display and a PIN code.

> **Note**
>
> For the valet lock function to be activated the car must be in at least ignition mode I.

Two codes are used for private locking:

- A security code, which is created the first time the function is used.
- A PIN code, which is changed each time the function is activated.

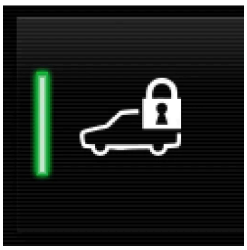
## Entering security code before initial use

The first time the function is used, a security code must be selected. This code can then be used to deactivate private locking if the selected PIN code has been forgotten or lost. The security code functions as a PUK (security) code for all PIN codes used for private locking.

Save the security code in a safe place.

To create a security code:

1. Tap the button for private locking in Function view.



> A pop-up window will appear.

2. Enter the desired security code and press **Confirm**.

> The security code is saved. The private locking function is now ready for activation.

## Activating private locking

1. Tap the button for private locking in Function view.

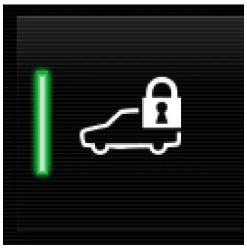
> A pop-up window will appear.

2. Enter the code you would like to use to unlock the tailgate and tap **Confirm**.

> The tailgate will lock. A green indicator light will illuminate next to the button in Function view to confirm locked status.

### Deactivating private locking

1. Tap the button for private locking in Function view.



> A pop-up window will appear.

2. Enter the code used for locking and tap **Confirm**.

> The tailgate will unlock. The green indicator light next to the button in Function view will go out to confirm unlocked status.

### Forgotten PIN code

If you have forgotten your PIN code or entered it incorrectly more than three times, the security code can be used to deactivate private locking.

If the vehicle is unlocked via Volvo On Call or the Volvo Cars app, private locking will be automatically deactivated.

#### Forgotten security code

If you have forgotten your security code, contact an authorized Volvo retailer for assistance deactivating private locking.

---

# 9.2.13. Locking and unlocking

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked in several different ways.

These are:

- using the buttons on the remote key
- with the detachable key blade (if the battery in the remote key is discharged)
- keyless* (Passive Entry), the remote key must be within range
- from inside the vehicle using the lock controls in the doors

- with the Volvo Cars app*
- Remote Door Unlock with Volvo On Call*

There are also several types of remote keys that can be used.

For vehicles equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*, a smaller, lighter and buttonless key (Key Tag) can be purchased as an accessory.

A Care Key* (restricted remote key) makes it possible to set a maximum speed limit for the vehicle.

* Option/accessory.

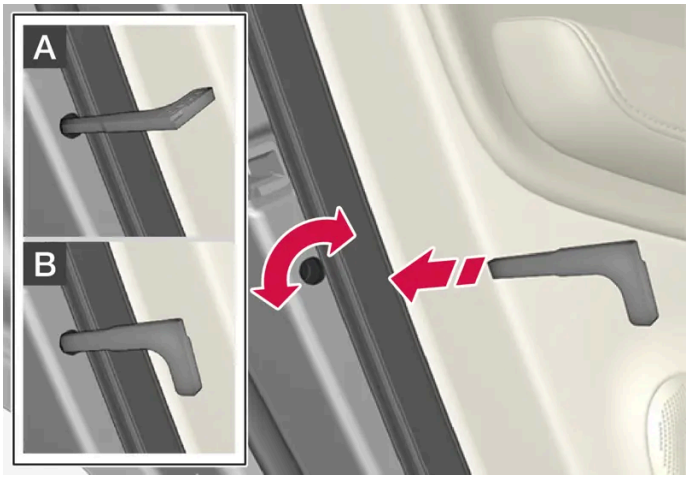
---

# 9.2.14. Activating and deactivating child locks

The child locks help prevent the rear doors from being able to be opened from the inside. With the electric child lock, the power windows are also prevented from being operated from the rear seat.

The child lock can be either manual or electric*.

## Manual child lock




Manual child lock. This is not the manual door lock.

1. Use the detachable key blade in the remote key to turn the control.

A The door cannot be opened from the inside.

B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

**Note**

- The door's knob control only locks that specific door, not both rear doors simultaneously.
- There are no manual child locks on models equipped with electronic child locks.

## Electric child lock*

The electric child lock can be activated and deactivated in any ignition mode higher than **0**. The lock can be activated and deactivated up to 2 minutes after the ignition is turned off if no door has been opened.

Button for activation and deactivation.

**Rear child lock activated**

When the indicator light in the button is lit, the child lock is activated.

If the child lock is activated when the vehicle is switched off, it will remain activated the next time the vehicle is started.

- Rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- Rear power windows can only be operated from the driver's door.

**Rear child lock deactivated**

When the indicator light in the button is off, the child lock is deactivated.

- Rear doors can be opened from the inside and power windows can be operated from the rear seat.

## Symbols and messages

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Rear child lock Activated | The child lock is activated. |
| | Rear child lock Deactivated | The child lock is deactivated. |

* Option/accessory.

---

# 9.2.15. Lock indication

The vehicle indicates when the vehicle is locked or unlocked. This indication varies depending on selected settings for lock indication and door mirror settings.

## Exterior confirmation

Locking

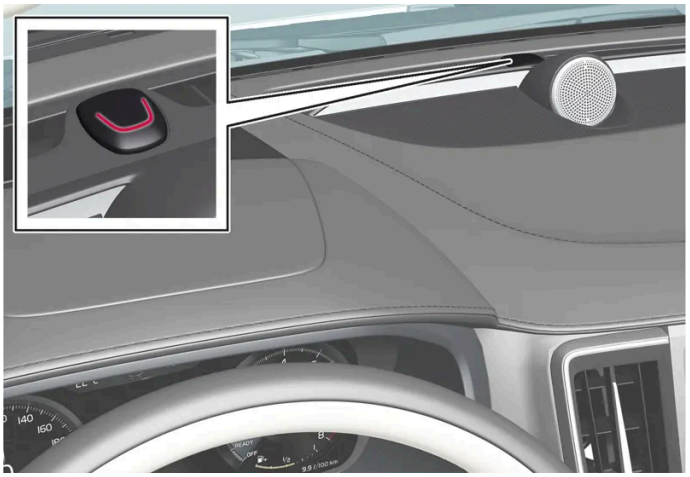
- The turn signals will flash once and the door mirrors will fold in[1] to confirm the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking

- The turn signals will flash twice and the door mirrors will fold out[1] to confirm the vehicle is unlocked.

The tailgate, hood and all doors must be closed for confirmation to be given. If only the driver's door is closed when the vehicle is locked[2], the vehicle will be locked but the turn signals will only flash to indicate locking when all doors and the tailgate and hood have been closed.

## Lock and alarm indicators on the dashboard



The locks and alarm indicator will display the status of the locking system:

- One long flash indicates locking.
- When the vehicle is locked, this will be indicated by short, pulsating flashes.
- Rapid flashing after disabling the alarm indicates that the alarm has been triggered.

## Lock button indicators

**Front door**

Lock buttons with indicator lights in front door.

Illuminated indicator lights in both front door lock buttons indicate that all doors are locked. If any door is opened, the lights in both doors will go out.

**Rear door***

Lock button with indicator light in rear door.

Illuminated indicator lights in each door indicate that that particular door is locked. If any door is unlocked and opened, the indicator light in that door will go out. The lights in the other doors will remain illuminated.

## Other indicators

The approach lighting and home safe lighting functions may be activated when locking and unlocking.

Folding the door mirrors in/out can also be used to help indicate locking/unlocking.

[1] Only vehicles with power folding mirrors.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Does not apply to vehicles equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*.

# 9.2.16. Lock confirmation settings

Settings for how the vehicle confirms locking and unlocking can be adjusted in the center display's Settings menu.

To change the locking response settings:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Locking**.
3. Tap **Visible Locking Feedback** to select when the vehicle should provide a visible response:
   - **Lock**
   - **Unlock**
   - **Both**

   Or turn off the function by marking **Off** .
4. Select to receive an audible response when locking the vehicle by marking **Audible Locking Feedback**.

To change the settings for folding door mirrors * when locking:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Select **Fold Mirror When Locked** to activate or deactivate the function.

* Option/accessory.

---

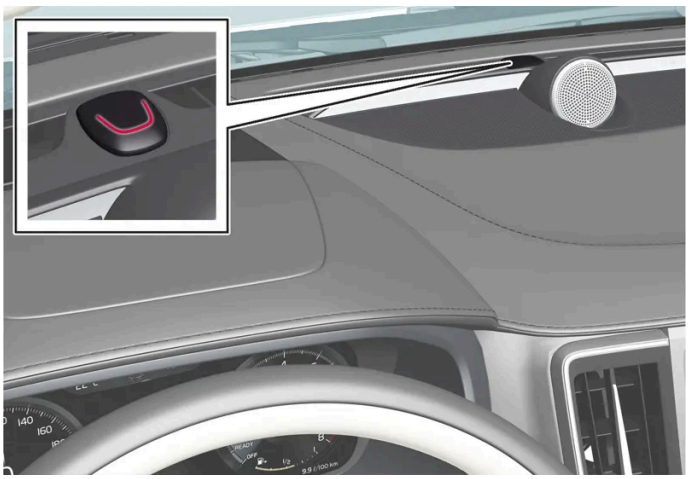
# 9.3. Alarm

---

# 9.3.1. Alarm

The alarm emits sound and light signals if anyone without a valid remote key attempts to break into the vehicle or interferes with the start battery or alarm siren.

## Alarm indicator



A red indicator light on the dashboard shows the status of the alarm:

- Indicator off - the alarm is disarmed.
- Indicator flashes once every two seconds - the alarm is armed.
- The indicator flashes quickly after the alarm has been disabled for up to 30 seconds or until the ignition is put in I mode – the alarm has been triggered.

When armed, the alarm will be triggered if:

- the hood, tailgate or any door is opened[1].
- a battery cable is disconnected.
- the alarm siren is disconnected.

## Alarm signals

The following occurs if the alarm is triggered:

- A siren will sound for 30 seconds or until the alarm is turned off.
- The hazard warning flashers will flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is turned off.

If the reason the alarm was triggered is not rectified, the alarm cycle will repeat up to 10 times[1].

## Symbols and messages

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Alarm system failure Service required | Contact a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended. |

> **Note**
>
> Do not attempt to repair or alter any of the components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempt could affect the terms and conditions of your insurance policy.

[1] Certain markets only.

---

# 9.3.2. Arming and disarming the alarm

The alarm is armed when the vehicle is locked and disarmed when the vehicle is unlocked. The alarm can also be disarmed without a functioning key.

## Arming and disarming the alarm

The alarm is armed when the vehicle is locked and disarmed when the vehicle is unlocked.

> **Note**
>
> It is not possible to lock the vehicle without activating the alarm.

#### Disarming the alarm without a functioning remote key

The vehicle can be unlocked and disarmed even if the remote key is not functioning e.g. if the battery is discharged.

1. Open the driver's door using the detachable key blade.

> This will trigger the alarm.

2.


Location of the backup key reader in the cup holder.

Place the remote key on the key symbol in the backup reader in the tunnel console's cup holder.

3. Turn the start knob clockwise and release.

> The alarm will be disarmed.

#### Turning off a triggered alarm

1. Press the unlock button on the remote key or put the ignition into mode I by turning the start knob clockwise and then releasing it.

# 10. Driver support

# 10.1. Cruise Control functions

# 10.1.1. Cruise control

# 10.1.1.1. Cruise control

Cruise Control (CC[1]) can help the driver maintain an even speed to provide a more relaxing driving experience on highways and long, straight roads with even traffic flows.

### Using engine braking instead of applying the brakes

Cruise Control regulates speed by lightly applying the brakes. On downgrades, it can sometimes be desirable to roll a bit faster and let speed be reduced instead by engine braking alone. The driver can temporarily disengage the Cruise Control braking function.

To disengage CC:

1. Press the accelerator pedal about halfway down and then release it.

> Cruise Control will automatically disengage the automatic brake function and speed will only be reduced using the engine braking function.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Cruise Control

# 10.1.1.2. Cruise control standby mode

Cruise control (CC[1]) can be deactivated and put in standby mode. This can take place automatically or be due to driver intervention.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the instrument panel but not activated. The symbol in the instrument panel is not illuminated and cruise control is not regulating the speed.

## Standby mode due to action by the driver

Cruise control will be deactivated and put in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The brakes are applied.
- The gear selector is moved to **N**.
- The vehicle is driven faster than the set speed for more than 1 minute.

The driver must then control the vehicle's speed.

Temporarily increasing speed using the accelerator pedal, e.g. when passing another vehicle, will not affect the setting. The vehicle will return to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

## Automatic standby mode

The function may automatically go into standby mode if one of the following occurs:

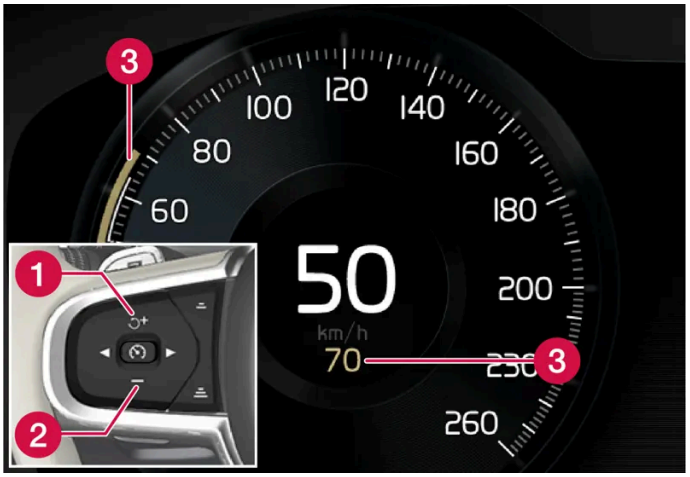
- The wheels lose traction.
- The engine speed (rpm) is too low/high.
- The temperature in the brake system becomes too high.
- The vehicle's speed goes below 30 km/h (20 mph).

The driver must then control the vehicle's speed.

[1] Cruise Control

# 10.1.1.3. Adjusting set speed for speed-controlling functions

It is possible to adjust set speeds for the cruise control, Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* functions.




1. + : Increases the set speed
2. − : Reduces the set speed
3. Set speed

1. Change a set speed by pressing the + (1) or − (2) buttons briefly or by pressing and holding them:
   - **Brief** press: Each press changes the speed in +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph) increments.
   - **Press** and **hold**: Release the button when the set speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.

> The most recently set speed will be stored.

> **Note**
>
> For vehicles without Adaptive Cruise Control*, speed instead increases by +/- 1 km/h (+/- 1 mph) each time the button is pressed.

## Pressing the accelerator pedal

If speed is increased by depressing the accelerator pedal while pressing the + (1) button on the steering wheel, the vehicle's speed when the button is pressed will be stored as the set speed.

Temporarily increasing speed using the accelerator pedal, e.g. when passing another vehicle, will not affect the setting. The vehicle will return to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

## Possible speed

**Automatic transmission**

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from a standstill up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

Pilot Assist can provide steering assistance from near-stationary speeds up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

The lowest speed that can be set is 30 km/h (20 mph). When following another vehicle, ACC can monitor that vehicle's speed and slow your own vehicle down to a standstill, but it is not possible to set speeds lower than 30 km/h (20 mph).

* Option/accessory.

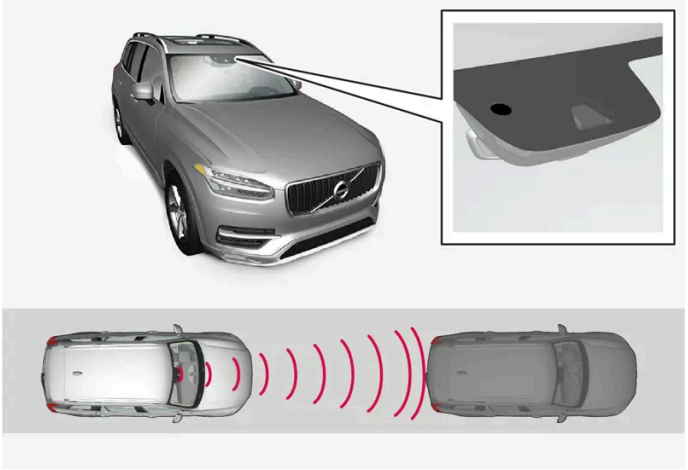
---

# 10.1.2. Adaptive Cruise Control

---

# 10.1.2.1. Adaptive Cruise Control*

Adaptive Cruise Control[1] (ACC[2]) can help the driver to maintain a constant speed, combined with a preset time interval to the vehicle in front.



The camera/radar sensor measures the distance to the vehicle ahead.

Adaptive Cruise Control can help provide a more relaxed driving experience on long trips on highways or long, straight roads with even traffic flows.

The driver sets a speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. If the camera/radar sensor detects a slower-moving vehicle ahead, your vehicle's speed will be automatically adapted according to the set time interval to the vehicle ahead. When there are no longer slower-moving vehicles ahead, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

If the Curve Speed Assist (CSA)* function is activated, it may also affect the vehicle's speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control is designed to:

- smoothly regulate speed. The driver must apply the brakes in situations requiring immediate braking. For example, when there are great differences in speed between vehicles or if the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly. Due to limitations in the radar sensor, braking may occur unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow a vehicle ahead in the same lane and maintain a time interval to that vehicle set by the driver. If the radar unit does not detect a vehicle ahead, it will instead maintain the speed set by the driver. This will also happen if the speed of the vehicle ahead exceeds the set speed for your vehicle.

## Steep roads and/or heavy loads

Adaptive Cruise Control is primarily intended to be driven on flat roads. The function may not be able to maintain the correct time interval to the vehicle ahead when driving down steep downgrades. The driver should be extra attentive and prepared to apply the brakes.

Do not use Adaptive Cruise Control if the vehicle is carrying a heavy load or towing a trailer.

**Warning**

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system fails to detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake for people or animals and does not brake for small vehicles, such as bikes and motorcycles. Similarly, it does not brake for low trailers, oncoming, slow-moving or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at intersections, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads, or on on/off ramps.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

**Note**

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

**Important**

Only a workshop may perform maintenance on driver support components – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

# 10.1.2.2. Symbols and messages for Adaptive Cruise Control*

A number of symbols and messages relating to Adaptive Cruise Control[1] (ACC[2]) may be displayed. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | The symbol is illuminated | The vehicle is maintaining the stored speed. |
| | **Adaptive Cruise Contr. Unavailable**<br>The symbol is extinguished | Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode. |
| | **Adaptive Cruise Contr. Service required**<br>The symbol is extinguished | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended. |
| | **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual** | Clean the windshield in front of the camera and radar sensors. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

---

# 10.1.2.3. Adaptive Cruise Control* standby mode

Adaptive Cruise Control[1] (ACC[2]) can be deactivated and put in standby mode. This can take place automatically or be due to driver intervention.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the instrument panel but not activated. In standby mode, Adaptive Cruise Control will not regulate speed or distance to the vehicle ahead.

## Standby mode due to action by the driver

Adaptive Cruise Control will be deactivated and put in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The brakes are applied.
- The gear selector is moved to **N**.
- The vehicle is driven faster than the set speed for more than 1 minute.

Temporarily increasing speed using the accelerator pedal, e.g. when passing another vehicle, will not affect the setting. The vehicle will return to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

> **Warning**
>
> - If Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
> - If the vehicle comes too close to a vehicle ahead when Adaptive Cruise Control is in standby mode, the driver can be warned of the short distance by the Distance Alert* function.

## Automatic standby mode

> **Warning**
>
> With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel.
>
> - The driver must then regulate vehicle speed, apply the brakes if necessary, and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

The function may automatically go into standby mode if one of the following occurs:

- One of the systems that Adaptive Cruise Control is dependent on stops working, such as Electronic Stability Control (ESC[3]).
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver unbuckles the seat belt.
- The engine speed (rpm) is too low/high.
- One or more of the wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The camera and radar unit is covered by snow or heavy rain (the camera lens/radar waves are blocked).
- Your vehicle's speed goes below 5 km/h (3 mph) and ACC cannot determine if the vehicle ahead is stationary or if it is another object, e.g. a speed bump.
- Your vehicle's speed goes below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns so that ACC no longer has a vehicle to follow.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

[3] Electronic Stability Control

# 10.1.2.4. Auto-hold braking with speed-controlling functions

The driver support functions Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* have a special brake function in slow traffic and while stationary. In certain situations, the parking brake will be applied to keep the vehicle at a standstill.

## Braking function in slow traffic and at a standstill

In slow-moving, stop-and-go traffic or when stopped at a traffic light, driving will resume automatically if the vehicle is stopped for less than approx. 3 seconds. If it takes more than 3 seconds for the vehicle ahead to begin moving again, the driver support function will go into standby mode and the auto-hold brake function will activate.

1. The function can be reactivated by:
   - Pressing the button on the steering wheel keypad.
   - Pressing the accelerator pedal.

> The function will resume following the vehicle ahead if it begins to move within approx. 6 seconds.

**Warning**

A noticeable increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

**Warning**

The driver support system only issues a warning for obstacles detected by its radar sensor – thus, a warning may come after a delay or not at all.

- Never wait for a warning or assistance. Apply the brakes when necessary.

**Note**

Driver support can keep the vehicle stationary for no more than 5 minutes – after that time the parking brake is applied and the function is deactivated.

The parking brake must be released before driver support can be reactivated.

#### Deactivation of the Auto-hold brake function

In certain situations, auto-hold will be deactivated when the vehicle is at a standstill and the function will go into standby mode. This means that the brakes will be released and the vehicle could begin to roll. The driver must actively apply the brakes

to keep the vehicle stationary.

This can occur if:

- The driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The gear selector is moved to the P, N or R position.
- The driver puts Adaptive Cruise Control or Pilot Assist in standby mode.

### Auto Activate Parking Brake

The parking brake will be applied if the function is keeping the vehicle stationary using the brakes and:

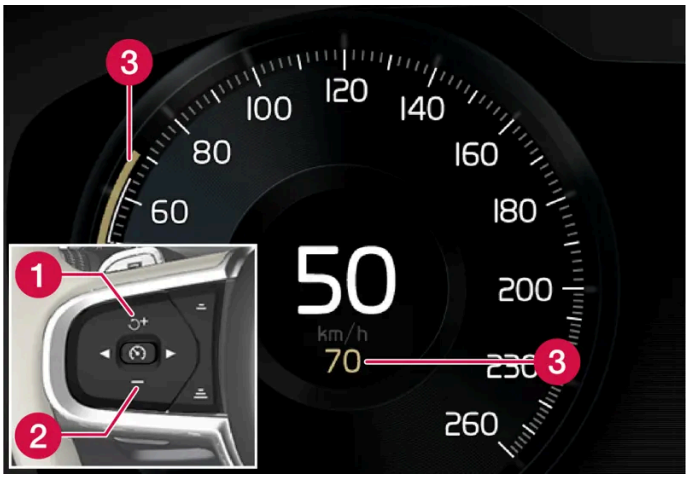
- The driver opens the door or unbuckles his/her seat belt.
- The function has kept the vehicle at a standstill for more than approx. 5 minutes.
- The brakes overheat.
- The driver switches off the engine.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.2.5. Adjusting set speed for speed-controlling functions

It is possible to adjust set speeds for the cruise control, Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* functions.




1. + : Increases the set speed
2. − : Reduces the set speed
3. Set speed

**1.** Change a set speed by pressing the + (1) or − (2) buttons briefly or by pressing and holding them:

- **Brief** press: Each press changes the speed in +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph) increments.
- **Press** and **hold**: Release the button when the set speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.

> The most recently set speed will be stored.

> **Note**
>
> For vehicles without Adaptive Cruise Control*, speed instead increases by +/- 1 km/h (+/- 1 mph) each time the button is pressed.

### Pressing the accelerator pedal

If speed is increased by depressing the accelerator pedal while pressing the + (1) button on the steering wheel, the vehicle's speed when the button is pressed will be stored as the set speed.

Temporarily increasing speed using the accelerator pedal, e.g. when passing another vehicle, will not affect the setting. The vehicle will return to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

### Possible speed

**Automatic transmission**

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from a standstill up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

Pilot Assist can provide steering assistance from near-stationary speeds up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

The lowest speed that can be set is 30 km/h (20 mph). When following another vehicle, ACC can monitor that vehicle's speed and slow your own vehicle down to a standstill, but it is not possible to set speeds lower than 30 km/h (20 mph).

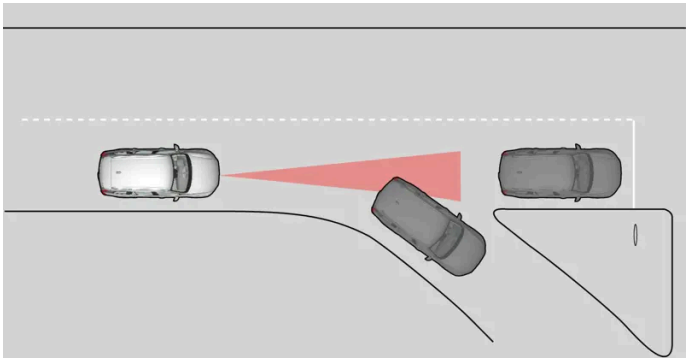
* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.2.6. Switching target vehicles with speed-controlling functions

At certain speeds, vehicles with automatic transmissions and the driver support functions Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* can switch target vehicles.

## Switching target vehicles



If the target vehicle ahead turns suddenly, there may be stationary traffic ahead.

When driver support is actively following another vehicle at speeds **under** 30 km/h (20 mph) and switches targets from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, driver support will brake for the stationary vehicle.

> **Warning**
>
> When driver support follows another vehicle at speeds **over** approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target vehicle – from a moving vehicle to a stationary one – driver support will **ignore** the stationary vehicle and instead accelerate to the stored speed.
>
> - The driver must then intervene and apply the brakes.

#### Automatic standby mode when switching targets

Driver support disengages and goes into standby mode if:

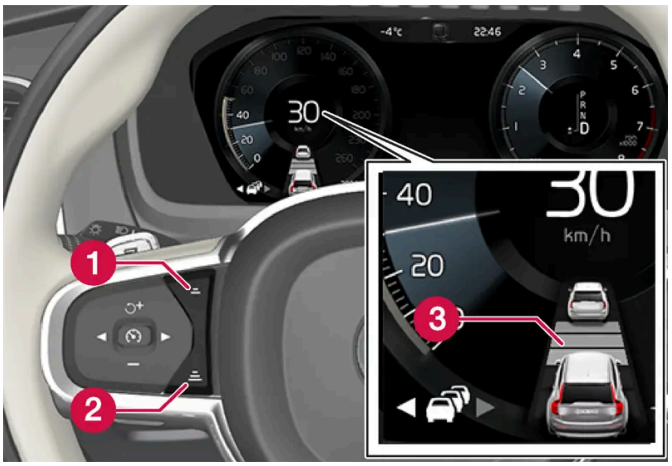
- your vehicle's speed goes under 5 km/h (3 mph) and driver support cannot determine if the target vehicle is stationary or if it is another object, e.g. a speed bump.
- your vehicle's speed goes under 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns so that driver support no longer has a vehicle to follow.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.2.7. Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead

The time interval to the vehicle ahead can be set for the functions Adaptive Cruise Control*, Pilot Assist* and Distance Alert*.

1. 


Controls for setting a time interval.

1 Reduce the time interval

2 Increase the time interval

3 Distance indicator

Press the (1) or (2) button to decrease or increase the time interval.

> The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

Different time intervals to the vehicle ahead can be selected and are shown in the instrument panel as 1–5 horizontal bars. The more bars, the longer the time interval. One bar represents an interval of approx. 1 second to the vehicle ahead. 5 bars represents approx. 3 seconds.

In order to help your vehicle follow the vehicle ahead as smoothly and comfortably as possible, Adaptive Cruise Control allows the time interval to vary noticeably in certain situations. At low speeds, when the distance to the vehicle ahead is short, Adaptive Cruise Control increases the time interval slightly.

**Note**

When the symbol in the instrument panel shows a vehicle and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle ahead at a preset time interval.

When only a steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle ahead within a reasonable distance.

**Note**

When the symbol in the instrument panel shows two vehicles, Adaptive Cruise Control is following the vehicle ahead at a preset time interval.

When only one vehicle is shown, there is no vehicle ahead within a reasonable distance.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Note**

- The greater the vehicles' speed, the greater the distance between them for a set time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If driver support does not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time interval to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time interval.

**Warning**

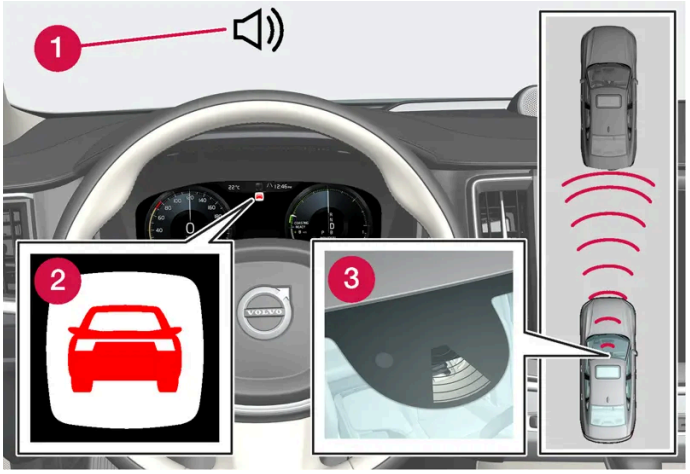
- Only use a time interval suitable for the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time intervals give them limited time to react and act to any unforeseen traffic situation.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.2.8. Collision risk warning from speed-controlling functions

The driver support systems Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* can help alert the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly decreases to an unsafe distance.




Collision warning audible signal and symbol

1 Audible signal at risk of collision

2 Collision warning symbol

3 Camera and radar unit distance monitoring

Adaptive Cruise Control and Pilot Assist use approx. 40% of the braking capacity. If a situation requires more braking force than driver support can provide, and if the driver does not apply the brakes, a warning light and audible warning signal will be activated to alert the driver that immediate action is required.

**Warning**

The driver support system only issues a warning for vehicles detected by its radar unit – thus, a warning may come after a delay or not at all. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when necessary.

Collision warning symbol on the windshield

In vehicles equipped with a head-up display*, a flashing warning symbol will be displayed on the windshield.

**Note**

Visual warnings on the windshield may be difficult to notice in cases of strong sunlight, reflections, extreme light contrasts, or if the driver is wearing sunglasses or is not looking straight ahead.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.3. Pilot Assist

---

## 10.1.3.1. Auto-hold braking with speed-controlling functions

The driver support functions Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* have a special brake function in slow traffic and while stationary. In certain situations, the parking brake will be applied to keep the vehicle at a standstill.

### Braking function in slow traffic and at a standstill

In slow-moving, stop-and-go traffic or when stopped at a traffic light, driving will resume automatically if the vehicle is stopped for less than approx. 3 seconds. If it takes more than 3 seconds for the vehicle ahead to begin moving again, the driver support function will go into standby mode and the auto-hold brake function will activate.

1. The function can be reactivated by:
   - Pressing the button on the steering wheel keypad.
   - Pressing the accelerator pedal.

> The function will resume following the vehicle ahead if it begins to move within approx. 6 seconds.

**Warning**

A noticeable increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

**Warning**

The driver support system only issues a warning for obstacles detected by its radar sensor – thus, a warning may come after a delay or not at all.

- Never wait for a warning or assistance. Apply the brakes when necessary.

**Note**

Driver support can keep the vehicle stationary for no more than 5 minutes – after that time the parking brake is applied and the function is deactivated.

The parking brake must be released before driver support can be reactivated.

**Deactivation of the Auto-hold brake function**

In certain situations, auto-hold will be deactivated when the vehicle is at a standstill and the function will go into standby mode. This means that the brakes will be released and the vehicle could begin to roll. The driver must actively apply the brakes to keep the vehicle stationary.

This can occur if:

- The driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The gear selector is moved to the P, N or R position.
- The driver puts Adaptive Cruise Control or Pilot Assist in standby mode.

## Auto Activate Parking Brake

The parking brake will be applied if the function is keeping the vehicle stationary using the brakes and:

- The driver opens the door or unbuckles his/her seat belt.
- The function has kept the vehicle at a standstill for more than approx. 5 minutes.
- The brakes overheat.

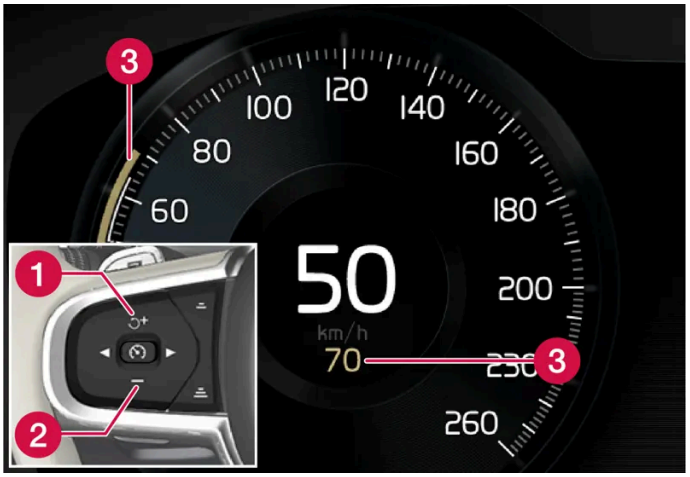
- The driver switches off the engine.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.3.2. Adjusting set speed for speed-controlling functions

It is possible to adjust set speeds for the cruise control, Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* functions.




1. + : Increases the set speed
2. − : Reduces the set speed
3. Set speed

1. Change a set speed by pressing the + (1) or − (2) buttons briefly or by pressing and holding them:
   - **Brief** press: Each press changes the speed in +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph) increments.
   - **Press** and **hold**: Release the button when the set speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.

> The most recently set speed will be stored.

> **Note**
>
> For vehicles without Adaptive Cruise Control*, speed instead increases by +/- 1 km/h (+/- 1 mph) each time the button is pressed.

## Pressing the accelerator pedal

If speed is increased by depressing the accelerator pedal while pressing the + (1) button on the steering wheel, the vehicle's speed when the button is pressed will be stored as the set speed.

Temporarily increasing speed using the accelerator pedal, e.g. when passing another vehicle, will not affect the setting. The vehicle will return to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

### Possible speed

**Automatic transmission**

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from a standstill up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

Pilot Assist can provide steering assistance from near-stationary speeds up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

The lowest speed that can be set is 30 km/h (20 mph). When following another vehicle, ACC can monitor that vehicle's speed and slow your own vehicle down to a standstill, but it is not possible to set speeds lower than 30 km/h (20 mph).

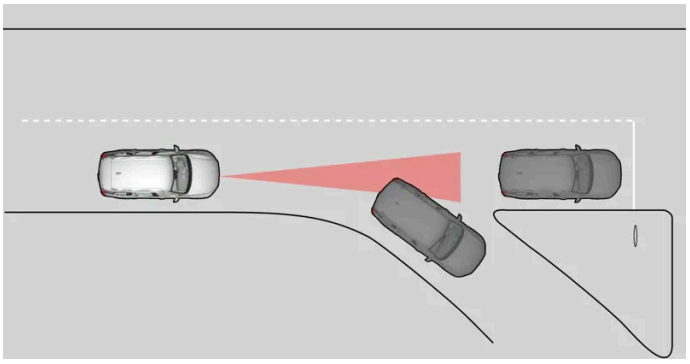
* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.3.3. Switching target vehicles with speed-controlling functions

At certain speeds, vehicles with automatic transmissions and the driver support functions Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* can switch target vehicles.

### Switching target vehicles



If the target vehicle ahead turns suddenly, there may be stationary traffic ahead.

When driver support is actively following another vehicle at speeds **under** 30 km/h (20 mph) and switches targets from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, driver support will brake for the stationary vehicle.

**Warning**

When driver support follows another vehicle at speeds **over** approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target vehicle – from a moving vehicle to a stationary one – driver support will **ignore** the stationary vehicle and instead accelerate to the stored speed.

- The driver must then intervene and apply the brakes.

**Automatic standby mode when switching targets**

Driver support disengages and goes into standby mode if:

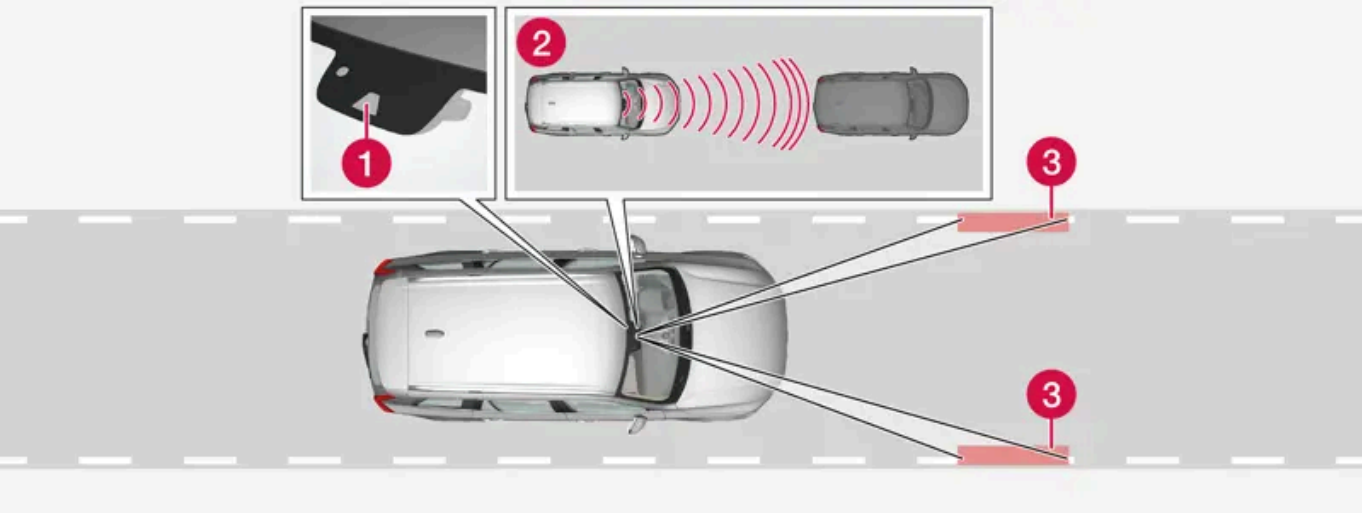
- your vehicle's speed goes under 5 km/h (3 mph) and driver support cannot determine if the target vehicle is stationary or if it is another object, e.g. a speed bump.
- your vehicle's speed goes under 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns so that driver support no longer has a vehicle to follow.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.3.4. Pilot Assist*

Pilot Assist[1] can help the driver keep the vehicle in the current traffic lane and maintain an even speed and a set time interval to the vehicle ahead.




The camera/radar sensor monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and detects lane markings.

1 Camera and radar sensor

2 Distance monitor

3 Lane marker line monitors

## Get to know Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist helps to steer the vehicle, and you may need to drive a few miles with Pilot Assist before you feel completely at home with the function. It is important to be familiar with all of the function's applications and limitations in order to take advantage of all it has to offer.

The Pilot Assist function is primarily intended for use on highways and other major roads where it can help provide a more comfortable and relaxing driving experience.

The driver sets the desired speed and distance to the vehicle ahead. Pilot Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and the traffic lane's side markers using the camera. The system maintains the set time interval to the vehicle ahead by automatically adjusting your vehicle's speed and keeps your vehicle in its lane by providing steering assistance.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

If the Curve Speed Assist (CSA)* function is activated, it may also affect the vehicle's speed.

Pilot Assist regulates speed by accelerating and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a slight sound when they are being used to adjust speed.

Pilot Assist is designed to:

- smoothly regulate speed. The driver must apply the brakes in situations requiring immediate braking. For example, when there are great differences in speed between vehicles or if the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly. Due to limitations in the camera and radar sensor, braking may occur unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow a vehicle ahead in the same lane and maintain a time interval to that vehicle set by the driver. If the radar sensor does not detect a vehicle ahead, it will instead maintain the speed set by the driver. This will also happen if the speed of the vehicle ahead exceeds the set speed for your vehicle.

## The vehicle's position in the traffic lane

When Pilot Assist helps to steer, it attempts to position the vehicle halfway between the visible lane marking lines. For a smoother drive, it is a good idea to allow the vehicle to find a good position. The driver can always adjust the position him/herself by increasing steering input. It is important for the driver to make sure the vehicle is positioned safely in the lane.

If Pilot Assist does not position the vehicle appropriately in the lane, the driver should turn off Pilot Assist or switch to Adaptive Cruise Control*.

## Steering assistance

The color of the steering wheel symbol indicates the current status of steering assistance:

• Illuminated indicates that steering assistance is active

• Extinguished (as shown in illustration) indicates that steering assistance is deactivated.

Pilot Assist's steering assistance is based on monitoring the direction of the vehicle ahead and the traffic lane's side marker lines. The driver can adjust steering assistance from Pilot Assist at any time and steer in another direction, e.g. to change lanes or avoid obstacles on the road. Resistance will be felt in the steering wheel as long as steering assistance is active.

#### Temporarily deactivating steering assistance

> **Warning**
>
> Pilot Assist is deactivated automatically and resumes working without prior notice.

When the turn signals are used, Pilot Assist's steering assistance will be temporarily deactivated. When the direction indicator is turned off, steering assistance is reactivated automatically if the lane's edge markings can still be detected.

If Pilot Assist cannot clearly interpret the lane's side marker lines and if the camera is unable for some other reason to clearly interpret the lane, Pilot Assist will temporarily deactivate steering assistance. The speed and distance warning functions will remain active. Steering assistance will resume when the side marker lines can once again be interpreted. In these situations, the driver may be alerted through slight vibrations in the steering wheel that steering assistance is temporarily deactivated.

## In curves and forks in the road

Pilot Assist is designed to interact with the driver. The driver should never wait for steering assistance from Pilot Assist, but instead should always be ready to increase his or her own steering efforts, particularly in curves.

When the vehicle is approaching an off-ramp or a fork in the road, the driver should steer toward the desired lane so that Pilot Assist can detect the desired direction of travel.

## Hands on the steering wheel

Pilot Assist only functions if the driver's hands are on the steering wheel. It is also important for the driver to always continue to be active and alert when driving since Pilot Assist is unable to read all situations and may toggle between off and on without prior warning.

> **Warning**
>
> Act immediately if any warning signal is triggered – do not wait for all levels of warnings and assistance from the systems to be provided.

1. If Pilot Assist detects that the driver's hands are not on the steering wheel, the system will provide a symbol and a text message in the instrument panel to instruct the driver to actively steer the vehicle.
2. If the driver's hands are still detected on the steering wheel after a few seconds have passed the instructions to actively steer the vehicle will be repeated accompanied by an audible signal.
3. If Pilot Assist still does not detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel after a few more seconds have passed, the function will be switched off. Pilot Assist must then be restarted by pressing the button on the steering wheel. After it is switched off, the function will continue to alert with sound and light signals for up to 5 seconds.

## Steep roads and/or heavy loads

Pilot Assist is primarily intended to be driven on flat roads. The function may not be able to maintain the correct time interval to the vehicle ahead when driving down steep downgrades. The driver should be extra attentive and prepared to apply the brakes.

Do not use Pilot Assist if the vehicle is carrying a heavy load or towing a trailer.

> **Note**
>
> Pilot Assist cannot be activated if a trailer, bike carrier or similar is connected to the vehicle electrical system.

## Read all warnings before use

> **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

**Note**

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

**Important**

Only a workshop may perform maintenance on driver support components – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

**Warning**

In some situations, Pilot Assist may have trouble helping the driver properly or may be deactivated automatically – we advise against using Pilot Assist in such cases. Examples of such situations include:

- the lane markings are unclear, worn, missing, cross each other, or there are multiple sets of road markings.
- the lane division changes, e.g. when lanes split or merge, and at off-ramps.
- when there is road construction and sudden changes to the road surface, e.g. when the lines may no longer mark the correct route.
- edges or other lines than lane markings are present on or near the road, e.g. curbs, joints or repairs to the road surface, edges of barriers, roadside edges or strong shadows.
- the lane is narrow or winding.
- the lane contains ridges or holes.
- weather conditions are poor, e.g. rain, snow or fog or slush or reduced visibility with poor light conditions, backlighting, wet road surface, etc.

The driver should also note that Pilot Assist has the following limitations:

- High curbs, roadside barriers, temporary obstacles (traffic cones, safety barriers, etc.) are not detected. Alternatively, they may be detected incorrectly as lane markings, with a subsequent risk of contact between the vehicle and such obstacles. The driver is responsible for ensuring that the vehicle maintains a suitable distance from such obstacles.
- The camera and radar sensors do not have the capacity to detect all oncoming objects and obstacles in traffic environments, e.g. potholes, stationary obstacles or objects that completely or partially block the route.
- Pilot Assist does not "see" pedestrians, animals, etc.
- The steering assistance is limited in force, which means that Pilot Assist cannot always help the driver to steer and keep the vehicle within the lane.
- In vehicles equipped with Sensus Navigation*, the function is able to use information from map data, which could cause variations in performance.
- Pilot Assist will be switched off if the speed-dependent power steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power, e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

**Warning**

Pilot Assist should only be used if there are clear lane lines painted on each side of the lane. All other use will increase the risk of contact with nearby obstacles that cannot be detected by the functions.

**Warning**

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system fails to detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake for people or animals and does not brake for small vehicles, such as bikes and motorcycles. Similarly, it does not brake for low trailers, oncoming, slow-moving or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at intersections, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads, or on on/off ramps.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

---

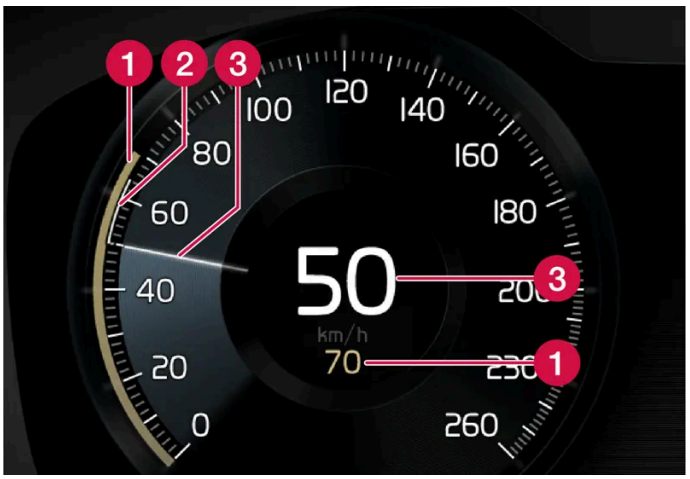
# 10.1.3.5. Adaptive Cruise Control and Pilot Assist* displays

The following illustrations show how Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC[1]) and Pilot Assist may be displayed in the instrument panel[2].

## Graphic

| | |
|---|---|
| | Adaptive Cruise Control is selected and active. |
| | Pilot Assist is selected and active. Pilot Assist's steering assistance is only active when the steering wheel symbol changes from extinguished to illuminated. |
| | There is a target vehicle ahead to follow. The time interval to the vehicle ahead is only regulated when the graphic shows a vehicle on top. |

### Speed




Speed indicators.

1 Set speed

2 Speed of the vehicle ahead

3 The current speed of your vehicle

* Option/accessory.

[1] Adaptive Cruise Control

[2] Depending on market, these functions can be either standard or optional.

---

# 10.1.3.6. Pilot Assist* symbols and messages

A number of symbols and messages relating to Pilot Assist[1] may be displayed. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Extinguished steering wheel symbol | Indicates that steering assistance is deactivated. When Pilot Assist is providing steering assistance, the steering wheel is illuminated. |
| | Symbol for hands on the steering wheel | The system cannot detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel. Place your hands on the steering wheel and actively steer the vehicle. |
| | **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual** | Clean the windshield in front of the camera and radar sensors. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

---

# 10.1.3.7. Pilot Assist* standby mode

Pilot Assist[1] can be deactivated and put in standby mode. This can take place automatically or be due to driver intervention.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the instrument panel but not activated. In standby mode, Pilot Assist will not regulate the speed or distance to the vehicle ahead or provide steering assistance.

## Standby mode due to action by the driver

Pilot Assist will be deactivated and put in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The brakes are applied.
- The gear selector is moved to **N**.
- A turn signal is used for more than 1 minute.
- The vehicle is driven faster than the set speed for more than 1 minute.

## Automatic standby mode

**Warning**

With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel.

- The driver must then regulate vehicle speed, apply the brakes if necessary, and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

The function may automatically go into standby mode if one of the following occurs.

- One of the systems that Pilot Assist is dependent on stops working, such as Electronic Stability Control [2].
- The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel.
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver unbuckles the seat belt.
- The engine speed (rpm) is too low/high.
- One or more of the wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The camera and radar unit is covered by snow or heavy rain (the camera lens/radar waves are blocked).
- Your vehicle's speed goes below 5 km/h (3 mph) and Pilot Assist cannot determine if the vehicle ahead is stationary or if it is another object, e.g. a speed bump.
- Your vehicle's speed goes below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns so that Pilot Assist no longer has a vehicle to follow.

* Option/accessory.

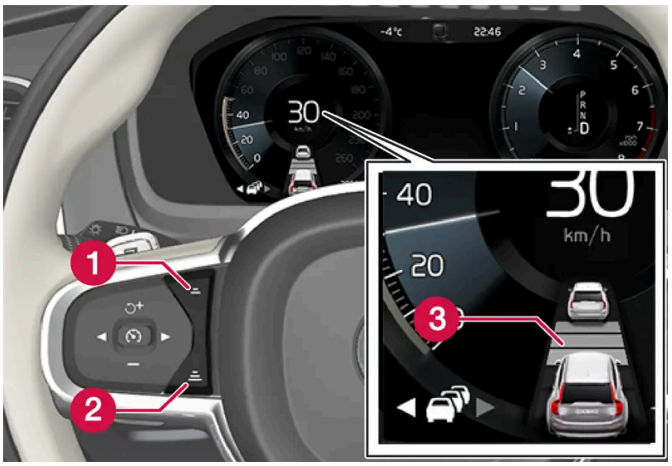
[1] Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

[2] Electronic Stability Control

---

# 10.1.3.8. Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead

The time interval to the vehicle ahead can be set for the functions Adaptive Cruise Control*, Pilot Assist* and Distance Alert*.

1. 


Controls for setting a time interval.

1. Reduce the time interval
2. Increase the time interval
3. Distance indicator

Press the (1) or (2) button to decrease or increase the time interval.

> The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

Different time intervals to the vehicle ahead can be selected and are shown in the instrument panel as 1–5 horizontal bars. The more bars, the longer the time interval. One bar represents an interval of approx. 1 second to the vehicle ahead. 5 bars represents approx. 3 seconds.

In order to help your vehicle follow the vehicle ahead as smoothly and comfortably as possible, Adaptive Cruise Control allows the time interval to vary noticeably in certain situations. At low speeds, when the distance to the vehicle ahead is short, Adaptive Cruise Control increases the time interval slightly.

**Note**

When the symbol in the instrument panel shows a vehicle and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle ahead at a preset time interval.

When only a steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle ahead within a reasonable distance.

**Note**

When the symbol in the instrument panel shows two vehicles, Adaptive Cruise Control is following the vehicle ahead at a preset time interval.

When only one vehicle is shown, there is no vehicle ahead within a reasonable distance.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Note**

- The greater the vehicles' speed, the greater the distance between them for a set time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If driver support does not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time interval to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time interval.

**Warning**

- Only use a time interval suitable for the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time intervals give them limited time to react and act to any unforeseen traffic situation.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.3.9. Differences between Pilot Assist* and Lane Keeping Aid

Pilot Assist is a comfort function that can help keep the vehicle in its own lane and maintain the distance to the vehicle in front of you. Lane Keeping Aid[1] is a function that similarly helps in certain situations to reduce the risk of the vehicle unintentionally veering out of its lane.

## Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can help you to steer your vehicle between the lane markings, as well as maintain a preset speed and distance to the vehicle ahead. The function can also use the lane marking lines to help the driver maintain a favorable position in the lane.

#### What does Pilot Assist do?

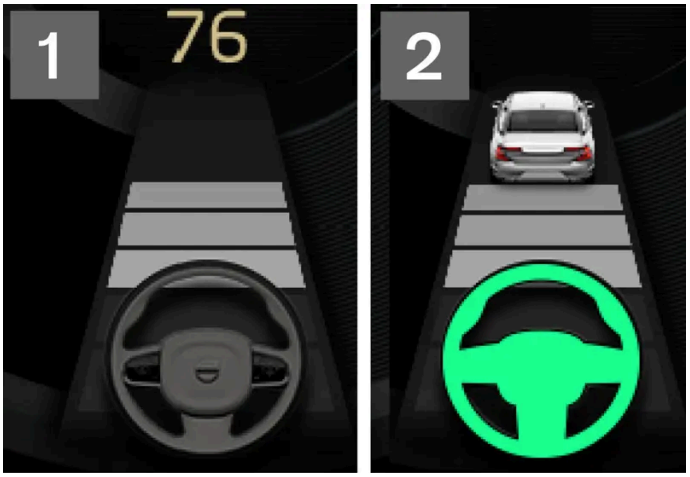
- Can help to keep the vehicle within its lane by assisting steering in some cases.
- Can help to maintain a preset speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead by means of acceleration and braking operations.

#### How do I know that Pilot Assist is on?

Symbols in the vehicle's instrument panel let you know when the function is on.

When the steering wheel in the middle is not illuminated, Pilot Assist is on but steering assistance is not active.

When the steering wheel is illuminated, Pilot Assist is on and steering assistance is active.




2 When the steering wheel symbol in the instrument panel is illuminated, Pilot Assist is helping you to steer.

## Lane Keeping Aid

Lane Keeping Aid can provide steering assistance and/or a warning to the driver when the vehicle is about to leave its lane unintentionally. The function is active between 65-200 km/h (40-125 mph) on roads with clearly visible side markings.

#### What does Lane Keeping Aid do?

- Lane Keeping Aid can provide the driver with steering assistance, steering the vehicle back into its lane and/or providing warnings using acoustic signals or steering wheel vibration.

#### How do I know that Lane Keeping Aid is on?

Symbols in the vehicle's instrument panel show the function status.

An extinguished symbol in the instrument panel means that the function is on but that the conditions for LKA have not been met.

White symbol in the instrument panel means that the conditions for LKA have been met and that the function is available.

Orange symbol in the instrument panel means that LKA provides steering assistance back into the lane and/or gives a warning with sound or vibration in the steering wheel.

**Warning**

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is operated in a safe manner. The driver is advised to read all of the sections in the Owner's Manual about this function before using the function.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

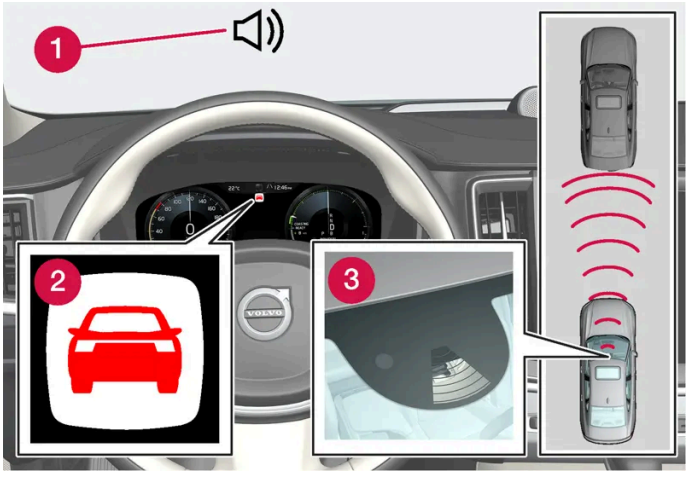
* Option/accessory.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

---

# 10.1.3.10. Collision risk warning from speed-controlling functions

The driver support systems Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* can help alert the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly decreases to an unsafe distance.




Collision warning audible signal and symbol

1 Audible signal at risk of collision

2 Collision warning symbol

3 Camera and radar unit distance monitoring

Adaptive Cruise Control and Pilot Assist use approx. 40% of the braking capacity. If a situation requires more braking force than driver support can provide, and if the driver does not apply the brakes, a warning light and audible warning signal will be activated to alert the driver that immediate action is required.

**Warning**

The driver support system only issues a warning for vehicles detected by its radar unit – thus, a warning may come after a delay or not at all. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when necessary.

Collision warning symbol on the windshield

In vehicles equipped with a head-up display*, a flashing warning symbol will be displayed on the windshield.

**Note**

Visual warnings on the windshield may be difficult to notice in cases of strong sunlight, reflections, extreme light contrasts, or if the driver is wearing sunglasses or is not looking straight ahead.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.4. Curve Speed Assist (CSA)

---

# 10.1.4.1. Curve Speed Assist (CSA)*

**Curve Speed Assist**[1] can help the driver reduce speed before sharp turns if the preset speed for the driver support function Adaptive Cruise Control* or Pilot Assist* is determined to be too high.

As the function reduces the vehicle's speed, this symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel.

This assessment is performed using information from map data in the vehicle's navigation system, Sensus Navigation*. After the turn, the vehicle will resume the previously set speed.

The driver can cancel the function at any time by braking or using the accelerator pedal.

> **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

### Drive modes

Cornering assistance varies depending on the selected drive mode. If drive mode cannot be selected, the function will use the **Comfort** option. In **Dynamic** mode, cornering will be sporty, with slightly more powerful acceleration coming out of curves.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function is only available on some markets.

---

# 10.1.4.2. Activating and deactivating Curve Speed Assist (CSA)*

The Curve Speed Assist (CSA) function can be activated as a supplement to Adaptive Cruise Control* or Pilot Assist*. The driver can also deactivate the function.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

The next time the engine is started, the last used setting is reactivated or the key's driver profile settings are followed[1].

* Option/accessory.

[1] These alternatives are market dependent.

---

# 10.1.4.3. Curve Speed Assist (CSA)* limitations

Curve Speed Assist (CSA)[1] functionality may be reduced in certain situations. The driver should be aware of the following limitations:

- Curve Speed Assist (CSA) may have limited performance on small roads and in densely populated areas.
- At off-ramps or intersections, Curve Speed Assist (CSA) may temporarily switch off.
- If the satellite navigator's[2] map data is not updated, Curve Speed Assist (CSA) may have limited functionality.
- Curve Speed Assist (CSA) functionality may be limited if the satellite navigator[2] has lost contact with the satellite system.
- On new or rebuilt roads, map data may be incorrect.
- The risk of reduced grip due to adverse weather or road conditions is not taken into account when calculating suitable cornering speed.

> **Note**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function is only available on some markets.

[2] Only with Volvo Sensus Navigation* installed.

---

# 10.1.5. Passing assistance

---

# 10.1.5.1. Passing assistance*

Passing assistance can assist the driver when passing other vehicles. The function can be used with Adaptive Cruise Control* or Pilot Assist*.

When Adaptive Cruise Control or Pilot Assist is following another vehicle and you indicate that you intend to pass that vehicle by using the turn signal[1], the system can assist by beginning to accelerate toward the vehicle ahead **before** your vehicle has moved into the passing lane.

The function will then delay a speed reduction to avoid early braking as your vehicle approaches a slower-moving vehicle.

The function remains active until your vehicle has passed the other vehicle.

> **Warning**
>
> Please note that this function can be activated in more situations than just passing another vehicle, such as when a direction indicator is used to indicate a lane change or before exiting to another road – the vehicle will then briefly accelerate.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only the left-hand turn signal for left-hand drive vehicles, or right-hand turn signal for right-hand drive vehicles.

---

# 10.1.5.2. Using passing assistance

Passing assistance can be used with Adaptive Cruise Control* or Pilot Assist*. Several conditions must be met for passing assistance to be possible.

In order to activate passing assistance:

- your vehicle must be following a vehicle ahead (target vehicle)
- your vehicle's **current speed** must be at least 70 km/h (43 mph)
- **the set speed** must be high enough to safely pass another vehicle.

To start passing assistance:

1. Turn on the left turn signal.

> Passing assistance begins accelerating and shortens the time interval to the vehicle ahead for a short period of time to facilitate passing. If the passing maneuver is not completed, the time interval will revert to the preset value.

**Warning**

The driver should be aware that if conditions suddenly change when using Passing Assistance, the function may implement an undesired acceleration in certain conditions.

Some situations should be avoided, e.g. if:

- the vehicle is approaching an exit in the same direction as passing would normally occur
- the vehicle ahead slows before your vehicle has had time to switch to the passing lane
- traffic in the passing lane slows down

Situations of this type can be avoided by temporarily putting Adaptive Cruise Control or Pilot Assist in standby mode.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.1.6. Cruise control functions

There are several driver support systems that can assist you while driving in order to maintain a suitable speed depending on situation. Here is a summary to make them more easily distinguishable.

We recommend that you read all of the sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to a function in order to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.

| | Cruise control[1] | Adaptive Cruise Control* [2] [3] | Pilot Assist* [3] |
|---|---|---|---|
| Symbol in the instrument panel | | | |
| Brief description | Cruise control can help the driver maintain an even speed to provide a more relaxing driving experience on e.g. highways and long, straight roads with even traffic flows. | Adaptive Cruise Control helps the driver maintain a constant speed with a set time interval to the vehicle ahead. | Pilot Assist can help the driver keep the vehicle in the current traffic lane by providing steering assistance and maintaining an even speed and a set time interval to the vehicle ahead. |

[1] Cruise Control

* Option/accessory.

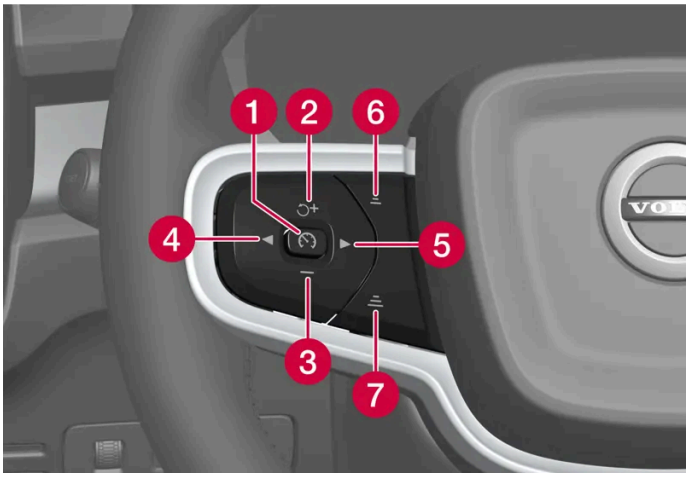
[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

[3] Depending on market, this function can be either standard or optional.

---

# 10.1.7. Steering wheel buttons for speed-controlling functions

The speed-controlling functions can be controlled using the left-side steering wheel keypad. This applies to cruise control (CC[1]), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC[2]) and Pilot Assist.




Buttons for speed-controlling functions

1. : **From standby mode** – Activates the selected function and sets the current speed. : **From active mode** – Puts the function in standby mode.
2. : **From standby mode** – Activates the selected function and resumes the stored speed. + : **From active mode** – Increases the stored speed.
3. −: Reduces the set speed.
4. ◀: Moves left to the next function.
5. ▶: Moves right to the next function.
6. : Reduces the time interval to the vehicle ahead.
7. : Increases the time interval to the vehicle ahead.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Cruise Control

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

# 10.1.8. Selecting and activating speed-controlling functions

The speed-controlling functions must first be selected in the center display before they can be activated using the button on the steering wheel. This applies to cruise control (CC[1]), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC[2]) and Pilot Assist.

1. Press the ◀ or ▶ button on the steering wheel keypad and scroll to the desired function.
   - Cruise control:
   - Adaptive Cruise Control:
   - Pilot Assist:

> The symbol in the instrument panel is gray – the function is selected.

2. When the function is selected, press on the steering wheel keypad to activate.

> The symbol in the instrument panel lights up – the function starts and the current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

3. If the function goes into standby mode – press the button on the steering wheel to reactivate.

> The speed-controlling markings in the instrument panel illuminate and the vehicle will then return to the most recently set speed.

## Requirements

Certain conditions must be met in order to start any of the functions.

**Cruise control**

- In order to start Cruise Control from standby mode, the vehicle's current speed must be 30 km/h (20 mph) or higher.

**Adaptive Cruise Control**

- The driver's seat belt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- There must be a vehicle ahead (target vehicle) within a reasonable distance or your vehicle's current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).

**Pilot Assist**

- The driver's seat belt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- The side markings of the lane must be clearly visible and detected by the vehicle.
- There must be a vehicle ahead (target vehicle) within a reasonable distance or your vehicle's current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- The speed must not exceed 140 km/h (87 mph).
- The driver must keep their hands on the steering wheel.

[1] Cruise Control

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

# 10.1.9. Deactivating speed-controlling functions

The speed-controlling functions can be deactivated using the button on the steering wheel. The relevant function will then go into standby mode. This applies to cruise control (CC[1]), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC[2]) and Pilot Assist.

1. Pressing the button on the steering wheel keypad.

> The symbol and the markings are extinguished – the selected speed-controlling functions are in standby mode.

When another function is selected using the buttons on the steering wheel, the instrument panel's symbol and marking for the previously selected function are hidden, and the set/stored maximum speed is deleted.

**Warning**

When speed-controlling functions are in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.

[1] Cruise Control

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

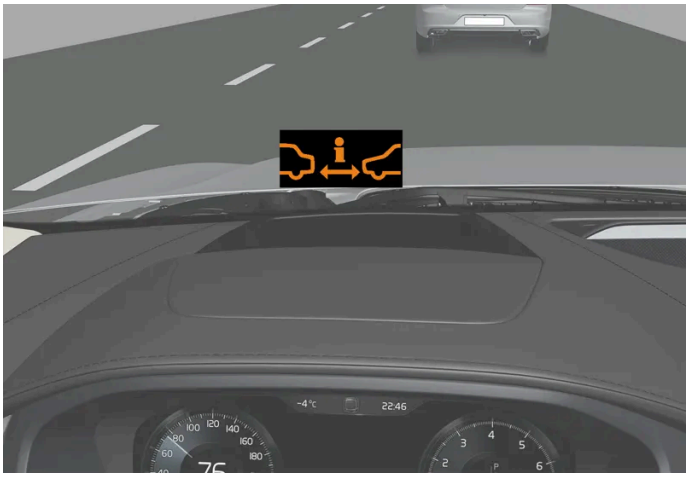
---

# 10.2. Distance Alert

---

# 10.2.1. Distance Alert*

The Distance Alert[1] function can help alert the driver that the time interval to the vehicle in front may be too short. The vehicle must be equipped with a head-up display* in order to display Distance Alert.



Symbol for Distance Alert on the windshield with head-up display

In vehicles equipped with a head-up display, a symbol will be displayed on the windshield as long as the time interval to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time interval. However, the **Show Driver Support** function must be activated under Settings in the vehicle's menu system.

Distance Alert is active at speeds above 30 km/h (20 mph) and only reacts for vehicles ahead moving in the same direction as your vehicle. No distance information is provided for oncoming, slow-moving or stationary vehicles.

**Note**

Visual warnings on the windshield may be difficult to notice in cases of strong sunlight, reflections, extreme light contrasts, or if the driver is wearing sunglasses or is not looking straight ahead.

**Note**

Distance Alert is deactivated while Adaptive Cruise Control* or Pilot Assist* is active.

**Warning**

Distance Alert only reacts of the time interval to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the preset value – vehicle speed is not affected.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Distance Alert

---

# 10.2.2. Activating and deactivating Distance Alert

Distance Alert[1] can be turned off. The function is only available in vehicles that can display information on the windshield with a head-up display*.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

Distance Alert is automatically activated each time the engine is started.

[1] Distance Alert

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.2.3. Distance Alert limitations

Distance Alert[1] functionality may be reduced in certain situations. The function is only available in vehicles that can display information on the windshield with a head-up display*.

**Warning**

- Detection ability may be affected by vehicle size, e.g. motorcycles, which can cause the warning light to come on at a shorter time interval than that set or cause the warning to be temporarily absent.
- Very high speeds can cause the light to come on at a shorter time interval than that set due to limitations in the range of the radar unit.

**Note**

The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

[1] Distance Alert

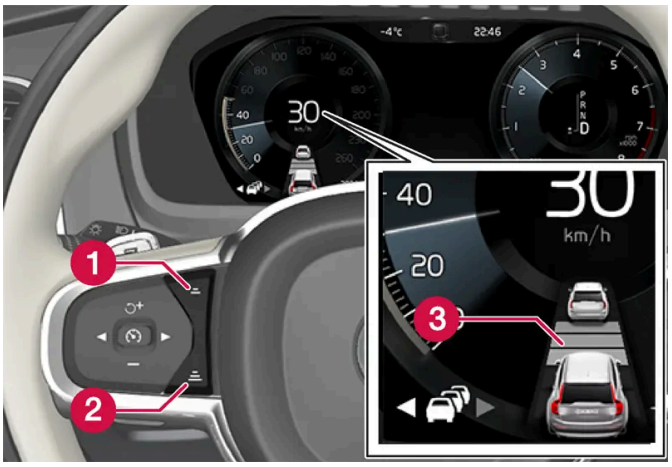
* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.2.4. Setting time interval to the vehicle ahead

The time interval to the vehicle ahead can be set for the functions Adaptive Cruise Control*, Pilot Assist* and Distance Alert*.

1.




Controls for setting a time interval.

1. Reduce the time interval
2. Increase the time interval
3. Distance indicator

Press the (1) or (2) button to decrease or increase the time interval.

> The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

Different time intervals to the vehicle ahead can be selected and are shown in the instrument panel as 1–5 horizontal bars. The more bars, the longer the time interval. One bar represents an interval of approx. 1 second to the vehicle ahead. 5 bars represents approx. 3 seconds.

In order to help your vehicle follow the vehicle ahead as smoothly and comfortably as possible, Adaptive Cruise Control allows the time interval to vary noticeably in certain situations. At low speeds, when the distance to the vehicle ahead is short, Adaptive Cruise Control increases the time interval slightly.

**Note**

When the symbol in the instrument panel shows a vehicle and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle ahead at a preset time interval.

When only a steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle ahead within a reasonable distance.

**Note**

When the symbol in the instrument panel shows two vehicles, Adaptive Cruise Control is following the vehicle ahead at a preset time interval.

When only one vehicle is shown, there is no vehicle ahead within a reasonable distance.

**Note**

- The greater the vehicles' speed, the greater the distance between them for a set time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If driver support does not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time interval to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time interval.

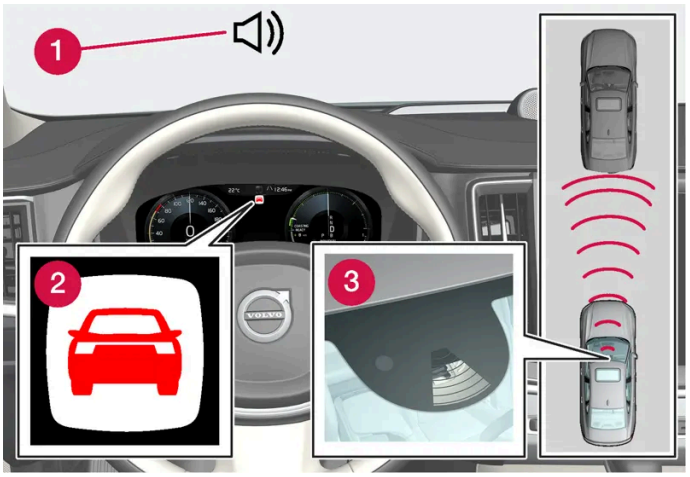
**Warning**

- Only use a time interval suitable for the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time intervals give them limited time to react and act to any unforeseen traffic situation.

* Option/accessory.

# 10.2.5. Collision risk warning from speed-controlling functions

The driver support systems Adaptive Cruise Control* and Pilot Assist* can help alert the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly decreases to an unsafe distance.




Collision warning audible signal and symbol

1. Audible signal at risk of collision
2. Collision warning symbol
3. Camera and radar unit distance monitoring

Adaptive Cruise Control and Pilot Assist use approx. 40% of the braking capacity. If a situation requires more braking force than driver support can provide, and if the driver does not apply the brakes, a warning light and audible warning signal will be activated to alert the driver that immediate action is required.

> **Warning**
>
> The driver support system only issues a warning for vehicles detected by its radar unit – thus, a warning may come after a delay or not at all. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when necessary.

Collision warning symbol on the windshield

In vehicles equipped with a head-up display*, a flashing warning symbol will be displayed on the windshield.

> **Note**
>
> Visual warnings on the windshield may be difficult to notice in cases of strong sunlight, reflections, extreme light contrasts, or if the driver is wearing sunglasses or is not looking straight ahead.

* Option/accessory.

# 10.3. Blind Spot Information

## 10.3.1. BLIS*

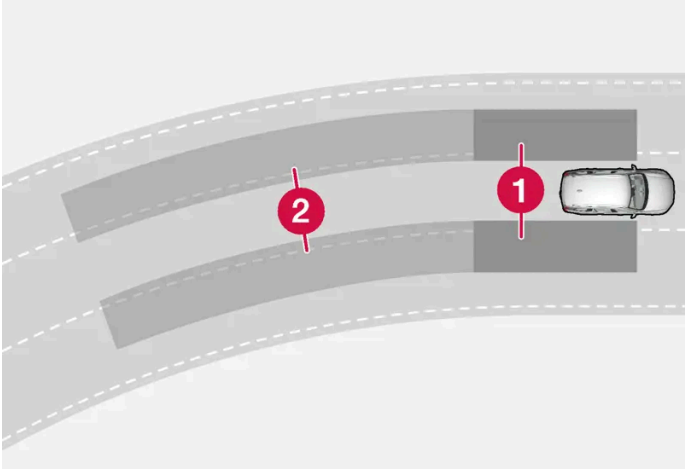
The BLIS[1] function is designed to help provide assistance in heavy traffic with several lanes moving in the same direction by helping the driver to detect the presence of vehicles in the "blind spot" area behind and to the side of the vehicle.

Location of BLIS indicator light

BLIS is a driver support system designed to alert the driver of:

- vehicles in your "blind spot"

- vehicles approaching rapidly in adjacent lanes.




BLIS overview

1 Blind spot zone

2 Rapidly approaching vehicle zone

The system is designed to react to:

- vehicles passing your vehicle
- another vehicle is rapidly approaching your vehicle.

When BLIS detects a vehicle in zone 1 or a rapidly approaching vehicle in zone 2, an indicator light will illuminate in the right or left rearview mirror and glow steadily. If the driver then uses the turn signal on the side in which the warning has been given, the indicator light will become brighter and begin flashing.

BLIS is active when your vehicle is traveling at a speed over 12 km/h (7 mph).

If a passing vehicle's speed is more than 15 km/h (9 mph) faster than your vehicle, BLIS will not react.

**Note**

The light illuminates on the side of the vehicle where the system has detected the vehicle. If the vehicle is passed on both sides simultaneously, both lights come on.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

[1] Blind Spot Information

---

# 10.3.2. Activating and deactivating BLIS

The BLIS[1] function can be activated or deactivated.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

If BLIS is activated when the engine is started, the indicator lights in the rearview mirrors will flash once.

If BLIS is deactivated when the engine is turned off, it will remain off the next time the engine is started and the indicator lights will not illuminate.

[1] Blind Spot Information

---

# 10.3.3. BLIS messages

A number of messages related to BLIS[1] may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Blind spot sensor Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[2]. |
| Blind spot system off Trailer attached | BLIS and CTA [3] have been deactivated because a trailer has been connected to the vehicle's electrical system. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Blind Spot Information

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[3] Cross Traffic Alert*

# 10.3.4. BLIS limitations

BLIS[1] functionality may be reduced in certain situations.

Keep the marked area clean (on both the left and right sides of the vehicle)[2].

Examples of limitations:

- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce functionality and prevent the system from providing warnings.
- The BLIS function is automatically deactivated if a trailer, bicycle holder or similar is connected to the vehicle's electrical system.
- For BLIS to function effectively, bicycle holders, luggage racks or similar should not be mounted on the vehicle's towbar.

**Warning**

- BLIS does not work in sharp curves.
- BLIS does not work when the vehicle is being reversed.

**Note**

The function uses the vehicle's radar sensors, which have certain general limitations.

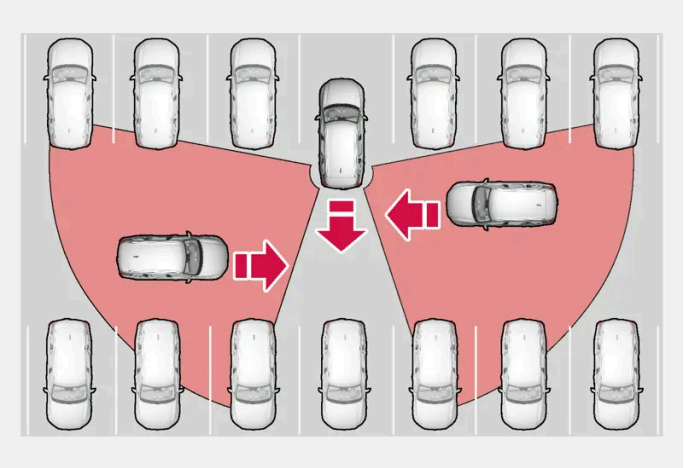
[1] Blind Spot Information

[2] Note: This illustration is general and details may vary depending on model.

# 10.4. Cross Traffic Alert

# 10.4.1. Cross Traffic Alert*

Cross Traffic Alert(CTA) is a supplementary driver support system to BLIS[1] that is intended to help the driver detect vehicles crossing behind the vehicle while backing up.
The **auto-brake** subfunction can help the driver stop the car if there is a risk of collision with an unobserved vehicle.



Examples of areas in which Cross Traffic Alert can help the driver detect obstacles while backing up.

The function is primarily designed to detect vehicles, but in certain cases can also detect pedestrians or smaller objects such as bicycles.

The function is only active when the vehicle is moving backward or reverse gear is engaged.

If the function detects that something is approaching your vehicle from the side:

- an audible signal will sound from either the left or right speaker, depending on which side of your vehicle the object is approaching from.
- an icon will illuminate in the **Park Assist System** graphic on the screen.
- an icon will appear in the Park Assist Camera's Top view.

Illuminated Cross Traffic Alert icon in the **Park Assist System** graphic on the screen.

If the driver does not pay attention to the warning from the function and a collision is unavoidable, the **auto brake** function will intervene to stop the vehicle and a text will be shown on the instrument panel to explain why the vehicle was braked.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

---

# 10.4.2. Activating and deactivating Cross Traffic Alert*

The driver can choose to deactivate the Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) function.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

The function is automatically activated each time the engine is started.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.4.3. Cross Traffic Alert* messages

A number of messages related to Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Blind spot sensor<br>Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[1]. |
| Blind spot system off<br>Trailer attached | BLIS[2] and CTA have been deactivated because a trailer has been connected to the vehicle's electrical system. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[2] Blind Spot Information System

---

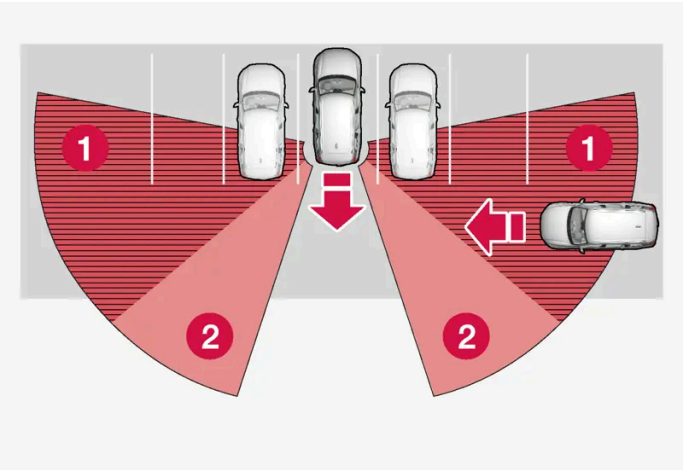
# 10.4.4. Cross Traffic Alert* limitations

The Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) function with **auto brake** may have limited functionality in certain situations. Auto-brake is active at speeds under 15 km/h (9.3 mph).

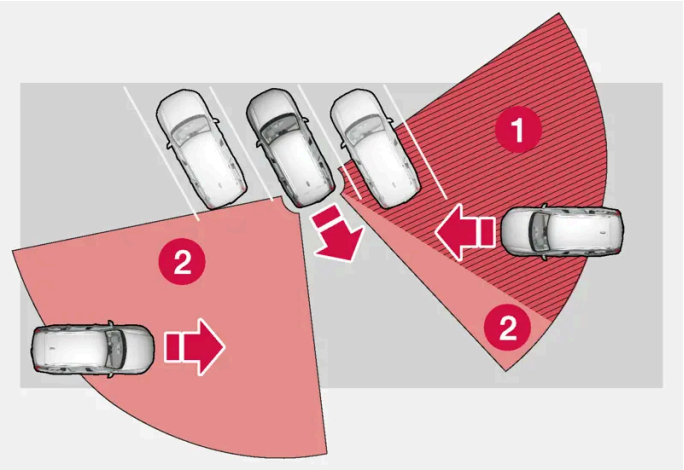
> **Warning**
>
> The **auto-brake** sub-function can only detect and apply the brakes for other moving vehicles – **not** for e.g. stationary obstacles, cyclists or pedestrians.

The function has certain limitations – the sensors, for example, cannot "see" through other parked vehicles or objects blocking the vehicle.

Below are a few examples of situations in which the function's field of vision may be initially limited and approaching vehicles may therefore not be detected until they are very close to your vehicle:



The vehicle is parked very far into a parking space.




In a diagonal parking space, Cross Traffic Alert may be completely "blind" on one side of your vehicle.

1 Blind zone.

2 The function's field of vision.

However, as you back your vehicle slowly out of a parking space, CTA's field of vision changes in relation to the obstructing vehicle/object and its blind zone is reduced.

**Examples of further limitations**

- The **auto brake** sub-function only detects vehicles in motion and may therefore **not** "see" and brake for e.g. stationary obstacles, a cyclists or a pedestrian.
- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce functionality and prevent the system from providing warnings.
- CTA is automatically deactivated if a trailer, bicycle holder or similar is connected to the vehicle's electrical system.
- For CTA to function effectively, bicycle holders, luggage racks or similar should not be mounted on the vehicle's towbar.

> **Note**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's radar sensors, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

# 10.5. Rear Collision Warning

# 10.5.1. Rear Collision Warning*

The Rear Collision Warning[1] (RCW) function can help the driver avoid rear-end collisions from vehicles approaching from behind.

The function can alert drivers of following vehicles of the risk of a collision by rapidly flashing the turn signals.

If, at a speed below 30 km/h (20 mph), the function detects that the vehicle is in danger of being hit from behind, the seat belt tensioners may tension the front seat belts. The Whiplash Protection System will also be activated in a collision.

Immediately before a collision from behind, the function may also activate the brakes in order to reduce the forward acceleration of the vehicle during the collision. However, the brakes will only be applied if your vehicle is stationary. The brakes will be immediately released if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

The function is automatically activated each time the engine is started.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function is not available on all markets.

---

# 10.5.2. Rear Collision Warning* limitations

In some situations, it may be difficult for Rear Collision Warning (RCW)[1] to warn the driver of a collision risk.

This may be the case if:

- the vehicle approaching from the rear is detected at a late stage
- the vehicle approaching from the rear changes lanes at a late stage
- a trailer, bicycle holder or similar is connected to the vehicle's electrical system - the function will then be automatically deactivated.

**Note**

In certain markets RCW does **not** warn with the direction indicators due to local traffic regulations – in such cases, that part of the function is deactivated.

> **Note**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's radar sensors, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Warning of collision from the rear.

---

# 10.6. Connected Safety

---

# 10.6.1. Connected Safety

Connected Safety[1] communicates information between your vehicle and other vehicles via the Internet[2]. The function is designed to notify the driver of any hazardous road conditions ahead.

The function can notify the driver if another vehicle further down the road has activated its hazard warning flashers or detected slippery road conditions. You will also be notified if your own vehicle detects slippery road conditions.

Connected Safety can assist the driver with the following:

- Hazard warning flashers alert
- Slippery road alerts

Connected Safety communication between vehicles only works for vehicles that are equipped with the function and have it activated.

## Hazard warning flashers alert

If your vehicle's hazard warning flashers are activated, information on this can be sent to other vehicles approaching your location.

When your vehicle approaches a vehicle with its hazard warning flashers on, this symbol will appear in the instrument panel.

In vehicles equipped with a head-up display, the warning symbols for Connected Safety will also be displayed there.

## Slippery road alerts

If your own car detects reduced friction between your tires and the road, information on this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

As the vehicle approaches the area affected, this symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel to alert the driver of slippery road conditions. Drivers of other vehicles receiving information via Connected Safety will receive similar notifications as they approach the area.

In vehicles equipped with a head-up display, the warning symbols for Connected Safety will also be displayed there.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Not available in all markets.

[2] There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

---

# 10.6.2. Activating and deactivating Connected Safety

For Connected Safety to be able to share information about road conditions with other drivers, the function must be activated. If you do not wish to share information, the function can be deactivated.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

At activation, the driver must accept the special terms and conditions shown in the display before an Internet connection[1] can be established. The driver must, for example, accept that data is sent from the vehicle using the driver's cellular phone.

Even when your vehicle is not connected to the Internet, you will still be notified if the system in your own vehicle detects slippery road conditions. For Connected Safety to function at full capacity, your vehicle needs to be connected to the Internet.

[1] There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

---

# 10.6.3. Connected Safety limitations

Information on vehicles with activated hazard warning flashers or which have detected slippery road conditions is not always communicated between all vehicles in the affected area.

This may be the case if:

- No or insufficient Internet connection.
- The maneuvers (steering wheel movements, acceleration or braking) made by the vehicles on slippery surfaces are too weak for friction between the tires and road to be detected.
- Vehicles that have detected slippery road conditions or activated hazard warning flashers have not activated the function.
- Vehicles that have detected slippery road conditions or activated hazard warning flashers are not equipped with the function.
- Insufficient GPS/satellite navigation may prevent warnings.
- Slippery road conditions were detected or hazard warning flashers were activated on a road that is not registered in the Volvo Cars database.
- Connected Safety is not developed on all markets and does not cover all areas. Consult a Volvo retailer for more information on covered areas.

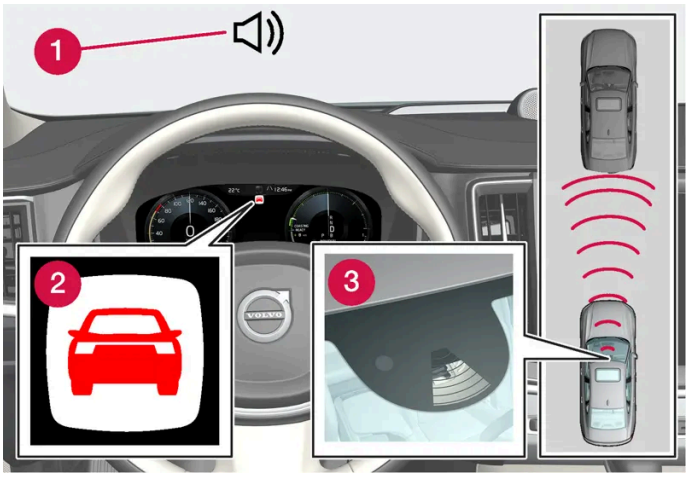
**Warning**

- In certain situations, the function may give false warnings of slippery road conditions.
- The function cannot always detect other vehicles with activated hazard warning factors or detect all stretches of road with slippery conditions.

# 10.7. City Safety

# 10.7.1. City Safety™

City Safety[1] can alert the driver with light, sound and pulsations in the brake pedal to help the driver detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals and vehicles.




Function overview

1 Audible signal at risk of collision

2 Collision warning symbol

3 Camera/radar sensor distance monitoring

The function can help the driver avoid a collision in e.g. stop-and-go traffic, when changes in the traffic ahead and driver distraction could lead to an incident. City Safety activates a brief, forceful braking in an attempt to stop your vehicle immediately behind the vehicle or object ahead.

The function assists the driver by automatically applying the brakes if there is an imminent risk of a collision and the driver does not react in time by braking and/or steering away.

City Safety is activated in situations in which the driver should have applied the brakes much earlier, which means that the system will not be able to assist the driver in all situations. The function is designed to be activated as late as possible to help avoid unnecessary intervention. Automatic braking will only be applied after or during a collision warning.

Normally, the occupants of the vehicle will not be aware of City Safety except when the system intervenes when a collision is imminent.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] This function is not available on all markets.

# 10.7.2. City Safety sub-functions

City Safety[1] can help prevent a collision or lower the vehicle's speed at the point of impact. The function consists of several subfunctions.

## Ability to reduce speed

If the difference in speed between your vehicle and the obstacle is greater than the speeds specified below, the City Safety auto-brake function cannot prevent a collision, but it can help mitigate its effects.

#### Vehicles

City Safety can help prevent a collision with a vehicle ahead by reducing your vehicle's speed by up to 60 km/h (37 mph).

#### Cyclists

City Safety can help prevent a collision with a cyclist ahead by reducing your vehicle's speed by up to 50 km/h (30 mph).

#### Pedestrians

City Safety can help prevent a collision with a pedestrian ahead by reducing your vehicle's speed by up to 45 km/h (28 mph).

#### Large animals

If there is a risk of colliding with a large animal, City Safety can help reduce your vehicle's speed by up to 15 km/h (9 mph).

The braking function for large animals is primarily intended to mitigate the force of a collision at higher speeds. Braking is most effective at speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph) and less effective at lower speeds.

## City Safety steps

City Safety carries out three steps in the following order:

1. Collision warning
2. Brake assistance
3. Auto-brake

#### 1 - Collision warning

The driver is first alerted to the risk of an imminent collision.

In vehicles equipped with a head-up display*, a flashing warning symbol will be displayed on the windshield.

Collision warning symbol on the windshield

> **Note**
>
> Visual warnings on the windshield may be difficult to notice in cases of strong sunlight, reflections, extreme light contrasts, or if the driver is wearing sunglasses or is not looking straight ahead.

City Safety can detect pedestrians, cyclists or vehicles that are stationary, are moving in the same direction as your vehicle and are ahead of your vehicle. City Safety can also detect pedestrians, cyclists or large animals that are crossing the road in front of your vehicle.

If there is a risk of a collision with a pedestrian, large animal, cyclist or another vehicle, the driver will be alerted with light, sound and pulsations in the brake pedal. At lower speeds, during hard braking or if the accelerator pedal is pressed, the brake pedal pulsation warning will not be given. The intensity of the brake pedal pulsations varies according to the vehicle's speed.

#### 2 - Brake assistance

If the risk of a collision increases after the collision warning, brake support will be activated.

If the system determines that the pressure the driver is exerting on the brake pedal is insufficient to prevent the collision, brake support will increase pressure.

#### 3 - Auto-brake

The automatic braking function is activated at the last moment.

If the driver has not taken evasive action by this stage and a collision is imminent, the automatic braking function will be triggered. This occurs whether or not the driver is pressing the brake pedal. Full braking force will be applied to reduce the speed at impact or reduced braking effect will be applied if this is sufficient to avoid the collision.

The seat belt tensioner may be activated when the automatic braking function is triggered.

In certain situations, auto-braking may begin with a limited braking force before applying full braking force.

If City Safety has prevented a collision, the vehicle will be kept at a standstill until the driver takes action. If the vehicle has slowed to avoid colliding with a slower-moving vehicle ahead, your speed will be reduced to that vehicle's speed.

Auto-braking can always be cancelled if the driver presses hard on the accelerator pedal.

**Note**

When City Safety activates the brakes, the brake lights come on.

When City Safety applies the brakes, a text message will appear in the instrument panel to notify the driver that the function is/was activated.

**Warning**

City Safety may not be used to change how the driver operates the vehicle. The driver must not only rely on City Safety to brake the vehicle.

[1] This function is not available on all markets.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.7.3. Setting a warning distance for City Safety

City Safety[1] is always active, but the function's warning distance can be adjusted.

**Note**

The City Safety function cannot be deactivated. It is activated automatically each time the engine/electric motor is started.

The alert distance determines the sensitivity of the system and regulates the distance at which the light, sound and brake pulsations will be activated.

To select warning distance:

1. Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** in the center display's Top view.
2. Under **City Safety Warning**, tap **Late**, **Normal** or **Early** to set the desired warning distance.

If the driver feels that the **Early** setting is giving too many warnings or finds them irritating, the **Normal** or **Late** warning distance settings can be selected instead.

If the driver feels that the warnings are too frequent and distracting, the warning distance can be reduced. This will reduce the total number of warnings, but it will also result in City Safety providing warnings at a later stage.

The **Late** warning distance setting should therefore only be used in exceptional cases, such as when a more dynamic driving style is preferred.

**Warning**

- No automatic system can guarantee 100% correct function in all situations. You should therefore never test use of City Safety in the direction of people, animals or vehicles – this could lead to severe damage, serious personal injury or even death.
- City Safety warns the driver if there is a risk of collision, but the function cannot reduce the driver's reaction time.
- Even if the warning distance has been set to **Early**, warnings may be perceived as late in certain situations – e.g. when there are large speed differences or if the vehicle ahead suddenly brakes heavily.
- With the warning distance set to **Early**, warnings come further in advance. This may cause the warnings to come more frequently than with warning distance **Normal**, but is recommended since it can make City Safety more effective.

[1] This function is not available on all markets.

---

# 10.7.4. City Safety messages

A number of messages related to City Safety may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| City Safety<br>Automatic intervention | When City Safety is braking or has activated the automatic braking function, one or more symbols may illuminate in the instrument panel and a text message may be displayed. |
| City Safety<br>Reduced functionality Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[1]. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If a message cannot be erased, contact a workshop[1].

[1] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 10.7.5. City Safety limitations

City Safety[1] functionality may be reduced in certain situations.

## Surroundings

**Low objects**

Hanging objects, such as flags for overhanging loads or accessories such as auxiliary lights or front protective grids that extend beyond the height of the hood, may limit City Safety functionality.

#### Slippery road conditions

The extended braking distance on slippery roads may reduce City Safety's capacity to help avoid a collision. In these types of situations, the Anti-lock Braking System and Electronic Stability Control (ESC[2]) are designed for optimal braking power with maintained stability.

#### Backlighting

The visual warning signal in the windshield may be difficult to detect in bright sunlight, if there are reflections, or if the driver is wearing sunglasses or not looking straight ahead.

#### Heat

If the temperature in the passenger compartment is high due to e.g. bright sunlight, the visual warning signal in the windshield may be temporarily disabled.

#### Camera and radar sensor's field of vision

The camera's field of vision is limited and in certain situations, it may be unable to detect pedestrians, large animals, cyclists or vehicles, or it may detect them later than expected.

Vehicles that are dirty may be detected later than clean vehicles, and in dark conditions, motorcycles may be detected late or not at all.

If a text message displayed in the instrument panel indicates that the camera or radar sensor is obstructed, it may be difficult for City Safety to detect pedestrians, large animals, cyclists, vehicles or lane markings in front of the vehicle. City Safety functionality may therefore be reduced.

Text messages may not be displayed for all situations in which the windshield sensors are blocked. The driver must therefore always keep the windshield in front of the camera/radar sensor clean.

> **Important**
>
> Only a workshop may perform maintenance on driver support components – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

## Driver intervention

#### Backing up

City Safety is temporarily deactivated when the vehicle is backing up.

#### Low speed

City Safety is not activated at very low speeds under 4 km/h (3 mph). The system will therefore not intervene in situations in which your vehicle is approaching another vehicle very slowly, such as when parking.

#### Active driver

Action by the driver always has priority. City Safety will therefore not react or will react at a later stage with a warning or intervention in situations in which the driver is clearly steering and operating the accelerator pedal, even if a collision is unavoidable.

An active and aware driving style may therefore delay collision warnings and intervention in order to minimize unnecessary warnings.

## Important warnings

**Warning**

The driver support system only issues a warning for obstacles detected by its radar sensor – thus, a warning may come after a delay or not at all.

- Never wait for a warning or assistance. Apply the brakes when necessary.

**Warning**

- Warnings and brake interventions can be triggered late or not at all if the traffic situation or external influences prevent the camera and radar unit from properly detecting pedestrians, cyclists, large animals or vehicles ahead of the vehicle.
- To be able to detect vehicles at night, its front and rear lights must work and illuminate clearly.
- The camera and radar unit have a limited range for pedestrians and cyclists – the system can provide effective warnings and brake interventions if the relative speed is lower than 50 km/h (30 mph). For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds of up to 70 km/h (43 mph). Speed reduction for large animals is less than 15 km/h (9 mph) and can be achieved at vehicle speeds over 70 km/h (43 mph). At lower speeds, the warning and brake intervention for large animals is less effective.
- Warnings for stationary or slow-moving vehicles and large animals can be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.
- Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are disengaged at vehicle speeds over 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not place, affix or mount anything on the inside or outside of the windshield, or in front of or around the camera and radar unit – this could disrupt camera-based functions.
- Objects, snow, ice or dirt in the area of the camera sensor can reduce the function, disengage it completely or give an improper function response.

**Warning**

- The City Safety auto-brake function can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed, but to ensure full brake performance the driver should always depress the brake pedal – even when the car auto-brakes.
- The warning and steering assistance are only activated if there is a high risk of collision – you must therefore never wait for the collision warning or City Safety to intervene.
- Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are disengaged at vehicle speeds over 80 km/h (50 mph).
- City Safety does not activate auto-braking intervention during heavy acceleration.

> **Note**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

### Market limitations

City Safety is not available in all countries. If City Safety is not shown in the center display's **Settings** menu, your vehicle is not equipped with this function.

In the center display's Top view, tap:

- **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe**

[1] This function is not available on all markets.

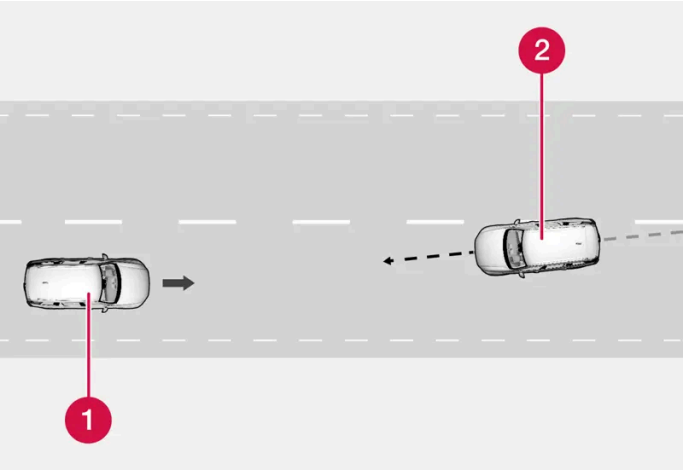
[2] Electronic Stability Control

---

# 10.7.6. City Safety braking for oncoming vehicles

City Safety can help you apply the brakes for an oncoming vehicle in your lane.

If an oncoming vehicle veers into your lane and a collision is unavoidable, City Safety can help reduce your vehicle's speed to attempt to mitigate the force of the collision.




1 Own vehicle
2 Oncoming vehicles

The following criteria must be met for the function to work:

- your vehicle's speed must be above 4 km/h (3 mph)
- the road must be straight
- your lane must have clear side lane markings
- your vehicle must be positioned straight in your lane

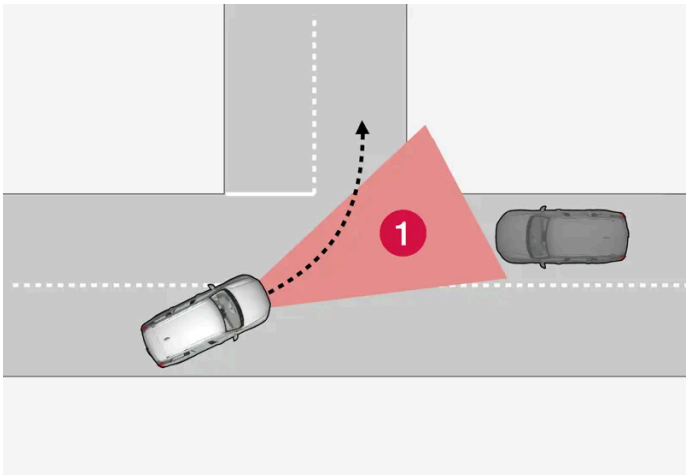
- the oncoming vehicle must be positioned within your vehicle's lane markings
- the oncoming vehicle's headlights must be on
- the function can only handle “front-to-front” collisions
- the function can only detect vehicles with four wheels.

> **Warning**
>
> Warnings and brake interventions due to an imminent collision with an oncoming vehicle always come very late.

---

# 10.7.7. City Safety in crossing traffic

City Safety[1] can assist the driver when turning into the path of an oncoming vehicle in an intersection.




1 Sector in which City Safety can detect an oncoming vehicle in crossing traffic.

In order for City Safety to detect an oncoming vehicle in situations where there is a risk of a collision, that vehicle must be within the sector in which City Safety can analyze the situation.

The following conditions must also be met:

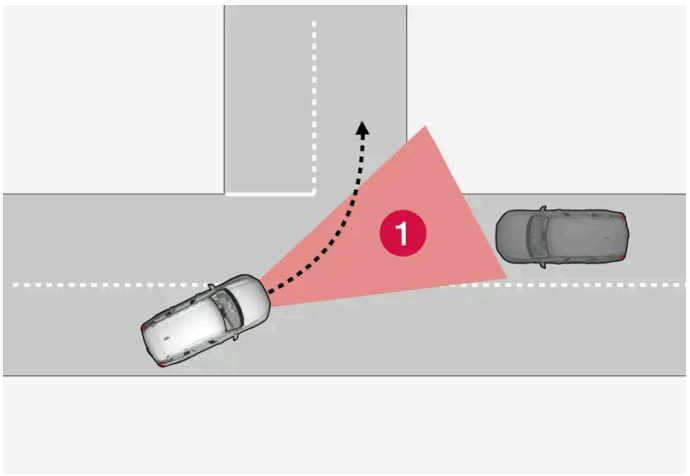
- your vehicle's speed must be at least 4 km/h (3 mph).
- your vehicle must be making a left turn.
- the oncoming vehicle's headlights must be on.

[1] This function is not available on all markets.

---

# 10.7.8. Limitations of City Safety in crossing traffic

In certain situations, it may be difficult for City Safety to help the driver avoid a collision with crossing traffic.




For example:

- If the road is slippery and Electronic Stability Control[1] is intervening.
- If an approaching vehicle is detected at a late stage.
- If the oncoming vehicle is partially obstructed by another vehicle or object.
- If the oncoming vehicle's headlights are off.
- If the oncoming vehicle is moving erratically and e.g. suddenly changes lanes at a late stage.

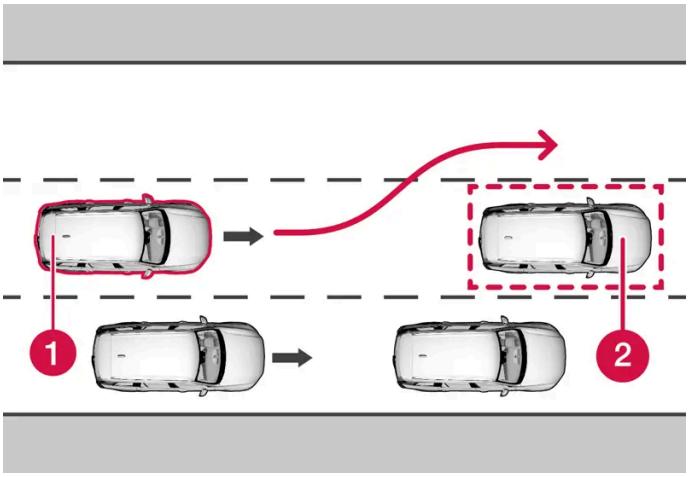
> **Note**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

[1] Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

---

# 10.7.9. City Safety steering assistance for evasive maneuver

City Safety steering assistance can help the driver steer away from a vehicle/obstacle when it is not possible to avoid a collision by braking alone. City Safety steering assistance is always activated and cannot be switched off.




1 Your vehicle swerves away

2 Slow-moving/stationary vehicle or obstacle.

City Safety helps provide assistance by strengthening the driver's steering movements, but only if the driver has begun evasive action and the system detects that the driver's steering movements are not sufficient to avoid a collision.

The brake system is used simultaneously to further strengthen steering movements. The function also helps stabilize the vehicle after it has passed the obstacle.

City Safety steering assistance can detect:

- vehicles
- cyclists
- pedestrians
- large animals

---

# 10.7.10. City Safety steering assistance limitations during evasive maneuvers

City Safety steering assistance may have limited functionality in certain situations and not intervene, e.g.:

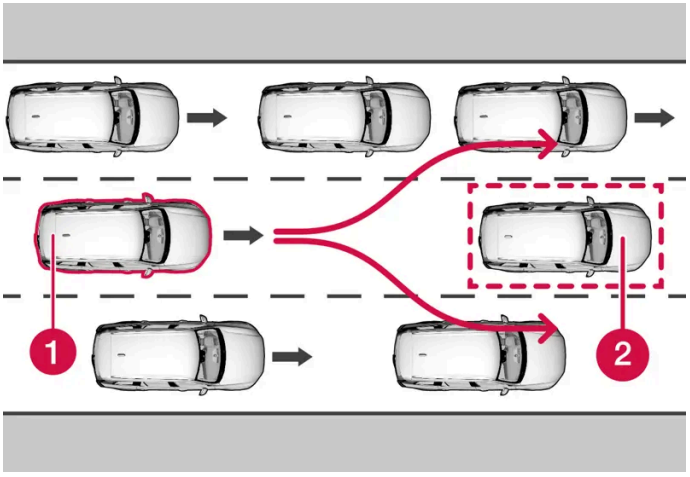
- at speeds outside the range of 50-100 km/h (30-62 mph)
- if the driver does not take evasive action
- if speed-dependent power steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

> **Note**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

# 10.7.11. Automatic braking during delayed evasive maneuvers with City Safety

City Safety[1] can assist the driver by automatically braking the vehicle when it is not possible to avoid a collision by steering alone.

City Safety assists the driver by periodically attempting to predict possible "escape routes" to the sides of the vehicle in the event a slow-moving or stationary vehicle were to be detected at a late stage.




Your vehicle (1) cannot detect any potential escape routes for veering away from the vehicle ahead (2) and may therefore apply the brakes at an earlier stage.

1. Own vehicle
2. Slow-moving/stationary vehicles

City Safety will not intervene to automatically apply the brakes if it is possible for the driver to avoid a collision by steering the vehicle.

However, if City Safety determines that an evasive maneuver would not be possible due to traffic in the adjacent lane(s), the function can assist the driver by automatically starting to apply the brakes at an earlier stage.

[1] This function is not available on all markets.

# 10.7.12. Detecting obstacles with City Safety

City Safety[1] can help the driver detect other vehicles, cyclists, large animals and pedestrians.

## Vehicles

City Safety can detect most vehicles that are stationary or are moving in the same direction as your vehicle. In some cases, it can also detect oncoming vehicles and crossing traffic.

For City Safety to be able to detect a vehicle in the dark, its headlights and taillights must be on and clearly visible.

## Cyclists

Examples of what City Safety would interpret to be a cyclist: clear body and bicycle shapes.

For good performance, the system's function for cyclist detection needs the clearest possible information about the contours of the bicycle and of the cyclist's head, arm, shoulders, legs, torso and lower body in combination with normal human movements.

If large portions of the cyclist's body or the bicycle itself are not visible to the function's camera, it will not be able to detect a cyclist.

The system can only detect adult cyclists riding on bicycles intended for adults.

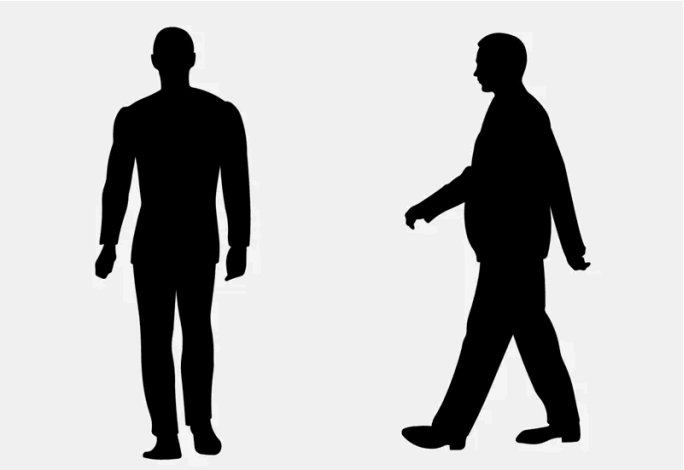
**Warning**

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all cyclists in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured cyclists.
- cyclists if the contrast to the cyclist's background is poor.
- cyclists in clothing that hides their body contour.
- bikes loaded with large objects.

Warnings and brake interventions may occur late or not at all. The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance suitable for the speed.

## Pedestrians



Examples of what the system considers to be a pedestrian: clear body contours.

For good performance, the system's function for pedestrian detection needs the clearest possible information about the contours of the pedestrian's head, arm, shoulders, legs, torso and lower body in combination with normal human movements.

In order to detect a pedestrian, there must be a contrast to the background, which could depend on clothing, weather conditions, etc. If there is little contrast, the person may be detected late or not at all, which may result in a delayed reaction from the system or no reaction at all.

City Safety can detect pedestrians even in dark conditions if they are illuminated by the vehicle's headlights.

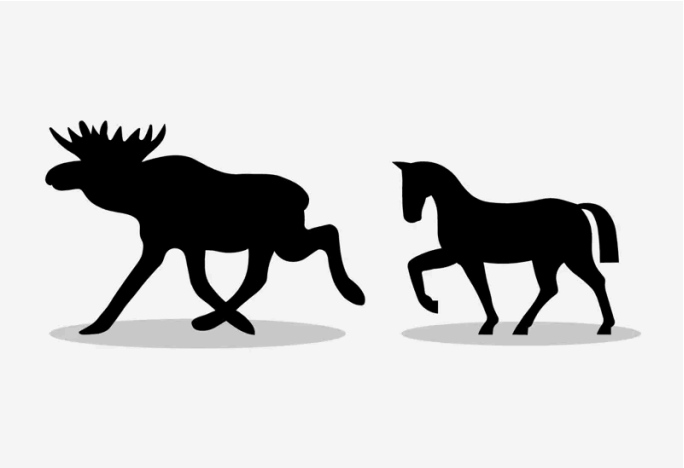
**Warning**

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides their body contour or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm (32 in.).
- pedestrians if the contrast to the pedestrian's background is poor.
- pedestrians who are carrying large objects.

Warnings and brake interventions may occur late or not at all. The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance suitable for the speed.

### Large animals



Examples of what City Safety would interpret as a large animal: stationary or moving slowly and with clear body contours.

For good performance, the system's function for detecting large animals (e.g. moose, horses, etc.) needs the clearest possible information about body contours. This entails being able to detect the animal straight from the side in combination with normal movements for that animal.

If parts of the animal's body are not visible to the function's camera, the system will not be able to detect the animal.

City Safety can detect large animals even in dark conditions if they are illuminated by the vehicle's headlights.

**Warning**

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all large animals in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured larger animals.
- larger animals seen from the front or from behind.
- running or fast moving larger animals.
- larger animals if the contrast to the animal's background is poor.
- smaller animals such as cats and dogs.

Warnings and brake interventions may occur late or not at all. The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance suitable for the speed.

[1] This function is not available on all markets.

---

# 10.8. Steering assistance during collision risks

---

# 10.8.1. Steering assistance at risk of collision

The **Collision avoidance** function can help the driver reduce the risk of the vehicle leaving its lane unintentionally and/or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle by actively steering the vehicle back into its lane and/or swerving.

The function consists of these subfunctions:

- Run-Off Mitigation with steering assistance
- Steering assistance during collision risks from oncoming traffic
- Steering assistance during collision risks from behind*

After the system has automatically intervened, this text message will appear in the instrument panel:

**Collision avoidance – Automatic intervention**

> **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

> **Note**
>
> It is always the driver who must decide how much the vehicle should be in control – the vehicle can never take command.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.8.2. Activating or deactivating steering assistance during collision risks

The steering assistance function is optional – the driver can choose to have it activated or deactivated.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- Illuminated button indicator light – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indicator light – the function is deactivated.

The function is automatically activated each time the engine is started[1].

> **Note**
>
> When the **Collision avoidance** function is deactivated, all subfunctions of the following are deactivated:
>
> - Steering assistance at risk of run-off
> - Steering assistance at risk of head-on collision
> - Steering assistance during collision risks from behind*
>
> Although it is possible to deactivate the function, the driver is advised to keep it activated since it can help improve driving safety in most cases.

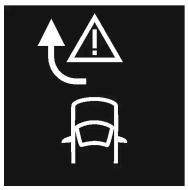
[1] On some markets, the setting that was active when the engine was switched off is reactivated.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.8.3. Symbols and messages for steering assistance during collision risks

A number of symbols and messages related to steering assistance may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
|  | Collision avoidance<br>Automatic intervention | When the function is activated, a message will appear to alert the driver. |
| | Windscreen sensor<br>Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual | The camera's ability to detect the lane in front of the vehicle is reduced. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists: Contact a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 10.8.4. Steering assistance during collision risks limitations

The function may have limited functionality in certain situations and not intervene, e.g.:

- for smaller vehicles such as motorcycles
- if more than half of your vehicle has moved into the adjacent lane
- on roads/lanes with indistinct or no side lane markings
- outside the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph)
- when speed-dependent power steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

Functionality may also be reduced in other situations, such as:

- road work
- winter driving conditions
- narrow roads
- poor road surfaces
- a very sporty driving style
- bad weather with reduced visibility.

In these demanding driving conditions, the function may not be able to properly assist the driver. In these situations, it is recommended that it is turned off.

> **Warning**
>
> Warnings and steering assistance due to an imminent collision with an oncoming vehicle always come very late.

> **Note**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

---

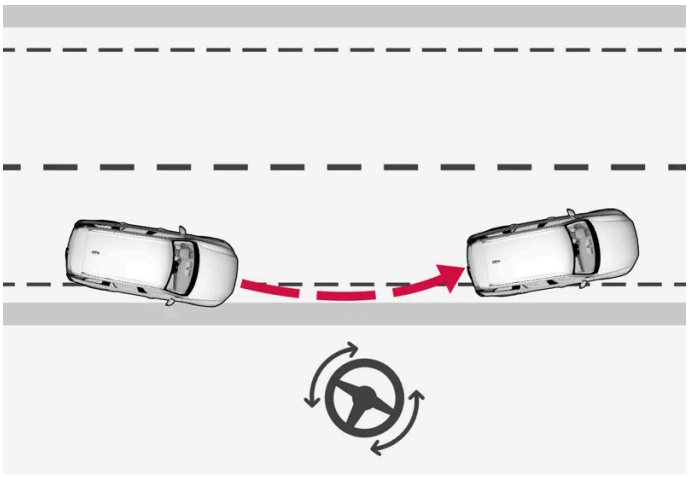
# 10.8.5. Run-Off Mitigation with steering assistance

Steering assistance has several sub-functions. Run-Off Mitigation with steering assistance can help the driver and reduce the risk of the vehicle inadvertently running off the road by actively steering the vehicle back onto the road.

This function has two activation levels for intervention:

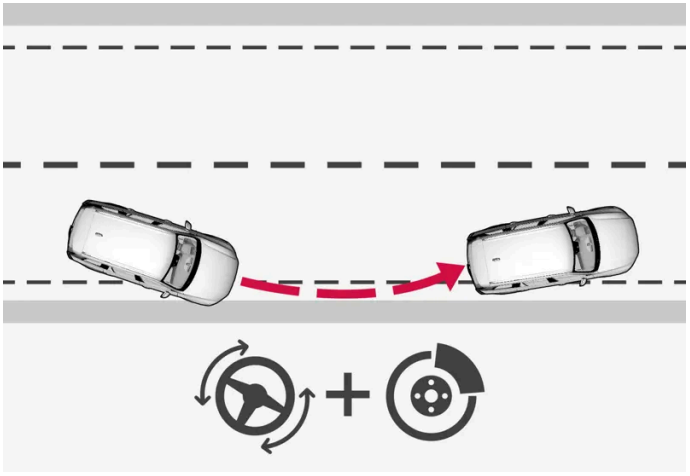
- Steering assistance only
- Steering assistance with braking

**Steering assistance only**



Intervention with steering assistance

**Steering assistance with braking**



Intervention with steering assistance and braking

Braking intervention assists in situations where steering assistance alone is not sufficient. Braking force is automatically adapted according to the situation at the moment the vehicle begins to run off the road.

The function is active at speeds between 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible traffic lane markings/lines.

The system uses a camera to monitor the edges of the road and the painted side marker lines. If the vehicle is about to cross the edge of the road, the function will attempt to steer the vehicle back onto the road. If this is not sufficient to keep the vehicle on the road, the brakes will also be applied.

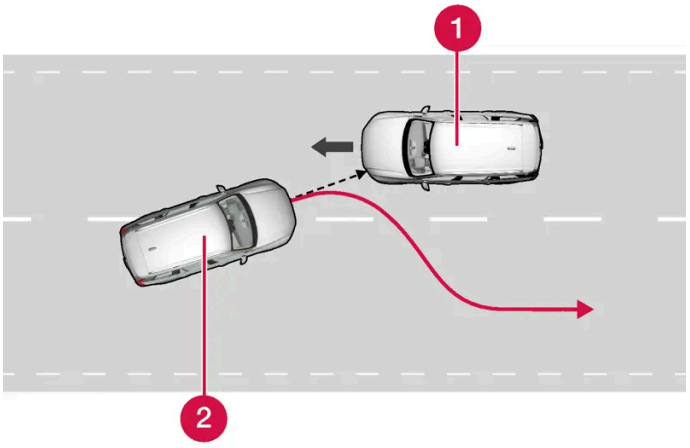
However, the function will **not** provide either steering assistance or braking if the turn signal is used. The function will also not be activated if it detects that the driver is actively operating the vehicle.

When the function is intervening, a message is displayed in the instrument panel.

---

# 10.8.6. Steering assistance during collision risks from on-coming traffic

Steering assistance has several sub-functions. Steering assistance during collision risks from oncoming traffic can help a distracted driver who has not noticed that the vehicle is veering out of the lane.




The function provides assistance by swerving your vehicle back into your own lane.

1 Oncoming vehicles

2 Own vehicle

When steering assistance is activated, collision warning for driver support will also be activated. However, the brake pedal pulsations that are part of collision warning will not be activated.

The function is active at speeds between 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible traffic lane markings/lines.

If your vehicle is starting to veer from your own lane and a vehicle is approaching from the opposite direction, this function can help the driver steer the vehicle back into its own lane.

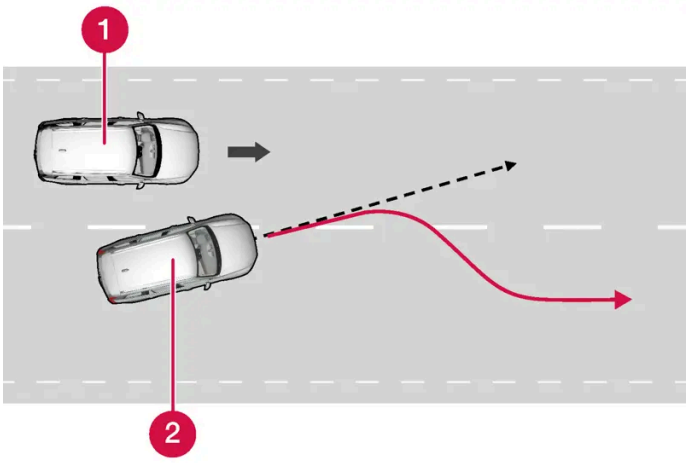
However, the function will **not** provide steering assistance if the turn signal is used. The function will also not be activated if it detects that the driver is actively operating the vehicle.

When the function is intervening, a symbol and a message will appear in the instrument panel and an audible signal will sound.

---

# 10.8.7. Steering assistance during collision risks from behind*

Steering assistance has several sub-functions. If you become distracted and do not notice your vehicle starting to veer out of the lane while another vehicle is approaching from behind or is in your vehicle's blind spot, Steering assistance during collision risks from behind can help provide assistance.




The function provides assistance by steering your vehicle back into your own lane.

1 Another vehicle in blind spot zone

2 Own vehicle

If your vehicle is beginning to veer out of your lane while another vehicle is in your blind spot or another vehicle is rapidly approaching in the next lane, this function can help the driver steer the vehicle back into its own lane.

Even if the driver intentionally changes lanes using a turn signal without noticing another vehicle approaching, the function can provide assistance.

The function is active at speeds between 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible traffic lane markings/lines.

The lights in the door mirrors will flash while steering assistance is being provided, whether or not the BLIS [1] function is activated. An audible signal will also sound.

When the function is intervening, a message is displayed in the instrument panel.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

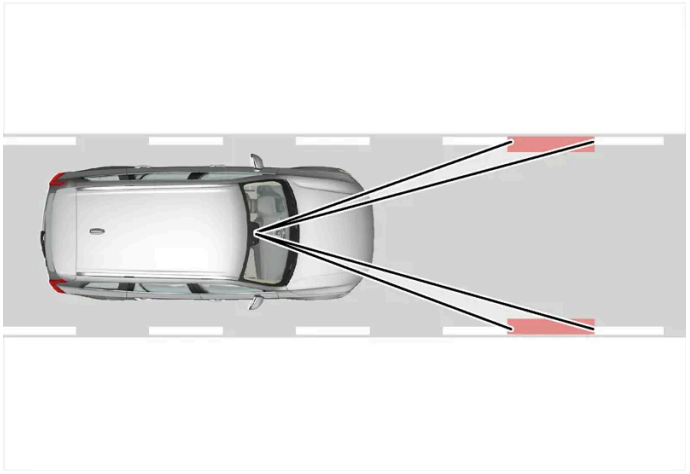
# 10.9. Driver Alert Control

## 10.9.1. Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function is designed to help alert the driver to erratic behavior, e.g. if the driver is distracted or showing signs of fatigue.

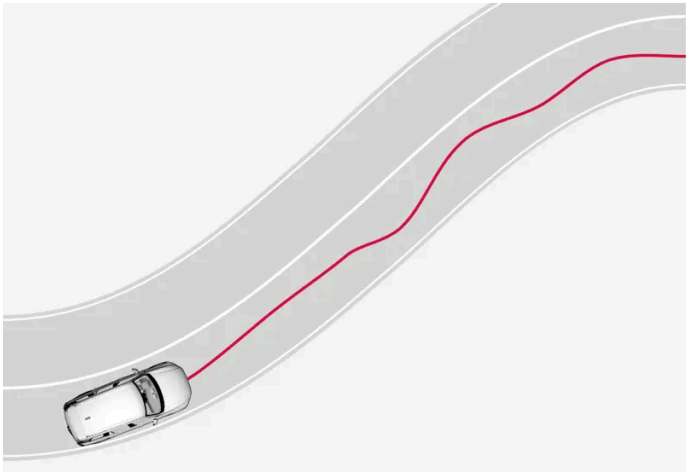
The objective of the function is to detect slowly deteriorating driving behavior and is primarily intended to be used on major roads. The function is not intended for use in city traffic.

DAC is activated when the vehicle's speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph) and remains active as long as speeds are above 60 km/h (37 mph).



Driver Alert Control detects the vehicle's position in the traffic lane.

A camera monitors the traffic lane's marker lines and compares the direction of the road with the driver's movements of the steering wheel.



The vehicle is moving erratically in the lane.

If driving behavior becomes considerably erratic, the driver will be alerted by this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the message **Time for a break**.

If the vehicle is equipped with Sensus Navigation* and the **Rest Stop Guidance** function is activated, suggestions will also be provided for suitable places to take a break.

The warning will be repeated after a short time if driving behavior does not improve.

**Warning**

Driver Alert Control must not be used to extend a period of driving. The driver should plan in breaks at regular intervals and make sure they are well rested.

**Warning**

An alarm from Driver Alert Control should be taken very seriously since a sleepy driver is often not aware of their own condition.

If the alarm sounds or you feel fatigued:

- Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible and rest.

Studies have shown that it is just as dangerous to drive while tired as it is to drive under the influence of alcohol or other stimulants.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.9.2. Activating and deactivating Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function can be activated or deactivated.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Driver Alert**.
3. Select/deselect **Alertness Warning** to activate/deactivate the function.

---

# 10.9.3. Selecting guidance to a rest area if the Driver Alert Control warning has been given

In vehicles equipped with Sensus Navigation*, the driver can activate a guide that can automatically suggest a suitable rest stop if the Driver Alert Control (DAC) warning is given.

The **Rest Stop Guidance** function can be switched on or off.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Driver Alert**.
3. Select/deselect **Rest Stop Guidance** to activate/deactivate the function.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.9.4. Driver Alert Control limitations

Driver Alert Control (DAC) functionality may be reduced in certain situations.

In certain situations, the system may provide a warning even if it has not detected a change in driving behavior, e.g.:

- in strong crosswinds
- on grooved road surfaces.

> **Warning**
>
> In certain cases, driving behavior might not be affected despite the driver's fatigue – when using the Pilot Assist* function – resulting in the driver not getting a warning from DAC.
>
> It is therefore very important to always stop and take a break at the slightest sign of fatigue, regardless of whether the function has issued a warning or not.

> **Note**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.10. Lane Keeping Aid

---

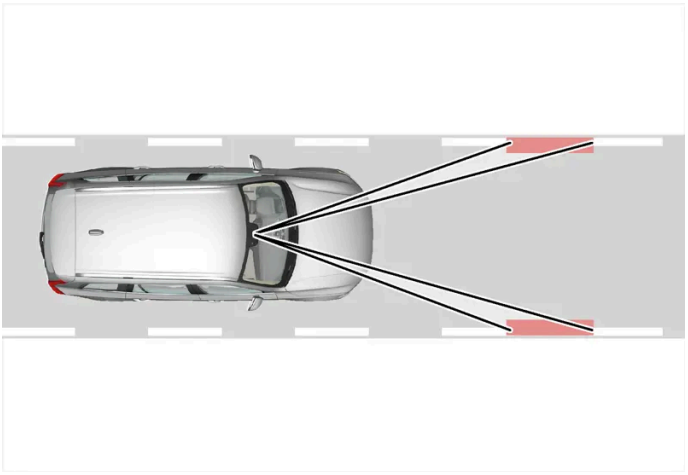
# 10.10.1. Lane Keeping Aid

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) is designed to actively steer the vehicle on freeways, highways and other major roads to help the driver reduce the risk of the vehicle unintentionally veering out of the lane.

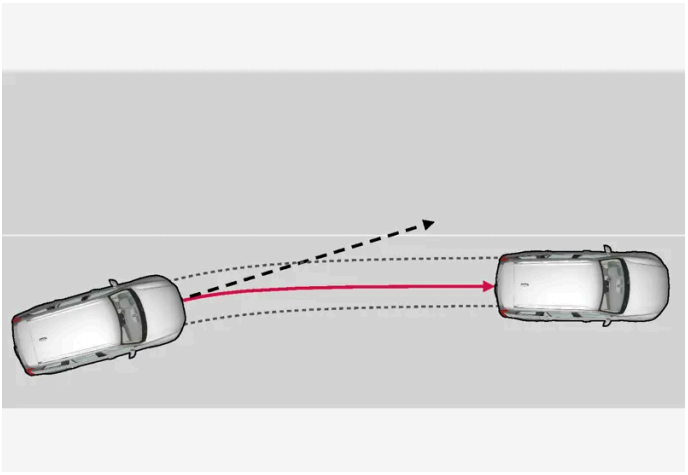
Lake Keeping Aid steers the vehicle back into the lane and/or alerts the driver using vibrations in the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping Aid is active at speeds between 65–200 km/h (40–125 mph) on roads with clearly visible traffic lane marker lines.

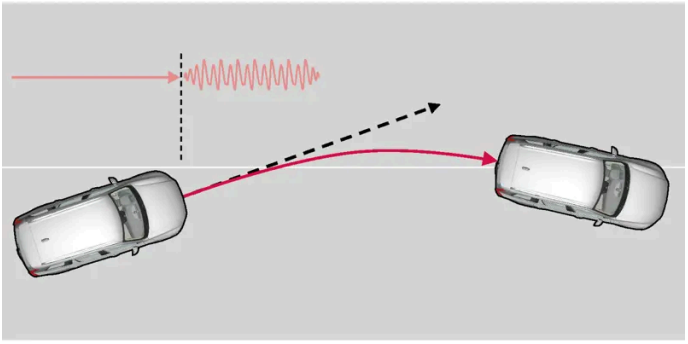
On narrow roads, the function may be unavailable and go into standby mode. The function will become available again when the road becomes sufficiently wide.



A camera monitors the road/traffic lane's marker lines.



Lane Keeping Aid steers the vehicle back into its lane.



Lane Keeping Aid alerts the driver using vibrations in the steering wheel.

Depending on the settings used, Lane Keeping Aid functions in different ways:

- **Assist** enabled: When the vehicle approaches a lane marker line, the function will actively steer the vehicle back into the lane using light pressure on the steering wheel.
- **Warning** enabled: If the vehicle is about to move over a lane marker line, the driver will be alerted by vibrations in the steering wheel.
- There is also an option for activating steering assistance and alerts at the same time.

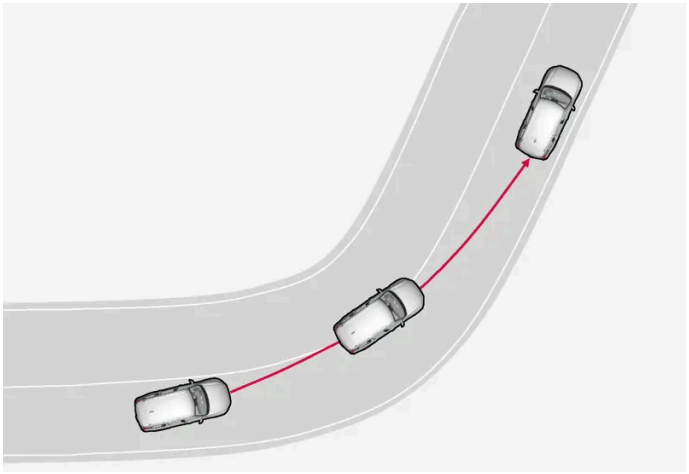
**Note**

When the direction indicators/turn signals are activated, the Lane Keeping Aid does not provide any warning or intervene with steering.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

## Lane Keeping Aid does not intervene



Lane Keeping Aid does not intervene in sharp inside curves.

In certain cases, such as when a turn signal is used or when "straightening out" an inside curve, Lane Keeping Aid will not provide steering assistance or alerts.

## Hands on the steering wheel

Steering assistance with Lane Keeping Aid only functions if the driver's hands are on the steering wheel, which the system continuously monitors.

If the driver's hands are not on the steering wheel, an audible signal will be given and a message will instruct the driver to actively steer the vehicle:

- **Lane Keeping Aid – Apply steering**

If the driver does not begin to steer the vehicle, the function will go into standby mode and this message will be displayed:

- **Lane Keeping Aid – Standby until steering applied**

The function will then be unavailable until the driver begins actively steering the vehicle again.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

---

# 10.10.2. Activating and deactivating Lane Keeping Aid

The Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) function is optional – the driver can choose to have the function activated or deactivated.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

---

# 10.10.3. Differences between Pilot Assist* and Lane Keeping Aid

Pilot Assist is a comfort function that can help keep the vehicle in its own lane and maintain the distance to the vehicle in front of you. Lane Keeping Aid[1] is a function that similarly helps in certain situations to reduce the risk of the vehicle unintentionally veering out of its lane.

## Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can help you to steer your vehicle between the lane markings, as well as maintain a preset speed and distance to the vehicle ahead. The function can also use the lane marking lines to help the driver maintain a favorable position in the lane.

**What does Pilot Assist do?**

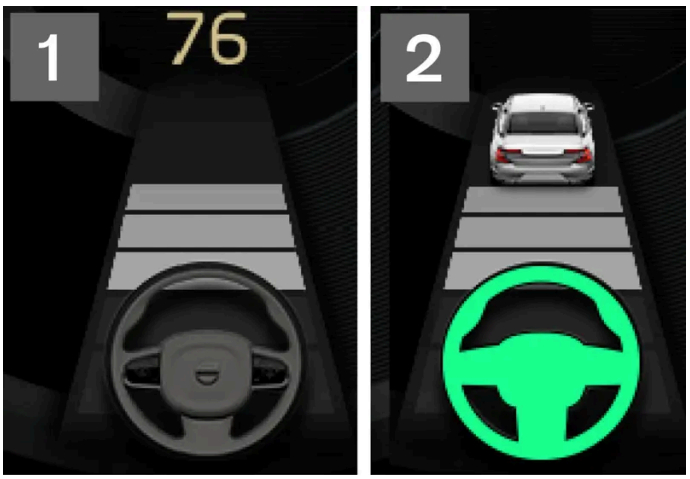
- Can help to keep the vehicle within its lane by assisting steering in some cases.
- Can help to maintain a preset speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead by means of acceleration and braking operations.

**How do I know that Pilot Assist is on?**

Symbols in the vehicle's instrument panel let you know when the function is on.

When the steering wheel in the middle is not illuminated, Pilot Assist is on but steering assistance is not active.

When the steering wheel is illuminated, Pilot Assist is on and steering assistance is active.




2 When the steering wheel symbol in the instrument panel is illuminated, Pilot Assist is helping you to steer.

## Lane Keeping Aid

Lane Keeping Aid can provide steering assistance and/or a warning to the driver when the vehicle is about to leave its lane unintentionally. The function is active between 65-200 km/h (40-125 mph) on roads with clearly visible side markings.

**What does Lane Keeping Aid do?**

- Lane Keeping Aid can provide the driver with steering assistance, steering the vehicle back into its lane and/or providing warnings using acoustic signals or steering wheel vibration.

**How do I know that Lane Keeping Aid is on?**

Symbols in the vehicle's instrument panel show the function status.

An extinguished symbol in the instrument panel means that the function is on but that the conditions for LKA have not been met.

White symbol in the instrument panel means that the conditions for LKA have been met and that the function is available.

Orange symbol in the instrument panel means that LKA provides steering assistance back into the lane and/or gives a warning with sound or vibration in the steering wheel.

**Warning**

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is operated in a safe manner. The driver is advised to read all of the sections in the Owner's Manual about this function before using the function.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

# 10.10.4. Selecting type of assistance for Lane Keeping Aid

The driver can determine what types of assistance Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) should provide if the vehicle veers from its lane.

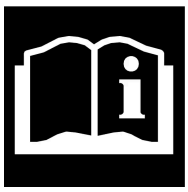
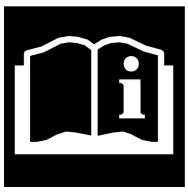
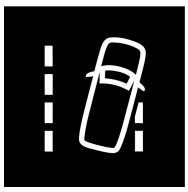
1. Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** in the center display's Top view.
2. Under **Lane Keeping Aid Mode**, select what assistance the function should provide:
   - **Assist** the driver will receive steering assistance but no warning.
   - **Warning** – the driver is only warned through vibrations in the steering wheel.
   - **Both** – the driver receives steering assistance and a warning through vibrations in the steering wheel.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

---

# 10.10.5. Lane Keeping Aid symbols and messages

A number of symbols and messages related to Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
|  | Driver support system<br>Reduced functionality Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[2]. |
|  | Windscreen sensor<br>Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual | The camera's ability to detect the lane in front of the vehicle is reduced. |
|  | Lane Keeping Aid<br>Apply steering | LKA's steering assistance is disabled when the driver's hands are not on the wheel. Follow the instructions and steer the vehicle. |
| | Lane Keeping Aid<br>Standby until steering applied | LKA will go into standby mode until the driver begins steering the vehicle again. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 10.10.6. Lane Keeping Aid display

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) uses symbols in the instrument panel for various situations.

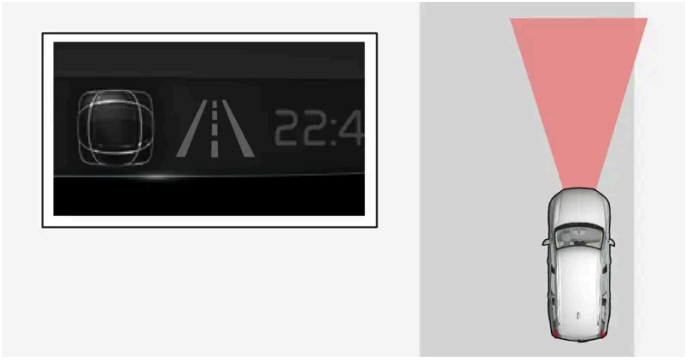
Some examples of symbols and descriptions of the situations in which they might appear are provided below.

**Available**

Available – the marker lines in the symbol are white.

Lane Keeping Aid is able to detect one or both of the traffic lane's side marker lines.

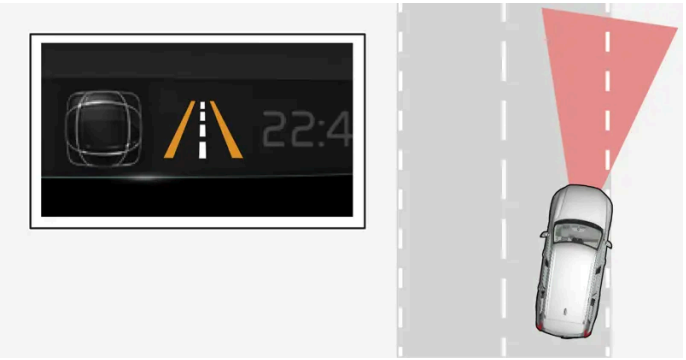
**Unavailable**




Unavailable – the marker lines in the symbol are extinguished.

Lane Keeping Aid is unable to detect the lane marker lines, the vehicle's speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

**Steering/warning indicator**



Steering/warning – the marker lines in the symbol are colored.

Indicates that the Lane Keeping Aid system is alerting the driver and/or attempting to steer the vehicle back into the lane.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

---

# 10.10.7. Lane Keeping Aid limitations

In certain demanding driving conditions, Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) may not be able to properly assist the driver. In these situations, it is recommended that the function be deactivated.

Examples of such situations include:

- road work
- winter driving conditions
- poor road surfaces
- a very sporty driving style
- bad weather with reduced visibility
- roads with indistinct or no lane markings
- sharp edges or lines other than the lane's side markings
- when speed-dependent power steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

The function cannot detect barriers, railings or similar obstacles at the side of the lane.

> **Note**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

# 10.11. Electronic Stability Control

## 10.11.1. Electronic Stability Control

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC[1]) function helps the driver avoid skidding and improves the vehicle's directional stability.

This symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel when the system is intervening.

When the system has intervened to apply the brakes, a pulsing sound may be heard and the vehicle may accelerate more slowly than expected when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

The system consists of the following sub-functions:

- Stability control[2]
- Spin control and active yaw control
- Engine drag control
- Trailer Stability Assist

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

### Stability control[2]

This function helps control the driving and braking force of each individual wheel in an attempt to stabilize the vehicle.

### Spin control and active yaw control

This function is active at low speeds and brakes the wheels that are spinning to transfer additional power to wheels that are not spinning.

This function can also help prevent the wheels from spinning while the vehicle is accelerating.

### Engine drag control

Engine drag control (EDC[3]) can help prevent involuntary wheel locking, such as after engine braking on slippery roads. Inadvertent wheel lock while driving could impair the driver's ability to steer the vehicle.

### Trailer Stability Assist* [4]

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA[5]) is designed to help stabilize a vehicle that is towing a trailer if the vehicle and trailer have begun to sway.

> **Note**
>
> Trailer Stability Assist is deactivated if **ESC Sport Mode** is activated.

[1] Electronic Stability Control

[2] Also called traction control.

[3] Engine Drag Control

* Option/accessory.

[4] Trailer Stability Assist is included if the vehicle is equipped with a Volvo original towbar.

[5] Trailer Stability Assist

---

# 10.11.2. Electronic Stability Control symbols and messages

A number of symbols and messages related to Electronic Stability Control (ESC[1]) may be displayed in the instrument panel. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Steady glow for approx. 2 seconds | System check when the engine is started. |
| | Flashing light | The system is actively operating. |
| | Steady glow | Sport mode is activated. **NOTE!** The system is not deactivated in this mode, but has partially reduced functionality. |
| | ESC<br>Temporarily off | The system's functionality has been temporarily reduced due to high brake system temperatures. The function will be automatically reactivated when the brakes have cooled. |
| | ESC<br>Service required | The system is not functioning properly. Stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn off the engine and then restart it. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Electronic Stability Control

---

# 10.11.3. Electronic Stability Control in sport mode

The stability system (ESC[1]) is always activated and cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select ECS sport mode, which offers more active driving characteristics.

With sport mode selected, intervention from the system is reduced and more lateral movement is permitted, giving the driver more control of the vehicle than usual.

When sport mode is selected, the function may seem to be disabled even though it continues to assist the driver.

**Note**

With Sport mode activated, the trailer stabilizer function TSA[2] is switched off.

Sport mode also helps provide more traction, even if the vehicle gets stuck or is driving on a loose surface such as deep snow or loose sand.

[1] Electronic Stability Control

[2] Trailer Stability Assist

---

# 10.11.4. Activating and deactivating Sport mode for Electronic Stability Control

The stability system (ESC[1]) is always activated and cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select Sport mode, which offers more active driving characteristics.

When **ESC Sport Mode** is activated, this symbol will illuminate with a steady glow in the instrument panel. It will remain on until the driver deactivates the function or until the engine is turned off. The system will return to normal mode the next time the engine is started.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

The sport mode function cannot be selected when any of the following functions are activated:

- Cruise control
- Adaptive Cruise Control*
- Pilot Assist*

[1] Electronic Stability Control

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.12. Road Sign Information

---

# 10.12.1. Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) function can help the driver observe speed-related road signs.

Examples of signs that can be detected[2].

If the vehicle passes a speed limit sign, it will be displayed in the instrument panel and the head-up display*.

There are also subfunctions for Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) that can alert the driver if the speed limit has been exceeded or if there are speed cameras nearby.

**Note**

In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function is only available in combination with map data.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road Sign Information

[2] Road signs differ according to market – the illustrations shown here are just some examples.

---

# 10.12.2. Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation*

The Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) function can obtain speed-related information from Sensus Navigation.

If the vehicle is equipped with Sensus Navigation*, speed-related information will be provided in the following situations:

- In cases where the speed limit is given indirectly, e.g. signs for highways or other major roads.
- If a previously detected speed sign is deemed to be no longer valid and no new sign has been passed.

> **Note**
>
> In certain markets, the Road Sign Information* function is only available in combination with Sensus Navigation*.

> **Note**
>
> If a downloaded third-party app is used for navigation, there is no support for speed-related information.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road Sign Information

---

# 10.12.3. Activating and deactivating Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) function is optional – the driver can choose to have the function activated or deactivated.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road Sign Information

---

# 10.12.4. Road Sign Information* limitations

Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) functionality may be reduced in certain situations.

The function could have reduced functionality due to e.g.:

- faded road signs
- signs located in a curve in the road
- twisted or damaged signs
- signs positioned high above the road
- fully/partially obstructed or poorly positioned signs
- signs partially or fully covered by frost, snow and/or dirt
- digital map data[2] with outdated, incorrect or missing speed information[3]

> **Note**
>
> In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function is only available in combination with map data.

> **Note**
>
> Certain types of bike carriers that are connected to the trailer socket may be interpreted as a connected trailer by the RSI function. In such cases, the instrument panel may indicate incorrect speed information.

> **Note**
>
> The function uses the vehicle's camera and radar sensor, which has certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road Sign Information

[2] Vehicles equipped with Sensus Navigation*.

[3] Map data and speed information is not available for all areas.

---

# 10.12.5. Speed limit and speed camera warnings from Road Sign Information*

There are subfunctions for Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) that can alert the driver if the speed limit has been exceeded or if there are speed cameras nearby.

## Speed limit warning

When Speed Warning is activated, the symbol for the current speed limit in the instrument panel[2] will flash temporarily if that speed is exceeded.

The driver can be alerted if the vehicle is exceeding a detected speed limit and is approaching a speed camera.

Speed Warning alerts the driver if the vehicle's speed has exceeded the current speed limit or stored Speed Limiter speed. The warning will be repeated once after about 30 seconds in that speed limit area if the driver does not slow down.

An additional warning will not be provided unless the vehicle's speed is reduced by at least 5 km/h (3 mph) and then exceeds the speed limit again or the vehicle enters an area with a different speed limit.

> **Note**
>
> For an audible alert to be provided if the speed is exceeded, the **Speed Limit Warning** function must be activated and the **Road Sign Audio Warning** sub-function must be **On**. Audible alerts are provided if the vehicle's speed exceeds the speed displayed by Road Sign Information in the instrument panel.

## Speed camera warning

Vehicles equipped with Road Sign Information and map data[3] can provide information on upcoming speed cameras in the instrument panel[4].

If the vehicle exceeds a detected speed limit with the Speed Warning function activated, the driver is given a speed warning when the vehicle is approaching a speed camera if the navigation map for the vehicle's current location contains information on speed cameras.

> **Note**
>
> It is possible to receive an audible alert for speed cameras regardless of the vehicle's speed and whether or not the speed limit is exceeded, even if the **Road Sign Audio Warning** function is deactivated.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road Sign Information

[2] Road signs differ by market – the illustration shown here is just an example.

[3] Sensus Navigation

[4] Information on speed cameras on the navigation map is not available for all markets/areas.

---

# 10.12.6. Activating and deactivating warnings from Road Sign Information*

The driver can select which warnings will be activated for Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) and adjust the limits for these.

1. Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Road Sign Information** in the center display's Top view.
2. Select **Speed Limit Warning** and choose your preferred settings.

You can choose to:

- Activate Speed Warning
- Adjust the Speed Warning limit[2]
- Activate audible alert for Speed Warning
- Activate audible alert for speed cameras[3]

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road Sign Information

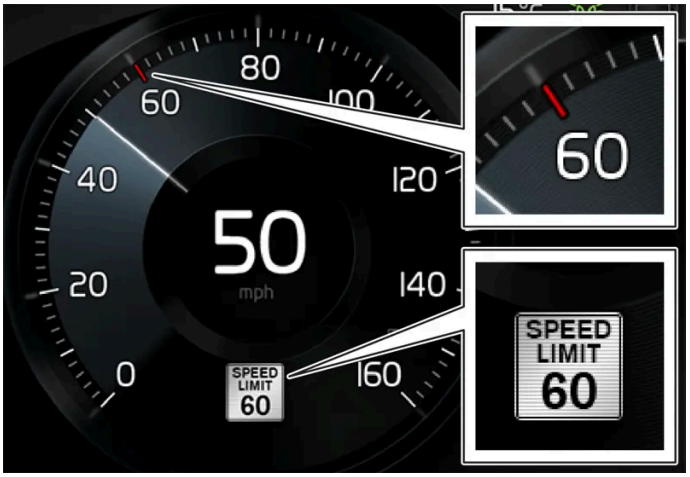
[2] The set warning limit will not be used when the speed camera symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

[3] The vehicle needs access to map data with information on speed cameras.

---

# 10.12.7. Road Sign Information* display

Road Sign Information (RSI[1]) displays road signs in different ways depending on the sign and situation. The following illustrations are examples.




Example[2] of registered speed information.

When the function has registered a speed limit sign the sign will be displayed as a symbol in the instrument panel and a colored marking will be shown in the speedometer's speed scale.

If the vehicle is equipped with map data*, speed-related information will also be retrieved from map data, which means that the instrument panel can display or change information about speed limits even if the vehicle has not passed a speed-related sign.

### Signs for "School" and "Children playing"

If the warning sign "School" or "Children playing" is included in the map data*, a symbol of this type will be displayed in the instrument panel.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road Sign Information

[2] Road signs differ according to market – the illustrations shown here are just examples.

# 10.13. Parking functions

# 10.13.1. Parking Assist

# 10.13.1.1. Park Assist*

The Park Assist function (PAS[1]) uses sensors to help the driver when maneuvering in tight spaces by indicating distances to obstacles using audible signals and graphics in the center display.

Example of display view showing obstacle zones and sensor sectors.

The center display shows an overview of the vehicle in relation to objects that have been detected.

The marked sector indicates where the obstacle is located. The closer the vehicle symbol is to a marked sector forward/rearward, the closer the detected obstacle is to your vehicle.

The side sectors change color as the distance between the vehicle and an object decreases.

The audible signals will also speed up the closer the obstacle is to the vehicle. The volume of the audio system will be automatically lowered.

Audible signals for obstacles in front and to the sides of the vehicle are active when the vehicle is moving but will cease after the vehicle has been stationary for approx. 2 seconds. Audible signals for obstacles behind the vehicle will remain active even when the vehicle is stationary.

If a detected obstacle is within approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from the front or rear of the vehicle, the tone will become constant and the active sensor field closest to the vehicle symbol will be filled in.

At distances within approx. 25 cm (0.8 foot) from an obstacle to the sides of the vehicle, an rapid pulsing signal will be given and the active sector fields will change color from ORANGE to RED.

The volume of the Park Assist audible signals can be adjusted while the signal is being given using the >II knob or in Park Assist settings.

**Note**

Besides in the sector closest to the vehicle symbol, audible warnings are only provided for objects located directly in the vehicle's path.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

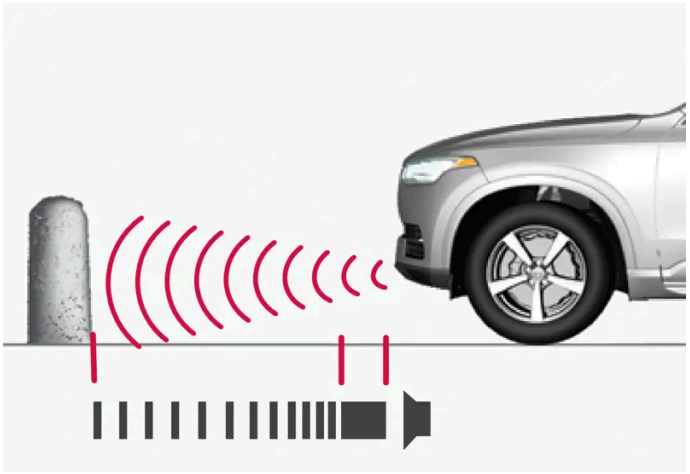
[1] Park Assist System

---

# 10.13.1.2. Park Assist front, rear and sides*

Park Assist (PAS[1]) behaves differently depending on which part of the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.

## Front camera



The warning signal has a continuous audible tone when the obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from the vehicle.

The Park Assist system's front sensors are automatically activated when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The distance monitored extends approx. 80 cm (2.5 feet) in front of the vehicle.

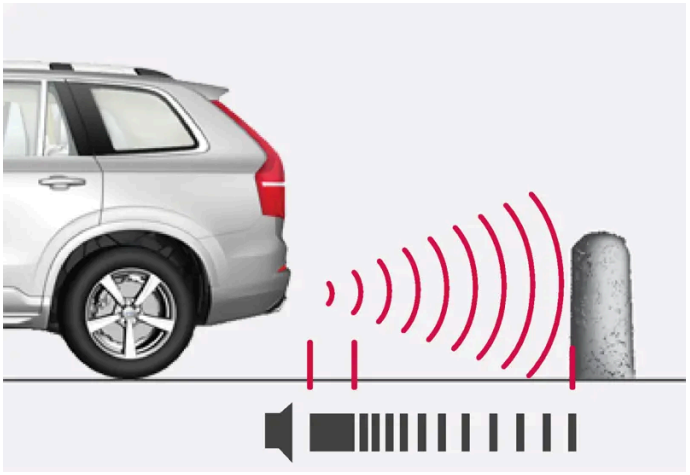
**Note**

The Park Assist system is deactivated when the parking brake is used or when **P** is selected on vehicles with automatic transmission.

**Important**

When installing auxiliary lights: Make sure these do not obscure the sensors – the auxiliary lights could be perceived as an obstacle.

## Back



The warning signal has a continuous tone when the obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from the vehicle.

The rear sensors will be activated if the vehicle begins rolling backward or if reverse gear is engaged.

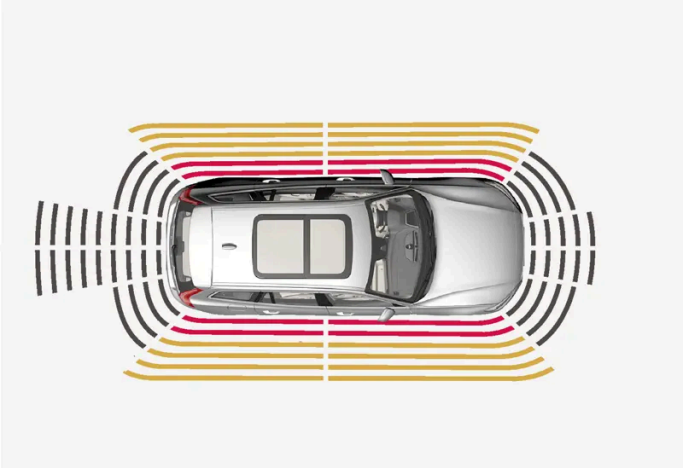
The distance monitored extends approx. 1.5 meter (5 feet) behind the vehicle.

The Park Assist system's rear sensors will be automatically deactivated if the vehicle is backing up with a trailer connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

**Note**

When reversing with e.g. a trailer or bike carrier on the trailer hitch – without Volvo original trailer cables – the Parking Assist system may have to be turned off manually to prevent the sensors from reacting to these.

## Side sensors



The warning signal pulsates rapidly when the obstacle is less than approx. 25 cm (0.8 foot) from the vehicle.

Park Assist's side sensors are automatically activated when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The distance monitored is approx. 25 cm (0.8 foot) out from the sides.

The detection area of the side sensors increases significantly, however, when the steering angle of the front wheel increases and depending on the position of the steering wheel, obstacles up to approx. 90 cm (3 feet) diagonally behind or in front of the vehicle can be detected.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist System

---

# 10.13.1.3. Activating and deactivating the Park Assist system*

The Park Assist function (PAS[1]) can be activated or deactivated.

Park Assist's front and side sensors are automatically activated when the engine is started. The rear sensors are activated if the vehicle is moving backward or reverse gear is engaged.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the center display's Function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

In vehicles equipped with Park Assist Camera*, Park Assist can also be activated or deactivated from the relevant camera view.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist System

---

# 10.13.1.4. Park Assist symbols and messages

Symbols and messages for the Park Assist system (PAS[1]) may be displayed in the instrument panel and/or the center display. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | | The rear Park Assist sensors are **turned off** and no acoustic warnings for obstacles/objects will be provided. |
| | Park Assist System<br>Sensors blocked, cleaning needed | One or more of the sensors are blocked. Check and clean/remove the obstacle as soon as possible. |
| | Park Assist System<br>Unavailable Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[2]. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Park Assist System

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 10.13.1.5. Park Assist limitations

Park Assist (PAS[1]) may not be able to detect all conditions in all situations and functionality may therefore be limited in certain cases.

The driver should be aware of the following limitations for Park Assist:

**Warning**

- The parking sensors have dead/blind spots where objects cannot be detected.
- Pay particular attention to people and animals near the vehicle.
- Bear in mind that the front end of the vehicle may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking maneuver.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the vehicle than they appear on the screen.

**Warning**

Be extra cautious when reversing if this symbol is shown when a trailer, bike carrier or similar is attached and electrically connected to the vehicle.

The symbol indicates that the rear parking assist sensors are **deactivated** and will not warn of any obstacles.

**Important**

Objects such as chains, thin and glossy poles or low obstacles may end up in the "signal shadow" and then go temporarily undetected by the sensors – the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of becoming a constant tone as expected.

The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as protruding ramps.

- In such situations, pay extra attention and maneuver/drive the vehicle very slowly or stop the current parking maneuver – there may be a high risk of damage to the vehicle or other objects since information from the sensors is not always reliable in such situations.

**Important**

In some circumstances, the Park Assist System may produce false warnings due to external sound sources with the same ultrasonic frequencies as those the system works with.

Examples of such sources are horns, wet tires on asphalt, pneumatic brakes, exhaust noise from motorcycles, etc.

**Note**

When a trailer hitch is configured with the vehicle electrical system, the trailer hitch protrusion is included when the function measures the distance to objects behind the vehicle.

[1] Park Assist System

# 10.13.2. Park Assist Pilot

# 10.13.2.1. Park Assist Pilot*

Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) can help the driver maneuver the vehicle when parking. The function can also assist with steering when pulling out from a parallel parking space.

The function first checks whether there is sufficient space and then helps the driver steer the vehicle into the space.

The center display uses symbols, graphics and messages to inform the driver of what steps need to be taken and when.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

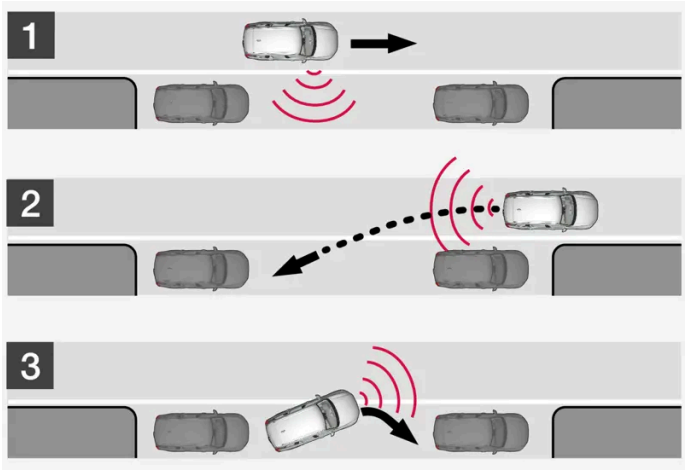
[1] Park Assist Pilot

---

# 10.13.2.2. Types of parking with Park Assist Pilot*

Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) can be used for both parallel and perpendicular parking.

**Parallel parking**



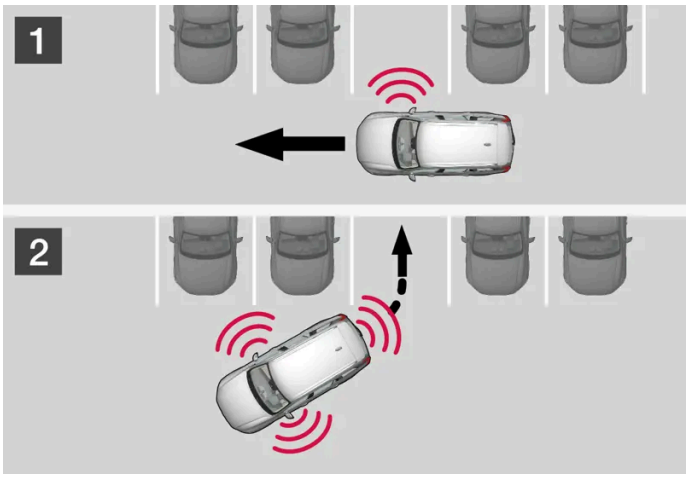

Overview of parallel parking.

The function helps park the vehicle using the following steps:

1. The system searches for and measures potential parking spaces.
2. The vehicle is steered while it is backing into the parking space.
3. The vehicle's position in the space is adjusted by driving forward/backward.

The **Park Out** function can also help the driver pull out of parking spaces.

**Perpendicular parking**




Perpendicular parking overview.

The function helps park the vehicle using the following steps:

1. The system searches for and measures potential parking spaces.
2. The vehicle is steered while it is backing into the space and its position is adjusted by driving forward/backward.

> **Note**
>
> Leaving a parking space with the **Park Out** function should only be used in connection with parallel parking – it does not work for perpendicular parking.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Pilot

---

# 10.13.2.3. Using Park Assist Pilot*

Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) helps the driver park using three different steps. The function can also help the driver pull out of a parking space.

The function measures the space and steers the vehicle. The driver's role is to:

- keep close watch of the area around the vehicle
- follow the instructions on the center display
- change gears (reverse/forward) – an audible signal indicates when the driver needs to change gears
- regulating and maintaining a safe speed
- applying the brakes and stopping the vehicle.

Information about the actions required by the driver are provided in the center display using symbols, graphics and/or text.

The function can be activated if the following criteria have been met after the engine is started:

- No trailer is hitched to the vehicle
- Your vehicle's speed is lower than 30 km/h (20 mph).

> **Note**
>
> The distance between the vehicle and parking spots should be 0.5–1.5 meters (1.6–5.0 ft) when the function is looking for parking.

## Parking with Park Assist Pilot

The function helps park the vehicle using the following steps:

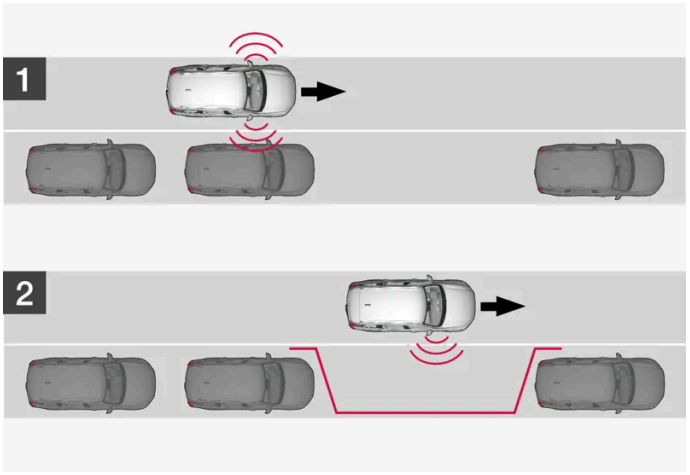
1. The system searches for and measures potential parking spaces.
2. The vehicle is steered while it is backing into the parking space.
3. The vehicle is positioned in the parking space (the driver may be prompted to shift gears and apply the brakes).

#### Searching and measuring potential parking spots

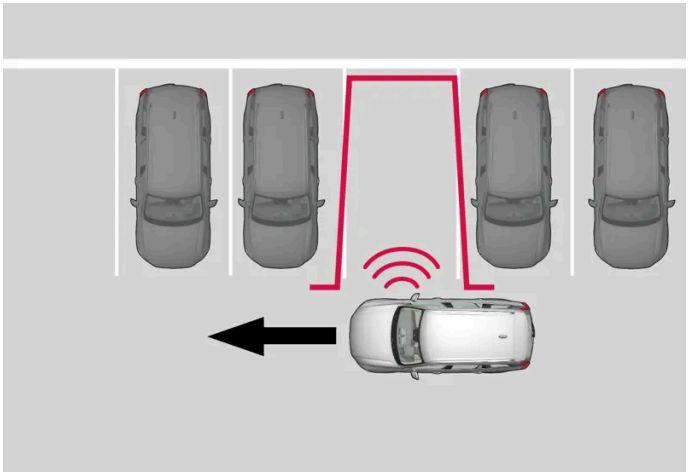
The function can be activated in the center display's Function view.

It can also be accessed from the camera views.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.



Parallel parking search overview.



Perpendicular parking search overview.

Vehicle speed may not exceed 30 km/h (20 mph) when parking.

1. Tap **Park In** in Function view or in Camera view.

> The function will search for a potential parking space and measure it to determine if it is big enough.

2. Be prepared to stop the vehicle when a graphic and message in the center display indicate that a suitable parking space has been found.

> A pop-up window will appear.

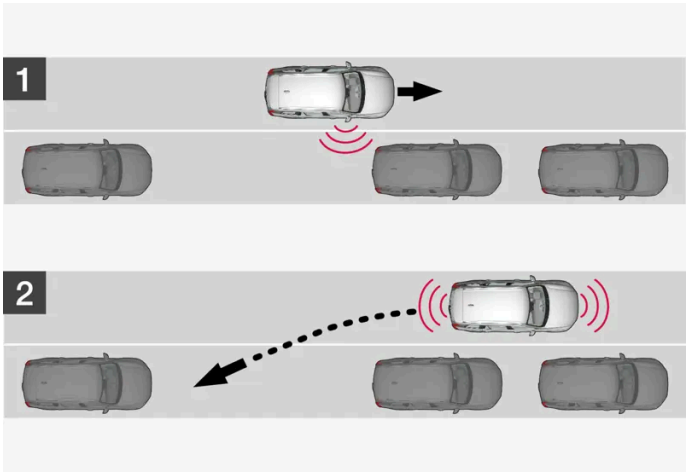
3. Select **Parallel parking** or **Perpendicular parking** and engage reverse gear.

**Note**

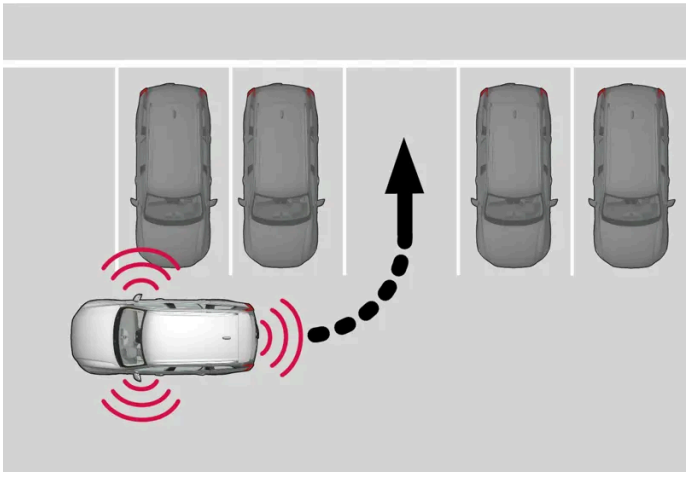
The function searches for space for parking, shows instructions and guides the vehicle on its passenger side. But, if so desired the vehicle can be parked on the driver's side of the street:

- Activate the turn signals on the driver's side – the system will then search for space to park on that side of the vehicle instead.

**Backing into a parking space**




Backing into a parallel parking spot overview.



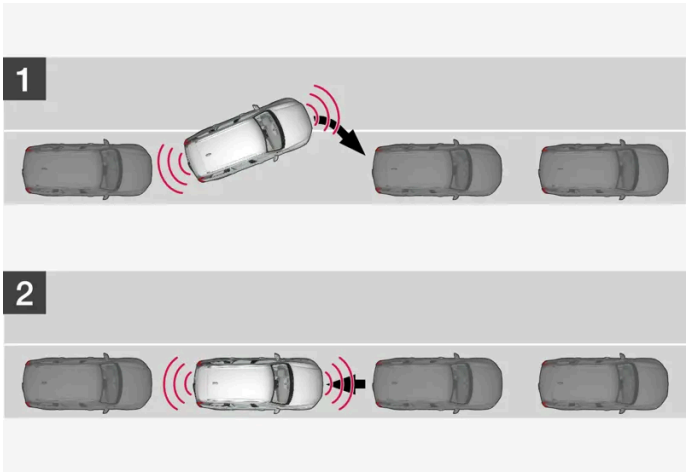
Backing into a perpendicular parking spot overview.

1. Make sure the path behind your vehicle is clear and engage reverse gear.
2. Back up slowly and carefully without touching the steering wheel and do not exceed a speed of 7 km/h (4 mph).
3. Be prepared to stop the vehicle when instructed to do so by a graphic and message in the center display.

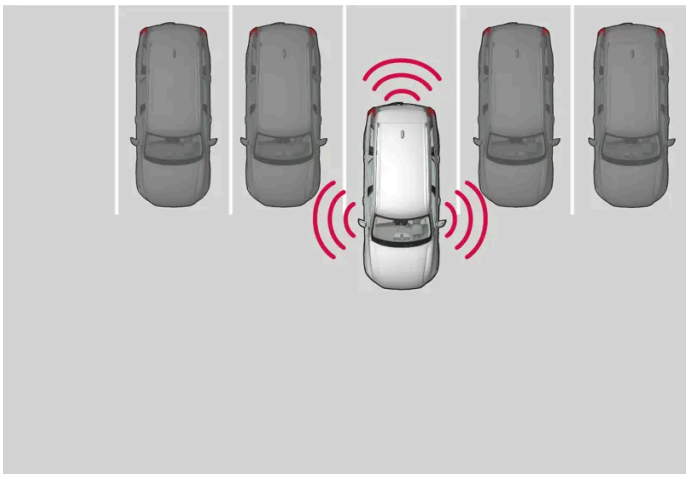
**Note**

- Keep your hands away from the steering wheel when the function is activated.
- Make sure that the steering wheel is not hindered in any way and can rotate freely.
- To achieve the best results – wait until the steering wheel is finished turning before beginning to drive forward/in reverse.

**Positioning the vehicle in the parking space**




Parallel parking positioning overview.



Perpendicular parking positioning overview.

1. Move the gear selector to the gear instructed by the system. Wait until the steering wheel turns and then drive slowly forward.
2. Be prepared to stop the vehicle when instructed to do so by a graphic and message in the center display.
3. Engage reverse gear and back up slowly.
4. Be prepared to apply the brakes when instructed to do so by a graphic and message in the center display.

The function will switch off automatically and a graphic and message will appear to indicate that parking has been completed. Adjustments can always be made be the driver afterward. Only the driver can determine when the vehicle is correctly parked.

> **Important**
>
> The warning distance is shorter when the sensors are used by Park Assist Pilot (PAP[2]) compared to when they are used by the Parking Assist system.

## Auto-brake during a parking sequence

If, while parking, the parking sensors detect a vehicle or pedestrian in the vehicle's intended direction of travel behind or in front of the vehicle, the auto-brake function will bring the vehicle to a standstill.

A pop-up message will then appear in the instrument panel and the driver can tap **Cancel** to cancel the parking sequence or **Resume** to continue the parking sequence.

After selecting **Resume**:

1. Check that the area around the vehicle is free of obstructions and follow the instructions on the center display, such as:

   **To continue – Gently accelerate away from object**.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Pilot

[2] Park Assist Pilot

---

# 10.13.2.4. Leaving a parallel parking space with Park Assist Pilot*

The **Park Out** function can help the driver to pull out of a parking space when the vehicle is parallel-parked.

**Note**

Leaving a parking space with the **Park Out** function should only be used in connection with parallel parking – it does not work for perpendicular parking.

The **Park Out** function is activated in the center display's Function view or in Camera view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

1. Tap **Park Out** in Function view or in Camera view.
2. Move the gear selector to the suitable position (e.g. D or R) for the direction in which you will be pulling out of the parking space.
3. Be prepared to stop the vehicle when instructed to do so by a graphic and message in the center display. Follow the instructions in the same way as for the parking procedure.

Note that the steering wheel can "spring" back when the procedure is completed and the driver may need to turn the steering wheel back to the maximum position in order to pull out of the parking space.

If the function determines that the driver can pull out of the parking space without any extra maneuvers, the function will be de-activated, even if it seems as though the vehicle is not completely out of the parking space.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.13.2.5. Park Assist Pilot* messages

Messages for Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) may be displayed in the instrument panel and/or the center display. Several examples are provided below.

| Message | Meaning |
|---|---|
| **Park Assist System**<br>**Sensors blocked, cleaning needed** | One or more of the sensors are blocked. Check and clean/remove the obstacle as soon as possible. |
| **Park Assist System**<br>**Unavailable Service required** | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[2]. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ◯ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Pilot

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 10.13.2.6. Park Assist Pilot* limitations

Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) may not be able to detect all conditions in all situations and functionality may therefore be limited.

The driver should be aware of the following limitations for Park Assist Pilot.

**Warning**

- The parking sensors have dead/blind spots where objects cannot be detected.
- Pay particular attention to people and animals near the vehicle.
- Bear in mind that the front end of the vehicle may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking maneuver.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the vehicle than they appear on the screen.

**Important**

Objects situated higher than the detection area of the sensors are not included when the parking maneuver is calculated, which could cause the function to swing into the parking space too early. Such parking spaces should be avoided for this reason.

## The parking sequence is cancelled

A parking sequence will be cancelled if:

- the driver moves the steering wheel
- the vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph)
- the driver taps **Cancel** in the center display
- when the anti-lock brakes or the Electronic stability control are engaged - e.g. when a wheel loses grip on a slippery road
- when speed-dependent power steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.
- when, while parking, the parking sensors detect a vehicle or pedestrian in the vehicle's intended direction of travel behind or in front of the vehicle, the auto-brake function will bring the vehicle to a standstill.

A message in the center display will explain why the parking sequence was cancelled.

**Important**

Under certain circumstances, the function may not be able to find parking spaces – one reason may be that the sensors are disrupted by external sound sources that emit the same ultrasonic frequencies that the system works with.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tires on asphalt, pneumatic brakes, exhaust noise from motorcycles, etc.

**Note**

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors reduce their function and can make measurement impossible.

## Driver responsibility

The driver should keep in mind that the function is a parking aid – not an infallible fully automatic system. The driver must always be prepared to take control and cancel a parking sequence if necessary.

There are a number of things to keep in mind when parking, including:

- The driver is always responsible for determining if the space suggested by the function is suitable for parking.
- Do not use the function when using snow chains or a temporary spare tire.
- Do not use the function if there are any objects protruding from the vehicle.
- Heavy rain or snowfall may inhibit PAP's ability to accurately measure a parking space.
- While searching and measuring the parking space, the function may be unable to detect objects located far into the space.
- PAP may not suggest parking spaces on narrow streets if it does not detect sufficient space for maneuvering the vehicle.
- Use approved tires [2] inflated to the correct tire pressure because this affects the function's ability to provide parking assistance.
- The function is based on the way the vehicles are parked behind and in front of your parking space. If they are, for example, parked too close to the curb, there is a risk that your vehicle's tires or wheel rims could be damaged by the curb during the parking procedure.
- Perpendicular parking spaces may not be detected or may be suggested unnecessarily if a parked vehicle is sticking out more than other parked vehicles.
- The function is intended to provide parking assistance on straight streets, not sections of street with sharp curves or bends. Always make sure that your vehicle is parallel to relevant parking spaces when the function is measuring the parking space.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Pilot

[2] "Approved tires" refers to tires of the same type and make as the vehicle's original, factory-installed tires.

# 10.13.3. Park Assist Camera

# 10.13.3.1. Park Assist Camera*

The Park Assist Camera (PAC[1]) can assist the driver when maneuvering in tight spaces by indicating obstacles using the camera screen and graphics in the center display.

Example camera view.

1 **Zoom**[2] - zoom in/out

2 **360° view*** - activate/deactivate all cameras

3 **PAS**[3] – activates/deactivates Park Assist system sensors

4 **Lines** - activate/deactivate trajectory lines

5 **Towbar*** - activate/deactivate trajectory lines for towbar*[4]

6 **CTA*** - activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert

The Park Assist Camera is a support function that is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged. It can also be started manually in the center display.

**Warning**

- The parking sensors have dead/blind spots where objects cannot be detected.
- Pay particular attention to people and animals near the vehicle.
- Bear in mind that the front end of the vehicle may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking maneuver.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the vehicle than they appear on the screen.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Camera

[2] The trajectory lines will not be displayed when zooming in.

[3] Park Assist System

[4] Not available for all models and markets.

---

# 10.13.3.2. Activating Park Assist Camera

The Park Assist Camera (PAC [1]) is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged or can be started manually using one of the center display's function buttons.

## Camera view when backing up

When reverse gear is engaged, the screen shows the rear view [2].

## Camera view when manually activating the camera

Activate the Park Assist Camera using this button in the center display's Function view. The screen will first show the most recently used camera view. However, each time the engine is started, the previous side view will be replaced by the 360° view and a previously displayed zoomed-in rear view will be replaced by the regular rear view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

## Automatically deactivating the camera

Front view switches off when the vehicle's speed reaches 25 km/h (16 mph) to help avoid distracting the driver. It will be automatically reactivated if the vehicle's speed falls below 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute as long as the vehicle's speed has not exceeded 50 km/h (31 mph).

Other camera views switch off at 15 km/h (9 mph) and are not reactivated.

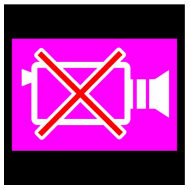
[1] Park Assist Camera

[2] In Canada, it is also possible to choose the 360° view. For the US, rear view is standard and cannot be changed.

---

# 10.13.3.3. Park Assist Camera symbols and messages

Symbols and messages for the Park Assist Camera (PAC[1]) may be displayed in the instrument panel and/or the center display. Several examples are provided below.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | | The rear Park Assist sensors are **turned off** and no acoustic warnings or field markings for obstacles/objects will be provided. |
|  | | The camera is not functioning properly. |
| | Park Assist System Sensors blocked, cleaning needed | One or more of the sensors are blocked. Check and clean/remove the obstacle as soon as possible. |
| | Park Assist System Unavailable Service required | The system is not functioning as intended. Contact a workshop[2]. |

A text message can be erased by briefly pressing the ○ button in the center of the right-side steering wheel keypad.

If the message persists, contact a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

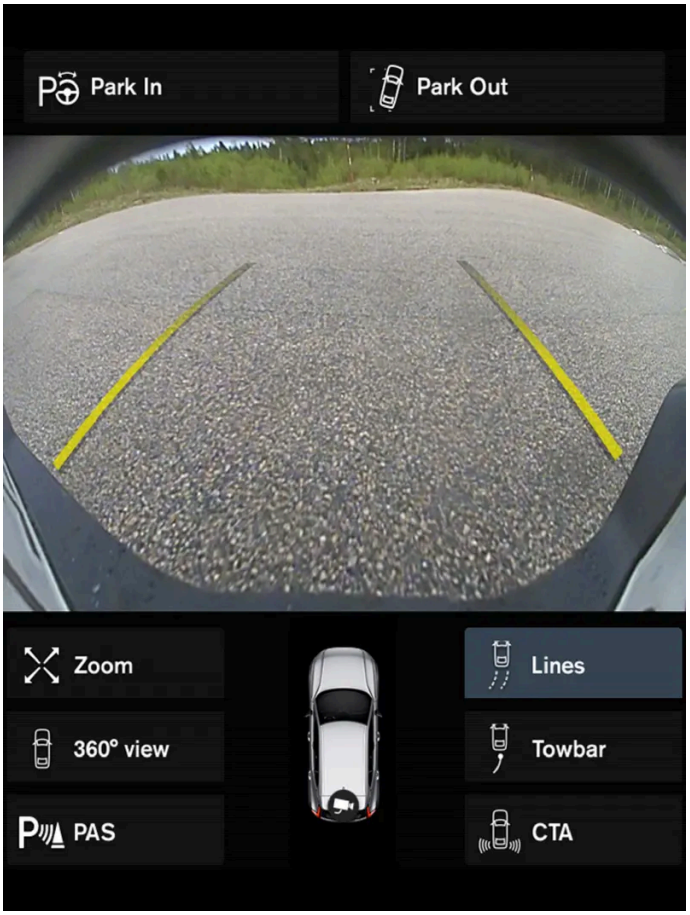
[1] Park Assist Camera

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 10.13.3.4. Park Assist Camera trajectory lines*

The Park Assist Cameras (PAC[1]) use trajectory lines and fields on the screen to indicate the vehicle's position in relation to its immediate surroundings.



Example of trajectory lines

The trajectory lines show the anticipated trajectory for the vehicle's outermost dimensions based on the current position of the steering wheel and can help simplify parallel parking, backing into tight spaces or attaching a trailer.

The lines on the screen are projected as if they were painted lines on the ground behind the vehicle and are directly affected by the way in which the steering wheel is turned. This makes it possible for the driver to see path the vehicle will take, even if he/she turns the steering wheel.

These lines also indicate the outermost limits that any object (towbar, rearview mirrors, corners of the body, etc.) extends out from the vehicle.

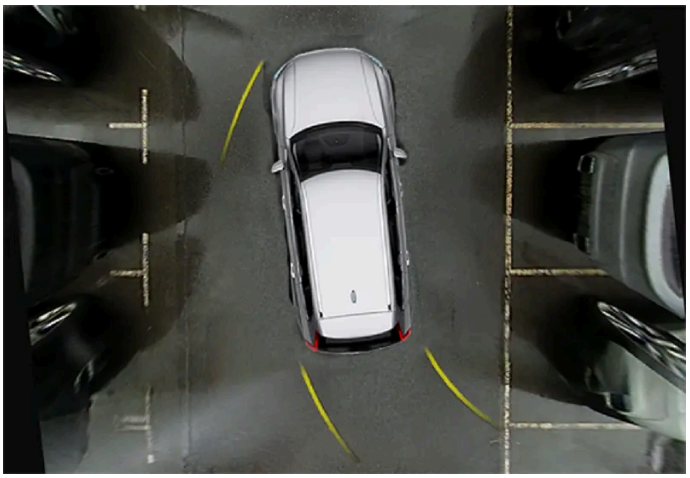
**Note**

- When reversing with a trailer that is not electrically connected to the vehicle, the screen guide lines show the path the **vehicle** will take – not the trailer.
- The screen does not show guide lines when a trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Guide lines are not shown when zooming in.

**Important**

- Bear in mind that when the rearward camera view is selected, the screen only shows the area behind the vehicle – pay attention to the sides and front of the vehicle when steering while reversing.
- The same applies to the reverse – pay attention to what is happening with the rear parts of the vehicle when the front camera view is selected.
- Note that the guide lines show the **shortest** path – pay extra attention to ensure that the vehicle sides do not come in contact with/travel over anything when steering while driving forward or that the vehicle front moves toward/over anything when steering while reversing.

**Trajectory lines in 360° view***



360° view with trajectory lines

In the 360° view, trajectory lines are shown behind, in front of, or to the sides of the vehicle, depending on the direction of travel.

- When driving forward: Front lines
- When backing up: Side lines and rear lines

When the front or rear camera is selected, the trajectory lines will be shown regardless of the vehicle's direction of travel.

With a side camera selected, the trajectory lines will only be shown if the vehicle is backing up.

**Trajectory lines for a towbar***

Towbar with trajectory line

1 **Towbar** - activate trajectory lines for towbar.

2 **Zoom** - zoom in/out.

To use the camera when hitching a trailer:

1. Tap **Towbar** (1).

> The trajectory line for the towbar's anticipated path toward the vehicle will appear and the vehicle's trajectory lines will disappear.
> Trajectory lines cannot be displayed for both the vehicle and the towbar at the same time.

2. Tap **Zoom** (2) for a close-up view for more precise maneuvering.

> The camera will zoom in.

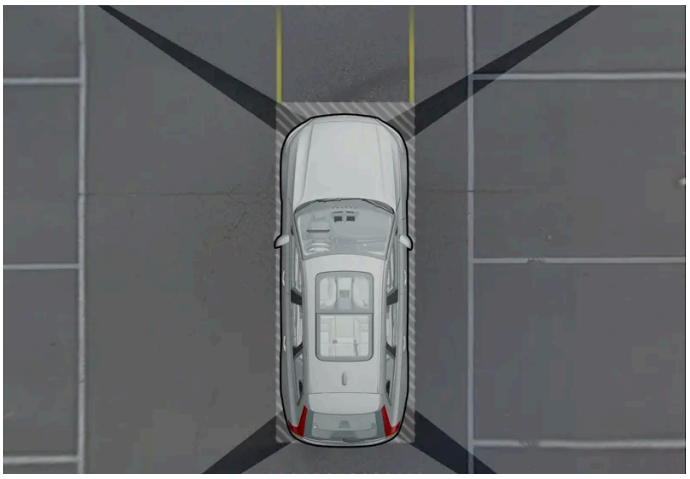
* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Camera

# 10.13.3.5. Location and field of vision of Park Assist Cameras*

The Park Assist Cameras (PAC[1]) can individually show rear, front, left or right camera views. You can also get a combined 360° view showing the views from all sides of the vehicle.

## 360° view*



Example of parking cameras' fields of vision and approximate coverage areas.

The **360° view** function activates all Park Assist Cameras and all four sides of the vehicle are shown in the center display at once to help the driver see what is around the vehicle while maneuvering at low speeds. From the 360° view, each camera view can be activated separately. Tap the screen to display the camera symbols and select a view.

The active cameras will be indicated by a camera symbol on the vehicle symbol in the center display.

If the vehicle is equipped with **Park Assist System***, the distance to detected obstacles will be illustrated by fields in different colors.

The cameras can be activated automatically or manually.

## Back

The rear camera is located above the license plate.

The rear camera shows a wide area behind the vehicle. On certain models, part of the bumper and the towbar (if installed) may be visible.

Objects in the center display may appear to be leaning slightly. This is normal.

## Front camera

The front Park Assist Camera is located in the grille.

The front camera can be useful when pulling out from areas with limited visibility, such as when pulling out of a garage. The front camera is active at speeds up to 25 km/h (16 mph) and is automatically turned off when the vehicle exceeds this speed.

If the vehicle does not reach a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) and speed falls below 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute after the front camera turns off, the camera will be reactivated.

## Side cameras

The side cameras are located in the rearview mirrors.

The side cameras can show views along each side of the vehicle.

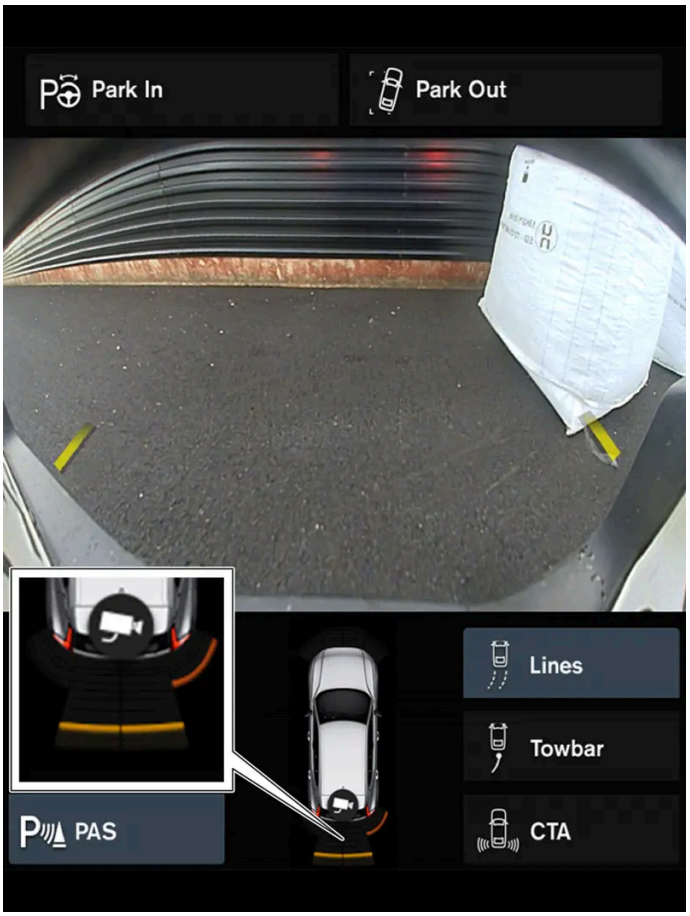
* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Camera

# 10.13.3.6. Park Assist sensor field

If the vehicle is equipped with Park Assist (PAS[1]), distances will be shown in the Park Assist Camera's (PAC[2]) 360° view with colored fields for each sensor that has detected an obstacle.

## Front and rear sensors




The screen can display colored sensor fields on the vehicle symbol.

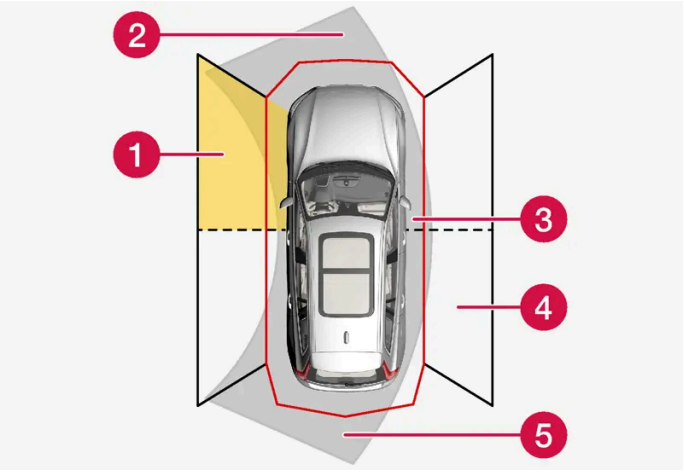
| The front and rear fields change colors (from yellow to orange to red) as the vehicle moves closer to an obstacle. | |
|---|---|
| **Field color rearward** | **Distance in meters (feet)** |
| Yellow | 0.6-1.5 (2.0-4.9) |
| Orange | 0.3–0.6 (1.0–2.0) |
| Red | 0-0.3 (0-1.0) |

| **Field color forward** | **Distance in meters (feet)** |
|---|---|
| Yellow | 0.6–0.8 (2.0–2.6) |
| Orange | 0.3–0.6 (1.0–2.0) |
| Red | 0-0.3 (0-1.0) |

When the sensor field color is red, the audible pulsing sounds will change to a continuous tone.

## Side sensor fields

Warning signals vary depending on the vehicle's intended direction of travel. Depending on the steering wheel position, warnings may be given for obstacles diagonally in front of or behind the vehicle, not only directly behind the vehicle.




Parking sensor sectors where obstacles can be detected.

1 Left-side front sensor field

2 Obstacle sector in the vehicle's intended direction of travel forward – varies according to steering wheel position

3 Sector with red field color and rapidly pulsing tone

4 Right-side rear sensor field

5 Obstacle sector in the vehicle's intended direction of travel rearward – varies according to steering wheel position.

| The color of the side field changes as the vehicle moves closer to the object – from yellow to red. | |
|---|---|
| **Side field color** | **Distance in meters (feet)** |
| Yellow | 0.25–0.9 (0.8–3.0) |
| Red | 0–0.25 (0–0.8) |

When the sensor field is red, the audible pulsing signal will become more rapid.

[1] Park Assist System

[2] Park Assist Camera

# 10.14. Camera and radar sensor

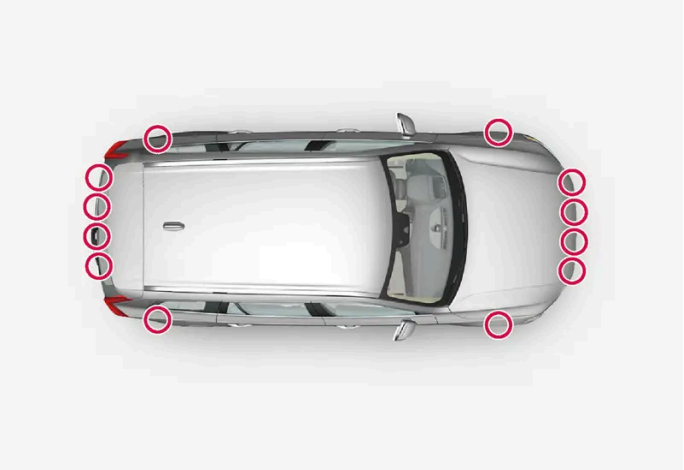
## 10.14.1. Recommended maintenance for the camera and radar units

In order for the camera and radar units to function properly, they must be kept free of dirt, ice, snow, etc. and should be washed regularly with water and car washing detergent.

**Note**

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors could cause false warnings, reduced function, or no function.

The areas that should be kept clean, on both the left and right sides of the vehicle, are marked in the following illustrations.



Location of the parking sensors around the vehicle

Location of front camera and radar sensor

Location of rear radar sensors

- For best possible performance, it is important to keep the areas in front of the sensors clean.
- Do not attach any objects, tape or decals to the surface of the sensors.
- Clean the camera lenses regularly using lukewarm water and car washing detergent. Wash gently to avoid scratching the lens.

> **Important**
>
> Only a workshop may perform maintenance on driver support components – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 10.14.2. Camera and radar unit symbols and messages

Here are examples of some of the messages and symbols related to the camera and radar units that may be displayed in the instrument panel.

## Sensor blocked

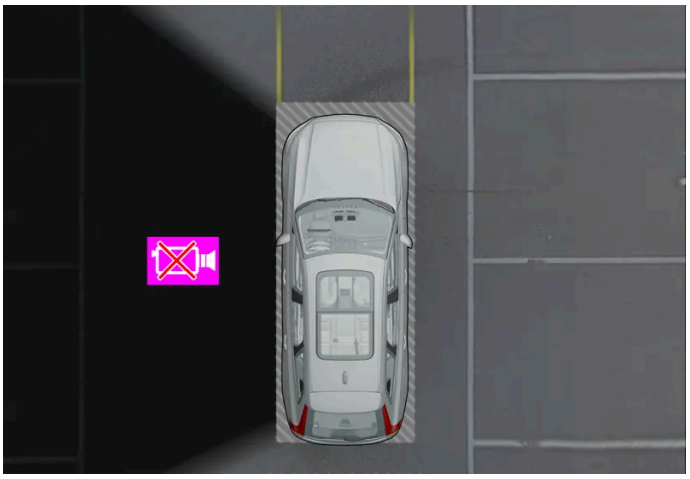
If this symbol and the message **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual** is displayed in the instrument panel, it means that the camera and radar unit are unable to detect other vehicles, cyclists, pedestrians and large animals in front of the vehicle and that the vehicle's camera and radar-based functions may be obstructed.

The following table shows some of the situations that can cause the message to be displayed, and suggested actions:

| Cause | Action |
|---|---|
| The area of the windshield in front of the camera/radar sensor is dirty or covered by ice or snow. | Clean the windshield in front of the camera/radar sensor and remove dirt, ice and snow. |
| Thick fog, heavy rain or snow is blocking the radar signals or the camera's range of visibility. | No action. Heavy precipitation may sometimes prevent the camera/radar sensor from functioning. |
| Water or snow is spraying/swirling up and blocking the radar signals or the camera's range of visibility. | No action. Very wet or snow-covered roads may sometimes prevent the camera/radar sensor from functioning. |
| There is dirt between the inside of the windshield and the camera/radar sensor. | Consult a workshop to have the area of the windshield on the inside of the camera's casing cleaned. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended. |
| Bright sunlight. | No action. The camera/radar sensor will reset automatically when lighting conditions improve. |

### Defective camera

If a camera sector is dark and contains this symbol, this indicates that the camera is not functioning properly.



Example indicating that the vehicle's left camera is malfunctioning.

A dark camera sector may also be displayed in the following situations, but **without** the defective camera symbol:

- a door is open
- the tailgate is open
- a rearview mirror is folded in

### Rear Park Assist Camera

**Warning**

Be extra cautious when reversing if this symbol is shown when a trailer, bike carrier or similar is attached and electrically connected to the vehicle.

The symbol indicates that the rear parking assist sensors are **deactivated** and will not warn of any obstacles.

---

## 10.14.3. Camera and radar unit limitations

The camera and radar used by several of the driver support functions have certain limitations, which also affect the functions using the camera and radar units. The driver should be aware of the following limitations:

### Common camera and radar limitations

#### Obstructed camera

Do not place, affix or mount anything in front of or around the camera and radar units – this could disrupt camera- and radar-based functions. It could cause functions to be reduced, deactivated completely or to produce an incorrect function response.

#### High temperatures

If the temperature in the passenger compartment is very high, the camera and radar will switch off temporarily for approx. 15 minutes after the engine is started to protect their electronic components. When the temperature has cooled sufficiently, the units will automatically restart.

#### Damaged windshield

When a camera or radar is mounted in the windshield, the following also applies:

- If there are cracks, scratches or stone chips in front of the unit covering an area of about 0.5 × 3.0 mm (0.02 × 0.12 in.) or more, contact a workshop[1] to have the windshield replaced.
- Volvo advises **against** repairing cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the unit – the entire windshield should instead be replaced.
- Before replacing the windshield, contact a workshop[1] to verify that the right windshield has been ordered and installed.
- The same type of windshield wipers or wipers approved by Volvo should be used for replacement.
- If the windshield is replaced, the camera and radar sensor must be recalibrated by a workshop[1] to help ensure proper functioning of all of the vehicle's camera and radar-based systems.

> **Note**
>
> Failure to take action could result in reduced performance for the driver support systems that use the camera and/or radar units. It could cause functions to be reduced, deactivated completely or to produce an incorrect function response.

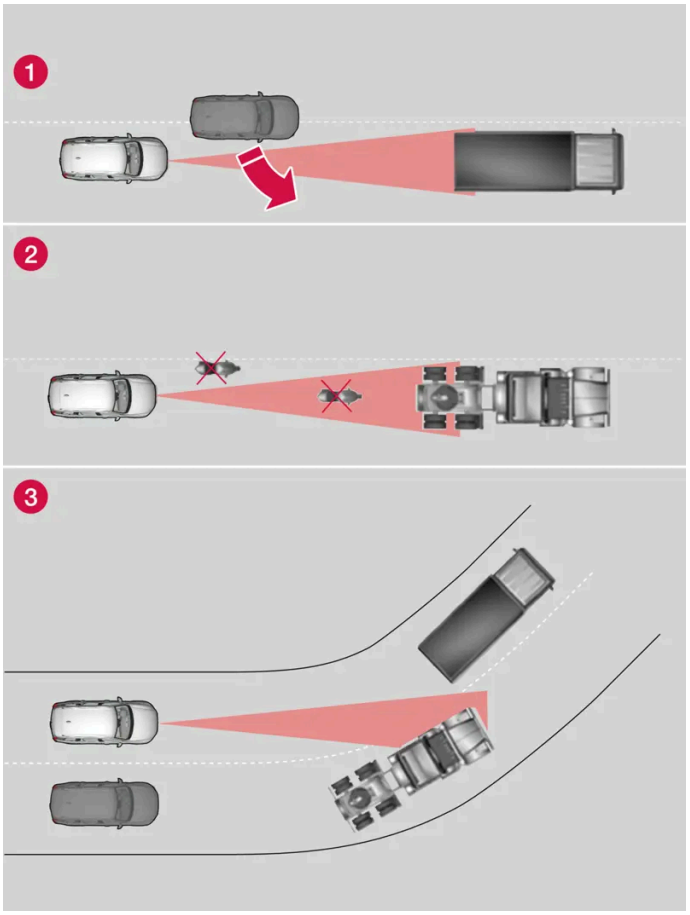
## Additional radar limitations

#### Vehicle speed

The radar sensor's ability to detect a vehicle ahead is significantly reduced if the speed of the vehicle ahead differs greatly from your vehicle's speed.

#### Limited field of vision

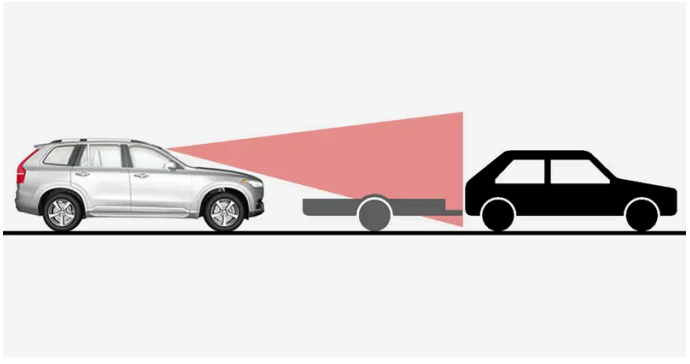
The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. In some situations, it may detect a vehicle later than expected or not at all.




The radar sensor's field of vision

1. The radar sensor's detection of vehicles very close to your vehicle may be delayed in certain situations, e.g. if a vehicle pulls in between your vehicle and the vehicle directly ahead.
2. Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles that are not driving in the center of the lane may remain undetected.
3. In curves, the radar may detect the a different vehicle than intended or lose sight of a target vehicle.

**Low trailers**



Low trailer in the radar shadow

Low trailers may also be difficult or even impossible for the radar to detect. The driver should be extra alert when driving behind vehicles towing low trailers when Adaptive Cruise Control* or Pilot Assist* is activated.

## Additional camera limitations

#### Reduced visibility

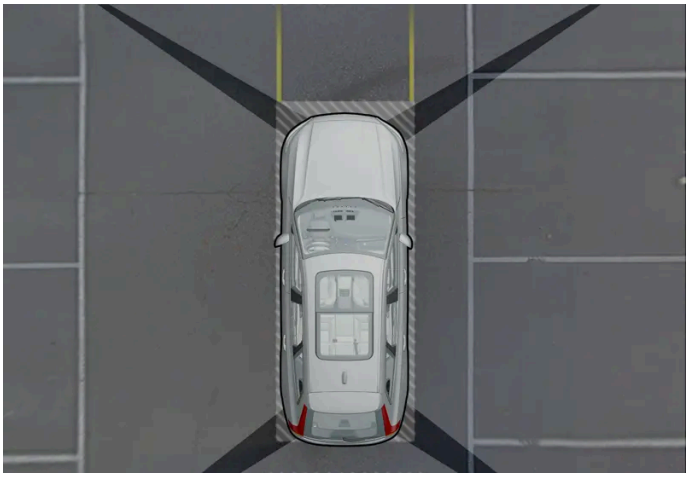
Cameras have the same limitations as the human eye. In other words, their “vision" is impaired by adverse weather conditions such as heavy snowfall/rain, dense fog, swirling dust/snow, etc. These conditions may reduce the function of systems that depend on the camera or cause these systems to temporarily stop functioning.

Strong sunlight, reflections from the road surface, ice or snow covering the road, a dirty road surface, or unclear lane marker lines may drastically reduce the camera’s ability to detect the side of a lane, a pedestrian, a cyclist, a large animal or another vehicle.

Bicycle holders or other accessories mounted behind the vehicle may obstruct the camera's view.

## Additional Park Assist Camera* limitations

#### Blind sectors



There are "blind" sectors between the cameras' fields of vision.

With the Park Assist Camera's 360° view* selected, objects/obstacles may not be detected if they are located in the "joints" where the edges of the individual camera views meet.

> **Warning**
>
> Even if it seems as though only a fairly small section of the screen image is obstructed, this may mean that a relatively large sector is hidden and obstacles there may not be detected until they are very near the vehicle.

#### Lighting conditions

The camera image is automatically adjusted according to the current lighting conditions. This means that the brightness and quality of the image may vary slightly. Poor lighting conditions may result in reduced image quality.

[1] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

# 10.14.4. Camera

The camera is used by several driver support systems to e.g. detect lane marker lines or road signs.

Location of the camera

The camera is used by the following functions:

- Adaptive Cruise Control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Lane Keeping Aid*
- City Safety
- Steering assistance at risk of collision
- Driver Alert Control*
- Road Sign Information*
- Active high beams*
- Park Assist*

> **Important**
>
> Do not attempt to access the camera with sharp or foreign objects through the ventilation openings as this could damage the equipment.

* Option/accessory.

# 10.14.5. Radar sensor

Radar is used by several driver support systems to detect other vehicles.

Location of the front radar sensor

The radar sensor is used by the following functions:

- Distance Alert*
- Adaptive Cruise Control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Lane Keeping Aid
- City Safety
- Steering assistance at risk of collision

Any modifications to the radar sensor may make its use illegal.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.14.6. Radar sensor type approval

The type approval for the vehicle's radar units for adaptive cruise control* (ACC [1]), Pilot Assist* and BLIS* [2] are found here.

| Market | ACC & PA | BLIS | Type approval |
|---|---|---|---|
| Canada | ✓ | | FCC ID: L2C0054TR IC: 3432A-0054TR<br>FCC ID: L2C0055TR IC: 3432A-0055TR |
| | | ✓ | Canada Standard RSS-310 |
| USA | ✓ | | FCC ID: L2C0054TR IC: 3432A-0054TR<br>FCC ID: L2C0055TR IC: 3432A-0055TR |
| | | ✓ | FCC ID: NBG01RS4 |

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Ce dispositif de radiocommunication de catégorie II respecte la norme CNR-310 d'Industrie Canada. Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

(1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et

(2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada a applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée à condition que l'appareil ne produise pas de brouillage préjudiciable et qu'il accepte tout brouillage, même celui susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

CAUTION TO USERS: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Note: This equipment complies with radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Adaptive Cruise Control

[2] Blind Spot Information

---

# 10.15. Driver support systems

The vehicle is equipped with a number of driver support systems that can provide the driver with active or passive assistance in various situations.

The systems can, for example, help the driver:

- maintain a set speed
- maintain a set time interval to the vehicle ahead
- help prevent a collision by warning the driver and applying the brakes
- park the vehicle.

Some of the systems are standard and others are options. This also varies from market to market.

> **Warning**
>
> The functions are supplementary aids – they cannot manage all situations in all conditions.
>
> The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and in accordance with applicable traffic rules and regulations.

---

# 10.16. Driver support safety check at start

When you start the vehicle after the ignition has been completely switched off, a safety check of the vehicle's driver support systems will be displayed in the instrument panel. The check shows which driver support functions the vehicle has and if they are ready to be used.

## The safety check is shown in the instrument panel

The illustration shows a 12" instrument panel

The illustration shows an 8" instrument panel

The green dots indicate that everything looks good. If any system needs an extra check, this will be indicated by an orange dot and a message in the instrument panel.

> **Note**
>
> Available driver support systems may vary depending on the market, options, car model and model year.

# 10.17. Driver support warnings

If you find that the vehicle is acting in a way that you did not expect, it may be that one of the vehicle's safety-related functions has been activated.

## What is happening in your vehicle?

There are a number of functions in your vehicle that can actively help to improve safety in traffic, both for you and for other road users. To help prepare you in the event any of the functions is suddenly activated, an overview is provided here of some of the functions and how they might react. If a function is activated, you can also be notified of this via a text message in the instrument panel.

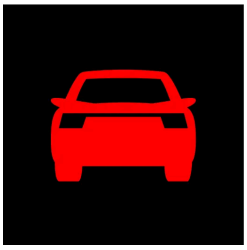
> **Note**
>
> Read the individual parts about each system to fully understand the functions and be notified of important warnings.

## Warning with symbols, sounds, lights or vibration

The safety functions in your vehicle can alert you in different ways. They can provide alerts through e.g. vibrations in the steering wheel, brake pulsations, visible or audible signals, or through symbols in the instrument panel.

Alerts can also be shown in the head-up display*.

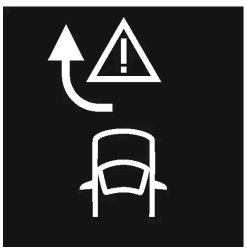
## City Safety™



City Safety is a function that can help prevent or mitigate a collision with pedestrians, cyclists, large animals or other vehicles. Light, sound and pulsations in the brake pedal are provided to alert of a possible collision and help the driver act in time to prevent it. If the driver does not react to the warning and the risk of collision is determined to be imminent, City Safety can automatically apply the brakes.

- Brake pedal pulsations, lights and audible signals.
- The brakes will be applied in certain situations if the driver does not act within a reasonable amount of time.

## Steering assistance at risk of collision

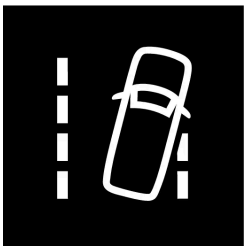


The assistance during collision risks function can help you reduce the risk of the vehicle inadvertently veering out of its lane and/or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle. The function can assist by helping you steer the vehicle back into its own lane and/or swerve out of the way.

When you start the function, three subfunctions will be activated that can assist in various situations. How the function is experienced can therefore differ depending on which subfunction is activated.

- Run-Off Mitigation with steering assistance: If the camera detects that the vehicle is about to go off the edge of the road, the function may attempt to steer the vehicle back into its own lane. The function may also attempt to apply the brakes if it determines that steering assistance is insufficient. No steering or braking assistance will be provided if the turn signals are on or if the function determines that the driver is actively driving the vehicle.
- Steering assistance during collision risks from oncoming traffic: If the vehicle is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching, the function can provide steering assistance to help you steer the vehicle back into its own lane. No steering or braking assistance will be provided if the turn signals are on or if the function determines that the driver is actively driving the vehicle.
- Steering assistance during collision risks from behind: If the vehicle is about to leave its own lane while another vehicle is behind and to the side of your vehicle, in your blind spot or rapidly approaching from behind, the function can assist by steering the vehicle back into its own lane. The function can provide steering assistance even if the turn signals are on and you are actively driving the vehicle.

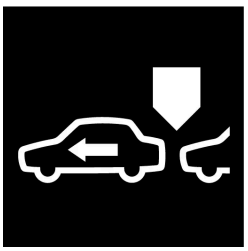
## Lane Keeping Aid (LKA [1])



Lane Keeping Aid can help you reduce the risk of the vehicle inadvertently veering out of its own lane. Because you can set preferences for how the function provides assistance, individual experiences of this safety function may vary.

- Assist: If the function detects that the vehicle is approaching a lane marker line, you will feel light pressure applied to the steering wheel. Both hands must be on the steering wheel for this function to work.
- Warning: If the function detects that the vehicle is approaching a lane marker line, you will be alerted through vibrations in the steering wheel.
- Both: You are alerted with vibrations and light pressure on the steering wheel.

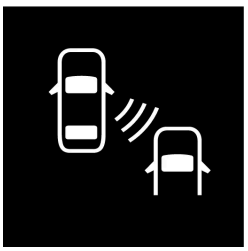
## Rear Collision Warning (RCW) *



Rear Collision Warning is a system that can help you avoid being hit from behind by an approaching vehicle. If the system detects a collision risk from behind, it can alert you and provide the following types of assistance depending on the situation.

- Intense flashes of the direction indicators.
- At lower speeds, the function can tension the seat belts by activating the seat belt tensioners and the Whiplash Protection System.
- If the vehicle is stationary, the brakes can be applied.

## Blind Spot Information (BLIS)



BLIS is designed to help provide assistance in heavy traffic with several lanes moving in the same direction by alerting the driver to rapidly approaching vehicles and to the presence of vehicles in the "blind spot" area behind and to the side of your vehicle.

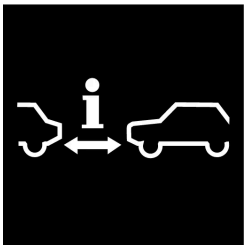
- Warning with an indicator light in the door mirror, with steady and flashing lights.

## Driver Alert Control (DAC)

The function is designed to catch the driver's attention if he/she starts driving inconsistently, for example, if the driver is distracted or starts to fall asleep.

- Audible signal combined with a symbol in the instrument panel and a message.

## Distance Alert* [2]



Distance Alert can warn you if the distance to the vehicle ahead decreases to an unsafe distance.

- A warning light and/or a symbol will appear in the windshield head-up-display. For this function to be possible, the vehicle must be equipped with a head-up-display*.

## Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)*

CTA is a function designed to alert the driver of crossing traffic when the vehicle is backing up.

- Audible signals from the left or right loudspeakers depending on the direction from which the object is approaching
- Icon in the driver's display
- Icon in the park assist camera's top view

## Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS)

WHIPS is a function that can help protect against whiplash injury. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and seat cushions as well as specially designed head restraints in the front seats.

> **Warning**
>
> The functions described here are supplementary aids - they cannot manage all situations in all conditions.
>
> The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and in accordance with applicable traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

[2] Distance Alert

---

# 10.18. Speed-dependent steering wheel resistance

Speed-dependent power steering increases the steering wheel resistance in pace with the vehicle's speed, which can help give the driver an enhanced feeling of control and stability. Steering is stiffer on highways. When parking and at low speeds, it will be easier to move the steering wheel.

## Reduced power

In rare situations, the power steering may need to work at reduced power and the steering wheel may then feel more difficult to move. This may happen when the power steering becomes too hot and needs to be temporarily cooled. It can also happen if there is a disturbance in power supply.

If there is reduced power, the message **Power steering Assistance temporarily reduced** and this symbol are shown in the instrument panel.

While the power steering is working at reduced power, the driver support functions and systems with steering assistance are not available.

> **Warning**
>
> If the temperature rises too high, the power steering may be forced to switch off completely. In such a situation, the driver display shows the message **Power steering failure Stop safely** along with a symbol.

## Changing the level of steering wheel resistance*

In INDIVIDUAL drive mode, the level of steering wheel resistance can be adjusted.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **Drive Modes** → **Steering Force**.

Steering wheel resistance settings can only be accessed if the vehicle is stationary or is moving straight ahead at a low speed.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.19. Drive modes when using time interval to vehicle

The driver can choose different drive modes to determine how driver support should maintain a time interval to the vehicle ahead.

Settings are made using the DRIVE MODE controls.

Select one of the following:

- **Eco** - Driver support will focus on providing good fuel economy, which will increase the time interval to the vehicle ahead.
- **Comfort** - Driver support will focus on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead as smoothly as possible.
- **Dynamic*** - Driver support will focus on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead more exactly, which could mean faster acceleration and heavier braking.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 10.20. IntelliSafe – driver support and safety

IntelliSafe is Volvo Cars' philosophy regarding vehicle safety. IntelliSafe consists of a number of systems [1] that are designed to help make driving safer, prevent accidents and protect passengers and other road users.

> **Warning**
>
> The functions are supplementary aids – they cannot manage all situations in all conditions.
>
> The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and in accordance with applicable traffic rules and regulations.

## Support

IntelliSafe has the following functions designed to help the driver operate the vehicle more safely.

- Active high beam
- Tunnel detection
- Pilot Assist
- Cross Traffic Alert*
- Blind Spot Information*
- Park Assist*
- Park Assist Pilot*
- Park Assist Camera*
- Road Sign Information*
- Electronic Stability Control
- Roll Stability Control

- Cruise control
- Adaptive Cruise Control*
- Rear Collision Warning
- Driver Alert Control
- All-Wheel Drive (AWD) [2]

## Prevention

IntelliSafe has the following functions designed to help the driver prevent accidents.

- City Safety
- Distance Alert*
- Lane Keeping Aid
- **Collision Avoidance**

## Protection

IntelliSafe has the following interacting functions to help protect the driver and passengers in certain situations in the event of an accident.

- Whiplash Protection System
- Seat belt with seat belt tensioner
- Airbags

> **Note**
>
> Read the individual parts about each system to fully understand the functions and be notified of important warnings.

[1] Some of these systems are standard, while others are options. This may vary depending on market, vehicle model and model year.

* Option/accessory.

[2] All Wheel Drive

---

# 10.21. Braking assist after a collision

In a collision in which the activation level is reached for the pyrotechnic seat belt tensioners or airbags, or if a collision with a large animal is detected, the vehicle's brakes will be automatically activated. This function is intended to help prevent or reduce the effects of any subsequent collision.

After a serious collision, it may no longer be possible to control and steer the vehicle. In order to avoid or mitigate a possible further collision with a vehicle or an object in the vehicle's path, the brake assist system is activated automatically to help stop

the vehicle safely.

The brake lights and hazard warning flashers are activated during braking. When the vehicle has stopped, the hazard warning flashers will continue to flash and the parking brake will be applied.

If braking is not appropriate, e.g. if there is a risk of being hit by passing traffic, the driver can override the system by depressing the accelerator pedal.

This function assumes that the brake system is intact after a collision.

---

# 11. Starting and driving

# 11.1. Starting and switching off vehicle

## 11.1.1. Electronic immobilizer

The electronic immobilizer is a start inhibitor that helps prevent the vehicle from being started by an unauthorized person.

The vehicle can only be started with the right remote key.

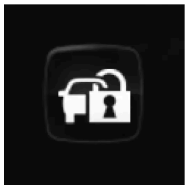
The following instrument panel error messages are related to the electronic immobilizer:

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Vehicle key not found | Remote key not recognized during start. Place the remote key on the key symbol in the cup holder and try to start the vehicle again. |

### Remote immobilizer with tracking system [1]

The vehicle is equipped with a system that makes it possible to track and locate the vehicle and to remotely activate the immobilizer to prevent the vehicle from being started. Contact your nearest Volvo retailer for more information and assistance activating the system.

The following instrument panel error messages are related to the remote immobilizer with tracking system:

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
|  | Remotely immobilised Vehicle not possible to start | The remote immobilizer with tracking system is activated. The vehicle cannot be started. Contact Volvo On Call Service Center. |

[1] Only certain markets and in combination with Volvo On Call.

# 11.1.2. Starting the vehicle

The vehicle can be started using the start knob in the tunnel console when the remote key is in the passenger compartment.

Start knob in the tunnel console.

> **Warning**
>
> Before starting:
>
> - Buckle your seat belt.
> - Adjust the seat, steering wheel and mirrors.
> - Make sure you can fully depress the brake pedal.

The remote key is not physically used to start the ignition because the vehicle is equipped with the keyless Passive Start system.

To start the vehicle:

1. The remote key must be inside the vehicle. For vehicles with Passive Start, the key must be in the front section of the passenger compartment. With the optional keyless locking/unlocking function*, the key can be anywhere in the vehicle.
2. Press and hold down the brake pedal [1] as far as possible.
3. Turn the start knob clockwise and release. The control will automatically return to the original position.

**Warning**

- Never use more than one inlay mat at a time on the driver's floor. If any other type of floor mat is used, remove the original mat from the driver's seat floor before driving. All types of mats must be securely anchored in the attachment points in the floor. Make sure the floor mat does not impede the movement of the brake pedal or accelerator pedal in any way, as this could be a serious safety hazard.
- Volvo's floor mats are specially manufactured for your vehicle. They must be properly secured in the attachment points in the floor to help ensure they cannot slide and become trapped under the pedals.

The starter motor will crank until the engine starts or until overheating protection is triggered.

## Error messages

If the **Vehicle key not found** message is shown in the instrument panel at start, place the remote key at the backup reader and then make a new start attempt.

Location of the backup reader in the tunnel console.

**Note**

When the remote key is placed in the backup reader, make sure that no other vehicle keys, metal objects or electronic devices (e.g. cellular phones, tablets, laptops or chargers) are in the backup reader. Multiple vehicle keys close to each other in the backup reader can disrupt their functionality.

**Important**

If the engine has not responded after 3 attempts – wait for 3 minutes before starting a new attempt. Starting capability increases if the starter battery is given time to recover.

**Warning**

**Never** remove the remote control key from the vehicle while driving or the vehicle is being towed.

**Warning**

- Always remove the remote key from the passenger compartment when you leave the vehicle and make sure the ignition is in mode **0**.
- Always put the gear selector in P and apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle. Never leave the vehicle unsupervised while the engine is running.
- Always open the garage door fully and make sure that ventilation is very good before starting the engine in a garage. The exhaust fumes produced by the vehicle contain carbon monoxide, which is invisible and odorless but very toxic.

**Important**

- When starting in cold weather, the automatic transmission may shift up at slightly higher engine speeds than normal until the automatic transmission fluid reaches normal operating temperature.
- Do not race a cold engine immediately after starting. This could prevent fluids from properly lubricating vital components in the engine before it has reached the proper operating temperature.
- The engine should be idling when the gear selector is moved. Never accelerate until the gear is fully engaged. Accelerating rapidly before a gear is properly engaged could lead to harder wear of components.
- To help prevent the transmission oil from overheating, select P or N when idling at a standstill for prolonged periods of time.

**Note**

With a cold start, idling speed may be considerably higher than normal for certain engine types. This is done to get the emissions system up to normal operating temperature as quickly as possible, which minimizes exhaust emissions and protects the environment.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If the vehicle is moving, it is only necessary to turn the start knob clockwise to start the engine.

---

# 11.1.3. Jump starting using another battery

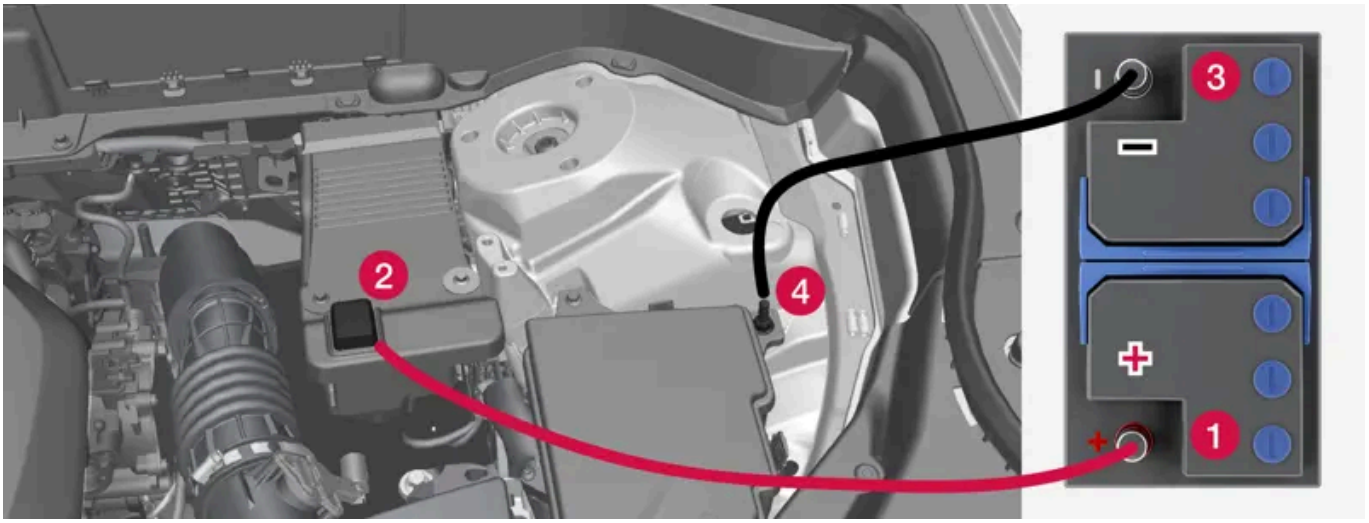
If the start battery is discharged, current from another battery can be used to start the vehicle.

**Important**

The charging point in mild hybrid vehicles is only intended for jump-starting your own vehicle. The charging point is not intended for jump-starting another vehicle. Using the charging point to start another vehicle could cause a fuse to blow, which would cause the charging point to stop working.

In mild hybrid vehicles [1], a discharged start battery can be caused by a blown fuse that is preventing charging. If a fuse has blown, **12 V Battery Fuse failure Service required** will be displayed in the instrument panel. Volvo recommends contacting an

authorized Volvo workshop.




Jumper cable connecting points. Engine compartment appearance may vary depending on vehicle model and equipment level.

To avoid short circuits or other damage, the following steps are recommended when jump starting the battery using another battery:

1. Put the ignition in mode 0.
2. Make sure the auxiliary battery (the battery used to jump start the discharged battery) has a voltage of 12 volts.
3. If the auxiliary battery is in another vehicle, turn off that vehicle's engine and make sure that the vehicles are not touching each other.
4. Clamp the red jumper cable onto the auxiliary battery's positive (+) terminal (1).

> **Important**
>
> Connect the jump cable carefully to prevent short circuits with other components in the engine compartment.

5. Fold back the cover over your vehicle's positive (+) jump start terminal (2).
6. Clamp the other end of the red jumper cable to your vehicle's positive (+) jump start terminal (2).
7. Clamp the black jumper cable onto the auxiliary battery's negative (-) terminal (3).
8. Clamp the other end of the black jumper cable to your vehicle's negative (-) ground point (4).
9. Make sure the jumper cables are securely attached to help prevent sparks while jump starting.
10. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for a few minutes at a higher idling speed than normal, about 1500 rpm.
11. Start the engine of the vehicle with the dead battery.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Important**

Do not touch the connections between the cable and the vehicle during the start attempt. Risk of sparking.

**12.** Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order – first the black cables and then the red cables.

Make sure that none of the clamps of the black jumper cables come into contact with either vehicle's positive (+) jump start terminals or either of the red jumper cable's connected clamps.

**Warning**

48 V voltage may be dangerous if handled incorrectly. Do not touch anything on batteries that is not clearly described in this Owner's Manual.

- Never use a 48 V support battery to jump start the vehicle.
- External electrical equipment may not under any circumstance be connected to the 48 V battery.
- Only a workshop may replace or perform service on the 48 V battery – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

**Warning**

**PROPOSITION 65 WARNING!** Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

**Warning**

- Batteries generate hydrogen gas, which is flammable and explosive.
- Do not connect the jumper cable to any part of the fuel system or to any moving parts. Avoid touching hot manifolds.
- Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, fabrics or painted surfaces.
- If contact occurs, flush the affected area immediately with water. Obtain medical help immediately if eyes are affected.
- Never expose the battery to open flame or electric spark. Do not smoke near the battery. Failure to follow the instructions for jump starting can lead to injury.

**Note**

If the starter battery has such a low charge level that the vehicle does not have normal electrical functions and the engine must then be jump-started with an external battery or a battery charger, the Start/Stop function may remain activated. If the Start/Stop function shortly thereafter auto-stops the engine, there is a huge risk that auto-start of the engine will fail since the battery had not had time to recharge sufficiently.

If the vehicle has been jump-started or if there has not been enough time for the battery to be charged with a battery charger, the Start/Stop function should be temporarily deactivated until the battery has been recharged sufficiently. At an ambient temperature of about +15 °C (about 60 °F), the battery must be charged by the vehicle for at least 1 hour. At lower ambient temperatures, the charging time can increase to 3-4 hours. The recommendation is to charge the battery with an external battery charger, if possible.

[1] Vehicles with engine variants B4, B5 or B6 are mild hybrids.

---

# 11.1.4. Switching off the vehicle

The vehicle can be switched off using the start knob in the tunnel console.

Start knob in the tunnel console.

To switch off the vehicle:

1. Turn the start knob clockwise and release to switch off the vehicle. The control will automatically return to the original position.

If the vehicle rolls:

1. Turn clockwise and hold the knob until the vehicle switches off.

---

# 11.1.5. Ignition modes

The vehicle's ignition can be put in various modes (levels) to make different functions available.

To enable the use of a limited number of functions when the engine is not running, the ignition can be put in one of three different levels: **0**, **I** and **II**. These levels are referred to as "ignition modes" in the Owner's Manual.

The following table shows which functions are available in each ignition mode:

| Mode | Functions |
|---|---|
| 0 | • The odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated[1].<br>• The power* seats can be adjusted.<br>• The center display is activated and can be used[1].<br>• The infotainment system can be used[1].<br>In this mode, the functions are available for a limited time and then switch off automatically. |

| Mode | Functions |
|---|---|
| I | • The panoramic roof, power windows, 12-volt electrical socket in the passenger compartment, Bluetooth, navigation, phone, blower and windshield wipers can be used.<br>• The power seats can be adjusted.<br>• The 12-volt electrical socket* in the cargo compartment can be used.<br>**Electrical current will be taken from the battery in this ignition mode.** |
| II | • The headlights illuminate.<br>• Warning/indicator lights illuminate for 5 seconds.<br>• A number of other systems are activated. However, seat and rear window heating can only be activated when the engine is running.<br>**This ignition mode uses a lot of current from the battery and should be avoided whenever possible!** |

[1] Also activated when the door is opened.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 11.1.6. Selecting ignition mode

The vehicle's ignition can be put in various modes (levels) to make different functions available.

## Selecting an ignition mode

Start knob in the tunnel console.

- **Ignition mode 0** – Unlock the vehicle and keep the remote key in the passenger compartment.

> **Note**
>
> To set level I or II **without** engine start – do **not** depress the brake pedal (or clutch pedal for vehicles with manual transmission) when selecting this ignition mode.

- **Ignition mode I** – Turn the start knob clockwise and release it. The control will automatically return to the original position.

- **Ignition mode II** – Turn the start knob clockwise and hold it there for approx. 5 seconds. Release the knob, which will automatically return to its original position.
- **Back to ignition mode 0** – To return to ignition mode 0 from modes I and II, turn the start knob clockwise and release it. The control will automatically return to the original position.

---

# 11.2. Transmission

---

## 11.2.1. The kickdown function

Kickdown can be used when maximum acceleration is needed e.g. when passing.

When the accelerator pedal is depressed all the way to the floor (past the normal full accelerator position), the transmission will automatically engage kickdown, i.e. immediately shift down to a lower gear.

If the accelerator pedal is released from the kickdown position, the transmission will automatically shift up again.

**Safety function**

The transmission control module is equipped with a downshift protection feature to help prevent the engine from overheating.

In some conditions, the transmission will prevent downshifting/kickdown if this would lead to such high engine speed (rpm) that the engine could be damaged. If the driver still attempts downshifting or kickdown at a high rpm, nothing will happen and the original gear will remain selected.

With kickdown, the vehicle can downshift one or more steps at a time depending on the engine speed. The vehicle upshifts when the engine reaches its maximum rpm to prevent engine damage.

---

## 11.2.2. The Launch function*

Launch can be used to provide maximum acceleration from a standstill. The function is available for the drive modes: **Dynamic**, **Comfort** and **Individual**.

### Activating Launch

Make sure that the vehicle is stationary and that the wheels are pointing straight ahead.

1. Put the gear selector in D position.
2. Depress the brake pedal fully.
3. Then fully depress the accelerator pedal.
4. Release the brake pedal within 2 seconds.

> **Note**
>
> If the Launch function does not work, wait a few minutes to let the driveline reach working temperature before trying again.

> **Important**
>
> The driveline is exposed to wear when using Launch and the function is therefore only available a limited number of times.

* Option/accessory.

---

## 11.2.3. Transmission

The transmission is part of the vehicle's driveline (power transmission) between the engine and the drive wheels. The function of the transmission is to change gears depending on speed and power needs.

The vehicle has an 8-speed automatic transmission. The number of gears allows the engine's torque and power band to be effectively utilized.

Two of the gears are overdrive gears that save fuel when driving at a constant engine speed. With the automatic transmission, it is also possible to shift manually. The selected gear selector position will be displayed in the instrument panel.

---

## 11.2.4. Automatic transmission

Gear position is selected automatically to make driving as energy efficient as possible. The transmission also has a manual mode.

The transmission is available in two different versions. The gear selector indicates which transmission the vehicle has. The various gear selectors have different functions.

Overview of large gear selector and gear shift pattern in the instrument panel.

Overview of small gear selector and gear shift pattern in the instrument panel.

The selected gear selector position is displayed in the instrument panel:

P, R, N, D or M.

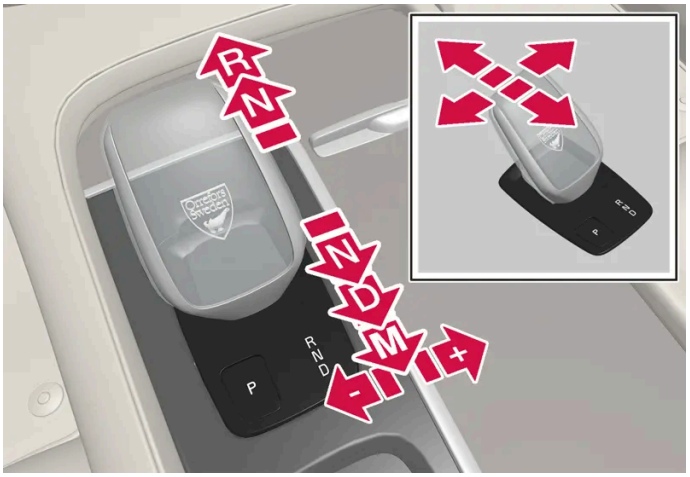
---

# 11.2.5. Shifting gears with automatic transmission

For the small gear selector, change gear position by pushing the spring-loaded gear selector forward or rearward, or to the side for manual shifting. For the large gear selector, you instead move the gear selector to the left for manual shifting.

## Selecting gears

Large gear selector and gear selector positions overview.




Small gear selector and gear selector positions overview.

## Gear selector positions

**Parking – P**

Overview of gear selector and gear position P for the small gear selector.

For the small gear selector, Park is activated using the P button next to the gear selector. For the large gear selector, Park is activated by moving the gear selector to position P.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

In the P position, the transmission is mechanically locked.

Select P position when the vehicle is parked. The vehicle can be started when it is in P position. The vehicle must be stationary when P is selected.

When parking – apply the parking brake before shifting to position P.

> **Warning**
>
> Always apply the parking brake when parking on an incline. Selecting a gear or putting the automatic transmission in **P** may not be sufficient to keep the vehicle stationary in all situations.

> **Note**
>
> The gear selector must be in position **P** in order to lock the vehicle and set the alarm.

### Help functions [1]

The system will switch to the P position automatically:

- if the ignition is switched off while D or R is selected and the vehicle is stationary.
- if the vehicle is moving at low speed and the driver unbuckles their seat belt and opens the driver's door without any pedal being depressed.

To park a vehicle with an unbuckled seat belt and open door – end P mode by shifting to R or D again.

If the vehicle is switched off in gear position N, it will not automatically switch to the P position. This makes it possible to wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash.

#### Reverse – R

Select R when backing up. The vehicle must be stationary when R is selected.

#### Neutral – N

In N position, the vehicle can roll freely. The vehicle can be started when it is in N position. Apply the parking brake if the vehicle is stationary with the gear selector in the N position.

To move to another gear position when N is selected, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition in mode II. For vehicles with the small gear selector, the engine must be running.

#### D drive mode

D is the normal driving gear position. The transmission shifts up or down automatically depending on acceleration and speed.

The vehicle must be stationary when the gear selector is moved from R to D.

**Manual position – M**

Overview of gear shift pattern in the instrument panel for large gear selector.

With position M, it is possible to shift gears manually. Engine braking will occur when the accelerator pedal is released.

The M position is selected by moving the gear selector to the side from D to the end position at "±".

- Push the gear selector forward toward + (plus) and release to shift up one gear.
- Pull the gear selector backward toward – (minus) and release to shift down one gear.
- Push the gear selector to the side to the end position at D to return to D mode.

Overview of gear shift pattern in the instrument panel for the small gear selector.

With position M, it is possible to shift gears manually. Engine braking will occur when the accelerator pedal is released.

M position is selected by moving the gear selector rearward from D.

- Push the gear selector to the right toward "+" (plus) and release to shift up one gear.
- Push the gear selector to the left toward "–" (minus) and release to shift down one gear.
- Push the gear selector rearward to return to D mode.

For smooth shifting and engine performance, the transmission will shift down automatically if the vehicle's speed becomes too low for the selected gear.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

[1] **Applies to vehicles with the small gear selector.**

---

# 11.2.6. Automatic transmission symbols and messages

If a problem occurs with the transmission, a symbol and a message are displayed in the instrument panel.

> **Important**
>
> Check the operating temperature of the transmission to help avoid damage to any of the drive system components. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol will appear in the instrument panel and a text message will be displayed. Follow the recommendations given.

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | A fault has occurred in the transmission.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel. |
| | Hot or overheated transmission.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel. |
| | Temporary fault in driveline.<br>Read the message in the instrument panel. |

---

# 11.2.7. All Wheel Drive (AWD)

All-wheel drive (AWD[1]), also called four-wheel drive, means that power is distributed to all four wheels, which improves traction.

To achieve the best traction, power is automatically directed to the wheels that have the best grip. The system continuously calculates the need for torque to the rear wheels, and can immediately redistribute up to half of the engine's torque to the rear wheels.

All-wheel drive also has a stabilizing effect at higher speeds. In normal driving conditions, most of the engine's power is directed to the front wheels. When the vehicle is stationary, all-wheel drive is always activated in preparation for maximum traction during acceleration.

All-wheel drive reacts differently depending on which drive mode is selected.

[1] All-wheel drive

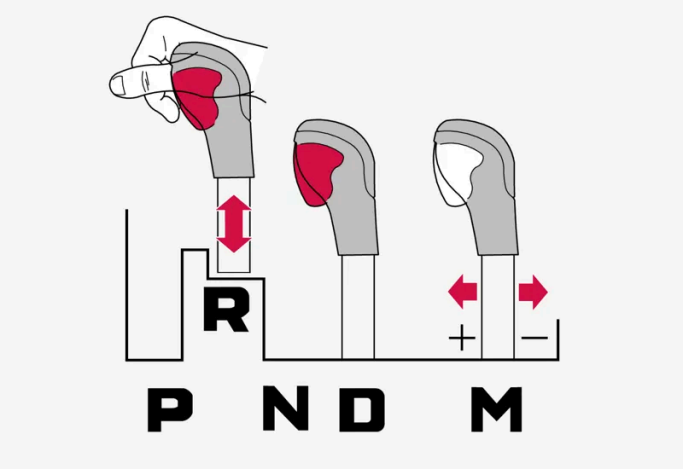
---

# 11.2.8. Shiftlock

The automatic transmission's shiftlock function helps prevent inadvertently moving the gear selector between different positions.

There are two types of shiftlocks: mechanical and automatic.

## Mechanical shiftlock




Shiftlock for vehicles with large gear selectors.

The gear selector can be moved back and forth between N and D. The other positions have a shiftlock that is operated using the lock button on the gear selector.

Press and hold the shiftlock button and move the gear selector forward or backward between P, R, N and D.

## Automatic shiftlock

The automatic shiftlock has a separate safety system.

**From Park – P or Neutral – N**

To move the gear selector from P or N to another gear selector position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition in mode II. For vehicles with the small gear selector, the engine must be running.

If the gear selector is in N and the vehicle has been stationary for at least 3 seconds (with or without the engine running), the gear selector will be locked in that position.

## Messages in the instrument panel

If the gear selector is locked in position a message will appear in the instrument panel e.g. **Gear lever Press brake pedal to activate gear lever**.

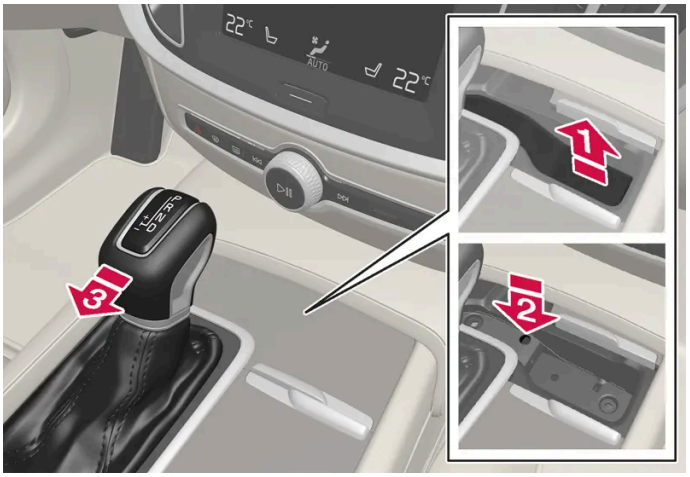
There is no mechanical shiftlock function.[1]

[1] Applies for vehicles with the small gear selector

---

# 11.2.9. Deactivating the automatic shiftlock[1]

If the vehicle does not have electrical current, the automatic shiftlock may be disengaged on vehicles equipped with the large gear selector. The shiftlock cannot be disengaged on vehicles equipped with the small gear selector.




Large gear selector overview.

If the vehicle cannot be driven (e.g. due to a discharged battery), the gear selector must be moved to the N position so that the vehicle can be moved.

1. 1
   Lift the rubber mat in the storage compartment in front of the gear selector. Locate the hole with a spring-loaded button in the bottom of the compartment.

2. 2
   Press a small screwdriver or similar object into the hole and hold it down.

3. 3
   Move the gear selector to N and release the button.

4. Replace the rubber mat.

Overview of small gear selector, where it is not possible to deactivate the shiftlock.

[1] The function is not available for vehicles with the small gear selector.

# 11.3. Brakes

# 11.3.1. Brakes

# 11.3.1.1. Brake Assist System

The brake enhancing system, (BAS[1]), helps increase braking force and can thereby reduce braking distance.

The system monitors the driver's braking habits and increases braking force when necessary. Braking force can be increased up to the point at which the ABS intervenes.

> **Note**
>
> When BAS is activated, depress and hold down the brake pedal as long as needed.

[1] Brake Assist System

# 11.3.1.2. Braking on salted roads

When driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake pads.

This could increase stopping distance. Maintain an extra large safety distance to the vehicle ahead. Make sure to also:

- Apply the brakes from time to time to help remove salt. Make sure braking does not pose a risk to any other road users.
- Gently apply the brakes when you have finished driving and before driving again.

---

# 11.3.1.3. Braking on wet roads

Prolonged driving in heavy rain without braking may cause braking effect to be slightly delayed the first time the brakes are applied.

This may also occur after washing the vehicle. It will then be necessary to apply greater pressure to the brake pedal. You should therefore maintain a greater distance to the vehicle ahead.

Firmly apply the brakes after washing the vehicle or driving on wet roads. This helps warm up the brake discs, enabling them to dry more quickly and protecting them against corrosion. Consider the current traffic situation when braking.

---

# 11.3.1.4. Brakes

The brake pedal is used to apply the vehicle's regular brakes, which are part of the brake system.

The vehicle is equipped with two brake circuits. If one brake circuit is damaged, the brake pedal may go down further when depressed. More pressure will then be required from the driver for normal braking effect.

The driver's pressure on the brake pedal is enhanced by a power braking function.

> **Warning**
>
> Power braking only functions if the engine is running.

If the brake pedal is used when the engine is turned off, the pedal will feel stiffer than usual and greater pressure must be applied to brake the vehicle.

In very hilly areas or when driving with a heavy load, engine braking in manual gear should be used to augment the brakes. Engine braking is most effective if the same gear is used both uphill and downhill. Use the Off Road drive mode to increase the engine braking effect when driving on steep downgrades at low speeds.

## Anti-lock brakes

The vehicle is equipped with an Anti-lock Braking System (ABS [1]), which helps prevent the wheels from locking and helps maintain steering control when braking. Vibrations may be felt from the brake pedal when ABS is operating, which is normal.

After the vehicle is started, a brief test of the ABS system is automatically performed when the driver releases the brake pedal. An additional automatic test of the system may be performed when the vehicle is traveling at a low speed. During the test, the brake pedal may feel as though it is pulsating.

## Symbols in the instrument panel

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| [2] [3] | Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill brake fluid and check to determine the reason for the loss of brake fluid. |
| | |
| [2] [3] | Steady glow for 2 seconds after the engine is started: Automatic function check.<br>Steady glow for more than 2 seconds: Fault in the ABS system. The vehicle's regular brake system is still working, but without the ABS function. |
| | |

**Warning**

If the warning symbols for both brake fault and ABS fault are lit simultaneously, there may be a fault in the brake system.

- If the brake fluid reservoir level is normal when this occurs, drive carefully to the nearest workshop to have the brake system checked - an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.
- If the brake fluid has fallen below the MIN level in the brake fluid reservoir, the vehicle should not be driven until the brake fluid has been filled. The reason for the brake fluid loss must be checked.

[1] Anti-lock Braking System

[2] In Canada.

[3] In the US.

## 11.3.1.5. Maintenance of the brake system

Regularly check the brake system components for wear.

To keep the vehicle as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service schedule specified in the Warranty and Maintenance Records Information booklet. After replacing brake pads and brake discs, braking effect is not adapted until they are "broken in" by driving a few hundred kilometers (miles). Compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying greater pressure to the brake pedal. Volvo recommends only using brake pads approved for your Volvo.

> **Important**
>
> The brake system's components should be regularly checked for wear.
>
> Contact a workshop for advice on how to do this or let a workshop perform the inspection - an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

## 11.3.2. Parking brake

## 11.3.2.1. Parking brake

The parking brake helps keep the vehicle stationary by mechanically locking two wheels.

The parking brake controls are located in the tunnel console between the seats.

When the electric parking brake is being applied, a faint sound can be heard from the brake's electric motor. This sound can also be heard during the automatic function check of the parking brake.

If the vehicle is stationary when the parking brake is activated, it will only be applied to the rear wheels. If it is activated while the vehicle is moving, the normal brakes will be used on all four wheels. Braking will be transferred to only the rear wheels when the vehicle is almost stopped.

---

# 11.3.2.2. Activating and deactivating the parking brake

Use the parking brake to help keep the vehicle stationary when it is parked.

## Activating the parking brake

1. Pull up the control.

> The symbol in the instrument panel will illuminate when the parking brake is activated.

2. Make sure the vehicle is stationary.

**Symbol in the instrument panel**

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| [1] [2] | The symbol will be illuminated when the parking brake is activated.<br>A flashing symbol indicates that a fault has been detected. Read the message in the instrument panel. |

#### Automatic activation

The parking brake is applied automatically

- when the ignition is switched off and the setting for automatically activating the parking brake is activated in the center display.
- when the gear selector is moved to P on a steep hill.
- if the auto-hold brake (automatic brake at standstill) function is activated and
  - the vehicle has been stationary for a prolonged period of time (5-10 minutes).
  - the vehicle is switched off.
  - the driver has left the vehicle.

#### Emergency braking

In an emergency, the parking brake can be activated when the vehicle is moving by pulling and holding up the control. The braking process is canceled when the control is released or if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

> **Note**
>
> In case of emergency braking at high speeds, a signal sounds during the brake procedure.

## Deactivating the parking brake

#### Deactivating manually

The parking brake can only be deactivated if the engine is running.

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Press the control.

> The parking brake will release and the symbol in the instrument panel will go out.

#### Deactivating automatically

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Depress the brake pedal firmly. Move the gear selector to D or R and press the accelerator pedal.

> The parking brake will release and the symbol in the instrument panel will go out.

> **Note**
>
> For automatic deactivation to be possible, the driver's seat belt must be buckled or the driver's door closed.

[1] Canadian models.

[2] US models.

---

# 11.3.2.3. Parking on a hill

Always activate the parking brake when parking on a hill.

> **Warning**
>
> Always apply the parking brake when parking on an incline. Selecting a gear or putting the automatic transmission in **P** may not be sufficient to keep the vehicle stationary in all situations.

If the vehicle is pointing uphill:

- Turn the front wheels so they are pointing **away from** the curb.

If the vehicle is pointing downhill:

- Turn the front wheels so they are pointing **toward** the curb.

#### Heavy load uphill

Heavy loads, such as a trailer, could cause the vehicle to roll backward when the parking brake is released automatically on steep uphill gradients. To help avoid this, pull the control upward while you are driving away. Release the control when the vehicle gains traction.

---

# 11.3.2.4. Settings for automatically activating the parking brake

Choose whether the parking brake should be activated automatically when the vehicle is switched off.

To change this setting:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **My Car → Parking Brake and Suspension** and select or deselect the **Auto Activate Parking Brake** function.

---

# 11.3.2.5. Parking brake malfunction

If you are unable to deactivate or activate the parking brake after several attempts, contact an authorized Volvo workshop.

A audible warning signal will sound if the parking brake is activated while the vehicle is being driven.

If the vehicle must be parked before the problem is rectified, turn the wheels as when parking on an incline and put the gear selector in P.

## Low battery charge level

If the battery charge level is too low, it will not be possible to activate or deactivate the parking brake. Connect an auxiliary battery to the vehicle if the battery is discharged.

## Replacing brake pads

Due to the design of the electric parking brake, the rear brake pads must be replaced by a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

## Symbols in the instrument panel

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

| Symbol | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| [1] [2] | A flashing symbol indicates that a fault has been detected. See the message in the instrument panel. |
| [1] [2] | Fault in the brake system. See the message in the instrument panel. |
| | Information message in the instrument panel. |

[1] Canadian models.

[2] US models.

---

# 11.3.3. Brake fluid specifications

The medium in the hydraulic brake system is called brake fluid and is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder, which in turn actuates the brake calipers.

**Recommended grade:** Volvo Original or similar fluid that meets a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

> **Note**
>
> Changing or filling brake fluid should be entrusted to an authorized Volvo workshop.

# 11.3.4. Brake functions

The vehicle's brakes are used to reduce speed or prevent the vehicle from rolling.

In addition to the wheel brakes and parking brakes, the vehicle is also equipped with a number of automatic brake assist functions. These systems provide assistance by e.g. the driver not needing to depress the brake pedal at a traffic light or when starting up a hill.

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the following brake assist functions may be included:

- Auto-hold brake function at a standstill (Auto Hold)
- Hill Start Assist (Hill Start Assist)
- Braking assist after a collision
- City Safety
- Hill Descent Control (Hill Descent Control)

# 11.3.5. Auto-hold brakes

With the Auto-hold brake function, the driver can release the brake pedal and the brakes will remain applied, for example, when the vehicle has stopped at a traffic light or intersection.

When the vehicle stops, the brakes are activated automatically. The function can use either the normal brakes or the parking brakes to keep the vehicle stationary and works on flat surfaces or hills. If the driver has their seat belt fastened and/or if the driver's door is closed, the brakes will disengage automatically when the vehicle starts driving.

> **Note**
>
> When braking to a stop on an uphill or downhill gradient, depress the brake pedal with slightly more force than usual before releasing to ensure that the vehicle cannot move at all.

The parking brake is activated if

- the vehicle is switched off.
- the driver's door is opened
- the driver's seat belt is removed
- the vehicle has been stationary for a prolonged period of time (5-10 minutes)

Auto hold can also switch over to the parking brake in other situations.

## Symbols in the instrument panel

| Symbol | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | This symbol illuminates when the function is using the normal brakes to keep the vehicle stationary. |
| [1] [2] | This symbol illuminates when the function is using the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary. |

[1] Canadian models.

[2] US models.

# 11.3.6. Activating and deactivating Auto-hold at a standstill

The Auto-hold brake function at a standstill is activated with the button in the tunnel console.

1. Press the button in the tunnel console to activate or deactivate the function.

> The indicator light in the button will illuminate when the function is activated. The function will remain active the next time the vehicle is started.

### When shutting off

If the function is active and holding the vehicle stationary using the normal brakes (A symbol lit in the instrument panel), the brake pedal must be depressed while pressing the button in order to deactivate Auto-hold.

- The function will remain off until it is reactivated.
- When Auto-hold is switched off, Hill Start Assist (HSA) will remain active to help prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when starting up a hill.

---

## 11.3.7. Braking assist after a collision

In a collision in which the activation level is reached for the pyrotechnic seat belt tensioners or airbags, or if a collision with a large animal is detected, the vehicle's brakes will be automatically activated. This function is intended to help prevent or reduce the effects of any subsequent collision.

After a serious collision, it may no longer be possible to control and steer the vehicle. In order to avoid or mitigate a possible further collision with a vehicle or an object in the vehicle's path, the brake assist system is activated automatically to help stop the vehicle safely.

The brake lights and hazard warning flashers are activated during braking. When the vehicle has stopped, the hazard warning flashers will continue to flash and the parking brake will be applied.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

If braking is not appropriate, e.g. if there is a risk of being hit by passing traffic, the driver can override the system by depressing the accelerator pedal.

This function assumes that the brake system is intact after a collision.

---

# 11.3.8. Hill Start Assist

The function for assisting when starting the vehicle on inclines (HSA[1]) helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when starting on an uphill gradient. When backing up a hill, HSA helps prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

The function retains pressure from the brake pedal in the brake system for several seconds after the brake pedal has been released.

This temporary braking effect is released after a few seconds or when the driver begins driving.

Hill Start Assist is activated when the vehicle is stopped on steep inclines. The function is available even when the Auto-hold brake function is switched off.

[1] Hill Start Assist

---

# 11.3.9. Regenerative braking*

The vehicle recovers kinetic energy during braking in order to reduce fuel consumption and emissions.

The battery symbol is shown in the instrument panel when the vehicle is generating power for the battery[1].

The function is available in all drive modes together with gear selector position D or M.

**Activating brake regeneration**

Brake regeneration is activated by gentle pressure on the brake pedal or during engine braking.

Regeneration increases during engine braking if manual gear selector position M is selected.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The symbol is used in vehicles with 48 V batteries.

---

# 11.3.10. Low Speed Control

The low-speed function (LSC[1]) facilitates and improves control and traction on rough roads and slippery surfaces, e.g. when towing a trailer on grass or up boat ramps.
In vehicles equipped with drive mode control*, the function is included in the **Off Road** drive mode.

Low Speed Control is designed for driving on rough roads and when towing trailers at low speeds, up to approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Low Speed Control prioritizes low gear positions and traction. If the vehicle is all-wheel drive, power is automatically distributed evenly to provide as much traction as possible on all wheels and reduce the risk of wheel spin. The accelerator pedal will be less responsive to improve traction and speed control at low speeds.

The function is activated together with Hill Descent Control (HDC[2]), which makes it possible to control speed going down steep hills using the accelerator pedal and reduces the need to use the brake pedal. The system makes it possible to maintain a low and uniform speed when driving down steep hills.

> **Note**
>
> When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response will change.

> **Note**
>
> This drive mode is not designed to be used for normal street driving.

> **Note**
>
> The function is deactivated when driving at high speeds and must be reactivated at lower speeds if so desired.

[1] Low Speed Control

* Option/accessory.

[2] Hill Descent Control

---

# 11.3.11. Hill Descent Control

The function for assisting when driving downhill (HDC[1]) is a low-speed function with increased engine braking. The function makes it possible to increase or decrease the vehicle's speed on steep downhill gradients by only using the accelerator pedal, without applying the brakes.
In vehicles equipped with drive mode control*, the function is included in the **Off Road** drive mode.

HDC is designed for driving on rough roads at low speeds and downhill gradients with slippery or otherwise difficult road surfaces. The driver does not need to use the brake pedal but can instead focus on steering.

**Warning**

HDC is only intended to be a supplementary braking aid and it does not function in all situations.

The driver is always ultimately responsible for operating the vehicle in a safe manner.

## Function

Hill Descent Control allows the vehicle to move forward or backward at very low speeds assisted by the brake system. The driver can increase the speed by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will return to very low speed regardless of how steep the hill is and without the brakes needing to be applied. The brake lights will illuminate when the function is activated.

The driver can brake to stop or slow the vehicle at any time by depressing the brake pedal.

HDC is activated along with Low Speed Control (LSC[2]), which facilitates and improves traction and control on rough and slippery surfaces. The system is intended to be used at low speeds, up to approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

## To keep in mind when using HDC

- If the function is switched off while driving on a steep downhill gradient, braking effect will be gradually reduced.
- HDC can be used in gear positions D and R, and in manual gears 1 or 2.
- It is not possible to manually shift to third gear or higher when HDC is active.

**Note**

When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response will change.

**Note**

This drive mode is not designed to be used for normal street driving.

**Note**

The function is deactivated when driving at high speeds and must be reactivated at lower speeds if so desired.

[1] Hill Descent Control

* Option/accessory.

[2] Low Speed Control

# 11.4. Drive modes

## 11.4.1. Regenerative braking*

The vehicle recovers kinetic energy during braking in order to reduce fuel consumption and emissions.

The battery symbol is shown in the instrument panel when the vehicle is generating power for the battery[1].

The function is available in all drive modes together with gear selector position D or M.

**Activating brake regeneration**

Brake regeneration is activated by gentle pressure on the brake pedal or during engine braking.

Regeneration increases during engine braking if manual gear selector position M is selected.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The symbol is used in vehicles with 48 V batteries.

## 11.4.2. Drive modes*

Drive modes affect the vehicle's driving characteristics in different ways to enhance and simplify the driving experience in certain types of situations.

Drive modes enable easy access to the vehicle's many functions and settings in different driving situations. The following systems are adapted to help optimize driving characteristics in each drive mode:

- Steering
- Engine/transmission/all-wheel drive
- Brakes
- Shock absorbers
- Instrument panel
- Start/Stop function
- Climate control settings

Select the drive mode that is adapted to the current driving conditions. Keep in mind that not all drive modes are available in all situations.

### Available drive modes

When the engine is started, the vehicle will be in **Comfort** mode and the start/stop function will be activated. Drive mode can be changed once the vehicle is started, e.g. to **Individual** mode. Once **Individual** mode is selected, you can adjust settings to personal preferences, e.g. to show the tachometer.

#### Comfort

**Comfort** is the vehicle's default mode. This setting offers driving comfort, light steering and soft suspension.

In **Comfort** mode, no tachometer will be displayed in the instrument panel[1].

#### Eco

- Adapt the vehicle for more fuel-efficient and eco-friendly driving with **Eco** mode.

In this mode, the Start/Stop function is activated, suspension is soft and certain climate settings are reduced.

When driving in **Eco** mode, an ECO gauge indicating how economical the driving is will be displayed in the instrument panel.

#### Off Road

- Helps maximize the vehicle's ability to traverse difficult terrain or poor roads.

Steering is light and all-wheel drive and the low-speed function with assistance for driving downhill (HDC[2]) are activated. The Start/Stop function is deactivated.

This mode can only be activated at low speeds. The permitted speed range will be shown in the speedometer. If this speed is exceeded, **Off Road** mode will be deactivated and another drive mode activated.

In **Off Road** mode, a compass will be displayed between the speedometer and the tachometer in the instrument panel.

> **Note**
>
> This drive mode is not designed to be used for normal street driving.

#### Dynamic

- **Dynamic** mode is designed to help provide sportier driving characteristics and a faster acceleration response.

Gear shifting will be faster and more distinct and the transmission will prioritize gears with a higher traction force.

Steering response is faster and suspension is stiffer[3] to help reduce body roll when cornering.

The Start/Stop function is deactivated.

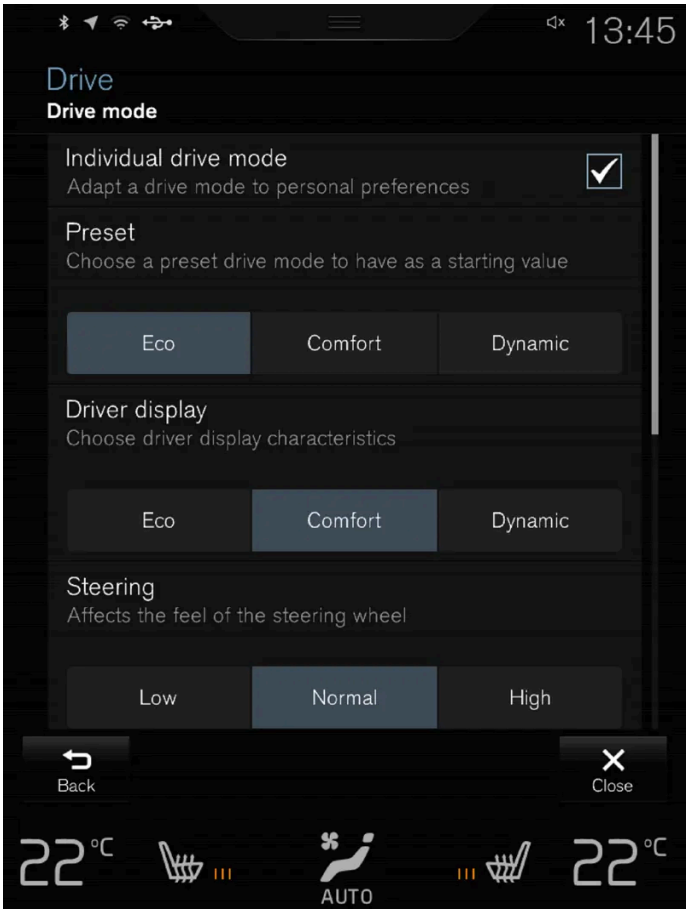
**Dynamic** mode is also available in a **Polestar Engineered*** version.

#### Individual

- Customizes drive mode to personal preferences.

Select one of the drive modes as a basis and adjust the settings to achieve your preferred driving characteristics. These settings will be stored in the active driver profile and will be available every time the vehicle is unlocked with that remote key.

Individual drive mode is only available if it has been activated in the center display.




Settings view[4] for Individual drive mode.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **My Car** → **Individual Drive Mode** and select **Individual Drive Mode**.
3. Under **Presets**, select one of the following drive modes as a basis: **Eco**, **Comfort**, **Dynamic** or **Polestar Engineered***.

   The following settings can be modified:

   - **Driver Display**
   - **Steering Force**
   - **Powertrain Characteristics**
   - **Brake Characteristics**
   - **Suspension Control**
   - **ECO Climate**
   - **Start/Stop**.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to vehicles with 8-inch instrument panels.

[2] Hill Descent Control

[3] Vehicles with Four-C.

[4] The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

---

# 11.4.3. Changing drive mode *

Select the drive mode that is adapted to the current driving conditions.
The drive mode is changed using the control in the tunnel console.

Keep in mind that not all drive modes are available in all situations.

To change drive mode:

1.


   Press the DRIVE MODE control.

> A pop-up menu will appear in the center display.

2. Roll the wheel upward or downward to the desired drive mode.

3. Press the drive mode control or tap its button in the center display to confirm the selection.

> The selected drive mode is shown in the instrument panel.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 11.4.4. Eco drive mode

**Eco** drive mode can help make driving more fuel-efficient and eco-friendly.

Use this mode to save fuel and promote eco-friendly driving.

When **Eco** mode is activated, the following characteristics are modified:

- The automatic transmission's shifting points.
- Engine control and accelerator pedal response.
- Eco Coast functionality is activated and engine braking is disabled when the accelerator pedal is released at speeds between 65 and 140 km/h (40 and 87 mph).
- Some of the climate system settings will be reduced or switched off.
- Information will be shown in the ECO gauge in the instrument panel to help promote more eco-friendly and economical driving.

## Coast function Eco Coast

Eco Coast essentially deactivates engine braking, allowing the vehicle's kinetic energy to be used to roll greater distances. When the driver releases the accelerator pedal, the transmission is automatically disengaged from the engine. Engine speed is reduced to idling speed to reduce fuel consumption.

This function is most effective in driving situations where the vehicle can roll freely for a long distance e.g. on roads with slight downgrades or when a decrease in speed is anticipated such as when approaching an area with a lower speed limit.

#### Activating Eco Coast

The function is activated when the accelerator pedal is fully released and the following conditions are met:

- **Eco** drive mode is activated.
- The gear selector is in D.
- The vehicle's speed is approximately 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph).
- The gradient of the downgrade is less than approximately 6%.

COASTING will be displayed in the instrument panel when Eco Coast is being used.

#### Limitations

Eco Coast is not available if

- the engine and/or transmission are not at normal working temperatures
- the gear selector is moved from D to manual shifting mode
- the vehicle's speed is not within the 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph) range
- the gradient of the downgrade is more than approximately 6%
- the steering wheel paddles* are being used for manual shifting.

#### Deactivating and turning off Eco Coast

In certain situations, it may be advisable to deactivate or turn off Eco Coast so that engine braking can be used. These situations might include driving down steep hills or before passing another vehicle to help ensure this can be done as safely as possible.

Deactivate Eco Coast by

- pressing the accelerator or brake pedal
- moving the gear selector to manual mode
- using the steering wheel paddles* to shift.

Turn off Eco Coast by

- switching to another drive mode*
- deactivating **Eco** drive mode in Function view.

It is possible to roll short distances even without Eco Coast in order to help conserve fuel. However, for the best fuel economy, Eco Coast should be activated and used to roll longer distances.

## Cruise control Eco Cruise

When cruise control is activated in the **Eco** drive mode, the vehicle's acceleration and deceleration will be slower than in other drive modes to help further conserve fuel. Because of this, the vehicle's actual speed may be slightly above or below the set speed.

- On a level road, the vehicle's actual speed may differ from the set speed when cruise control is active and the vehicle is coasting.
- On a steep uphill gradient, the vehicle's speed is reduced until the transmission downshifts. Reduced acceleration is then initiated in order to reach the set speed.
- On a downhill gradient in which the vehicle is coasting, the vehicle's actual speed may be slightly above or below the set speed. The function uses engine braking to keep the set speed. If necessary, the normal brakes are also applied.

## ECO gauge in the instrument panel

Eco gauge in 12" instrument panel*.

Eco gauge in 8" instrument panel.

The ECO gauge indicates how economical current driving is:

- A low reading in the green area of the gauge indicates economical driving.
- A high reading is shown when driving is not economical, e.g. heavy braking or rapid acceleration.

The ECO gauge also has an indicator showing how a reference driver would drive in the same driving situation. This is shown by the short pointer in the gauge.

### ECO Climate

In **Eco** mode, ECO climate is automatically activated in the passenger compartment to help reduce energy consumption.

> **Note**
>
> When the **Eco** drive mode is activated, settings for certain climate system and electricity consuming functions are reduced. Some of these settings can be reset manually, but full functionality will only be restored by switching off **Eco** mode or adapting the **Individual*** drive mode to full climate system functionality.

If condensation forms on the windows, tap the max defroster button, which will function normally.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 11.4.5. Activating and deactivating Eco drive mode using the function button

There is a function button for **Eco** drive mode in the center display's Function view if the vehicle is not equipped with a drive mode control in the tunnel console.

When the engine is switched off, **Eco** mode is deactivated and must therefore be reactivated each time the engine is started. ECO will be displayed in the instrument panel when the function is activated.

### Selecting Eco drive mode in the center display's Function view

1. Tap the **Driving Mode ECO** button to activate or deactivate the function.

> An indicator light in the button will illuminate when the function is activated.

---

## 11.4.6. The Launch function*

Launch can be used to provide maximum acceleration from a standstill. The function is available for the drive modes: **Dynamic**, **Comfort** and **Individual**.

### Activating Launch

Make sure that the vehicle is stationary and that the wheels are pointing straight ahead.

1. Put the gear selector in D position.
2. Depress the brake pedal fully.
3. Then fully depress the accelerator pedal.
4. Release the brake pedal within 2 seconds.

> **Note**
>
> If the Launch function does not work, wait a few minutes to let the driveline reach working temperature before trying again.

> **Important**
>
> The driveline is exposed to wear when using Launch and the function is therefore only available a limited number of times.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 11.4.7. Low Speed Control

The low-speed function (LSC[1]) facilitates and improves control and traction on rough roads and slippery surfaces, e.g. when towing a trailer on grass or up boat ramps.
In vehicles equipped with drive mode control*, the function is included in the **Off Road** drive mode.

Low Speed Control is designed for driving on rough roads and when towing trailers at low speeds, up to approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Low Speed Control prioritizes low gear positions and traction. If the vehicle is all-wheel drive, power is automatically distributed evenly to provide as much traction as possible on all wheels and reduce the risk of wheel spin. The accelerator pedal will be less responsive to improve traction and speed control at low speeds.

The function is activated together with Hill Descent Control (HDC[2]), which makes it possible to control speed going down steep hills using the accelerator pedal and reduces the need to use the brake pedal. The system makes it possible to maintain a low and uniform speed when driving down steep hills.

> **Note**
>
> When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response will change.

> **Note**
>
> This drive mode is not designed to be used for normal street driving.

> **Note**
>
> The function is deactivated when driving at high speeds and must be reactivated at lower speeds if so desired.

[1] Low Speed Control

* Option/accessory.

[2] Hill Descent Control

# 11.4.8. Activating and deactivating Low Speed Control

There is a function button for driving at low speeds with **Hill Descent Control** in the center display's Function view if the vehicle is not equipped with a drive mode control in the tunnel console.

## Selecting Low Speed Control in the center display's Function view

1. Tap the **Hill Descent Control** button to activate or deactivate the function.

> An indicator light in the button will illuminate when the function is activated.

When the engine is switched off, the function will be automatically deactivated.

> **Note**
>
> The function is deactivated when driving at high speeds and must be reactivated at lower speeds if so desired.

---

# 11.4.9. Leveling control* and suspension

Self-leveling and suspension functions are controlled automatically.

## Shock absorbers (Four-C)

On vehicles equipped with Four-C, the shock absorbers are adapted to the selected drive mode and the current vehicle speed. The shock absorbers are normally set to help optimize comfort and are adjusted continuously according to the road surface and the vehicle's acceleration, braking and cornering.

## Symbols and messages

If a problem occurs with the leveling control, a message will be displayed in the instrument panel.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Suspension<br>Service required | A fault has occurred. Visit a workshop[1] as soon as possible. |

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 11.4.10. Hill Descent Control

The function for assisting when driving downhill (HDC[1]) is a low-speed function with increased engine braking. The function makes it possible to increase or decrease the vehicle's speed on steep downhill gradients by only using the accelerator pedal, without applying the brakes.
In vehicles equipped with drive mode control*, the function is included in the **Off Road** drive mode.

HDC is designed for driving on rough roads at low speeds and downhill gradients with slippery or otherwise difficult road surfaces. The driver does not need to use the brake pedal but can instead focus on steering.

> **Warning**
>
> HDC is only intended to be a supplementary braking aid and it does not function in all situations.
>
> The driver is always ultimately responsible for operating the vehicle in a safe manner.

## Function

Hill Descent Control allows the vehicle to move forward or backward at very low speeds assisted by the brake system. The driver can increase the speed by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will return to very low speed regardless of how steep the hill is and without the brakes needing to be applied. The brake lights will illuminate when the function is activated.

The driver can brake to stop or slow the vehicle at any time by depressing the brake pedal.

HDC is activated along with Low Speed Control (LSC[2]), which facilitates and improves traction and control on rough and slippery surfaces. The system is intended to be used at low speeds, up to approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

## To keep in mind when using HDC

- If the function is switched off while driving on a steep downhill gradient, braking effect will be gradually reduced.

- HDC can be used in gear positions D and R, and in manual gears 1 or 2.
- It is not possible to manually shift to third gear or higher when HDC is active.

> **Note**
>
> When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response will change.

**Note**

This drive mode is not designed to be used for normal street driving.

**Note**

The function is deactivated when driving at high speeds and must be reactivated at lower speeds if so desired.

[1] Hill Descent Control

* Option/accessory.

[2] Low Speed Control

---

# 11.4.11. Activating and deactivating Hill Descent Control

There is a function button for assistance on steep gradients with **Hill Descent Control** in the center display's Function view if the vehicle is not equipped with a drive mode control in the tunnel console.

## Selecting Hill Descent Control in the center display's Function view

HDC only works at low speeds.

1. Tap the **Hill Descent Control** button to activate or deactivate the function.

> An indicator light in the button will illuminate when the function is activated.

When the engine is switched off, the function will be automatically deactivated.

**Note**

The function is deactivated when driving at high speeds and must be reactivated at lower speeds if so desired.

---

# 11.4.12. All Wheel Drive (AWD)

All-wheel drive (AWD[1]), also called four-wheel drive, means that power is distributed to all four wheels, which improves traction.

To achieve the best traction, power is automatically directed to the wheels that have the best grip. The system continuously calculates the need for torque to the rear wheels, and can immediately redistribute up to half of the engine's torque to the rear wheels.

All-wheel drive also has a stabilizing effect at higher speeds. In normal driving conditions, most of the engine's power is directed to the front wheels. When the vehicle is stationary, all-wheel drive is always activated in preparation for maximum traction during acceleration.

All-wheel drive reacts differently depending on which drive mode is selected.

[1] All-wheel drive

---

# 11.5. Start/stop function

---

# 11.5.1. Start/Stop function

Start/Stop is a function that temporarily switches off the engine when the vehicle has stopped, e.g. at a traffic light or in heavy traffic, and then starts it again automatically when needed.

The Start/Stop function reduces fuel consumption, which can in turn contribute to an environmentally conscious driving style and reduced emissions.

## To keep in mind when using the Start/Stop function

Certain conditions must be met for Start/Stop to function.

**The Start/Stop function is not activated**

The engine may not switch off/the function may not be activated due to one or more of the following criteria:

- the driver has not fastened their seat belt
- the vehicle has not reached a speed of about 10 km/h (6 mph) after start or after the function has been activated a number of times in succession
- the engine has not reached its normal operating temperature
- the ambient temperature is under approximately -5 °C (23 °F) or over approximately 30 °C (86 °F)
- windshield heating is activated
- the climate system settings and the actual climate in the passenger compartment differ

- the driver is making large steering wheel movements
- the road gradient is very steep
- the hood is open
- ABS has been activated
- hard braking (even if the ABS system has not been activated)
- the start battery's charge has dropped below the minimum level
- many starts during a short period of time have triggered the starter motor's overheating protection
- the exhaust system's particulate filter is full
- a trailer is connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

> **Note**
>
> High electrical current consumption may cause the battery capacity to drop below the minimum permitted level, which will temporarily limit the Start/Stop function. The engine will then start automatically without the driver lifting their foot from the brake pedal.

**The Start/Stop function is not deactivated**

The engine may not start/the function may not be deactivated due to one or more of the following criteria:

- the driver has not fastened their seat belt
- gear selector position P is engaged and the driver's door is open.

**The Start/Stop function is deactivated without the brake pedal being released**

The function may be deactivated and the engine may start without the driver releasing the brake pedal in the following cases:

- high levels of condensation on the inside of the windows
- the climate system settings and the actual climate in the passenger compartment differ
- the brake pedal is pumped repeatedly
- the hood is open
- the start battery's charge has dropped below the minimum level

- the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the gear selector is in position D or N
- the gear selector is moved from position D to R or M
- the driver's door is open with the gear selector in position D.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not open the hood when the Start/Stop function is active. Switch off the engine normally before raising the hood.

# 11.5.2. Activating and deactivating the Start/Stop function

The Start/Stop function is available when the vehicle is started. When the function is activated, the engine is temporarily switched off. The engine then starts automatically when the function is deactivated or when the vehicle requires this.

## Activating the Start/Stop function

1. Depress the brake pedal and hold it down.

> The Start/Stop function is activated and the engine switches off.

**Note**

- In drive mode **Comfort** or **Eco**, the Start/Stop function can be activated before the vehicle is completely stationary.
- When Adaptive Cruise Control or Pilot Assist is activated, the Start/Stop function is activated a few seconds after the vehicle is completely stationary.

**Note**

All of the vehicle's ordinary systems, such as lighting and radio, function normally even when the Start/Stop function is activated.

However, the function of certain equipment may be temporarily reduced, such as the climate system's blower speed or the volume of the speakers.

## Deactivating the Start/Stop function

1. Release the brake pedal or lightly press the accelerator pedal.

> The Start/Stop function is deactivated and the engine starts.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

**Note**

When the Start/Stop function is deactivated and:

- the automatic brakes at standstill function (Auto hold) is activated, the engine will not start until the accelerator pedal is depressed
- Adaptive Cruise Control or Pilot Assist is activated, the engine will start when the accelerator pedal is depressed or the button on the steering wheel's left-side keypad is pressed
- the vehicle is on an uphill gradient, HSA[1] will activate to help prevent the vehicle from rolling backward
- the vehicle is on a downhill gradient, release the brake pedal slightly. A slight increase in speed starts the engine.

## Center display settings

The center display shows whether the function is available or switched off.

Illuminated indication: the Start/Stop function is available.

Extinguished indication: the Start/Stop function is switched off.

## Symbols in the instrument panel

The tachometer in the instrument panel indicates when the Start/Stop function is: available, active or not available.

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | White – the function is available. |
| | Green – the function is activated. |
| | Gray – the function is not available. |

If no symbol is shown in the instrument panel, the function is switched off.

[1] Hill Start Assist

# 11.6. Driving recommendations

# 11.6.1. Towing using a towline

This section refers to one vehicle being towed behind another using a towline.

Before towing another vehicle, check applicable speed limit regulations.

## Preparations and towing

**Important**

For some transmission variants, it is not possible to shift from P position if the engine is switched off. Contact an authorized Volvo workshop for assistance towing or call a professional towing service.

**Important**

Note that the vehicle must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.

- Do not tow a vehicle with automatic transmission at a speed greater than 80 km/h (50 mph) or for a distance greater than 80 km (50 miles).

**Warning**

- Ignition mode II must be active – all airbags are deactivated in ignition mode I.
- Always have the remote key in the vehicle when it is towed.

**Warning**

The brake and steering servos do not work when the engine is off – it takes about 5 times more pressure on the brake pedal and steering requires much more effort than normal.

1. Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
2. Attach the towline to the towing eyelet.
3. Put the vehicle in ignition mode **II** – without pressing the brake pedal, turn the start knob clockwise and hold it there for about 4 seconds. Release the knob, which will automatically return to its original position.
4. Move the gear selector to neutral (N) and release the parking brake.

   If the battery charge level is too low, it may not be possible to release the parking brake. Connect an auxiliary battery to the vehicle if the battery is discharged.

> The towing vehicle can now start driving.

5. Keep the towline taut when the towing vehicle slows down by applying light pressure to the brake pedal. This will help avoid jarring movements.
6. Be prepared to apply the brakes to stop the vehicle.

### Jump starting

Do not tow the vehicle to start the engine. Use an auxiliary battery if the start battery's charge level is so low that the engine cannot be started.

> **Important**
>
> Attempting to tow with the engine running could result in damage to the three-way catalytic converter.

---

## 11.6.2. Hill Start Assist

The function for assisting when starting the vehicle on inclines (HSA[1]) helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when starting on an uphill gradient. When backing up a hill, HSA helps prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

The function retains pressure from the brake pedal in the brake system for several seconds after the brake pedal has been released.

This temporary braking effect is released after a few seconds or when the driver begins driving.

Hill Start Assist is activated when the vehicle is stopped on steep inclines. The function is available even when the Auto-hold brake function is switched off.

[1] Hill Start Assist

---

## 11.6.3. Braking on salted roads

When driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake pads.

This could increase stopping distance. Maintain an extra large safety distance to the vehicle ahead. Make sure to also:

- Apply the brakes from time to time to help remove salt. Make sure braking does not pose a risk to any other road users.
- Gently apply the brakes when you have finished driving and before driving again.

---

# 11.6.4. Braking on wet roads

Prolonged driving in heavy rain without braking may cause braking effect to be slightly delayed the first time the brakes are applied.

This may also occur after washing the vehicle. It will then be necessary to apply greater pressure to the brake pedal. You should therefore maintain a greater distance to the vehicle ahead.

Firmly apply the brakes after washing the vehicle or driving on wet roads. This helps warm up the brake discs, enabling them to dry more quickly and protecting them against corrosion. Consider the current traffic situation when braking.

---

# 11.6.5. Parking on a hill

Always activate the parking brake when parking on a hill.

> **Warning**
>
> Always apply the parking brake when parking on an incline. Selecting a gear or putting the automatic transmission in **P** may not be sufficient to keep the vehicle stationary in all situations.

If the vehicle is pointing uphill:

- Turn the front wheels so they are pointing **away from** the curb.

If the vehicle is pointing downhill:

- Turn the front wheels so they are pointing **toward** the curb.

#### Heavy load uphill

Heavy loads, such as a trailer, could cause the vehicle to roll backward when the parking brake is released automatically on steep uphill gradients. To help avoid this, pull the control upward while you are driving away. Release the control when the vehicle gains traction.

---

# 11.6.6. Service stations

You can use the vehicle's navigation system* to find a route to the nearest service station.

While you are stopped to refuel, it can be a good idea to perform a quick inspection of the vehicle, such as checking tire pressure, lights, wiper blades, filling washer fluid, etc.

* Option/accessory.

# 11.6.7. Eco drive mode

**Eco** drive mode can help make driving more fuel-efficient and eco-friendly.

Use this mode to save fuel and promote eco-friendly driving.

When **Eco** mode is activated, the following characteristics are modified:

- The automatic transmission's shifting points.
- Engine control and accelerator pedal response.
- Eco Coast functionality is activated and engine braking is disabled when the accelerator pedal is released at speeds between 65 and 140 km/h (40 and 87 mph).
- Some of the climate system settings will be reduced or switched off.
- Information will be shown in the ECO gauge in the instrument panel to help promote more eco-friendly and economical driving.

## Coast function Eco Coast

Eco Coast essentially deactivates engine braking, allowing the vehicle's kinetic energy to be used to roll greater distances. When the driver releases the accelerator pedal, the transmission is automatically disengaged from the engine. Engine speed is reduced to idling speed to reduce fuel consumption.

This function is most effective in driving situations where the vehicle can roll freely for a long distance e.g. on roads with slight downgrades or when a decrease in speed is anticipated such as when approaching an area with a lower speed limit.

#### Activating Eco Coast

The function is activated when the accelerator pedal is fully released and the following conditions are met:

- **Eco** drive mode is activated.
- The gear selector is in D.
- The vehicle's speed is approximately 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph).
- The gradient of the downgrade is less than approximately 6%.

COASTING will be displayed in the instrument panel when Eco Coast is being used.

#### Limitations

Eco Coast is not available if

- the engine and/or transmission are not at normal working temperatures
- the gear selector is moved from D to manual shifting mode
- the vehicle's speed is not within the 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph) range
- the gradient of the downgrade is more than approximately 6%
- the steering wheel paddles* are being used for manual shifting.

**Deactivating and turning off Eco Coast**

In certain situations, it may be advisable to deactivate or turn off Eco Coast so that engine braking can be used. These situations might include driving down steep hills or before passing another vehicle to help ensure this can be done as safely as possible.

Deactivate Eco Coast by

- pressing the accelerator or brake pedal
- moving the gear selector to manual mode
- using the steering wheel paddles* to shift.

Turn off Eco Coast by

- switching to another drive mode*
- deactivating **Eco** drive mode in Function view.

It is possible to roll short distances even without Eco Coast in order to help conserve fuel. However, for the best fuel economy, Eco Coast should be activated and used to roll longer distances.

## Cruise control Eco Cruise

When cruise control is activated in the **Eco** drive mode, the vehicle's acceleration and deceleration will be slower than in other drive modes to help further conserve fuel. Because of this, the vehicle's actual speed may be slightly above or below the set speed.

- On a level road, the vehicle's actual speed may differ from the set speed when cruise control is active and the vehicle is coasting.
- On a steep uphill gradient, the vehicle's speed is reduced until the transmission downshifts. Reduced acceleration is then initiated in order to reach the set speed.
- On a downhill gradient in which the vehicle is coasting, the vehicle's actual speed may be slightly above or below the set speed. The function uses engine braking to keep the set speed. If necessary, the normal brakes are also applied.

## ECO gauge in the instrument panel

Eco gauge in 12" instrument panel*.

Eco gauge in 8" instrument panel.

The ECO gauge indicates how economical current driving is:

- A low reading in the green area of the gauge indicates economical driving.
- A high reading is shown when driving is not economical, e.g. heavy braking or rapid acceleration.

The ECO gauge also has an indicator showing how a reference driver would drive in the same driving situation. This is shown by the short pointer in the gauge.

### ECO Climate

In **Eco** mode, ECO climate is automatically activated in the passenger compartment to help reduce energy consumption.

> **Note**
>
> When the **Eco** drive mode is activated, settings for certain climate system and electricity consuming functions are reduced. Some of these settings can be reset manually, but full functionality will only be restored by switching off **Eco** mode or adapting the **Individual*** drive mode to full climate system functionality.

If condensation forms on the windows, tap the max defroster button, which will function normally.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 11.6.8. Economical driving

A more economical driving style can help lower fuel consumption.

### Before driving

- If possible, precondition the vehicle before driving.

- If preconditioning is not possible when it is cold outside, use seat and steering wheel heating first. Avoid heating the entire passenger compartment to reduce the amount of current being taken from the start battery.
- Avoid using idling to warm up the vehicle before driving.
- The type of tires and inflation pressure used could affect energy consumption – consult an authorized Volvo retailer for advice on suitable tires.
- Remove unnecessary items from the vehicle - the heavier the load, the higher the fuel consumption.

### While driving

- Activate **Eco** drive mode.
- Use gear selector position D as often as possible.
- When using manual gear shifting, drive using the highest possible gear. Use the gear indicator[1].
- Maintain a steady speed and a generous following distance to traffic ahead to minimize braking. Use engine braking if possible.
- Higher speeds increase energy consumption because air resistance increases with speed.
- In a cold climate, reduce heating of the windshield/rear window, mirrors, seats and the steering wheel.
- Avoid driving with the windows open.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal to keep the vehicle stationary on an uphill gradient. Instead, activate the auto-hold brake function at a standstill.
- Use trip data to see current fuel consumption.

> **Warning**
>
> Never turn off the engine while the vehicle is moving, e.g. when driving downhill. This deactivates certain important systems such as power steering and brakes.

### After driving

- If possible, park in a climate-controlled garage.

[1] Only available in certain markets.

---

# 11.6.9. Preparing for a long trip

It is important to have the vehicle's systems and equipment checked carefully before driving long distances.

Check that

- the engine is running properly and that fuel consumption is normal
- there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid)
- the brake pedal is functioning properly

- all lights work
- tire tread depth and air pressure are at correct levels. Change to snow tires when driving in areas where there is a risk of snowy or icy roads
- the start battery is sufficiently charged
- the wiper blades are in good condition

It could also be a good idea to make sure the maps in the navigation system* are up to date, and to check requirements for vehicle loads, ferries, car trains, etc.

Keep in mind that data roaming charges may apply if the vehicle is connected to the Internet while in another country or service area.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 11.6.10. Battery drain

Using a lot of electrical current without allowing the vehicle to charge the start battery results in a low charge level and some electrical functions will be reduced or switched off. If the charge level drops below a certain level, it will no longer be possible to start the vehicle without jump-starting or charging with an external charger.

Several measures can be taken to reduce power consumption. Avoid using ignition mode II when the engine is switched off. Instead, use ignition mode I, which uses less electrical current. Do not use functions that use a lot of electrical current when the vehicle is not being driven. Examples of such functions are:

- blower
- headlights
- windshield wipers
- audio system
- accessories plugged into the vehicle.

If the starter battery voltage is low, a message is shown in the driver display. The vehicle's energy-saving function will then turn off or reduce certain functions, such as the blower and the audio system.

1. To charge the battery, start the engine and let it run for at least 15 minutes (driving charges the battery faster than letting the engine idle).

If the battery's charge level is still low, or completely discharged, after taking these measures, the vehicle should be checked by a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

**Note**

High electrical current consumption may cause the battery capacity to drop below the minimum permitted level, which will temporarily limit the Start/Stop function. The engine will then start automatically without the driver lifting their foot from the brake pedal.

## 11.6.11. Driving through standing water

It may be necessary to drive the vehicle through standing water e.g. deep puddles or flooding on the road. This must be done with great caution.

The vehicle can be driven through water up to a depth of 30 cm (11 in) at no more than walking speed. Be particularly careful when driving through flowing water.

When driving through standing water, drive slowly and do not stop the vehicle. When you have passed the water, press lightly on the brake pedal and check that the brakes are functioning properly. Water, mud, slush, etc. can make the brake linings slippery, resulting in delayed braking effect.

- If the vehicle is equipped with contacts for an electric heater or trailer coupling, clean these after driving in water or mud.
- Do not allow the vehicle to stand in water up to the sills any longer than absolutely necessary. This could result in electrical malfunctions.

**Important**

- Engine damage could occur if water enters the air cleaner.
- If water enters the transmission, the lubricating ability of the oils is reduced and the service life of these systems is shortened.
- Damage to any component, engine, transmission, turbocharger, differential or its internal components caused by flooding, vapor lock or insufficient oil is not covered under warranty.
- If the engine stalls while the vehicle is in water, do not attempt to restart it. Have the vehicle towed out of the water to a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended. Risk of engine failure.

**Important**

Because it can be difficult to determine the water depth, Volvo recommends not driving through standing or running water. The driver is always responsible for operating the vehicle in a safe manner and adhering to all applicable laws and regulations.

## 11.6.12. Winter driving

It is important to check the vehicle before driving in cold/snowy conditions to make sure it can be driven safely.

Before the cold season arrives:

- Make sure the engine coolant contains 50% antifreeze. This mixture helps protect the engine from frost erosion down to approx. –35 °C (–31 °F). Do not mix different types of antifreeze as this could pose a health risk.
- Keep the fuel tank well filled to prevent condensation from forming.
- Check the viscosity of the engine oil. Oil with low viscosity (thinner oil) improves cold-weather starting and reduces fuel consumption when driving with a cold engine.
- Check the condition and charge level of the start battery. Cold weather places greater demands on the start battery and reduces its capacity.

- Check the condition and charge level of the battery. Cold weather places greater demands on the battery and reduces its capacity.
- Use washer fluid containing antifreeze to help prevent ice from forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

See separate section for engine oil recommendations.

### Slippery driving conditions

To help optimize traction and roadholding, Volvo recommends using snow tires on all wheels whenever there is a risk of snow or ice on the road.

> **Note**
>
> Certain countries require use of winter tires by law. Not all countries permit the use of studded tires.

Practice driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the vehicle reacts.

---

# 11.6.13. Overheating of engine and transmission

In certain driving conditions, such as driving in mountainous areas or hot weather, there is a risk of the engine or transmission overheating, especially when carrying heavy loads.

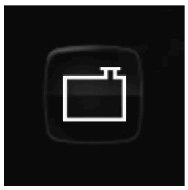
- Engine power may be temporarily limited.
- Remove any auxiliary lights mounted in front of the grille when driving in hot weather.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system becomes too high, a warning symbol will appear in the instrument panel along with the message **Engine temperature High temperature Stop safely**. Pull over to a safe location and let the engine idle for a few minutes to cool down.
- If the message **Engine temperature High temperature Turn off engine** or **Engine coolant Level low, turn off engine** is displayed, stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
- If the transmission begins to overheat, an alternative gear shifting program will be selected. An integrated protective function will also be activated, the warning symbol will illuminate and the message **Transmission warm Reduce speed to**

**lower temperature** or **Transmission hot Stop safely, wait for cooling** will be displayed in the instrument panel. Follow the recommendations given by reducing speed or stopping the vehicle safely and letting the engine idle for a few minutes to let the transmission cool.

- If the vehicle begins to overheat, the air conditioning may be temporarily switched off.
- After a prolonged period of driving in demanding conditions, do not turn off the engine immediately after stopping.

> **Note**
>
> It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a short time after the engine is switched off.

### Symbols in the instrument panel

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | High engine temperature. Follow the recommendations provided. |
|  | Low coolant level. Follow the recommendations provided. |
| | Transmission hot/overheated/cooling. Follow the recommendations provided. |

---

# 11.6.14. Driving with a trailer

There are a number of things to consider when towing a trailer, such as the towbar, the trailer and how the load is distributed in the trailer.

Load-carrying capacity is determined by the vehicle's curb weight. The total weight of all passengers and any installed accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the vehicle's load-carrying capacity by the corresponding amount.

- Towbars used on the vehicle must be approved for the applicable use.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towbar complies with the specified maximum towball weight. The tongue weight is calculated as part of the vehicle's payload.
- Increase the tire pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load.
- The engine is subjected to more load than usual when towing a trailer.
- Towing a trailer affects the vehicle's handling, durability and driving economy.

- Do not drive with a heavy trailer when the vehicle is very new. Wait until the mileage has reached at least 1000 km (620 miles).
- On long and steep downgrades, the vehicle's brakes are subjected to much more load than usual. When manually shifting, downshift and adapt speed accordingly.
- Follow applicable regulations regarding permitted speed and weight.
- Drive slowly when towing a trailer up a long and steep incline.
- The maximum trailer weights given only apply to altitudes up to 1000 meters (3280 feet) above sea level. At higher altitudes, engine power (and thus the vehicle's climbing ability) is decreased due to the reduced air density, and the maximum trailer weight must therefore be reduced. The weight of the vehicle and trailer must be decreased by 10% for each additional 1000 m (3280 feet) or part thereof.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

- Avoid overloading and other incorrect use.
- The trailer's brakes must be balanced with the vehicle's brakes to help ensure safe stops (follow applicable local regulations).

**Important**

- Bumper-attached trailer hitches must not be used on Volvos, nor should safety chains be attached to the bumper.
- Trailer hitches attaching to the vehicle rear axle must not be used.
- Never connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to the vehicle brake system, nor a trailer's lighting system directly to the vehicle lighting system. Consult your nearest authorized Volvo retailer for correct installation.
- When towing a trailer, the trailer's safety chains or wire must be correctly fastened to the attachment points provided in the trailer hitch on the vehicle. The safety chain or wire must never be fastened to or wound around the towing ball.

**Note**

The optional detachable trailer hitch may not be available in all markets or on all models. Consult your Volvo retailer.

**Note**

Extreme weather conditions, towing a trailer, high altitude and lower fuel grade than recommended are factors that can significantly increase the vehicle's fuel consumption.

## Trailer weights

**Warning**

Please adhere to the recommendations provided for trailer weight. If the recommendations are not followed, the vehicle and trailer may be difficult to control during evasive maneuvers and braking.

**Note**

The specified maximum trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations may set additional restrictions on trailer weight and speed. The trailer hitches may be certified for higher towing weights than the vehicle is permitted to tow.

## Self-leveling suspension*

The vehicle's self-leveling system attempts to keep the vehicle at a constant level, regardless of load (up to the maximum permitted weight). When the vehicle is stationary, the rear end of the vehicle will be slightly lowered, which is normal.

## Driving in mountainous areas

In certain conditions, there is a risk of overheating when driving with a trailer. If overheating of the engine and drive system is detected, a warning symbol will illuminate in the instrument panel and a message will appear.

The automatic transmission adapts the gear for the current load and engine speed.

#### Steep inclines

Do not lock the automatic transmission into a higher gear than what the engine can handle – it is not always preferable to drive in high gears at low rpm.

#### Parking on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Put the gear selector in P.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Put chocks behind the wheels when the vehicle is parked on a hill with a trailer attached.

#### Starting on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Put the gear selector in D.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Release the brake pedal and start driving.

* Option/accessory.

# 11.7. Trailer hitch and trailer

## 11.7.1. Towing capacity and tongue weight

Towing capacity and tongue weight are shown in the table.

| Category | | USA (lbs) | Canada (kg) |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Max. trailer weights** | Without brakes: | 1650 | 750 |
| | With brakes: | 2000 | 900 |
| **Max. tongue weight** | – | 200 | 90 |

**Important**

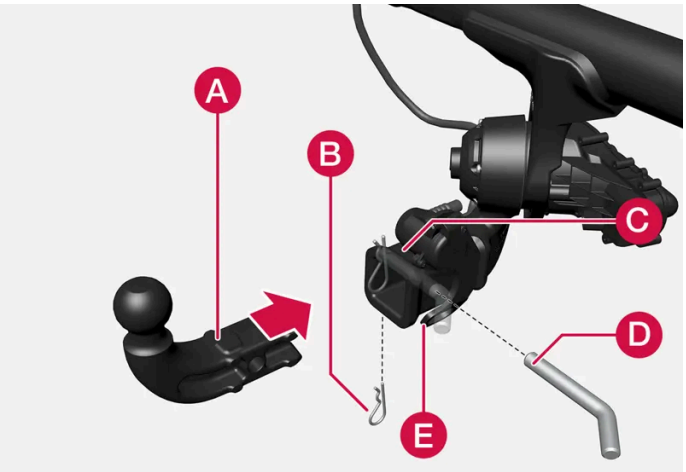
- The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for altitudes up to 3280 ft(1,000 m) above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the car's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density, so the maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by 10% for every further 3280 ft(1,000 m) (or part thereof).

## 11.7.2. Foldable towbar hitch [1] *

Volvo recommends the use of Volvo towbars that are specially designed for the vehicle.

**Note**

The optional detachable trailer hitch may not be available in all markets or on all models. Consult your Volvo retailer.




A Ball holder

B Cotter pin

C Towbar assembly

D Locking bolt

E Safety wire attachment bracket

## Installing the ball holder

1. If necessary, remove the cotter pin from the locking bolt and slide the locking bolt out of the towbar assembly.
2. Slide the ball holder into the towbar assembly.
3. Align the hole in the ball holder with the one in the towbar assembly.
4. Slide the locking bolt through the towbar assembly/ball holder.
5. Insert the cotter pin in the hole at the end of the locking bolt.

**Warning**

- Be sure the towbar is securely locked in position before attaching anything to it.
- Always attach the trailer's safety wire securely to the towbar's safety wire attachment bracket.

## Removing the ball holder

1. Remove the cotter pin from the locking bolt and slide the locking bolt out of the ball holder/towbar assembly.

2. Pull the ball holder out of the towbar assembly.

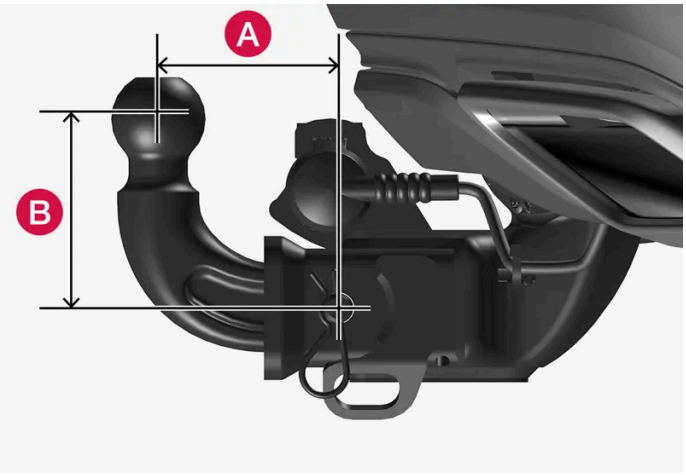
> **Warning**
>
> Damage may occur on the towbar if it is not used correctly or if incorrect or faulty accessories are used, such as:
>
> - Overloading of accessory.
> - Use of incorrect or faulty accessory.
> - Accessory used for an incorrect purpose.
> - Use of weight-distributing towing system.
> - Incorrectly positioned ball mount; see geometric limits for the towbar.

## Stowing the ball holder

> **Warning**
>
> When not in use, the detachable ball holder should always be properly stowed in the designated location under the floor of the cargo compartment.

## Driving with a trailer

When towing a trailer, the original ball holder or equivalent should be used.




The ball mount must fall within the geometric limits for the towbar, for both distance A and height B. Geometric limits are described on a type plate located on the towbar.

[1] The following markets only: USA, Canada, Chile, Mexico, Peru, Puerto Rico, Australia and New Zealand.

* Option/accessory.

# 11.7.3. Retractable hitch*

The retractable hitch is designed to be used to tow a trailer or mount a bicycle holder. The hitch can be easily retracted or extended as needed. When retracted, the hitch is completely concealed.

> **Warning**
>
> Follow the instructions for folding in/out the towbar carefully.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not press the operating button for the towbar if a trailer or accessory is attached to the towbar.

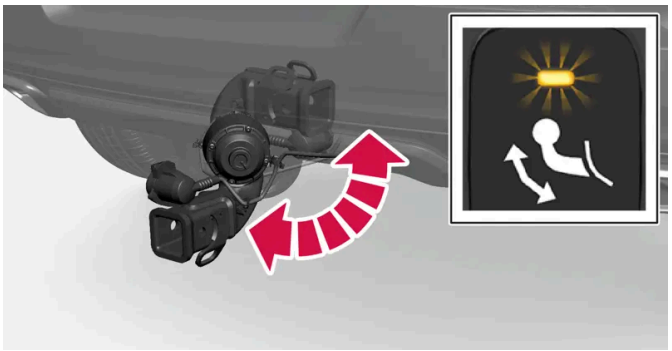
## Folding out the hitch

> **Warning**
>
> Do not stand near the center of the bumper behind the vehicle when folding out the towbar.

1.

   Open the tailgate. There is a button for operating the hitch on the right-hand side at the rear of the cargo compartment. Steady orange illumination from the indicator light in the button shows that the folding function is active.

2. Press the button and release – pressing too long on the button may prevent the hitch from folding out.

> The hitch will fold out and down to an unlocked position – the indicator lamp will flash orange. The hitch is ready to be moved to the locked position.

3.

   Move the hitch to its end position, where it will lock in place – the indicator lamp will glow steadily orange.

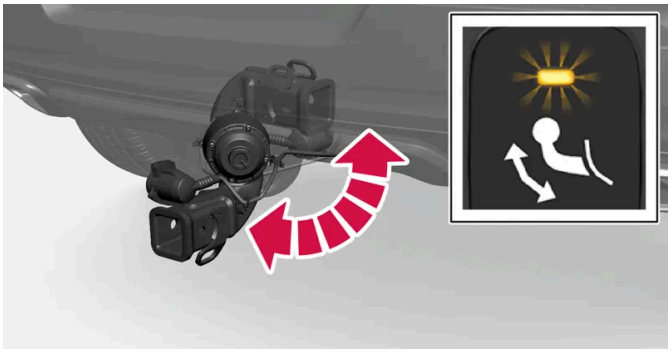
> The hitch is now ready for use.

> **Important**
>
> When the towbar is activated by pressing the button and put in unlocked position:
>
> Wait at least 2 seconds before moving the towbar to locked position. If the towbar does not remain in locked position, wait a few more seconds and try again.
>
> Do not kick the towbar.

## Retracting the hitch

1. Open the tailgate. Press the button on the rear, right-hand side of the cargo compartment and release. Pressing too long on the button may prevent the hitch from folding in.

> The hitch will automatically fold down to the unlocked position and the indicator light in the button will flash orange.

2. 

   Secure the hitch into position by pushing it back to its retracted position under the bumper, where it will lock into place.

> The indicator light in the button will now glow steadily if the hitch is correctly locked in the retracted position.

**Important**

When the towbar is activated by pressing the button and put in unlocked position:

Wait at least 2 seconds before moving the towbar to locked position. If the towbar does not remain in locked position, wait a few more seconds and try again.

Do not kick the towbar.

**Note**

Power save mode will be activated after a short time and the indicator light will go out. The system can be reactivated by closing and then reopening the tailgate. This applies to both folding in and folding out the towbar.

If the vehicle electrically detects a connected trailer, the indicator light will stop glowing with a steady light. It will then not be possible to fold the towbar in or out.

**Important**

Make sure that there is no adapter in the electrical socket or removable ball section mounted when the towbar is folded in.

Remove the bicycle holder from the towbar when it is not being used.

**Important**

The towbar should always be folded in when it is not being used.

## Hitch-mounted bicycle holder

**Note**

The weight limits for trailers and towbar-mounted accessories differ. A separate limit applies for each. This towbar is only designed for towbar-mounted bicycle holders. All other accessories are not suitable.

Before mounting the bicycle on the bicycle holder, keep in mind that:

- Do not mount more than four bicycles
- The maximum weight for the bicycle holder including bicycles is 200 lbs/90 kg. For example: holder 40 lbs + 4 bicycles at 30 lbs each = 160 lbs total > OK

> **Note**
>
> Volvo recommends only using Volvo original accessories. Follow the instructions supplied with the product.

> **Important**
>
> - Never use towbar adapters or towbar extenders.
> - Only use ball mount for towing. Do not mount accessories directly on the ball mount. Use accessories designed to be mounted in the towbar's square bracket. Do not use accessories designed to be secured around the ball mount
> - Never use a load basket.

### Loading the bicycle holder

The greater the distance between the load and the bicycle holder, the greater the load on the hitch and on the vehicle.

Keep the following points in mind:

- Mount the heaviest bicycle closest to the vehicle.
- If possible, mount the bicycles symmetrically, as close as possible to the center of the vehicle.
- Remove loose objects from the bicycle, such as baskets, batteries or child seats. This will help reduce the load on the hitch and the bicycle holder.
- Do not place a cover over the bicycle as this could lead to increased load on the hitch.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 11.7.4. Low Speed Control

The low-speed function (LSC[1]) facilitates and improves control and traction on rough roads and slippery surfaces, e.g. when towing a trailer on grass or up boat ramps.
In vehicles equipped with drive mode control*, the function is included in the **Off Road** drive mode.

Low Speed Control is designed for driving on rough roads and when towing trailers at low speeds, up to approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Low Speed Control prioritizes low gear positions and traction. If the vehicle is all-wheel drive, power is automatically distributed evenly to provide as much traction as possible on all wheels and reduce the risk of wheel spin. The accelerator pedal will

be less responsive to improve traction and speed control at low speeds.

The function is activated together with Hill Descent Control (HDC[2]), which makes it possible to control speed going down steep hills using the accelerator pedal and reduces the need to use the brake pedal. The system makes it possible to maintain a low and uniform speed when driving down steep hills.

> **Note**
>
> When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response will change.

> **Note**
>
> This drive mode is not designed to be used for normal street driving.

> **Note**
>
> The function is deactivated when driving at high speeds and must be reactivated at lower speeds if so desired.

[1] Low Speed Control

* Option/accessory.

[2] Hill Descent Control

---

# 11.7.5. Driving with a trailer

There are a number of things to consider when towing a trailer, such as the towbar, the trailer and how the load is distributed in the trailer.

Load-carrying capacity is determined by the vehicle's curb weight. The total weight of all passengers and any installed accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the vehicle's load-carrying capacity by the corresponding amount.

- Towbars used on the vehicle must be approved for the applicable use.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towbar complies with the specified maximum towball weight. The tongue weight is calculated as part of the vehicle's payload.
- Increase the tire pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load.
- The engine is subjected to more load than usual when towing a trailer.
- Towing a trailer affects the vehicle's handling, durability and driving economy.
- Do not drive with a heavy trailer when the vehicle is very new. Wait until the mileage has reached at least 1000 km (620 miles).
- On long and steep downgrades, the vehicle's brakes are subjected to much more load than usual. When manually shifting, downshift and adapt speed accordingly.

- Follow applicable regulations regarding permitted speed and weight.
- Drive slowly when towing a trailer up a long and steep incline.
- The maximum trailer weights given only apply to altitudes up to 1000 meters (3280 feet) above sea level. At higher altitudes, engine power (and thus the vehicle's climbing ability) is decreased due to the reduced air density, and the maximum trailer weight must therefore be reduced. The weight of the vehicle and trailer must be decreased by 10% for each additional 1000 m (3280 feet) or part thereof.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

- Avoid overloading and other incorrect use.
- The trailer's brakes must be balanced with the vehicle's brakes to help ensure safe stops (follow applicable local regulations).

**Important**

- Bumper-attached trailer hitches must not be used on Volvos, nor should safety chains be attached to the bumper.
- Trailer hitches attaching to the vehicle rear axle must not be used.
- Never connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to the vehicle brake system, nor a trailer's lighting system directly to the vehicle lighting system. Consult your nearest authorized Volvo retailer for correct installation.
- When towing a trailer, the trailer's safety chains or wire must be correctly fastened to the attachment points provided in the trailer hitch on the vehicle. The safety chain or wire must never be fastened to or wound around the towing ball.

**Note**

The optional detachable trailer hitch may not be available in all markets or on all models. Consult your Volvo retailer.

**Note**

Extreme weather conditions, towing a trailer, high altitude and lower fuel grade than recommended are factors that can significantly increase the vehicle's fuel consumption.

## Trailer weights

**Warning**

Please adhere to the recommendations provided for trailer weight. If the recommendations are not followed, the vehicle and trailer may be difficult to control during evasive maneuvers and braking.

**Note**

The specified maximum trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations may set additional restrictions on trailer weight and speed. The trailer hitches may be certified for higher towing weights than the vehicle is permitted to tow.

## Self-leveling suspension*

The vehicle's self-leveling system attempts to keep the vehicle at a constant level, regardless of load (up to the maximum permitted weight). When the vehicle is stationary, the rear end of the vehicle will be slightly lowered, which is normal.

## Driving in mountainous areas

In certain conditions, there is a risk of overheating when driving with a trailer. If overheating of the engine and drive system is detected, a warning symbol will illuminate in the instrument panel and a message will appear.

The automatic transmission adapts the gear for the current load and engine speed.

#### Steep inclines

Do not lock the automatic transmission into a higher gear than what the engine can handle – it is not always preferable to drive in high gears at low rpm.

#### Parking on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Put the gear selector in P.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Put chocks behind the wheels when the vehicle is parked on a hill with a trailer attached.

#### Starting on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Put the gear selector in D.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Release the brake pedal and start driving.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 11.7.6. Trailer Stability Assist*

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA[1]) is part of the ESC[2] stability system and is a function designed to help stabilize a vehicle that is towing a trailer when the vehicle and trailer have begun to sway. The function is added when installing a towbar. Contact a Volvo retailer for more information.

## Reasons for swaying

A vehicle towing a trailer may begin to sway for various reasons. Normally this only occurs at high speeds. However, if the trailer is overloaded or unevenly distributed, e.g. too far back, there is a risk of swaying even at low speeds.

Swaying may be caused by factors such as:

- The vehicle and trailer are hit by a sudden, strong crosswind.
- The vehicle and trailer are traveling on an uneven road or over a bump.
- Sudden movements of the steering wheel.

Once swaying has begun, it can be difficult or impossible to stop it. This makes the vehicle and trailer difficult to control and there is a risk of swerving into oncoming traffic or driving off the road.

## Trailer Stability Assist function

Trailer Stability Assist continuously monitors the vehicle's movements, particularly lateral movements. If swaying is detected, the brakes are applied individually on the front wheels, which has a stabilizing effect on the vehicle and trailer. This is often enough to enable the driver to regain control of the vehicle.

If the Trailer Stability Assist function's first attempt is not adequate to stop the swaying motion, the brakes are applied on all wheels and vehicle power is temporarily reduced. As the swaying motion begins to decrease and the vehicle and trailer have once again become stable, TSA stops regulating the brakes/engine power and the driver regains control of the vehicle.

> **Note**
>
> Trailer Stability Assist is deactivated if the driver activates **ESC Sport Mode** in the center display's menu system.

Trailer Stability Assist may not intervene if the driver tries to compensate for the swaying motion by moving the steering wheel rapidly, because the system will then not be able to determine if it is the trailer or the driver causing the swaying.

When Trailer Stability Assist is activated, the ESC symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

> **Note**
>
> A vehicle software update is required when a towbar is retrofitted. Contact a Volvo retailer.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Trailer Stability Assist

[2] Electronic Stability Control

# 11.7.7. Checking trailer lights

When connecting a trailer, make sure that the trailer's lights are functioning before starting to drive.

## Checking trailer lights*

#### Automatic check

When the trailer has been connected to the vehicle's electrical system, its lights can be checked by automatically activating them. This function helps the driver check that the trailer's lights are functioning correctly before starting to drive.

In order to perform this check, the vehicle must be switched off.

1. When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the message **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check** will appear in the instrument panel.
2. Acknowledge the message by pressing the O button on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

> The light check will begin.

3. Get out of the vehicle to perform the check.

> All of the lights on the trailer will begin flashing, and then illuminate separately one at a time.

4. Visually check that all of the trailer's lights are functioning correctly.
5. After a short time, all of the trailer's lights will start flashing again.

> The light check is completed.

#### Disabling the automatic check

The automatic light check can be disabled in the center display.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **My Car → Lights and Lighting**.
3. Deselect **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check**.

#### Manual check

If the automatic check has been disabled, the check can be started manually.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.

2. Tap **My Car → Lights and Lighting**.

3. Select **Manual Trailer Lamp Check**.

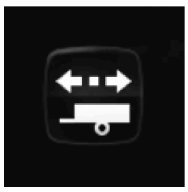
> The light check will begin. Get out of the vehicle to perform the check.

### Trailer rear fog light

When a trailer is connected, the vehicle's rear fog light may not illuminate and rear fog light functionality is instead transferred to the trailer. If this is the case, check to see if the trailer is equipped with a rear fog light before activating the vehicle's fog lights when driving with a trailer to help ensure safe operation.

### Symbols and messages in the instrument panel

If one or more of the turn signals or brake lights on the trailer is not working, a symbol and message will be displayed in the instrument panel. The other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before the vehicle is driven.

| Symbol | Message |
|---|---|
|  | • Trailer turn indicator Right turn indicator malfunction<br>• Trailer turn indicator Left turn indicator malfunction |
| | • Trailer brake light Malfunction |

If any of the trailer's turn signal lights is not working, the turn signal symbol in the instrument panel will also flash more quickly than normal.

* Option/accessory.

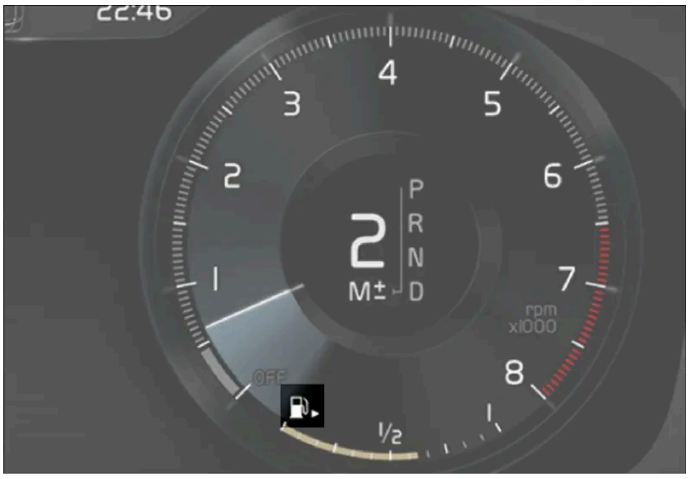
---

# 11.8. Fuel

---

# 11.8.1. Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge in the instrument panel shows the fuel level in the tank.




The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

**Fuel gauge in 12" instrument panel:**

The beige area in the fuel gauge indicates the amount of fuel left in the tank.

When the fuel level is low, the fuel pump symbol will illuminate with an amber-colored light. The trip computer also indicates the approximate distance that can be driven on the fuel remaining in the tank.

The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

**Fuel gauge in 8" instrument panel:**

The bars in the fuel gauge indicate the amount of fuel left in the tank.

When the fuel level is low, the fuel pump symbol will illuminate with an amber-colored light. The trip computer also indicates the approximate distance that can be driven on the fuel remaining in the tank.

---

# 11.8.2. Fuel

Volvo recommends the use of detergent gasoline to control engine deposits.

## Deposit control gasoline (gasoline with detergent additives)

Detergent gasoline is effective in keeping injectors and intake valves clean. Consistent use of deposit control gasolines will help ensure good driveability and fuel economy. If you are not sure whether the gasoline contains deposit control additives, check with the service station operator.

> **Note**
>
> Volvo recommends not using external fuel injector cleaning systems, e.g. do not add detergent additives to gasoline before or after refueling.

## Unleaded fuel

All Volvo vehicles have a three-way catalytic converter and must only use unleaded gasoline. US and Canadian regulations require that pumps delivering unleaded gasoline are labeled "UNLEADED". Only the nozzles of these pumps will fit in your vehicle's fuel filler inlet. It is unlawful to dispense leaded fuel into a vehicle labeled "unleaded gasoline only". Leaded gasoline damages the three-way catalytic converter and the heated oxygen sensor system. Repeated use of leaded gasoline will lessen the effectiveness of the emission control system and could result in loss of emission warranty coverage. State and local vehicle inspection programs will make detection of misfueling easier, possibly resulting in emission test failure for misfueled vehicles.

> **Note**
>
> Some U.S. and Canadian gasolines contain an octane enhancing additive called methyl-cyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). If such fuels are used, your Emission Control System performance may be affected, and the Check Engine Light (malfunction indicator light) located on your instrument panel may light. If this occurs, please return your vehicle to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for service.

## Gasoline containing alcohol and ethers, "Oxygenated fuels"

Some fuel suppliers sell gasoline containing "oxygenates" which are usually alcohols or ethers. In some areas, state or local laws require that the service pump be marked indicating use of alcohols or ethers. However, there are areas in which the pumps are unmarked. If you are not sure whether there is alcohol or ethers in the gasoline you buy, check with the service station operator. To meet seasonal air quality standards, some areas require the use of "oxygenated" fuel.

Volvo permits the use of the following "oxygenated" fuels. However, the specified octane ratings must still be met.

#### Alcohol - Ethanol

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol by volume may be used. Ethanol may also be referred to as Ethyl alcohol, or "Gasohol".

Ethers - MTBE/ETBE: Fuels containing up to 22% MTBE/ETBE by volume may be used.

## Methanol

Do not use gasolines containing methanol (methyl alcohol, wood alcohol). This practice can result in vehicle performance deterioration and can damage critical parts in the fuel system. Such damage may not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

# 11.8.3. Octane rating

Volvo requires premium fuel (91 octane[1] or higher) for all T5, T6 and T8 engines, and recommends AKI 93 for optimal performance and fuel economy. See decal examples in illustrations 1 and 2.

## Minimum octane

**Decals**

Illustration 1: Sample fuel pump octane label[1].

Illustration 2: Decal on the inside of the fuel filler flap on vehicles that require premium fuel[2].

## TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline

Volvo endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain engine performance and reliability. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new standard jointly established by leading automotive manufactures to meet the needs of today's advanced engines. Qualifying gasoline retailers (stations) will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met the "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" standards.

**Note**

Information about TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is available at toptiergas.com

**Note**

When switching to higher octane fuel or changing gasoline brands, it may be necessary to fill the tank more than once before a difference in engine operation is noticeable.

## Fuel Formulations

Do not use gasoline that contains lead or manganese as a knock inhibitor, and do not use lead additives. Besides damaging the exhaust emission control systems on your vehicle, lead has been strongly linked to certain forms of cancer.

Many fuels contain benzene as a solvent. Unburned benzene has been strongly linked to certain forms of cancer. If you live in an area where you must fill your own gas tank, take precautions. These may include:

- standing upwind away from the filler nozzle while refueling
- refueling only at gas stations with vapor recovery systems that fully seal the mouth of the filler neck during refueling
- wearing neoprene gloves while handling a fuel filler nozzle.

### Use of Additives

With the exception of gas line antifreeze during winter months, do not add solvents, thickeners, or other store-bought additives to your vehicle's fuel, cooling, or lubricating systems. Overuse may damage your engine, and some of these additives contain organically volatile chemicals. Do not needlessly expose yourself to these chemicals.

> **Warning**
>
> Never carry a cell phone that is **switched on** while refueling your vehicle. If the phone rings, this may cause a spark that could ignite gasoline fumes, resulting in fire and injury.

> **Warning**
>
> Carbon monoxide is a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. It is present in all exhaust gases. If you ever smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, make sure the passenger compartment is ventilated, and immediately return the vehicle to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for correction.

### Demanding driving

In demanding driving conditions, such as when towing a trailer or driving in hot weather or for prolonged periods at high altitudes, it may be a good idea to switch to a higher-octane fuel (AKI [1] 91 or higher) or to switch to another brand of gasoline in order to fully utilize the vehicle's engine capacity and optimize traction.

[1] AKI (Anti Knock Index) is an average value of RON (Research Octane Number) and MON (Motor Octane Number) - (RON)+(MON)/2

[2] For supplementary information - see the car's Service and Warranty Booklet.

---

# 11.8.4. Emission controls

### Three-way catalytic converter

- Keep your engine properly tuned. Certain engine malfunctions, particularly involving the electrical, fuel or distributor ignition systems, may cause unusually high three-way catalytic converter temperatures. Do not continue to operate your vehicle if you detect engine misfire, noticeable loss of power or other unusual operating conditions, such as engine

overheating or backfiring. A properly tuned engine will help avoid malfunctions that could damage the three-way catalytic converter.

- Do not park your vehicle over combustible materials, such as grass or leaves, which can come into contact with the hot exhaust system and cause such materials to ignite under certain wind and weather conditions.
- Excessive starter cranking (in excess of one minute), or an intermittently firing or flooded engine can cause three-way catalytic converter or exhaust system overheating.
- Remember that tampering or unauthorized modifications to the engine, the Engine Control Module, or the vehicle may be illegal and can cause three-way catalytic converter or exhaust system overheating. This includes: altering fuel injection settings or components, altering emission system components or location or removing components, and/or repeated use of leaded fuel.

> **Note**
>
> Unleaded fuel is required for vehicles with three-way catalytic converters.

### Heated oxygen sensors

The heated oxygen sensors monitor the oxygen content of the exhaust gases. Readings are fed into a control module that continuously monitors engine functions and controls fuel injection. The ratio of fuel to air into the engine is continuously adjusted for efficient combustion to help reduce harmful emissions.

---

# 11.9. Refueling

---

# 11.9.1. Service stations

You can use the vehicle's navigation system* to find a route to the nearest service station.

While you are stopped to refuel, it can be a good idea to perform a quick inspection of the vehicle, such as checking tire pressure, lights, wiper blades, filling washer fluid, etc.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 11.9.2. Fuel tank volume

The fuel tank's refillable volume is shown in the table below.

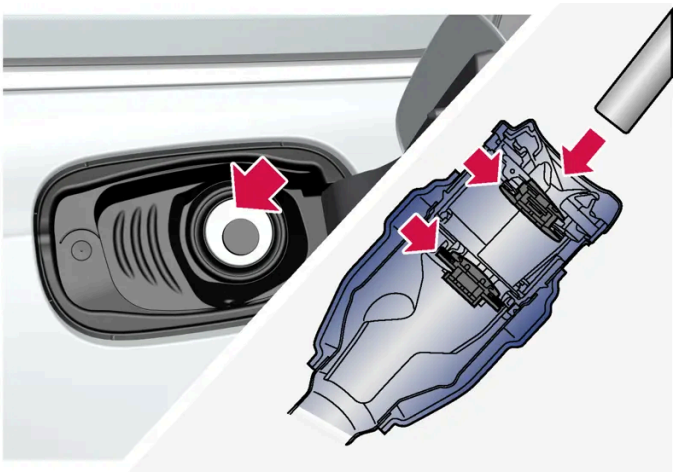
| | All engines |
|---|---|
| Liter (approx) | 60 |

| | All engines |
|---|---|
| US gallons (approx) | 15.9 |

## 11.9.3. Refueling

The fuel tank is equipped with a fuel filling system without a cover.

## Refueling the vehicle at a service station



It is important to insert the pump's nozzle past both of the two flaps in the fuel filler pipe before beginning fueling.

Instructions for fueling:

1. Turn off the engine and open the fuel filler door.
2. Select a fuel approved for use in the vehicle. For more information on approved fuels, see the section on “Fuel”.
3. Insert the pump's nozzle into the fuel filler pipe's opening. There are two flaps just inside the fuel filler pipe and the pump's nozzle must push both of these flaps open before fuel can be added.
4. Avoid overfilling the tank. Do not press the handle on the filler nozzle again after it has initially stopped pumping.

> The fuel tank is now filled.

**Note**

An over-full tank may overflow in hot weather.

**Important**

Avoid spilling gasoline during refueling. In addition to causing damage to the environment, gasolines containing alcohol can cause damage to painted surfaces, which may not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## Refueling from a fuel container

When filling from a fuel container, use the funnel provided in a foam block under the floor hatch in the cargo compartment.

1. Open the fuel filler door.

2. Insert the funnel into the fuel filler pipe's opening. There are two flaps just inside the fuel filler pipe and the tube section of the funnel must push both of these flaps open before fuel can be added.

> **Warning**
>
> **California Proposition 65**
>
> Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle [https://www.p65warnings.ca.gov/products/passenger-vehicle] .

---

# 11.9.4. Opening/closing the fuel filler door

The vehicle must be unlocked before the fuel filler door can be opened[1].

An arrow next to the fuel pump symbol in the instrument panel indicates the side of the vehicle on which the fuel filler door is located.

1. Open the fuel filler door by pressing lightly on its rear edge.
2. After refueling, press the fuel filler door lightly to close it.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only locking and unlocking using the remote key, Passive Entry* or Volvo On Call will affect the status of the fuel filler door.

---

# 11.10. Emission control system

---

# 11.10.1. Emission controls

## Three-way catalytic converter

- Keep your engine properly tuned. Certain engine malfunctions, particularly involving the electrical, fuel or distributor ignition systems, may cause unusually high three-way catalytic converter temperatures. Do not continue to operate your vehicle if you detect engine misfire, noticeable loss of power or other unusual operating conditions, such as engine overheating or backfiring. A properly tuned engine will help avoid malfunctions that could damage the three-way catalytic converter.
- Do not park your vehicle over combustible materials, such as grass or leaves, which can come into contact with the hot exhaust system and cause such materials to ignite under certain wind and weather conditions.
- Excessive starter cranking (in excess of one minute), or an intermittently firing or flooded engine can cause three-way catalytic converter or exhaust system overheating.
- Remember that tampering or unauthorized modifications to the engine, the Engine Control Module, or the vehicle may be illegal and can cause three-way catalytic converter or exhaust system overheating. This includes: altering fuel injection settings or components, altering emission system components or location or removing components, and/or repeated use of leaded fuel.

> **Note**
>
> Unleaded fuel is required for vehicles with three-way catalytic converters.

### Heated oxygen sensors

The heated oxygen sensors monitor the oxygen content of the exhaust gases. Readings are fed into a control module that continuously monitors engine functions and controls fuel injection. The ratio of fuel to air into the engine is continuously adjusted for efficient combustion to help reduce harmful emissions.

---

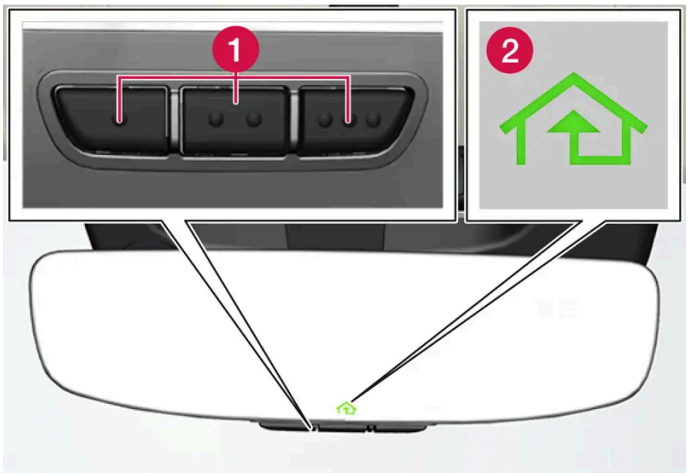
# 11.11. HomeLink

---

## 11.11.1. HomeLink® * [1]

HomeLink® [2] is a programmable remote control integrated in the vehicle's electrical system.

It can remotely control up to three different devices, such as garage door openers or alarm systems, and thereby replace the remote controls for these.




The illustration is generic – the design may vary.

1 Programmable buttons

2 Indicator light

HomeLink® is integrated in the rearview mirror and consists of three programmable buttons and an indicator light in the mirror.

> **Note**
>
> Save the original remote controls for future reprogramming (e.g. for use in another vehicle).
>
> It is also advisable to delete the button programming if the vehicle is sold.

## More information

Visit homelink.com or call 1-800-355-3515.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Certain markets only.

[2] HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Gentex Corporation.

---

# 11.11.2. Using HomeLink® * [1]

Once HomeLink® is programmed, it can be used instead of the separate remote controls.

Press and hold the programming button. The garage door, gate, alarm system, etc. will be activated (this may take several seconds). If the button is held down for more than 20 seconds, reprogramming will begin. The indicator light will glow steadily or flash when the button has been pressed. The original remote controls may be used concurrently with HomeLink® if desired.

**Note**

When the ignition is switched off, HomeLink® will be active for at least 7 minutes.

**Note**

HomeLink® cannot be used if the vehicle is locked and the alarm is armed* from the outside.

**Warning**

- If you use HomeLink® to open a garage door or gate, be sure no one is near the gate or door while it is in motion.
- Do not use HomeLink® with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door that cannot detect an object - signaling the door to stop and reverse - does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards. For more information, contact HomeLink at: homelink.com.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Certain markets only.

---

# 11.11.3. Programming HomeLink® * [1]

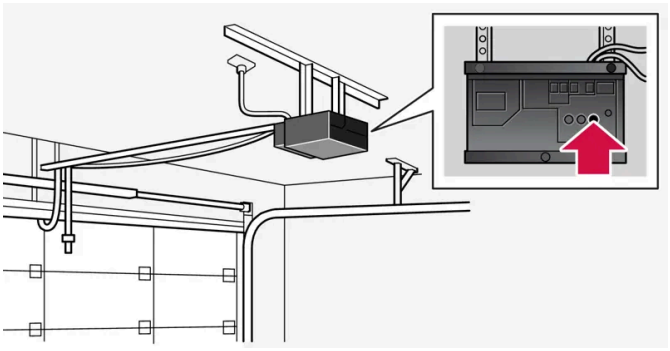
Program HomeLink®, reset programming or reprogram individual buttons.

## Programming

1. Point the remote control at the HomeLink® button to be programmed and hold it about 2-8 cm (1-3 inches) from the button. Do not obstruct the HomeLink® indicator light.
2. Press and hold both the remote control button and the HomeLink® button to be programmed.
3. Do not release the buttons until the indicator light has stopped flashing slowly (about once a second) and either flashes quickly (about 10 times a second) or glows steadily.

> **If the indicator light glows steadily:** Indication that programming is complete.
> Press the programmed button twice to activate.
> **If the indicator light flashes quickly:** The device being programmed with HomeLink® may have a security function that requires an extra step.

Try pressing the programmed button twice to see whether the programming works. Otherwise, continue with the following steps.

4. 

   Locate the "training" button[2] on the receiver for the e.g. garage door opener. It is usually located near the antenna bracket on the receiver.

5. Press and release the "training" button once.

   Programming must be completed within 30 seconds after pressing the button.

6. Press and release the HomeLink® button to be programmed. Repeat the press/hold/release sequence a second time. For some receivers, the sequence may need to be repeated a third time.

> Programming is complete.

**Note**

Some remote controls are more effective at programming HomeLink® from a distance of about 15-20 cm (6-12 inches).

## Programming individual buttons

1. Press and hold the desired button for about 20 seconds.
2. When the indicator light on HomeLink® starts flashing slowly, it is possible to program as usual.

**Note**

If the button you are reprogramming does not program with a new device, it will return to the previously saved programming.

## Resetting the HomeLink® buttons

It is only possible to reset all HomeLink® buttons at once. Individual buttons can only be reprogrammed.

1. Press and hold the outer buttons on HomeLink® for about 10 seconds.

> When the indicator light goes from a steady glow to flashing, the buttons have been reset and are ready for reprogramming.

### Problems programming

Visit homelink.com or call 1-800-355-3515.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Certain markets only.

[2] The name and color of the button varies depending on the manufacturer.

---

## 11.11.4. Type approval for HomeLink® * [1]

Type approval for HomeLink® is provided below.

| Country/Area | Type approval |
|---|---|
| USA and Canada | This device complies with FCC rules part 15 and Industry Canada RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation. |
| Europe | Gentex Corporation hereby declares that HomeLink® Model UAHL5 complies with the Radio equipment directive 2014/53/EU.<br>Wavelengths within which the radio equipment operates:<br>• 433.05MHz-434.79MHz <10mW E.R.P.<br>• 868.00MHz-868.60MHz <25mW E.R.P.<br>• 868.70MHz-868.20MHz <25mW E.R.P.<br>• 869.40MHz-869.65MHz <25mW E.R.P.<br>• 869.70MHz-870.00MHz <25mW E.R.P.<br>Certificate holder address: Gentex Corporation, 600 North Centennial Street, Zeeland MI 49464, USA |

**Warning**

The transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.[2]

* Option/accessory.

[1] Certain markets only.

[2] The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

---

# 11.12. Compass

## 11.12.1. Compass*

An integrated compass[1] in the upper right corner of the rearview mirror shows the direction the vehicle is traveling.

Rearview mirror with compass.

Eight different compass directions are shown with the abbreviations:

- **N** – north
- **NE** – northeast
- **E** – east
- **SE** – southeast
- **S** – south
- **SW** – southwest
- **W** – west
- **NW** – northwest

* Option/accessory.

[1] Rearview mirror with compass is available as an option only on certain markets and models.

## 11.12.2. Activating and deactivating the compass*

An integrated compass[1] in the upper right corner of the rearview mirror shows the direction the vehicle is traveling.

The compass is automatically activated when the vehicle is started.

**Activating or deactivating the compass manually**

1. Use a paper clip or similar object to press the button on the bottom of the mirror.

> If the compass is deactivated when the vehicle is switched off, it will not be activated the next time the vehicle is started. The compass will then need to be activated manually.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Rearview mirror with compass is available as an option only on certain markets and models.

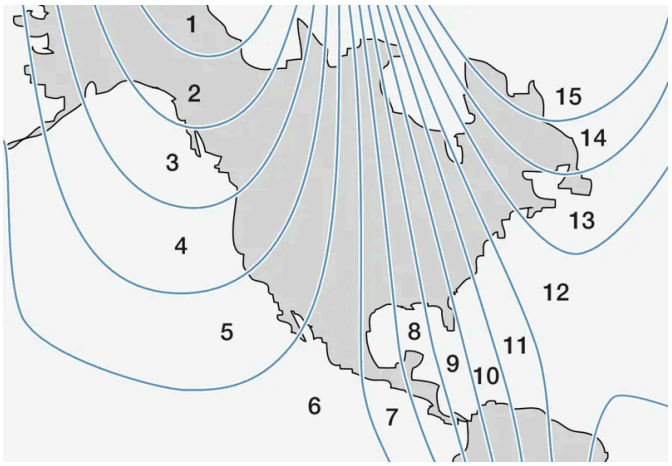
---

# 11.12.3. Calibrating the compass*

The globe is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass[1] should be calibrated if the vehicle is driven from one zone to another.

1. Stop the vehicle in a large, open area away from steel constructions and high-voltage power lines.
2. Start the engine and switch off all electrical equipment (climate system, wipers, etc.) and make sure all doors are closed.

> **Note**
>
> Calibration may fail or not even be initiated if electrical equipment is not turned off.

3. Hold the button on the bottom of the rearview mirror pressed for about 3 seconds (using e.g. a paper clip). The number of the current magnetic zone is shown.
4. 


Magnetic zones.

Press the button on the underside of the mirror repeatedly until the desired magnetic zone (1–15) appears (see the map of magnetic zones).

5. Wait until the display again shows C, or press and hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror for approx. 6 seconds until C is displayed.
6. Drive slowly in a circle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h (6 mph) until a compass direction is shown in the display. This indicates that calibration is complete. Drive in a circle two more times to fine-tune the calibration.
7. **Vehicles with heated windshields*:** If C is shown in the display when the windshield heating function is activated, perform step 6 above with the heating function on.
8. Repeat the above procedure as needed.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Rearview mirror with compass is available as an option only on certain markets and models.

# 11.13. Towing

## 11.13.1. Towing using a towline

This section refers to one vehicle being towed behind another using a towline.

Before towing another vehicle, check applicable speed limit regulations.

### Preparations and towing

**Important**

For some transmission variants, it is not possible to shift from P position if the engine is switched off. Contact an authorized Volvo workshop for assistance towing or call a professional towing service.

**Important**

Note that the vehicle must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.

- Do not tow a vehicle with automatic transmission at a speed greater than 80 km/h (50 mph) or for a distance greater than 80 km (50 miles).

**Warning**

- Ignition mode II must be active – all airbags are deactivated in ignition mode I.
- Always have the remote key in the vehicle when it is towed.

**Warning**

The brake and steering servos do not work when the engine is off – it takes about 5 times more pressure on the brake pedal and steering requires much more effort than normal.

1. Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
2. Attach the towline to the towing eyelet.
3. Put the vehicle in ignition mode **II** – without pressing the brake pedal, turn the start knob clockwise and hold it there for about 4 seconds. Release the knob, which will automatically return to its original position.
4. Move the gear selector to neutral (N) and release the parking brake.

   If the battery charge level is too low, it may not be possible to release the parking brake. Connect an auxiliary battery to the vehicle if the battery is discharged.

> The towing vehicle can now start driving.

5. Keep the towline taut when the towing vehicle slows down by applying light pressure to the brake pedal. This will help avoid jarring movements.
6. Be prepared to apply the brakes to stop the vehicle.

### Jump starting

Do not tow the vehicle to start the engine. Use an auxiliary battery if the start battery's charge level is so low that the engine cannot be started.

**Important**

Attempting to tow with the engine running could result in damage to the three-way catalytic converter.

---

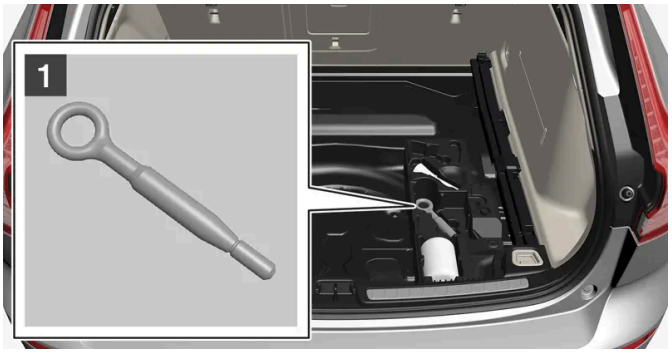
## 11.13.2. Attaching and removing the towing eyelet

Use the towing eyelet when towing. Screw the towing eyelet securely into place in the threaded outlet behind the cover on the right-hand side of the front and rear bumpers.

**Note**

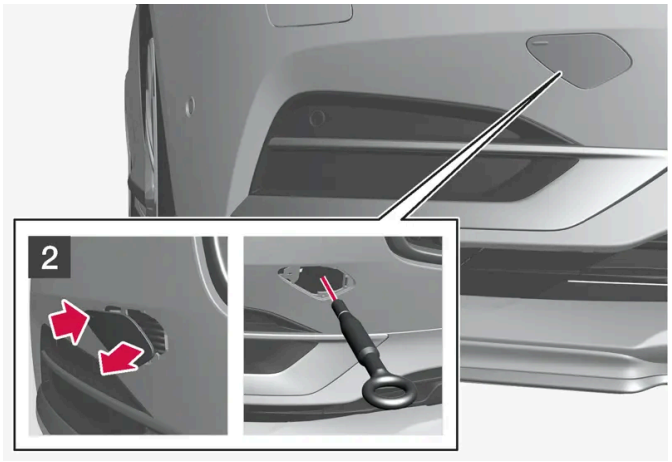
If the vehicle is equipped with a towbar, there is no rear attachment for the towing eye.

## Attaching the towing eyelet

1. 


   1

   Take out the towing eyelet, which is stored in a foam block under the floor in the cargo compartment.

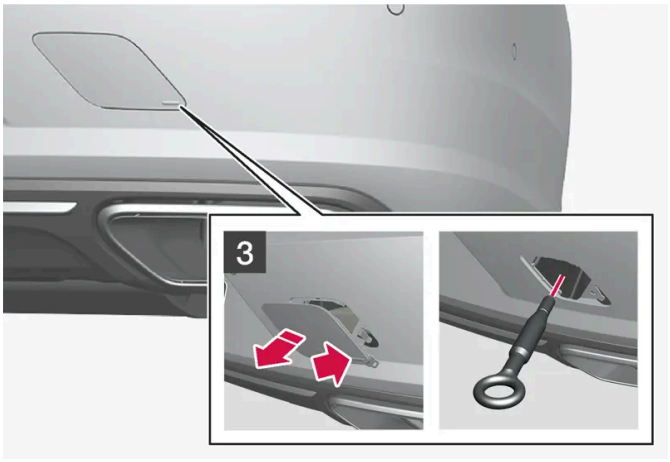
2. 


   2

   Front: Remove the cover by pressing on the mark with a finger.

> The cover turns along its center line and can then be removed.

3.

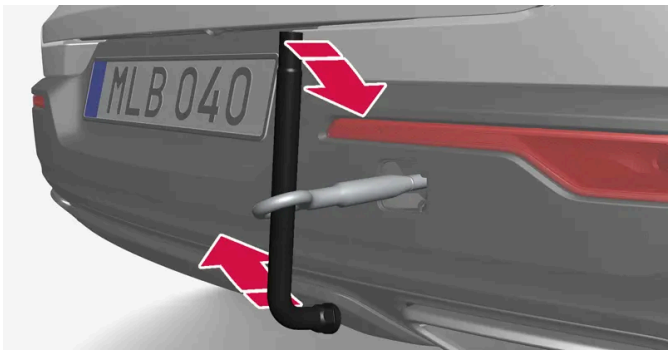



3

Rear: Remove the cover by pressing on the mark with a finger while folding out the opposite side/corner.

> The cover turns along its center line and can then be removed.

4. Screw the towing eyelet in as far as possible.




Fasten the eyelet securing by, for example, inserting a lug wrench* through it and using this as a lever.

> **Important**
>
> It is important that the towing eye is screwed in securely as far as possible.

**To consider before using the towing eyelet**

- In certain conditions, the towing eyelet may be used to pull the vehicle onto a flatbed tow truck. The vehicle's position and ground clearance determines if this is possible.
- If the incline of the tow truck is too steep or if the ground clearance under the vehicle is insufficient, attempting to pull it up using the towing eyelet may result in damage.
- If necessary, lift the vehicle using the tow truck's lifting device instead of using the towing eyelet.

> **Warning**
>
> No person or object should be behind the tow truck when the vehicle is lifted onto the bed of the truck.

> **Important**
>
> The towing eyelet is only intended for towing on roads – not for pulling vehicles from ditches or any similar purpose involving severe strain. Call a tow truck for professional assistance.

### Removing the towing eyelet

1. Unscrew the towing eyelet after use and return it to the foam block.

   Replace the cover on the bumper.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 11.13.3. Recovery

This section refers to transporting the vehicle with a tow truck or similar vehicle.

Call a professional towing service for assistance.

In certain conditions, the towing eyelet can be used to pull the vehicle onto a flatbed tow truck.

The vehicle's location and ground clearance determine if it can be lifted onto a tow truck. If the incline of the tow truck is too steep or if the ground clearance under the vehicle is insufficient, attempting to pull it up may result in damage. In this case, the vehicle should only be lifted with the tow truck's lifting equipment.

> **Warning**
>
> No person or object should be behind the tow truck when the vehicle is lifted onto the bed of the truck.

> **Important**
>
> The towing eyelet is only intended for towing on roads, and must **not** be used to pull vehicles from ditches or any similar purpose involving severe strain. Call a tow truck for professional assistance.

**Important**

Note that the vehicle must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.

---

# 11.13.4. Safety mode

Safety mode is a feature that is triggered after a collision if there is potential damage to an important function in the vehicle, such as the fuel lines, sensors for one of the safety systems, the brake system, etc.

If the vehicle has been involved in a collision, the text **Safety mode See Owner's manual** may appear in the instrument panel along with the warning symbol if the panel is undamaged and the vehicle's electrical system is intact. The message indicates that one or more of the vehicle's functions may be reduced.

**Warning**

Never attempt to restart the vehicle if you smell fuel fumes when the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is displayed in the instrument panel. Leave the vehicle immediately.

If safety mode has been set, it may be possible to reset the system in order to start and move the vehicle a short distance, for example, if it is blocking traffic.

**Warning**

Never attempt to perform repairs or reset electrical components on your own after the vehicle has been in safety mode. This could result in injury or prevent the vehicle from functioning properly. Volvo recommends having the vehicle inspected and reset to normal operating status by an authorized Volvo workshop after **Safety mode See Owner's manual** has been displayed.

**Warning**

When the vehicle is in safety mode, it should not be towed behind another vehicle. It should be towed from the site on a tow truck. Volvo recommends towing the vehicle directly to an authorized Volvo workshop.

---

# 11.13.5. Starting and moving the vehicle when it is in safety mode

If safety mode has been set, it may be possible to reset the system in order to start and move the vehicle a short distance, for example, if it is blocking traffic.

## Resetting and starting the vehicle when it is in safety mode

1. Check the vehicle for damage, particularly for fuel leakage. Make sure you do not detect any gasoline fumes.

   If the damage to the vehicle is minor and there is no fuel leakage/fumes, you may attempt to start the engine.

> **Warning**
>
> Never attempt to restart the vehicle if you smell fuel fumes when the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is displayed in the instrument panel. Leave the vehicle immediately.

2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Then try to start the vehicle.

> The vehicle's electrical system will perform a system check and then attempt to reset to normal operating mode.

> **Important**
>
> If the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is still displayed, the vehicle should not be driven or towed behind another vehicle. If the vehicle needs to be moved, it must be towed on a tow truck. Even if no damage is apparent, there may be hidden damage that could make the vehicle impossible to control.

## Moving the vehicle when it is in safety mode

1. If the message **Normal mode The car is now in normal mode** is displayed after attempting to start the engine, the vehicle may be moved carefully from its present position if, for example, it is blocking traffic.
2. Do not move the vehicle farther than absolutely necessary.

> **Warning**
>
> When the vehicle is in safety mode, it should not be towed behind another vehicle. It should be towed from the site on a tow truck. Volvo recommends towing the vehicle directly to an authorized Volvo workshop.

# 12. Audio, media and Internet

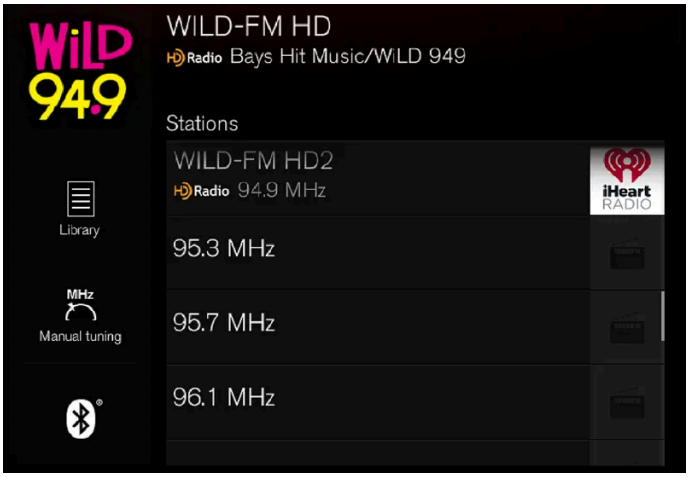
# 12.1. Radio

# 12.1.1. HD Radio

# 12.1.1.1. HD Radio™

HD Radio is a brand name registered by the DTS, Inc.[1]. They are the developer of a broadcasting technology called IBOC or In Band On Channel, which refers to the method of transmitting a digital radio broadcast signal centered on the same frequency as the FM station's present frequency.

## Introduction




Display when the radio is receiving an HD Radio broadcast (generic illustration)

> **Note**
>
> HD Radio volume may fade in and out at times due to coverage limitations.

The IBOC system is referred to as a "hybrid" since it is both analog and digital. During hybrid operation, receivers still continue to receive the analog (non-digital) signal. HD Radio receivers incorporate both modes of reception, where the receiver will automatically switch to the analog signal if the digital signal cannot be decoded or is lost by the receiver.

When you have tuned to an HD Radio station, the HD symbol will appear in the infotainment system display. The symbol will be displayed in different colors:

- **Grayed-out symbol**: no HD Radio broadcast reception
- **White symbol**: the radio is actively receiving an HD broadcast
- **Orange symbol**: the radio is receiving an HD broadcast with digital sound

More information about HD Radio and IBOC can be found on DTS, Inc.'s website, www.dts.com.

## Artist Experience™

A radio station's logo and album art can be displayed. If a station opts to provide this information, it is broadcast once every 12 minutes, which means that there may be a delay before the logo/album art appear on the screen. The radio can store 100 station logos so the next time the radio is tuned to the same station, the logo will be displayed immediately. Album art is synched with the artist that you are currently listening to.

## Ball game mode

This feature means that a main FM station (HD1) will broadcast live events, where the content of the programming is more important than sound quality, in analog mode only to help prevent the delay between analog and digital broadcasting. The HD Radio symbol will be white during live broadcasts and "Live" will be displayed next to the symbol.

## Benefits of digital broadcasting

- Better sound (FM sounds near CD quality).
- Some FM frequencies offer a greater number of listening choices through multicasting (consisting of a frequency's main channel and any sub-channels that may also be available on that particular frequency.)
- When receiving a digital signal there is no multipath disturbance or hisses/pops/crackling due to outside influences.

## How HD Radio ™ Technology broadcasting works

HD Radio works similarly to conventional radio and broadcasts of this type are available in many areas of the United States. However, there are a few key differences:

- Instead of transmitting one analogue signal, stations send out a bundled signal – both analog and digital.
- An HD Radio receiver can receive both digital and analog broadcasts. Depending on the terrain and location of the vehicle (which will influence the signal strength), the receiver will determine which signal to receive.

[1] HD Radio™ technology is manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of DTS.

---

# 12.1.1.2. HD Radio™ sub-channels

In many cases, a main HD Radio station (FM wavebands only) will also have sub-channels offering additional types of programming or music.

## Sub-channels

Example of an HD Radio station with sub-channels

If any sub-channels are available, they will listed below the main channel on the screen. In this example, WILD-FM HD2 is a sub-channel.

#### Selecting sub-channels

To listen to a station's sub-channel(s), tap the station on the screen or press the forward/back arrow keys on the right-side steering wheel keypad or below the screen.

Sub-channels can also be saved as radio favorites.

If you tap a sub-channel favorite, it may take up to **6 seconds** before the channel becomes audible. If you tap a station while you are out of digital range of the transmitter, **No reception** will be displayed.

---

# 12.1.1.3. Activating and deactivating the HD Radio™

HD Radio is deactivated when the car leaves the factory.

When listening to an HD Radio station and driving through areas with weak HD signals (fringe areas), you may experience that the radio repeatedly switches between analog/digital and digital/analog reception. If this happens, it may be desirable to switch HD off.

Carry out the following to activate or deactivate HD Radio:

1. Drag down the top view and tap on **Settings**.
2. Press **Media** and **FM Radio**.
3. Press **HD Radio FM** to activate/deactivate the function.

If HD radio is deactivated, the radio will be unable to receive digital broadcasts but it will continue to function as a conventional radio (analog FM receiver). Please note that when HD is switched off, it will not be possible to tune in to sub-channels.

Activating or deactivating HD Radio only affects the currently selected waveband.

---

# 12.1.1.4. HD Radio™ limitations

## Limitations

- **Main channel vs. sub-channels (FM only)**: The main channel is the only channel that can receive in hybrid mode (both digital and analog). If a frequency has sub-channels, they are broadcast in digital mode only. The main FM channel will be displayed as, for example, "WRIF-FM HD1". The sub-FM channels will be displayed as"WRIF-FM HD2", "WRIF-FM HD3", etc.
- **Reception coverage area**: Due to current IBOC transmitter power limitations, the reception coverage area in digital mode is somewhat more limited than the station's analog coverage area. Be aware that, like all radio transmission technology, terrain, time of day, vegetation and buildings can have a positive or negative effect on radio reception.
- **Analog to digital/digital to analog blending**: Analog to digital blending will occur as the signal strength reaches a preset threshold in the receiver. This will be noticeable in fringe areas (areas with weak reception) and is normal.

> **Note**
>
> There may be a noticeable difference in sound quality when a change from analogue to digital or digital to analogue occurs, such as:
>
> - Volume increase or decrease
> - Equalizer settings, i.e., Bass/ Midrange/Treble cut or boost
> - Time alignment (Digital program material in extreme cases can be as much as 8 seconds behind the analogue). This will noticeable as a "stuttering" effect.
>
> **The above items are dependant on the broadcaster's equipment settings and do not indicate a fault in the vehicle's radio receiver or antenna systems.**

---

# 12.1.2. Sirius XM satellite radio

---

# 12.1.2.1. SiriusXM® Satellite radio*

The SiriusXM® Satellite system broadcasts from of a number of high elevation satellites in geosynchronous orbit.

## Listening to satellite radio

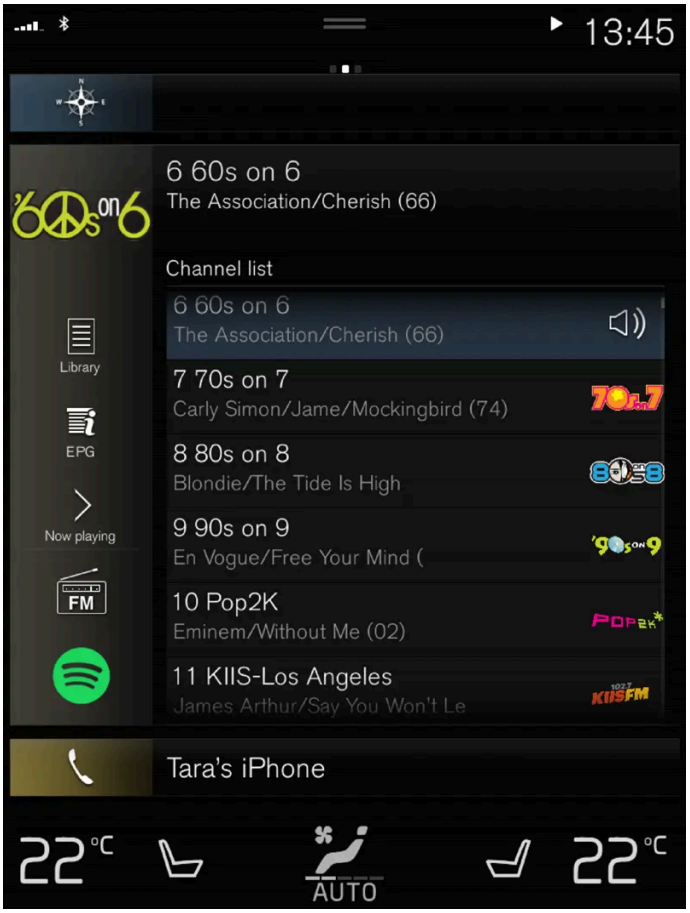
The digital signals from the satellites are line-of-sight, which means that physical obstructions such as bridges, tunnels, etc, may temporarily interfere with signal reception.

Avoid any obstructions, such as metallic objects transported on roof racks or in a ski box, or other antennas that may impede signals from the SiriusXM® satellites.

## Selecting SiriusXM® Satellite radio mode

1. From the center display's Home view, swipe from right to left to come to App view.
2.


   Tap the SiriusXM® Satellite radio icon.




Home view with SiriusXM® Satellite radio activated

If there is no subscription activated, tap channel 1, where you will be prompted on the screen to phone SiriusXM®.

If a cell phone is paired and connected to the vehicle, you can also subscribe by:

1. From Home view, pull down the Settings menu.
2. Open the settings menu for SiriusXM® Satellite radio.
3. Tap **Unsubscribed Services**.
4. To call SiriusXM®, enter the phone number. They will activate the subscription of your choice. This may take several minutes.

When the subscription has been activated, tap the SiriusXM® Satellite radio icon to start the function and display the channel list included in your subscription.

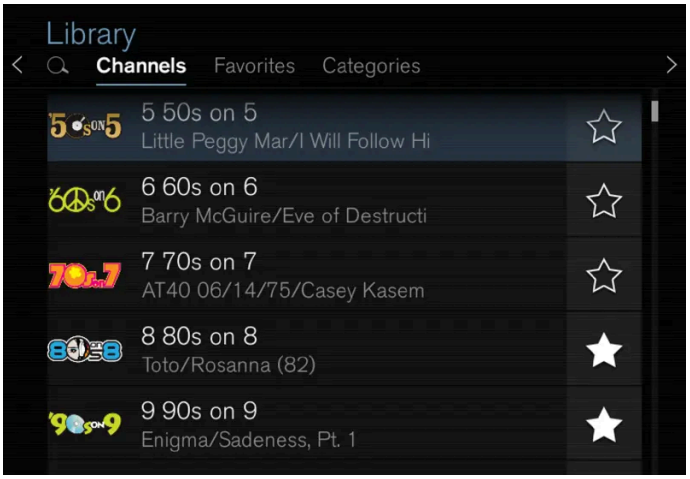
* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.1.2.2. Using SiriusXM® Satellite radio*

SiriusXM® Satellite radio offers several features for finding and listening to music, news, sporting events, etc. being broadcast on satellite radio stations.

## SiriusXM® Satellite radio functions




With SiriusXM® Satellite radio activated, tap **Library** to display a screen offering the following functions:

- **Search** (the magnifying glass icon)
- **Channels**
- **Favorites**
- **Categories**

If you have used this view previously, you will be returned to the most recently used one.

**Search**

Tap the magnifying glass to display a screen where you can enter text using the center display's keyboard or by writing in the free-text field to search for e.g., a station number, an artist, song title, etc.

#### Channels

Tap to display a complete list of the channels included in your subscription. Tap a channel name to listen. If a subscription to a channel has expired, its name will be grayed-out on the screen.

For quick access to a channel that you often listen to, tap the star to the right of the channel's name. It will then be added to your list of favorites.

#### Favorites

Tap to display the channels that you have added to this list. Tap a channel name to listen.

#### Categories/Genres

Tap to display the categories available. Tap a category or genre name to display the channels that it contains and then tap a channel to listen.

If you have activated alerts (see the “Alerts” section below) and an alert is activated for an artist, song or team, temporary virtual categories will also be created and displayed. The channels currently broadcasting the song, artist or broadcasting a program with the selected team will be listed in a virtual category.

## EPG (Electronic Program Guide)

On the center display's Home view, tap **EPG** for information about e.g., when a program is being broadcast and its name, description, artist, etc. If no information is currently available, **No information** will be displayed.

## Alerts

If this feature has been selected under **SiriusXM Settings**, the **Alerts** button will be displayed on the Home view.

To add e.g. an artist's name, song title or a sports team to the list of alerts:

1. Tune to a channel that is broadcasting a song, game, etc., of your choice.
2. Tap the **Alerts** button.
3. A pop-up window will be displayed showing a list of alerts (nothing will be displayed if the selected channel does not support the alert function).
4. Select one of the alternatives in list (only one can be selected at a time).
5. The song/artist/team will now be added to the list of alerts. Favorite sports teams can also be added to the list using “Game Alert” in the SiriusXM satellite radio settings.

> When your choice is being broadcast on a channel, you will be informed by a pop-up.

## iTunes tagging

From the center display's Top view, tap **SiriusXM Settings**. Tap the **iTunes Tagging** menu. Tap the **iTunes Tagging** box to activate/deactivate this function and tap **Close** to return to Home view. Tap **Tags List** to display a list of all tagged songs.

If the function is activated, the **iTunes tag** button will be displayed in Home view. If a song is played that you would like to buy in the iTunes store, tap this button while the song is playing to tag it. If a song with **iTunes Tagging** information is available, the button will be selectable. Tap the button to tag the song. If you would like to buy a tagged song via iTunes, Tap the iTunes tag button.

To buy a song in iTunes, begin by connecting an iPhone/iPod/iPad to the USB port in the tunnel console. The iTunes tagging list will automatically be transferred to the device and removed from the list in the vehicle. If the device is connected when a song is tagged, the data will automatically be saved in the device. To purchase the song, consult the iTunes support page.

* Option/accessory.

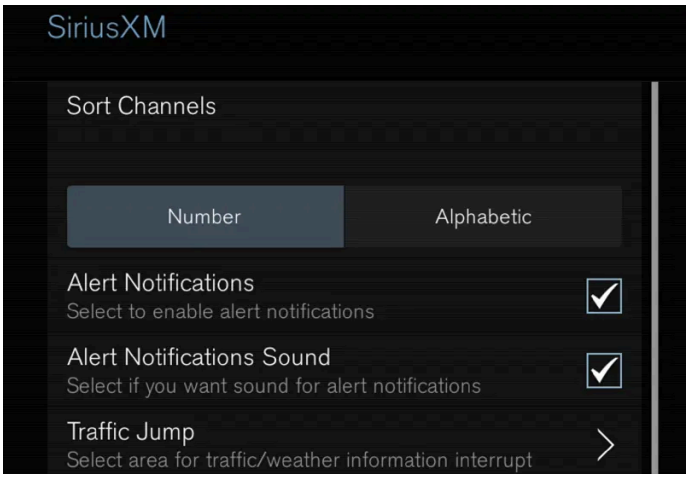
---

# 12.1.2.3. Settings for SiriusXM® Satellite radio*

There are numerous settings that can be made to enhance your SiriusXM® Satellite radio listening experience.

## Settings

Drag down the top view and tap on **Settings** → **Media** → **SiriusXM**. The following alternatives will be displayed:




**Traffic Jump**

Tap to display a list of cities from which you can choose to get traffic/weather information (or **Traffic jump off** to deactivate the feature). Tap to select a city (**JUMP** will be displayed on the Home screen next to **Library**). Tap **Back** to return to the list of settings or **Close** to return to the Home screen.

From the Home screen, tap **JUMP** to activate the function. When traffic/weather information is available from the selected city, the radio will automatically tune to the channel providing the information. When the information/announcement is finished, the radio will automatically return to the channel that you were previously listening to.

During an announcement, tap **JUMP** to interrupt the message and return to the station that you were currently listening to.

**Alert Notifications**

Tap the box to activate/deactivate. When activated, you will be notified if a song, artist, etc. that you have selected is playing. You will be asked if you want to listen.

#### Alert Notifications Sound

Opt to receive an audible alert when one of your selected choices is being played.

#### Sort Channels

Select how to sort your channels list.

#### iTunes Tagging

Tap to display a menu with the options: **iTunes Tagging** and **Tags List**. With this feature activated, songs can be tagged for later purchase from the iTunes store.

#### Game Alerts

Tap to display a list of sports.

Tap a sport to display a list of teams and tap a box on the right side of the screen to select a team as a favorite. An alert will then be provided when information about the team is being broadcast.

Tap **Confirm** below the list to return to the list of sports.

Tap **Back** to return to the list of settings or **Close** to return to the main screen.

#### Unsubscribed Services

If you have a SiriusXM® Satellite radio subscription, any channels not included in the subscription will be listed here. Call SiriusXM™ to subscribe. The phone number will be shown on the screen. If a cell phone is paired and connected to the vehicle, tap the phone number to make the call.

#### Skipped Stations

Tap to display a list of channels that you would like to skip (hide). Hide channels from the channel list by tapping the boxes to the right of the screen. Skipped (hidden) channels will not be shown in the channel list. However, a channel previously selected as a favorite will still be displayed in the list of favorites, even it has been added to the skip list.

#### Skipped Categories

Tap to display a list of categories. Tap a category to skip (hide) it. It will not be displayed in the list of categories.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.1.2.4. SiriusXM Travel Link® *

**SiriusXM Travel Link** is a subscription feature offered by SiriusXM® satellite radio* that can provide information about e.g., weather forecasts, weather alerts, service stations, sports, etc. in the vicinity of the

vehicle.

## Starting SiriusXM Travel Link

> **Note**
>
> SiriusXM Travel Link services are only available in vehicles equipped with the Sensus Navigation system.

From the center display's App view, tap **Travel Link** to activate the feature. A disclaimer text will be displayed. Tap **OK** to display a list of SiriusXM Travel Link services:

- **Alerts**
- **Fuel**
- **Sports**
- **Weather**
- **Favorites**

In order to use one or more of these services, the user has to subscribe to the ones desired.

To subscribe to a SiriusXM Travel Link service:

1. Open the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **Settings**.
3. Tap **Media**.
4. Press **SiriusXM Travel Link** and **Subscription Status**.

> To subscribe, call the phone number listed on the screen.

Any services not subscribed will be grayed out and contain the text **Service not subscribed**.

When the services have been activated (subscribed), tap the one of your choice to start it.

**The following applies for all of the SiriusXM Travel Link services:**

- Pressing the **Back** button will take you back to the previous screen
- Pressing the **Close** button will take you to the **SiriusXM Travel Link** home screen.

> **Note**
>
> If the **Close** button is used to return to the **SiriusXM Travel Link** home screen, the following applies (the **Weather** service is used here as an example):
>
> - If you have already used the **Weather** function, tapping **Weather** again in the **SiriusXM Travel Link** home screen **before using any other SiriusXM Travel Link service** will return you to the point where you left the **Weather** service.
> - If another **SiriusXM Travel Link** service is used (e.g., **Fuel**, **Sports**, etc.) before you return to the **Weather** service, you will be returned to the default **Weather** view (in this case, **Local**).
>
> The same principle applies to all of the **SiriusXM Travel Link** services.

### Favorites

Many SiriusXM Travel Link selections can be saved for easy access as favorites by tapping the "star" icon next to the selection where applicable.

To display a list of your stored selections, tap the **Favorites** application in the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.1.2.5. SiriusXM Travel Link®* – Fuel

This SiriusXM Travel Link service provides information and guidance to service stations near the vehicle providing the type of fuel that you prefer/require for your vehicle. [1]

From the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen, to show fuel information:

1. Tap the **Fuel** button to display the main fuel screen.

The following categories are shown:

- Search (the magnifying glass icon)
- **Nearby**
- **Recommended**
- **Favorites**
- **Brands**

Tap one of the alternatives to display its screen.

> **Note**
>
> In each of the categories listed, tapping the **Select fuel type** button near the bottom of the screen opens a sub-view where you can specify the type of fuel preferred/required (**Regular**, **Midrange**, **Premium**, **Diesel**, **Electric 120V**, etc.) Tap **Done** to return to the previous screen.

## Search

Tap the magnifying glass icon. If the function is supported in the current context, a keyboard will appear on the screen. Enter the text of your choice and tap **Search** for detailed information if available.

## Nearby

Tap for a list of service stations in the vicinity of the vehicle, with the nearest station at the top of the list.

The following information will be provided where available:

- For vehicles using gasoline, the price information for regular gasoline (unless another grade/type of fuel has been selected in **Select fuel type**)
- For electric vehicles/hybrids, information about charging stations, showing the total number of charging ports and the number of ports currently not in use
- The distance to the station
- A star icon to set the service station as a favorite

Tap the name of a service station to display more detailed information.

For guidance to the service station, tap the **Start navigation** or **Add as waypoint** buttons. See the Sensus Navigation* supplement for additional information about using the navigation system.

## Recommended

Tap for a list of service stations near the vehicle, displayed according to the price of regular gasoline (unless another grade/type of fuel has been selected in **Select fuel type**) or of stations offering the greatest number of available charging ports for electric vehicles/hybrids. The station offering the lowest price/most available charging ports will be displayed at the top of the list. Tap the name of a service station to display more detailed information.

## Favorites

Tap for a list of service stations that have been stored as favorites. Tap the name of a service station to display more detailed information.

In addition to the **Select fuel type** button at the bottom of the screen, tap the **Edit** button to delete individual stations from the list or tap **Delete** to clear the list. Tap **Done** to return to the previous screen.

## Brands

1. Tap **Brands** to display a list of service station brands in the area.

2. Tap a brand to display a list of service stations affiliated with that brand (BP, Exxon, etc.).

3. Tap the name of a service station to display more detailed information.

In addition to the **Select fuel type** button at the bottom of the screen, tap the **Sort** button to arrange the list according to **Nearest** or **Cheapest/Recommended**. Tap **Done** to return to the previous screen.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This service is not available in Canada.

---

# 12.1.2.6. SiriusXM Travel Link®* – Sports

This SiriusXM Travel Link service provides information about sporting events, tournaments, teams, leagues, etc.

From the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen, to display sports information:

1. Tap the **Sports** button to display the main sports screen.

A number of sports categories will be listed (Football, Baseball, Basketball, etc.)

Tap a sport to select a league in that sport (NFL, MLB, etc.) or a sport organization (PGA, LPGA, etc.).

**The following is an example of the result of tapping Baseball**:

1. MLB (Major League Baseball) will be displayed.

2. Tap MLB to display the two leagues in Major League Baseball (American League or National League).

3. Tap one of the league names to display the divisions in the league.

4. Tap one of the divisions to display:
   - **In progress**: play-by-play information about a match/game/tournament currently in progress. Continue tapping to display. In the detailed view, you can also select a radio station that is currently broadcasting an ongoing sporting event
   - **Headlines for MLB**: tap to display brief headline information
   - **Scheduled**: schedules for coming matches, games, etc.
   - **Scores**: match/game results

The same principle applies to all sports.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.1.2.7. SiriusXM Travel Link® * – Notifications

This SiriusXM Travel Link service provides notifications of potential weather problems or other emergency situations in the vicinity of the vehicle.

From the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen, to show notifications:

1. Tap the **Alerts** button to display this screen.

- If any notifications are currently available, a message will appear at the top of the screen. They can also be listed from the **Settings** menu in the center display's Top view.
- If no notifications are available, **No active alerts** will be displayed.

#### Types of notifications

To select the types of notifications to be displayed:

1. From the **Alerts** screen, tap the **Select alerts** button at the bottom of the screen.
2. This displays the types of notifications that can be displayed. Tap the box to the right of each type of notification to select/deselect it.
3. Tap **Done** when you have made your selections. You will return to the **Alerts** screen.

#### Information about a notification

If any notifications have been displayed on the screen, tap one for more detailed information (i.e., the location of the weather problem on a map and a description of the situation).

If a phone number is available in a notification, a **Call** button will be displayed. Tap this button for additional information.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.1.2.8. SiriusXM Travel Link® * – Weather

This SiriusXM Travel Link service provides weather-related information near the vehicle, at a local ski resort, etc.

From the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen, to display weather-related information:

1. Tap the **Weather** button to display this screen.

At the top of the screen, the following categories will be displayed:

- Search (the magnifying glass icon)
- **Local**
- **Ski condition**
- **Areas**
- **Favorites**

Tap the category of your choice.

## Search

Tap the magnifying glass icon. If the function is supported in the current context, a keyboard will appear on the screen. Enter the text of your choice and tap **Search** for detailed information from the SiriusXM Travel Link database.

## Local [1]

Information from the closest weather station will be displayed and the following alternatives are available:

- **Map view**
- **Today**
- **5 days**

#### Map view

Tap the map to display it in full-screen mode. Tap **Back** to return to the original map view.

Tap **Map options** to display the following alternatives.

- **Weather radar**
- **Storm attributes**
- **Surface features**
- **Tropical storm tracks**
- **Winds**

Tap the relevant box to the right of the option to select/deselect it. Tap **Done** to confirm and return to the previous screen or **Cancel**.

#### Today

Tap to see the current temperature, or the temperature in 3/6 hours.

Tap **Back** to return to the **Local** screen or **Close** to return to the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen.

#### 5 days

Tap to see weather information for the coming 5 days.

Tap **Back** to return to the **Local** screen or **Close** to return to the SiriusXM Travel Link home screen.

### Ski condition

Tap to display a list of ski areas in the vicinity of the vehicle. Tap a name in the list for information such as if the ski area is open/closed, temperature, wind conditions, snow conditions, the number of lifts that are in operation, etc.

- Weather locations
- Ski location

Tap Map view to display a map and a weather legend.

Tap **Map options** to display the following alternatives.

- **Weather radar**
- **Storm attributes**
- **Surface features**
- **Tropical storm tracks**
- **Winds**

Tap the relevant box to the right of the option to select/deselect it. Tap **Done** to confirm and return to the previous screen or **Cancel**.

## Areas

Tap **Areas** to display a list of areas/locations in states from the SiriusXM Travel Link database.

Scroll to a state and tap to display:

- **Weather locations**: tap arrow to the right to display a list of towns. Scroll to desired town and tap for detailed weather information. You can choose Map view, today, 5 days or Favorites (star)
- **Ski locations**: tap arrow at right to display local ski areas. Tap an area for detailed info.

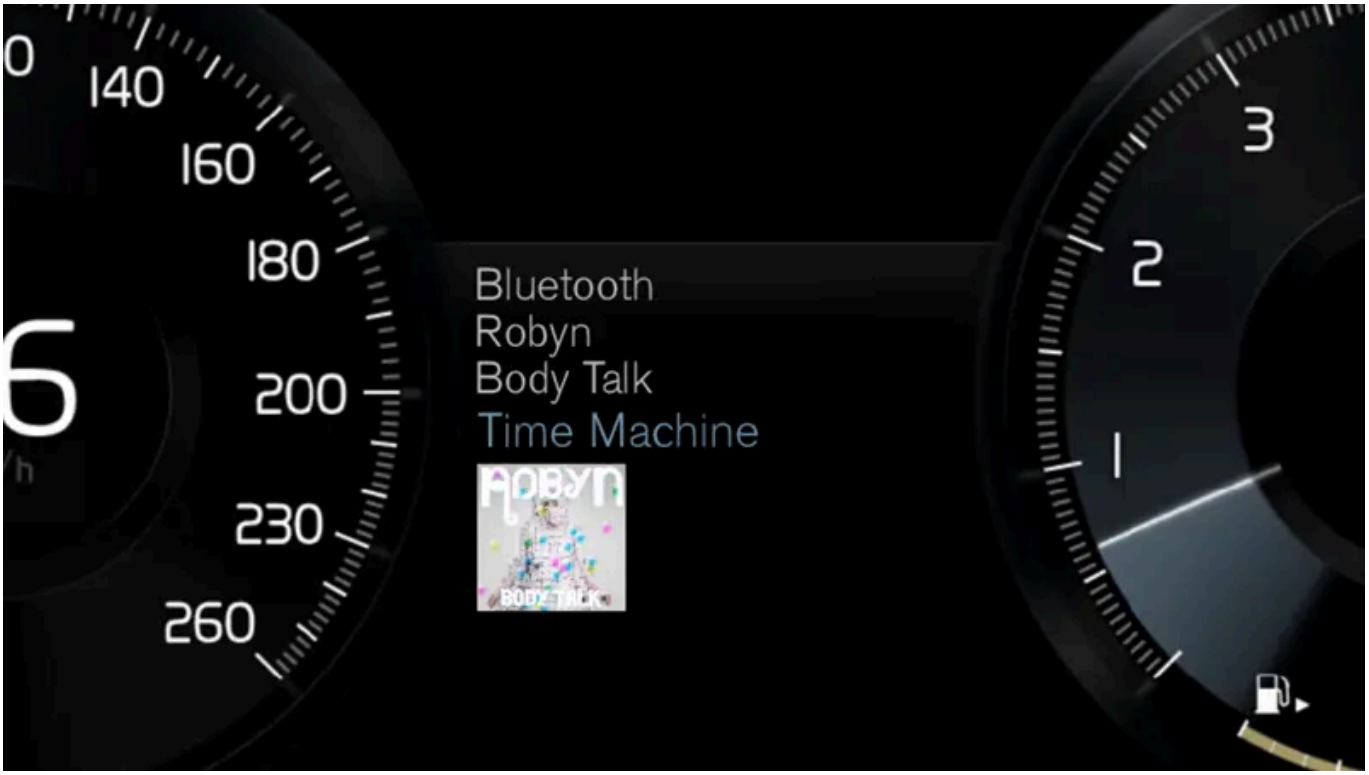
For information about storing a location, state, town, etc. as a favorite, see the heading "Favorites" in the article "SiriusXM Travel Link."

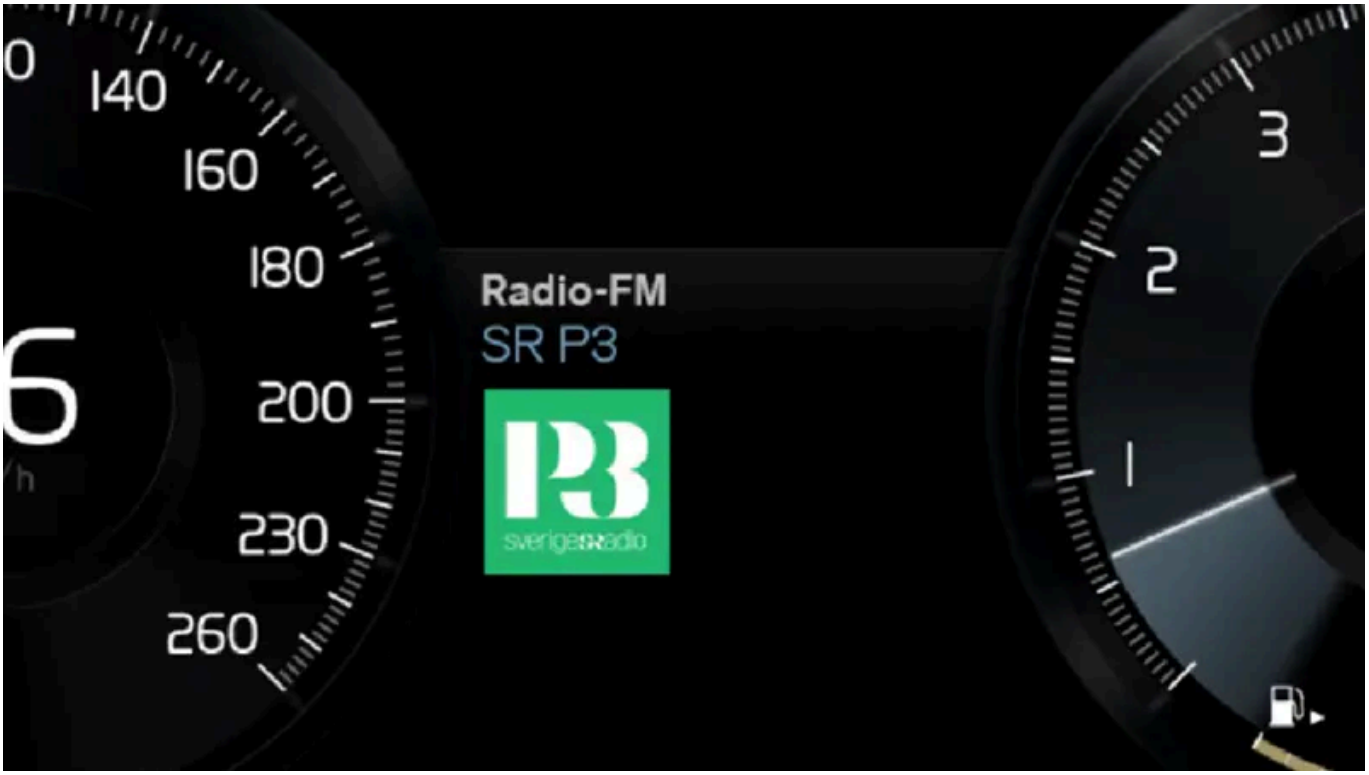
* Option/accessory.

[1] This is the weather default unless another alternative has been selected.

## 12.1.3. Voice control for radio and media

Voice commands for the radio and media player are shown below[1].




Tap and say one of the following commands:

- "**Media**" - initiates a dialog for media and radio and displays examples of commands.

- "**Play[artist]**" - plays music by the selected artist.
- "**Play[song title]**" - plays the selected song.
- "**Play[song title]from[album]**" - plays the selected song from the selected album.
- "**Play[radio station]**" - starts the selected radio station.
- "**Tune to [frequency]**" - tunes to the selected radio frequency in the currently active waveband. If no radio source is active, the FM band will be started as default.
- "**Tune to [frequency][waveband]**" - tunes to the selected radio frequency on the selected waveband.
- "**Radio**" - starts FM radio.
- "**Radio FM**" - starts FM radio.
- "**SiriusXM**" - starts SiriusXM radio*
- "**USB**" - starts playback from USB.
- "**iPod**" - starts playback from iPod.
- "**Bluetooth**" - starts playback from a Bluetooth-connected media source.
- "**Similar music**" - plays music from a USB-connected device with music similar to that currently playing.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

[1] Certain markets only.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.1.4. Radio

The radio can receive broadcasting from the FM waveband with HD Radio™ Technology and SiriusXM® Satellite radio *. When the vehicle has an Internet connection, it is also possible to listen to web radio.

The radio can be controlled using voice commands, the right-side steering wheel keypad or the center display.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.1.5. Starting the radio

The radio is started from the center display's App view.

1. Open the desired waveband (e.g. **FM**) from App view.

2. Select a radio station.

---

# 12.1.6. Changing waveband and radio station

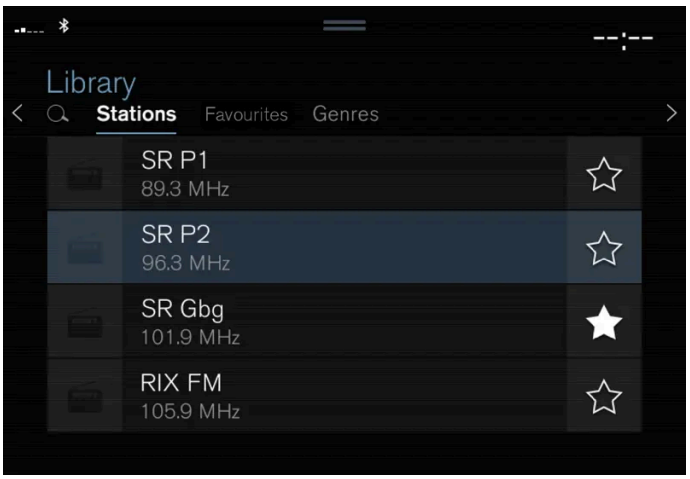
Instructions for changing wavebands, waveband lists and radio stations in the selected list are provided here.

## Changing wavebands

Swipe from App view on the center display and select the desired waveband (e.g. **FM**) or open the App menu in the instrument panel with the right-side steering wheel keypad and make your selection there.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

## Changing a list in a waveband




1. Tap **Library**.
2. Select playback from **Stations**, **Favorites** or **Genres**.
3. Tap the desired station in the list.

**Favorites** – only plays selected favorite channels.

**Genres** - only plays channels broadcasting the selected genre or program type, e.g. pop, classical, etc.

## Changing radio stations in a selected list

1. Press ⏮ or ⏭ under the center display or on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

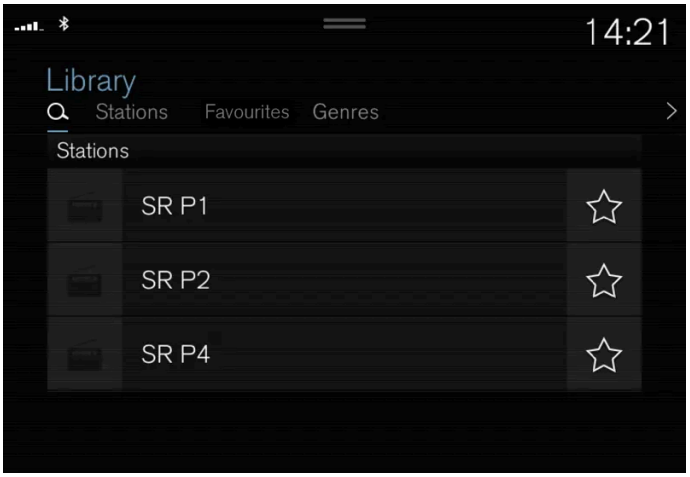
> Move step-by-step through the selected list.

It is also possible to change radio station in the selected list via the center display.

---

# 12.1.7. Searching for a radio station

The radio automatically compiles a list of the radio stations that are sending out the strongest signals in the vehicle's current location.




Searching is performed in different ways depending on the waveband selected:

- FM, stations, genres and frequency.

1. Tap **Library**.
2. Tap .
> Search view will displayed and the keyboard will open.
3. Enter a search word/phrase.
> The search will start and change as characters are entered. Search results will be displayed by category.

## Searching for a station manually

Searching manually makes it possible to find and tune to stations that are not on the automatically compiled list of the strongest stations in the area.

1. Tap **Manual tuning**, drag the control or tap ⏮ or ⏭. Press and hold to skip to the next available station in the frequency band. You can also use the right-side steering wheel keypad.

---

# 12.1.8. Radio settings

There are a number of different radio functions that can be activated and deactivated.

## Canceling a traffic message

A current broadcast (e.g. a traffic message) can be temporarily interrupted by pressing ◯ in the right-side steering wheel keypad or tapping **Cancel** in the center display.

## Activating and deactivating radio functions

Pull down Top view and select **Settings** → **Media** and the desired waveband to see available functions.

**AM/FM Radio**[1]

- **HD Radio FM**: HD Radio™ Technology: makes it possible to achieve a sound quality comparable with a CD.
- **Show Broadcast Information**: shows information on program content, artists, etc.
- **Freeze Program Name**: select to stop the program service name from scrolling continuously. Instead it freezes after 20 seconds.

**SiriusXM® Satellite radio***

Pull down Top view and select **Settings** → **Media** → **SiriusXM** to show a list of available options.

[1] AM radio availability varies depending on model and/or market.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.1.9. RBDS

RBDS radio

RBDS (Radio Broadcast Data System) enables certain functionality[1], such as:

- Searches for program types or new broadcasts
- Text information about currently broadcast programs

[1] Certain stations only.

---

# 12.1.10. Storing radio channels in the Radio favorites app

It is possible to add a radio station in the **Radio favorites** app and in the list of favorites for the waveband (e.g. FM). Instructions for adding and removing radio channels are provided below.

## Radio favorites

The radio favorites app shows stored radio channels from all wavebands.

1. Open the **Radio favorites** app from App view.
2. Tap the desired station in the list to listen.

## Adding and deleting radio favorites

1. Tap ☆ to add a radio channel to the waveband's list of favorites or the Radio favorites app.
2. Tap **Library**, select **Edit** and tap 🗑 to delete a radio channel from the list of favorites.

When you delete a radio channel from the Radio favorites app, the channel will also be deleted from that waveband's list of favorites.

---

# 12.2. Media player

---

# 12.2.1. Video

---

# 12.2.1.1. Video

The media player can play videos from USB-connected devices.

Video is not available when the vehicle is moving; only audio will be played. Video will resume when the vehicle is stationary.

Information on compatible media formats is provided in a separate section.

---

# 12.2.1.2. Playing video

The **USB** app in App view is used to play videos.

1. Connecting media source (USB device).
2. Open the **USB** app from App view.
3. Tap the title you would like to play.

> Playback will begin.

If the USB device also contains music and audio tracks, it may be difficult to locate the video files. To find them, go to **Library** and select the video tab.

---

# 12.2.1.3. Playing DivX®

The DivX Certified® device must be registered to play purchased DivX video-on-demand (VOD) movies.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Video** → **DivX® VOD** to get a registration code.
3. Go to vod.divx.com for more information and to complete the registration process.

---

# 12.2.1.4. Video settings

You can change some language settings for video playback.

**Audio Language** and **Subtitle Language** can be adjusted with the video player in full-screen mode or by opening Top view and tapping **Settings** → **Media** → **Video**.

## 12.2.2. Streaming media via Bluetooth®

The vehicle's media player is equipped with Bluetooth and can play audio files from Bluetooth-enabled external devices such as cellular phones and tablets.

In order for the media player to be able to wirelessly play audio files from an external device, the device must be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth[1].

[1] Note that the new device must be connected and set up for playing media in order for Bluetooth playback to be possible.

## 12.2.3. Connecting a device via Bluetooth®

Connect a Bluetooth® device to the vehicle to wirelessly play media and give the vehicle an Internet connection if it is available.

Most cellular phones on the market today offer wireless Bluetooth® technology, but not all phones are fully compatible with the vehicle.

The procedure for connecting a media device is the same as for connecting a cellular phone to the vehicle via Bluetooth®[1].

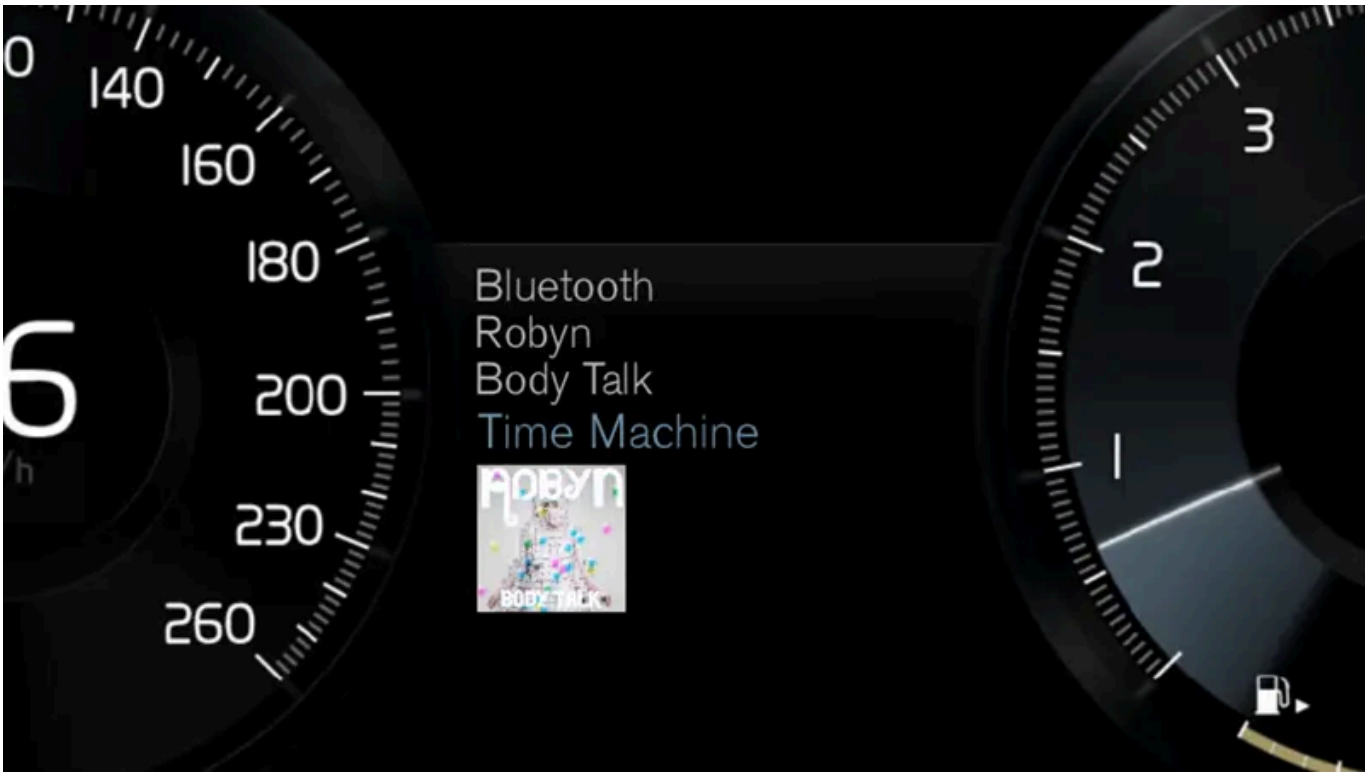
**Note**

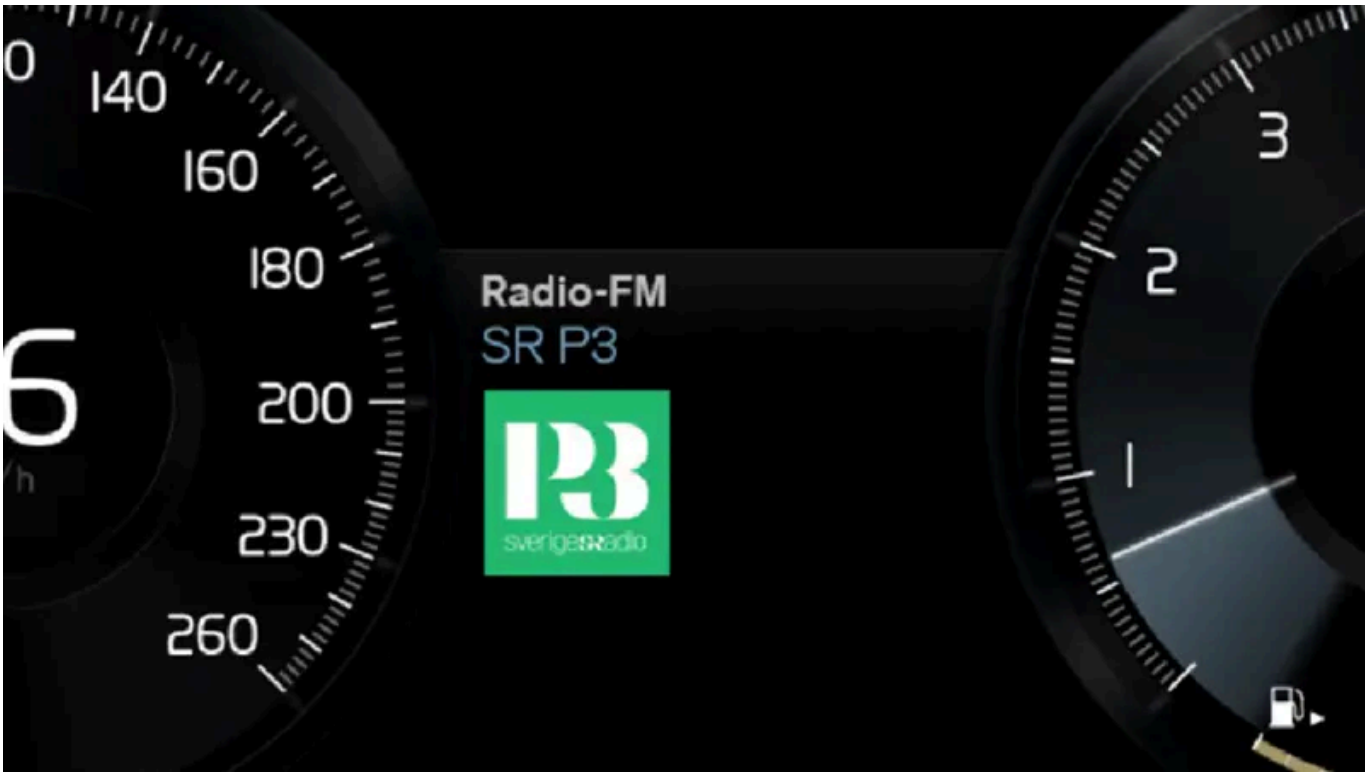
For some phones, the phone's Bluetooth volume must be manually set to 100% for the audio volume in the vehicle to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be adjusted for each connected phone. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

[1] Note that the new device must be connected and set up for playing media in order for Bluetooth playback to be possible.

## 12.2.4. Voice control for radio and media

Voice commands for the radio and media player are shown below[1].




Tap and say one of the following commands:

- "**Media**" - initiates a dialog for media and radio and displays examples of commands.
- "**Play[artist]**" - plays music by the selected artist.
- "**Play[song title]**" - plays the selected song.
- "**Play[song title]from[album]**" - plays the selected song from the selected album.

- "**Play[radio station]**" - starts the selected radio station.
- "**Tune to [frequency]**" - tunes to the selected radio frequency in the currently active waveband. If no radio source is active, the FM band will be started as default.
- "**Tune to [frequency][waveband]**" - tunes to the selected radio frequency on the selected waveband.
- "**Radio**" - starts FM radio.
- "**Radio FM**" - starts FM radio.
- "**SiriusXM**" - starts SiriusXM radio*
- "**USB**" - starts playback from USB.
- "**iPod**" - starts playback from iPod.
- "**Bluetooth**" - starts playback from a Bluetooth-connected media source.
- "**Similar music**" - plays music from a USB-connected device with music similar to that currently playing.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

[1] Certain markets only.

* Option/accessory.

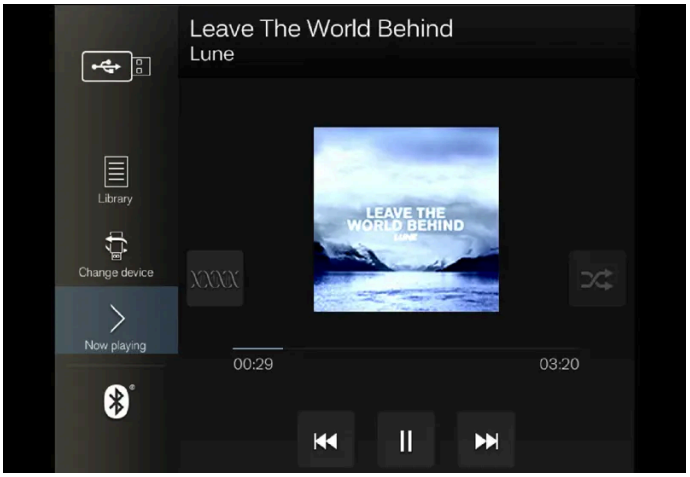
---

# 12.2.5. Media player

The media player can play audio from external audio sources connected via USB port or Bluetooth. It can also play video format via the USB port.

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is also possible to listen to web radio, audio books and to access music ser-

vices via apps.



The media player is controlled from the center display. Several functions can also be controlled using voice commands or the right-side steering wheel keypad.

The radio, which is also handled by the media player, is described in a separate section.

---

# 12.2.6. Playing media

The media player is controlled from the center display. Several other functions can also be controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad or by using voice commands.
The radio can also be controlled in the media player. See the section describing the radio.

## Starting a media source

App view. (Generic illustration; basic apps vary depending on market and model).

**USB flash drive**

1. Inset a USB flash drive.
2. Open the **USB** app from App view.
3. Select the track you would like to play.

> Playback will begin.

**MP3 player and iPod®**

> **Note**
>
> To start playback from an iPod, the iPod app must be used (not USB).
>
> When an iPod is used as source, the car's audio and media system has a menu structure similar to the iPod player's own menu structure.

1. Connect a media source.
2. Start playback in the connected media source.
3. Open the app (**iPod**, **USB**) from App view.

> Playback will begin.

#### Bluetooth-connected device

1. Activate Bluetooth in the media source.
2. Connect a media source[1].
3. Start playback in the connected media source.
4. Open the **Bluetooth** app from App view.

> Playback will begin.

> **Note**
>
> For some phones, the phone's Bluetooth volume must be manually set to 100% for the audio volume in the vehicle to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be adjusted for each connected phone. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

#### Media with Internet connection

Medial playback from apps with Internet connection:

1. Connect the vehicle to the Internet.
2. Open the app from the App view.

> Playback will begin.

Read the separate section on how to download apps.

#### Video

1. Connect a media source.

2. Open the **USB** app from App view.

3. Tap the title you would like to play.

> Playback will begin.

#### Apple CarPlay

CarPlay is described in a separate section.

#### Android Auto

Android Auto is described in a separate section.

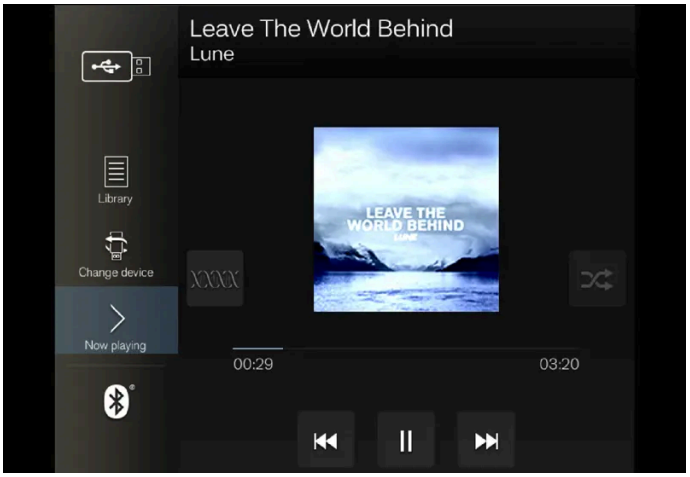
[1] Note that the new device must be connected and set up for playing media in order for Bluetooth playback to be possible.

---

# 12.2.7. Controlling and changing media

Media playback can be controlled using voice commands, the steering wheel keypad or the center display.

The media player can be controlled using voice commands, the right-side steering wheel keypad or the center display.




Volume - turn the knob under the center display or tap ▲ ▼ on the right-side steering wheel keypad to raise or lower the volume.

Play/pause - tap the image for the track you would like to play, or press the button below the center display or ○ on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Changing track/song - tap the desired track in the center display, or press ⏮ or ⏭ below the center display or on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Rewinding/fast-forwarding - tap the time axis in the center display and drag it sideways, or press and hold ⏮ or ⏭ below the center display or on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Changing media source - select from among previous sources in the app, tap the desired app in App view or use the right-side steering wheel keypad to select the app in the app menu .

**Library** - tap the button to play from the library.

**Shuffle** - tap the button to play tracks in a random order.

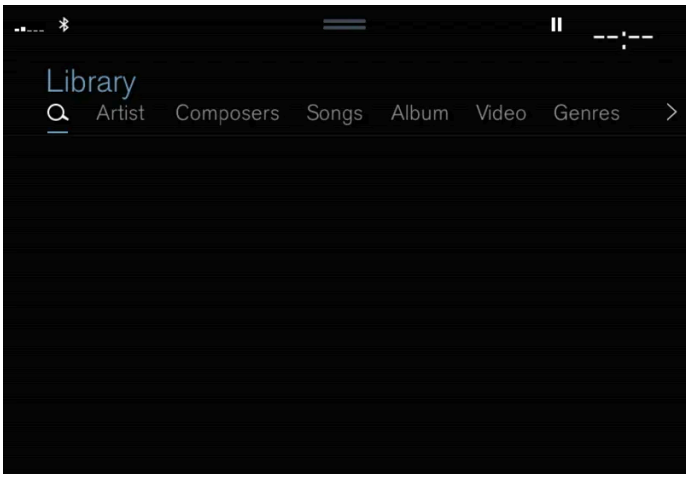
**Similar** - tap the button to use Gracenote to search for similar music on the USB device and create a playlist from the music found. The playlist can contain up to 50 tracks.

**Change device** - tap the button to toggle between USB devices when more than one is connected.

---

# 12.2.8. Media searches

Searches can be performed to locate a specific artist, composer, song title, album, video, audio book or playlist. If the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is also possible to search for podcasts (online digital media).




1. Tap .

> Search view will displayed and the keyboard will open.

2. Enter a search word/phrase.

3. Tap **Search**.

> A search will be performed on connected devices and the results will be displayed by category.

Swipe the screen horizontally to display each category separately.

---

# 12.2.9. Compatible file formats for media

In order to play media, the following file formats must be used.

## Audio files

| Format | File extension | Codec |
|---|---|---|
| MP3 | .mp3 | MPEG1 Layer III, MPEG2 Layer III, MP3 Pro (mp3 compatible), MP3 HD (mp3 compatible) |
| AAC | .m4a, .m4b, .aac | AAC LC (MPEG-4 part III Audio), HE-AAC (aacPlus v1/v2) |
| WMA | .wma | WMA8/9, WMA9/10 Pro |
| WAV | .wav | LPCM |
| FLAC | .flac | FLAC |

## Video files

| Format | File extension |
|---|---|
| MP4 | .mp4, .m4v |
| MPEG-PS | .mpg, .mp2, .mpeg, .m1v |
| AVI | .avi |
| AVI (DivX) | .avi, .divx |
| ASF | .asf, .wmv |

#### Subtitles

| Format | File extension |
|---|---|
| SubViewer | .sub |
| SubRip | .srt |
| SSA | .ssa |

#### DivX®

DivX-certified devices have been tested for high-quality DivX (.divx, .avi) video playback. When you see the DivX logo, you have the freedom to play your favorite DivX videos.

| | |
|---|---|
| Profile | DivX Home Theater |
| Video codec | DivX, MPEG-4 |
| Resolution | 720x576 |

| | |
|---|---|
| Audio speed (bit rate) | 4.8Mbps |
| Frame rate | 30 fps |
| File extension | .divx, .avi |
| Max. file size | 4 GB |
| Audio codec | MP3, AC3 |
| Subtitles | XSUB |
| Special functions | Multiple subtitles, multiple audio, resume play |
| Reference | Meets all requirements of the DivX Home Theater profile. Visit divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX Home Theater video. |

# 12.2.10. Gracenote®

Gracenote identifies artists, albums, tracks and any associated images that can be displayed during playback.

Gracenote MusicID® is a standard for music recognition. It can identify and analyze the metadata of music files and present information about the music. Metadata from different sources may sometimes be inconsistent or insufficient.

Because Gracenote supports phonetic processing of artist name, album titles and genres, voice commands can be used to control music playback.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Media** → **Gracenote®**.
3. Choose settings for Gracenote data:

- **Gracenote® Online Search** - search Gracenote's online database for currently playing media.
- **Gracenote® Multiple Results** - select how Gracenote data should be displayed if there are multiple search results.

1 - the file's original data will be used.

2 - Gracenote data will be used.

3 - Gracenote or original data can be selected.

- **None** - no result will be displayed.

## Updating Gracenote

The contents of the Gracenote database are continuously updated. Download the latest update to take advantage of improvements.

# 12.2.11. Updating Gracenote®

Volvo is constantly working to keep your vehicle up to date. It is therefore a good idea to update Gracenote® at regular intervals. Updating takes place in two stages using an empty USB memory.

## Download files and update Gracenote®

It is a good idea to update Gracenote® at regular intervals. A description of how to download update files and update Gracenote® in your Volvo can be found below.

## Preparations

The files can be downloaded to an empty USB memory of at least 8 GB. The memory must have one of the following formats: FAT32, NTFS or exFAT.

## Download program

Gracenote® files are downloaded using a program that is installed on your computer when you download update files.

## Update Gracenote® files

To download update files for Gracenote®, go to volvocars.com/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] , select your market and then click **Downloads** in the top menu. Under the **Gracenote®** heading, click **Update Gracenote** and then select the relevant system for your vehicle. Then follow the instructions below:

**Instructions**

1. Select the download link for either Windows or Mac, depending on which system you have.
2. Select **Execute** to install the download program.
3. Click **New download** to download the file to a USB memory.
4. You can verify that the download/copying to the USB memory has worked correctly before you install the file in the vehicle by repeating steps 1-2 and then pressing **Check downloads** in the download program.
5. Take the USB memory with the downloaded file to your vehicle and switch on the infotainment system.
6. Insert the USBmemory in the USB port. If there are two USB ports, the second one must not be used at the same time.

The location of the port may vary between different vehicle models.

7. The system automatically detects the availability of an update and a message appears on screen showing that updating is in progress.
8. When installation is complete, a notification is displayed indicating that the update has been installed. The USB memory can now be removed.

   If there are any problems with the update, contact your customer support or Volvo retailer.

### Updating tips

- An update takes about 15 minutes and the infotainment system must be on. Use a battery charger or keep the vehicle's engine running while the update is in progress, for example during a trip.
- Gracenote® is updated all the time. Keep an eye out for new updates.

---

# 12.2.12. Playing media via the USB port

External audio sources, such as an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via the vehicle's USB port.

Devices with rechargeable batteries can be charged when they are connected via the USB port and the ignition is in mode **I**, **II** or the engine is running.

The content on the external source can be read faster if it only contains data of a compatible format. Video files can also be played via the USB port.

Some MP3 players have their own file system that the vehicle has support for.

---

# 12.2.13. Connecting a device via the USB port

External audio sources, such as an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via one of the vehicle's USB ports.

If the vehicle has two USB ports, the phone must be connected to the port with the white frame to use Apple CarPlay* or

Android Auto*.

USB ports (type A) in the tunnel console. Route the cable forward to help avoid pinching when the cover is closed.

USB ports (type C) on rear of tunnel console for charging devices such as phones and tablets[1].

* Option/accessory.

[1] It is not possible to play media through the vehicle's audio or media system via this port.

---

# 12.2.14. Technical specifications for USB devices

For the contents of USB devices to be read, the following specifications must be met.

Any folder structures will not be shown in the center display during playback.

| | Max. number |
|---|---|
| Files | 15 000 |
| Folder levels | 8 |
| Folders | 1 000 |
| Playlists | 100 |

| | Max. number |
|---|---|
| Subfolders | No limit |
| Tracks in a playlist | 1 000 |

### Technical specifications for the USB-A connector

- Type A port
- Version 2.0
- Voltage 5 V
- Max. current 2.1 A

### Technical specifications for the USB-C connector

- Type C port
- Version 3.1
- Voltage 5 V
- Max. current 3.0 A

---

# 12.3. Phone

---

# 12.3.1. Connecting a phone

---

# 12.3.1.1. Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically

A phone can be automatically connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. The phone must have first been paired with the vehicle.

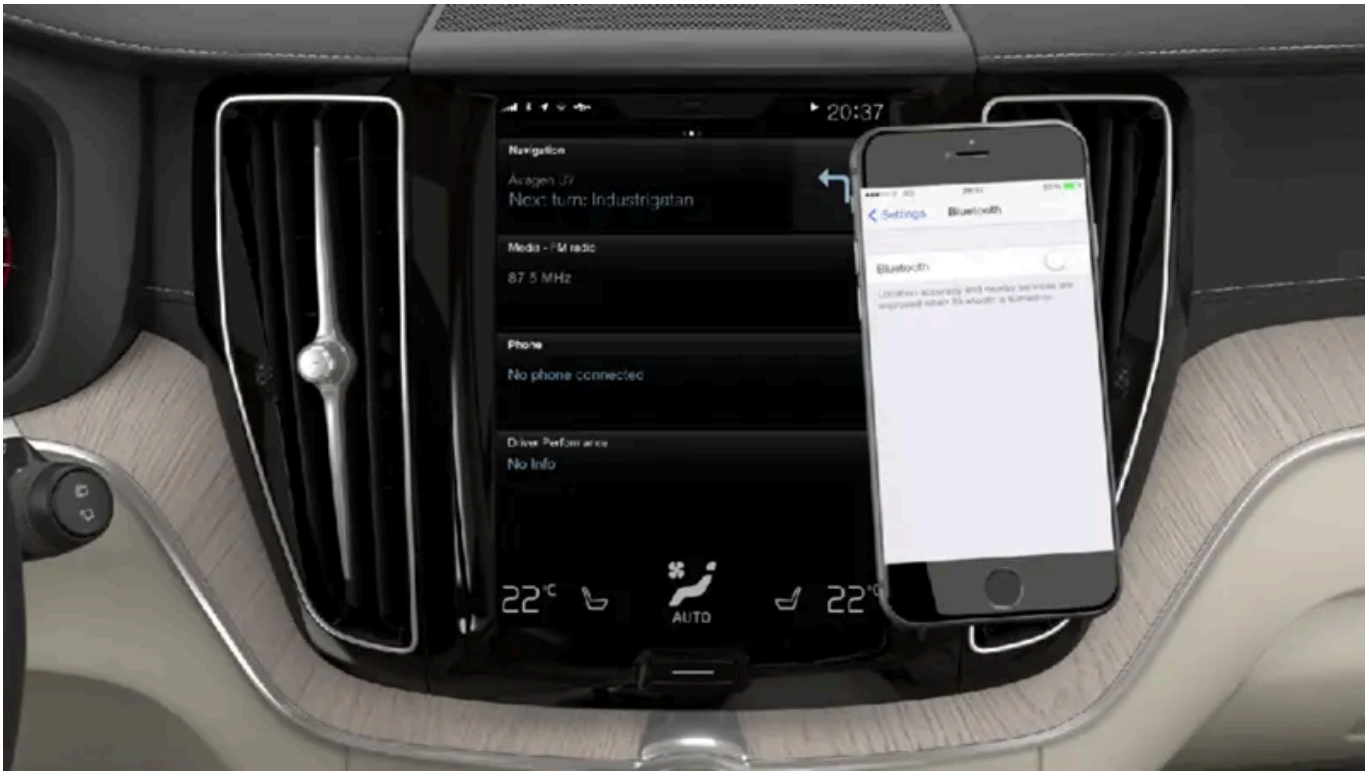
Only the two most recently connected phones can be connected automatically.

1. Activate Bluetooth in the phone before turning the vehicle's ignition to mode I.
2. Turn the ignition to I or higher.

> The phone will be connected.

# 12.3.1.2. Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time

Pair a Bluetooth-enabled phone to the vehicle to make calls, send/receive text messages and wirelessly play media from the vehicle, or connect the vehicle to the Internet.




Two Bluetooth devices can be connected at the same time, but in that case, only one will be used for wireless playback. The most recently paired phone will be automatically connected to make calls, send/receive text messages, play media or use as an Internet connection[1]. It is possible to change what the phone is used for under **Bluetooth Devices** via the settings menu in the center display's Top view. The cellular phone must be equipped with Bluetooth and support tethering.

After the device has been connected/registered for the first time via Bluetooth, the device no longer needs to be visible/searchable. It just needs to have Bluetooth activated. A maximum of 20 paired Bluetooth devices can be stored in the vehicle.

If you have a new device with the same name as another device that was previously connected to the vehicle, you may need to first delete the old device from the vehicle's list of previously connected devices. The new device can then be connected as usual.

There are two ways to pair a phone to the vehicle. Searching for the phone from the vehicle or searching for the vehicle from the phone.

## Option 1 - searching for the phone from the vehicle

1. Make the phone discoverable/visible using its Bluetooth function.
2. Open the phone tile in the center display.

- If no phone has been paired to the vehicle, tap **Add phone**.
- If a phone has been paired to the vehicle, tap **Change**. Tap **Add phone** in the pop-up window.

> A list of available Bluetooth devices will be displayed. The list will be updated as new devices are discovered.

3. Tap the name of the phone you would like to connect.
4. Make sure that the code displayed in the vehicle matches the one in the phone. If it does, confirm the code in both places.
5. In the phone, accept or cancel the options for selecting the phone's contacts and text messages.

**Note**

- The message function must be activated in certain phones.
- Not all phones are fully compatible and may not be able to display contacts and messages in the vehicle.

## Option 2 - searching for the vehicle from the phone

1. Open the phone tile in the center display.
   - If no phone has been paired to the vehicle, tap **Add phone** → **Make vehicle discoverable**.
   - If a phone has been paired to the vehicle, tap **Change**. Tap **Add phone** → **Make vehicle discoverable** in the pop-up window.
2. Activate Bluetooth in the phone.
3. Search in the phone for Bluetooth devices.

> A list of available Bluetooth devices will be displayed.

4. Select the vehicle's name from the list of devices in the phone.
5. A pop-up window for the connection is shown in the car. Confirm the connection.
6. Make sure that the code displayed in the vehicle matches the one shown in the external device. If it does, confirm the code in both places.
7. In the phone, accept or cancel the options for selecting the phone's contacts and text messages.

**Note**

- The message function must be activated in certain phones.
- Not all phones are fully compatible and may not be able to display contacts and messages in the vehicle.

> **Note**
>
> If the phone's operating system is being updated, it is possible that the connection will be interrupted. Delete the phone from the car and reconnect.

[1] Can also be adjusted manually under settings.

---

# 12.3.1.3. Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone

A Bluetooth-connected phone can be disconnected from the vehicle.

- When the phone is out of range of the vehicle, it will be automatically disconnected. If a call is in progress when the phone is disconnected from the vehicle, the call will be transferred from the vehicle's speakers and microphone to the cellular phone.
- The phone can also be disconnected by manually deactivating Bluetooth.

---

# 12.3.1.4. Switch between phones connected via Bluetooth

It is possible to switch between Bluetooth-connected phones.

1. Open the phone tile.
2. Tap **Change** or pull down Top view and tap **Settings** → **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices** → **Add device**.

> A list of available Bluetooth devices will be displayed.

3. Tap the name of the phone you would like to connect.

---

# 12.3.1.5. Disconnecting Bluetooth-connected devices

Phones or other devices in the list of registered Bluetooth devices can be removed.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices**.

> A list of registered Bluetooth devices is displayed.

3. Tap the name of the device you would like to remove.

4. Tap **Remove device** and confirm.

> The device is no longer registered in the vehicle.

If you have a new device with the same name as another device that was previously connected to the vehicle, you may need to first delete the old device from the vehicle's list of previously connected devices. The new device can then be connected as usual.

---

# 12.3.1.6. Bluetooth profiles for Sensus Connect

Sensus Connect IHU[1] supports Bluetooth Core version 2.1+EDR[2]. The table provides information on which Bluetooth profiles are supported by your vehicle's infotainment system. (The article is relevant for vehicles with Sensus Connect IHU 3.2 infotainment system).

Center display for Sensus Connect.

| Profile | Version |
|---|---|
| Hands-Free Profile (HFP) | Hands-Free (HF) |
| | HFP-version 1.6 |
| Phone Book Access Profile (PBAP) | Phone Book Client Equipment (PCE) |
| | PBAP version 1.0 |
| Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) | Controller (CT) |
| | AVRCP version 1.4 |
| Advanced Audio Distrubtion Profile (A2DP) | Sink (SNK) |
| | A2DP version 1.2 |
| Object Push Profile (OPP) | Object Push Server |

## IHU versions per vehicle model and date of manufacture

| Model | Date of manufacture/structure week | Version |
|---|---|---|
| All 40 models<br>XC40 and XC40 Recharge | From week 17, 2018 | IHU 3.2 |
| All 60 models<br>S60, S60 Recharge, V60, V60 Recharge, V60 Cross Country, XC60 and XC60 Recharge | From week 17, 2018 | IHU 3.2 |
| All 90 models<br>S90, S90 Recharge, V90, V90 Recharge, V90 Cross Country, XC90 and XC90 Recharge | From week 17, 2018 | IHU 3.2 |

[1] Infotainment Head Unit

[2] Enhanced Data Rate

---

# 12.3.1.7. Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually

A phone can be manually connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. The phone must have first been paired with the vehicle.

1. Activate Bluetooth in the phone.
2. Open the phone tile.

> A list of available phones will be displayed.

3. Tap the name of the phone you would like to connect.

> The phone will be connected.

---

# 12.3.2. Apple CarPlay

---

# 12.3.2.1. Apple® CarPlay® *

With CarPlay[1], you can listen to music, make phone calls, get driving instructions, send/receive messages and use Siri, all while remaining focused on driving.

CarPlay works with select iOS devices. If the car does not already support CarPlay, this can be retrofitted. Contact a Volvo retailer to install CarPlay.

Information about supported apps and compatible iOS devices are available on the Apple website: www.apple.com/ios/carplay/ [https://www.apple.com/ios/carplay/] . Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes mean that the connection between the device and the vehicle is broken. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content of CarPlay.

When using map navigation via CarPlay, guidance will only be shown on the center display and not in the instrument panel or head-up display.

When navigation is started through Apple CarPlay, any current route guidance from the vehicle's own systems will be discontinued.

CarPlay apps can be controlled from the center display, an iOS device or with the right-side steering wheel keypad (for certain functions). The apps can also be voice-controlled using Siri. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel to start voice control with Siri. Press briefly to activate the vehicle's own voice control system. If Siri cuts off too soon, press and hold the [2] button on the steering wheel..

**By using Apple CarPlay you acknowledge the following: Apple CarPlay is a service provided by Apple Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is thus not responsible for Apple CarPlay or its features/applications. When using Apple CarPlay, certain information from your car (including its position) is transferred to your iPhone. In relation to Volvo Cars, you are fully responsible for your and any others person's use of Apple CarPlay.**

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

---

# 12.3.2.2. Using Apple®CarPlay®*

To use CarPlay[1], the Siri voice control must be activated in your iOS device. The device must also have an Internet connection via Wi-Fi or a mobile network for all functions to work.

## Connecting an iOS device and starting CarPlay

> **Note**
>
> CarPlay can only be used if Bluetooth is disabled. A cell phone or media player connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth will therefore not be available when CarPlay is active. An alternative source must be used to provide an Internet connection for the vehicle's apps. Use Wi-Fi or the vehicle's integrated modem.

To start CarPlay from an iOS device that has not previously been connected:

1. Connect an iOS device that supports CarPlay to the USB port. If there are two USB ports, use the one with the white frame.
2. Read the terms and conditions and then tap **Accept** to connect.

> The CarPlay tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.

3. Tap the desired app.

> The app will start up.

**Starting CarPlay**

To start CarPlay from an iOS device that has previously been connected:

1. Connect an iOS device to the USB port. If there are two USB ports, use the one with the white frame.

> **If the auto start setting is selected** – the name of the device will be displayed. The CarPlay tile will open automatically when Home view is displayed when the iOS device is connected.

2. If the CarPlay tile does not open automatically, tap the name of the device. The CarPlay tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.

3. If any other app is active in the same tile, tap **Apple CarPlay** in App view.

> The CarPlay tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.

4. Tap the desired app.

> The app will start up.

CarPlay will run in the background if another app is started, or is already active when the device is connected, in the same view. To display CarPlay in the tile, tap the CarPlay icon in App view.

## Switching connection between CarPlay and iPod

#### CarPlay to iPod

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Proceed to **Communication** → **Apple CarPlay**.
3. Uncheck the box for the iOS device that should no longer start CarPlay automatically when the USB cable is connected.
4. Remove and then reinsert the iOS device into the USB port.
5. Open the **iPod** app from App view.

#### iPod to CarPlay

1. Tap **Apple CarPlay** in App view.
2. Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap **OK**.
3. Remove and then reinsert the iOS device into the USB port.

> The Apple CarPlay tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed[2].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple, CarPlay, iPhone and iPod are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

---

# 12.3.2.3. Tips for using Apple® CarPlay® *

Here are some useful tips for when you use CarPlay® [1].

- Update your iOS device with the latest version of the iOS operating system and ensure that the apps have been updated.
- In the event of a problem with CarPlay, unplug the iOS device from the USB port and then plug it in again. Otherwise, try to close the app on the device that is not working and then restart the app, or try closing all apps and restart your device.
- If the apps do not appear when CarPlay starts (black screen), try minimizing and expanding the tile for CarPlay.
- Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes cause the connection between the iOS device and the vehicle to be broken. Information about supported apps and compatible devices can be found on Apple's website. You can also search for CarPlay in the App Store to find information about apps that are compatible with CarPlay in your market.
- You can use Siri to write or dictate messages or have them read aloud. Messages are read aloud and dictated in the language selected in the Siri settings. When you write/dictate messages, no text will be shown in the vehicle's center display, but the text will be shown in your iOS device. When using Siri, note that it is the phone's microphones that are used and the quality therefore depends on the phone's location.
- If the device is connected to the vehicle through Bluetooth, the connection will be broken when CarPlay is used. Resume Internet connection in the vehicle by tethering using the device's Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Some of CarPlay's functions (such as voice calls and messages) interrupt the use of the vehicle's own functions and CarPlay will instead be automatically displayed. If you do not wish this to happen, deselect display of the corresponding function in CarPlay under the phone's notification settings.
- CarPlay only works with iPhone[2].

> **Note**
>
> Availability and functionality can vary depending on market.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple, CarPlay and iPhone are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

---

# 12.3.2.4. Settings for Apple® CarPlay® *

Settings for an iOS device connected through CarPlay[1], [2].

## Automatic start

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Communication** → **Apple CarPlay** and select the desired setting:
   - Check the box - CarPlay will start automatically when the USB cable is connected.
   - Uncheck the box - CarPlay will not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

A maximum of 20 iOS devices can be stored in the list, which may be worth noting if many people share the vehicle, e.g. in a car pool. When the list is full and a new device is connected, the oldest one will be deleted.

To delete the list, the settings must be rest in the center display (factory reset).

### System Volumes

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Sound** → **System Volumes** to change the settings for the following:
   - **Voice Control**
   - **Navi Voice Guidance**
   - **Phone Ringtone**

* Option/accessory.

[1] Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

[2] Availability may vary depending on market.

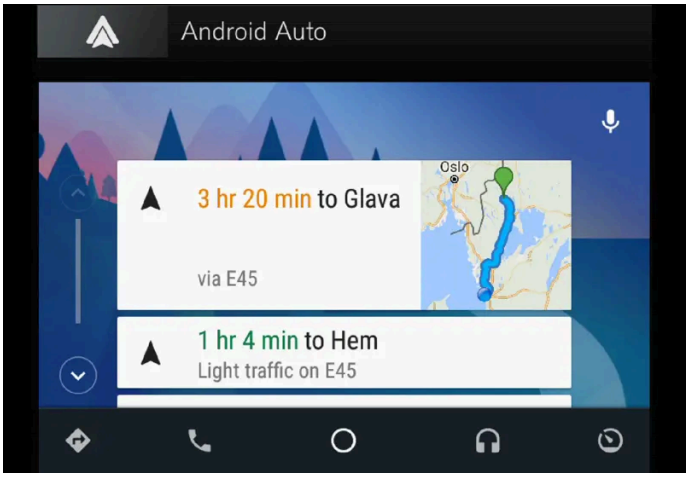
---

# 12.3.3. Android Auto

---

# 12.3.3.1. Android Auto*

Android Auto[1] lets you listen to music, make calls, get driving directions and use apps customized for your vehicle from an Android device. Android Auto can be used with selected Android devices.




For information on supported apps and compatible Android devices, please go to www.android.com/auto/ [https://www.android.com/auto/] . For third-party apps, see Google Play. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content of Android Auto.

Android Auto is started from App view. After Android Auto has been initially started, the app will start automatically the next time the device is connected. The automatic start setting can be deactivated in Settings.

> **Note**
>
> When a device is connected to Android Auto, it is possible to stream to another media player via Bluetooth. Bluetooth is active while Android Auto is in use.

When using navigation guidance provided by Android Auto, navigation will only be shown on the center display and not in the instrument panel or head-up display.

Android Auto can be controlled from the center display, with the right-side steering wheel keypad or by using voice commands. Press and hold the steering wheel button to start the Google Assistant and press briefly to deactivate it.

**By using Android Auto, you acknowledge the following: Android Auto is a service provided by Google Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is not responsible for Android Auto or its features or applications. When you use Android Auto, your car transfers certain information (including its location) to your connected Android phone. You are fully responsible for your and any other person's use of Android Auto.**

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

---

# 12.3.3.2. Using Android Auto*

To use the **Android Auto**[1] app, the app must be installed on the Android device and the device must be connected to the vehicle's USB port.

> **Note**
>
> For installation of Android Auto to be possible, the vehicle must be equipped with two USB ports (USB hub)*. If the vehicle only has one USB port, it will not be possible to use Android Auto.

**Connecting an Android device for the first time**

1. Connect the Androiddevice to the USB port with the white frame.
2. Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap **OK**.
3. Tap **Android Auto** in App view.
4. Read the terms and conditions and then tap **Accept** to connect.

> The Android Auto tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.

5. Tap the desired app.

> The app will start up.

**From a previously connected Android device**

1. Connect the device to the USB port with the white frame.

> **If the auto start setting is selected** - the name of the device will be displayed.

2. Tap the name of the device – the Android Auto tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.

3. **If the automatic start setting is not activated** - open the **Android Auto** app from App view.

> The Android Auto tile will open and compatible apps will be displayed.

4. Tap the desired app.

> The app will start up.

Android Auto will run in the background if another app is started in the same tile. To display Android Auto in the tile, tap the Android Auto icon in App view.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

---

# 12.3.3.3. Tips for using Android Auto*

Here are some useful tips for when you use Android Auto[1].

- Ensure that your apps are updated.
- When starting the vehicle, wait until the center display has started, connect the device and then open Android Auto from the app view.
- In the event of problems with Android Auto, unplug your Android device from the USB port and then plug it in again. Otherwise, try closing the app on the device and then restarting the app.
- When a device is connected to Android Auto it is still possible to play media via Bluetooth to another media player. The Bluetooth function is on when Android Auto is used.
- If the Android Auto icon is grayed out, it means that a device is no longer connected. When you connect your device, the icon will light up. If there is no icon at all, the vehicle does not support connecting a device for this purpose.
- If the device is connected to the vehicle through Bluetooth, the connection will be broken when Android Auto is used. Resume Internet connection in the vehicle by tethering using the device's Wi-Fi hotspot.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

---

# 12.3.3.4. Settings for Android Auto*

Settings for Android devices initially connected with Android Auto[1].

### Automatic start

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Communication** → **Android Auto** and select setting:
   - Check the box - Android Auto will start automatically when the USB cable is connected.
   - Uncheck the box - Android Auto will not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

A maximum of 20 Android devices can be stored in the list. When the list is full and a new device is connected, the oldest one will be deleted.

A factory reset must be performed to delete the list.

### System Volumes

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Sound** → **System Volumes** to change the settings for the following:
   - **Voice Control**
   - **Navi Voice Guidance**
   - **Phone Ringtone**

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

---

## 12.3.4. Settings for Bluetooth devices

Settings for Bluetooth-connected devices.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices** and select settings:

- **Add device** - start the procedure for pairing a new device.
- **Previously paired devices** - lists registered/paired devices.
- **Remove device** - remove a connected device.
- **Allowed services for this device** - select what the device will be used for: making calls, sending/receiving messages, streaming media, Internet connection.
- **Internet connection** connect the vehicle to the Internet using the device's Bluetooth connection.

## Bluetooth® declaration of conformity

**USA**

FCC CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

**Canada**

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

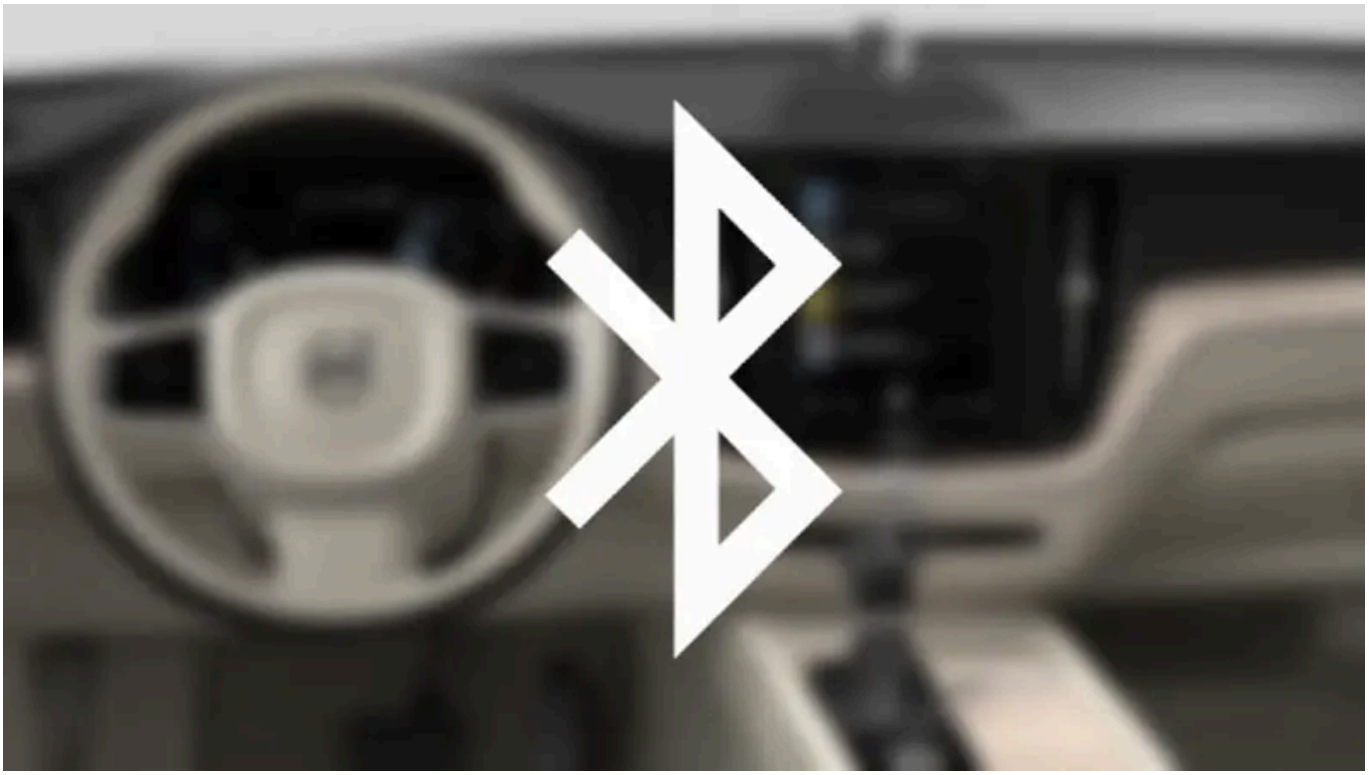
(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

> **Note**
>
> For some phones, the phone's Bluetooth volume must be manually set to 100% for the audio volume in the vehicle to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be adjusted for each connected phone. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

---

# 12.3.5. Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone

Establish an Internet connection using Bluetooth and tethering from a phone and get access to multiple connected services in your vehicle.



1. To connect the vehicle to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone, the phone must first be paired with the vehicle via Bluetooth.
2. Make sure that the phone supports Internet sharing (tethering) and that the function is activated. In an iPhone, the function is called "personal hotspot". In Android phones, the function can have different names, but is often called "hotspot". For iPhone phones, the "personal hotspot" menu page must also be open until the Internet connection has been made.
3. If the phone has been connected via Bluetooth previously, tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
4. Tap **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices**.
5. Mark the window for **Bluetooth Internet connection** under the heading **Internet connection**.
6. If a different connection is being used, confirm the connection change.

> Your vehicle is now connected to the Internet via your Bluetooth-connected phone.

**Note**

The cellular phone and network operator must support tethering (sharing of Internet connection) and the subscription must include data traffic.

> **Note**
>
> When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the vehicle to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the vehicle's modem.

# 12.3.6. Phone

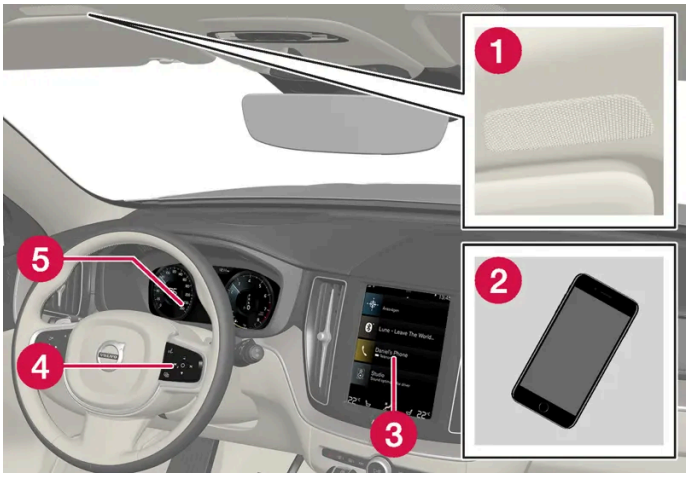
A phone equipped with Bluetooth can be wirelessly connected to the vehicle's integrated hands-free system.

The audio and media system offers hands-free functionality for remotely controlling a number of the phone's features. The phone's integrated controls can also be used, even when it is connected to the vehicle.

When the phone has been paired and connected to the vehicle, it can be used as an Internet connection or to make or receive calls, send or receive text messages or wirelessly play music.

The phone is controlled from the center display, and the App menu (accessed using the right-side steering wheel keypad) and voice commands can also be used to control certain functions.

## Overview




1 Microphone.

2 Phone.

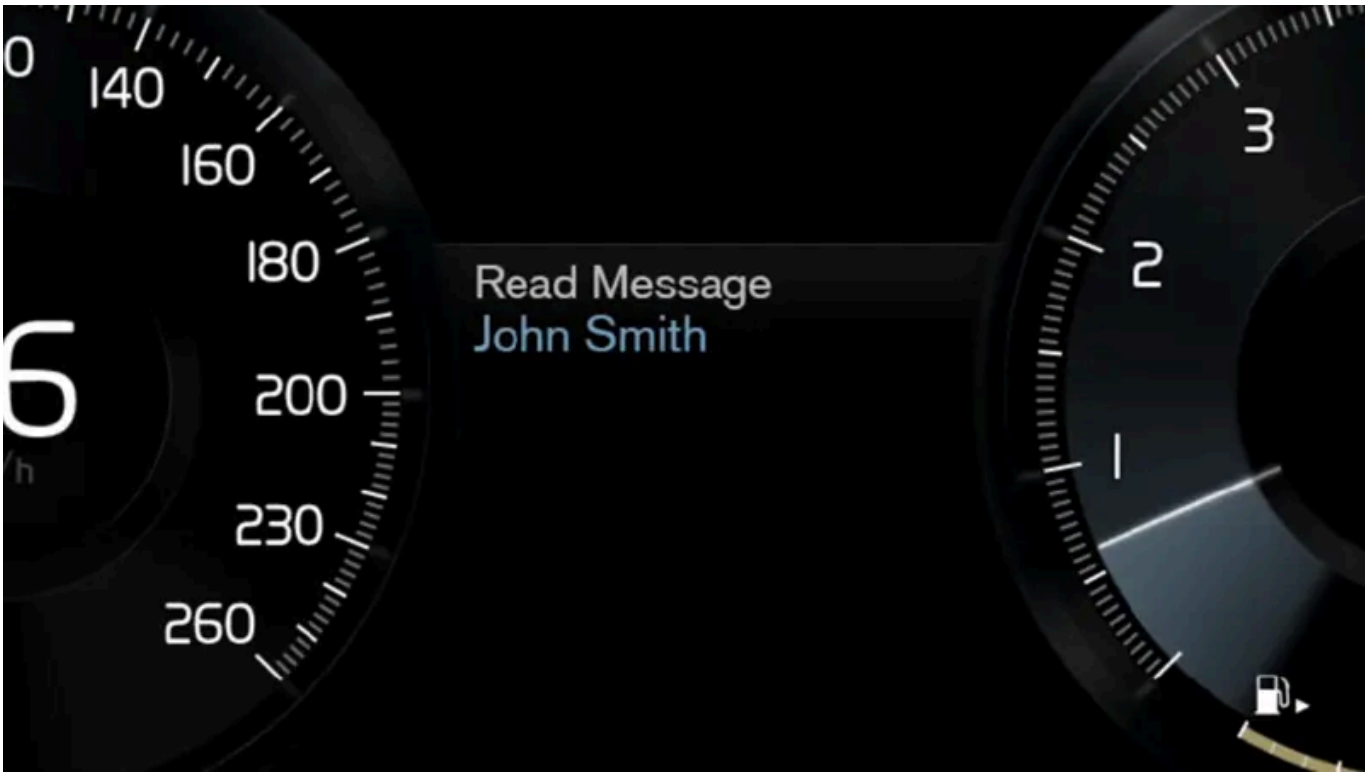
3 Phone handling in the center display.

4 Keypad for controlling phone functions shown in the center display and voice commands.

5 Instrument panel.

# 12.3.7. Voice control for cellular phones

Call a contact in the phone book, have a text message read aloud or dictate short messages using voice commands to a Bluetooth-connected phone.[1]




To access a contact in the phone book, the voice command must contain the contact information entered in the phone book. If a contact, e.g. **Robyn Smith**, has several phone numbers listed in the phone book, a number category such as **home** or **cellular** can also be specified, i.e. "**Call RobynSmithcellular**".

Tap and say one of the following commands:

- "**Call [contact]**" - call the selected contact from the phone book.
- "**Call[phone number]**" - call a phone number.
- "**Recent calls**" - display the list of recent calls.
- "**Read message**" - read a text message aloud. If there are several messages, select the message to read aloud.
- "**Message to [contact]**" – the user is prompted to speak a short message. The message will then be read aloud and the user can choose to send [2] or re-dictate the message. The vehicle must be connected to the Internet to access this function.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

[1] Certain markets only.

[2] Not all phones can send messages via the vehicle.

---

# 12.3.8. Phone settings

When the phone is connected to the car, the following settings can be made:

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Communication** → **Phone** and select settings:
   - **Ringtones** - select a ring tone. Ring tones from the cellular phone or the vehicle can be used. Some phones are not fully compatible and it may not be possible to use the phone's ring tones in the vehicle.
   - **Sort Order** - select sort order in the contact list.

> **Note**
>
> For some phones, the phone's Bluetooth volume must be manually set to 100% for the audio volume in the vehicle to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be adjusted for each connected phone. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

## Call notifications in head up display*

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.

2. Tap **My Car** → **Displays** → **Head-Up Display Options**.

3. Select **Show Phone**.

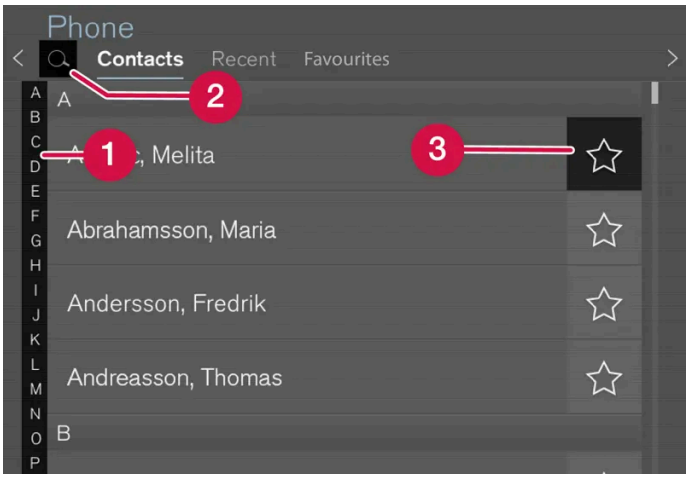
* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.3.9. Managing the phone book

When a phone is connected with Bluetooth to the vehicle, contacts can be managed directly in the center display.

Up to 3,000 contacts can be displayed from the phone selected in the center display.




1 Scroll by letter or # to find contacts. Only letters matching existing contacts in the phone book will be shown.

2 **Search contacts** - tap to search by phone number or name in the phone book.

3 **Favorites** - tap ☆ to add/remove a contact from the list of favorites.

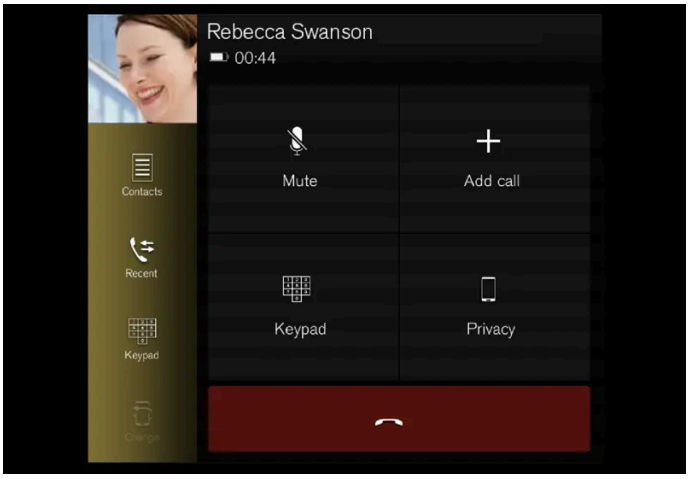
**Sorting**

The phone book is sorted in alphabetical order and special characters and numbers are sorted under # . The list can be sorted by either first name or last name. This is adjusted in your cellular phone settings.

---

# 12.3.10. Handling phone calls

Handling phone calls in the vehicle for a Bluetooth-connected cellular phone.




The illustration is generic.

## Making calls

1. Open the phone tile.
2. Initiate a call by selecting the phone number from the recent calls list, entering the number on the keypad or selecting a number from the phone book (list of contacts). You can search or scroll to find a contact in the phone book. Tap ☆ in the phone book to add a contact to **Favorites**.
3. Tap to make a call.
4. Tap to end the call.

Calls can also be made from the list of recent calls using the app menu, which can be opened using the button on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

#### Making multiple calls

While the call is in progress:

1. Tap **Add call**.
2. Select from the list of recent calls, favorites or contacts.
3. Tap an item/row in the list of recent calls or for the contact in the phone book.
4. Tap **Swap call** to switch between calls.
5. Tap to end the current call.

#### Group (conference) calls

While multiple calls are in progress:

1. Tap **Join calls** to merge ongoing calls.
2. Tap to end the call.

## Incoming calls

Incoming phone calls will be shown on the instrument panel and in the center display. Manage the calls using the right-side steering wheel keypad or the center display.

1. Tap **Answer**/**Reject**.
2. Tap to end the call.

#### Incoming calls while another call is in progress

1. Tap **Answer**/**Reject**.
2. Tap to end the call.

## Privacy

1. While a call is in progress, tap **Privacy** and select setting:
   - **Switch to mobile phone** - the hands-free function will be disabled and the call will proceed on the cellular phone.
   - **Driver focused** - the microphone in the ceiling liner on the passenger side will be muted and the call will proceed using the vehicle's hands-free function.

> **Note**
>
> For some phones, the phone's Bluetooth volume must be manually set to 100% for the audio volume in the vehicle to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be adjusted for each connected phone. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

# 12.3.11. Handling text messages

A Bluetooth-connected cellular phone's text messages can be handled in the vehicle. [1]

Text message functionality needs to be activated in certain phones. Not all phones are fully compatible and therefore cannot display contacts and messages in the vehicle.

## Handling text messages in the center display

Text messages are only shown in the center display if the relevant setting is made.

Tap **Messages** in App view to handle text messages in the center display.

> **Note**
>
> **When the vehicle is moving:**
>
> - Only one row of the message will be displayed. Tap **Read out** to have the entire message read aloud.
> - The center display's keyboard cannot be used.

#### Reading text messages in the center display aloud

Tap the icon to have the message read aloud.

#### Sending text messages in the center display[2]

1. It is possible to reply to text messages or create a new message.
   - To reply to a text message - tap the name of the contact who sent the message and then tap **Answer**.
   - To create a new message - tap **Create new**. Select a contact or enter a phone number.
2. Write the message.
3. Tap **Send**.

## Handling text messages in the instrument panel

Text messages are only shown in the instrument panel if the relevant setting is made.

#### Reading new text messages in the instrument panel aloud

1. To have the message read aloud, select **Read out** using the steering wheel keypad.

#### Dictating replies in the instrument panel

After the text message has been read aloud, it is possible to answer briefly with dictation if the vehicle has an Internet connection.

1. Tap **Answer** using the steering wheel keypad. A dictation dialog will start.

### Message alert

Alerts can be activated and deactivated in the text message settings.

[1] Only applies to certain markets. Contact a Volvo retailer for more information.

[2] Only certain phones can send text messages via the vehicle. The connected phone must support the Bluetooth profile Message Access Profile (MAP).

---

# 12.3.12. Text message settings

Settings for handling text messages received through a connected phone can be personalized.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Communication** → **Text Messages** and select settings:
   - **Notification in center display** - display text message notifications in the center display's status bar.
   - **Notification in driver display** - displays notifications in the driver's display and incoming messages can be managed using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.
   - **Text message tone** - select tone for incoming text messages.

---

# 12.3.13. Wireless phone charger*

A charging pad for wireless phone charging is located in the tunnel console.

To be able to charge, the phone must have wireless charging (Qi) capability. Phones not equipped with a wireless charging receiver can often be supplemented with a shell that enables wireless charging.

**Warning**

Wireless charging can affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.3.14. Using the wireless phone charger*

The rubber pad in the tunnel console can be used to charge a phone without having to connect its cord.

Wireless phone charger in the tunnel console.

**Warning**

Wireless charging can affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

The charging plate can be switched on and off via the center display's Function view. The charging plate's default mode is activated. When the charging plate is switched on, a message will appear describing the risks for users with pacemakers or other implanted devices who could be affected by the plate. Tap the center display to confirm that the charging plate should be switched on.

To use the wireless charging plate:

1. Make sure that the charging plate is switched on in the center display's Function view.
2. Remove all objects from the charging pad and place the phone in the center of the pad.

> The phone will begin charging and the symbol will appear at the top of the center display.

**Important**

Do not place cards with NFC (Near Field Communication), e.g. debit cards for contactless payment, next to the phone. This type of card could be destroyed during charging.

**Note**

Some cellular phones may become warm during wireless charging. This is normal.

**If the phone is not charging:**

- Check in the center display that the charging pad is on.
- Make sure there are no other objects on the charging pad.
- Make sure the phone supports wireless charging (Qi).
- If the phone has a phone case, remove it.
- Lift up the phone and then put it back on the center of the charging pad.
- Make sure the ignition is on.
- Make sure the phone hasn't slid off the charging pad while driving.
- If the temperature of the battery becomes too high while charging, the charging function will be switched off.
- If any of the doors are opened, charging will stop for a few seconds.

If the phone is incorrectly positioned or an object prevents charging on the charge pad, a message is shown in the center display.

**Important**

Keep cellular phones and charger stations away from other objects while charging to help avoid overheating.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.3.15. Certificate for wireless charger

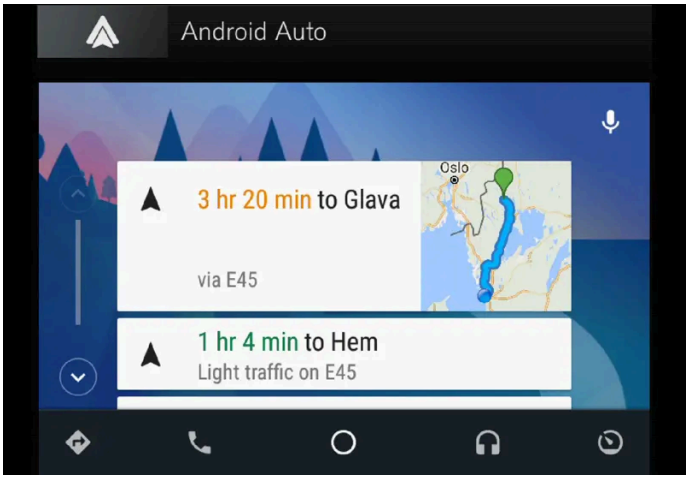
| Country/Area | |
|---|---|
| China: | （一）符合“微功率短距离无线电发射设备目录和技术要求”的具体条款和□用场景，采用的天线类型和性能，控制、调整及开关等□用方法；<br>（二）不得擅自改变□用场景或□用条件、扩大发射频率范围、加大发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器），不得擅自更改发射天线；<br>（三）不得对其他合法的无线电台（站）产生有害干扰，也不得提出免受有害干扰保护；<br>（四）应当承受辐射射频能量的工业、科学及医疗（ISM）应用设备的干扰或其他合法的无线电台（站）干扰；<br>（五）如对其他合法的无线电台（站）产生有害干扰时，应立即停止□用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续□用；<br>（六）在航空器内和依据法律法规、国家有关规定、标准划设的射电天文台、气象雷达站、卫星地球站（含测控、测距、接收、导航站）等军民用无线电台（站）、机场等的电磁环境保护区域内□用微功率设备，应当遵守电磁环境保护及相关行业主管部门的规定；<br>（七）禁止在以机场跑道中心点为圆心、半径5000米的区域内□用各类模型遥控器；<br>（八）微功率设备□用时温度和电压的环境条件。 |
| Mexico: | RCPVAPVO 18-1919 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/VOLVO_Mexico_57442C.pdf] |
| Paraguay: | CONATEL<br>NR: 2018-11-1-000541<br>2018-11-1-000541 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/Volvo_Paraguay_57442C.pdf] |
| Taiwan: | 根據NCC低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 規定:<br>第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或□用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。<br>第十四條<br>低功率射頻電機之□用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續□用。<br>前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。<br>低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。 |
| Ukraine: | Ци<br>Діапазон частот: 107 кГц - 115 кГц<br>Максимальна потужність радіосигналу: 5 Вт (сполучена), 63 Вт наномасштабів (випромінюється)<br>Коефіцієнт викидів: N / A<br>Модуляції: 2 кГц<br>NFC<br>Діапазон частот: 13,56 МГц, у межах +/- 0,01%<br>Максимальна вихідна потужність РФ: 10 мВт<br>–<br>виробник: Ел-Джі Електронікс Інк.(LG Electronics Inc) 10, Магок'юнганг 10-ро, Гангсео-гу, Сеул, 07796, Корея<br>Frequency range 111 кГц / Максимальна потужність РЧ: 42 дБмк А / м<br>справжнім Ел-Джі Електронікс Інкзаявляє, що тип радіообладнання WC510MVV20 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc.<br>імпортер : Віннер Імпортс Україна<br>Вул. Дачна, 5-А, с.Капітанівка, Київська область, 08112, Україна<br>Тел.: +38(044) 585 63 00<br>Контактна особа : Alla Haidai (ahaidai@winner.ua) |
| US/Canada | FCC ID : BEJWC510MVV20<br>IC : 2703H-WC510MVV20<br>This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-Gen,RSS-216 rules of Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:<br>(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and<br>(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.<br>Any changed or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.<br>FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 15cm between the radiator and your body.<br>–<br>IDéclaration d'avertissement ISED<br>Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes:<br>(1) Cet appareil ne doit pas provoquerd'interferences nuisibles, et<br>(2) Cet appareil doit accepter toute interference recue, y compris les interferences pouvant entrainerun fonctionnement indesirable.<br>Les changements ou modifications non expressement approuves par LG Vehicle Components Company pourraient annuler l'autorite de l'utilisateura utilizer l'equipement.<br>Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations RF de l'ISED: Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements RF de l'ISED définies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet appareil et son antenne ne doivent pas être situés ou fonctionner conjointement avec une autre antenne ou un autre émetteur.<br>Cet équipement doit être installé pour fonctionner avec une distance minimale de 10cm entre le radiateuret le corps de l'utilisateur final. |

# 12.4. Apps

# 12.4.1. Available apps in vehicle

## 12.4.1.1. Android Auto*

Android Auto[1] lets you listen to music, make calls, get driving directions and use apps customized for your vehicle from an Android device. Android Auto can be used with selected Android devices.




For information on supported apps and compatible Android devices, please go to www.android.com/auto/ [https://www.android.com/auto/] . For third-party apps, see Google Play. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content of Android Auto.

Android Auto is started from App view. After Android Auto has been initially started, the app will start automatically the next time the device is connected. The automatic start setting can be deactivated in Settings.

> **Note**
>
> When a device is connected to Android Auto, it is possible to stream to another media player via Bluetooth. Bluetooth is active while Android Auto is in use.

When using navigation guidance provided by Android Auto, navigation will only be shown on the center display and not in the instrument panel or head-up display.

Android Auto can be controlled from the center display, with the right-side steering wheel keypad or by using voice commands. Press and hold the steering wheel button to start the Google Assistant and press briefly to deactivate it.

**By using Android Auto, you acknowledge the following: Android Auto is a service provided by Google Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is not responsible for Android Auto or its features or applications. When you use Android Auto,**

your car transfers certain information (including its location) to your connected Android phone. You are fully responsible for your and any other person's use of Android Auto.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

---

# 12.4.1.2. Available apps

Volvo provides a wide selection of services, apps and programs that you can use in your vehicle.

Sensus Connect gives you access to apps for entertainment, navigation and service in the vehicle. To see what apps are available for download, go to **Download Center** in the vehicle's center display[1].

## Tips when using apps

Many apps require an Internet connection to use certain functions[2].

If you experience that an app has stopped working, try uninstalling and then reinstalling the app.

> **Note**
>
> The selection of available apps may vary from market to market. Support for services from Volvo's third-party suppliers may also vary. It may be the case that one or several apps are not available on the market where the vehicle is sold or used.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

---

# 12.4.1.3. Apple® CarPlay®*

With CarPlay[1], you can listen to music, make phone calls, get driving instructions, send/receive messages and use Siri, all while remaining focused on driving.

CarPlay works with select iOS devices. If the car does not already support CarPlay, this can be retrofitted. Contact a Volvo retailer to install CarPlay.

Information about supported apps and compatible iOS devices are available on the Apple website: www.apple.com/ios/carplay/ [https://www.apple.com/ios/carplay/] . Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes mean that the connection between the device and the vehicle is broken. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content of CarPlay.

When using map navigation via CarPlay, guidance will only be shown on the center display and not in the instrument panel or head-up display.

When navigation is started through Apple CarPlay, any current route guidance from the vehicle's own systems will be discontinued.

CarPlay apps can be controlled from the center display, an iOS device or with the right-side steering wheel keypad (for certain functions). The apps can also be voice-controlled using Siri. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel to start voice control with Siri. Press briefly to activate the vehicle's own voice control system. If Siri cuts off too soon, press and hold the [2] button on the steering wheel..

**By using Apple CarPlay you acknowledge the following: Apple CarPlay is a service provided by Apple Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is thus not responsible for Apple CarPlay or its features/applications. When using Apple CarPlay, certain information from your car (including its position) is transferred to your iPhone. In relation to Volvo Cars, you are fully responsible for your and any others person's use of Apple CarPlay.**

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

---

# 12.4.1.4. Air Quality app

The Air Quality app is a service that visualizes the measured concentration of airborne particulate matter inside the vehicle over time.

A climate sensor measures the concentration of $PM_{2.5}$ particles (particles smaller than 2.5 µm) in the passenger compartment*.

To use this app:

- The vehicle must have network access for at least 1 minute when starting the app or restarting the vehicle.
- The vehicle must be running for the $PM_{2.5}$ sensor to be able to measure.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.4.1.5. Google Local Search

Using the Google Local Search [1] app, you can search for restaurants, hotels and gas stations and a lot more along your route directly in your Volvo's center display.

## Functions in Google Local Search

Google Local Search is a free service. You do not need to register for access to the online database. However, you need an Internet connection to be able to use the service[2].

Using the Google Local Search app you can, among other things, search for locations, restaurants, hotels and other businesses along the route and in the vicinity of your destination.

In Google Local Search you can see information on different search results such as addresses, distances, opening times and telephone numbers. The app includes the option to call a business directly from the vehicle, and you can get directions to a destination by sending an address to Sensus Navigation.

In Google Local Search you can read, and in some cases listen to, reviews and see user ratings for, among other things, restaurants and hotels. You can also browse through and look at images linked to search results and you have access to photographs from Google Street View which can make it easier to find your way to a desired location or business.

### Operating

The keyboard for searching in Google Local Search is locked while driving and reviews are limited to three rows.

### Tips when using Google Local Search

If you experience problems with Google Local Search, check that you have a working internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

[2] There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

---

# 12.4.1.6. Pandora

Pandora[1] is an online service that allows you to access music. With Pandora you can create personal stations from a favorite artist, track or genre.

### Create Pandora account

Pandora is a free service. In order to use the service, you must have an account that you create on the Pandora website[2].

### Bookmark music track

You can bookmark a track. For more information about the track or album, log in to the Pandora website[3].

### Tips when using Pandora

If you experience problems with Pandora, check that you have a working internet connection and good signal strength.

When using Pandora it is possible to skip over six tracks per station and per hour.

It is not possible to search forward or back through the tracks in the vehicle version of the app.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

[2] It is not possible to create an account from the vehicle.

[3] Cannot be viewed from the vehicle.

---

# 12.4.1.7. Park and Pay

Park and Pay[1] is an app that can help you find vacant parking spaces. In some cases, you can also pay for your parking via the app. Park and Pay can be used if the vehicle is equipped with Sensus Connect and Sensus Navigation.

## The Park and Pay app

With the Park and Pay app you can find free parking spots and pay for your parking. The payment service is available in parking locations that are connected to the payment providers supported by Park and Pay. These locations are indicated in the app by an icon in the list view as well as under "detailed information" for each parking spot. There you will also find information about payment providers and parking identification.

## Using Park and Pay

No account is required to use the Park and Pay app, but you need to register on the payment provider's website to be able to pay for parking via the app.

The Park and Pay app is a free service but you will be charged by the payment provider if you use the payment function. Note that data usage charges may be incurred depending on subscription. Contact your internet provider for more information about data usage costs.

## Price example

The detailed view for parking spaces shows a price example, which can vary depending on the time and date. The price stated once you have set the estimated time for parking is the actual cost of the parking for the estimated time.

## End parking

If you use a parking space where you only pay for the time you parked, the app will ask you to enter the estimated time for parking so that you do not forget to end parking. If you end parking before it expires, you will only pay for the time you parked[2].

## Tips when using Park and Pay

If you experience problems with Park and Pay, check that you have a working internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

[2] This only applies for payment providers who support payment for ended parking.

---

# 12.4.1.8. Record & Send

Record & Send[1] is a vehicle app that allows you to record personal voice messages and send them to a any recipient.

## Making and sending recordings

When the app starts, two options will be shown: enter recipient and record by pressing the microphone symbol.

1. Tap **Recipient** and enter the email address you would like to send the recording to.
2. Tap the microphone symbol to start recording.
3. Speak the message.
4. Tap the microphone symbol again to stop recording.

> You will be asked if you would like to send the recording or delete it.

## Open voice recording

When a recording is sent, the recipient receives an e-mail that can be opened in a standard e-mail program, either in a cellular phone or a computer. The recording is included as an attachment file in MP3 format.

## Open software

To compress your recordings in MP3 format, use the open software library LAME. You can read more about LAME on their website: www.mp3dev.org.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

# 12.4.1.9. Spotify

In your Volvo, you can use the Spotify[1] app to listen to music when the vehicle has an Internet connection.

## Getting started with Spotify with Sensus Connect

A Spotify Premium account is required to use Spotify. Currently, it is not possible to create an account from the app in your vehicle, but you can easily create an account from the Spotify website. If you already have a Spotify Premium account, you can of course use that.

## Internet connection when using Spotify

To use Spotify in your vehicle, the app must have access to the Internet. Offline mode is currently not available.

## Sound quality

You can choose the sound quality you prefer in the app settings. You can choose between Normal, High and Extreme sound quality.

- Normal (96 kbps)
- High (160 kbps)
- Extreme (320 kbps)

## Functions

The Spotify app offers a range of options and functions, such as:

- Free text search
- Auto search
- Play/Pause/Resume
- Browse through albums, playlists, news, etc.
- Add/remove music tracks from your library
- Log in/out
- Skip between music tracks

- Spotify Connect
- Spotify Radio

> **Note**
>
> Volvo does not save information that is used in the Spotify app with the exception of locally stored data that is necessary for the app to work. Your password is never stored and if you have signed out of the app, you must provide both username and password to log back in again.

### Delete user details

To delete user details, log out of the Spotify app via the settings menu. The user details are also deleted at a factory reset of the center display.

### Tips when using Spotify

If you experience problems with Spotify, check that you have a working internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

---

# 12.4.1.10. TuneIn

TuneIn[1] is a radio app that can be used when the vehicle is connected to the Internet. TuneIn offers over 100,000 global live radio stations from every continent and over two million on-demand programs (e.g. podcasts, concerts and interviews).

### TuneIn account

Although an TuneIn account is not required to use TuneIn, it is recommended. You can create your TuneIn account at www.tunein.com. With an account, you can select your preferred radio stations to enable easy listening access later in your vehicle.

### Sound quality

You can choose a stream quality among basic, medium to high bitrates. The amount of bandwidth used depends on the quality you select; see specifications below.

| Speed (kbps) | Duration (hours) | Size (MB) |
|---|---|---|
| 32 (Basic sound quality) | 1 | 14 |
| 64 (Basic sound quality) | 1 | 28 |
| 96 (Medium sound quality) | 1 | 42 |
| 128 (High sound quality) | 1 | 56 |

### Tips when using TuneIn

If you experience problems with TuneIn, ensure that you have an internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

---

# 12.4.1.11. Using TuneIn

The Internet radio service TuneIn [1] has several different functions. You can, for example, play local radio, add your preferred radio stations and create shortcuts to these. This article describes how you use these services and how you access them from your vehicle.

### Starting TuneIn

1. Download the TuneIn app from **Download Center** in App view.
2. Open the TuneIn app in App view.

> The vehicle connects to TuneIn. The first time you connect the music buffers, which can take a few seconds.

### Accessing your TuneIn account information

1. Open the TuneIn app in App view.
2. Expand the view and click on **Sign in**.

> A pop-up window appears and you can log in.

3. Enter your username and password, then press **Sign in**.

> You can now access account information.

### TuneIn categories

With TuneIn, it is easy to scroll through different categories.

1. Open the TuneIn app in App view.
2. Expand the view and click on **Library**.

> A list of stations and categories appears.

### TuneIn favourites

If you are logged in to TuneIn in the vehicle, your selected favorites will be synchronized with your account. Otherwise your selected favorites will only be accessible in the vehicle.

1. In expanded view: Click on the radio station you want to mark as favorite.
2. Mark the star icon to the right.

> The station has now been added to your favorites.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

---

## 12.4.1.12. Weather

The Weather[1] app provides you with weather information in the vehicle's local area or in a selected location. Weather can only be used if the vehicle is equipped with Sensus Navigation.

### The Weather app

Weather gives you daily and weekly forecasts. Set the location you want updated weather for in the app settings. The settings can be accessed in the display mode for the app. Here you can also change settings for measuring wind speed.

### Using Weather

Weather is a free service which does not require an account to be registered.

Note that data usage charges may be incurred depending on subscription. Contact your internet provider for more information.

### Tips when using Weather

If you experience problems with Weather, check that you have a working internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

---

# 12.4.1.13. WikiLocations

With the WikiLocations[1] app, you can read Wikipedia articles that are related to your vehicle's position and destination.

## The WikiLocations app

WikiLocations gives you access to Wikipedia-based content. This is a service that is not part of the vehicle's navigation system, but you can view articles, photos and summaries that are related to your vehicle's location and destination.

The articles found in WikiLocations are those that have been designated a geographical position. WikiLocations only shows articles that match the vehicle's language settings and articles in English.

## Using WikiLocations

WikiLocations is a free service which does not require an account.

Note that data usage charges may be incurred depending on subscription. Contact your internet provider for more information.

Use the steering wheel knob for safer use of the app while you drive.

## Tips when using WikiLocations

If you experience problems with WikiLocations, check that you have a working internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

---

# 12.4.1.14. Yelp

You can use the Yelp[1] app to find local companies (e.g. restaurants or shops) and can read other users' ratings and reviews of companies near you. Yelp can only be used if the vehicle is equipped with both Sensus Connect and Sensus Navigation.

## The Yelp app

You can use Yelp to search for e.g. restaurants, shops, spas and local services. You can read reviews on companies that you are interested in and would like to know more about.

Note that the reviews appear depending on the language they are written in.

## Using Yelp

Yelp is a free service which does not require an account to be registered.

Note that data usage charges may be incurred depending on subscription. Contact your internet provider for more information about what applies to your subscription.

Use the steering wheel knob for safer use of the app while you drive.

### Search for companies nearby

To search for a company near your destination, the destination must be set in your navigation system.

In order to get the best possible results, try to use specific terms, where the free-text search matches the company name and the text in the reviews.

### Tips when using Yelp

If it is not possible to start navigation to a selected company, this is probably because Yelp does not have information about the company's precise position. The same is true if it is not possible to display the location on the map.

If you experience problems with Yelp, check that you have a working internet connection with good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

---

# 12.4.1.15. Vehicle status

The general status of the vehicle can be viewed in the center display.

The **Car Status** app is started from the center display's App view and has four tabs:

- **Messages** - status messages
- **Status** – checking engine oil level and AdBlue level[1]
- **TPMS** - tire inflation pressure check
- **Appointments** - appointment information and vehicle information[2]

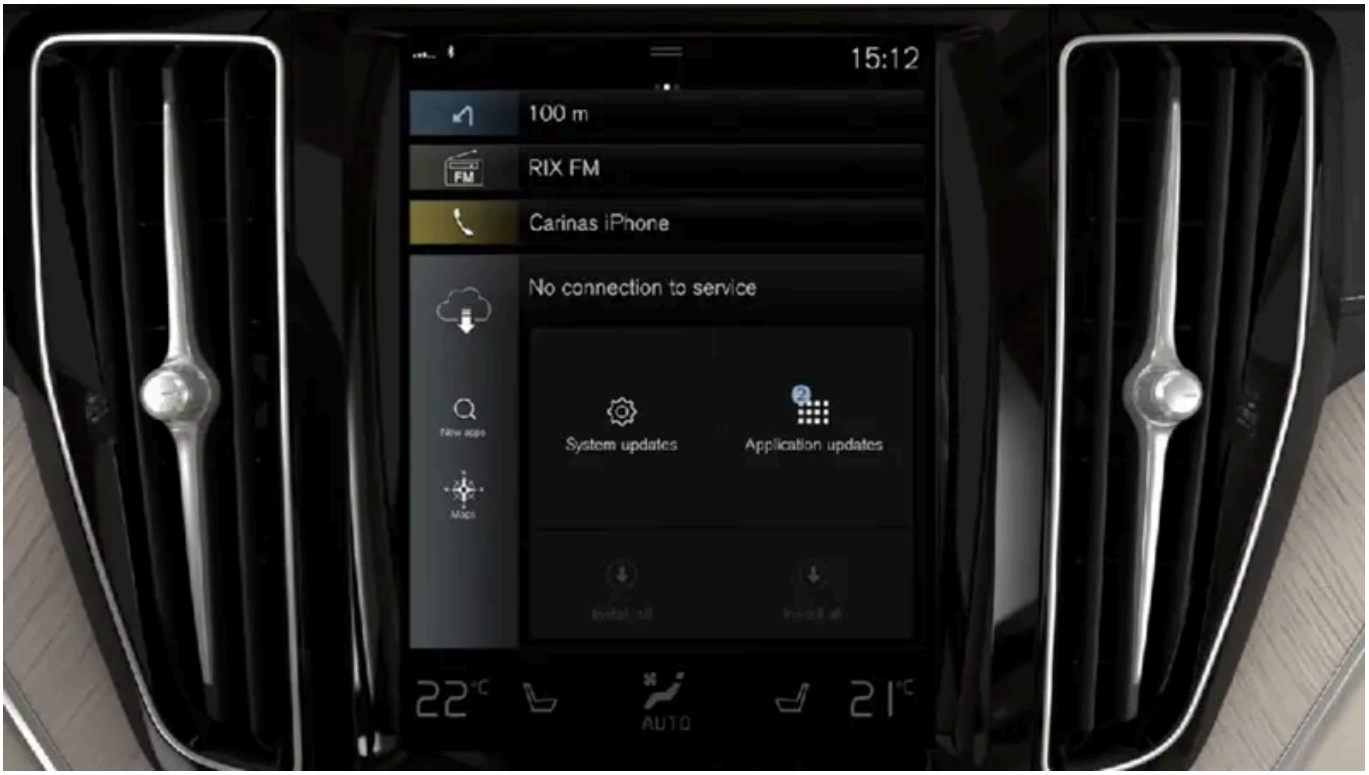
[1] AdBlue Diesel models only.

[2] Certain markets only.

---

# 12.4.1.16. Download Center

The Download Center app in the vehicle's center display is used to manage software[1] such as apps and maps.



**Download Center** is started from App view in the center display and makes it possible to:

- search for and update certain software
- update Sensus Navigation* map data
- download, update and delete apps.

[1] There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.4.2. Apps

The App view contains apps that provide access to certain vehicle services.

Swipe the center display screen from right to left[1] to access the App view from the Home view. This view displays down-

loaded apps (third-party apps) as well as apps for integrated functions, such as **FM radio**.

App view. (generic illustration; basic apps vary depending on market and model)

Several basic apps are always available. More apps such as web radio and music services can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

Some apps can only be used when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

Start an app by tapping it.

All apps used should be updated to the latest version.

[1] Applies for left-hand drive vehicles. For right-hand drive vehicles, swipe in the other direction.

---

# 12.4.3. Download apps

New apps can be downloaded when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

**Note**

Data downloading can affect other services such as transfer data, e.g. web radio. If the affect on other services is experienced as problematic, the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or cancel other services.

**Note**

When downloading using a phone, pay extra attention to the data traffic costs.

1. Open the **Download Center** app in App view.

2. Select **New apps** to open a list of apps that are available but are not installed in the vehicle.
3. Tap on the row for an app in order to expand in the list and get more information about the app.
4. Select **Install** to start the download and installation of the app.

> The current status of the download and installation will be shown.
If a download cannot be started immediately, a message will be displayed. The app will remain in the list and it will be possible to reattempt downloading.

#### Canceling a download

1. Tap **Abort** to cancel a download in progress.

Note that only a download can be cancelled. An installation cannot be cancelled once it has begun.

---

## 12.4.4. Deleting apps

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is possible to uninstall apps.

If the app is being used, it must be closed before it can be uninstalled.

1. Open the **Download Center** app in App view.

2. Select **Application updates** to open a list of all installed apps.
3. Find the desired app and select **Uninstall** to begin uninstalling the app.

> When the app has been uninstalled, it will be removed from the list.

---

# 12.4.5. Updating apps

Apps can be updated when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

> **Note**
>
> Data downloading can affect other services such as transfer data, e.g. web radio. If the affect on other services is experienced as problematic, the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or cancel other services.

> **Note**
>
> When downloading using a phone, pay extra attention to the data traffic costs.

If an app is being used while an update is in progress, it will be restarted to complete the update.

**Update all**

1. Open the **Download Center** app in App view.

2. Select **Install all**.

> The update will begin.

#### Update certain apps

1. Open the **Download Center** app in App view.
2. Select **Application updates** to open a list of all available updates.
3. Find the desired app and select **Install**.

> The update will begin.

---

# 12.4.6. Volvo ID

Volvo ID is a personal ID that gives you access to a range of services using a single username and password.

> **Note**
>
> The available services can vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

One example of a service in which a Volvo ID is needed is to check the vehicle via your phone using the Volvo Cars app[1].

> **Note**
>
> If the username/password for a service (e.g. Volvo On Call) is changed, the change will also automatically be applied to other services.

A Volvo ID can be created from the vehicle, at volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or in the Volvo Cars app.

When a Volvo ID is registered in the vehicle, additional services are available. Multiple Volvo IDs can be used for the same vehicle, and multiple vehicles can be linked to the same Volvo ID.

* Option/accessory.

[1] For Volvo On Call* users.

---

# 12.4.7. Creating a Volvo ID

A Volvo ID can be created in various ways. If your Volvo ID was created on volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or with the Volvo Cars app, the Volvo IDmust also be registered to the vehicle to enable access to the Volvo ID services.

#### Creating a Volvo ID with the Volvo ID app

1. Download the Volvo ID app from **Download Center** in the center display's App view.
2. Start the app and register a personal email address or a cellular phone number.
3. Follow the instructions that will be sent automatically to this email address/cell phone number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is automatically registered to the vehicle. The Volvo ID services can now be used.

#### Creating a Volvo ID with the Volvo Cars app

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo Cars app to your phone[1].
2. Choose to create a Volvo ID.
3. The website for creating a Volvo ID will appear.
4. Enter a personal email address or cell phone number.
5. Follow the instructions that will be sent automatically to this email address/cell phone number.

> A Volvo ID is created and ready for use.

#### Creating a Volvo ID on the Volvo Cars website

1. Go to volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/]. Choose to create a Volvo ID.
2. Enter a personal email address or cell phone number.
3. Follow the instructions that will be sent automatically to this email address/cell phone number.

> A Volvo ID is created and ready for use.

## Registering your Volvo ID to the vehicle

If your Volvo ID was created using the Volvo Cars app, follow these steps to register the ID to the vehicle:

1. If you have not already done so, download the Volvo ID app from **Download Center** in the center display's App view.

> **Note**
>
> To download apps the vehicle must be connected to the internet.

2. Start the app and enter your Volvo ID.
3. Follow the instructions that will be automatically sent to the email address/cell phone number connected to your Volvo ID.

> Your Volvo ID has now been registered to the vehicle. The Volvo ID services can now be used.

[1] Can be downloaded from e.g. the Apple App Store or Google Play.

---

# 12.5. Internet connection

---

# 12.5.1. Internet-based services

---

# 12.5.1.1. Connected Safety

Connected Safety[1] communicates information between your vehicle and other vehicles via the Internet[2]. The function is designed to notify the driver of any hazardous road conditions ahead.

The function can notify the driver if another vehicle further down the road has activated its hazard warning flashers or detected slippery road conditions. You will also be notified if your own vehicle detects slippery road conditions.

Connected Safety can assist the driver with the following:

- Hazard warning flashers alert
- Slippery road alerts

Connected Safety communication between vehicles only works for vehicles that are equipped with the function and have it activated.

## Hazard warning flashers alert

If your vehicle's hazard warning flashers are activated, information on this can be sent to other vehicles approaching your location.

When your vehicle approaches a vehicle with its hazard warning flashers on, this symbol will appear in the instrument panel.

In vehicles equipped with a head-up display, the warning symbols for Connected Safety will also be displayed there.

## Slippery road alerts

If your own car detects reduced friction between your tires and the road, information on this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

As the vehicle approaches the area affected, this symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel to alert the driver of slippery road conditions. Drivers of other vehicles receiving information via Connected Safety will receive similar notifications as they approach the area.

In vehicles equipped with a head-up display, the warning symbols for Connected Safety will also be displayed there.

**Warning**

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual about this function to learn of its limitations, which the driver must be aware of before using the function.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Not available in all markets.

[2] There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

---

# 12.5.1.2. Apps

The App view contains apps that provide access to certain vehicle services.

Swipe the center display screen from right to left[1] to access the App view from the Home view. This view displays down-

loaded apps (third-party apps) as well as apps for integrated functions, such as **FM radio**.

App view. (generic illustration; basic apps vary depending on market and model)

Several basic apps are always available. More apps such as web radio and music services can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

Some apps can only be used when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

Start an app by tapping it.

All apps used should be updated to the latest version.

[1] Applies for left-hand drive vehicles. For right-hand drive vehicles, swipe in the other direction.

---

# 12.5.1.3. Terms of use and data sharing

The first time certain services and apps are started, a pop-up window with the heading **Terms and conditions** and **Data sharing** may open.

The aim is to inform the user about Volvo's terms of use and data sharing policy. By accepting data sharing, the user accepts that certain information will be sent from the vehicle. This is required for certain services and apps to work with full functionality.

The data sharing function for connected services and apps is disabled by default[1]. For certain connected services and apps in the vehicle to work, data sharing must be activated. Data sharing can be set from the center display's settings menu or when the services or apps are started in the center display.

### Privacy and data sharing

The software update that became available in November 2017 introduced privacy and data sharing settings for connected services and downloaded apps. These settings can be found under **Privacy and data** in the settings menu in the vehicle's center display.

There, you can choose which connected services will be allowed to share data. Data sharing for downloaded apps can also be disabled there. Note that services and apps cannot be used as intended if data sharing is disabled.

After a factory reset or e.g. a workshop visit or a software update, your data sharing preferences may be reset to default settings. You will then need to reactivate data sharing for connected services and downloaded apps.

> **Note**
>
> Settings for privacy and data sharing are unique for each driver profile.

[1] Does not apply to Volvo On Call.

---

# 12.5.1.4. Activating and deactivating data sharing

Data sharing for relevant services and apps can be set via the Settings menu in the center display.

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **System** → **Privacy and data**.
3. Select to activate or deactivate data sharing for individual services and all apps.

If data sharing for a connected service or downloaded apps is not activated, this can be done when they are started in the center display. If this is the first time that a service is started, or e.g. after a factory reset or certain software updates, Volvo's terms and conditions for connected services must be accepted. Note that data sharing will then also be activated for other services or apps that sharing has already been accepted for.

> **Note**
>
> After visiting a Volvo workshop, you may need to reactivate data sharing so that services and apps will work again.

---

# 12.5.1.5. Data sharing for Volvo On Call

Data sharing for the Volvo On Call service is enabled by default. This means that you do not need to enable data sharing for the service when you buy a new vehicle or e.g. after a factory reset.

You can choose to disable data sharing for Volvo On Call. Note that most Volvo On Call functions need to be able to share data in order for you to use them. If you have paired the Volvo Cars app with your vehicle, a notification will be displayed in the app if the data sharing function is disabled for Volvo On Call.

The data sharing settings are only enabled by default for your Volvo On Call services. Data sharing will remain disabled for your other connected services and downloaded apps and will need to be enabled in order to be used.

---

# 12.5.1.6. Driver profile data sharing

When you begin using a new driver profile, the data sharing preferences for the profile will be set to the vehicle's default settings and be disabled.

If you want to begin using a new driver profile, data sharing must be enabled for the connected services the profile wants to use. This applies even if you have previously enabled data sharing for connected services for other driver profiles.

Sometimes, after a workshop visit or after a software update, some settings in your vehicle may be reset to their default settings. Because the data sharing settings are unique to each driver profile, data sharing must be reactivated individually for each profile.

> **Note**
>
> When you buy a Volvo, the dealer can often provide assistance with settings in the vehicle and go through the various setting options with you. Among other things, this could mean that data sharing was already activated for connected services in the new car at the time of delivery.
>
> If you then begin using a new driver profile, the data sharing settings for the new profile will be deactivated and must then be activated for the connected services you want to use. This also applies to data sharing settings for downloaded apps.

#### Checking which driver profile is being used

The data sharing settings may be different for different driver profiles in your vehicle. For example, one profile may have data sharing enabled for only one connected service, while another has the function enabled for all services and downloaded apps.

If you find that some apps or connected services do not seem to be working as they should in your vehicle, e.g. if you are repeatedly asked to allow data sharing for certain functions, check which driver profile is active and for which services the profile has activated data sharing.

You can change driver profile under **Profile** in Top view in your center display.

You can always choose to enable data sharing for the connected services you want to be able to use in a driver profile, but if the profile has protected and saved its settings, all of the changes you make will be temporary. This is because all settings for a protected driver profile will revert to the latest saved settings when the vehicle is switched off and locked.

To save changes made in a protected driver profile, go to **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile** in your center display and tap the button at the bottom of the screen to save changes for the profile.

---

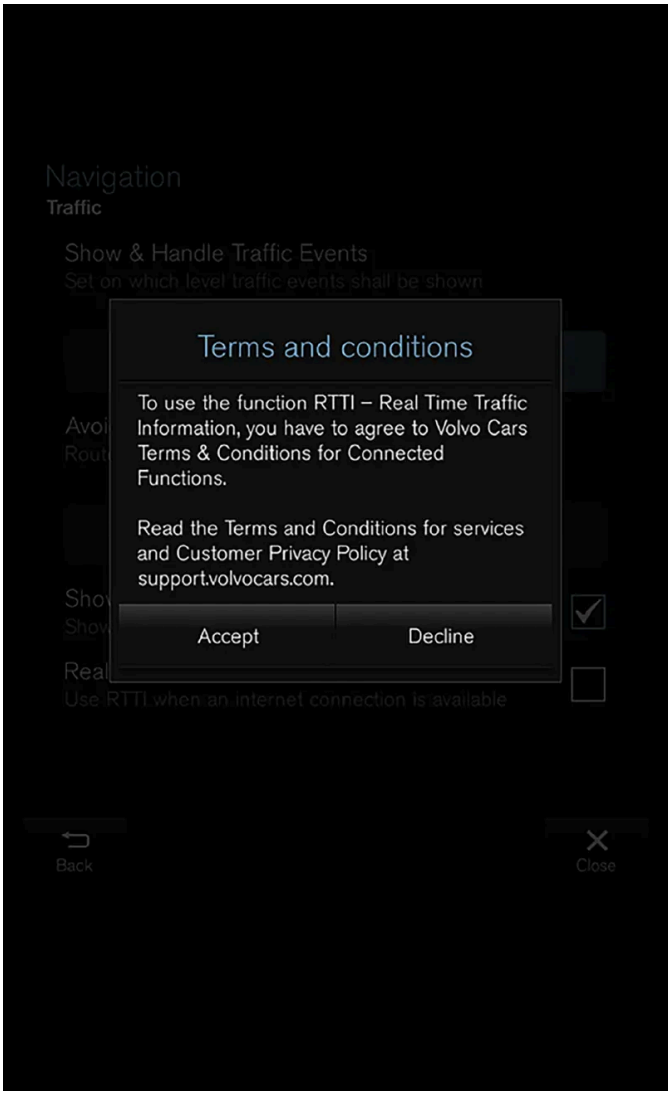
# 12.5.1.7. Data sharing for services

If you haven't activated data sharing for a connected service or for downloaded apps, you can do this when you start them in your center display. The first time that you start a service, or e.g. after a factory reset or certain software updates, you will also need to accept Volvo's terms and conditions for connected services.

## Enabling data sharing when starting a service

1. Select the function or service you want to activate.

> If this is the first time you are using the service or after e.g. a factory reset or certain software updates, you will first need to accept Volvo's terms and conditions for connected services in order to continue.




2. Accept data sharing for the service or cancel.

If you choose to accept, data sharing will be enabled and you can begin using the service.

### Enabling data sharing when starting an app

To accept data sharing for an app that needs the function, start the app and tap **accept** in the pop-up window.

You can disable data sharing for services and apps in the settings menu under **System** → **Privacy and data** → **Data Sharing**.

---

# 12.5.1.8. Volvo ID

Volvo ID is a personal ID that gives you access to a range of services using a single username and password.

> **Note**
>
> The available services can vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

One example of a service in which a Volvo ID is needed is to check the vehicle via your phone using the Volvo Cars app[1].

> **Note**
>
> If the username/password for a service (e.g. Volvo On Call) is changed, the change will also automatically be applied to other services.

A Volvo ID can be created from the vehicle, at volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or in the Volvo Cars app.

When a Volvo ID is registered in the vehicle, additional services are available. Multiple Volvo IDs can be used for the same vehicle, and multiple vehicles can be linked to the same Volvo ID.

* Option/accessory.

[1] For Volvo On Call* users.

---

# 12.5.1.9. Creating a Volvo ID

A Volvo ID can be created in various ways. If your Volvo ID was created on volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or with the Volvo Cars app, the Volvo IDmust also be registered to the vehicle to enable access to the Volvo ID services.

#### Creating a Volvo ID with the Volvo ID app

1. Download the Volvo ID app from **Download Center** in the center display's App view.
2. Start the app and register a personal email address or a cellular phone number.
3. Follow the instructions that will be sent automatically to this email address/cell phone number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is automatically registered to the vehicle. The Volvo ID services can now be used.

#### Creating a Volvo ID with the Volvo Cars app

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo Cars app to your phone[1].
2. Choose to create a Volvo ID.
3. The website for creating a Volvo ID will appear.
4. Enter a personal email address or cell phone number.
5. Follow the instructions that will be sent automatically to this email address/cell phone number.

> A Volvo ID is created and ready for use.

#### Creating a Volvo ID on the Volvo Cars website

1. Go to volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] . Choose to create a Volvo ID.
2. Enter a personal email address or cell phone number.
3. Follow the instructions that will be sent automatically to this email address/cell phone number.

> A Volvo ID is created and ready for use.

## Registering your Volvo ID to the vehicle

If your Volvo ID was created using the Volvo Cars app, follow these steps to register the ID to the vehicle:

1. If you have not already done so, download the Volvo ID app from **Download Center** in the center display's App view.

> **Note**
>
> To download apps the vehicle must be connected to the internet.

2. Start the app and enter your Volvo ID.

3. Follow the instructions that will be automatically sent to the email address/cell phone number connected to your Volvo ID.

> Your Volvo ID has now been registered to the vehicle. The Volvo ID services can now be used.

[1] Can be downloaded from e.g. the Apple App Store or Google Play.

---

# 12.5.1.10. Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI)

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, the driver can access enhanced traffic information [1] (RTTI [2]) about traffic congestion, closed roads and other circumstances that could affect travel time.

If the RTTI service is activated, information about traffic events and flow is continuously retrieved from an online service. When a vehicle requests traffic flow information, anonymous data about traffic flow in the vehicle's location is also provided, which helps enable the service to function. Anonymous data is only sent when RTTI is activated. If the service is not activated, no data will be provided.

The service may need to be reactivated e.g. following certain software updates, after a workshop visit or when creating a new driver profile.

Current traffic information is shown in the navigation system* for highways/freeways, major roads, secondary roads and in some cases urban routes.

The amount of traffic information shown on the map depends on the distance to the vehicle and is only shown within approximately 120 km (75 miles) from the vehicle's location.

Text and symbols on the map are displayed in the usual way and the traffic flow shows how fast the traffic is moving on a road in comparison with the road's speed limit. The traffic flow is shown on the map on each side of the road with a colored line in each direction.

- Green - no disturbances.
- Orange - slow-moving traffic.
- Red - congestion/traffic jam/accident.
- Black - road closed.

**Note**

Traffic information is not available in all areas/countries.

Coverage areas for traffic information is continuously extended.

[1] Certain markets only.

[2] Real Time Traffic Information

* Option/accessory.

# 12.5.1.11. Volvo On Call

Volvo On Call provides direct contact with the vehicle and extra comfort and assistance 24 hours a day.

The functions are available via the Volvo Cars app[1] and the ON CALL and SOS buttons in the vehicle's ceiling console:

It is possible to lock and unlock the vehicle directly from a phone or other connected device via the Volvo Cars app. In the event of an accident, emergency assistance (ambulance, police, etc.) can be summoned to the vehicle. In less critical situations, e.g. a flat tire, roadside assistance can be called out.

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button should only be used in case of accident, illness or if there is an external threat to the vehicle and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Misuse could incur extra charges.
>
> The Volvo Cars app and ON CALL button can be used for all other services, including roadside assistance.

## The Volvo On Call system

Volvo On Call is connected to the vehicle's safety and alarm systems and to other systems in the vehicle, such as lock and climate systems. The vehicle has an integrated modem for communication with the Volvo On Call customer service center and the Volvo Cars app. The Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) is used to locate the vehicle.

## Personal data processing

In order to provide you with all the functions of the Volvo On Call service, certain information, including personal data, must be processed. Read more about terms and conditions and privacy at volvocars.com/intl//legal [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/legal] .

## Contacting the customer service center

The vehicle's ON CALL button or the Volvo Cars app is used to contact the Volvo On Call customer service center.

> **Note**
>
> All calls to Volvo On Call customer service center may be recorded.

[1] Available functions vary from market to market.

---

# 12.5.2. Tips when using a Bluetooth connection

If you find that connection or functionality between your vehicle and your Bluetooth device are not working as expected, the following tips may be of help.

#### When connecting a mobile device to the vehicle via Bluetooth

If you are having difficulty connecting a mobile device to the vehicle via Bluetooth:

- Make sure the device's battery is sufficiently charged (at least 50% charge level is recommended)
- Make sure Bluetooth is enabled in both your device and in the vehicle
- Make sure you have established a Bluetooth connection and connected the vehicle to the device you want to use
- If possible, try connecting another device to the vehicle through Bluetooth to check if the problem is with the device or in the vehicle

If the problem persists:

1. Delete all previously added devices under the Bluetooth settings in the vehicle
2. Restart the device you want to connect
3. Try connecting the device again

#### Media playback via Bluetooth

If you are having difficulty playing media in the vehicle via a mobile device:

- Try restarting the app or the source you want to play media from
- If possible, try playing media from a different source than the mobile device to check if the problem is with the source or the device
- Move the device to a new location to see if playback works better there
- Close any apps open in the background
- Restart the device you want to play media from

If none of the above seem to help, check the Bluetooth connection between the mobile device and the vehicle. See section "When connecting a mobile device to the vehicle via Bluetooth".

#### Audio system volume

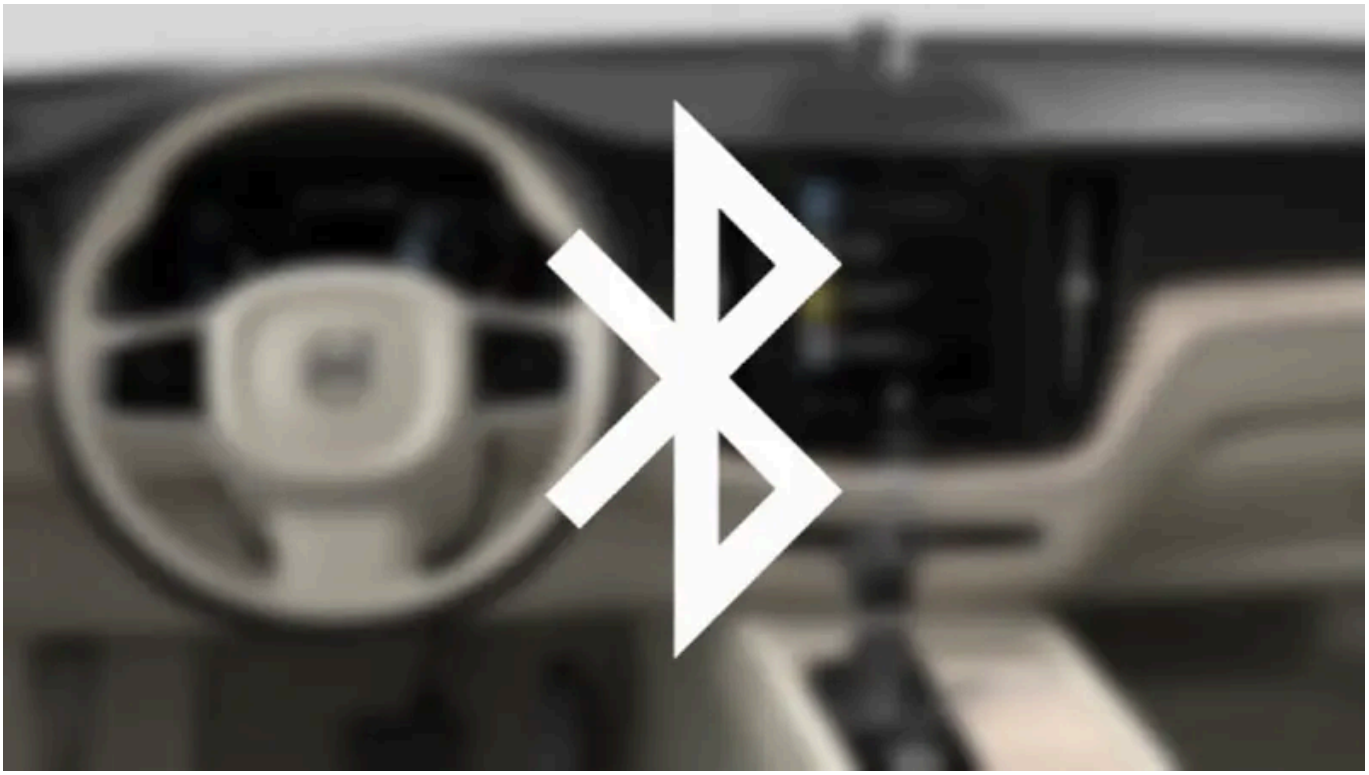
If you find that the sound level is lower than expected when you use the handsfree function via Bluetooth, check first to see if the sound settings on your mobile device need to be adjusted before raising the volume of the vehicle's audio system.

> **Note**
>
> For some phones, the phone's Bluetooth volume must be manually set to 100% for the audio volume in the vehicle to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be adjusted for each connected phone. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

---

## 12.5.3. Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone

Establish an Internet connection using Bluetooth and tethering from a phone and get access to multiple connected services in your vehicle.



1. To connect the vehicle to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone, the phone must first be paired with the vehicle via Bluetooth.
2. Make sure that the phone supports Internet sharing (tethering) and that the function is activated. In an iPhone, the function is called "personal hotspot". In Android phones, the function can have different names, but is often called "hotspot". For iPhone phones, the "personal hotspot" menu page must also be open until the Internet connection has been made.
3. If the phone has been connected via Bluetooth previously, tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.

4. Tap **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices**.

5. Mark the window for **Bluetooth Internet connection** under the heading **Internet connection**.

6. If a different connection is being used, confirm the connection change.

> Your vehicle is now connected to the Internet via your Bluetooth-connected phone.

> **Note**
>
> The cellular phone and network operator must support tethering (sharing of Internet connection) and the subscription must include data traffic.

> **Note**
>
> When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the vehicle to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the vehicle's modem.

---

# 12.5.4. Internet-connected vehicle*

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is possible to use web radio and music services via apps, download software and contact retailers from the vehicle.

The vehicle can be connected to the Internet using Bluetooth, Wi-Fi or the vehicle's integrated modem (SIM card).

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is possible to share the vehicle's Internet connection (Wi-Fi hotspot) so that other devices, e.g. tablets, can access the Internet[1].

The Internet status is shown by a symbol in the center display's status bar.

**Note**

Data (data traffic) is transfered when using the internet, which can incur additional costs.

Activating data roaming can cause additional charges.

Contact your network operator about data traffic costs.

**Note**

When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the vehicle to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the vehicle's modem.

**Note**

When using Android Auto, it is possible to connect the vehicle to the Internet using Wi-Fi, Bluetooth or the vehicle's modem.

Before the vehicle is connected to the Internet, search for support information about terms and conditions for services and the customer privacy policy at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

* Option/accessory.

[1] This is not possible when the vehicle is connected to another Wi-Fi hotspot.

---

# 12.5.5. Tips for handling Internet connection problems

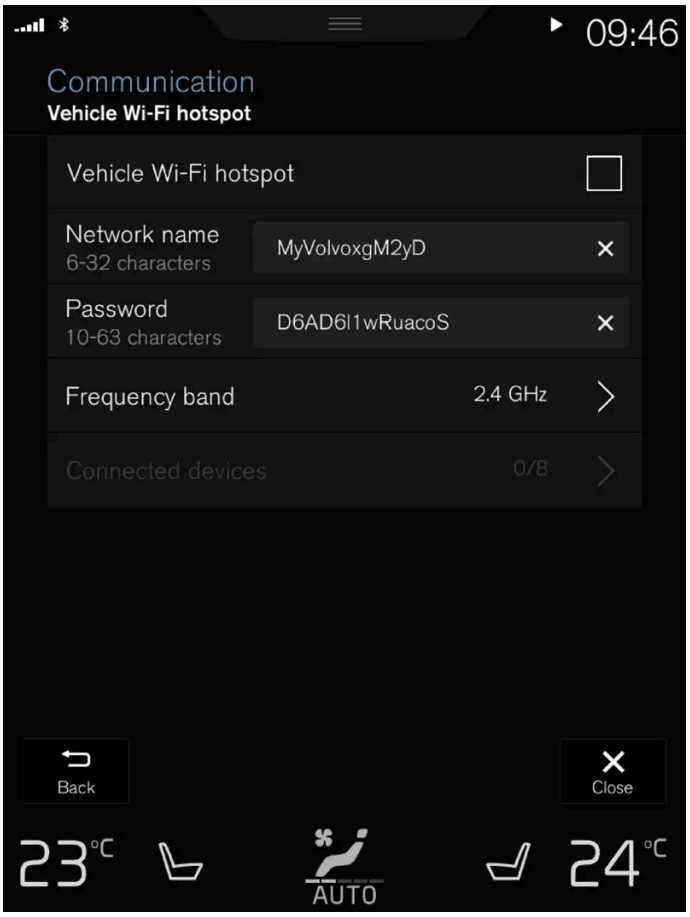
Here are some tips that may be useful if you are having difficulty connecting the vehicle to the Internet.

- If the clock has been reset, e.g. after the current to the battery has been cut in the event of visiting a service workshop, you must reset the clock before you can connect to the internet.
- Certain phones switch off Internet sharing after contact with the vehicle has been broken, for example if the phone that shares the Wi-Fi network is removed from the vehicle. To reconnect to the Internet, activate tethering (portable/personal hotspot) in the phone.
- Volvo On Call-connected vehicles can connect to the Internet using the vehicle modem (P-SIM). If the connection is broken, the vehicle will automatically attempt to reconnect to the Internet.

---

# 12.5.6. Sharing Internet from the vehicle via Wi-Fi hotspot (tethering)

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, other devices may share the vehicle's Internet connection[1].




The network service provider (SIM card) must support Internet sharing (tethering).

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Communication** → **Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
3. Tap **Network name** to assign a name to the hotspot.
4. Tap **Password** and create a password. This password can then be used to connect other devices to this hotspot.
5. Tap **Frequency band** and select a frequency for the hotspot to use to transmit data. Please note that selecting a frequency is not possible on all markets.
6. Activate/deactivate by tapping to check/uncheck the **Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot** box.
7. If Wi-Fi is being used to connect to the Internet, confirm the change of connections.

> It is now possible for external devices to connect to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Note**

Activation of Wi-Fi hotspot can cause additional charges from your network operator.

Contact your network operator about data traffic costs.

The connection status is shown by a symbol in the center display's status bar.

Tap **Connected devices** to see a list of currently connected devices.

[1] This does not apply when the vehicle is connected to the Internet via Wi-Fi.

---

# 12.5.7. Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi)

Establish an Internet connection using Wi-Fi through Internet sharing (tethering) from a phone and get access to the connected services in your vehicle.

1. Make sure that the phone supports Internet sharing (tethering) and that the function is activated. In an iPhone, the function is called "personal hotspot". In Android phones, the function can have different names, but is often called "hotspot". For iPhone phones, the "personal hotspot" menu page must also be open until the Internet connection has been made.
2. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.

3. Proceed to **Communication** → **Wi-Fi**.

4. Activate/deactivate by tapping to check/uncheck the Wi-Fi box.

5. If a different connection is being used, confirm the connection change.

6. Tap the name of the network you would like to connect.

7. Enter the network password.

> The vehicle will connect to the network.

Please note that certain cellular phones will disable Internet sharing (tethering) when the connection to the vehicle has been broken, e.g. when the phone has been removed from the vehicle. The phone's tethering function will then need to be reactivated the next time the phone's hotspot is used to connect to the Internet.

When a phone is connected to the vehicle, it will be saved for future use. To display a list of saved networks or to manually delete saved networks, tap **Settings** → **Communication** → **Wi-Fi** → **Saved networks**.

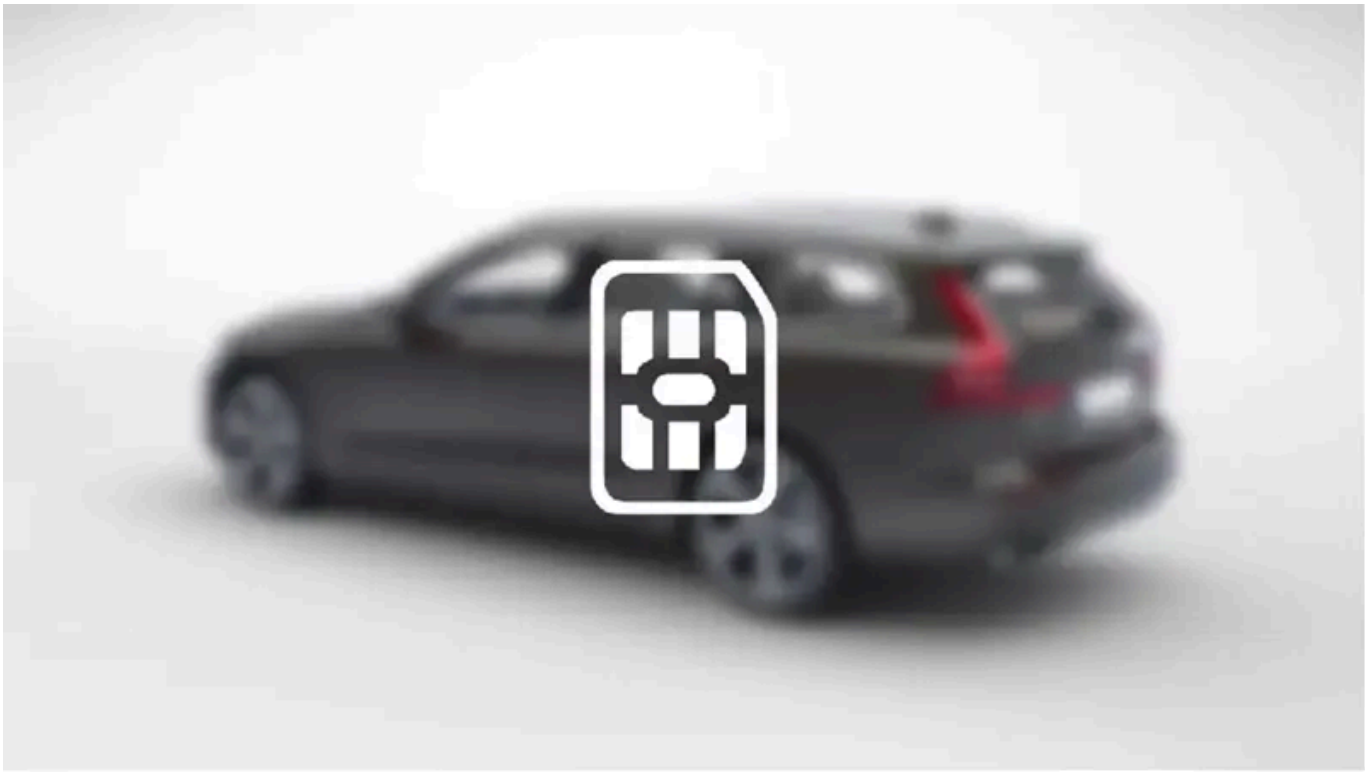
> **Note**
>
> The cellular phone and network operator must support tethering (sharing of Internet connection) and the subscription must include data traffic.

Technical and security requirements for Wi-Fi connection are described in a separate section.

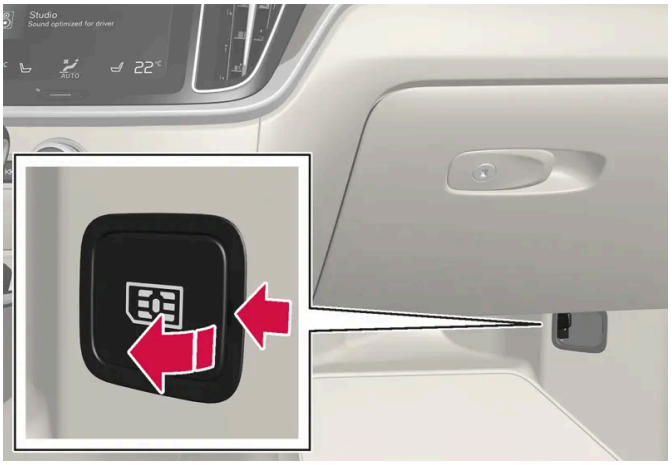
---

# 12.5.8. Connecting the vehicle to the Internet via vehicle modem (SIM card)

It is possible to establish an Internet connection via the vehicle modem and a personal SIM card (P-SIM).



Vehicles equipped with Volvo On Call will use the vehicle modem Internet connection for the services.

1. 


   Insert a personal SIM card in the holder in the passenger-side footwell.

   Note that the vehicle's card reader requires **mini SIM** cards.

2. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
3. Tap **Communication** → **Vehicle Modem Internet**.
4. Activate/deactivate by tapping to check/uncheck the **Vehicle modem Internet** box.
5. If a different connection is being used, confirm the connection change.
6. Enter the SIM card's PIN code.

> The vehicle will connect to the network.

**Note**

Please note that the SIM card used for Internet connection via P-SIM cannot have the same telephone number as the SIM card used in the cellular phone. If the same card is used for both, phone calls will not be connected properly to the cellular phone. Use a SIM card with a separate phone number for the Internet connection or a data card that does not handle phone calls and can therefore not interfere with phone function.

---

# 12.5.9. Vehicle modem settings

Your vehicle is equipped with a modem that can be used to connect the vehicle to the Internet. It is also possible to share this Internet connection over Wi-Fi.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Communication** → **Vehicle Modem Internet** and select settings:

- **Vehicle modem Internet** - select this to use the vehicle's modem to connect to the Internet.
- **Data usage.** - tap **Reset** to reset the counter for the amount of data received and sent.
- **Network**

**Select carrier** - select a service provider manually or automatically.

**Data roaming** - if the box is checked, the vehicle modem will attempt to connect to the Internet when the vehicle is outside its home network (e.g. if you are in another country). Please note that this could entail additional charges. Consult with your service provider for data roaming terms under your contract.

- **SIM card PIN**

**Change PIN** - a maximum of 4 digits can be entered.

**Disable PIN** - select whether a PIN code will be required to access the SIM card.

- **Send request code** - used to e.g. download or check the balance remaining on a prepaid phone card. This function is specific to your service provider.

**Note**

Please note that the SIM card used for Internet connection via P-SIM cannot have the same telephone number as the SIM card used in the cellular phone. If the same card is used for both, phone calls will not be connected properly to the cellular phone. Use a SIM card with a separate phone number for the Internet connection or a data card that does not handle phone calls and can therefore not interfere with phone function.

---

# 12.5.10. No or poor Internet connection

Factors affecting the Internet connection.

The amount of data transmitted depends on the services or apps currently in use in the vehicle. Streaming music, for example, involves the transmission of a large amount of data, and this requires a good connection and a strong signal.

## Phone to vehicle

Internet connection speed may vary depending on the location of the cellular phone in the vehicle. Move the phone closer to the center display to increase signal strength. Make sure that nothing is between the phone and center display that could be blocking the signal.

## Phone to network operator

The speed of the mobile network varies depending on the coverage in the vehicle's current location. Coverage may be poorer in e.g. tunnels, mountainous areas, deep valleys or indoors. Connection speed is also dependent on the subscription you have with your service provider.

**Note**

If you experience any problems with data traffic, contact your network service provider.

## Restarting the phone

If you experience any Internet connection problems, it may help to restart your phone.

---

# 12.5.11. Deleting Wi-Fi networks

Networks that are not needed can be deleted.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Proceed to **Communication** → **Wi-Fi** → **Saved networks**.

3. Tap **Forget** to delete the network.

4. Confirm the selection.

> The vehicle will no longer connect to the deleted network.

### Deleting all networks

All networks can be deleted at once by performing a factory reset. Please note that all user data and system settings will be restored to original default factory settings.

---

# 12.5.12. Wi-Fi technology and security

Networks must meet certain criteria in order for the vehicle to connect.

It is possible to connect to the following types of networks:

- Frequency – 2.4 or 5 GHz[1].
- Standards – 802.11 a/b/g/n.
- Security type – WPA2-AES-CCMP.

The vehicle's Wi-Fi system is designed to handle Wi-Fi devices inside the vehicle.

Performance may be impaired if multiple devices are using a frequency at the same time.

[1] Selecting a frequency is not possible on all markets.

---

# 12.6. Audio, media and Internet

The audio and media system consists of a media player and a radio. A cellular phone can also be connected through Bluetooth to use hands-free functions or play music in the vehicle. When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is also possible to use apps to play media.

Audio and media overview

The functions can be controlled using voice commands, the steering wheel keypad or the center display. The number of speakers and amplifiers varies depending on the audio system installed in the vehicle.

**System updates**

The audio and media system is continuously improved. It is recommended to download system updates as soon as they are available.

---

# 12.7. License agreement for audio and media

A license is an agreement on the right to conduct a certain activity or the right to use someone else's right according to terms and conditions specified in the agreement. The following texts are Volvo's agreements with manufacturers/developers.

## Bowers & Wilkins

Bowers & Wilkins and B&W are trademarks of the B&W Group Ltd. Nautilus is a trademark of B&W Group Ltd. Continuum is a trademark of Bowers & Wilkins. Trademarks of Bowers & Wilkins are applicable in selected markets.

## Dirac Unison®

Dirac Unison co-optimizes the loudspeakers in frequency, time and space for the best possible bass integration and clarity. It enables a faithful reproduction of the acoustic characteristics of specific performance venues. Using advanced algorithms, Dirac Unison controls all loudspeakers digitally based on acoustic high-precision measurements. Like a conductor of an orchestra, it guarantees that the loudspeakers perform in perfect unison.

## DivX®

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of DivX, LLC and are used under license.

This DivX Certified® device can play DivX® Home Theater video files up to 576p (including .avi, .divx). Download free software at www.divx.com to create, play and stream digital video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) movies. To obtain your registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in your device setup menu. Go to vod.divx.com for more information on completing the registration process.

#### Patent number

Covered by one or more of the following patents in the US: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 8,656,183; 8,731,369; RE45,052.

## Gracenote®

Portions of the content are copyright © of Gracenote or its providers.

Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote" and Gracenote MusicID are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

#### Gracenote® End User License Agreement

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. in Emeryville, California, United States (“Gracenote”). The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online servers or em-

bedded databases (collectively “Gracenote Servers”) and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in all Gracenote data, all Gracenote software and all Gracenote servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote software and each item of Gracenote data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote data from in the Gracenote servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

## Sensus software

This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California.All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved

## Linux software

This product contains software licensed under GNU General Public License (GPL) or GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

You have the right of acquisition, modification, and distribution of the source code of the GPL/LGPL software.

You may download Source Code from the following website at no charge: http://www.embedded-carmultimedia.jp/linux/oss/download/TVM_8351_013

The website provides the Source Code "As Is" and without warranty of any kind.

By downloading Source Code, you expressly assume all risk and liability associated with downloading and using the Source Code and complying with the user agreements that accompany each Source Code.

Please note that we cannot respond to any inquiries regarding the source code.

## camellia:1.2.0

Copyright (c) 2006, 2007

NTT (Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer as the first lines of this file unmodified.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NTT ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NTT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Unicode: 5.1.0

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

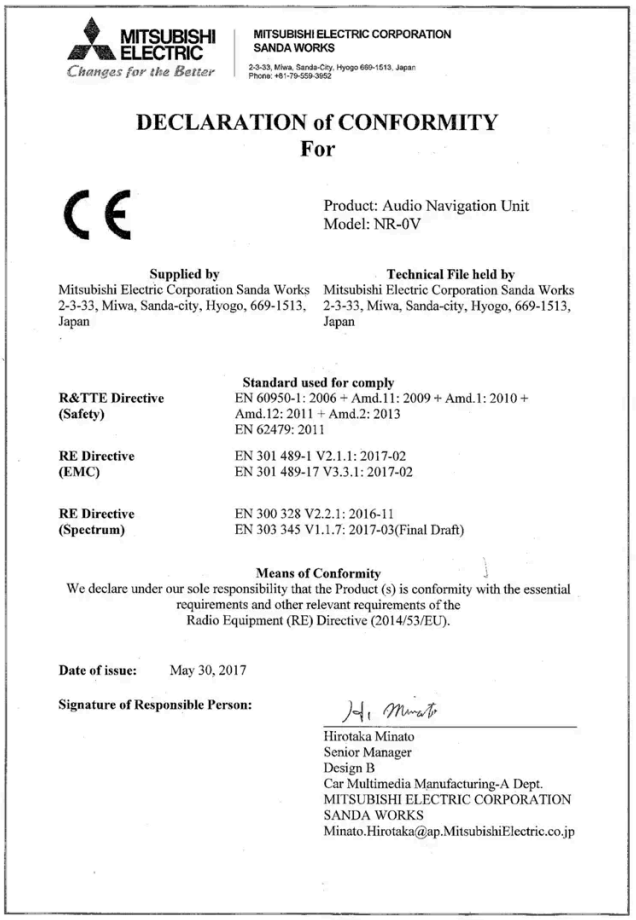
Copyright c 1991-2013 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified.

THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

## Declaration of Conformity



MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC
Changes for the Better

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-City, Hyogo 669-1513, Japan
Phone: +81-79-559-3952

**DECLARATION of CONFORMITY**
**For**

CE

Product: Audio Navigation Unit
Model: NR-0V

| **Supplied by** | **Technical File held by** |
|---|---|
| Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works<br>2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513,<br>Japan | Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works<br>2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513,<br>Japan |

| | **Standard used for comply** |
|---|---|
| **R&TTE Directive (Safety)** | EN 60950-1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2009 + Amd.1: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011 + Amd.2: 2013<br>EN 62479: 2011 |
| **RE Directive (EMC)** | EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1: 2017-02<br>EN 301 489-17 V3.3.1: 2017-02 |
| **RE Directive (Spectrum)** | EN 300 328 V2.2.1: 2016-11<br>EN 303 345 V1.1.7: 2017-03(Final Draft) |

**Means of Conformity**
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU).

**Date of issue:** May 30, 2017

**Signature of Responsible Person:**

Hirotaka Minato
Senior Manager
Design B
Car Multimedia Manufacturing-A Dept.
MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
Minato.Hirotaka@ap.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp

USA

FCC CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

| Country/Area | |
|---|---|
| Brazil: | <br>Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário isto e, náo tem direito a protecão contra interferéncia prejudicial, mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferéncia a sistemas operando em caráter primário.<br>Para consultas, visite: www.anatel.gov.br |
| United Arab Emirates: |  |
| Kazakhstan: | <br>Model name: NR-0V<br>Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation<br>Export country: Japan |
| China: | 1.<br>■□用频率：2.4 - 2.4835 GHz<br>■等效全向辐射功率(EIRP)： 天线增益＜10dBi 时：≤100 mW 或≤20 dBm ①<br>■最大功率谱密度： 天线增益＜10dBi 时：≤20 dBm / MHz(EIRP) ①<br>■载频容限：20 ppm<br>■带外发射功率(在 2.4-2.4835GHz 频段以外) ≤-80 dBm / Hz (EIRP)<br>■杂散发射(辐射)功率(对应载波±2.5 倍信道带宽以外)：<br>• ≤-36 dBm / 100 kHz (30 - 1000 MHz)<br>• ≤-33 dBm / 100 kHz (2.4 - 2.4835 GHz)<br>• ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (3.4 - 3.53 GHz)<br>• ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (5.725 - 5.85 GHz)<br>• ≤-30 dBm / 1 MHz (其它1 - 12.75 GHz)<br>2.不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率(包括额外加装射频功率放大器)，不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线；<br>3.□用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止□用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续□用；<br>4.□用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰；<br>5.不得在飞机和机场附近□用。 |

| Country/Area | |
|---|---|
| Korea: | B급 기기 (가정용 방송통신기자재)<br>이 기기는 가정용(B급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로<br>가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든<br>지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.<br>해당 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다 . |
| Malaysia: | <br>This device has been certified under the Communications & Multimedia Act of 1998, Communications and Multimedia (Technical Standards) Regulations 2000. To retrieve your device's serial number, please visit (volvocars.com/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support]) and search for “SIRIM Label Verification”.<br>Device category: Navigation equipment for vehicle (Bluetooth)<br>Model: NR-0V<br>Type Approval No.:<br>RBAY/18A/1015S(15-4067) |
| Mexico: |  |
| EU: | <br>Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city. Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan<br>Mitsubishi Electric Corporation hereby declares that this type of radio equipment [Audio Navigation Unit] conforms with directive 2014/53/EU.<br>For further details, search for support information on www.volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] . |
| Taiwan: | 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法<br>第十二條<br>經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或□用者均不得擅自<br>變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。<br>第十四條<br>低功率射頻電機之□用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應<br>立停用，改善至無干擾時方得繼續□用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線<br>電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備<br>之干擾。 |

## MPEG4-AVC (H.264):

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM

## VC-1:

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND

NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM

### MPEG-4 VISUAL:

USE OF THE PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

---

## 12.8. Hard disk storage space

It is possible to view how much space is remaining on the vehicle's hard disk.

Storage information for the vehicle's hard disk can be shown, including total capacity, available capacity and how much space is used for installed apps. The information is found under **Settings** → **System** → **System Information** → **Storage**.

---

## 12.9. Sound settings

Sound reproduction quality is preset but can also be adjusted.

The system's volume is normally adjusted using the volume control below the center display or the right-side steering wheel keypad. This applies, for example, when playing music or the radio or during phone calls and active traffic messages.

> **Note**
>
> For some phones, the phone's Bluetooth volume must be manually set to 100% for the audio volume in the vehicle to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be adjusted for each connected phone. The setting is adjusted separately for phone calls and media streaming. The system will then remember the setting and it will not need to be repeated the next time the phone is connected.

### Sound reproduction

The audio system is precalibrated using digital signal processing. This calibration takes into account speakers, amplifiers, passenger compartment acoustics, listener position, etc. for each combination of vehicle model and audio system. There is also a dynamic calibration that takes into account the volume control setting and the vehicle's speed.

### Personal settings

Different settings are available in Top view under **Settings** → **Sound** depending on the vehicle's sound system.

### Premium Sound* (Bowers & Wilkins)

- **Tone** - setting for e.g. bass, treble, equalizer, etc.

- **Balance** - balance between right/left and front/rear speakers.
- **System Volumes** – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. **Voice Control**, **Park Assist** and **Phone Ringtone**.

### High Performance Pro* (Harman Kardon)

- **Equalizer** - setting of equalizer.
- **Balance** - balance between right/left and front/rear speakers.
- **System Volumes** – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. **Voice Control**, **Park Assist** and **Phone Ringtone**.

### High Performance

- **Tone** - setting for e.g. bass, treble, equalizer, etc.
- **Balance** - balance between right/left and front/rear speakers.
- **System Volumes** – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. **Voice Control**, **Park Assist** and **Phone Ringtone**.

* Option/accessory.

---

## 12.10. Sound experience*

Sound experience is an app that provides access to additional sound settings.

Open **Sound Experience** from the center display's App view. Depending on the sound system installed in the vehicle, the following settings are possible:

### Premium Sound* (Bowers & Wilkins)

- **Studio** – sound settings can be adjusted to be primarily adapted for **Driver**, **All** and **Rear**.
- **Individual stage** - surround sound mode with settings for intensity and enclosure.
- **Concert hall** - reproduces the acoustics of Gothenburg's Concert Hall.

- **Jazz club** – reproduces the acoustics of the Nefertiti Jazz Club.

Reproduces the acoustics of the Nefertiti Jazz Club.

### High Performance Pro* (Harman Kardon)

- **Seat Optimization** – sound settings can be adjusted to be primarily adapted for **Driver**, **All** and **Rear**.
- **Surround** - surround sound mode with level settings.
- **Tone** - setting for e.g. bass, treble, equalizer, etc.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.11. Customer Privacy Policy

Volvo respects and safeguards the personal privacy of everyone who visits our websites.

This policy refers to the handling of customer data and personal information. The purpose is to give current, past and potential customers a general understanding of:

- The circumstances in which we collect and process your personal data.
- The types of personal data we collect.
- Why we collect your personal data.
- How we process your personal data.

For more information on the policy, search for support information on volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

---

# 12.12. Sensus - connection and entertainment

Sensus makes it possible to use apps and turn your vehicle into a Wi-Fi hotspot.

# This is Sensus

Sensus provides an intelligent interface and Internet connection to the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure offers access to relevant assistance, information and entertainment when it is needed, without distracting the driver.

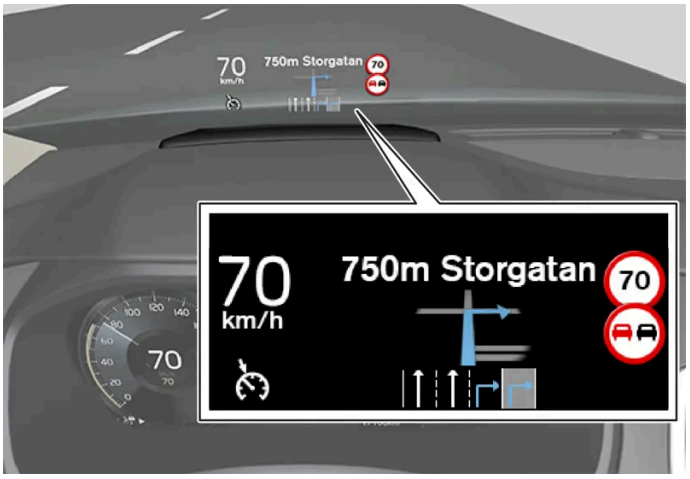
Sensus includes all of the solutions in the vehicle related to entertainment, Internet connection and navigation*, and serves as the user interface between the driver and the vehicle. Sensus is what makes communication between you, the vehicle and the world around you possible.

## Information when it's needed, where it's needed

The vehicle's displays present the right information at the right time. Information is presented in different displays depending on how it should be prioritized by the driver.

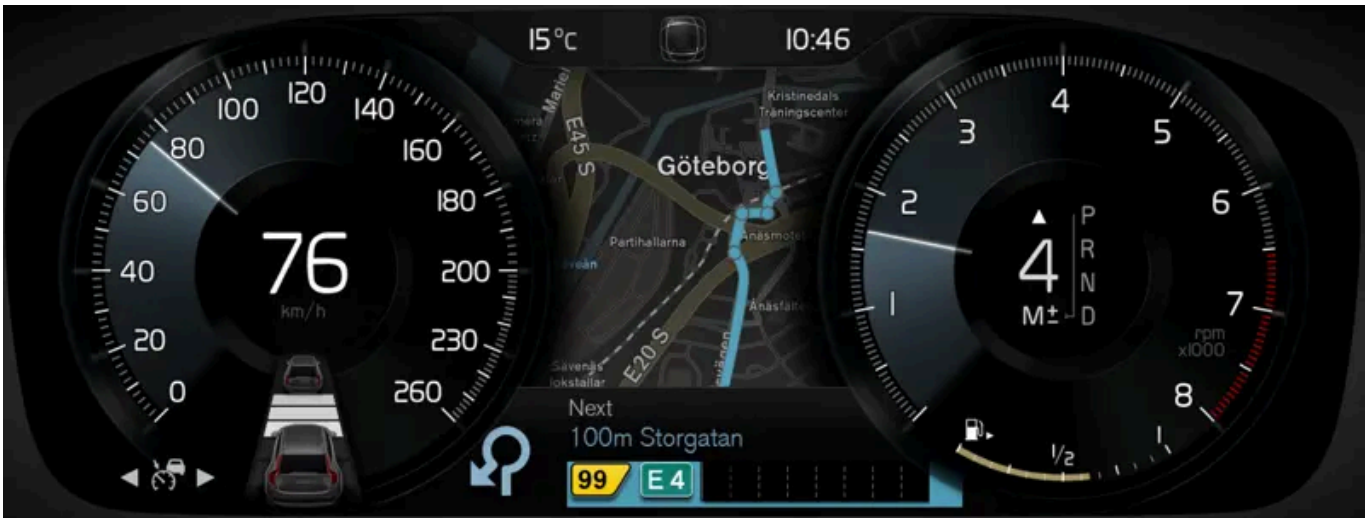
Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritized.

**Head-up display***

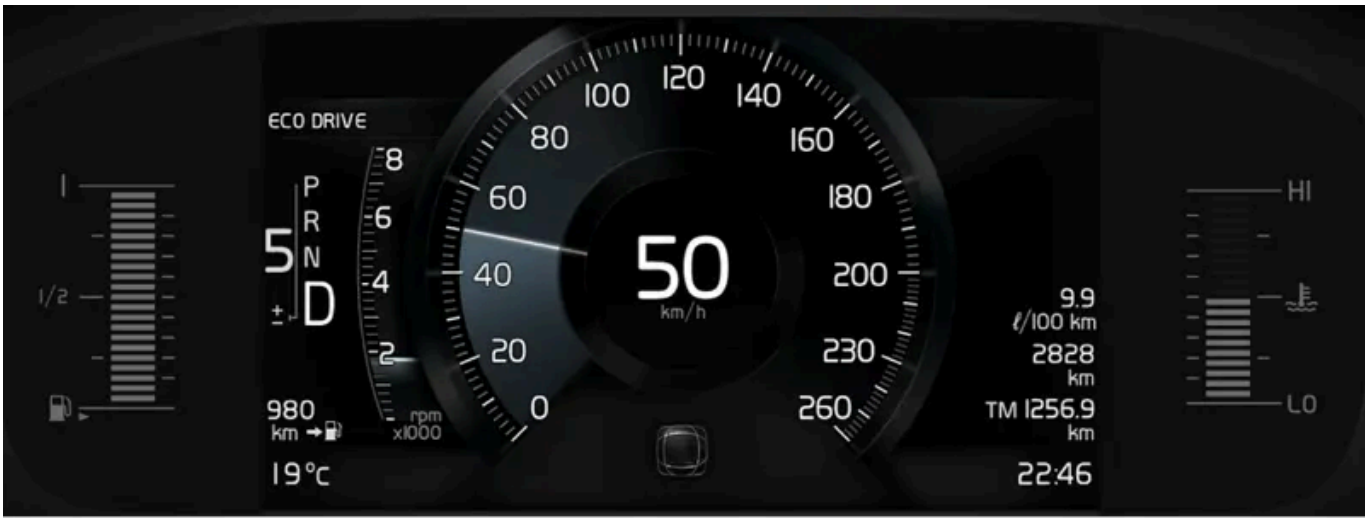



The head-up display presents information that the driver should react to immediately. For example, traffic warnings, speed information and navigation messages*. Road sign information and incoming phone calls are also shown in the head-up display. These can be handled using the right-side steering wheel keypad or the center display.

**Instrument panel**




12"* instrument panel.




8-inch instrument panel.

The instrument panel displays information such as speed, incoming phone calls or the track currently playing. It is controlled using the steering wheel keypads.

**Center display**

Many of the vehicle's main functions are controlled from the center display, a touchscreen that reacts to taps and other gestures. This minimizes the number of physical buttons and controls needed in the vehicle. The screen can also be operated while wearing gloves.

The center display is used to control e.g. the climate and entertainment systems and to adjust the power seats*. The information presented in the center display can be handled by the driver or by someone else in the vehicle.

**Voice control system**

The voice control system enables the driver to control certain vehicle functions without taking their hands off the wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice commands to e.g. play a song, make a phone call, increase the temperature in the passenger compartment or have a text message read aloud.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 12.13. Terms and Conditions for Services

Volvo offers services that help enhance the vehicle's safety and comfort.

These services comprise everything from assistance in emergencies to navigation and various maintenance services.

Before using the services, it is important to read support information about terms and conditions for the services at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

---

# 13. Volvo On Call

# 13.1. Volvo On Call services

# 13.1.1. Assistance with Volvo On Call

Volvo On Call can provide extra security and assistance in the event of a flat tire, breakdown, accident, etc.

Volvo On Call not only offers extra comfort and control via the Volvo Cars app, but also a number of assistance services via the SOS and ON CALL buttons in the ceiling, such as emergency assistance in the event of an accident, theft notification, help during a trip and remote door unlock.

# 13.1.2. Emergency assistance with Volvo On Call

In the event of an emergency, press the SOS button to contact the Volvo On Call customer service center or an emergency service center.

## Volvo On Call Customer service center

To summon assistance in the event of an illness or an external threat to the vehicle or passengers, the Volvo On Call customer service center can be alerted manually by pressing and holding the SOS button for at least 2 seconds. The vehicle will contact the Volvo On Call customer service center and a message will be sent containing information such as the vehicle's location.

1. The Volvo On Call customer service center will then attempt to establish voice contact with the driver to determine the extent of the emergency and the need for assistance.
2. The Volvo On Call customer service center will then contact the appropriate emergency service (police, ambulance, tow truck, etc.).

If voice contact cannot be established, the Volvo On Call customer service center will contact emergency services for appropriate action.

## Emergency number

When the collision alarm has been activated, the system will attempt to establish contact with the country's Volvo On Call customer service center. If this is not possible, the call will go directly to the emergency phone number for the country/region in which the vehicle is currently located.

The ON CALL and SOS buttons can be deactivated when the vehicle's ignition is in mode I, II or if the engine is running:

1. Tap **Settings**.
2. Tap **Communication** → **Volvo On Call**.
3. Select **SOS/On Call button lock** to deactivate.

---

# 13.1.3. Automatic Crash Notification with Volvo On Call

In the event of a collision, the vehicle can automatically notify the Volvo On Call customer service center, or an emergency service center, which can then summon emergency assistance.

## Volvo On Call Customer service center

If any of the vehicle's safety systems are triggered, for example in an accident in which the activation level is reached for seat belt tensioners or airbags, the vehicle will automatically contact the Volvo On Call customer service center and a message will be sent containing the vehicle's location and other information.

1. The Volvo On Call customer service center will then attempt to establish voice contact with the driver to determine the extent of the accident and the need for assistance.
2. The Volvo On Call customer service center will then contact the appropriate emergency service (police, ambulance, tow truck, etc.).

If voice contact cannot be established, the Volvo On Call customer service center will contact emergency services for appropriate action.

## Emergency number

When the collision alarm has been activated, the system will attempt to establish contact with the country's Volvo On Call customer service center. If this is not possible, the call will go directly to the emergency phone number for the country/region in which the vehicle is currently located.

---

# 13.1.4. Remote Vehicle Immobilizer (RVI) with Volvo On Call

If the vehicle is stolen, an immobilizer can be activated remotely. [1]

If the vehicle has been stolen, the owner can contact the Volvo On Call customer service center via the Volvo Cars app or the authorities.

> **Note**
>
> This applies even if the vehicle has been opened and stolen using the associated remote key.

After consulting with the authorities, the Volvo On Call customer service center can deactivate the keys to prevent the vehicle from being started. A deactivated vehicle can only be restarted through contact with the Volvo On Call customer service center and verification of PIN code. The Volvo On Call customer service center will then reactivate the remote keys.

[1] Only where law permits and in cooperation with proper authorities.

---

# 13.1.5. Remote Door Unlock (RDU) with Volvo On Call

If the vehicle's key has been lost or locked in the vehicle, the doors can be unlocked remotely within 5 days with assistance from the Volvo On Call customer service center.

1. Contact the Volvo On Call customer service center via the Volvo Cars app.
2. After confirming that the caller requesting the remote unlock is the vehicle owner or another authorized person by verifying the PIN code, the Volvo On Call customer service center will send a signal to unlock the vehicle.
3. Press lightly on the rubberized button on the underside of the tailgate handle to unlock the vehicle.

> All doors can now be opened normally.

> **Note**
>
> If the rubberized button on the tailgate is not pressed within the time set by the Volvo On Call customer service center, the vehicle will be relocked.

> **Note**
>
> If the vehicle is in a parking garage or similar enclosed area, the remote unlock function may be limited due to poor signal reception.

---

# 13.1.6. Stolen Vehicle Tracking (SVT) with Volvo On Call

If you suspect the vehicle has been stolen, you can contact the Volvo On Call customer service center using the Volvo Cars app for assistance locating the vehicle.

If the vehicle has been stolen or otherwise used without permission, the vehicle's owner, police and Volvo On Call service center can agree to track the vehicle.

**Note**

This applies even if the vehicle has been opened and stolen using the associated remote key.

The following needs to be done:

1. Contact Volvo On Call service center and say that you need help tracking the vehicle. Tracking begins.
2. File a police report.
3. Contact the Volvo On Call service center again and give them the police case number.
4. Volvo On Call service center notifies the police of the vehicle's location.

**Note**

For the vehicle to be tracked, a police report must be made. Volvo On Call only gives information to the police.

---

# 13.1.7. Theft notification (TN) with Volvo On Call

When the vehicle's alarm is armed, the vehicle owner will receive a message to the phone number registered with the retailer and then a push notice in the Volvo Cars app.

If you are not sure where your vehicle is, you can contact the Volvo On Call customer service center via the Volvo Cars app. If it turns out that the vehicle is being used by an unauthorized person, tracking can be started. The police will then be notified.

If the alarm is turned off using the key, the service will be interrupted.

---

# 13.1.8. Help during a trip with Volvo On Call

If you e.g. get a flat tire, run out of gas or have a dead battery, you can summon assistance using the ON CALL button or the Volvo Cars app.

Hold the ON CALL button in the ceiling depressed for at least 2 seconds to establish voice contact with the Volvo On Call customer service center. They will consult with you to determine what type of assistance is needed.

You can also call the Volvo On Call customer service center, but the vehicle must be connected to the Internet for the operator to be able to determine its status and location.

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button should only be used in case of accident, illness or if there is an external threat to the vehicle and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Misuse could incur extra charges.
>
> The Volvo Cars app and ON CALL button can be used for all other services, including roadside assistance.

The ON CALL and SOS buttons can be deactivated when the vehicle's ignition is in mode I, II or if the engine is running:

1. Tap **Settings**.
2. Tap **Communication → Volvo On Call**.
3. Select **SOS/On Call button lock** to deactivate.

---

# 13.1.9. Customer service via Volvo On Call

The ON CALL button can be used to contact the Volvo On Call customer service center for questions concerning vehicle usage. Operators are available for assistance 24 hours a day.

You can also reach the Volvo On Call customer service center via the 🗩 tab in the Volvo Cars app.

---

# 13.2. Practical information about Volvo On Call

---

# 13.2.1. Getting started with Volvo On Call

Some preparations are needed before using Volvo On Call.

## Activating Volvo On Call

When the vehicle is picked up, the retailer will activate the Volvo On Call system and the owner will receive an automatically generated PIN code for Volvo On Call. The PIN code is used for security reasons to identify the owner (or another authorized person such as a family member) and works as a vehicle key.

## Volvo On Call subscription

For the functions to work, the vehicle must have an active Volvo On Call subscription.

The subscription is initiated when the vehicle is purchased and the system is activated. The subscription is valid for a limited time, but can be extended (the period of validity varies from market to market). The subscription can be extended in the Volvo Cars app. Make sure that you have the vehicle identification number (VIN) available.

> **Note**
>
> Automatic Crash Notification and the SOS button function even without a subscription.

### Volvo ID and connecting the Volvo Cars app to the vehicle

A Volvo ID is required to use the Volvo Cars app. Once you have created a Volvo ID, the app needs to be paired with the vehicle. Read more about this at volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] .

> **Note**
>
> To use the services in the Volvo Cars app, the vehicle must have a valid Volvo On Call subscription and the app must be paired with the vehicle.

### Buying a pre-owned vehicle with Volvo On Call

If you have purchased a pre-owned vehicle with Volvo On Call, it is important to delete the data from the previous owner and add you own details for the service to work. Visit a Volvo retailer for assistance.

---

## 13.2.2. Volvo On Call PIN code

The PIN code is used for security reasons to verify that a person is authorized to use Volvo On Call services in a particular vehicle.

The four-digit PIN code is automatically generated by the Volvo On Call customer service center or an authorized Volvo retailer and sent to the vehicle owner. The PIN code shows that the user is authorized.

### Using the PIN code

For security reasons, a Volvo On Call PIN code is required for the following services:

- Linking the Volvo Cars app with the vehicle.
- Remote Door Unlock via the Volvo On Call customer service center.
- Setting up new app users for your vehicle.
- Canceling your Volvo On Call subscription via the app, e.g. if the vehicle changes owners.

### If you have forgotten or want to change your PIN code

If you have forgotten or need to change the PIN code (for example, after purchasing a previously owned vehicle with Volvo On Call), contact

- a retailer or
- Volvo On Call customer service center via the ON CALL button or the Volvo Cars app.

The new code is sent to the car owner.

### If an incorrect PIN code has been entered in the Volvo Cars app multiple times

If an incorrect PIN code has been entered incorrectly 10 times in a row, the account will be locked. To use the app again, a new PIN code must be selected and a new app account created following the same process used to create the previous app account.

---

## 13.2.3. Backup battery for Volvo On Call

If the main battery has no electrical current, the Volvo On Call backup battery will take over so that the system can still be used.

The backup battery has a limited lifespan. When the battery requires servicing or replacement, a message (**Volvo On Call Service required**) is shown in the instrument panel.

If the message persists, contact an authorized Volvo workshop.

---

## 13.2.4. Volvo On Call abroad

Volvo On Call services may vary when driving in other countries.

When you push the SOS button, you will always be connected to the Volvo On Call customer service center for the market in which the vehicle is currently located. If there is no Volvo On Call customer service center, an emergency service center will be contacted.

When you press the ON CALL button, you will always be connected to your home country's Volvo On Call customer service center.

For more information, please contact a Volvo retailer.

---

## 13.2.5. Volvo On Call availability

To save the battery, the Volvo On Call system is programmed to shut down when the vehicle is not used for long periods of time.

Volvo On Call is fully available for 5 days. On days 6-21, services such as remote-operated immobilizer and stolen vehicle tracking should be initiated via the Volvo On Call service center. [1] After 22 days, the system is disabled to save the battery. It resumes full availability once the vehicle has been started.

**Warning**

The system's service only work in areas in which Volvo On Call's partners have cellular coverage and in markets where Volvo On Call is available.

Just as with cellular phones, atmospheric disturbances or areas with fewer transmitters, e.g. sparsely populated rural areas, can make connection impossible.

[1] The availability of the function may vary.

---

# 13.2.6. Change of ownership with Volvo On Call

When the vehicle changes owners, there are several steps that need to be carried out to disconnect the previous owner and give the new owner access to Volvo On Call.

## Selling a vehicle with Volvo On Call

The following steps should be carried out by the previous owner:

1. Removing the link between the vehicle and the Volvo Cars app
2. Reset the settings in the center display – select to perform a factory reset.

## Purchasing a vehicle with Volvo On Call

The following steps need to be carried out by the new owner:

1. Contact a Volvo retailer for assistance transferring the time remaining on the previous owner's Volvo On Call subscription. If the subscription has expired, an extension must be purchased. The Volvo retailer will auto-generate a PIN code that will be sent via email or text message. Save the PIN code in a safe place.
2. Pair the Volvo Cars app with the vehicle.

## Change of ownership to another country

When a vehicle is purchased and imported to another country, it is important that the owner visits a retailer in the country in which the vehicle was purchased. The retailer will then delete all customer data in their systems. The owner should then contact a retailer in the country in which the vehicle is imported for assistance starting the Volvo On Call service.

# 13.3. Volvo On Call app

# 13.3.1. Volvo Cars app

The Volvo Cars app allows you to control certain functions and interact with the vehicle via your phone.[1]

The Volvo Cars app is available for iPhone and Android phones. You can download it for free from your phone's app store. The app is updated regularly, so make sure you have the latest version installed on your phone.

Here are some of the things you can do in the app:[2]

- Check fuel and battery level[3], lock status and other vehicle statuses
- Lock and unlock doors
- Start and stop parking climate system
- Contact Volvo for more information
- View your account information

Current information about the Volvo Cars app is available at volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] .

## Internet connection required

When using the Volvo Cars app, your mobile device will send and receive data via the internet. If you do not have a data plan, then your cell phone carrier may charge you for that data. If you use your app abroad you may incur data roaming charges. For further information, contact your cell phone operator.

[1] Some functions require that both the vehicle and the mobile device have cellular coverage or another Internet connection.

[2] Available functions vary by market and may change over time.

[3] Applies to Twin Engine and Recharge models.

# 13.4. Data sharing for Volvo On Call

Data sharing for the Volvo On Call service is enabled by default. This means that you do not need to enable data sharing for the service when you buy a new vehicle or e.g. after a factory reset.

You can choose to disable data sharing for Volvo On Call. Note that most Volvo On Call functions need to be able to share data in order for you to use them. If you have paired the Volvo Cars app with your vehicle, a notification will be displayed in the app if the data sharing function is disabled for Volvo On Call.

The data sharing settings are only enabled by default for your Volvo On Call services. Data sharing will remain disabled for your other connected services and downloaded apps and will need to be enabled in order to be used.

---

# 13.5. Volvo On Call

Volvo On Call provides direct contact with the vehicle and extra comfort and assistance 24 hours a day.

The functions are available via the Volvo Cars app[1] and the ON CALL and SOS buttons in the vehicle's ceiling console:

It is possible to lock and unlock the vehicle directly from a phone or other connected device via the Volvo Cars app. In the event of an accident, emergency assistance (ambulance, police, etc.) can be summoned to the vehicle. In less critical situations, e.g. a flat tire, roadside assistance can be called out.

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button should only be used in case of accident, illness or if there is an external threat to the vehicle and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Misuse could incur extra charges.
>
> The Volvo Cars app and ON CALL button can be used for all other services, including roadside assistance.

## The Volvo On Call system

Volvo On Call is connected to the vehicle's safety and alarm systems and to other systems in the vehicle, such as lock and climate systems. The vehicle has an integrated modem for communication with the Volvo On Call customer service center and the Volvo Cars app. The Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) is used to locate the vehicle.

## Personal data processing

In order to provide you with all the functions of the Volvo On Call service, certain information, including personal data, must be processed. Read more about terms and conditions and privacy at volvocars.com/intl//legal [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/legal] .

## Contacting the customer service center

The vehicle's ON CALL button or the Volvo Cars app is used to contact the Volvo On Call customer service center.

> **Note**
>
> All calls to Volvo On Call customer service center may be recorded.

[1] Available functions vary from market to market.

---

# 13.6. Volvo On Call subscription

Volvo On Call is a subscription service. The subscription includes emergency assistance and security services as well as app services.

## Volvo On Call subscription status

The status of your Volvo On Call subscription is shown in the Volvo Cars app under **Vehicle information** in the tab. You can also extend the subscription from here.

If you do not have access to the Volvo Cars app, contact your retailer who can help you find information about the subscription end date. You then have to give the vehicle identification number[1].

## Message to indicate that your Volvo On Call subscription will soon be expiring

45 days before the Volvo On Call subscription is set to expire, the message **Volvo On Call subscription expires soon** appears in the vehicle's display. Users of the Android or iOS version of the Volvo Cars app will also receive reminders in the app.

## Deactivated Volvo On Call subscription

When the subscription period has ended, the message **On Call turned off** will appear in the vehicle's display. The message disappears when the subscription is reactivated.

You cannot use the Volvo On Call services when the subscription has expired. However, the emergency services via the SOS button and automatic collision alert will continue to function. If you want to use Volvo On Call again, the subscription must be renewed.

## Roadside assistance costs

Roadside Assistance costs are included in the first X[2] years when buying a new Volvo. After this time has passed, in most of the markets, Roadside Assistance is offered for free providing the car has been serviced regularly at an authorized Volvo workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop can inform you of the status of your Roadside Assistance agreement.

Volvo On Call can help you get back on the road even if your Roadside Assistance agreement has expired. If this is the case, you will be asked to pay the cost for the service that is sent out to you.

**Note**

If you do not have a valid roadside assistance agreement, additional recovery costs may apply.

[1] Vehicle Identification Number(VIN)

[2] Varies depending on market.

---

# 13.7. Extend Volvo On Call subscription

You can choose between different time periods[1] when you extend or reactivate your Volvo On Call subscription.

The extension can be purchased[1]

- in the Volvo Cars app
- via an authorized Volvo retailer
- online at store.volvocars.com. Make sure you have access to your vehicle's identification number[2].

## Extending your subscription using the Volvo Cars app

1. Go to the tab.
2. Select **Vehicle information**.
3. Press **Renew** under **Volvo On Call subscription**.
4. You will be forwarded to a page where you can renew the subscription.

**Note**

If you would like to purchase an extension **after** your subscription has expired, you must do this through your retailer since Volvo On Call must be reactivated by the retailer before you can continue using the services. This may incur additional costs. In order to use the services without interruption it is therefore advantageous to extend the subscription before it expires. The subscription is extended from and including its expiry date.

[1] Available alternatives may vary depending on market.

[2] Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

# 13.8. Right to cancel purchase of Volvo On Call subscription extension

As a consumer, you have the right to cancel the contract within 14 days without providing any reason. The cancellation period ends 14 days from the date the order was placed.

## Cancellation

To exercise the right to cancellation of the contract, Volvo must be notified with a clear statement of intent. This can be done as follows:

- The easiest way is to contact Customer Support by phone or email. If you choose to send an email, provide the order information (including order number). The cancellation applies from the date the email is sent or the date the phone call is received and confirmed by an email from Volvo.
- You can also send the notice of cancellation by mail to Volvo's registered address. In such case, it applies from the date the cancellation form or letter was sent and confirmed by an email from Volvo. If you choose to send the notice of cancellation by mail, we recommend that you keep the receipt or other proof that you sent the letter.

## Reimbursement

In the event of cancellation, you will be reimbursed without unnecessary delay for all payments made in connection with the contract. However, Volvo may make a reasonable deduction from for the time period the extended Volvo On Call subscription was active. The same payment method used for the original transaction will be used for reimbursements. Any fees related to the reimbursement will not be reimbursed.

> **Note**
>
> For further information or assistance, go to volvocars.com/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support/] , select your market and click **Contact us**.

---

# 13.9. Volvo On Call messages

Here are some examples of information messages that may appear when Volvo On Call is inoperative.

## Discharged battery

If you receive a message that the vehicle has a discharged battery and is waiting for the Volvo On Call system to wake up, this may be because the vehicle has not been used for a long period of time.

To save the battery when the vehicle is not used for prolonged periods, the Volvo On Call with Sensus Connect system is set to standby.

## The Volvo On Call with Sensus Connect subscription is about to expire

45 days before the Volvo On Call subscription is set to expire, the message **Volvo On Call subscription expires soon** appears in the vehicle's display. Users of the Android or iOS version of the Volvo Cars app will also receive reminders in the app.

## Volvo On Call with Sensus Connect has been switched off

If the Volvo On Call subscription has expired and the Volvo On Call system has switched off, a message appears in the vehicle's display stating **Volvo On Call subscription has expired**.

---

# 14. Navigation

# 14.1. Entering a destination

## 14.1.1. Entering a destination directly on the map

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system* – tapping a point on the map with your finger is one of them.

It is often easiest to scroll to the desired position on the map and tap it.

1. Make sure the map is in full-screen mode.
2. Scroll to the desired location on the map.
3. Press and hold the location. An icon will be created and a menu will appear.
4. Select **Go here** to start guidance.

#### Deleting the icon

To delete the location's icon:

- Select **Delete**

#### Changing the icon's location

To change the location of the icon:

- Press and hold the icon, drag it to the desired location and then release it.

* Option/accessory.

## 14.1.2. Entering a destination using an address

There are several ways to set a destination in the navigation system*. Entering an address is one of them.

1. When the map appears, expand the toolbar using the down arrow on the left-hand side and tap **Set dest**.

> The map will switch to free text search.

2. Tap **Address**.

3. It is not necessary to fill in all of the fields. For guidance to a city, for example, you only need to fill in the city and country. You will then be guided to the center of the city.

4. Select any available field and use the center display's keyboard to type:
   - **Country/State/Province**
   - **City/Territory/Zip code**
   - **Address**
   - **Number**
   - **Junction**

For vehicles with Volvo On Call, it is also possible to send addresses and destinations to the vehicle's navigation system via the Volvo Cars app.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.1.3. Entering a destination with a free text search

A destination can be set in different ways in the navigation system* - with free text searching, for example, a search can be made using phone numbers, postal codes, streets, cities, coordinates and points of interest (POI[1]).

The center display's keyboard can be used to type most characters and to search for destinations.

1. When the map appears, expand the toolbar using the down arrow on the left-hand side and tap **Set dest**.

> The map will switch to free text search.

2. Enter a search word in the search box or limit the search results by choosing a filter.

> The search results will be listed as you type.

3. **If the search provided the desired result** – tap a search result to display its information card and select to continue using the search result.

**If the search provided too many results** – tap **Advanced filter** to select a position to search around and then select a search result to continue using it:

- **Around vehicle**
- **Around destination** – only displayed if a destination has been set.
- **Along route** – only displayed if a destination has been set.
- **Around point on map**

#### Coordinates

A destination can also be entered using map coordinates.

- Enter coordinates, e.g. "N 58.1234 E 12.5678" and tap **Search**.

| Compass directions **N**, **E**, **S** and **W** can be entered in different ways, e.g.: |
|---|
| **N** 58,1234 **E** 12,5678 (with space) |
| **N**58,1234 **E**12,5678 (without space) |
| 58,1234**N** 12,5678**E** (with compass directions **after** the coordinates) |
| 58,1234-12,5678 (with hyphen **without** compass direction) |

Either a dot [.] or a comma [] can be used.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

---

# 14.1.4. Entering a POI as a destination

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system* - selecting a point of interest (POI[1]) is one of them.

1. When the map appears, expand the toolbar using the down arrow on the left-hand side and tap **Set dest**.

> The map will switch to free text search.

2. Tap **POI**.

3. Tap the desired filter (some alternatives are only shown when a destination or waypoint is specified):
   - **Near the vehicle**

- **Near the destination**
- **Near waypoint**
- **Along route**
- **Around point on map**

4. Scroll to the desired POI and select it.

> The information card will appear.

5. Select **Start navigation** or **Add as waypoint**.

Many POI (e.g. restaurants) have sub-categories (e.g. fast food).

Which POI are shown on the map can be changed via the map settings. This setting does not affect searches for POI to be used as destinations (even POI that have not been selected for display can be shown here as alternate destinations).

Certain POI will only appear on the map if the scale is greater than 1 km (1 mile).

> **Note**
>
> - The symbols, number and variants of POIs vary between different markets.
> - In connection with map data updating, some symbols may be added and others disappear – all symbols for the map system in question can be found through the menu system.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

---

# 14.1.5. Entering a destination using Recent/Favorites/Library

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system* - selecting from a list is one of them.

1. When the map appears, expand the toolbar using the down arrow on the left-hand side and tap **Set dest**.

> The map will switch to free text search.

2. Select one of these lists at the top of the screen:

- **Recent**
- **Favorites**

- **Library**

After an option in a list has been marked, it can be added as a destination by tapping either the **Start navigation** or **Add as way-point** button.

#### Recent

This is a list of previous searches. Scroll through the list and select.

This is also available as a menu option in the instrument panel and can be displayed using the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Use **Edit** to delete one or more items in the list.

#### Favorites

This is a list of the locations from the **Library** that have been set as favorites. Scroll through the list and select.

A position that has been deleted in **Favorites** will remain in **Library**, but with a grayed-out star. To return a position to **Favorites**, go to **Library** and mark the position's star again.

Use **Set Home address** to program a frequently used destination. An entered **Home** destination is also available as a menu option in the instrument panel and can be displayed using the right-side steering wheel keypad.

Use **Edit** to delete one or more items in the list.

#### Library

This is a list of saved locations and itineraries. The most recently saved will be shown at the top of the list.

Tap the location's star to select/deselect it as a favorite. A location with a selected (filled in) star will also be displayed under the **Favorites** heading.

If a location is deleted in **Library**, it will also be deleted in **Favorites**.

The Library can be sorted in various ways:

- **Added** - sort in chronological order.
- **Name** - sort in alphabetical order.
- **Distance** - sort according to distance from the vehicle's current location.
- **Received** - locations sent to the vehicle using the Send to Car function will be filtered out. New unread locations have a BLUE marker that is grayed out once the positions have been read.

Use **Edit** to delete one or more items in the list.

To edit a stored location in **Library**, mark the location in the list and select **Edit position**. You can, for example, change the name of the location, move it on the map by dragging and dropping it, or add a phone number or email address.

* Option/accessory.

# 14.1.6. Entering a destination with Send to Car

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system* – using the Send to Car function is one of them.

## Send destination to the vehicle

Send to Car is a function that enables you to send a destination/location to the vehicle's navigation system via the Volvo Cars app.

To use Send to Car, a Volvo ID must be registered to the vehicle.

## Receiving and using a destination in the vehicle

In order for the vehicle to receive data, it must be connected to the Internet.

1. When the vehicle has received a destination, a notification will appear in the center display. Tap the notification/symbol.

> An information card will open.

2. Select how you would like to use the destination.

#### Using a saved destination

Received destinations are saved in the navigation system's library for later use.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.1.7. Selecting a detour in the navigation system*

Select a detour to avoid the next section of the route, e.g. if the road is closed.

1. Expand the left-side toolbar using the down arrow and then the three dots.
2.

   Tap the **Detour** symbol to display an alternate route with information on the new distance and estimated travel time. Normally, only short detours are suggested to take you quickly back to your original itinerary.
3. To **accept** the suggested detour: Tap the sign with the detour information. The route is also accepted if you begin driving the suggested route. Once the suggestion has been accepted, guidance will resume using the detour as the new route. If you **do not accept** the suggestion, continue driving the original route.

Instead of choosing **Detour**, you can instead select another route and leave your itinerary's current route. The system will update the route automatically and continue guidance to your destination along the most suitable route.

It is also possible to display an alternative route while driving.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.2. Itinerary and route

---

## 14.2.1. Information cards in the navigation system*

All icons on the map, such as destinations, waypoints and stored favorites, have an information card that can be opened by tapping the icon.

Press the information card once to display a small card, and press twice to display a larger card with more information. The information and possible options vary depending on the type of icon.

For example, when a POI([1]) is highlighted, the driver can select e.g.:

- **Start navigation** - save the location as a destination
- **Add as waypoint** - the position is saved as an intermediate destination (only displayed at the specified destination)
- **Save** - the position is saved in the library
- **Remove from itinerary** - the position is removed if it is included in the itinerary
- **Nearby POI** - points of interest close to the car's position are shown

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

# 14.2.2. Viewing points of interest along the route

A list of points of interest (POI[1]) along your route can be displayed in the navigation system*.

1.

   Tap **Ahead**.

2. Tap **POI**.

> POIs along the route are displayed according to their distance from the vehicle.

3. If there are multiple POIs in the same location, they will be displayed as a group. Tap the group for a list of the POIs.
4. Select a POI.
5. Select one of the information card's options and follow the instructions.

[1] Point of Interest

* Option/accessory.

# 14.2.3. Itinerary

The itinerary is the route that the navigation system* suggests when the user enters a destination.

The first location set will be the itinerary's **destination** (final destination).

The next locations set will be the itinerary's **waypoints** (intermediate stops along the route).

An itinerary and its destination and waypoints can be easily edited at any time.

* Option/accessory.

# 14.2.4. Viewing alternative routes

It is possible to search for alternate routes in the navigation system* while guidance is being provided.

1. Expand the toolbar using the down arrow first and then the three dots.
2.

   Tap the **Itinerary** symbol to open the itinerary.
3. Tap **Alternative routes**.
4. Select an alternative route:
   - **Eco**
   - **Fast**
   - **Scenic**
5. Tap the map.

> The updated route will be displayed on the map and guidance will resume.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.2.5. Editing or clearing an itinerary

It is possible to remove waypoints or the entire itinerary in the navigation system* while guidance is being provided.

1. Expand the toolbar using the down arrow first and then the three dots.
2.

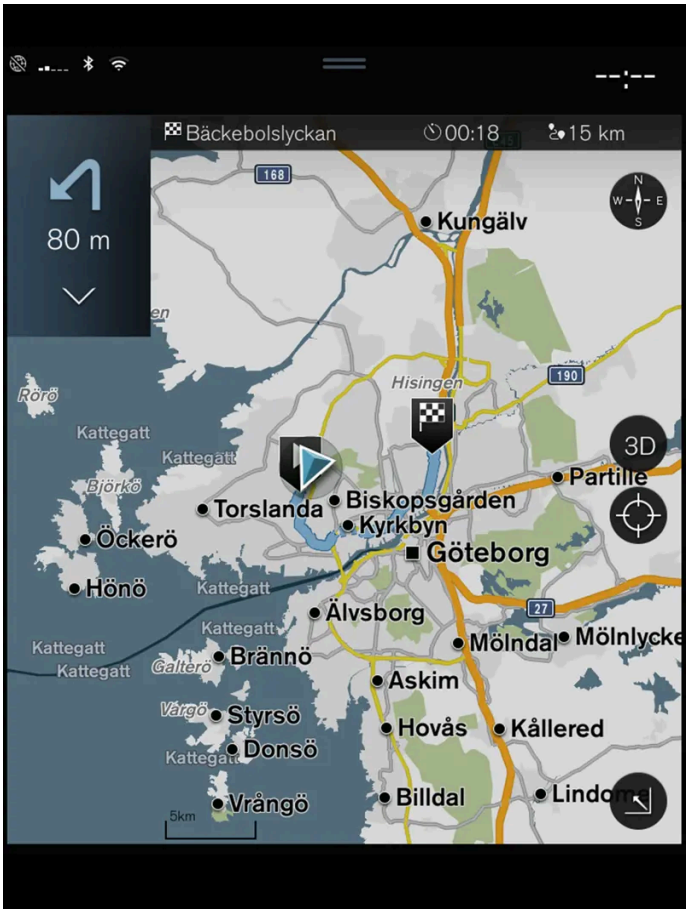
   Tap the **Itinerary** symbol to open the itinerary.
3. Tap the recycling bin to delete a waypoint from the itinerary or tap **Clear itinerary** to delete the entire itinerary.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.2.6. Viewing an itinerary

It is possible to show the itinerary in the navigation system* during road navigation.




1. During guidance, expand the toolbar using the down arrow and then the three dots.
2.

   Tap the **Itinerary** symbol to open the itinerary.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.2.7. Show guidance in the itinerary

A list of coming guidance points helps the driver prepare in advance for upcoming maneuvers, e.g. moving into the correct lane before making a turn.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

To display a list of upcoming turns in the itinerary in the navigation system*:

1. Expand the toolbar using the down arrow on the left-hand side.
2. Expand the toolbar further using the three dots.
3. Tap the **Turn-by-Turn** symbol (see image).

A list of guidance points on the itinerary will be displayed instead of the toolbar (you can scroll through the list). Tap the arrow pointing to the left to minimize the list.

The next guidance point is always shown at the top of the list.

Tap one of the guidance points in the list to show the location on the map. Tap the map's crosshairs (see image) to return to the map guidance view, where the map shows the vehicle's current location.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.2.8. Selecting a detour in the navigation system*

Select a detour to avoid the next section of the route, e.g. if the road is closed.

1. Expand the left-side toolbar using the down arrow and then the three dots.
2.

   Tap the **Detour** symbol to display an alternate route with information on the new distance and estimated travel time. Normally, only short detours are suggested to take you quickly back to your original itinerary.
3. To **accept** the suggested detour: Tap the sign with the detour information. The route is also accepted if you begin driving the suggested route. Once the suggestion has been accepted, guidance will resume using the detour as the new route. If you **do not accept** the suggestion, continue driving the original route.

Instead of choosing **Detour**, you can instead select another route and leave your itinerary's current route. The system will update the route automatically and continue guidance to your destination along the most suitable route.

It is also possible to display an alternative route while driving.

* Option/accessory.

# 14.3. Traffic information

## 14.3.1. Information cards in the navigation system*

All icons on the map, such as destinations, waypoints and stored favorites, have an information card that can be opened by tapping the icon.

Press the information card once to display a small card, and press twice to display a larger card with more information. The information and possible options vary depending on the type of icon.

For example, when a POI([1]) is highlighted, the driver can select e.g.:

- **Start navigation** - save the location as a destination
- **Add as waypoint** - the position is saved as an intermediate destination (only displayed at the specified destination)
- **Save** - the position is saved in the library
- **Remove from itinerary** - the position is removed if it is included in the itinerary
- **Nearby POI** - points of interest close to the car's position are shown

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

## 14.3.2. Selecting a detour in the navigation system*

Select a detour to avoid the next section of the route, e.g. if the road is closed.

1. Expand the left-side toolbar using the down arrow and then the three dots.
2.

   Tap the **Detour** symbol to display an alternate route with information on the new distance and estimated travel time. Normally, only short detours are suggested to take you quickly back to your original itinerary.
3. To **accept** the suggested detour: Tap the sign with the detour information. The route is also accepted if you begin driving the suggested route. Once the suggestion has been accepted, guidance will resume using the detour as the new route. If you **do**

**not accept** the suggestion, continue driving the original route.

Instead of choosing **Detour**, you can instead select another route and leave your itinerary's current route. The system will update the route automatically and continue guidance to your destination along the most suitable route.

It is also possible to display an alternative route while driving.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.3.3. Traffic disruptions on map

The navigation system* receives information on traffic events and traffic disruptions and displays these on the map[1].

> **Note**
>
> Traffic information is not available in all areas/countries.
>
> Coverage areas for traffic information is continuously extended.

It is possible to make settings to determine which traffic-related information is shown on the map.

Traffic disruptions, such as congested and slow-moving traffic, road work and accidents, are shown with different symbols when the map is zoomed in.

Road construction, for example, is indicated by this symbol. Sections of road with major traffic disruptions are also shown with a red line on the side of the road affected. The line also indicates which direction of traffic is affected. If the disruption affects both directions of traffic, the section of road is marked with red lines on both sides of the road.

#### Information on traffic disruptions

1. Tap the traffic disruption symbol.

> An information card will be displayed. Information may include e.g. the location of the traffic disruption with the street name/road number and its type/extent/duration.

#### Avoiding traffic disruptions

If there are traffic disruptions along the route, the **Avoid** option can be selected. The system will then calculate an alternate route.

#### Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI)[1]

If the vehicle is connected to the Internet, enhanced traffic information can be retrieved using RTTI [2].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only available in certain markets.

[2] Real Time Traffic Information

---

# 14.3.4. Show traffic disruptions along the route

A list of traffic disruptions along the route can be shown when a destination has been entered in the navigation system*.

1. When the map appears, expand the left-side toolbar using the down arrow and then the three dots.
2.

   Tap **Ahead**.
3. Tap **Traffic**. If there are no traffic problems along your route, the traffic button will be grayed out.

> Any traffic problems along the route will be displayed according to their distance from the vehicle.

4. For additional information about a traffic disruption, tap the row to open an information card. Select one of the information card's options and follow the instructions.
5. Tap **Avoid** to avoid the traffic disruption.

> The route will be recalculated and guidance will begin for the new route.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.3.5. Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI)

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, the driver can access enhanced traffic information [1] (RTTI [2]) about traffic congestion, closed roads and other circumstances that could affect travel time.

If the RTTI service is activated, information about traffic events and flow is continuously retrieved from an online service. When a vehicle requests traffic flow information, anonymous data about traffic flow in the vehicle's location is also provided, which helps enable the service to function. Anonymous data is only sent when RTTI is activated. If the service is not activated, no data will be provided.

The service may need to be reactivated e.g. following certain software updates, after a workshop visit or when creating a new driver profile.

Current traffic information is shown in the navigation system* for highways/freeways, major roads, secondary roads and in some cases urban routes.

The amount of traffic information shown on the map depends on the distance to the vehicle and is only shown within approximately 120 km (75 miles) from the vehicle's location.

Text and symbols on the map are displayed in the usual way and the traffic flow shows how fast the traffic is moving on a road in comparison with the road's speed limit. The traffic flow is shown on the map on each side of the road with a colored line in each direction.

- Green - no disturbances.
- Orange - slow-moving traffic.
- Red - congestion/traffic jam/accident.
- Black - road closed.

> **Note**
>
> Traffic information is not available in all areas/countries.
>
> Coverage areas for traffic information is continuously extended.

[1] Certain markets only.

[2] Real Time Traffic Information

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.3.6. Activating and deactivating enhanced traffic information

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, the driver can access enhanced traffic information[1] (RTTI[2]) in the navigation system*.

To activate or deactivate RTTI:

1. Tap **Settings** in the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **Navigation** → **Traffic**.
3. Select **Real Time Traffic Information** to activate (replace regular traffic information with RTTI) or deactivate RTTI.
4. One pop-up window with the heading **Terms and conditions** and one with the heading **Data sharing** will appear if RTTI is being used for the first time.

If the vehicle's Internet connection is lost when RTTI is activated, regular traffic information will be automatically activated. RTTI will be reactivated when the vehicle is once again connected to the Internet.

#### Deactivating green lines

To stop display of the green lines indicating that there are no traffic disturbances:

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **Navigation** → **Traffic** and uncheck **Show Free Flowing Traffic**.

[1] Certain markets only.

[2] Real Time Traffic Information

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.4. Navigation settings

---

## 14.4.1. Map settings

The following settings determine how the map is displayed in the navigation system*.

**Settings** → **Navigation** → **Map**

Settings can be personalized in the following areas:

- **Position Format**
- **Map Display Format**

- Show Speed Cameras
- Show Favorites
- Point of Interest (POI)

### Position Format

Select Position Format to designate/display the current location on the map using its address or its coordinates:

- Address
- Coordinates and Altitude

### Map Display Format

Select Map Display Format to choose background lighting for the map:

- Day - bright colors.
- Night - dark colors for better night vision.
- Auto - the system will switch between Day and Night depending on the ambient light in the passenger compartment.

### Speed cameras [1]

Select Show Speed Cameras to display speed cameras on the map.

### Favorites

To display Favorites on the map, select.

### Point of Interest (POI [2])

Select POIs to be displayed on the map under Point of Interest (POI). Tap on the desired category, e.g. "Transportation", and then select show all or specific sub categories. Tap Back or Close to exit the menu.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function is not available on all markets.

[2] Point of Interest

---

# 14.4.2. Navigation system* settings

Select settings for how the route and other information should be presented in the navigation system.

Settings → Navigation

Settings can be personalized in the following areas:

- Map - manages the content and appearance of the map.

- **Route and Guidance** - handles guidance and how routes are calculated and displayed.
- **Traffic** - manages traffic information.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.4.3. Route settings and guidance

Settings for how the route is calculated and how guidance is presented in the navigation system* are selected here.
Adjust the volume by turning the volume knob while the voice is speaking.

**Settings → Navigation → Route and Guidance**

Settings can be personalized in the following areas:

- **Arrival Time Format**
- **Voice Guidance Level**
- **Choose Default Route Type**
- **Route Learning**
- **Avoidance Settings**
- **Propose Gas Station**

## Arrival Time Format

Choose how arrival time will be displayed:

- **ETA**[1] (estimated time of arrival at the destination)
- **RTA**[2] (remaining time to arrival at destination)

Times are displayed according to the time zone of the destination.

## Voice Guidance Level

1. Tap **Voice Guidance Level**.
2. Tap desired voice guidance:
   - **None** (no automatic voice guidance, but guidance can be manually requested once)
   - **Low** (only one message per guidance point)
   - **Medium** (up to 3 messages per guidance point, with limited information provided)
   - **Full** (up to 4 messages per guidance point and all available information provided)

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

### Choose Default Route Type

Select the default type of route to be used:

- **Fast**
- **Eco**
- **Scenic** (highways/freeways are avoided whenever possible; note that this could lead to longer travel times)

It is also possible to display an alternative route while driving.

### Route Learning

Select **Route Learning** to allow data to be collected to optimize route calculations.

### Avoid

Tap **Avoidance Settings** to open a menu of options to automatically avoid (if possible) when calculating a route. Possible selections include tunnels, ferries, congestion charge zones, etc.

### Suggest service station

Tap **Propose Gas Station** to activate or deactivate the display of suggestions for nearby service stations in the instrument panel when fuel level is low.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Estimated Time of Arrival

[2] Remaining Time to Arrival

---

# 14.4.4. Traffic information settings

The following settings determine how traffic information[1] is presented in the navigation system*.

**Settings → Navigation → Traffic**

Settings can be personalized in the following areas:

- **Show and Handle Traffic Events**
- **Avoid Traffic Events**
- **Show Free Flowing Traffic**
- **Real Time Traffic Information**

### Show & Handle Traffic Events

Select to display traffic events on the map and use this information to calculate routes:

- None
- Major
- All types

### Avoid Traffic Events

Select to avoid traffic problems when calculating routes.

- Never
- Ask - (suggestions for alternate routes will be provided when available during the trip)
- Always

### Show Free Flowing Traffic

Select Show Free Flowing Traffic to show this on the map.

### Using RTTI[1]

Select Real Time Traffic Information to use enhanced traffic information when the vehicle is connected to the Internet (RTTI).

[1] Certain markets only.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.5. Map updates

---

# 14.5.1. Updating maps from a vehicle with Internet connection

The navigation system's* maps can be updated[1] when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

To help avoid unnecessarily large map data downloads, select a home region. This will also reduce the number of notifications because updates for other areas will then be sorted out. Large map updates can be done via computer and then transferred to the vehicle via a USB flash drive.

Select a home region by tapping **Download Center** → **Maps**. Select your region and then tap **Set as home region**.

Remote update procedure.

1.


   Tap **Download Center** in App view.

> The app starts and a number will be shown next to **Maps** indicating that updates are available for the specified home region. This number will be displayed until a new search for updates has been performed or until updates have been installed.

2. Tap **Maps**.

3. Tap **Install** and then **Confirm**.

> The installation/update of the selected map will begin.

For further details, search for support information on volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] or contact a Volvo retailer.

#### Automatic map updates

Automatic home region updates can be selected in **Download Center**.

1. Tap **Download Center** in App view.

2. Tap **Maps**.

3. Automatic map updates can only be selected for your home region. If the home region is not already selected, tap the down-arrow to expand the region.

> Detailed map information will be displayed.

4. Tap **Set as home region**.

5. Then scroll to the top of the list of regions, where your selected home region will now be shown.

6. Tap the down-arrow to expand the home region.

7. Check the **Auto update:** box.

> When the vehicle is connected to the Internet and a map update is available, it will now be automatically downloaded to the vehicle.

**If a map download is interrupted**

If a map download has begun but the vehicle was switched off before the download was finished, the process will be paused and then resumed automatically when the vehicle is started again and connected to the Internet.

If one or more updates were skipped or missed, the update files may be too large to be downloaded directly to the vehicle. In this case, the files can be downloaded from volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com] to a USB flash drive and the map can then be installed in the vehicle.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only available in certain countries.

---

# 14.5.2. Updating maps with a computer and USB flash drive

New maps can be downloaded from the Internet to a USB flash drive and then transferred from the flash drive to the vehicle's navigation system*.

## Preparations

Computer/USB flash drive update

**USB flash drive**

For use in updates, the USB flash drive must meet the following requirements:

| Parameter | Requirement |
|---|---|
| USB standard: | At least 2.0 |
| File system: | FAT32, exFAT or NFTS |
| Capacity: | Up to 128 GB<br>This varies from market to market. Detailed information is provided in the map for each market under support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] . |

**Determining the current map version**

1.


   Tap **Download Center** in App view.

2. Tap **Maps**

> Available map regions are displayed.

3.

   Tap the arrow to expand the selected region.

> Detailed map information will be displayed.

4. Make a note of the map information shown under the map image.

## Downloading map data from the Internet to a USB flash drive

Make sure you have a USB flash drive and the map information you noted down.

1. Go to the Volvo Cars support page (volvocars.com/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] ) on a computer connected to the Internet and then select to download maps under **Downloads**.

2. Choose the type of map you want to update.

3. Tap the region to be updated.

> A map containing information about the latest map data for the region will appear.

4. Verify that the map version is newer than the version in the vehicle.

5. Select the download link for either Windows or Mac, depending on which system you have.
6. Select "Run" to install the download program.
7. Click "New download" to download the map to a USB memory stick or to the computer's hard drive.
8. You can verify that the download/copying to the USB memory has worked correctly before you install the map in the vehicle by repeating steps 1-2 and then pressing "Check downloads" in the download program.

The time required for the download varies depending on the size of the map and the speed of the Internet connection. It is possible to verify that the data has been correctly downloaded to the USB flash drive before installing the map in the vehicle by selecting to check the download status in the downloading program.

It is not advisable to download using a mobile connection from a mobile device, or from a device using a subscription that may have a monthly limit on the amount of data that can be used.

## Transferring map data from the USB flash drive to the vehicle

The time required to transfer data from the USB flash drive to the vehicle varies depending on the size of the map data file. The update can be done while driving. The navigation system can be used while updating a map region, but it cannot be used during the update of an entire map market, e.g. the EU. If the transfer has not been completed when the ignition is switched off, the update will continue the next time the vehicle is driven. It is not necessary to be driving during the update, but the ignition must be on. If the vehicle is not driven during the update, battery assistance is recommended.

**Updating**

1. Activate the navigation system.
2. Connect the USB flash drive to the vehicle's USB port. If there are two USB ports, the other port cannot be used at the same time.
3. The navigation system automatically detects that an update is available and, during the update of the whole map database, shows on the screen what percentage of the process is complete.

> When individual regions are updated, the update will start immediately.
> To start an update of the entire map database, tap **Confirm**. Tap **Cancel** to stop the installation.

4. Tap **Confirm**. The update of the entire map database will begin and progress information will be shown on the center display.
5. The center display will indicate when the update is finished. Remove the USB flash drive from the port.
6. Restart the infotainment system.
7. Verify that the correct map data has been transferred to the vehicle by repeating the steps described above under "Determining the current map version".

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Note**

In order for the installation to start, the following criteria must be met:

- Selected region is included on the system map. For example, only the region Scandinavia can be downloaded if the system already has a Europe map. If a completely new map is downloaded, the previous map will be overwritten.
- The version for the selected region is higher than that in the vehicle.
- Selected region is compatible with the car's software. If the update is not compatible then new software will need to be downloaded.
- Selected region is compatible with existing map. If the region is not compatible, the map must be replaced.

**Interruptions**

If an update is interrupted, an explanatory text will always appear in the center display.

| What happens if... | Answer |
|---|---|
| The infotainment system is turned off while an update is in progress? | The process will pause and will continue automatically when the system is reactivated, e.g. when the engine is started. |
| The USB flash drive is removed from the USB port before the update is finished? | The process will pause and will continue automatically when the USB flash drive is reconnected to the USB port. |

For further details, search for support information on volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] or contact a Volvo retailer.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.5.3. Map updating

MapCare is a free map update service for Volvo vehicles equipped with Sensus Navigation*.

## General update information

Map updates can be done 2-12 times per year (depending on market).

There are two ways to update maps. Either via a computer and USB flash drive or directly from the vehicle[1] (if the vehicle has an Internet connection).

The vehicle's map is divided into a number of fixed regions. When updating map data, the driver does not need to update all of these regions, but can instead choose to update only one or more specific regions.

One or more regions can be updated when the vehicle has an Internet connection. However, updating a large number of regions or the entire map requires a significant amount of data, and it may be advisable to use a computer and USB flash drive instead.

> **Note**
>
> If an itinerary includes more than one region, all regions should have the same version number to enable the system to calculate the best route to the destination.

## Updating the map structure

Changing the map structure may sometimes be necessary, e.g., if a region is added or if a large region is divided into smaller ones. If this is the case, normal updates of individual regions may not be possible and a message will be displayed explaining what has happened.

In this situation, the entire map must be reinstalled from a USB flash drive. For additional information, search for support information on volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] or contact a Volvo retailer.

## Updating navigation system software

In addition to maps, the navigation system's own software is under constant development and needs to be updated occasionally. This could mean that a recently downloaded map is not supported by the current navigation system software. In such cases, a message will be displayed indicating that the navigation system software must be updated. Consult a Volvo retailer for assistance with the update. Your Volvo retailer can also assist with the map update itself. Please note that although the map update is free, the time required in the workshop to complete the update may incur costs.

## FAQs

| Ask | Answer |
|---|---|
| Can the map data platform be changed from e.g. Europe to North America? | Yes, with some exceptions. Contact a Volvo retailer for up-to-date information. |
| How long do map updates take? | This depends on the size of the file(s) and the speed of the Internet connection. Information about the size of the update (in MB) will be displayed on the screen. |
| How big is an update? | This varies from market to market. Detailed information is provided in the map for each market under support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/]. |
| The update is not working. What should I do? | Search for more support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] or contract a Volvo retailer. |
| Unnecessary map update notifications are displayed – what should I do? | Setting a home region reduces the number of notifications because updates for other areas will then be sorted out.<br>Tap **Download Center** → **Maps**, select your region and then tap **Set as home region**. |

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only available in certain countries.

---

# 14.6. Voice control command list for the navigation system*

Several of the navigation system's functions can be activated with voice commands. Here is a list of these.

Tap on the right-side steering wheel keypad and say one of the following commands:

- "**Navigation**" - Starts a navigation dialog and displays examples of commands.

- "**Take me home**" - Guidance is provided to the location set as **Home**.
- "**Go to [city]**" - Inputs a city as a destination, e.g. "Go to San Francisco".
- "**Go to [address]**" - Inputs an address as a destination. An address must contain city and street. e.g. "Go to Filbert Street 5, San Francisco".

- "**Add intersection**" - Starts a dialog to input two streets. The destination will then be the intersection of these two streets.

- "**Go to [zip code]**" - Input a zip code as the destination. e.g. "Go to 1 2 3 4 5".
- "**Go to [contact]**" - Input an address from the phone book as the destination. Example "Go to Robyn Smith"[1].
- "**Search [POI category]**" - Search Points of Interest (POI) in a certain category (e.g. restaurants)[2]. To sort the list along the route, say "**Along the route**" when the list of results is displayed.
- "**Search [POI category]** in **[city]**" - Searches for POIs in a certain category and city. The list of results is sorted based on the center point of the city. Example "Search restaurant in San Francisco".
- "**Search [POI name]**". Example "Search Zuni Café".
- "**Change country/Change state**[3],[4]" - Changes the search area for navigation.
- "**Show favorites**" – Displays stored locations in the instrument panel.
- "**Clear itinerary**" - Deletes all stored waypoints and destinations in an itinerary.
- "**Repeat voice guidance**" - Repeats the most recent guidance instruction.
- "**Turn off voice guidance**" - Guidance off.
- "**Turn on voice guidance**" - Guidance on.

The following commands can usually be used in any situation:

- "**Repeat**" - repeats the most recent voice command in the current dialog.
- "**Help**" - initiates a help dialog. The system responds with commands that can be used in the current situation, an instruction or an example.
- It is possible to cancel voice control both when the system is quiet and when it is speaking.
  - "**Cancel**" – cancels the dialog when the system is quiet.
  - Press and hold until two beeps sound – cancels the dialog even if the system is speaking.

#### Addresses

When an address is entered, the search area is defined as the search area that is preset in the navigation system. You can change to another search area. If the new search area has a different language than the set system language, the system will automatically switch to another recognition engine. Because of this, the address should be given in the language used in the new search area.

> **Note**
>
> Note that addresses are searchable only for the country or state the navigation system is set to. To search for addresses in another country or state, you must first change the search area.

**Note**

Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

* Option/accessory.

[1] For addresses to be found in the map database, they must be entered correctly in the phone book (without spelling mistakes, abbreviations, etc.). To check spelling, go to wego.here.com [https://wego.here.com]

[2] The user can choose to call the POI or enter it as a destination.

[3] For European countries, "country" is used instead of "state".

[4] For Brazil and India, search area is changed in the center display.

---

# 14.7. Sensus Navigation*

Sensus Navigation is a satellite-based traffic information and navigation system.

The system guides you to a destination and gives you information along the way, such as alternative routes to avoid accidents and roadwork.

You can set an itinerary, search for a POI [1] along the route, save destinations, etc.

The system shows the exact location of the vehicle and can lead you back to the destination if you deviate from the set route.

In addition to its practical benefits, Sensus Navigation can also help contribute to a better environment by enabling you to reach your destination quickly and by the best route according to the driver's settings.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

---

# 14.8. Activating and deactivating the navigation system*

The navigation system is automatically activated when the driver's door is opened and is deactivated when the driver locks and arms the vehicle.

## Activating navigation

1 Navigation system tile

2 Home button

View the map on the center display by tapping the top tile (1) in Home view.

If the center display does not show the navigation system tile, press the Home button (2) once briefly and then tap the navigation system tile (1).

A map will appear of the surrounding area and the vehicle's current location (blue triangle).

Tap this symbol to display the map across the entire center display.

**Warning**

Observe the following:

- Direct all your attention to the road and make sure that your concentration is focused on driving.
- Follow applicable traffic laws and use good judgment while driving.
- Road conditions can be affected by weather or season, which may make certain recommendations less reliable.

## Deactivating navigation

While the ignition is switched on, the navigation system is always active in the background. It switches off automatically when the ignition is switched off and the vehicle is locked.

> **Note**
>
> The navigation system is available even when the engine is turned off. If the battery charge level becomes too low, the system will switch off.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.9. Voice control for navigation system*

If your vehicle is equipped with Sensus Navigation, you can use voice commands to control parts of your navigation system.

## Start navigation

Here is an introduction to how you can begin using voice commands to control the navigation system in your vehicle.

## To activate a navigation command

1. Press the steering wheel keypad's voice control button .

> You can now give commands, e.g. "**Navigation**", which will start a navigation dialog and show examples of commands.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice control. If a language supports voice control, it is marked with a symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information is found in the section on voice control settings.

## Using voice control to get directions to an address

To get directions to a specific address, use the command **Go to** followed by the address. It is important that the address is given in the right order. To use voice control for route guidance to an address, the address must be said in the following order: (1) street address, (2) house number, (3) city, as shown in the following example.

1. Give the command **Go to**.

> You can now say the address you would like route guidance to.

2. Say the street, e.g. Lombard Street"
3. Say the house number, e.g. "five"
4. Say the city, e.g. "San Francisco"

> The full command will then be: "**Go to** Lombard Street 5, San Francisco". Provided the address is found in the system, the navigation system will now provide route guidance to the address.

#### Using voice control for route guidance to an address in another country or another state

Your navigation system uploads sets of maps for the country or state it believes your vehicle is located in. This means that for accurate route guidance across country or state borders, you need to first tell the system in which country or state the address you would like route guidance to is located. You do this by using the command **Change country** or **Change state**. (Command **Change state** is primarily used in the US. In the example below, command **Change country** is used.)

1. Give the command **Change country**.

> You can now enter the country in which the address you would like route guidance to is located, e.g. "Canada".

2. Now enter the address you want route guidance to by following the procedure for "Using voice control for route guidance to an address".

> In this scenario, the full command is divided into two sub-commands:

   1. "**Change country**, Canada"
   2. "**Go to** Howe Street twenty-two, Vancouver"

   If the address is found in the system, the navigation system will now provide route guidance to Howe Street twenty-two, Vancouver, Canada

> **Note**
>
> After you have changed country, try to pronounce the address you want route guidance to in the destination country's language. This is required because the system automatically switches to the recognition language of the selected country.

## Using voice control for route guidance to an address set as Home

If you have set an address as a **Home** location in your navigation system, you can use a voice command to receive route guidance to the location.

1. Give the command **Take me home**.

> If the navigation system has a home location saved, you will now receive route guidance to the location.

## Using voice control for route guidance to a place, store or other specific business without inputting an exact address

Your navigation system can provide route guidance to specific places or types of businesses, which are referred to in the system as "points of interest" (POI [1]). Examples of points of interest are restaurants, hotels, gas stations, museums and tourist attractions.

Use the command **Search** to search for a point of interest. You can search for a specific point of interest or for categories of points of interest.

**Note**

It is important to use the right command for the option you would like route guidance for. When you want route guidance to a point of interest, use the **Search** command. The command is different for route guidance to specific addresses. Then you should use the **Go to** command instead.

**Searching for a specific place or business**

Here, **[POI name]** refers to a specific place or business (a point of interest), e.g. a hotel, a restaurant, a city park, etc.

1. Give the command **Search**.

> You can now say the specific point of interest you would like route guidance to.

2. Say **[POI name]**, e.g. "Golden Gate Bridge"

> The full command will then be: "**Search** Golden Gate Bridge". If the point of interest is found in the system, the navigation system will now provide route guidance to the location.

**Searching for a point of interest category, e.g. stores, hotels, restaurants, museums or other tourist attractions or businesses.**

Here, **[POI category]** refers to specific types of places or businesses (points of interest), e.g. hotels, restaurants, museums, etc.

1. Give the command **Search**.

> You can now say the type of point of interest you would like to find and receive route guidance to.

2. Say **[POI category]**, e.g. "restaurant"

> In this case, the full command will be: "**Search** restaurant". The navigation system will now search for restaurants around and in the vicinity of the vehicle and display a list of these in your instrument panel. The displayed list will provide suggestions from the system based on your command. Relevant categories and nearby results will be shown at the top of the list, followed by other suggestions in order of relevance.
> Since we are looking for a category in this example, it may be a good idea to select the category option that most closely matches your search.

3. Select the category from the list that best matches what you searched for, in this case "restaurant(s)", by saying the row number shown in the instrument panel for that option.

> You can now see your search results and select an option.

## Using voice control to cancel route guidance

You can use voice commands to cancel route guidance, including all waypoints and the final destination.

1. Give the command **Clear itinerary**.

> The navigation system will cancel route guidance and delete the final destination and all waypoints along the route.

### Inputing zip codes and house numbers

Number commands can be given in different ways depending on the function to be controlled:

- **Zip codes** should be given by stating each number individually, e.g. "zero three one two two four four three" (03122443).
- **Addresses** can be given by stating each number individually or in a group, e.g. two two or twenty-two (22). For some languages, it is also possible to specify hundreds, e.g. 19 hundred 22 (1922). For English and Dutch language settings, groups of numbers can also be said in sequence, e.g. twenty-two twenty-two (22 22). For English, double or triple digits can also be used, e.g. double zero (00). Numbers in the range 0-2300 can be used.

### Entering a destination using the phone book's list of contacts

You can use the command "**Go to[contact]**" to enter an address for a contact in the phone book as a destination. However, the address must be spelled correctly and entered without abbreviations in order to be found in the map database.

To check the spelling of addresses in HERE's database, go to wego.here.com [https://wego.here.com]

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point Of Interest

---

## 14.10. Frequently Asked Questions regarding the navigation system*

Here are answers to some frequently asked questions about the navigation system Sensus Navigation.

### The system does not always calculate the fastest/shortest route

Route calculation takes into account factors such as distance, road width, type of road, traffic intensity and speed limits to find the theoretically best possible route. Familiarity with an area and experience may enable the driver to find a more efficient route.

### The system uses e.g. toll roads or highways even though I have chosen to avoid them

When calculating longer routes over greater distances, the system may choose major roads for technical reasons.

If you have chosen to avoid toll roads and highways, these will be avoided whenever possible and only used when no other viable option is available.

### The vehicle's location on the map is not correct

The navigation system displays the vehicle's location with an accuracy of approximately 20 meters (65 ft).

Accuracy may be reduced slightly when driving on a road that is parallel with another road, winding roads, multi-level roads and long stretches of road with no distinct curves.

High mountains, buildings, tunnels, viaducts, interchanges, multi-level roads, etc. may also affect the satellite signal reception, which may also reduce the system's ability to accurately calculate the vehicle's location.

#### Calibration

A calibration is performed when you lock the vehicle and let it sit for 15-30 seconds. If the inaccurate location remains after calibration, contact a workshop to have the antenna checked/calibrated.

## After being transported, the vehicle's location on the map is not correct

If the vehicle is transported on e.g. a ferry or train, or if satellite signals have been blocked for some other reason, it may take up to 5 minutes before the vehicle's location can be accurately calculated.

## The vehicle symbol moves erratically on the screen after changing tires

In addition to satellite signals, the vehicle's speedometer and a gyroscopic sensor are also used to calculate location, speed and direction of travel. If any of the tires are changed, e.g. a spare tire or snow tires have been installed, the system needs to "learn" the new tire dimensions.

To help ensure the system functions optimally, Volvo recommends driving for a short period on roads with good satellite reception (clear view).

## The map does not represent actual road conditions

Because road changes/additions/rerouting, new traffic regulations, etc. are always being implemented, the map database may not be up to date.

The database is continuously being updated and improved. Check regularly for updates.

## The vehicle symbol jumps around or spins

The system may need a few seconds to determine the vehicle's location before you start driving.

Switch off both the navigation system and the ignition. Restart but remain at a standstill for a moment before driving.

## The map information is not up to date

See the next heading.

## Is the most recent map version installed?

Map information is continuously being updated and improved. When updating maps via a computer and USB, the vehicle's current map version can be displayed. Check the map version in the vehicle and compare it with available map versions in the support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

## Current traffic information not shown

Activate enhanced traffic information (RTTI [1]) to continuously retrieve information on traffic congestion, closed roads and other events that may affect travel time. For continuous traffic information retrieval to be possible, the vehicle must be con-

nected to the Internet and have reception.

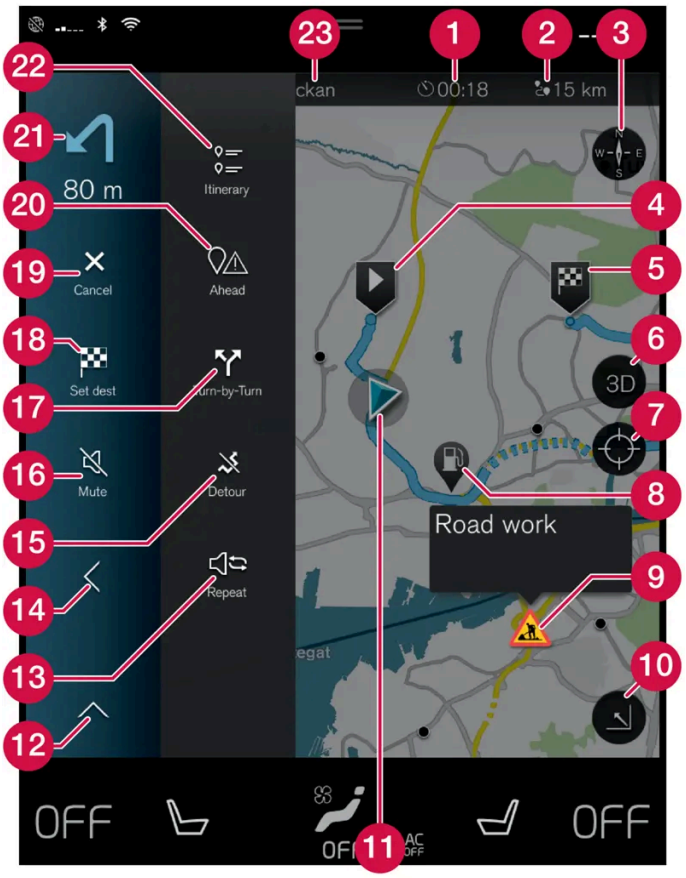
* Option/accessory.

[1] Real Time Traffic Information

---

# 14.11. Navigation system* symbols and buttons

The map in the center display displays symbols and colors that inform the driver of different roads and the area around the vehicle and along the route. A tool bar with different buttons for different settings is shown on the left.




**Symbols and buttons on the map**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Estimated time of arrival/remaining time to arrival |
| 2 | Distance to destination |
| 3 | Compass/switches between north and vehicle's direction of travel up |
| 4 | Start |
| 5 | Destination |
| 6 | Switch map view from 2D to 3D |
| 7 | Reset map to follow the vehicle |
| 8 | Point of Interest (POI [1]) |
| 9 | Traffic information |

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 10 | Minimize (expanded view) or maximize the map (full screen) |
| 11 | The vehicle on the planned route |
| 12 | Minimize toolbar |
| 13 | Repeat most recent voice guidance |
| 14 | Minimize toolbar |
| 15 | Calculate a new route |
| 16 | Voice guidance temporarily On/Off |
| 17 | Display list of guidance points in the itinerary |
| 18 | Set a final destination/waypoint |
| 19 | Cancel guidance |
| 20 | Shows list of the itinerary's points of interest (POI [1]) and traffic information |
| 21 | Next maneuver |
| 22 | Itinerary and alternative route |
| 23 | Destination |

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

---

# 14.12. Navigation license agreements*

The following is information for the end-user of the Sensus Navigation system.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR DISTRIBUTION BY HERE

FOR THE AMERICAS/ASIA PACIFIC

#### END-USER TERMS

The content provided ("Data") is licensed, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or HERE North America, LLC (as defined below) within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact HERE, please visit www.here.com. The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. For purposes of these terms, "HERE" shall mean

(a) HERE North America, LLC with respect to Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region and (b) HERE Europe B.V. for Data for Europe, the Middle East and/or Africa. The Data includes certain information and related content provided under license to HERE from third parties and is subject to the applicable supplier terms and copyright notices set forth at the following URL:

here.com/supplierterms

#### TERMS AND CONDITIONS

**License Limitations on Use**: You agree that your li¬cense to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, noncommercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set

forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**License Limitations on Transfer**: Your limited license does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CDROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multidisc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

**Additional License Limitations**: Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your license is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning**: This Data may contain inaccurate or incom¬plete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty**: This Data is provided to you “as is”, and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty**: HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NONINFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability**: HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CON¬DITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control**: You agree not to export from any¬where any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and ap¬provals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. De¬partment of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement**: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Severability**: You and HERE agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

**Governing Law**: The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois (for Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region) or The Netherlands (for Data for Europe, the Middle East and Africa), without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. For any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data ("Claims"), you agree to submit to the personal juris¬diction of (a) the State of Illinois for Claims related to Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region pro¬vided to you hereunder, and (b) The Netherlands for Data for Europe, the Middle East and/or Africa provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users**: If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use", and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

#### NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME:

HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 1987-2015 HERE. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

© 1987-2015 HERE. All rights reserved.

## (Canadian models) ACCORD DE LICENCE D'UTILISATEUR FINAL DESTINÉ À LA DISTRIBUTION

PAR HERE EN LES AMÉRIQUES / ASIE PACIFIQUE

#### MODALITÉS D'UTILISATION FINALE

Le contenu (« Données ») est livré en mode licence et non de vente. L'ouverture, l'installation, la copie du produit ou autre emploi des Données impliquent le consentement aux modalités de licence. En cas de désaccord avec les modalités de la licence, il est interdit d'installer, copier, utiliser ou transférer les Données. S'il n'y a pas consentement à certaines des modalités de la licence et que les Données ne sont pas déjà installées, copiées ou utilisées le titulaire peut obtenir le rem¬boursement du prix d'achat, en en faisant part dans les trente (30) jours au détaillant HERE North America, LLC (« HERE ») où l'achat a été fait. Pour les coorDonnées de HERE, consulter www.here.com Le disque de Données cartographiques (« Données »), est prévu pour une utilisation personnelle, un usage uniquement interne et ne peut en aucun cas être revendu. Il est protégé par les droits d'auteurs et assujetti aux modalités suivantes du présent « Accord de licence d'utilisateur final », ainsi qu'aux conditions convenues entre l'acquéreur du produit et HERE North America, LLC (« HERE ») ou ses concédants (comprenant concédants et fournisseurs). Aux fins des présentes, "Here" signifie

(a) Here North America, LLC pour ce qui concerne des Données pour les régions Amériques et/ou Asie Pacifique et (b) Here Europe B.V. pour ce qui concerne des Données pour l'Europe, le Moyen¬Orient et/ou l'Afrique. Les Données incluent certaines

informations et contenus concédés sous licence à HERE par des tiers. Les Données font l'objet des conditions de fourniture applicables ainsi que des mentions de copyright indiquées sous l'URL suivant:

here.com/supplierterms

**MODALITÉS**

**Restrictions de la licence d'utilisation** : Le titulaire de la licence consent à utiliser les Données en question à des fins exclusivement personnelles, non commer¬ciales pour lesquelles la licence a été accordée et non à des fins d'offre de services informatiques, d'exploitation partagée ou autres fins du même type. Le titulaire de la licence consent également à ne reproduire, ne copier, ne modifier, ne décompiler, ne désassembler ou ne concevoir à rebours aucune partie de ces Données et à ne les transférer ni les distribuer sous quelque forme ni à aucune autre fin, sauf dans la mesure permise par les lois prescrites en cette matière.

**Restrictions du transfert de la licence** : Cette licence restreinte ne permet pas de transférer ou de revendre les Données, sauf à la condition où le transfert des Données et de tous les outils associés est permis sur une base définitive lorsque : (a) aucune copie des Données n'est conservée par le titulaire de la licence; (b) le bénéficiaire accepte les modalités de l'accord de licence de l'utilisateur final; (c) les Données sont transférées sous strictement la même forme qu'à l'achat par cession physique du média original (par ex. le CD-ROM ou DVD d'origine), de l'emballage d'origine, de tous les manuels et autres documents. Les séries multidisques ne peu¬vent être transférées ou vendues que sous leur forme intégrale d'origine et non comme une partie de celle-ci.

**Restrictions additionnelles de la licence** : Sous réserve des consignes particulières d'utilisation transmises par HERE dans la licence et sans limiter la portée du paragraphe précédent, l'utilisation des Données de la licence est sujette aux conditions du présent accord qui prévoit que l'utilisateur ne peut en aucun cas (a) utiliser les Données avec les produits, les systèmes ou les applications faisant l'objet d'une installation sur des véhicules dotés d'un système de navigation, de positionnement, de répartition, de radioguidage routier en temps réel, de gestion de parcs automobiles et d'applications semblables ou (b) les utiliser avec des dispositifs de positionnement et des appareils électroniques ou informatiques mobiles ou sans fil, y compris les téléphones cellulaires, les ordinateurs de poche ou portables, les téléavertisseurs et les assistants numériques personnels ou PDA.

**MISE EN GARDE** : Ces Données peuvent comporter des informations inexactes ou incomplètes en raison du passage du temps, de l'évolution des circonstances, des sources utilisées et des difficultés par nature de la collecte exhaustive de Données géographiques, de tout ce qui peut conduire à des résultats incorrects.

**No Warranty**: This Data is provided to you "as is", and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

**Non-garantie** : Ces Données sont fournies « telles quelles», l'acquéreur de cette licence accepte de l'u¬tiliser à ses risques et périls. HERE et ses titulaires de licences (et leurs concédants et fournisseurs) n'offrent aucune garantie ou déclaration de quelque nature que ce soit, expresse ou implicite, issue du droit ou autrement, quant au contenu, à la qualité, à l'utilité, à l'exactitude, à l'intégralité, à l'efficacité, à la fiabilité, à l'aptitude à l'emploi, à l'usage ou aux résultats découlant de l'emploi des Données, et ne garantissent pas non plus que ces dernières ou le serveur en assurant la transmission fonctionneront sans interruption et sans erreur.

**Exonération de garantie** : HERE ET SES TITULAIRES DE LICENCES (Y COMPRIS LEURS PROPRES CONCÉDANTS ET FOURNISSEURS) DÉCLINENT TOUTE GARANTIE, EXPRESSE OU IMPLICITE, DE QUALITÉ, DE PERFORMANCE, DE VALEUR MARCHANDE, D'ADÉQUATION À UN USAGE PARTICULIER OU DE NON-CONTREFAÇON. Certains États, territoires et pays n'autorisent pas certaines exclusions de garantie, et, dans cette mesure, les exclusions ci-dessus pourraient ne pas s'appliquer.

**Exonération de responsabilité** : HERE ET SES CONCÉDANTS (Y COMPRIS LEURS PROPRES CONCÉDANTS ET FOURNISSEURS) NE PEUVENT ÊTRE TENUS RESPONSABLES PAR LE TITULAIRE DE LA LICENCE À L'ÉGARD DE

TOUTE RÉCLAMATION, DEMANDE OU ACTION, QUELLE QUE SOIT LA NATURE DE LA CAUSE DE LA REVENDICATION, DEMANDE OU ACTION ALLÉGUANT TOUTE PERTE, BLESSURE OU DES DOMMAGES, DIRECTS OU INDIRECTS, QUI POURRAIENT RÉSULTER DE L'UTILISATION OU LA POSSESSION DE CES DONNÉES, OU DE TOUTE PERTE DE BÉNÉFICES, REVENUS, CONTRATS OU ÉCONOMIE ATTENDUE OU DE TOUT AUTRE DOMMAGE DIRECT, INDIRECT, ACCESSOIRE, PARTICULIER OU CONSÉCUTIF, DÉCOULANT DE L'UTILISATION DU TITULAIRE OU DE L'IMPOSSIBILITÉ D'UTILISER CES DONNÉES, DE TOUT DÉFAUT DE CES DONNÉES, OU DE LA VIOLATION DE CES MODALITÉS OU CONDITIONS, QUE CE SOIT DANS UNE ACTION EN RESPONSABILITÉ CONTRACTUELLE OU DÉLICTUELLE OU FONDÉE SUR UNE GARANTIE, MÊME SI HERE OU SES CONCÉDANTS DE LICENCE ONT ÉTÉ AVISÉS DE LA POSSIBILITÉ D'UN TEL DOMMAGE. Certains États, territoires et pays n'autorisent pas certaines exclusions de responsabilité ou limitations des dommages-in-térêts, dans cette mesure, la disposition ci-dessus pourrait ne pas s'appliquer.

**Contrôle des exportations** : Le titulaire de la licence accepte, où qu'il soit, de n'exporter aucune partie des Données de tout produit direct des présentes sauf en conformité, ainsi qu'à toutes les licences et autorisations requises ci-après, aux lois applicables relatives à l'exportation, aux règles et règlements, y compris, mais pas uniquement aux lois, règles et règlements administrés par le Bureau du contrôle des avoirs étrangers du département du Commerce des États-Unis et le Bureau de l'industrie et de la sécurité du département du Com¬merce des États¬Unis. HERE est dispensée de ses ob¬ligations en vertu des présentes dans la mesure ou de telles lois, règles ou règlements relatifs à l'exportation de cette nature l'empêcheraient de s'y conformer.

**Intégralité de l'accord** : Ces modalités constituent l'intégralité de la licence entre HERE (et ses concédants, y compris leurs concédants et fournisseurs) et le titulaire de la licence eu égard à l'objet des présentes et remplace la totalité de toutes les ententes écrites ou orales antérieures conclues entre les parties concernant l'objet des présentes.

**Divisibilité** : Le titulaire de la licence et HERE reconnaissent que toute partie de l'accord jugée illégale ou inexécutable devra être enlevée et que le reliquat de l'accord restera entièrement en vigueur.

**Droit Applicable** : les termes et conditions ci-dessus sont assujetties aux lois de l'Etat du Illinois (pour les Données pour les régions Amériques et/ou Asie Pacifique) ou au droit néerlandais (pour les Données pour l'Europe, le Moyen-Orient et/ou l'Afrique), à l'exclusion

(i) des dispositions de conflit des lois, (ii) de la Conven¬tion des Nations Unies sur les Contrats de Vente Internationale de Marchandises, qui est expressément exclue.

Tout litige, réclamation, ou action découlant ou survenant en relation avec les Données (« Réclamations ») sera soumis à la compétence exclusive (a) des tribunaux de l'Etat de l'Illinois pour toutes Réclamations concernant les Données qui vous sont fournies au titre des présentes pour les régions Amériques et/ou Asie Pacifique et, (b) des tribunaux néerlandais pour les Données qui vous sont fournies au titre des présentes pour l'Europe, le Moyen-Orient et/ou l'Afrique.

**Utilisateurs finaux du gouvernement** : Si les Don¬nées sont en cours d'acquisition par ou pour le compte du gouvernement des États-Unis ou toute autre personne qui cherche à obtenir ou à appliquer des droits similaires à ceux habituellement réclamés par le gouvernement des États-Unis, ces Données sont considérées comme « article commercial » tel que ce terme est défini dans la réglementation 48 CFR ( « FAR ») 2,101, dont l'usage est autorisé conformément à la présente licence de l'utilisateur final. Chaque copie de Données livrée ou fournie par d'autres moyens doit être marquée et inscrite, le cas échéant, avec le texte suivant « Avis d'utilisation » et devra être traitée conformément aux Avis de ce type:

**AVIS D'UTILISATION**

NOM DE L'ENTREPRENEUR (FABRICANT/FOURNISSEUR) :

HERE

ADRESSE :

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

Ces Données commerciales sont des éléments tels que définis dans la FAR 2.101 qui sont soumis à la licence de l'utilisateur final en vertu de laquelle ces Données ont été fournies.

© 1987 – 2015 HERE. Tous droits réservés.

Si l'agent de négociation des contrats, un organisme du gouvernement fédéral, ou tout autre fonctionnaire fédéral refuse d'utiliser la légende fournie dans les présentes, le responsable des marchés, l'organisme du gouvernement fédéral, ou tout autre fonctionnaire fédéral doit en aviser HERE avant de rechercher des moyens supplémentaires ou autres droits dans les Données.

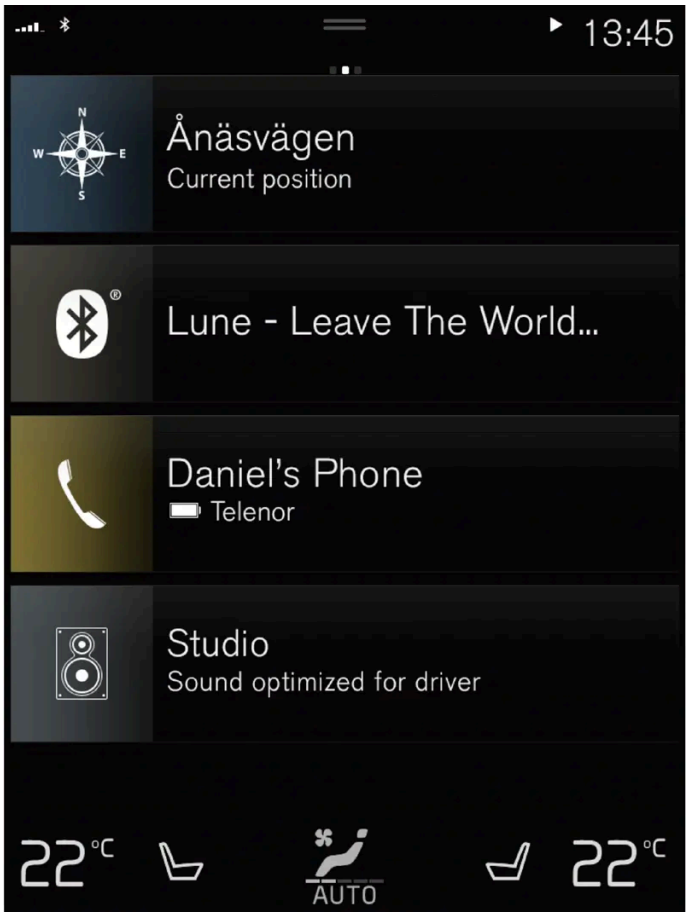
© 1987 – 2015 HERE. Tous droits réservés.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.13. Navigation system* in center display

The navigation system can be presented and controlled in several different ways, e.g. via the center display.




All settings for the navigation system can be changed in the center display. The driver can select how the map should be displayed or enter a destination here.

If the map image is not shown in the center display, tap the top tile (for the navigation system).

## Where am I?

What is the vehicle's current geographic location?

- Tap the vehicle symbol (blue triangle) on the map to display information directly on the map.

## Find the vehicle symbol on the map

After zooming out/in or moving the map, it may be difficult to find the vehicle's location on the map again. Tap the crosshairs to reset the map to follow the vehicle symbol.

## North or direction of travel facing up on the map

There are two ways to show the vehicle's movement in relation to the map. Tap the symbols to toggle between the vehicle's direction of travel or north shown facing up on the map.

When the map is shown with north facing up, the vehicle symbol moves in the actual compass direction on the map. If the vehicle is moving west, it will be shown moving left on the map (east is right, south is down, etc.).

When the vehicle symbol is pointing up, the map rotates under the vehicle symbol following the turns made by the vehicle. The compass symbol indicates which direction is north (N) on the map and the direction in which the front of the vehicle is pointing is shown in the center of the compass:

| Compass symbols | Compass direction |
|---|---|
| N | North |
| NE | Northeast |
| E | East |
| SE | Southeast |
| S | South |
| SW | Southwest |
| W | West |
| NW | Northwest |

## 2D or 3D view

Tap the symbols to toggle between 2D and 3D display.

With 3D display, the vehicle's direction of travel is always up. The map rotates under the vehicle symbols following the turns made by the vehicle. The compass indicates which direction is north (N) on the map and the direction in which the front of the vehicle is pointing is shown in the center of the compass: The map scale is not shown in 3D mode.

With 2D display, the map is shown with north facing up, and the vehicle symbols moves in the actual compass direction on the map.

## Zoom in

To make the map larger, tap the center display twice in quick succession with one finger or place two fingers on the center display and move them apart ("stretch").

## Zoom out

To make the map smaller, tap the center display once with two fingers or place two fingers on the center display and move them together ("pinch").

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

### Scroll

Place one finger on the map, swipe in the desired direction and release. The scroll function is only possible with the map in maximized view, not minimized.

### Change the headers displayed

Maximize the map and tap the map heading at the top of the center display. The following headers can be displayed on the map:

1. Destination Destination, arrival time (ETA) or remaining travel time (RTA) and distance to destination (Distance). For more information on selecting ETA or RTA, see "Route settings and guidance".
2. Current position as address (Address) or as coordinates (Coordinates). When coordinates are shown, altitude is also shown (Altitude). To choose between address and coordinates, see section "Map settings".

* Option/accessory.

---

## 14.14. Navigation system* in the instrument panel

The navigation system can be presented and controlled in several different ways, e.g. via the instrument panel.

The map is only shown on the 12" instrument panel.

While driving, the driver receives voice guidance and instructions on the instrument panel. Map guidance in the instrument panel can also be activated without entering a destination.

### The right-side steering wheel keypad and instrument panel

Some of the navigation system's functions, such as **Take me home** and **Cancel guidance**, can be controlled using the right-side steering wheel keypad. If a message is displayed in the instrument panel, it must be accepted or dismissed before the menu can be displayed.

1. Open/close the menu. The menu will close automatically after a period of inactivity or after certain selections.
2. Scroll among the menus.
3. Scroll among selections in a menu.
4. Confirm or mark a selection.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 14.15. Activating and deactivating the navigation system* in the instrument panel

The navigation system will be automatically displayed in the instrument panel when a destination is set. The navigation system can also be displayed without entering a destination.

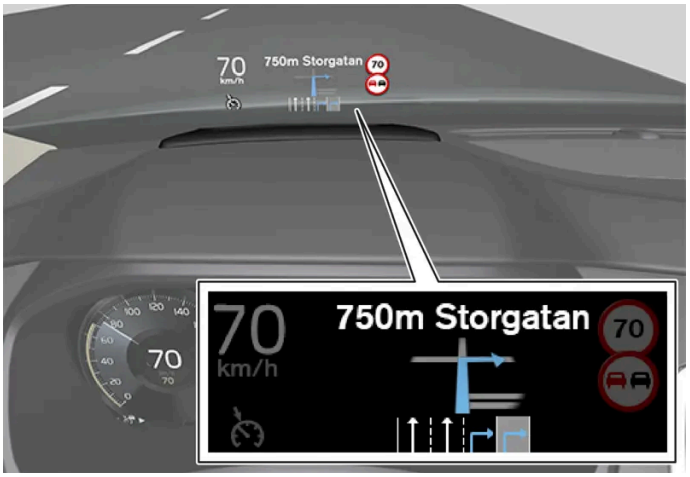
1. Pull down the center display's Top view.
2. Tap **Settings**.
3. Tap **My Car** → **Displays** → **Driver Display Information**.
4. Tap the **Show Map** radio button to display the navigation system in the instrument panel without entering a destination.

* Option/accessory.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 14.16. Navigation system* in head-up display*

The navigation system can be presented and controlled in several different ways, e.g. via the head-up display.




Navigation system in windshield.

The driver can also get guidance and information from the navigation system in the head-up display on the lower section of the windshield.

You can make settings to specify if the navigation system should be shown in the head-up display, as well as the position of the information field.

* Option/accessory.

# 14.17. Suggest new map information with Map Creator

If your Volvo is equipped with Sensus Navigation, maps from the Here map supplier are shown. If you find that any information is missing from a map, or want to suggest changes, you can do this at Here's Map Creator service. Such information can include new addresses or rerouted roads.

On Here's Map Creator [https://mapcreator.here.com/?site=volvo-com-consumers] service, you can create an account to log in and suggest map changes. Instructions for how to do this are also found there.

The changes you suggest are sent to Here for review. Once the information has been verified and approved, the information you suggested is added to their maps. The changes will be available in your Volvo after your suggestion has been approved by Here and implemented in a map update that you then install in your navigation system.

Suggestions for changes that are reported are reviewed and checked thoroughly before Here approves them and adds them to their maps. It can take up to twelve months before the changes reach the maps in your vehicle.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

> **Note**
>
> Volvo does not have the opportunity to verify, approve or implement the requests for map changes you send to Here.

# 14.18. Traffic information providers

Information on which companies deliver traffic information to your vehicle and its systems in different countries is found below.

| Region | Country | RTTI [1] | RDS-TMC [2] | Sirius XM [3] | VICS | T-DMB |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Africa** | South Africa | INRIX | | | | |
| **Asia** | China | INRIX | | | | |
| | Indonesia | INRIX | | | | |
| | Japan | | | | VICS | |
| | Korea | | | | | KBS |
| | Singapore | INRIX | | | | |
| | Thailand | INRIX | | | | |
| **Europe** | Austria | INRIX | [4] | | | |
| | Belgium | INRIX | | | | |
| | Czech Republic | INRIX | [4] | | | |
| | Denmark | INRIX | [4] | | | |
| | Finland | INRIX | | | | |
| | France | INRIX | | | | |
| | Germany | INRIX | [4] | | | |
| | Hungary | INRIX | | | | |
| | Italy | INRIX | | | | |
| | Luxembourg | INRIX | | | | |
| | Netherlands | INRIX | | | | |
| | Norway | INRIX | | | | |
| | Poland | INRIX | | | | |
| | Portugal | INRIX | | | | |
| | Russia | INRIX | | | | |
| | Slovakia | INRIX | | | | |
| | Slovenia | INRIX | | | | |
| | Spain | INRIX | [4] | | | |
| | Sweden | INRIX | [4] | | | |
| | Switzerland | INRIX | [4] | | | |
| | Turkey | INRIX | | | | |
| | United Kingdom | INRIX | ITIS | | | |

| Region | Country | RTTI [1] | RDS-TMC [2] | Sirius XM [3] | VICS | T-DMB |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Middle East** | Bahrain | INRIX | | | | |
| | Kuwait | INRIX | | | | |
| | Oman | INRIX | | | | |
| | Qatar | INRIX | | | | |
| | Saudi Arabia | INRIX | | | | |
| | United Arab Emirates | INRIX | | | | |
| **North America and Central America** | Canada | INRIX | | | | |
| | Mexico | INRIX | | | | |
| | USA | INRIX | | | | |
| **Oceania and Pacific Ocean** | Australia | INRIX | | | | |
| | New Zealand | INRIX | | | | |
| **South America** | Brazil | | HERE | | | |

[1] Traffic information via the internet (requires internet connection).

[2] Traffic information via the FM band.

[3] Traffic information via Sirius satellite radio.

[4] Free service only.

# 15. Wheels and tires

## 15.1. Changing a wheel

### 15.1.1. Changing a wheel

Wheel changes must always be carried out correctly. The following instructions show how to remove and install a wheel and what is important to keep in mind. Make sure that the tire dimension is approved for use on the vehicle.

**Warning**

- If a tire must be changed near passing traffic, make sure all passengers move to a safe location.
- Use a jack intended for the vehicle when changing a tire. For any other job, use stands to support the vehicle.
- Never crawl under or allow any part of your body to be extended under a vehicle supported by a jack.
- Never let anyone remain in the vehicle when it is raised on a jack.

**Important**

The jack* provided with your vehicle is intended to be used only in temporary situations such as changing wheels in the event of a flat tire. Only the jack that came with your particular model should be used to lift the vehicle. If the vehicle needs to be lifted more frequently or for a prolonged period, using a garage jack or hoist is recommended. Always follow this device's instructions for use.

When not in use, the jack should be kept in its storage compartment under the cargo compartment floor. The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to fit.

#### Removing a wheel

Read through all instructions before starting. Before raising the vehicle using a jack or lift, take out all the tools you will need.

1. Turn on the vehicle's hazard warning flashers if a wheel change must be performed in an area with traffic.
2. Make sure that the parking brake is engaged and put the gear selector in P position.
3. Place chocks in front of and behind the wheels that are still on the ground. For example, use heavy wooden blocks or large stones.

4. Using the lug wrench, screw the towing eye into place as far as possible.

5. Remove the plastic covers from the wheel bolts using the designated tool.

6. With the vehicle still on the ground, use the lug wrench/towing eye to loosen the wheel bolts ½-1 turn by pressing downward (counterclockwise). Always start with the locking wheel bolts*.

7. Follow the instructions for safely lifting the vehicle using a jack.

8. Raise the vehicle until the wheel to be changed can move freely. Unscrew the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

## Installing a wheel

1. Clean the contact surfaces between the wheel and the wheel hub.
2. Lift the wheel into place. If the vehicle has tires or wheels of different sizes on the front and back, make sure the correct dimensions are used for each position. Tighten the wheel bolts securely.

   Do **not** grease the wheel bolt threads.
3. Lower the vehicle so that the wheel cannot rotate.
4. Tighten the wheel bolts in a crisscross pattern (as shown in illustration). It is important that the wheel bolts are securely tightened. Tighten to 140 Nm (103 ft. lbs.). Use a torque wrench to check torque.

5. Press the plastic covers over the wheel bolts.
6. Check the tire inflation pressure and store the new inflation pressure in the tire pressure monitoring system*.

**Warning**

The wheel bolts may need to be tightened again several days after a wheel change. Temperature fluctuations and vibrations can cause them to loosen slightly.

**Note**

- After inflating a tire, always replace the valve cap to help prevent valve damage caused by gravel, dirt, etc.
- Use plastic valve caps only. Metal caps could corrode and become difficult to remove.

* Option/accessory.

# 15.1.2. Jack*

The jack can be used to lift the vehicle to e.g. change a wheel.

**Important**

The jack* provided with your vehicle is intended to be used only in temporary situations such as changing wheels in the event of a flat tire. Only the jack that came with your particular model should be used to lift the vehicle. If the vehicle needs to be lifted more frequently or for a prolonged period, using a garage jack or hoist is recommended. Always follow this device's instructions for use.

When not in use, the jack should be kept in its storage compartment under the cargo compartment floor. The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to fit.

The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to fit.

**Note**

For vehicles with leveling control*: If the vehicle is equipped with pneumatic suspension, this feature must be turned off before the vehicle is lifted onto a tow truck.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 15.1.3. Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts hold the wheel in place on the wheel hub.

Only use rims that have been tested and approved by Volvo and are included in Volvo's original product range.

Use a torque wrench to check that the wheel bolts are tightened correctly.

Do **not** grease the wheel bolt threads.

**Warning**

The wheel bolts may need to be tightened again several days after a wheel change. Temperature fluctuations and vibrations can cause them to loosen slightly.

**Important**

The wheel bolts should be tightened to 140 Nm (103 ft. lbs.). Over-tightening or under-tightening could damage the threaded joints.

### Locking wheel bolt kit*

To loosen or tighten the locking wheel bolts, turn the wrench in the locking bolt until it fully engages in the code grooves. When removing a wheel, always start with the locking wheel bolts. When mounting a wheel, end with the locking bolt.

**Important**

Make sure you have a solid connection between bolt and wheel bolt key when loosening/tightening the wheel bolts. Applying force at an angle could damage the slots in the wheel bolts and the wheel bolt key and make it impossible to install or remove the wheel.

When the wheel bolt key is not being used, stow it in its designated location in the foam block under the cargo compartment floor. This is important to remember so that the tool is available if the vehicle is taken to a workshop. If you lose the key, contact your Volvo retailer.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 15.1.4. Spare wheel

The spare wheel[1] is a Temporary Spare and can be used to temporarily replace one of the vehicle's regular wheels with a punctured tire.

The spare wheel is only intended for temporary use. Replace it with a normal wheel as soon as possible.

The driving characteristics of the vehicle change and ground clearance reduces when the spare wheel is used. Do not wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash while using the Temporary Spare.

The recommended tire pressure must be maintained regardless of at which position the temporary spare wheel is used on the vehicle.

If the spare wheel is damaged, a replacement can be purchased from a Volvo retailer.

**Warning**

Current legislation prohibits the use of the "Temporary Spare" wheel other than as a temporary replacement for a punctured tire. It must be replaced as soon as possible by a standard tire. Roadholding and handling may be affected with the "Temporary Spare" wheel in use.

**Warning**

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) with a spare tire mounted on the vehicle.
- The vehicle must never be driven with more than one "Temporary Spare" wheel mounted.
- Driving with a spare wheel may alter the driving characteristics of the vehicle. Replace the spare wheel with a normal wheel as soon as possible.
- The spare wheel is smaller than the normal wheel, which affects the vehicle's ground clearance. Watch for high curbs and do not wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash when a spare wheel is mounted.
- Follow the manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure for the spare wheel.
- On all-wheel drive vehicles, the drive on the rear axle can be disconnected.
- If the spare wheel is mounted on the front axle, snow chains must not be used.
- The spare wheel must not be repaired.

**Important**

The vehicle must not be driven with wheels of different dimensions or with a spare tire other than the one the vehicle is approved for. Using tires of different sizes can seriously damage the vehicle's transmission due to different rolling circumferences.

Vehicles designed for different front and rear tire or wheel dimensions must have the same type and make of tire on the front and rear axles.

[1] Not available on all models.

---

# 15.1.5. Handling the spare wheel

Follow these instructions regarding handling the spare wheel[1].

## Accessing the spare wheel

This illustration is generic and appearance may vary.

The spare tire is located in the spare wheel well under the cargo compartment with the outside of the wheel facing downward. The spare tire is secured with a bolt that goes through the tire and attaches it to the body. The foam block contains all tools needed to change a wheel.

1. Lift the rear edge of the cargo compartment floor.
2. Unscrew the retaining bolt.
3. Lift out the spare wheel.

## Stowing a flat tire

1. Screw the spare tire's retaining bolt back on.

> **Important**
>
> Do not attempt to unscrew the lower part of the retaining bolt if it is attached to the body, as this could cause it to break.
>
> If the retaining bolt becomes dislodged from its lower attachment point in the body under the spare tire, replace it in the hole and turn clockwise to secure it again.

> **Warning**
>
> On vehicles with 48 V batteries, the bolt is attached to the battery box instead of the body. If the lower part of the retaining bolt is not dislodged when the spare tire is taken out, it should be removed to help prevent injury when the flat tire is replaced.

2. Put the tools back in their correct positions in the foam block.

3. Then lower the trunk/cargo compartment floor and place the punctured tire in the trunk/cargo compartment.

[1] Not available on all models.

---

# 15.1.6. Snow chains

Using snow chains and/or snow tires can help improve traction in winter driving conditions.

Volvo does not recommend use of snow chains on wheel dimensions other than 7.5x18 ET 50.5 215/55.

**Warning**

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent snow chains that are suitable for the vehicle model and the tire and wheel sizes. Only **one-sided** snow chains are permitted.

If uncertain about snow chains, Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. Use of the wrong snow chains could cause serious damage to the vehicle and result in an accident.

Using snow chains could result in malfunction of the system for monitoring of tire inflation pressures* [1].

**Important**

Snow chains can be used on the vehicle, with the following restrictions:

- Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions carefully. Install chains as tightly as possible and retighten periodically.
- Only put snow chains on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive vehicles).
- If accessory, aftermarket or "custom" tires and wheels with different dimensions than the original tires and wheels are used, snow chains in some cases may NOT be used. Sufficient distance between the chains and brakes, suspension and body components must be maintained.
- Check local regulations regarding the use of snow chains before installing.
- Never exceed the snow chain manufacturer's specified maximum speed limit. Under no circumstances should you exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Avoid bumps, holes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains.
- Avoid driving on surfaces without snow as this wears out both the snow chains and the tires.
- The handling of the vehicle can be adversely affected when driving with chains. Avoid fast or sharp turns as well as locked wheel braking.
- Some types of strap-on chains affect brake components and therefore must NOT be used.

Consult a Volvo retailer for more information about snow chains.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

---

# 15.1.7. Snow tires

Snow tires are designed for winter driving conditions.

Volvo recommends snow tires with specific dimensions. The tire dimensions vary depending on engine type. When driving with snow tires, the correct type of tires must be mounted on all four wheels.

## Tips for changing snow tires

When switching between regular tires and snow tires, mark the tires according to which side they were mounted on, e.g. **L** for left and **R** for right.

Contact a Volvo retailer for assistance determining the most suitable rims and tires.

## Studded tires

Studded tires should be broken in by driving 500–1000 km (300–600 miles) slowly and gently to help the studs settle properly in the tires. This gives the tire, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

> **Note**
>
> Legal requirements concerning the use of studded tires may vary. Always follow local laws and regulations.

## Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tires than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not driving on snow tires that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm (0.15 inch).

---

# 15.1.8. Flat tire

Turn on the hazard warning flashers if you get a flat tire near passing traffic.

Move the vehicle out of traffic if this can be done safely. Call road assistance if necessary.

If possible, exit the vehicle on the side with the least traffic.

## Handling a flat tire

The vehicle is equipped with either a tire sealing system for temporarily sealing a tire, or a spare wheel [1]. See the relevant section for instructions on use.

[1] Not available on all models.

---

# 15.1.9. Tool kit

Tools for e.g. towing or changing wheels are provided in the vehicle's cargo compartment.

Examples of tools.

1 Jack*

2 Tool for removing the plastic wheel bolt covers

3 Funnel for refilling fluids

4 Wheel bolt key* and towing eyelet

If the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire* [1], a jack and wheel bolt key are provided instead of the tire sealing system.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Not available on all models.

---

# 15.2. Tires

## 15.2.1. Tire sidewall designations

The following information can be found on a tire's sidewall.

Federal law mandates that tire manufacturers place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires (see the illustration).

The vehicle has been certified with certain combinations of wheels and tires.

The following information is listed on the tire sidewall:

The tire designation:

> **Note**
>
> Please be aware that the following tire designation is an **example only** and that this particular tire may not be available on your vehicle.

1. 215: The width of the tire (in millimeters) from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. The larger the number, the wider the tire.
2. 65: The ratio of the tire's height to its width in percent.
3. R: Radial tire (the designation RF and the ◎ symbol indicate that the vehicle is equipped with optional self-supporting run flat tires[1].
4. 15: The diameter of the wheel rim (in inches).
5. 95: The tire's load index. In this example, a load index of 95 equals a maximum load of 1521 lbs (690 kg).
6. H: The tire's speed rating, or the maximum speed at which the tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time, carrying a permissible load for the vehicle, and with correct inflation pressure. For example, H indicates a speed rating of 210 km/h (130 mph).

> **Note**
>
> The tire's load index and speed rating may not appear on the sidewall because they are not required by law.

7. M+S or M/S = Mud and Snow, AT = All Terrain, AS = All Season

8. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN): This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers are the factory code where the tire was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was made. For example, 0717 means that the tire was manufactured during week 7 of 2017. The numbers in between are marketing codes used at the manufacturer's discretion. This information helps a tire manufacturer identify a tire for safety recall purposes.
9. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used: Indicates the number of plies indicates or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.
10. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in pounds and kilograms that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the vehicle's tire information placard located on the B-Pillar for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.
11. Treadwear, Traction, and Temperature grades.
12. Maximum permissible inflation pressure: The greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire. This limit is set by the tire manufacturer.

## Speed Symbol

A tire's Speed Symbol (SS) indicates the maximum speed for which the tire has been certified and should be at least equivalent to the vehicle's top speed.

Winter tires, with or without studs, are exceptions and may use a lower SS. When winter tires are installed, the vehicle may not be driven faster than the tires' SS.

The vehicle's speed should always be determined by the posted speed limit and traffic and road conditions, not the tire's SS.

The following table indicates the maximum permissible speed for each SS.

| | |
|---|---|
| M | 130 km/h (81 mph) |
| Q | 160 km/h (100 mph) |
| T | 190 km/h (118 mph) |
| H | 210 km/h (130 mph) |
| V | 240 km/h (149 mph) |
| W | 270 km/h (168 mph) |
| Y | 300 km/h (186 mph) |

**Warning**

- The wheel and tire sizes for your Volvo are specified to meet stringent stability and handling requirements. Unapproved wheel/tire size combinations can negatively affect your vehicle's stability and handling.
- Any damage caused by installation of unapproved wheel/tire size combinations will not be covered by your new vehicle warranty. Volvo assumes no responsibility for death, injury, or expenses that may result from such installations.

[1] Self-supporting run flat tires may not be available on all models.

# 15.2.2. Uniform Tire Quality Grading

**ALL PASSENGER VEHICLE TIRES MUST CONFORM TO FEDERAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS IN ADDITION TO THESE GRADES.**

**Quality grades can be found, where applicable, on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:**

**Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

## TREADWEAR

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and many depart significantly from the norm due to variation in driving habits, maintenance practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## TRACTION

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

> **Warning**
>
> The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight-ahead) traction tests and is not a measure of cornering (turning) traction.

## TEMPERATURE

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a minimum level of performance that all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

> **Warning**
>
> The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and tire failure.

---

# 15.2.3. Tire terminology

The following is a glossary of tire-related terms.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

- Tire information placard: A placard showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure, and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

- Tire Identification Number (TIN): A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture.
- Inflation pressure: A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- Standard load: A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tires load carrying capability.
- Extra load: A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- kPa: Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- PSI: Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- B-pillar: The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- Bead area of the tire: Area of the tire next to the rim.
- Sidewall of the tire: Area between the bead area and the tread.
- Tread area of the tire: Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- Rim: The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.
- Maximum load rating: A figure indicating the maximum load in pounds and kilograms that can be carried by the tire. This rating is established by the tire manufacturer.
- Maximum permissible inflation pressure: The greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire. This limit is set by the tire manufacturer.
- Recommended tire inflation pressure: Inflation pressure, established by Volvo, which is based on the type of tires that are mounted on a vehicle at the factory. This information can be found on the tire inflation placard(s) located on the driver's side B-pillar and in the tire inflation table.
- Cold tires: The tires are considered to be cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding (ambient) air. This temperature is normally reached after the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours.

---

# 15.2.4. Approved tire pressure

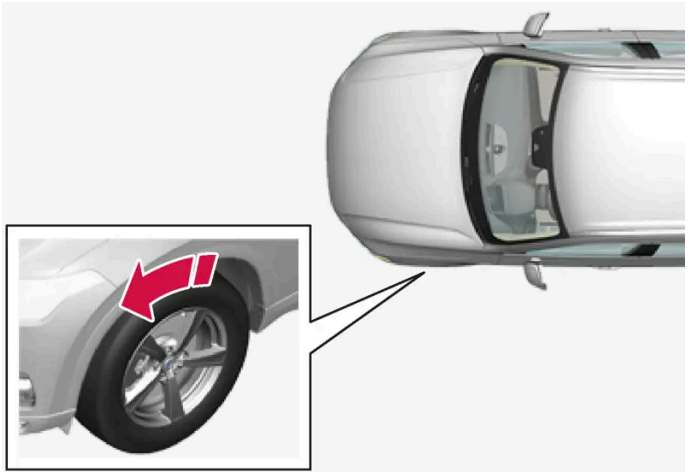
The following tire pressures are recommended by Volvo for your vehicle. Refer to the tire inflation placard for information specific to the tires installed on your vehicle at the factory.

| Tire dimensions | Cold tire pressure for up to five persons | |
|---|---|---|
| | Front<br>psi (kPa) | Rear<br>psi (kPa) |
| 215/55 R18<br>235/45 R19<br>245/40 R20 | 38 (260) | 38 (260) |
| Temporary spare tire<br>T125/80 R17<br>T125/70 R18<br>T125/60 R19 | 60 (420) | 60 (420) |

---

# 15.2.5. Tire direction of rotation

Tires with tread designed to roll in only one direction are marked with an arrow on the sidewall.



The arrow shows the tire's direction of rotation.

- Tires should maintain the same direction of rotation throughout their service life.
- Tires should only be moved between the front and back, never from right to left or vice versa.
- Incorrectly mounted tires impair the vehicle's braking properties and ability to force aside rain, snow and slush.
- The tires with the most tread should always be mounted on the rear wheels to help reduce the risk of rear-wheel skidding.
- Never switch positions between the front and rear axles on vehicles with different front and rear tire or wheel dimensions.
- To help reduce the risk of rear-wheel skid when driving on wet roads, Volvo recommends that the rear tires do not have significantly less tread than the front tires.

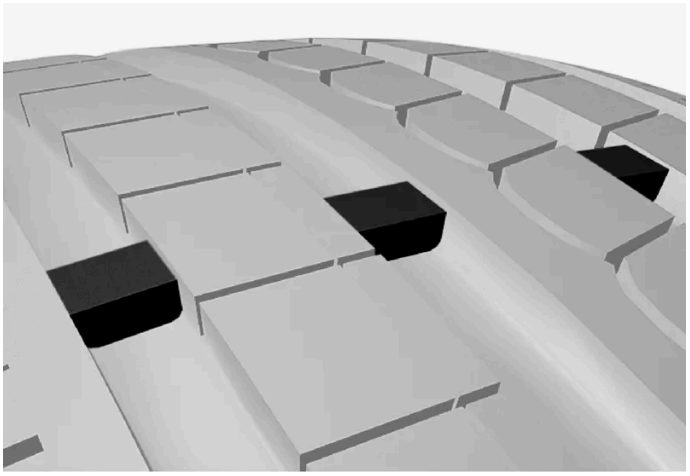
**Note**

Make sure to have tires of the same type, dimensions and make on both the front and rear axles.

Vehicles with different front and rear tire dimensions must have the same type and make of tire on the front and rear axles.

# 15.2.6. Tread wear indicator

The tread wear indicator shows the status of the tire's tread.



The tread wear indicator is a narrow elevated strip running across the tire's longitudinal tread grooves. The letters TWI (Tread Wear Indicator) are visible on the side of the tire. When approximately 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) is left on the tread, the tread will be at the same height as the tread wear indicator. Replace the tire as soon as possible. Tires with low tread offer very poor traction in rain or snow.

---

# 15.3. Tire inflation pressure

---

# 15.3.1. Tire inflation pressure monitoring

---

# 15.3.1.1. Tire Pressure Monitoring System*

The tire inflation pressure monitoring system[1] provides an indicator symbol in the instrument panel if pressure is too low in one or more tires.

This symbol illuminates to indicate low inflation pressure. Check the inflation pressure in the **Car Status** app in the center display.

If there is a system malfunction, the inflation pressure warning symbol will flash for approximately one minute and then glow steadily.

## System description

The tire pressure monitoring system measures differences in rotational speed between the wheels through the ABS system to determine if the tires are properly inflated. If inflation pressure in a tire is too low, its diameter (and consequently its rotational speed) changes. By comparing the tires with each other, the system can determine if the pressure in one or more tires is too low.

**General information about the tire pressure monitoring system**

In the following description, the tire monitoring system is generally referred to as TPMS.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) [2] should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## To keep in mind

- Always save the new inflation pressure in the system after changing a tire or adjusting the inflation pressure.
- Using snow chains can affect tire inflation pressure monitoring. This is indicated by a symbol and message in the instrument panel. When the snow chains are removed, all tires should be checked and adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. The new inflation pressure should then be saved in the tire pressure monitoring system.
- If you switch to a tire of another size than the factory-mounted tires, the system must be reset by storing a new inflation pressure for these tires to avoid false warnings.
- If a spare wheel [2] is used, it is possible that the tire pressure monitoring system will not work correctly due to the differences between the wheels.
- The system does not replace the need for regular tire inspection and maintenance.
- It is not possible to deactivate the tire pressure monitoring system.

**Warning**

- Incorrect inflation pressure could lead to tire failure, which could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- The system cannot predict sudden tire damage.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

[2] Not available on all models.

---

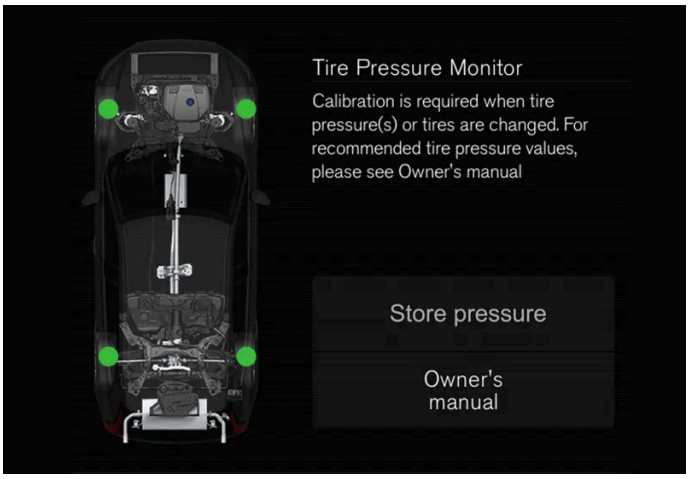
# 15.3.1.2. Viewing tire pressure status in the center display*

With the system for tire inflation pressure monitoring[1], inflation pressure status can be viewed in the center display.

## Checking status

The vehicle may need to be driven for a few minutes at a speed above 35 km/h (22 mph) to activate the system.

1. Open the **Car Status** app in App view.
2. Tap **TPMS** to display the status of the tires.




The illustration is generic. Layout may vary depending on vehicle model or software version.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

---

# 15.3.1.3. Action when warned of low tire pressure

When the tire inflation pressure monitoring system[1] detects low inflation pressure in a tire, immediate action is required.

If the system's indicator symbol illuminates and the message about low inflation pressure is displayed, check the tire pressure and inflate if necessary.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Check the inflation pressure on all four tires using a tire pressure gauge.
3. Inflate the tire to the correct inflation pressure; see the tire pressure placard on the driver's side B pillar for recommended pressures for factory-mounted tires.
4. After the inflation pressure has been adjusted, always save the new inflation pressure in the system via the center display.

   Please be aware that the indicator symbol will not go out until the low tire pressure has been corrected and a storing procedure has been started for the new inflation pressure.

   The vehicle may need to be driven for a few minutes at a speed above 35 km/h (22 mph) to activate the system.

**Note**

To help prevent incorrect inflation pressure, pressure should be checked when the tires are cold. The tires are considered to be cold when they have reached the same temperature as the ambient temperature (about 3 hours after the vehicle was last driven). After driving for a few kilometers, the tires will warm up and the pressure will increase.

**Note**

- After inflating a tire, always replace the valve cap to help prevent valve damage caused by gravel, dirt, etc.
- Use plastic valve caps only. Metal caps could corrode and become difficult to remove.

**Warning**

- Incorrect inflation pressure could lead to tire failure, which could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- The system cannot predict sudden tire damage.

[1] Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

# 15.3.1.4. Saving new reference values for tire inflation pressure monitoring*

In order for the tire inflation pressure monitoring system[1] to function correctly, inflation pressure reference values must be saved correctly. To help ensure that the system can correctly alert the driver of low inflation pressure, this must be done each time the tires are changed or the inflation pressure is adjusted.

For example, when driving with a heavy load or at high speeds (over 160 km/h (100 mph)), tire pressure should be adjusted to the Volvo-recommended tire pressure values. The system should then be reset by saving the new inflation pressure.

To store the new inflation pressure as a reference value in the system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Inflate the tire to the correct inflation pressure; see the tire pressure placard on the driver's side B pillar for recommended pressures for factory-mounted tires.
3. Start the vehicle.
4. Open the **Car Status** app in App view.
5. Tap **TPMS**.
6. 
   > **Note**
   >
   > The vehicle must be stationary for the **Store Pressure** button to be selectable.

   Tap **Store Pressure**.
7. Tap **OK** to confirm that the tire pressure in all four tires has been checked and adjusted.
8. Drive the vehicle until the new inflation pressure has been saved. The new inflation pressure is stored when the vehicle is driven at speeds over 35 km/h (22 mph).

> When enough data has been collected for the system to detect low inflation pressure, the animation showing the progress of the storing procedure will disappear from the center display. The system will not provide any further confirmation that the new inflation pressure has been stored.

If storing cannot be performed, a message will be displayed.

> **Warning**
>
> The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, which is invisible and odorless but very poisonous. The procedure for saving a new inflation pressure must therefore always be performed outdoors or in a workshop with exhaust gas extraction.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

---

# 15.3.1.5. Tire inflation pressure monitoring system* messages

A number of messages related to the tire inflation pressure monitoring system[1] may be displayed. Several examples are provided below.

| | |
|---|---|
| Instrument panel: **Tire pressure low Check Car Status app in center display** | The indicator symbol will illuminate to indicate that inflation pressure is low in one or more tires. See the **Car Status** app in the center display for more information. |
| Instrument panel: **Tire pressure system Temporarily unavailable** | The indicator symbol will flash for about 1 minute and then glow steadily. The system is temporarily unavailable and will be activated momentarily. |
| Instrument panel: **Tire pressure system Service required** | The indicator symbol will flash for about 1 minute and then glow steadily. If the system is not working properly, contact a workshop[2]. |

* Option/accessory.

[1] Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 15.3.2. Checking tire pressure

Correct inflation pressure helps improve driving stability, save fuel and increase the service life of the tires.

Tire pressure decreases over time, which is normal. Tire pressure also varies depending on the ambient temperature. Driving on under-inflated tires could cause the vehicle to overheat and lead to damage. Tire pressure affects traveling comfort, road noise and driving characteristics.

Check the pressure in the tires every month. Use the recommended inflation pressure for cold tires to help maintain good tire performance. Under-inflated or over-inflated tires could cause uneven tread wear.

Use an air pressure gauge and check the inflation pressure on all the tires, including the spare tire[1], at least once a month and before long trips. Volvo recommends buying a reliable air pressure gauge, as the automatic gauges provided at service stations may be inaccurate.

**Warning**

- Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failure and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation, or "blow-out," with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury.
- Under-inflated tires reduce the load carrying capacity of your vehicle.

### Cold tires

Inflation pressure should be checked when the tires are cold. The tires are considered to be cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding (ambient) air. This temperature is normally reached after the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours.

After driving for approximately 1.6 km (1 mile), the tires are considered to be warm. If you need to drive longer than that to inflate the tires, check and record the inflation pressure of the tires first and inflate accordingly when you arrive at the pump.

When the ambient temperature changes, so does the inflation pressure. A 10-degree temperature drop causes a corresponding drop in inflation pressure of 1 psi (7 kPa). Check the inflation pressure of the tires regularly and adjust to the correct pressure, which can be found on the vehicle's tire information decal or certification label.

If you check inflation pressure when the tires are warm, you should never release air. The tires become warm after driving and it is normal for warm tires to have an inflation pressure above the recommended pressure for cold tires. A warm tire with an inflation pressure equal to or under the recommended pressure for cold tires could be significantly under-inflated.

[1] Not available in all models.

---

# 15.3.3. Adjusting tire pressure

Tire pressure decreases over time, which is normal. The tire pressure must therefore be adjusted to maintain the recommended tire pressure.

Use the recommended inflation pressure for cold tires to help maintain good tire performance and even wear.

> **Note**
>
> To help prevent incorrect inflation pressure, pressure should be checked when the tires are cold. The tires are considered to be cold when they have reached the same temperature as the ambient temperature (about 3 hours after the vehicle was last driven). After driving for a few kilometers, the tires will warm up and the pressure will increase.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire and press the air pressure gauge firmly onto the valve.
2. Inflate the tire to the correct inflation pressure; see the tire pressure placard on the driver's side B pillar for recommended pressures for factory-mounted tires.
3. Screw the valve cap back on.

> **Note**
>
> - After inflating a tire, always replace the valve cap to help prevent valve damage caused by gravel, dirt, etc.
> - Use plastic valve caps only. Metal caps could corrode and become difficult to remove.

4. Visually inspect the tire to make sure there are no nails or other embedded objects that could puncture the tire and cause air leakage.
5. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts, bulges or other irregularities.
6. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare tire[1].

> **Note**
>
> If you have overfilled the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.
>
> Some spare tires require higher inflation pressure than the other tires. Consult the tire inflation pressure table or the inflation pressure decal.

[1] Not available on all models.

---

# 15.3.4. Location of tire pressure decal

The tire pressure placard on the driver's side B pillar (between the front and the rear door) indicates tire pressure for different loads and speed conditions.

Location of the tire pressure placard

The decal specifies the designation for the factory-mounted tires on the vehicle, as well as load limits and inflation pressures.

> **Note**
>
> The decals shown in the Owner's Manual do not claim to be exact reproductions of those found in the vehicle. The purpose is to show approximately how they look and about where they are located on the vehicle. The information that applies for your vehicle in particular is found on the decal on the vehicle.

# 15.4. Temporary tire sealing

## 15.4.1. Tire sealing system

The temporary tire sealing system[1] (TMK) can be used to seal a puncture hole in a tire or to check and adjust the inflation pressure in the tire.
Models equipped with a spare wheel[2] do not have the tire sealing system.

**Warning**

**California Proposition 65**

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle [https://www.p65warnings.ca.gov/products/passenger-vehicle] .

The tire sealing system consists of a compressor and a bottle containing sealing compound. The sealing functions as a temporary repair.

**Note**

The sealing compound effectively seals tires with punctures in the tread but may not be able to fully seal tires with punctures in the sidewall. Do not use the tire sealing system on tires with large tears, cracks or similar damage.

**Note**

The compressor is intended for temporary tire sealing and is approved by Volvo.

### Location

The tire sealing system is located in a foam block under the cargo compartment floor.

### Sealing compound expiration date

The sealing compound bottle must be replaced if its expiration date has passed (see the decal on the bottle). Handle the old bottle as hazardous waste.

[1] Certain models only.

[2] Not available on all models.

---

# 15.4.2. Inflating tires using the compressor included in the tire sealing system

The vehicle's original tires can be inflated using the compressor in the tire sealing system.

1. The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in the 0 (Off) position and take out the electrical cable and the hose.
2. Unscrew the tire's valve cap and screw the hose's valve connector as far as possible onto the valve.

   Be sure the air release valve on the compressor's hose is completely closed.
3. Connect the electrical cable to the nearest 12 V outlet and start the vehicle.

> **Warning**
>
> Inhaling exhaust fumes could lead to serious injury. Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space or a space without sufficient ventilation.

> **Warning**
>
> Never leave children unattended in the vehicle while the engine is running.

4. Start the compressor by moving the switch to the I (On) position.
5. > **Important**
   >
   > Risk of overheating. The compressor should not be running for longer than 10 minutes at a time.

   Inflate the tire to the pressure specified on the tire pressure decal on the driver's side door pillar. If the inflation pressure is too high, use the air release valve to release air.
6. Switch off the compressor. Remove the hose and the electrical cable.
7. Screw the valve cap back onto the tire.

> **Note**
>
> - After inflating a tire, always replace the valve cap to help prevent valve damage caused by gravel, dirt, etc.
> - Use plastic valve caps only. Metal caps could corrode and become difficult to remove.

> **Note**
>
> The compressor is an electric device. Follow local regulations for disposal.

---

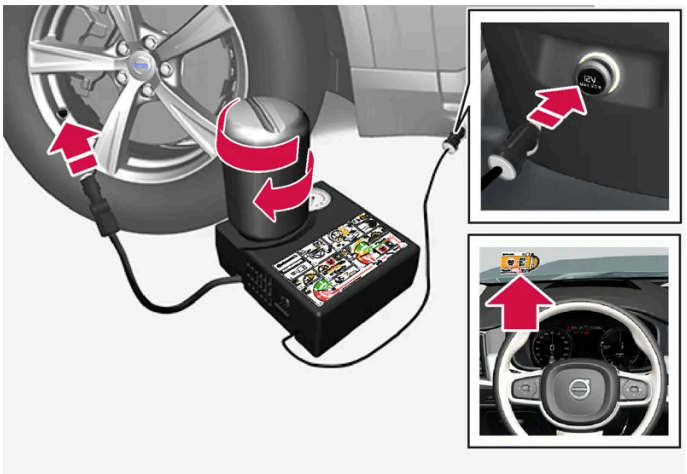
# 15.4.3. Using the tire sealing system

The temporary tire sealing system (TMK[1]) can be used to seal a puncture in a tire. Read through all instructions before use.

## Overview

1. Electrical cable
2. Hose
3. Air release valve
4. Protective hose cover
5. Speed limit sticker
6. Bottle holder (orange cover)
7. Air pressure gauge
8. Sealing compound bottle
9. Switch

## Connecting



**Note**

Do not break the seal of the bottle before use. The seal is broken automatically when the bottle is screwed into place.

**Warning**

Please keep the following points in mind when using the tire sealing system:

- The sealing compound bottle (no. 8 in the illustration) contains 1) rubber latex, natural and 2) ethanediol. These substances are harmful if swallowed.
- The contents of this bottle may cause allergic skin reactions or otherwise be potentially harmful to the respiratory tract, the skin, the central nervous system, and the eyes.

Precautions:

- Keep out of reach of children.
- Do not ingest the contents.
- Avoid prolonged or repeated contact with the skin. Remove any clothing that has come into contact with sealant.
- Wash thoroughly after handling.

First aid:

- Skin: Wash affected areas of the skin with soap and water. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Eyes: Flush with plenty of water for least 15 minutes, occasionally lifting the upper and lower eyelids. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Inhalation: Move the exposed person to fresh air. If irritation persists, get medical attention.
- Ingestion: Do NOT induce vomiting unless directed to do so by medical personnel. Get medical attention.
- Disposal: Dispose of this material and its container at a hazardous or special waste collection point.

**Warning**

Do not remove the bottle or the hose while the tire sealing system is being used.

1. **Preparations**

   Turn on the vehicle's hazard warning flashers if the tire sealing system is to be used in an area with traffic.

   If the puncture was caused by a nail or similar object, do not remove it. It will help seal the hole.

2. Peel off the speed limit sticker from the side of the compressor. Affix the decal to a clearly visible location on the windshield to remind the driver not to exceed this speed limit. Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) while using a tire that has been temporarily repaired with the tire sealing system.

3. Make sure the switch is in the 0 (Off) position and take out the electric cable and the hose.

4. Unscrew the orange cover on the compressor and unscrew the cap on the sealing compound bottle.

5. Screw the bottle onto the bottle holder as far as possible.

   The bottle and the bottle holder are equipped with catches to help prevent the sealing compound from leaking. Once the bottle is screwed into place into the bottle holder, it cannot be unscrewed. The bottle can only be removed by a workshop[2].

> **Warning**
>
> Do not unscrew the bottle. It is equipped with a catch to prevent leakage.

6. Unscrew the tire's valve cap and screw the hose's valve connector as far as possible onto the valve.

   Be sure the air release valve on the compressor's hose is completely closed.

7. **Begin tire sealing procedure**

   Connect the electrical cable to the nearest 12 V outlet and start the vehicle.

> **Note**
>
> Make sure that none of the vehicle's other 12 V sockets are used while the compressor is running.

> **Warning**
>
> Never leave children unattended in the vehicle while the engine is running.

> **Warning**
>
> Inhaling exhaust fumes could lead to serious injury. Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space or a space without sufficient ventilation.

8. Start the compressor by moving the switch to the I (On) position.

   When the compressor starts, the pressure can increase up to 6 bar (88 psi), but the pressure will decrease after approx. 30 seconds.

> **Warning**
>
> Never stand next to a tire being inflated with the compressor. If cracks, bulges, etc. form on the tire, switch off the compressor immediately. The vehicle should not be driven. Call roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed to a workshop for inspection/replacement of the tire. Volvo recommends an authorized workshop.

9. Inflate the tire for 7 minutes.

> **Important**
>
> To help avoid overheating, the compressor should never be used for more than 10 minutes at a time.

10. Switch off the compressor and check the inflation pressure using the air pressure gauge. The inflation pressure should be between 1.8 bar (26 psi) and 3.5 bar (51 psi). Release air by pressing the air release valve if the inflation pressure is too high.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

> **Warning**
>
> If pressure falls below 1.8 bar (26 psi), the hole in the tire may be too large. The vehicle should not be driven. Call roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed to a workshop for inspection/replacement of the tire. Volvo recommends an authorized workshop.

11. Switch off the compressor and remove the electrical cable.

12. Unscrew the hose from the tire's valve and screw the valve cap back on.

> **Note**
>
> - After inflating a tire, always replace the valve cap to help prevent valve damage caused by gravel, dirt, etc.
> - Use plastic valve caps only. Metal caps could corrode and become difficult to remove.

13. Put the protective hose cover onto the hose to help prevent leakage of any residual sealing compound. Return the equipment to the cargo compartment.

14. Immediately drive the vehicle at least 3 km (2 miles) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h(50 mph) to allow the sealing compound to seal the tire, and then recheck the inflation pressure.

> **Warning**
>
> During the tire's first revolution, some sealing compound may spray out of the puncture hole. Before driving away, make sure that no one is near the vehicle who could be sprayed with sealing compound. Make sure no one is within 2 meters (7 feet) of the vehicle.

15. **Rechecking the inflation pressure**

    Connect the hose to the tire's valve and screw the hose connector onto the valve as far as possible. The compressor must be switched off.

16. Check the inflation pressure on the air pressure gauge.
    - If the pressure is under 1.3 bar (19 psi), the tire is not sufficiently sealed. The vehicle should not be driven. Call roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.
    - If the inflation pressure is higher than 1.3 bar (19 psi), the tire must be inflated to the inflation pressure specified on the tire pressure decal on the driver's side door pillar (1 bar = 100 kPa = 14.5 psi). If the inflation pressure is too high, use the air release valve to release air.

> **Warning**
>
> Check inflation pressure regularly.

Volvo recommends driving to the nearest authorized Volvo workshop to have the tire replaced/repaired. Inform the workshop that the tire contains sealing compound.

The sealing compound bottle and the hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop for replacement.

**Warning**

After using the tire sealing system, the vehicle should not be driven farther than approximately 200 km (120 miles).

**Note**

The compressor is an electric device. Follow local regulations for disposal.

[1] Temporary Mobility Kit

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

# 15.5. Driving in winter

## 15.5.1. Snow chains

Using snow chains and/or snow tires can help improve traction in winter driving conditions.

Volvo does not recommend use of snow chains on wheel dimensions other than 7.5x18 ET 50.5 215/55.

**Warning**

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent snow chains that are suitable for the vehicle model and the tire and wheel sizes. Only **one-sided** snow chains are permitted.

If uncertain about snow chains, Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop. Use of the wrong snow chains could cause serious damage to the vehicle and result in an accident.

Using snow chains could result in malfunction of the system for monitoring of tire inflation pressures* [1].

Important

Snow chains can be used on the vehicle, with the following restrictions:

- Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions carefully. Install chains as tightly as possible and retighten periodically.
- Only put snow chains on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive vehicles).
- If accessory, aftermarket or "custom" tires and wheels with different dimensions than the original tires and wheels are used, snow chains in some cases may NOT be used. Sufficient distance between the chains and brakes, suspension and body components must be maintained.
- Check local regulations regarding the use of snow chains before installing.
- Never exceed the snow chain manufacturer's specified maximum speed limit. Under no circumstances should you exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Avoid bumps, holes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains.
- Avoid driving on surfaces without snow as this wears out both the snow chains and the tires.
- The handling of the vehicle can be adversely affected when driving with chains. Avoid fast or sharp turns as well as locked wheel braking.
- Some types of strap-on chains affect brake components and therefore must NOT be used.

Consult a Volvo retailer for more information about snow chains.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

---

# 15.5.2. Snow tires

Snow tires are designed for winter driving conditions.

Volvo recommends snow tires with specific dimensions. The tire dimensions vary depending on engine type. When driving with snow tires, the correct type of tires must be mounted on all four wheels.

## Tips for changing snow tires

When switching between regular tires and snow tires, mark the tires according to which side they were mounted on, e.g. **L** for left and **R** for right.

Contact a Volvo retailer for assistance determining the most suitable rims and tires.

## Studded tires

Studded tires should be broken in by driving 500–1000 km (300–600 miles) slowly and gently to help the studs settle properly in the tires. This gives the tire, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

> **Note**
>
> Legal requirements concerning the use of studded tires may vary. Always follow local laws and regulations.

### Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tires than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not driving on snow tires that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm (0.15 inch).

---

# 15.5.3. Preparing for a long trip

It is important to have the vehicle's systems and equipment checked carefully before driving long distances.

Check that

- the engine is running properly and that fuel consumption is normal
- there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid)
- the brake pedal is functioning properly
- all lights work
- tire tread depth and air pressure are at correct levels. Change to snow tires when driving in areas where there is a risk of snowy or icy roads
- the start battery is sufficiently charged
- the wiper blades are in good condition

It could also be a good idea to make sure the maps in the navigation system* are up to date, and to check requirements for vehicle loads, ferries, car trains, etc.

Keep in mind that data roaming charges may apply if the vehicle is connected to the Internet while in another country or service area.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 15.5.4. Winter driving

It is important to check the vehicle before driving in cold/snowy conditions to make sure it can be driven safely.

Before the cold season arrives:

- Make sure the engine coolant contains 50% antifreeze. This mixture helps protect the engine from frost erosion down to approx. –35 °C (–31 °F). Do not mix different types of antifreeze as this could pose a health risk.

- Keep the fuel tank well filled to prevent condensation from forming.
- Check the viscosity of the engine oil. Oil with low viscosity (thinner oil) improves cold-weather starting and reduces fuel consumption when driving with a cold engine.
- Check the condition and charge level of the start battery. Cold weather places greater demands on the start battery and reduces its capacity.

- Check the condition and charge level of the battery. Cold weather places greater demands on the battery and reduces its capacity.
- Use washer fluid containing antifreeze to help prevent ice from forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

See separate section for engine oil recommendations.

### Slippery driving conditions

To help optimize traction and roadholding, Volvo recommends using snow tires on all wheels whenever there is a risk of snow or ice on the road.

> **Note**
>
> Certain countries require use of winter tires by law. Not all countries permit the use of studded tires.

Practice driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the vehicle reacts.

---

## 15.6. Tires

The function of the tires is to carry loads, provide traction on road surfaces, reduce vibrations and protect the wheels from wear.

The tires significantly influence the vehicle's driving characteristics. The type, dimensions, tire pressure and speed rating have a considerable impact on how the vehicle performs.

Your vehicle is equipped with tires according to the vehicle's tire information placard on the B-pillar (the structural member at the side of the vehicle, at the rear of the driver's door opening).

> **Warning**
>
> A damaged tire could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

> **Important**
>
> Some Volvo models are equipped with an Ultra High Performance tire and wheel combination designed to provide maximum dry pavement performance with consideration for hydroplaning resistance. They may be more susceptible to road hazard damage and, depending on driving conditions, may achieve a tread life of less than 30,000 km (20,000 miles). Even if this vehicle is equipped with Volvo's advanced AWD or stability system, these tires are not designed for winter driving, and should be replaced with winter tires when weather conditions dictate.

The tires have good road holding characteristics and offer good handling on dry and wet surfaces. It should be noted however that the tires have been developed to give these features on snow/ice-free surfaces.

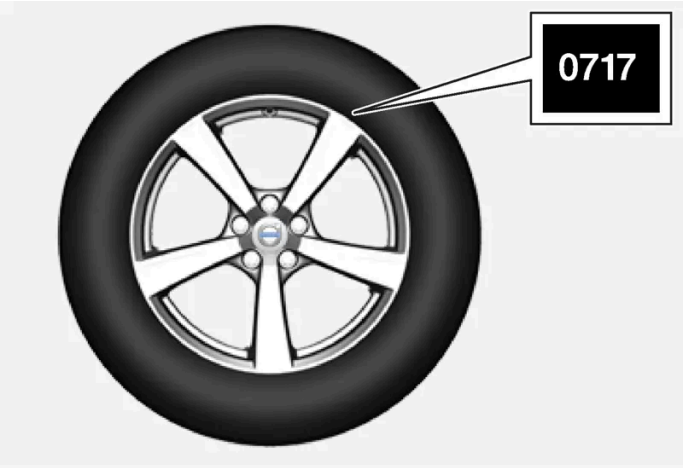
Most models are equipped with "all-season" tires, which provide a somewhat higher degree of roadholding on slippery road surfaces than tires without the "all-season" rating. However, for good roadholding on icy or snow-covered roads, Volvo recommends snow tires on all four wheels.

When replacing tires, be sure that the new tires are the same size designation, type (radial) and preferably from the same manufacturer, on all four wheels. Otherwise there is a risk of altering the vehicle's roadholding and handling characteristics.

## Recommended tires

On delivery, the car is equipped with Volvo original tires that have the VOL [1] marking on the side of the tires. These tires have been designed specifically for your vehicle. It is therefore important when replacing tires that the new tires have this same marking to help maintain the vehicle's driving characteristics, comfort and fuel consumption.

## New tires




Tires are perishable goods. After a few years, they will begin to harden and their friction properties will gradually deteriorate. Always replace tires with the freshest tires possible. This is particularly important for snow tires. A series of numbers is imprinted on the sidewall of the tire. The last four digits in the series is the Department of Transportation (DOT) stamp and indicates the week and year the tire was manufactured. The tire in the illustration has 0717 as the last four digits, which means it was manufactured week 7 of 2017.

## Tire age

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. It is recommended that tires generally be replaced after 6 years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates, frequent high loading conditions or Ultra Violet (U.V.) exposure can accelerate the

aging process. The temporary spare [2] should also be replaced at 6-year intervals, even if it has never been used. A tire with e.g., visible cracks or discoloration should be replaced immediately.

## Tire economy

- Maintain correct tire pressure.
- Avoid fast starts, hard braking and tire screeching.
- Tire wear increases with speed.
- Correct front wheel alignment is very important.
- Unbalanced wheels impair tire economy and driving comfort.
- Tires should maintain the same direction of rotation throughout their lifetime.
- When you change tires, the tires with the most tread should be mounted on the rear axle to reduce the risk of rear wheel skid during hydroplaning, turning or hard braking on wet roads.
- Hitting curbs or potholes can damage the tires and/or wheels permanently.
- Never switch positions between the front and rear axles on vehicles with different front and rear tire or wheel dimensions.

## Tire rotation

Driving style, tire pressure, climate and road conditions affect how quickly the tires age and exhibit signs of wear. Maintaining the correct tire pressure helps keep tread wear evenly distributed.

To help prevent major differences in tread depth and wear patterns forming on the tires, the front and rear wheels can be rotated, i.e. the front tires moved to the rear and the rear tires moved to the front. Ideally, tire rotation should be done the first time after approximately 5000 km (ca 3100 miles) and thereafter at 10,000 km (approx. 6200 miles) intervals.

If you have any questions regarding tread depth, Volvo recommends consulting an authorized Volvo workshop. If significant differences in wear (> 1 mm difference in tread depth) between the tires have already occurred, the least worn tires should be mounted on the rear wheels. A front wheel skid is usually easier to control than a rear-wheel skid. It is therefore important that the rear wheels do not lose grip before the front wheels.

> **Important**
>
> Vehicles with different tire or wheel dimensions on the front and rear axles must always have the wider tires and/or wheels on the rear axle. Switching between front and rear wheels, e.g. to obtain more even tire wear between the front and rear tires, is not allowed.

## Storing wheels and tires

When storing complete wheels (tires mounted on rims), they should be suspended off the floor or placed on their sides on the floor.

Tires not mounted on rims should be stored on their sides or standing upright, but should not be suspended.

> **Important**
>
> Tires should preferably be stored in a cool, dry, dark place, and should never be stored in close proximity to solvents, gasoline, oils, etc.

**Warning**

- The wheel and tire sizes for your Volvo are specified to meet stringent stability and handling requirements. Unapproved wheel/tire size combinations can negatively affect your vehicle's stability and handling.
- Any damage caused by installation of unapproved wheel/tire size combinations will not be covered by your new vehicle warranty. Volvo assumes no responsibility for death, injury, or expenses that may result from such installations.

[1] This may vary for certain tire dimensions.

[2] Not available on all models.

---

# 15.7. Determining the vehicle's permitted weight

Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance.

## Weight designations

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Federal/Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS/CMVSS) label, and the vehicle's tire information placard:

**Curb weight**

The weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Capacity weight**

All weight added to the curb weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, towbar weight is also part of cargo weight.

**Permissible axle weight**

The maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Federal/Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS/CMVSS) label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its maximum permissible weight.

**Gross vehicle weight (GVW)**

The vehicle's curb weight + cargo + passengers.

## Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 - 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

**Warning**

- Exceeding the permissible axle weight, gross vehicle weight, or any other weight rating limits can cause tire overheating resulting in permanent deformation or catastrophic failure.
- Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the tires that were original equipment on the vehicle because this will lower the vehicle's GVW rating. Use only tires with the correct load carrying capacity. Consult your Volvo retailer for information.

# 16. Loading, storage and passenger compartment

# 16.1. Loading

## 16.1.1. Loading recommendations

There are a number of things that are important to consider when carrying loads in or on the vehicle.

Load-carrying capacity is determined by the vehicle's curb weight. The total weight of all passengers and any installed accessories reduces the vehicle's load-carrying capacity by the corresponding amount.

> **Warning**
>
> The vehicle's driving characteristics change depending on the weight and position of the load.

### Loading the cargo compartment/trunk

Keep the following in mind when loading:

- Position objects so they are pressing against the rear seat backrests.
- Heavy objects should be positioned as low as possible. Avoid placing heavy objects on folded-down seat backrests.
- Cover sharp corners with a soft cloth or similar to help prevent damage to the upholstery.
- Use the load anchoring eyelets and tensioning straps or similar to secure all objects.

> **Warning**
>
> In a head-on collision at a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph), an unsecured object weighing 20 kg (44 pounds) can reach a projectile weight equivalent to 1000 kg (2200 pounds).

> **Warning**
>
> If objects are loaded higher than the upper edge of the side windows, leave a 10 cm (4 in.) space between the objects and the window. Objects placed closer to this could impede the function of the inflatable curtain concealed inside the headlining.

> **Warning**
>
> Always secure the load. Otherwise, it may shift during heavy braking and injure people in the vehicle.
>
> Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.
>
> Turn off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading/unloading long objects. Otherwise, it is possible for the load to reach the gear lever or gear selector and move it to a drive position – which could cause the vehicle to begin rolling.

#### Extra cargo space

The rear seat backrests can be folded down to increase cargo space in the cargo compartment/trunk and simplify loading. If the rear seat backrests are folded down, make sure that no objects loaded into the vehicle prevent the WHIPS system for the front seats from functioning correctly.

A ski hatch in the rear seat can be folded down to carry skis or other long, thin objects.

---

# 16.1.2. Determining the vehicle's permitted weight

Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance.

## Weight designations

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Federal/Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS/CMVSS) label, and the vehicle's tire information placard:

#### Curb weight

The weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

#### Capacity weight

All weight added to the curb weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, towbar weight is also part of cargo weight.

#### Permissible axle weight

The maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Federal/Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS/CMVSS) label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its maximum permissible weight.

#### Gross vehicle weight (GVW)

The vehicle's curb weight + cargo + passengers.

## Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 - 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

**Warning**

- Exceeding the permissible axle weight, gross vehicle weight, or any other weight rating limits can cause tire overheating resulting in permanent deformation or catastrophic failure.
- Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the tires that were original equipment on the vehicle because this will lower the vehicle's GVW rating. Use only tires with the correct load carrying capacity. Consult your Volvo retailer for information.

---

# 16.1.3. Grocery bag holders

Grocery bag holders (hooks) help keep shopping bags in place and prevent them from falling over and spilling their contents in the cargo compartment.

## On the sides of the cargo compartment

There are two grocery bag holders in the side panel on each side of the cargo compartment.

> **Important**
>
> The grocery bag holders are only intended to hold weights up to 5 kg (11 lbs).

### Under the floor hatch*

There are two grocery bag holders and an elastic band[1] in the hatch in the cargo compartment floor. The strap can be attached in four different positions.

Open the hatch to access the grocery bag holders. Use the provided elastic strap to secure shopping bags in a suitable position. Bags with handles of a suitable size can also be hung on the hooks.

* Option/accessory.

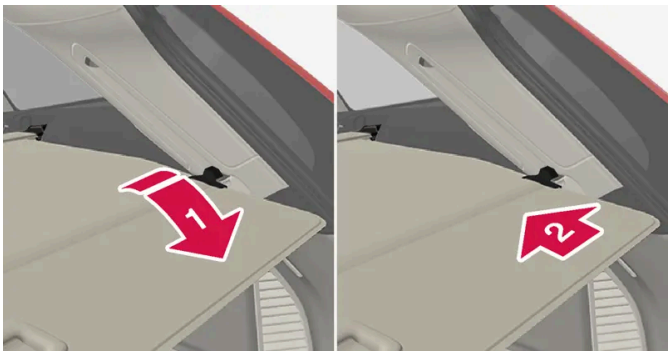
[1] Additional elastic straps can be ordered from a Volvo retailer.

---

## 16.1.4. Operating the cargo compartment cover*

The cover can be used in two positions: fully open to completely cover the cargo compartment or partially retracted to make it easier to reach further into the cargo compartment.

## Fully open

1. 


   1
   Grasp the handle and pull the cover out as far as possible.

2. 2
   Press the attachment pins in the recesses in the rear pillars of the cargo compartment.

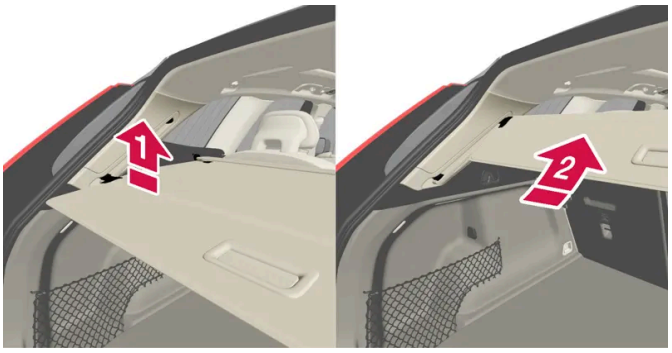
> The cover will be secured in the fully open position.

Cover in the fully open position.

> **Important**
>
> Do not place objects on top of the cargo compartment cover.

## Loading mode

From the fully opened position:

1. 


   Press the handle section of the cargo compartment slightly upward.

> The cover will move up until it stops in the partially retracted position.

Returning to the fully open position from the partially retracted position:

1. Grasp the handle and pull the cover down as far as possible. Angle the handle slightly upward so that the attaching pins can more easily move past the first set of grooves.
2. Release the handle so that the attaching pins engage into the grooves.

> The cover will be secured in the fully open position.

> **Important**
>
> When in the loading position, the cargo compartment cover can obstruct visibility to the rear. Make sure that the cargo compartment cover is fully extended or fully retracted during driving.

**Retracting the cover**

1. From the fully opened position:

   Lift the cover's handle and pull it rearward to release the cover's attaching pins from the grooves. Let the cover retract.

   From the partially retracted position:

   Grasp the handle and pull the cover out of the groves to the fully open position. Lift the handle and pull it rearward to release the cover's attaching pins from the grooves. Let the cover retract.

2. Let the cover retract with its attaching pins above the side panels until it stops in the fully retracted position.

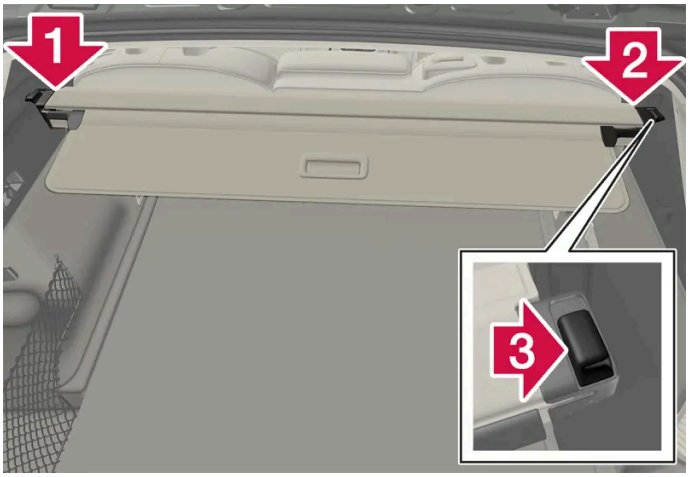
* Option/accessory.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 16.1.5. Installing and removing the cargo compartment cover*

The cover can be rolled out to conceal objects in the cargo compartment.

## Installing the cargo compartment cover




1. 1
   Press the end piece on one side of the cover into the retaining bracket in the side panel of the cargo compartment.

2. 2
   Then put the other end piece in the recess in the side panel on the opposite side.

3. 3
   Push the end piece down on both sides, one at a time.

> When a click is heard and the red marks on each end piece are no longer visible, the cover is in place. Check that it is secure.

## Removing the cargo compartment cover

In retracted position:

1. Press the button on one of the cover's ends and lift out that end.

2. Carefully lift the cover up and out.

> The other end will release automatically and the cover can then be lifted out of the cargo compartment.

* Option/accessory.

## 16.1.6. Cargo anchoring eyelets

The load anchoring eyelets in the cargo compartment can be used to secure objects with straps, a net, etc.

**Warning**

Hard, sharp and/or heavy objects in or protruding from the vehicle can cause injury in the event of hard braking.

Always secure large and heavy objects with a seat belt or cargo retaining straps.

## 16.1.7. Installing and removing the steel cargo grid*

The steel cargo grid prevents loads or pets in the cargo compartment from being thrown forward into the passenger compartment during hard braking.

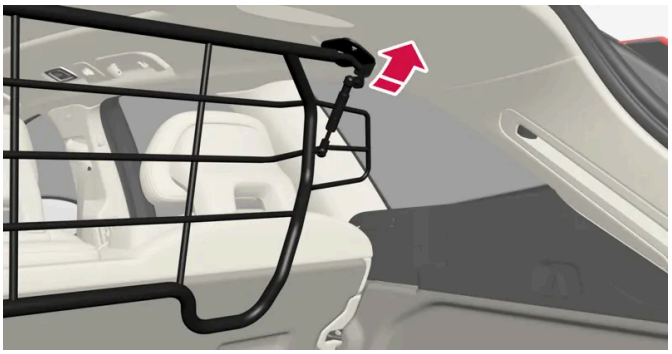
For safety reasons, the steel grid must always be installed and secured correctly.

> **Warning**
>
> Under no circumstances may a person be in the cargo compartment when the vehicle is moving. Heavy braking or a collision could lead to serious injury.

## Installation

> **Important**
>
> The steel cargo grid may only be used in the rear position (behind the rear seat) described here.

Before installing the steel grid, the existing plastic ceiling mounting consoles must be replaced with steel consoles. Volvo recommends that the ceiling consoles are only replaced by an authorized Volvo workshop or retailer.

1. Fold down the rear seat backrests.
2. Make sure that the steel grid is facing the right direction. Lift the grid into the vehicle through one of the rear doors.
3. 

   Position the grid's attachment points in the ceiling consoles.

   The next step will be easier if two people hold the steel grid in the right position.
4.

   Screw the provided screw into place using the provided 6 mm Allen wrench. Repeat on the other side. Recommended torque: 20 Nm (15 ft-lb).

> Check to make sure the steel grid is securely in place.

5. Return the backrest to the upright position.

For more information on necessary tools and procedures for installing/removing, see the assembly instructions provided with the steel grid.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Important**

The steel cargo grid cannot be folded up or down when a cargo compartment cover is mounted.

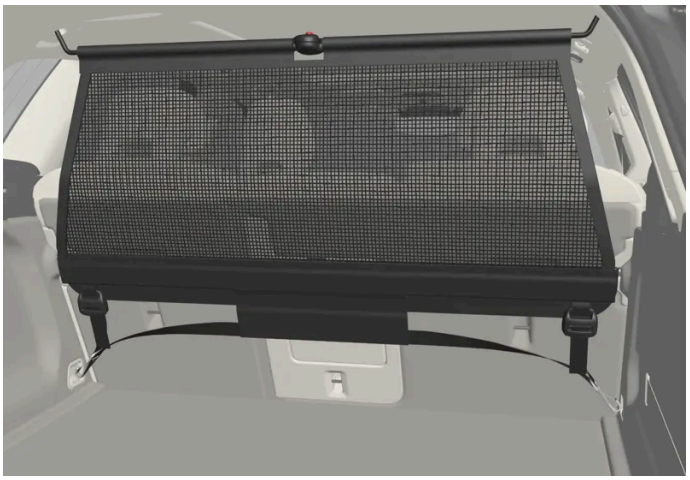
* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.1.8. Installing and removing the cargo net*

The cargo net helps prevent objects in the cargo compartment from entering the passenger compartment in the event of a sudden stop or hard braking.

The cargo net is attached at four points.



For safety reasons, the cargo net must always be mounted and secured according to the following description.

The net is made of strong nylon weave and can be attached in two different locations in the vehicle:

- Rear mounting - behind the rear seats.
- Front mounting - behind the front seats.

**Warning**

Objects in the cargo compartment must always be securely anchored, even with a correctly installed cargo net.

## Installing the cargo net

**Warning**

All of the cargo net's upper consoles, hooks and straps must be securely mounted and attached before the net is used.

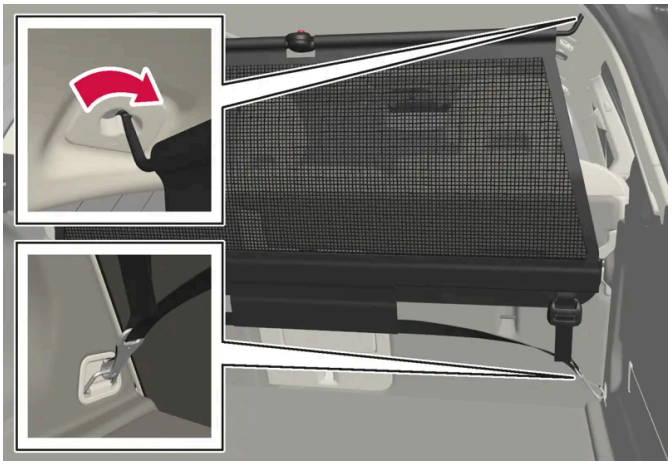
Never use the net if it is damaged.

**Note**

With front mounting, the cargo net is most easily installed via the rear doors.

1. Fold out the cargo net and make sure that the upper rod folds out and locks into position.
2. Insert one of the net's hooks into the front or rear ceiling mounting point with the strap lock facing you.
3. Insert the net's other upper hook into the ceiling mounting point on the opposite side.

   The telescopic spring-loaded hooks make mounting easier.

   Make sure that the net's hooks are pushed forward as far as possible into their respective mounting points.
4. 

   Rear mounting.

   For rear mounting:

   With the cargo net hooked into the rear ceiling mounting points, attach the net's straps into the front cargo anchoring eyelets in the cargo compartment.

   Front mounting.

For front mounting:

With the net mounted in the front ceiling mounting points, hook the straps into the outer eyelets on the front seat rails behind the seats. Attaching the net is easier if the seat backrests are upright and the seats are moved slightly forward.

When moving the seat and backrest back again, make sure to not apply too much pressure against the net. Move the seat or backrest only until it touches the net.

> **Important**
>
> If a seat or backrest is pressed with too much force back against the cargo net, the net and its ceiling brackets could be damaged.

5. Pull the straps until the cargo net is taut.

### Removing the cargo net

The cargo net can be easily removed and folded up.

1. Loosen the cargo net by pressing the button on the strap locks on each side and pulling to allow some slack.
2. Press in the catches and release both of the strap hooks.
3. Unhook the upper hooks and remove the net from the ceiling mounting points.
4. Press the red button on the rod so that it can be folded. Fold and roll up the net. Store the net in its case.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.1.9. Roof loads and load carriers

Volvo-developed load carriers are recommended for carrying loads on the roof of the vehicle.

These load carriers are specially designed to help prevent damage to your vehicle. Volvo load carriers are available from authorized Volvo retailers.

Carefully follow the installation instructions provided with the load carriers.

- Distribute the load evenly throughout the load carriers. Place heavier cargo at the bottom of the load.
- Check periodically to ensure that the load carriers and load are properly secured. Secure the load firmly using tie straps or similar.

- If the load is longer than the vehicle, such as a canoe or kayak, attach the towing eyelet in its front outlet and secure the tie straps in it.
- The vehicle's wind resistance and fuel consumption increase with the size of the load.
- Drive smoothly. Avoid rapid acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.

> **Warning**
>
> The vehicle's center of gravity and driving characteristics are altered by roof loads.
>
> Follow the vehicle's specifications regarding weights and maximum permitted load.

---

# 16.1.10. Driving with a trailer

There are a number of things to consider when towing a trailer, such as the towbar, the trailer and how the load is distributed in the trailer.

Load-carrying capacity is determined by the vehicle's curb weight. The total weight of all passengers and any installed accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the vehicle's load-carrying capacity by the corresponding amount.

- Towbars used on the vehicle must be approved for the applicable use.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towbar complies with the specified maximum towball weight. The tongue weight is calculated as part of the vehicle's payload.
- Increase the tire pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load.
- The engine is subjected to more load than usual when towing a trailer.
- Towing a trailer affects the vehicle's handling, durability and driving economy.
- Do not drive with a heavy trailer when the vehicle is very new. Wait until the mileage has reached at least 1000 km (620 miles).
- On long and steep downgrades, the vehicle's brakes are subjected to much more load than usual. When manually shifting, downshift and adapt speed accordingly.
- Follow applicable regulations regarding permitted speed and weight.
- Drive slowly when towing a trailer up a long and steep incline.
- The maximum trailer weights given only apply to altitudes up to 1000 meters (3280 feet) above sea level. At higher altitudes, engine power (and thus the vehicle's climbing ability) is decreased due to the reduced air density, and the maximum trailer weight must therefore be reduced. The weight of the vehicle and trailer must be decreased by 10% for each additional 1000 m (3280 feet) or part thereof.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

- Avoid overloading and other incorrect use.
- The trailer's brakes must be balanced with the vehicle's brakes to help ensure safe stops (follow applicable local regulations).

**Important**

- Bumper-attached trailer hitches must not be used on Volvos, nor should safety chains be attached to the bumper.
- Trailer hitches attaching to the vehicle rear axle must not be used.
- Never connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to the vehicle brake system, nor a trailer's lighting system directly to the vehicle lighting system. Consult your nearest authorized Volvo retailer for correct installation.
- When towing a trailer, the trailer's safety chains or wire must be correctly fastened to the attachment points provided in the trailer hitch on the vehicle. The safety chain or wire must never be fastened to or wound around the towing ball.

**Note**

The optional detachable trailer hitch may not be available in all markets or on all models. Consult your Volvo retailer.

**Note**

Extreme weather conditions, towing a trailer, high altitude and lower fuel grade than recommended are factors that can significantly increase the vehicle's fuel consumption.

## Trailer weights

**Warning**

Please adhere to the recommendations provided for trailer weight. If the recommendations are not followed, the vehicle and trailer may be difficult to control during evasive maneuvers and braking.

**Note**

The specified maximum trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations may set additional restrictions on trailer weight and speed. The trailer hitches may be certified for higher towing weights than the vehicle is permitted to tow.

## Self-leveling suspension*

The vehicle's self-leveling system attempts to keep the vehicle at a constant level, regardless of load (up to the maximum permitted weight). When the vehicle is stationary, the rear end of the vehicle will be slightly lowered, which is normal.

## Driving in mountainous areas

In certain conditions, there is a risk of overheating when driving with a trailer. If overheating of the engine and drive system is detected, a warning symbol will illuminate in the instrument panel and a message will appear.

The automatic transmission adapts the gear for the current load and engine speed.

### Steep inclines

Do not lock the automatic transmission into a higher gear than what the engine can handle – it is not always preferable to drive in high gears at low rpm.

**Parking on a hill**

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Put the gear selector in P.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Put chocks behind the wheels when the vehicle is parked on a hill with a trailer attached.

**Starting on a hill**

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Put the gear selector in D.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Release the brake pedal and start driving.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.2. Cargo compartment

---

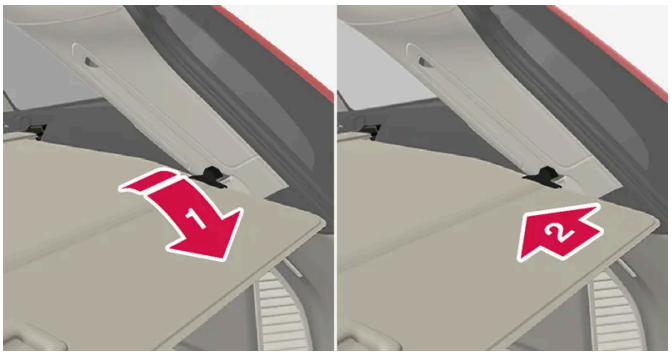
# 16.2.1. Cargo net, steel cargo grid and cargo compartment cover

---

# 16.2.1.1. Operating the cargo compartment cover*

The cover can be used in two positions: fully open to completely cover the cargo compartment or partially retracted to make it easier to reach further into the cargo compartment.

## Fully open

1. 


   1
   Grasp the handle and pull the cover out as far as possible.

2. 2
   Press the attachment pins in the recesses in the rear pillars of the cargo compartment.

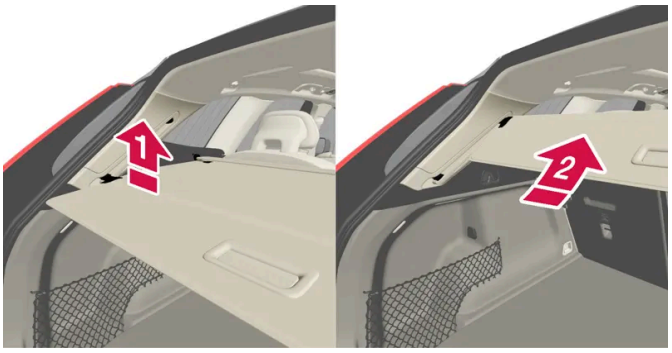
> The cover will be secured in the fully open position.

Cover in the fully open position.

> **Important**
>
> Do not place objects on top of the cargo compartment cover.

## Loading mode

From the fully opened position:

1. 


   Press the handle section of the cargo compartment slightly upward.

> The cover will move up until it stops in the partially retracted position.

Returning to the fully open position from the partially retracted position:

1. Grasp the handle and pull the cover down as far as possible. Angle the handle slightly upward so that the attaching pins can more easily move past the first set of grooves.
2. Release the handle so that the attaching pins engage into the grooves.

> The cover will be secured in the fully open position.

> **Important**
>
> When in the loading position, the cargo compartment cover can obstruct visibility to the rear. Make sure that the cargo compartment cover is fully extended or fully retracted during driving.

**Retracting the cover**

1. From the fully opened position:

   Lift the cover's handle and pull it rearward to release the cover's attaching pins from the grooves. Let the cover retract.

   From the partially retracted position:

   Grasp the handle and pull the cover out of the groves to the fully open position. Lift the handle and pull it rearward to release the cover's attaching pins from the grooves. Let the cover retract.

2. Let the cover retract with its attaching pins above the side panels until it stops in the fully retracted position.

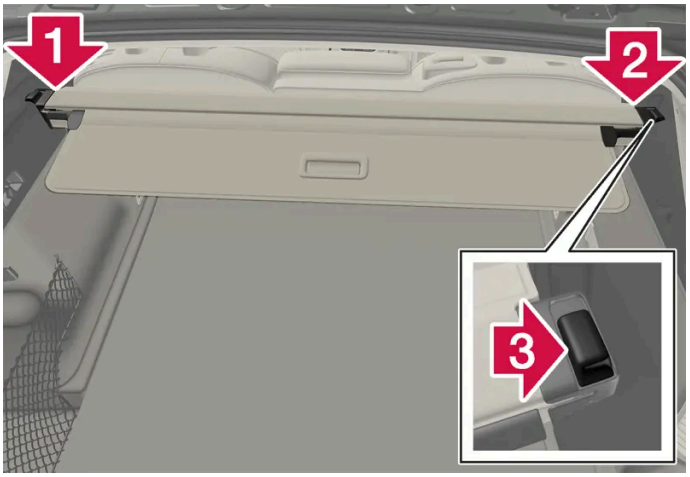
* Option/accessory.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 16.2.1.2. Installing and removing the cargo compartment cover*

The cover can be rolled out to conceal objects in the cargo compartment.

## Installing the cargo compartment cover




1. 1
   Press the end piece on one side of the cover into the retaining bracket in the side panel of the cargo compartment.

2. 2
   Then put the other end piece in the recess in the side panel on the opposite side.

3. 3
   Push the end piece down on both sides, one at a time.

> When a click is heard and the red marks on each end piece are no longer visible, the cover is in place. Check that it is secure.

## Removing the cargo compartment cover

In retracted position:

1. Press the button on one of the cover's ends and lift out that end.

2. Carefully lift the cover up and out.

> The other end will release automatically and the cover can then be lifted out of the cargo compartment.

* Option/accessory.

# 16.2.1.3. Installing and removing the steel cargo grid*

The steel cargo grid prevents loads or pets in the cargo compartment from being thrown forward into the passenger compartment during hard braking.

For safety reasons, the steel grid must always be installed and secured correctly.

**Warning**

Under no circumstances may a person be in the cargo compartment when the vehicle is moving. Heavy braking or a collision could lead to serious injury.

## Installation

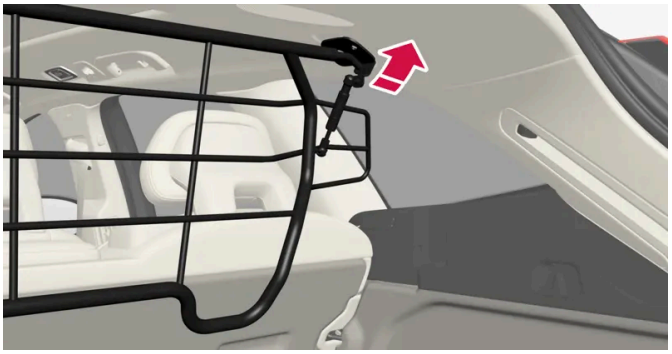
**Important**

The steel cargo grid may only be used in the rear position (behind the rear seat) described here.

Before installing the steel grid, the existing plastic ceiling mounting consoles must be replaced with steel consoles. Volvo recommends that the ceiling consoles are only replaced by an authorized Volvo workshop or retailer.

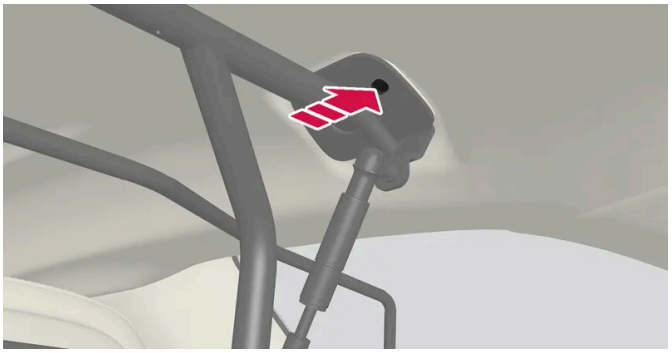
1. Fold down the rear seat backrests.

2. Make sure that the steel grid is facing the right direction. Lift the grid into the vehicle through one of the rear doors.

3. 

   Position the grid's attachment points in the ceiling consoles.

   The next step will be easier if two people hold the steel grid in the right position.

4. 

   Screw the provided screw into place using the provided 6 mm Allen wrench. Repeat on the other side. Recommended torque: 20 Nm (15 ft-lb).

> Check to make sure the steel grid is securely in place.

5. Return the backrest to the upright position.

For more information on necessary tools and procedures for installing/removing, see the assembly instructions provided with the steel grid.

> **Important**
>
> The steel cargo grid cannot be folded up or down when a cargo compartment cover is mounted.

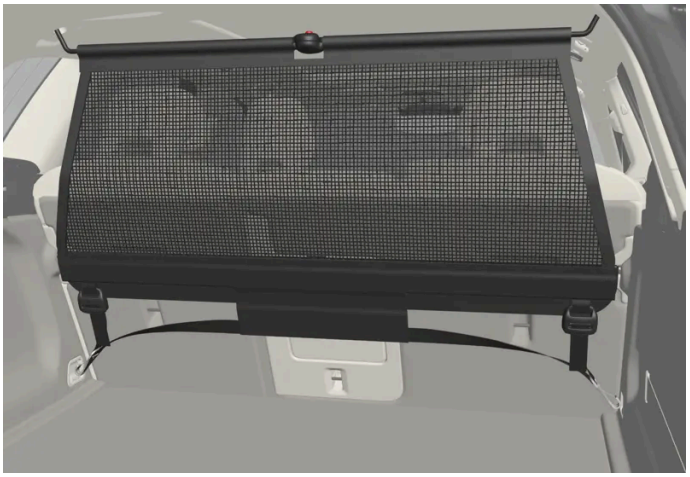
* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.2.1.4. Installing and removing the cargo net*

The cargo net helps prevent objects in the cargo compartment from entering the passenger compartment in the event of a sudden stop or hard braking.

The cargo net is attached at four points.



For safety reasons, the cargo net must always be mounted and secured according to the following description.

The net is made of strong nylon weave and can be attached in two different locations in the vehicle:

- Rear mounting - behind the rear seats.
- Front mounting - behind the front seats.

> **Warning**
>
> Objects in the cargo compartment must always be securely anchored, even with a correctly installed cargo net.

## Installing the cargo net

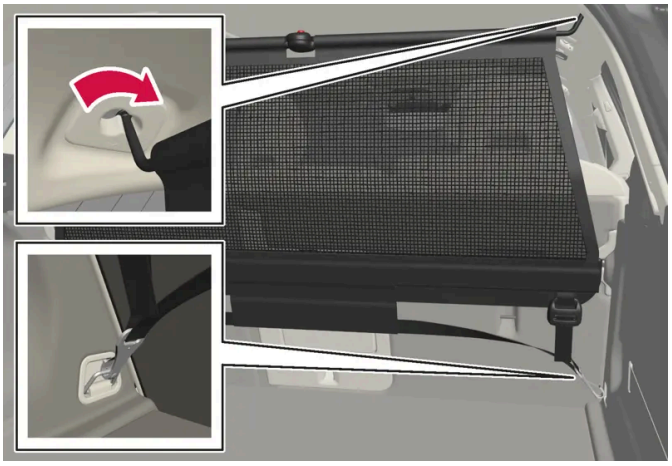
> **Warning**
>
> All of the cargo net's upper consoles, hooks and straps must be securely mounted and attached before the net is used.
>
> Never use the net if it is damaged.

> **Note**
>
> With front mounting, the cargo net is most easily installed via the rear doors.

1. Fold out the cargo net and make sure that the upper rod folds out and locks into position.
2. Insert one of the net's hooks into the front or rear ceiling mounting point with the strap lock facing you.
3. Insert the net's other upper hook into the ceiling mounting point on the opposite side.

   The telescopic spring-loaded hooks make mounting easier.

Make sure that the net's hooks are pushed forward as far as possible into their respective mounting points.

4. 

Rear mounting.

For rear mounting:

With the cargo net hooked into the rear ceiling mounting points, attach the net's straps into the front cargo anchoring eyelets in the cargo compartment.

Front mounting.

For front mounting:

With the net mounted in the front ceiling mounting points, hook the straps into the outer eyelets on the front seat rails behind the seats. Attaching the net is easier if the seat backrests are upright and the seats are moved slightly forward.

When moving the seat and backrest back again, make sure to not apply too much pressure against the net. Move the seat or backrest only until it touches the net.

> **Important**
>
> If a seat or backrest is pressed with too much force back against the cargo net, the net and its ceiling brackets could be damaged.

5. Pull the straps until the cargo net is taut.

## Removing the cargo net

The cargo net can be easily removed and folded up.

1. Loosen the cargo net by pressing the button on the strap locks on each side and pulling to allow some slack.
2. Press in the catches and release both of the strap hooks.
3. Unhook the upper hooks and remove the net from the ceiling mounting points.
4. Press the red button on the rod so that it can be folded. Fold and roll up the net. Store the net in its case.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.2.2. Cargo compartment

The vehicle has a flexible cargo compartment that makes it possible to carry and secure large objects.

The cargo capacity of the vehicle can be considerably increased by folding down the rear seat backrests. Use the load anchoring eyelets or grocery bag holders to help secure objects in place, and the retractable cargo compartment cover* to help conceal objects in the cargo compartment.

The towing eyelet and tire sealing system, or the temporary spare tire*, are located under the cargo compartment floor.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.2.3. Grocery bag holders

Grocery bag holders (hooks) help keep shopping bags in place and prevent them from falling over and spilling their contents in the cargo compartment.

## On the sides of the cargo compartment

There are two grocery bag holders in the side panel on each side of the cargo compartment.

> **Important**
>
> The grocery bag holders are only intended to hold weights up to 5 kg (11 lbs).

## Under the floor hatch*

There are two grocery bag holders and an elastic band[1] in the hatch in the cargo compartment floor. The strap can be attached in four different positions.

Open the hatch to access the grocery bag holders. Use the provided elastic strap to secure shopping bags in a suitable position. Bags with handles of a suitable size can also be hung on the hooks.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Additional elastic straps can be ordered from a Volvo retailer.

# 16.2.4. Cargo anchoring eyelets

The load anchoring eyelets in the cargo compartment can be used to secure objects with straps, a net, etc.

**Warning**

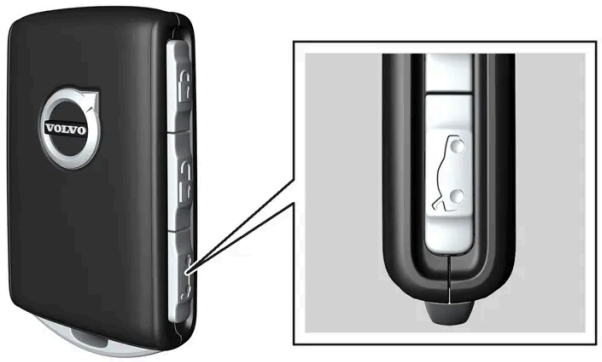
Hard, sharp and/or heavy objects in or protruding from the vehicle can cause injury in the event of hard braking.

Always secure large and heavy objects with a seat belt or cargo retaining straps.

---

# 16.2.5. Unlocking the tailgate using the remote key

The remote key can be used to unlock the tailgate while keeping the rest of the vehicle locked.




1. Press the button on the remote key.

> The tailgate will be unlocked but remain closed.
The side doors remain locked and armed. The lock and alarm indicator on the dashboard will go out to indicate that the vehicle is no longer fully locked.

Press lightly on the rubberized pressure plate under the tailgate handle to open the tailgate. If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes, it will be relocked and the alarm armed.

2. With the optional power tailgate* -

   Hold and press (about 1.5 seconds) the button on the remote key

> The tailgate will unlock and open. However, the side doors will remain locked and armed.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.2.6. Setting maximum opening height for the power tailgate*

The tailgate can be set to stop opening at a certain height, for example if the tailgate needs to be opened in a garage with a low ceiling.

## Setting maximum opening height

1. Open the tailgate manually to the desired opening height.
2. Press the button on the lower edge of the tailgate and hold it for about 3 seconds.

> Two audio signals will sound to indicate that the position has been stored.

**Note**

It is not possible to program an opening position lower than half-open tailgate.

## Resetting maximum opening position

1. Open the tailgate manually to the fully open position.
2. Press the button on the lower edge of the tailgate and hold it for about 3 seconds.

> Two audio signals will sound to indicate that the stored position has been erased.

**Note**

- If the system has been working continuously for a prolonged period of time, it will be switched off to avoid overload. It can be used again after approximately 2 minutes.

* Option/accessory.

---

## 16.2.7. Operating the tailgate with a foot movement*

To make it easier to operate the tailgate when your hands are full, it can be opened and closed by moving your foot in a forward kicking motion under the rear bumper.

The sensor is located to the left of center under the rear bumper.

One of the vehicle's remote keys must be within range behind the vehicle, approx. 1 meter (3 feet), for opening and closing to be possible. This applies even if the vehicle is unlocked in order to prevent the trunk lid from inadvertently opening e.g. at a car wash.

## Foot movement operation

1.

Kicking motion within the sensor's activation area.

Make **one** forward kicking motion with your foot under the left section of the rear bumper. Take a step back. Do not touch the bumper.

> A brief audible signal will be heard when opening or closing is activated - the tailgate will open/close.

If several opening attempts have been made without the remote key in range behind the vehicle, foot movement operation will not be available for a short period of time.

Do not keep your foot under the vehicle in a kicking motion. This may prevent activation.

#### Interrupting opening or closing with a foot movement

1. Make **one** forward kicking motion while the tailgate is opening or closing to stop its movement.

The remote key does not need to be within range of the vehicle to interrupt opening or closing of the tailgate.

If the tailgate stops near the closed position, it will open the next time it is activated.

> **Note**
>
> There is a risk of reduced or lost function if there are large amounts of snow, ice, dirt, etc. on the rear bumper. Make sure to keep the bumper clean.

**Note**

Please note that the system could be inadvertently activated in a car wash or similar if the remote key is within range.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.2.8. Unlocking the tailgate from inside the vehicle

The tailgate can be unlocked from the inside using the button on the dashboard.

**1.** Press the button on the dashboard.

**>** The tailgate will unlock and can be opened from the outside by pressing the rubberized button on the handle.

With the optional power tailgate*:

**1.** Press and hold the button on the dashboard.

**>** The tailgate will open.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.2.9. Keyless tailgate unlock*

With keyless locking and unlocking, the tailgate can be unlocked by lightly touching the rubberized button on the tailgate handle.

> **Note**
>
> One of the vehicle's remote keys must be within range behind the vehicle for unlocking to be possible.

The tailgate is held closed by an electronic locking mechanism.

To open:

1. Lightly press the rubberized pressure plate on the underside of the tailgate handle.

> The lock will disengage.

2. Lift the outer handle to open the tailgate.

> **Important**
>
> - Only light pressure on the rubberized pressure plate is necessary to release the tailgate's locking mechanism.
> - Use the handle to lift the tailgate and do not apply force to the rubberized pressure plate. Too much force can damage the pressure plate's electrical connections.

Hands-free unlocking of the tailgate is also possible using a foot movement under the rear bumper; see the separate section.

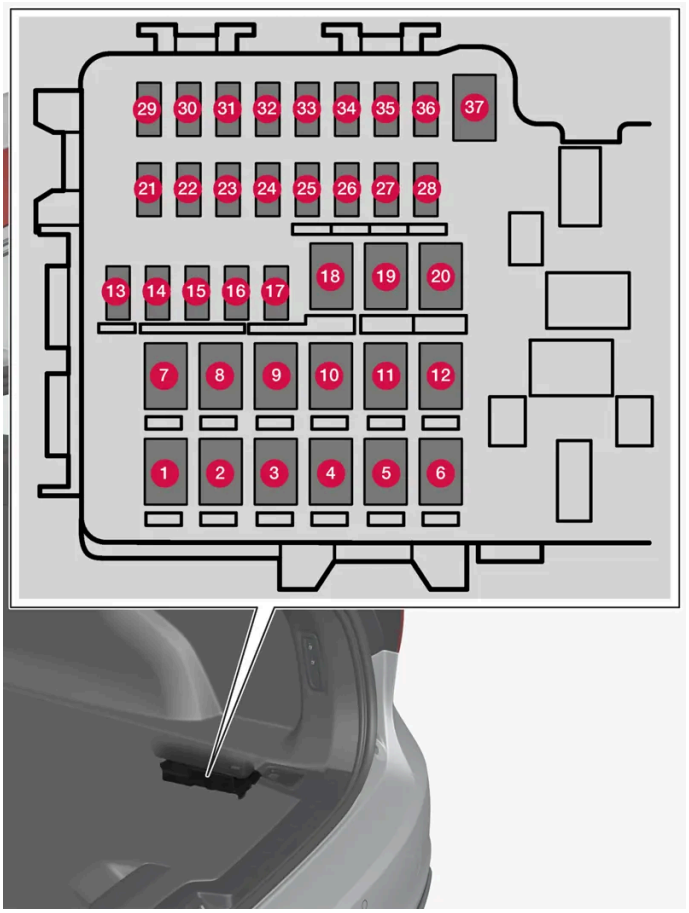
> **Warning**
>
> Do not drive with the tailgate open. Toxic exhaust fumes can be sucked into the vehicle through the cargo compartment.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.2.10. Fuses in the cargo compartment

The fuses in the cargo compartment help protect electrical components such as the power seats*, airbags and seat belt tensioners.




The fuse box is located behind the panel on the right-hand side.

Fuse pliers are provided on the inside of the fuse box cover to assist in removing and inserting fuses.

There are also spaces for several extra fuses in the **distribution box in the engine compartment**.

## Positions

Functions and components in the fuse table cover several different models and engine variants. A fuse described there may be used for fewer or no components, depending on how the vehicle is equipped.

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Heated rear window | 30 | MCase [1] |
| 2 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 3 | Compressor for pneumatic suspension* | 40 | MCase [1] |

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 5 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 6 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 7 | Door module, right side, rear [2] | 20 | MCase [1] |
| 8 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| | – | – | |
| 9 | Power tailgate* | 25 | MCase [1] |
| 10 | Power front passenger seat*<br>Door module, right side, front [2] | 20 | MCase [1] |
| 11 | Towbar* control module | 40 | MCase [1] |
| 12 | Seat belt tensioner, right | 40 | MCase [1] |
| 13 | Internal relay windings | 5 | Micro |
| 14 | – | – | Micro |
| 15 | Door module, left side, rear | 20 | Micro |
| 16 | – | – | Micro |
| 17 | – | – | Micro |
| 18 | Towbar* control module | 25 | MCase [1] |
| | Accessory module | 40 | |
| 19 | Power driver seat*<br>Door module, left side, front [2] | 20 | MCase [1] |
| 20 | Seat belt tensioner, left side | 40 | MCase [1] |
| 21 | Park Assist Camera* | 5 | Micro |
| 22 | – | – | Micro |
| 23 | – | – | Micro |
| 24 | – | – | Micro |
| 25 | – | – | Micro |
| 26 | – | – | Micro |
| 27 | – | – | Micro |
| 28 | Heated rear seat, left* | 15 | Micro |
| 29 | – | – | Micro |
| 30 | Blind Spot Information (BLIS)* | 5 | Micro |
| 31 | – | – | Micro |
| 32 | | 5 | Micro |
| 33 | Actuator, exhaust system (gasoline) | 5 | Micro |
| 34 | – | – | Micro |
| 35 | All Wheel Drive (AWD)* control module | 15 | Micro |
| 36 | Heated rear seat, right* | 15 | Micro |
| 37 | – | – | MCase [1] |

* Option/accessory.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

[1] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

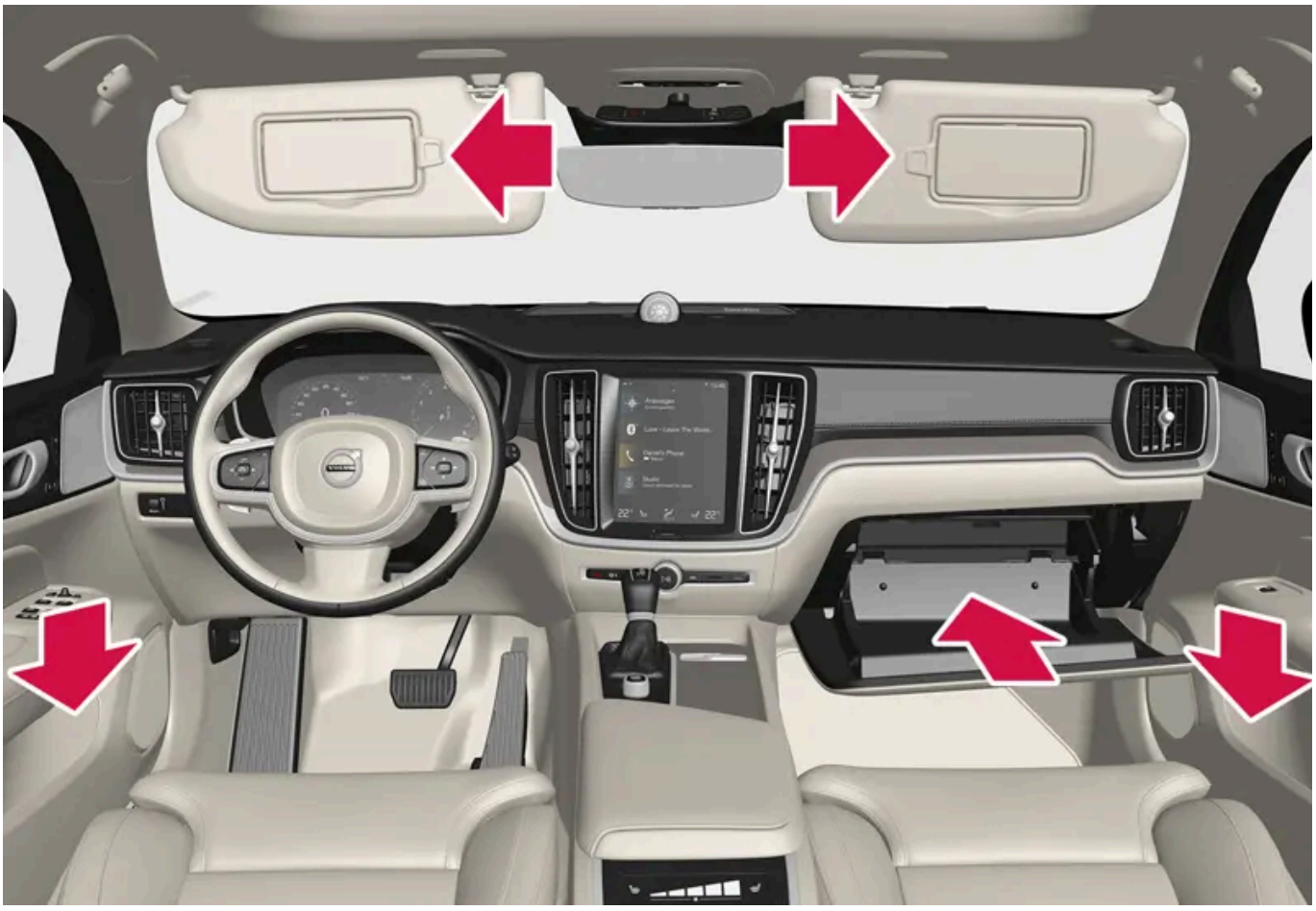
[2] Only mild hybrid vehicles.

# 16.3. Storage and passenger compartment

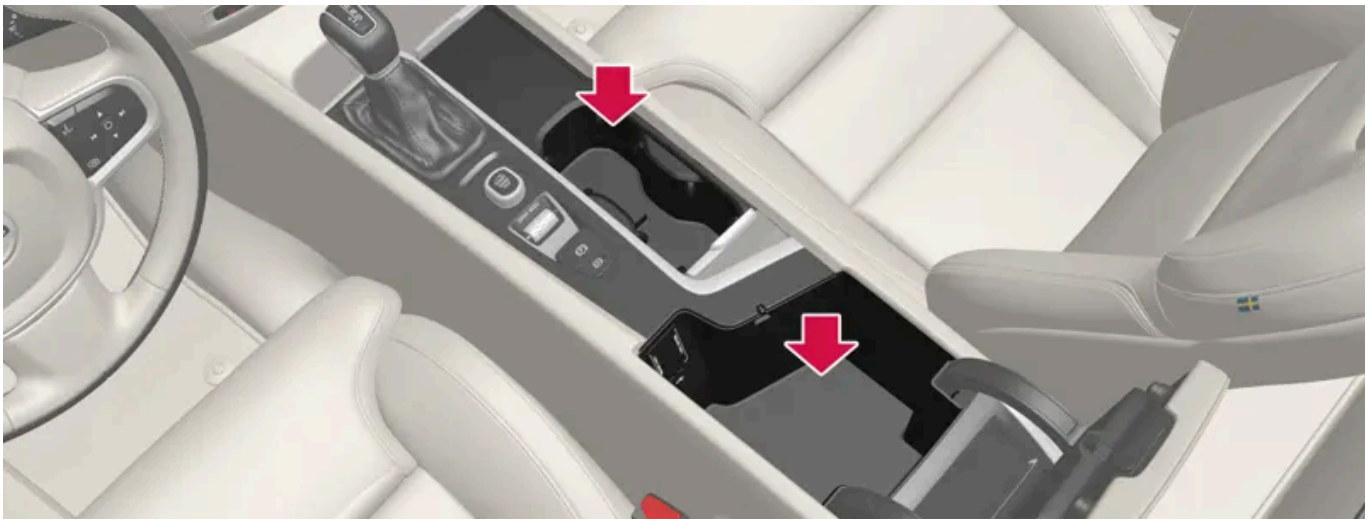
## 16.3.1. Passenger compartment interior

Overview of the passenger compartment interior and storage spaces.

### Front seats

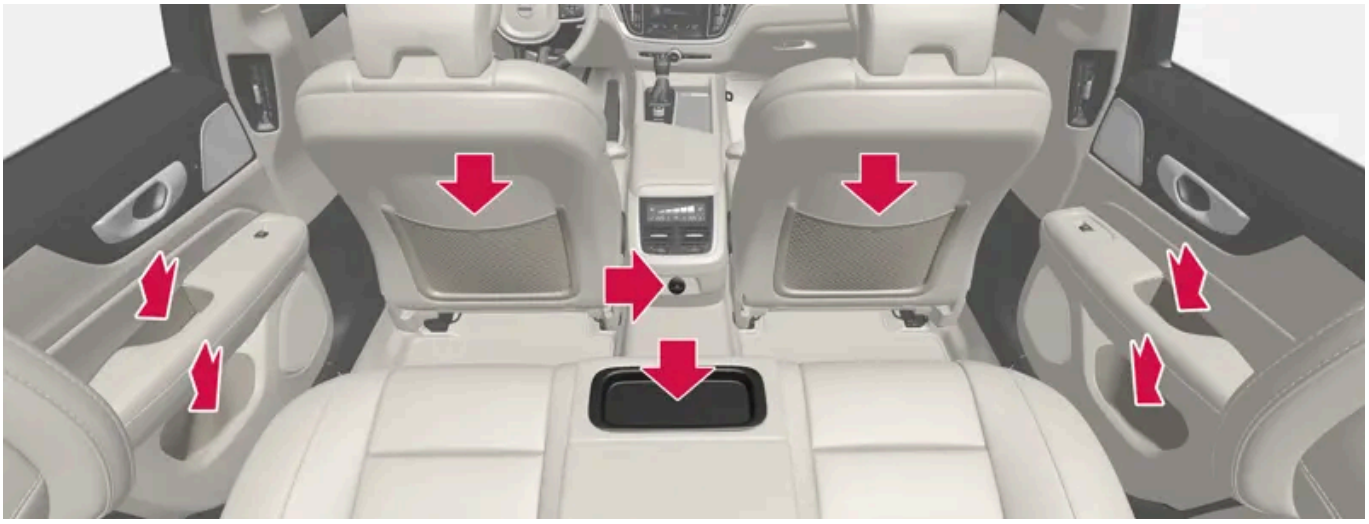


Storage compartment in door panel, glove compartment and sun visors.



Storage compartments with cup holders, electrical outlets, wireless phone charger* and USB ports in the tunnel console.

## Rear seat



Storage compartment in the door panel, cup holders* in the center seat's backrest, storage pocket* in the front seat's backrest and USB ports in the tunnel console.

**Warning**

Store loose objects, such as a phone, camera, remote control for extra equipment, etc., in the glove compartment or another compartment. Otherwise, these could injure people in the vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

**Important**

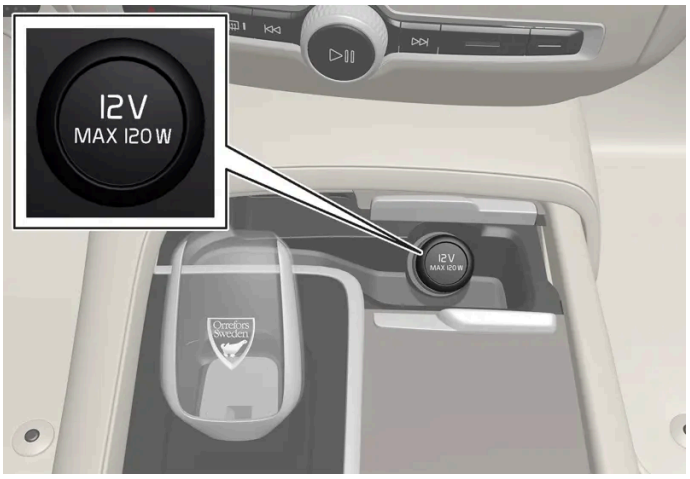
Keep in mind that glossy surfaces can be easily scratched by e.g. metal objects. Do not place keys, phones or similar items on sensitive surfaces.

* Option/accessory.

# 16.3.2. Electrical outlets

There is a 12 V electrical outlet in the tunnel console and a 12 V electrical outlet* in the trunk/cargo compartment.
If a problem occurs with an electrical socket, contact a workshop - an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

## 12 V outlets




Front electrical outlet in the tunnel console for vehicles with wireless phone charger*.

Front electrical outlet in the tunnel console for vehicles without wireless phone charger*.

The 12 V outlets can be used for devices intended for this such as MP3 players, coolers and cellular phones.

12 V outlet in trunk/cargo compartment*.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 16.3.3. Using the electrical outlets

The 12 V outlet can be used for devices intended for this such as MP3 players, coolers and cellular phones.

The ignition must be in at least mode I for the outlets to supply current. The outlets will then be active as long as there is sufficient charge in the start battery.

If the engine is turned off and the vehicle is locked, the outlets will be deactivated. If the engine is turned off and the vehicle remains unlocked, the sockets will remain active for up to 7 minutes.

**Note**

Bear in mind that using the electrical outlets when the engine is off could cause the starter battery to have too low of a charge level, which could limit other functionality.

Accessories connected to the electrical outlets can be activated even when the vehicle electrical system is off or if preconditioning is used. For this reason, disconnect plugs when they are not in use to prevent the starter battery from becoming discharged.

**Warning**

- Do not use accessories with large or heavy plugs – they could damage the outlet or come loose while you are driving.
- Do not use accessories that could cause disruptions to e.g. the vehicle's radio receiver or electrical system.
- Position the accessory so that there is no risk of it injuring the driver or passengers in the event of heavy braking or a collision.
- Pay attention to connected accessories as they can generate heat that could burn passengers or the interior.

### Using 12 V outlets

1. Remove the stopper (tunnel console) or fold down the cover (trunk/cargo compartment) over the socket and plug in the device.
2. Unplug the device and put the stopper back in (tunnel console) or fold up the cover (trunk/cargo compartment) when the socket is not in use or left unattended.

> **Important**
>
> The maximum power is 120 W (10 A) per outlet.

---

## 16.3.4. Using the glove compartment

The glove compartment is located on the passenger side. The glove compartment can be used to store the vehicle's printed owner's information and other items. There is also room for a pen and a card holder.

---

## 16.3.5. Sun visors

In the ceiling in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats, there are sun visors that can be lowered and angled to the side as necessary.

The illustration is generic – the design may vary.

The mirror lighting* comes on automatically when the visor is lifted up.

The mirror frame has a holder for e.g. cards or tickets.

* Option/accessory.

---

## 16.3.6. Tunnel console

The tunnel console is located between the front seats.

1 Storage compartment with cover* and 12 V outlet[1]. Press the handle to open/close the cover.

2 Storage compartment with cup holder and wireless phone charger*.

3 Storage compartment and USB ports under the armrest.

4 Climate control panel for the rear seats* or storage compartment. There are also USB ports underneath.

**Warning**

Store loose objects, such as a phone, camera, remote control for extra equipment, etc., in the glove compartment or another compartment. Otherwise, these could injure people in the vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

**Important**

Keep in mind that glossy surfaces can be easily scratched by e.g. metal objects. Do not place keys, phones or similar items on sensitive surfaces.

**Note**

One of the sensors for the alarm * is located under the cup holder in the center console. Avoid placing coins, keys and other metal objects in the cup holder as this could trigger the alarm.

**Note**

The USB ports can be used to e.g. charge a phone or tablet. Only the front USB port can be used to play media through the vehicle's speakers.

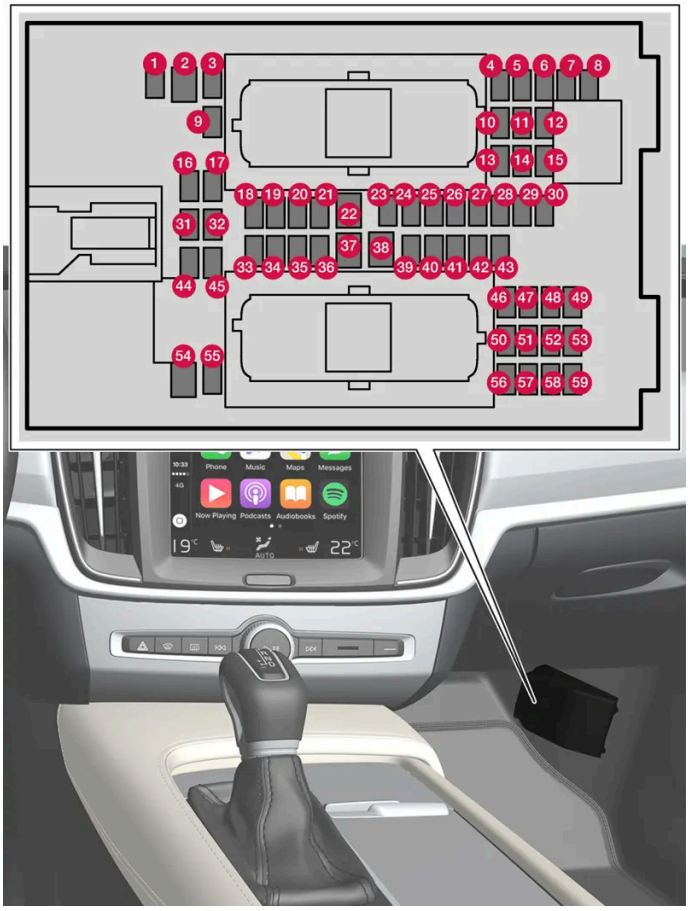
* Option/accessory.

[1] If the vehicle does not have a wireless phone charger, the 12 V outlet is located in the center storage compartment.

---

# 16.3.7. Fuses under the glove compartment

Fuses under the glove compartment provide protection for e.g. electrical outlets, displays and door modules.



The fuse box is located behind the floor mat/side panel.

Fuse pliers are provided on the inside of the fuse box cover to assist in removing and inserting fuses.

There are also spaces for several extra fuses in the **distribution box in the engine compartment**.

## Positions

There is a decal with a diagram of the locations of the fuses on the inside of the cover. Functions and components in the fuse table cover several different models and engine variants. A fuse described there may be used for fewer or no components, depending on how the vehicle is equipped.

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 48 V battery control module [1] | 10 | Micro |
| 2 | – | – | MCase [2] |
| 3 | – | – | Micro |
| 4 | Movement sensor* | 5 | Micro |
| 5 | – | – | Micro |
| 6 | Instrument panel | 5 | Micro |
| 7 | Center console keypad | 5 | Micro |
| 8 | Sun sensor | 5 | Micro |
| 9 | – | – | Micro |
| 10 | – | – | Micro |

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 11 | Steering wheel module | 5 | Micro |
| 12 | Control module, start knob and parking brake | 5 | Micro |
| 13 | Heated steering wheel* | 15 | Micro |
| 14 | – | – | Micro |
| 15 | – | – | Micro |
| 16 | – | – | Micro |
| 17 | – | – | Micro |
| 18 | Climate system control module | 10 | Micro |
| 19 | – | – | Micro |
| 20 | Diagnostics port | 10 | Micro |
| 21 | Center display | 5 | Micro |
| 22 | Climate system blower module, front | 40 | MCase [2] |
| 23 | USB hub | 5 | Micro |
| 24 | Instrument lighting<br>Passenger compartment lighting<br>Rearview mirror auto-dimming*<br>Rain and light sensors*<br>Power front seats*<br>Rear door control panels<br>Climate system blower module<br>Keypad in tunnel console, rear seat footwell* | 7.5 | Micro |
| 25 | Driver support functions control module | 5 | Micro |
| 26 | Overhead console | 20 | Micro |
| 27 | Head-up display* | 5 | Micro |
| 28 | Passenger compartment lighting | 5 | Micro |
| 29 | Wireless charging pad | 5 | Micro |
| 30 | Overhead console display | 5 | Micro |
| 31 | – | – | Micro |
| 32 | – | – | Micro |
| 33 | Door module, right side, rear | 20 | Micro |
| 34 | Fuse box trunk/cargo compartment | 10 | Micro |
| 35 | Control module for Internet-connected vehicle<br>Volvo On Call control module | 5 | Micro |
| 36 | Door module, left side, rear | 20 | Micro |
| 37 | Infotainment control module (amplifier) | 40 | MCase [2] |
| 38 | – | – | MCase [2] |
| 39 | Multi-band antenna | 5 | Micro |
| 40 | Seat comfort control module, front* | 5 | Micro |
| 41 | – | – | Micro |
| 42 | Rear window wiper | 15 | Micro |
| 43 | Fuel pump control module | 15 | Micro |
| 44 | Relay windings for transmission oil pump<br>48 V converter [1]<br>Engine start module [1] | 5 | Micro |

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 45 | Opening trunk/tailgate with foot movement* | – | Micro |
| 46 | Driver's seat heating | 15 | Micro |
| 47 | Front passenger's seat heating | 15 | Micro |
| 48 | Coolant pump | 7.5 | Micro |
| 49 | – | – | Micro |
| 50 | Door module, left side, front | 20 | Micro |
| 51 | Active suspension module* | 20 | Micro |
| 52 | – | 5 | Micro |
| 53 | Infotainment module | 10 | Micro |
| 54 | – | – | MCase [2] |
| 55 | – | – | Micro |
| 56 | Door module, right door | 20 | Micro |
| 57 | – | – | Micro |
| 58 | TV* (certain markets only) | 5 | Micro |
| 59 | Primary fuse for fuses 52, 53, 57 and 58 | 15 | Micro |

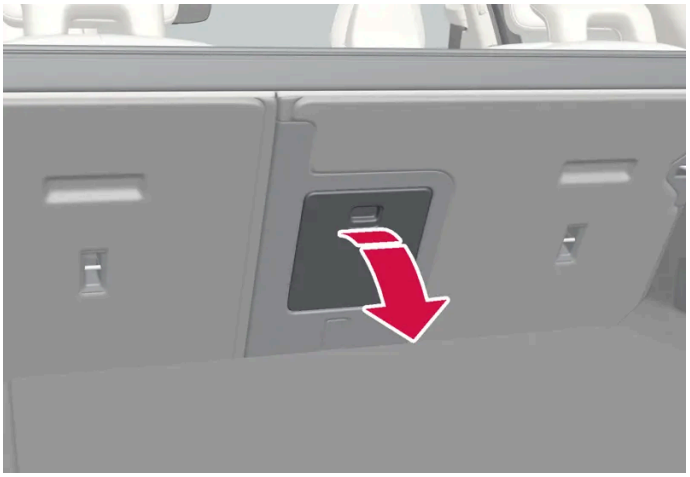
[1] Only mild hybrid vehicles.

[2] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

# 16.4. Rear seat ski hatch

The hatch in the rear seat backrest can be opened to transport long, narrow objects such as skis.



The illustration is generic - details may vary according to vehicle model.

1. In the cargo compartment, grasp the ski hatch handle and pull it down.

**2.** Fold down the armrest in the rear seat.

If the private locking function is used, the ski hatch must be closed.

---

# 17. Maintenance and service

## 17.1. Vehicle care

## 17.1.1. Interior cleaning

### 17.1.1.1. Cleaning the center display

Marks, stains, finger smudges etc. on the center display may affect its performance and readability. Clean the screen regularly with a microfiber cloth.

1. Turn off the center display by pressing and holding the Home button.
2. Wipe the screen with a clean, dry microfiber cloth using small, circular motions. If necessary, moisten the cloth slightly.
3. Reactivate the display by pressing the Home button briefly.

> **Important**
>
> The microfiber cloth must be free of sand and dirt when cleaning the center display.

Important

When cleaning the center display, apply only light pressure to the screen. Pressing too hard could damage the screen.

Important

Do not spray liquid or corrosive chemicals directly onto the center display. Do not use window cleaners, cleaning agents, aerosol sprays, solvents, alcohol, ammonia or detergents that contain abrasives.

Never use abrasive cloths, paper towels or tissue paper, as these may scratch the center display.

---

## 17.1.1.2. Cleaning the instrument panel

Carefully wipe the glass covering the head-up display unit with a clean and dry microfiber cloth. If necessary, the cloth may be slightly moistened.

Never use cleaning agents. For difficult cleaning conditions, a special cleaning agent can be purchased at a Volvo retailer.

---

## 17.1.1.3. Cleaning the head-up display*

Carefully wipe the glass covering the head-up display unit with a clean and dry microfiber cloth. If necessary, the cloth may be slightly moistened.

Never use strong stain removers. For difficult cleaning conditions, a special cleaning agent can be purchased at a Volvo retailer.

* Option/accessory.

---

## 17.1.1.4. Cleaning the leather steering wheel

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately. It is important to vacuum before using a cleaning agent.

Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with a plastic protector. Volvo Leather Care Kit 951 0251 and Leather Softener 943 7429 are recommended for cleaning the leather steering wheel. First, remove dirt, dust, etc. with a damp sponge or cloth.

> **Important**
>
> Sharp objects such as rings could damage the leather on the steering wheel.

### Treating stains on the steering wheel:

**Type 1** (ink, wine, coffee, milk, sweat or blood)

1. Use a soft cloth or sponge. Wipe the steering wheel using a solution of 5% ammonia. For blood stains, mix approximately 2 dl (1 cup) of water with 25 g (one ounce) of salt and wipe the stain.

**Type 2** (grease, oil, sauces or chocolate)

1. Same procedure as for Type 1 stains.
2. Finish by wiping the wheel with an absorbent paper or towel.

**Type 3** (dry dirt or dust)

1. Remove the dirt/dust using a soft brush.
2. Same procedure as for Type 1 stains.

---

## 17.1.1.5. Cleaning the seat belt

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately. It is important to vacuum before using a cleaning agent.

Use water and a synthetic soap solution. Specially designed textile cleaning agents are available for purchase at Volvo retailers. Make sure the belt is dry before it is retracted.

---

## 17.1.1.6. Cleaning the interior

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately. It is important to vacuum before using a cleaning agent.

Important

- Some colored clothing (for example, dark jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery. If this occurs, it is important to clean and treat these parts of the upholstery as soon as possible.
- Never use strong solvents such as washer fluid, gasoline, mineral spirit or concentrated alcohol to clean the interior as this can damage the upholstery as well as other interior materials.
- Never spray cleaning agent directly onto components that have electrical buttons and controls. Wipe instead with a damp cloth with cleaning agent.
- Sharp objects and Velcro can damage the car's textile upholstery.
- Only use cleaning agent on the type of material it is intended for.

---

# 17.1.1.7. Cleaning textile floor and inlay mats

Use of textile cleaner is recommended when cleaning textile mats. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately. It is important to vacuum before using a cleaning agent.

Remove the inlay mats to clean the floor mats and inlay mats separately. Each inlay mat is secured into place with pins.

1. Remove the inlay mat by grasping the inlay mat at each pin and lifting the mat straight up.
2. Use a vacuum to remove dust and dirt.

> **Note**
>
> Do not swing or strike the inlay mats violently against another object to remove dirt as this could damage the mats.

3. After vacuuming, a specially designed textile cleaning agent should be used to remove stains on floor mats.
4. After cleaning, put the inlay mat back into place by pressing it in at each pin.

Warning

- Never use more than one inlay mat at a time on the driver's floor. If any other type of floor mat is used, remove the original mat from the driver's seat floor before driving. All types of mats must be securely anchored in the attachment points in the floor. Make sure the floor mat does not impede the movement of the brake pedal or accelerator pedal in any way, as this could be a serious safety hazard.
- Volvo's floor mats are specially manufactured for your vehicle. They must be properly secured in the attachment points in the floor to help ensure they cannot slide and become trapped under the pedals.

---

# 17.1.1.8. Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood surfaces

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately.

A lightly dampened microfiber cloth is recommended for cleaning interior details and surfaces. These cloths are available for purchase at Volvo retailers.

Never scrape or rub a stain. Never use strong stain removers.

> **Important**
>
> Do not use solvent containing alcohol to clean the instrument panel glass.

> **Important**
>
> Keep in mind that glossy surfaces can be easily scratched. Wipe these surfaces with a clean and dry microfiber cloth using small, circular motions. If necessary, moisten the cloth lightly with clean water.

---

# 17.1.1.9. Cleaning leather upholstery*

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains immediately. It is important to vacuum before using a cleaning agent.

Volvo's leather upholstery* is treated to protect its original appearance. Over time, sunlight, grease, dirt, etc. could break down the protective layer. This could result in scratches and cracking.

Leather upholstery* is a natural product that changes and acquires a beautiful patina over time. Regular cleaning and treatments are required to preserve the qualities and color of the leather. Volvo offers a comprehensive product, Volvo Leather Care KitWipes, for cleaning and treating leather upholstery. When used as directed, it helps preserve the leather's protective coating.

For optimal results, Volvo recommends cleaning and applying protective cream one to four times a year (or more often as needed). Volvo Leather Care Kit 951 0251 and Volvo Leather Softener 943 7429 are available for purchase at Volvo retailers.

## Cleaning the leather upholstery

1. Apply the leather cleaner to a damp sponge and squeeze it until the cleaner foams.
2. Move the sponge in circular motions to apply the foam to the stain.
3. Dampen the stain thoroughly with the sponge. Let the sponge absorb the stain and do not rub.
4. Dry the stain using a soft towel and let the leather dry completely.

### Protecting the leather upholstery

1. Apply a small amount of leather protector to a cloth and then apply the protector to the leather using light circular movements.
2. Let it dry for approximately 20 minutes.

> Protecting the leather upholstery makes it better able to withstand sunlight's harmful UV rays.

* Option/accessory.

---

## 17.1.1.10. Cleaning fabric upholstery and ceiling liner

Use of textile cleaner is recommended when cleaning textile and nubuck textile materials. Clean as needed and treat stains immediately.

> **Important**
>
> Never scrape or rub a stain because this may damage the upholstery.

> **Important**
>
> Never use stain removers or strong solvents because these may damage the upholstery.

### Cleaning textile upholstery

1. Start by vacuuming the upholstery.
2. Follow the instructions of the textile cleaner.
3. When cleaning upholstery, a spray extraction cleaner is recommended for sucking up cleaning fluids and rinse water.

> **Important**
>
> Certain dyed clothing (such as denim and suede garments) may stain the upholstery. Difficult stains, like oil, can be difficult to remove.

Important

Always clean all of the upholstery, even if it only has isolated stains. This helps to prevent permanent water rings.

Note

Do not remove the upholstery when cleaning.

### Cleaning the ceiling liner

1. Carefully brush the ceiling liner using a soft brush.
2. Follow the instructions of the textile cleaner.
3. Then use a soft, lint-free cloth to wipe the ceiling liner.

Important

Failure to take care during cleaning could lead to damage to the ceiling liner.

---

## 17.1.2. Exterior cleaning

---

## 17.1.2.1. Cleaning exterior lights

Dirty lights do not work as well. Clean them regularly, e.g. when refueling.

Wash exterior lights, such as headlights and taillights, using a soft and clean sponge, mild soap and lukewarm water.

It is normal for condensation to form temporarily on the inside of the glass during washing. All outer lights are designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally ventilated out of the light housing once the light has been illuminated for a short period of time.

Important

Do not use strong detergents or chemicals to clean the lights. These types of products, such as those containing alcohol, may cause cracks in the glass.

Important

Do not rub with a dry sponge or rag as this could cause electric discharge and damage the components in the light.

## 17.1.2.2. Cleaning the wiper blades

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the dirt remains, the more difficult it will be to keep the vehicle clean. It could also lead to paint damage. Wash the vehicle in a car wash or garage with an oil separator. Use a car washing detergent recommended by Volvo.

Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windshield, shorten the service life of wiper blades.

When cleaning, put the wiper blades in the service position.

> **Note**
>
> Wash the wiper blades and windshield regularly with a lukewarm soap solution or vehicle shampoo. Do not use strong solvents.

## 17.1.2.3. Paintwork

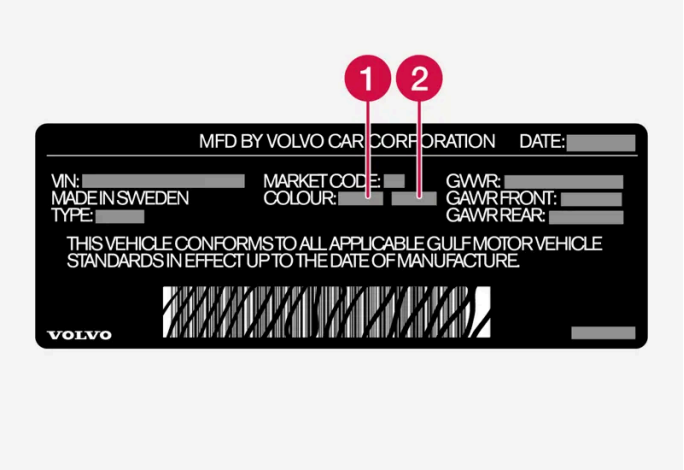
The paintwork consists of multiple layers. It is an important part of the vehicle's corrosion protection and therefore needs to be checked regularly.

The most common types of paint damage are minor stone chips, scratches and damage to e.g. the edges of fenders, doors and bumpers. To help prevent corrosion, paint damage should be rectified immediately.

## 17.1.2.4. Color codes

The color code decal is placed on the vehicle's left-side door pillar (B-pillar) between the front and rear doors and is visible when the left front door is open.

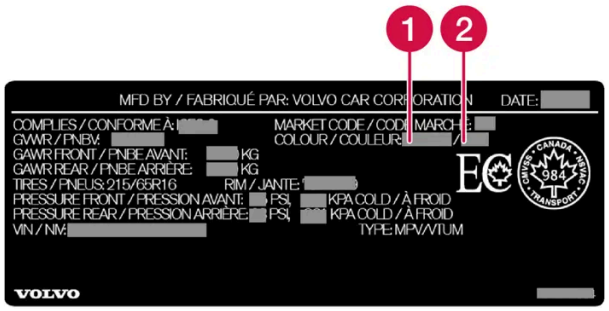
## Color code




Sample color code (1): US models.

1 Exterior color code

2 Secondary exterior color code (if applicable)




Sample color code (1): Canadian models.

1 Exterior color code

2 Secondary exterior color code (if applicable)

---

# 17.1.2.5. Touching up minor paint damage

The paintwork is an important part of the vehicle's corrosion protection and therefore needs to be checked regularly. The most common types of paint damage are minor stone chips, scratches and damage to e.g. the edges of fenders, doors and bumpers.

To help prevent corrosion, paint damage should be rectified immediately.

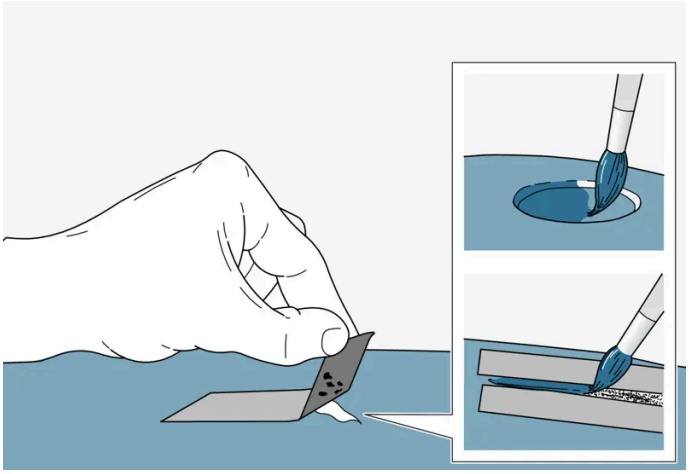
**Note**

Make sure the surface is clean and dry before performing any touch-ups to the paint. The surface temperature should be at least 15 °C (59 °F).

**Materials that might be needed**

- Primer – special adhesive primer is available in a spray can for e.g. plastic-covered bumpers.
- Base coat and clear coat – available in spray cans or as a touch-up pen/stick[1].
- Masking tape.
- Fine-grain sandpaper.

## Applying touch-up paint to a damaged surface



If the damage has not reached all the way down to the metal, then touch-up paint can be applied immediately after the surface has been cleaned.

1. Place a strip of masking tape over the damaged surface. Pull the tape off so that any loose flakes of paint adhere to it.

   If the damage goes down to the bare metal, you may need to use primer first. If the paint damage is on a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used for better results. Spray the primer into the lid of the spray can and brush on thinly.

2. Light sanding with a very fine-grained sandpaper or similar may be required before painting (e.g. if there are uneven edges). Clean the area carefully to remove dirt, grease, salts, etc. and let it dry.

3. Thoroughly mix the primer and apply it with a small brush, toothpick or similar. When the primer is dry, apply one or more coats of paint and then a clear coat, letting the paint dry between each application.

If there is a longer scratch, follow the same procedure as above, but first mask off the surrounding area to protect the undamaged paint.

Touch-up pens/sticks and spray paint are available at Volvo retailers.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Note**

If the stone chip has not gone down to the bare metal and an undamaged coat of paint remains, apply base coat and clear coat immediately after cleaning the surface.

[1] Follow the instructions on the packaging for the touch-up pen/stick carefully.

---

# 17.1.2.6. Cleaning the exterior

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This makes the vehicle easier to clean because dirt does not attach as strongly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the vehicle looking new. Wash the rims at a car wash or garage with an oil separator. Use car care products recommended by Volvo.

---

# 17.1.2.7. Corrosion protection

Your vehicle is constructed with protection against corrosion.

Corrosion protection for the body consists of modern metallic protective coatings on the sheet metal, a high-quality painting process, corrosion-protected and minimized metal overlap, and shielding plastic components, abrasion protection and supplemental rust inhibitor in exposed areas. In the chassis, exposed components of the wheel suspension are made of corrosion-resistant cast aluminum.

## Inspection and maintenance

The corrosion protection does not normally require maintenance, but keeping the vehicle clean helps reduce the risk of corrosion. The use of strong alkaline or acidic cleaning fluids should be avoided on shiny body components. Any stone chips in the paint should be touched up as soon as they are discovered.

---

# 17.1.2.8. Automatic car washes

It is important to prepare the vehicle before washing it in an automatic car wash. Carefully follow the instructions for vehicle handling before and during the car wash.

Automatic car washes can be a fast and easy way to clean the vehicle, but they do not reach all the parts of the vehicle that need regular cleaning. Volvo recommends supplementing automatic car washing with hand-washing.

**Note**

Avoid washing a brand new vehicle in automatic car washes for the first few months after it leaves the factory. This will allow the paintwork to fully set.

#### Preparations before washing

In automatic car washes in which the vehicle is pulled through the car wash, it is important to switch off functions that prevent the vehicle from rolling freely.

- Secure or remove protruding exterior parts such as retrofitted auxiliary lights, antennas, etc.
- Make sure that the automatic rain sensor function is switched off. The windshield wipers must be switched off throughout the car wash to avoid the risk of damage.
- While the vehicle is stationary, use the Ⓐ button in the tunnel console to turn off the Auto-hold brake function.
- Switch off the function for automatically activating the parking brake via settings in the center display.

#### During the car wash

**Important**

Keep the vehicle's windows, doors and tailgate closed throughout the car wash.

If the vehicle is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*:

Take out the key and place it in the open in the front section of the vehicle during the car wash. This minimizes the risk of unintentionally pressing the button that opens the tailgate, or of the key being incorrectly detected outside of the vehicle.

1. Drive into the car wash and stop at the designated place.
2. Put the gear selector in N.
3. Put the vehicle in ignition mode 0 by turning the start knob in the tunnel console clockwise and holding it for a few seconds.

> The motor is switched off, while the vehicle can roll freely.

4. The vehicle goes through the automatic car wash.

   Keep your seat belt fastened throughout the car wash.

> Don't forget to reset the adjustments made before the car wash.

#### After the car wash

Depress the brake pedal lightly for a short time while driving after the brake pads have been exposed to moisture. The friction will heat up the brakes so that they will dry more quickly, reducing the risk of corrosion.

**Warning**

Always test the foot brake and parking brake after washing the vehicle to ensure they are functioning properly.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 17.1.2.9. Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the dirt remains, the more difficult it will be to keep the vehicle clean. It could also lead to paint damage. Use a car washing detergent recommended by Volvo.

A special cleaning agent available from Volvo retailers is recommended for the cleaning and care of colored plastic parts, rubber and trim components, e.g. glossy trim. Follow the usage instructions for the cleaning agent carefully.

Avoid using car washing detergents with a pH value lower than 3.5 or higher than 11.5. Doing so could result in the discoloring of anodized aluminum surfaces* (as shown in the illustrations below). Abrasive polishing agents are not recommended for these areas (as shown in the illustrations below).

Components that should be washed with a cleaning product with a pH value between 3.5 and 11.5.

**Important**

Avoid waxing and polishing plastic and rubber.

If using degreaser on plastic and rubber, only rub (if necessary) with slight pressure. Use a soft sponge.

Polishing glossy trim moldings can wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polish containing abrasives must not be used.

Important

Avoid washing the vehicle with cleaner with a pH value below 3.5 or above 11.5. This could cause discoloration of anodized aluminum components like the roof rail and around the side windows.

Never use metal polishing agent on anodized aluminum components. This could cause discoloration and destroy the surface treatment.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 17.1.2.10. Cleaning rims

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the dirt remains, the more difficult it will be to keep the vehicle clean. It could also lead to paint damage. Wash the rims at a car wash or garage with an oil separator. Use a car washing detergent recommended by Volvo.

Use a rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

Strong rim cleaning agents could damage the surface and stain the chromed aluminum rims.

---

# 17.1.2.11. Hand washing

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This makes the vehicle easier to clean because dirt does not attach as strongly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the vehicle looking new. Wash the vehicle in a car wash or garage with an oil separator and use car washing detergent. Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo.

## Important to keep in mind when handwashing your vehicle

- Avoid washing the vehicle in direct sunlight. This could cause the detergent or wax to dry out and become abrasive.
- Remove bird droppings from paintwork as soon as possible. It contains chemicals that affect and discolor paintwork very quickly. Use e.g. soft paper or a sponge soaked in lots of water. Consult an authorized Volvo workshop for assistance removing discoloration.
- Hose down the underbody, including the wheel housings and bumper.
- Hose down the entire vehicle and remove any loose dirt, droppings etc. to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreaser on heavily soiled surfaces. Note that in such cases the surfaces must not be hot from the sun.
- Wash using a sponge, car washing detergent and plenty of lukewarm water. Make sure that the sponge is clean. A dirty sponge can scratch the paint.
- Clean the wiper blades with lukewarm soap solution or car washing detergent.

- Dry the vehicle using a clean, soft chamois or a squeegee. Try not to let drops of water dry in strong sunlight. This could cause water drying stains that may need to be polished out.
- In areas with heavy industrial emissions, more frequent washing of the vehicle's exterior is recommended.
- Tar spots from asphalt may remain even after washing. Use a Volvo-recommended tar remover to remove these spots after washing the vehicle.

**Warning**

Always entrust engine washing to a workshop. If the engine is hot, there is a risk of fire.

**Important**

Dirty headlights do not work as well. Clean them regularly, e.g. when refueling.

Do not use corrosive cleaners. Use water and a non-abrasive sponge. See separate section for more information.

**Note**

Exterior lighting such as headlights and taillights may develop temporary condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal. All exterior lighting is designed to resist this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing once the light has been lit for some period of time.

**Important**

- Make sure that the panoramic roof* and sun shade are closed before washing the vehicle.
- Never use abrasive polishing agents on the panoramic roof.
- Never use wax on the rubber seals around the panoramic roof.

**Important**

Remember to remove dirt from the drain holes in the doors and sills after washing the vehicle.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 17.1.2.12. High-pressure washing

The vehicle should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the dirt remains, the more difficult it will be to keep the vehicle clean. It could also lead to paint damage. Wash the vehicle in a car wash or garage with an oil separator. Use a car washing detergent recommended by Volvo.

If washing the vehicle with a high-pressure wash, use sweeping movements and keep the nozzle at least 30 cm (13 in.) from the vehicle. Do not spray directly onto locks.

> **Important**
>
> Do not use water hotter than 60 °C (140 °F) on the exterior lights, such as headlights and taillights. See separate section for more information.

---

## 17.1.2.13. Polishing and waxing

Polish and wax the vehicle when the paint is dull or to provide extra protection. The vehicle does not need to be polished until it is at least a year old. However, it can be waxed during the first year. Do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight. The surface of the vehicle should not be warmer than 45 °C (113 °F).

- Wash and dry the vehicle very carefully before polishing or waxing. Remove asphalt and tar stains with asphalt remover or paint thinner. More stubborn stains can be removed with a grinding paste designed for vehicle paint. Use cleaning agents recommended by Volvo.
- Use polish first and then liquid or paste wax. Follow the instructions on the package carefully. Many products contain both polish and wax.

> **Important**
>
> Never polish or wax initially matte exterior details on the vehicle. This could destroy the matte effect and make the surface permanently shiny.

> **Important**
>
> Avoid waxing and polishing plastic and rubber.
>
> If using degreaser on plastic and rubber, only rub (if necessary) with slight pressure. Use a soft sponge.
>
> Polishing glossy trim moldings can wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.
>
> Polish containing abrasives must not be used.

> **Important**
>
> Use cleaning agents recommended by Volvo. Other treatments, such as preservation, sealing, protection, luster sealing or similar, could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments are not covered by Volvo's warranty.

---

# 17.2. Wiper blades and washer fluid

# 17.2.1. Wiper blades and washer fluid

The wipers and the washer fluid are designed to improve visibility and the headlight pattern.

Washer fluid direct from the wiper blades and heating* of the wiper blades gives improved vision.

When there is approximately 1 liter (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining, a message to refill will appear in the instrument panel.

* Option/accessory.

# 17.2.2. Putting the wiper blades in service position

The windshield wiper blades must be in the service (vertical) position for certain operations, e.g. replacing the blades.

Windshield wipers in the service position.

The windshield wipers must be in the service position when replacing, washing or lifting the blades (e.g. to scrape ice or snow from the windshield).

> **Important**
>
> Before placing the wipers in service position, ensure that they have not frozen to the windshield.

## Activating/deactivating service position

The service position can be activated/deactivated when the vehicle is stationary and the windshield wipers are switched off. Service position is activated/deactivated via Function view in the center display:

Tap the **Wiper Service Position** button. The indicator light in the button will illuminate when service position is activated. The wipers will move to the service position when activated. To deactivate the service position, tap **Wiper Service Position** once. The indicator light in the button will go out when service position is deactivated.

The wiper blades will also move out of the service position if:

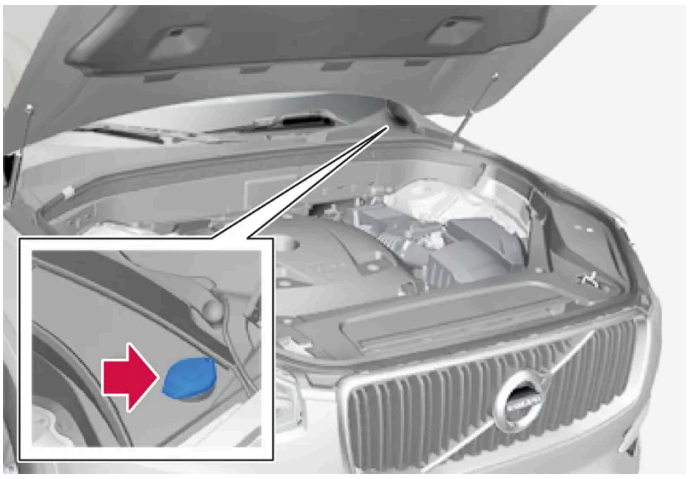
- The windshield wipers are turned on.
- The windshield washers are turned on.
- The rain sensor is activated.
- The vehicle begins moving.

> **Important**
>
> If the wiper arms in service position are raised from the windshield, they must be folded back against the windscreen before activating wiping, washing or rain sensor as well as before departure. This is to prevent scratching the paint on the hood.

---

## 17.2.3. Refilling washer fluid

Washer fluid is used to keep the headlights, windshield and rear window clean. Washer fluid containing anti-freeze should be used in very cold weather (below-freezing temperatures).



Fill washer fluid into the reservoir with the blue cover. The reservoir is used for the windshield washer, tailgate window washer and headlight washer*.

**Note**

When there is approximately 1 liter (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining, the message **Washer fluid Level low, refill** and the symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel.

**Recommended grade:** Washer fluid recommended by Volvo, with frost protection during cold weather and temperatures below the freezing point.

**Important**

Use Volvo's original washer fluid or an equivalent fluid with the recommended pH value between 6 and 8, diluted as recommended, e.g. in a 1:1 solution with pH-neutral water.

**Important**

Use washer fluid with anti-freeze when temperatures are below the freezing point to help keep the pump, reservoir and hoses from freezing.

**Volume:**

- Vehicles **with** headlight washing: 5.5 liters (5.8 qts).
- Vehicles **without** headlight washing: 3.5 liters (3.7 qts).

* Option/accessory.

---

# 17.2.4. Changing rear window wipers

The wiper blades help remove water from the windshield and rear window. Along with the washer fluid, they are designed to clean the glass and help improve visibility while driving. The windshield and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.

# Changing rear window wipers

Lift the wiper arm from the window and pull the upper section of the blade down diagonally to the right.

1. 1

   Grasp the center of the wiper blade and lift it from the window to the stop position.

   > **Note**
   >
   > When the wiper arm is about halfway extended, resistance may be felt as the wiper stops in the stop position. This stop helps prevent the wiper arm from falling back onto the rear window. The wiper arm must be pulled past the locking position stop in order to change the wiper blade.

2. 2

   Grasp the center attachment point and pull it diagonally down to the right until the blade detaches from the arm.

3. 3

   Lift the sleeve on the wiper blade attachment. Make sure that the wiper arm doesn't accidentally retract toward the window.

4.


   4

   Remove the washer hose from the attachment.

5. 5

   Attach the new washer hose and wiper blade in the attachment. Fold down the sleeve on the wiper blade attachment.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

> **Note**
>
> Make sure that the hose is positioned as shown in the illustration. If the hose is not positioned as shown, it could be squeezed by the sleeve when it is folded down again.

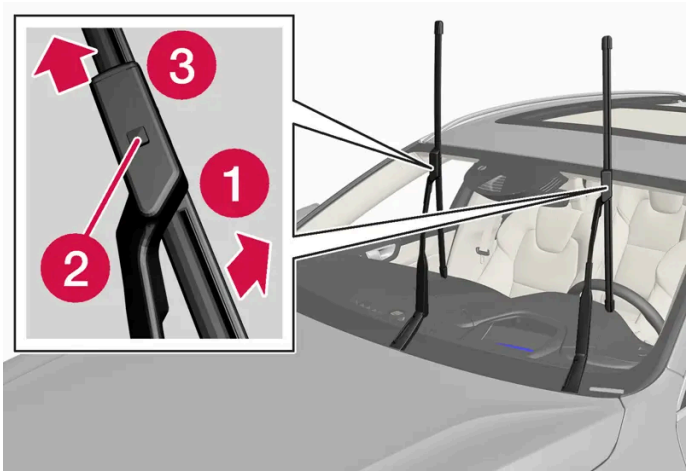
6. Press the new wiper blade until it clicks into place. Check to make sure the blade is securely in place.
7. Fold the wiper arm back toward the window.

> **Important**
>
> Check the blades regularly. Neglected maintenance shortens the life of the blades.

---

# 17.2.5. Replacing windshield wiper blades

The wiper blades help remove water from the windshield and rear window. Along with the washer fluid, they are designed to clean the glass and help improve visibility while driving. The windshield and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.



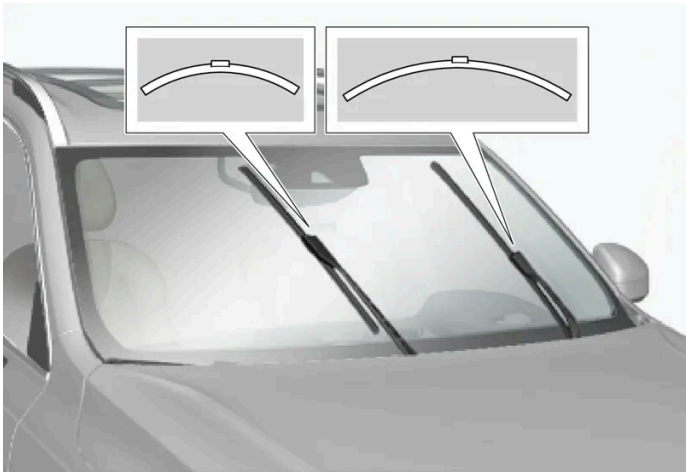

Raise the wiper arms to the service position. Service position is activated/deactivated via the function view in the center display when the car is stationary and the windshield wipers are not on.

1. 1
   Put the wiper blade in removal position by folding it out from the wiper arm until it clicks.
2. 2
   Press and hold the lock button on the wiper blade attachment.
3. 3

While holding the button down, pull the blade straight out, parallel with the wiper arm.

4. Slide in the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.
5. Fold the blade back toward the arm until it clicks into place. The blade is no longer in its removal position and can once again be moved.
6. Check to make sure the wiper blade is securely in place.
7. Press the wiper blade back against the windshield.

### Wiper blades come in varying lengths



**Note**

When changing wiper blades, make sure that the blades are of different lengths. The blade on the driver's side is longer than the one on the passenger side.

---

# 17.3. Replacing bulbs

---

# 17.3.1. Replacing bulbs

This vehicle is equipped with only LED[1] lights, which means it does not have any replaceable bulbs. Contact a workshop[2] if you experience any problems with the lighting.
If there is a problem with an LED[1] light, the entire lamp unit will normally need to be replaced.

**Note**

For information on lights not mentioned in the Owner's Manual, contact a Volvo retailer or an authorized Volvo workshop.

**Note**

Exterior lighting such as headlights and taillights may develop temporary condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal. All exterior lighting is designed to resist this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing once the light has been lit for some period of time.

**Note**

Bulbs for Active Bending Lights* contain traces of mercury and should therefore always be deposited at an authorized Volvo workshop.

[1] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 17.3.2. Checking trailer lights

When connecting a trailer, make sure that the trailer's lights are functioning before starting to drive.

## Checking trailer lights*

**Automatic check**

When the trailer has been connected to the vehicle's electrical system, its lights can be checked by automatically activating them. This function helps the driver check that the trailer's lights are functioning correctly before starting to drive.

In order to perform this check, the vehicle must be switched off.

1. When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the message **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check** will appear in the instrument panel.
2. Acknowledge the message by pressing the O button on the right-side steering wheel keypad.

> The light check will begin.

3. Get out of the vehicle to perform the check.

> All of the lights on the trailer will begin flashing, and then illuminate separately one at a time.

4. Visually check that all of the trailer's lights are functioning correctly.

5. After a short time, all of the trailer's lights will start flashing again.

> The light check is completed.

#### Disabling the automatic check

The automatic light check can be disabled in the center display.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **My Car → Lights and Lighting**.
3. Deselect **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check**.

#### Manual check

If the automatic check has been disabled, the check can be started manually.

1. Tap **Settings** in the Top view.
2. Tap **My Car → Lights and Lighting**.
3. Select **Manual Trailer Lamp Check**.

> The light check will begin. Get out of the vehicle to perform the check.

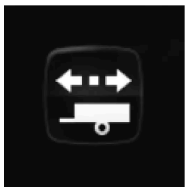
## Trailer rear fog light

When a trailer is connected, the vehicle's rear fog light may not illuminate and rear fog light functionality is instead transferred to the trailer. If this is the case, check to see if the trailer is equipped with a rear fog light before activating the vehicle's fog lights when driving with a trailer to help ensure safe operation.

## Symbols and messages in the instrument panel

If one or more of the turn signals or brake lights on the trailer is not working, a symbol and message will be displayed in the instrument panel. The other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before the vehicle is driven.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

| Symbol | Message |
|---|---|
|  | • Trailer turn indicator Right turn indicator malfunction<br>• Trailer turn indicator Left turn indicator malfunction |
| | • Trailer brake light Malfunction |

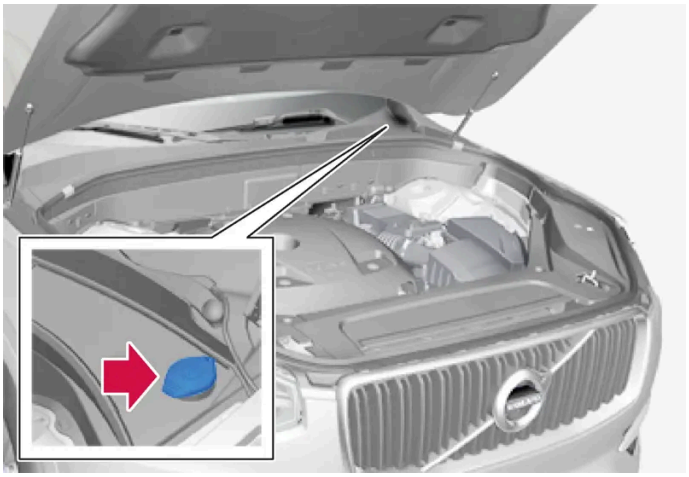
If any of the trailer's turn signal lights is not working, the turn signal symbol in the instrument panel will also flash more quickly than normal.

* Option/accessory.

# 17.4. Engine compartment

## 17.4.1. Refilling washer fluid

Washer fluid is used to keep the headlights, windshield and rear window clean. Washer fluid containing anti-freeze should be used in very cold weather (below-freezing temperatures).



Fill washer fluid into the reservoir with the blue cover. The reservoir is used for the windshield washer, tailgate window washer and headlight washer*.

**Note**

When there is approximately 1 liter (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining, the message **Washer fluid Level low, refill** and the symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel.

**Recommended grade:** Washer fluid recommended by Volvo, with frost protection during cold weather and temperatures below the freezing point.

**Important**

Use Volvo's original washer fluid or an equivalent fluid with the recommended pH value between 6 and 8, diluted as recommended, e.g. in a 1:1 solution with pH-neutral water.

**Important**

Use washer fluid with anti-freeze when temperatures are below the freezing point to help keep the pump, reservoir and hoses from freezing.

**Volume:**

- Vehicles **with** headlight washing: 5.5 liters (5.8 qts).
- Vehicles **without** headlight washing: 3.5 liters (3.7 qts).

* Option/accessory.

---

# 17.4.2. Brake fluid specifications

The medium in the hydraulic brake system is called brake fluid and is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder, which in turn actuates the brake calipers.

**Recommended grade:** Volvo Original or similar fluid that meets a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

**Note**

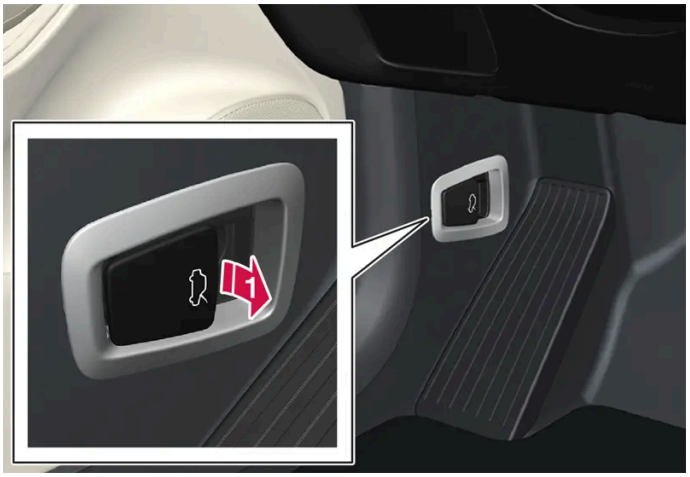
Changing or filling brake fluid should be entrusted to an authorized Volvo workshop.

---

# 17.4.3. Opening and closing the hood

To open the hood, pull the lever in the passenger compartment and then turn the handle under the hood.

## Opening the hood



1. Pull the handle to the left of the brake pedal to release the hood from its fully closed position.

2. Swipe your hand from left to right under the hood, grasp the handle and move it up and to the side to release the catch and lift the hood.

## Warning - hood not closed

When the hood is released, a warning symbol and graphic will be displayed in the instrument panel and an audible signal will sound. If the vehicle begins to roll, the audible signal will be repeated several times.

**Note**

If the warning symbol is illuminated or an audible warning signal sounds even though the hood is securely closed, consult a workshop - an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

## Closing the hood

1. Press down the hood until it begins to close under its own weight.

2. When the hood reaches the catch at the handle in the front edge of the vehicle, press down on the hood to close it completely.

**Warning**

Risk of injury! When closing, make sure that the hood is completely unobstructed and that no one can be injured.

**Warning**

Make sure the hood locks securely after closing. It must audibly lock on both sides.

Hood not completely closed.

Hood completely closed.

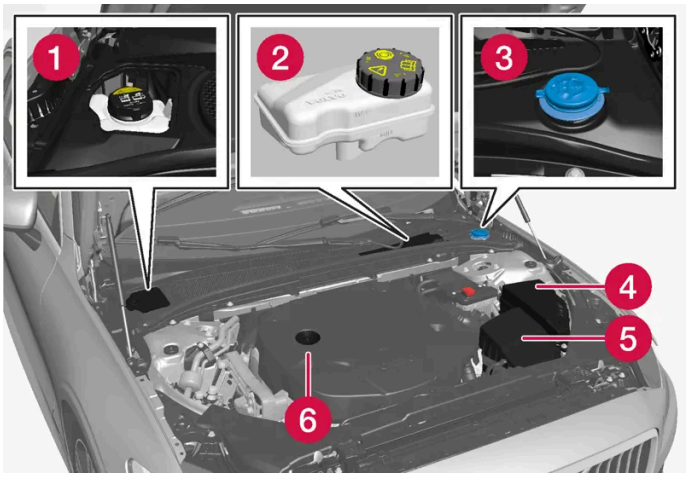
**Warning**

Never drive with the hood open!

If this symbol appears, or anything else indicates that the hood is not completely closed while driving, stop immediately and close it properly.

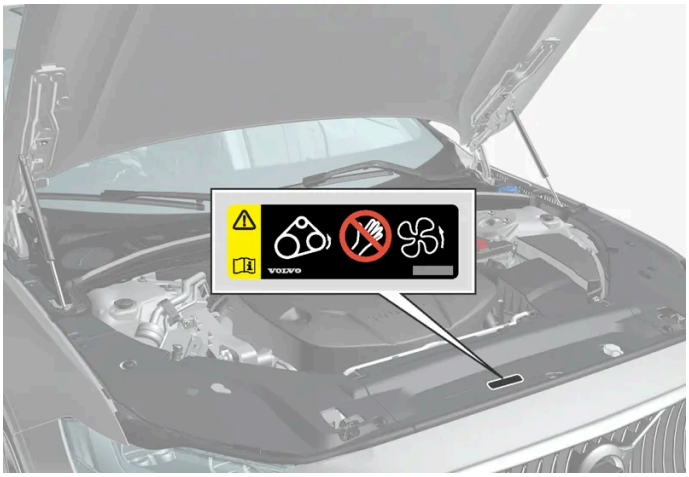
# 17.4.4. Engine compartment overview

This overview shows some service-related components.




The layout of the engine compartment may vary depending on model and engine variant.

1. Coolant expansion tank
2. Brake fluid reservoir (located on the driver's side)
3. Washer fluid filler pipe
4. Fusebox
5. Air filter
6. Engine oil filler pipe



Location of warning decal for the engine compartment. The layout of the engine compartment may vary depending on model and engine variant.

**Note**

The decals shown in the Owner's Manual do not claim to be exact reproductions of those found in the vehicle. The purpose is to show approximately how they look and about where they are located on the vehicle. The information that applies for your vehicle in particular is found on the decal on the vehicle.

**Warning**

Bear in mind that the cooling fan (located at the front of the engine compartment behind the radiator) may start or continue running automatically up to about 6 minutes after the engine is turned off.

Always entrust engine washing to a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended. If the engine is hot, there is a risk of fire.

**Warning**

The ignition system works with extremely high and dangerous voltages. The vehicle electrical system should always be in ignition mode 0 when work in being performed in the engine compartment.

Do not touch any spark plugs or ignition coils when the vehicle electrical system is in ignition mode II or when the engine is warm.

---

# 17.4.5. Coolant

Coolant helps keep the combustion engine at the right operating temperature. Excess heat can be used to heat the passenger compartment.

**Recommended grade:** Volvo-approved premixed coolant. If concentrated coolant is used, mix with 50% water of acceptable quality (i.e. not salt water, etc.). Consult a Volvo retailer if you have any questions.

To help prevent deterioration of the cooling system's function, which can lead to engine trouble and other issues, only Volvo-approved coolant should be used.

**Warning**

Coolant is hazardous if ingested and could cause damage to organs (kidneys). The product contains ethylene glycol, inhibitor, water, etc.

---

# 17.4.6. Refilling coolant

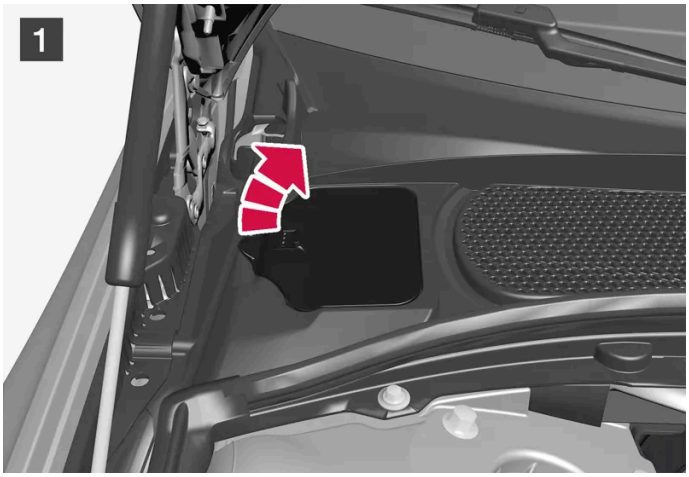
When refilling coolant, follow the instructions on the package. Never fill the cooling system with only water. The risk of freezing is increased with too low or too high amounts of coolant.

If there is coolant under the vehicle, smoke from the cooling system, or if more than 2 liters (about 2 quarts) of coolant has been added to the system, there could be something wrong with the cooling system and starting the vehicle could damage the engine. Call a tow truck and do not attempt to start the engine.

**Warning**

The coolant may be very hot. Never unscrew the cap when the coolant is hot. If coolant must be filled, unscrew the expansion tank cap slowly to relieve overpressure.

Coolant expansion tank



1. 1

   Open the cap in the plastic covering.

2. 2

Unscrew the expansion tank cap and fill coolant as needed. The level should not exceed the yellow MAX mark inside the expansion tank.

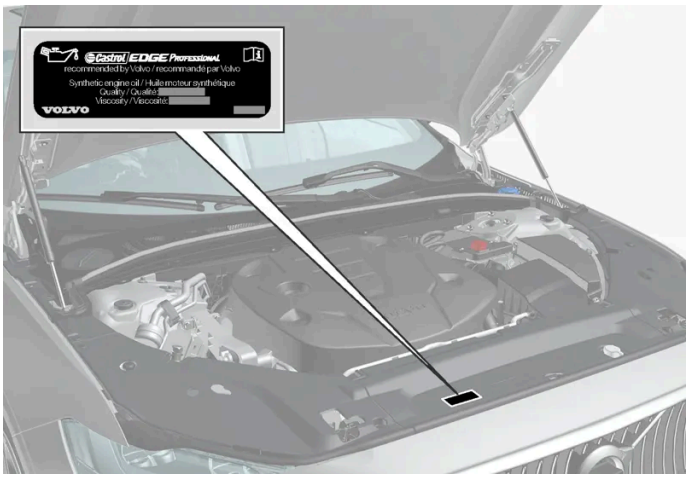
Put the components back in place in the reverse order.

> **Important**
>
> - Do not ingest the contents. May cause damage to organs (kidneys).
> - Use premixed coolant according to Volvo's recommendations. If concentrated coolant is used, make sure that the coolant mixture is 50% coolant and 50% water of acceptable quality.
> - Do not mix different types of coolant.
> - To help ensure sufficient corrosion protection in the system, only use new coolant when replacing larger components in the cooling system.
> - Never run the engine unless the cooling system is properly filled. An improperly filled cooling system could lead to high temperatures and cracks in the cylinder heads.
> - High levels of chlorine, chlorides and other salts may cause corrosion in the cooling system.

---

# 17.4.7. Engine oil

For the recommended service intervals and warranties to be applied, an approved engine oil must be used.




Location of warning decal for the engine compartment. The layout of the engine compartment may vary depending on model and engine variant.

Volvo recommends:

If the engine oil is not checked regularly and the level becomes low, this could cause serious engine damage.

**Note**

The decals shown in the Owner's Manual do not claim to be exact reproductions of those found in the vehicle. The purpose is to show approximately how they look and about where they are located on the vehicle. The information that applies for your vehicle in particular is found on the decal on the vehicle.

**Important**

To satisfy the requirements for the engine's service intervals, all engines are factory-filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil. Great care has been put into the choice of oil, with consideration given to service life, startability, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

For the recommended service intervals to apply, an approved engine oil must be used. Only use the prescribed oil grade to top off or change the oil. Otherwise, there is a risk of the vehicle's service life, startability, fuel consumption and environmental impact being affected.

Failure to use engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity could cause damage to engine-related components. Volvo disclaims warranty liability for such type of damage.

Volvo recommends entrusting oil changes to an authorized Volvo workshop.

## Symbols for low oil level

Volvo uses different systems to warn if the oil level is too low/high or the oil pressure is low. For oil pressure sensors, a warning symbol is displayed in the instrument panel when oil pressure is low . For oil level sensors, the  warning symbol in the instrument panel and display messages are used to alert the driver. Some engine variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo retailer for more information.

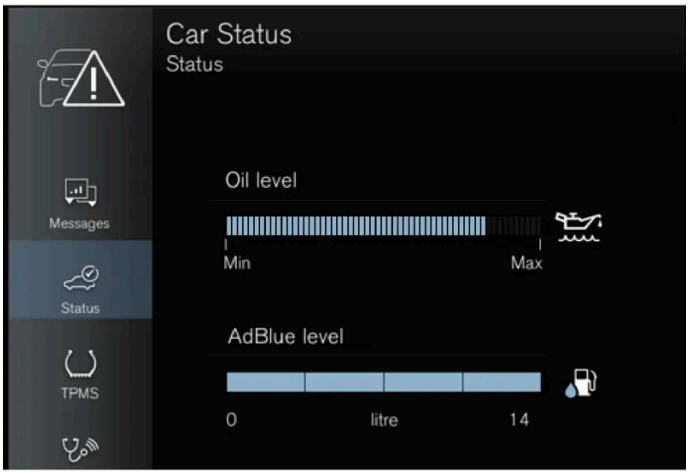
Change the engine oil and oil filter according to the schedule specified in the Warranty and Maintenance Records Information booklet. Oils of a higher grade than that specified may be used. If the vehicle is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil with a higher grade than that specified.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 17.4.8. Checking and filling engine oil

The engine oil level is monitored by an electronic oil level sensor.

## Viewing oil level in the center display




Example of the oil level graphic in the center display

The oil level can be viewed using the electronic oil level gauge in the center display once the vehicle has been started. The oil level should be checked regularly.

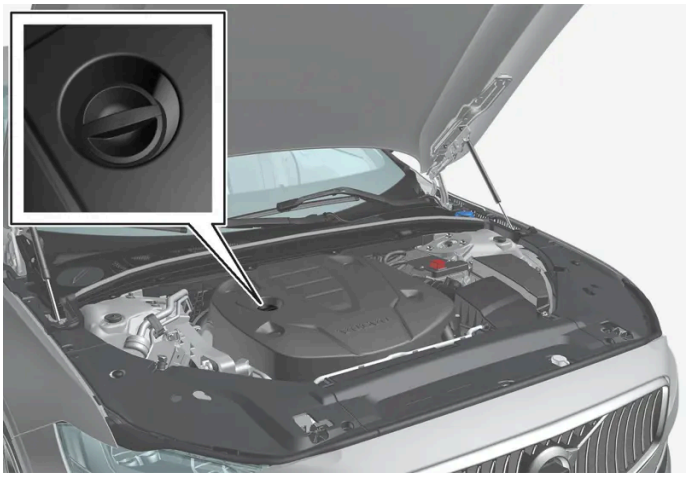
1. Open the **Car Status** app from App view in the center display.
2. Tap **Status** to display the oil level.

> **Note**
>
> The system cannot immediately detect changes when the oil is filled or drained. The vehicle must have been driven approximately 30 km (20 miles) and have been stationary 5 minutes on a level surface and with the engine off before the correct oil level will be displayed.

> **Note**
>
> If the conditions for measuring oil level are not properly fulfilled (time after engine shutdown, vehicle inclination, ambient temperature, etc.) the message **No value available** will be shown in the center display. This does **not** mean that anything is wrong in the vehicle systems.

> **Important**
>
>
>
> If this symbol is shown, the oil pressure may be too low. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and have it towed to a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

## Filling engine oil



Filler pipe[1], [2]

It may be necessary to top up engine oil between regularly scheduled services. No action is necessary with regard to engine oil level until a message appears in the instrument panel.

> **Warning**
>
> If the message **Engine oil level Service required** is displayed, drive to a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended. The oil level may be too high.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not spill oil on the hot exhaust pipes as this could cause a fire.

> **Important**
>
> If the message**Engine oil level low Refill 1 liter** is displayed, fill only with the specified volume, e.g. 1 liter (1 quart).

[1] Engines with an electronic oil level sensor do not have a dipstick.

[2] The layout of the engine compartment may vary depending on model and engine variant.

---

# 17.4.9. Engine oil specifications

Engine oil of type VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20 must be used. Lower oil grades may not offer the same fuel economy, engine performance or engine protection.

Volvo recommends:

## General

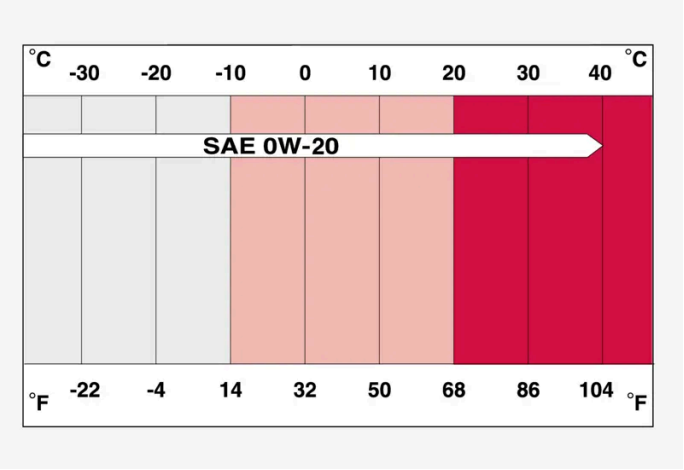
See the Service and warranty booklet for information about oil change intervals.

> **Note**
>
> This vehicle is delivered from the factory with synthetic oil.

**Do not use oil additives.**

## Oil viscosity

The wrong oil viscosity can shorten engine service life during normal use. VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20 provides good fuel economy and engine protection. See the viscosity chart.




Viscosity chart

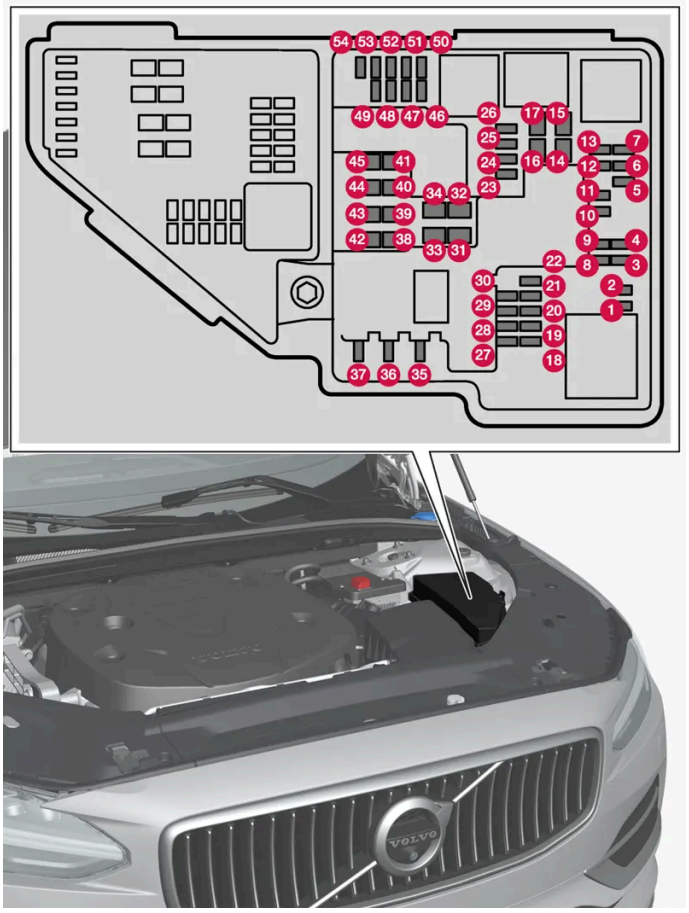
## Oil volume

Engine oil volumes (including oil filter) are shown in the table.

| | |
|---|---|
| Liter (approx) | 5.6 |
| US qts (approx) | 5.9 |

# 17.4.10. Fuses in the engine compartment

The fuses in the engine compartment help protect electrical components such as engine and brake functions.




Fuse pliers are provided on the inside of the fuse box cover to assist in removing and inserting fuses.

There are also spaces for several extra fuses in the fusebox.

## Positions

There is a decal with a diagram of the locations of the fuses on the inside of the cover. Functions and components in the fuse table cover several different models and engine variants. A fuse described there may be used for fewer or no components, depending on how the vehicle is equipped.

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | – | – | Micro |
| 2 | – | – | Micro |
| 3 | Turbo charge pressure module<br>Heated oxygen sensor group | 15 | Micro |
| 4 | Spark plug/ignition coils (gasoline)<br>Exhaust sensor group, diesel particulates/nitrous oxides (diesel) | 15 | Micro |
| 5 | Engine oil pump solenoid<br>Heated oxygen sensor group<br>Air conditioning compressor solenoid | 15 | Micro |
| 6 | Oil level and temperature sensors<br>Glow plug control module (diesel)<br>Engine component group 1 (Components related to engine function, including turbo/compressor. Content depends on engine variant). | 7.5 | Micro |

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | Engine control module<br>Throttle control module<br>Engine component group 2 (Components related to engine function, including turbo/compressor. Content depends on engine variant). | 20 | Micro |
| 8 | Engine control module | 5 | Micro |
| 9 | – | – | Micro |
| 10 | Glow plug control module (diesel)<br>Engine component group 3 (Components related to engine function, including turbo/compressor and cooling/temperature regulation of drive-line. Content depends on engine variant.) | 10 | Micro |
| 11 | Spoiler damper control module<br>Cooler damper control module<br>Relay windings power pulse (PowerPulse) (diesel)<br>Coolant changeover valve<br>Fuel leakage control pump | 5 | Micro |
| 12 | Coolant pump | 15 | Micro |
| 13 | Engine control module | 20 | Micro |
| 14 | Starter motor | 40 | MCase [1] |
| 15 | Starter motor | Shunt | MCase [1] |
| 16 | Fuel filter heater (diesel) | 30 | MCase [1] |
| 17 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 18 | Calculation module | 5 | Micro |
| 19 | – | – | Micro |
| 20 | – | – | Micro |
| 21 | Camshaft engine control module (gasoline) | 15 | Micro |
| 22 | – | – | Micro |
| 23 | USB port in tunnel console, rear* | 7.5 | Micro |
| 24 | 12 V outlet tunnel console, front | 15 | Micro |
| 25 | – | – | Micro |
| 26 | 12 V outlet in trunk/cargo compartment* | 15 | Micro |
| 27 | – | – | Micro |
| 28 | Headlight, left | 15 | Micro |
| 29 | Headlight, right | 15 | Micro |
| 30 | – | – | Micro |
| 31 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 32 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 33 | Headlight washers* | 25 | MCase [1] |
| 34 | Washer fluid pump, front | 25 | MCase [1] |
| 35 | Transmission control module<br>Electric gear selector | 15 | Micro |
| 36 | Horn (honk) | 20 | Micro |
| 37 | Alarm siren* | 5 | Micro |
| 38 | Brake system control module (valves, parking brake) | 40 | MCase [1] |
| | Brake assist control module [2] | 30 | MCase [1] |
| 39 | Wipers | 30 | MCase [1] |
| 40 | Washer fluid pump, rear | 25 | MCase [1] |

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 41 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 42 | Parking heater* | 20 | MCase [1] |
| 43 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 44 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 45 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 46 | Fed when ignition is on: engine control module, transmission components, electrical power steering, central electrical module, brake system control module | 5 | Micro |
| 47 | – | – | Micro |
| 48 | Headlight, right | 15 | Micro |
| 49 | – | – | Micro |
| 50 | Transmission control module | 10 | Micro |
| 51 | Battery connection control module | 5 | Micro |
| 52 | Collision module (SRS)<br>Occupant weight sensor (OWS) | 5 | Micro |
| 53 | Headlight, left | 15 | Micro |
| 54 | Accelerator pedal sensor | 5 | Micro |

[1] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Only mild hybrid vehicles.

# 17.5. Tools and accessories

# 17.5.1. Jack*

The jack can be used to lift the vehicle to e.g. change a wheel.

**Important**

The jack* provided with your vehicle is intended to be used only in temporary situations such as changing wheels in the event of a flat tire. Only the jack that came with your particular model should be used to lift the vehicle. If the vehicle needs to be lifted more frequently or for a prolonged period, using a garage jack or hoist is recommended. Always follow this device's instructions for use.

When not in use, the jack should be kept in its storage compartment under the cargo compartment floor. The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to fit.

The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to fit.

**Note**

For vehicles with leveling control*: If the vehicle is equipped with pneumatic suspension, this feature must be turned off before the vehicle is lifted onto a tow truck.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 17.5.2. Tire sealing system

The temporary tire sealing system[1] (TMK) can be used to seal a puncture hole in a tire or to check and adjust the inflation pressure in the tire.
Models equipped with a spare wheel[2] do not have the tire sealing system.

**Warning**

**California Proposition 65**

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle [https://www.p65warnings.ca.gov/products/passenger-vehicle] .

The tire sealing system consists of a compressor and a bottle containing sealing compound. The sealing functions as a temporary repair.

**Note**

The sealing compound effectively seals tires with punctures in the tread but may not be able to fully seal tires with punctures in the sidewall. Do not use the tire sealing system on tires with large tears, cracks or similar damage.

**Note**

The compressor is intended for temporary tire sealing and is approved by Volvo.

## Location

The tire sealing system is located in a foam block under the cargo compartment floor.

## Sealing compound expiration date

The sealing compound bottle must be replaced if its expiration date has passed (see the decal on the bottle). Handle the old bottle as hazardous waste.

[1] Certain models only.

[2] Not available on all models.

## 17.5.3. Tool kit

Tools for e.g. towing or changing wheels are provided in the vehicle's cargo compartment.

Examples of tools.

1 Jack*

2 Tool for removing the plastic wheel bolt covers

3 Funnel for refilling fluids

4 Wheel bolt key* and towing eyelet

If the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire* [1], a jack and wheel bolt key are provided instead of the tire sealing system.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Not available on all models.

# 17.6. Fuses

## 17.6.1. Fuses and fuseboxes

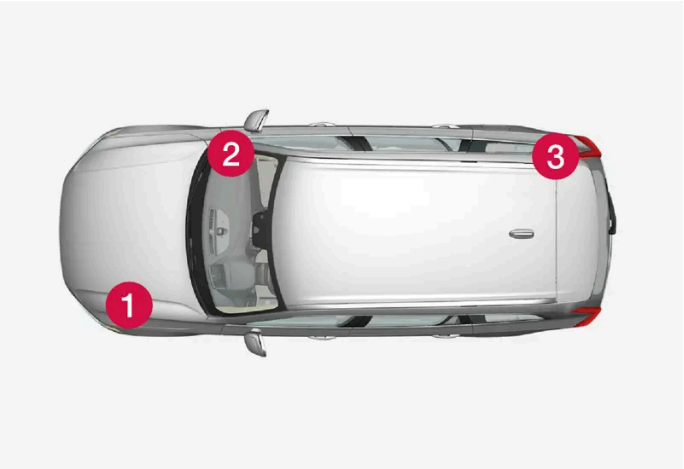
Electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the vehicle's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

**Warning**

Never use a foreign object or a fuse with a higher amperage than that specified to replace a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to a fire.

If any electrical component or function is not responding, the component may have blown a fuse due to overload. If the same fuse blows repeatedly, there may be a problem with the component. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop to have the component checked.

### Location of fuseboxes




The illustration is generic - appearance may vary according to vehicle model.

1. Engine compartment
2. Under the glove compartment
3. Trunk/cargo compartment

---

## 17.6.2. Replacing fuses

Electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the vehicle's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

1. Refer to the fuse diagram to locate the fuse.
2. Pull out the fuse and examine it from the side to determine if the curved metal wire in the fuse is intact.
3. If the wire is broken, replace the fuse with a new fuse of the same color and amperage.

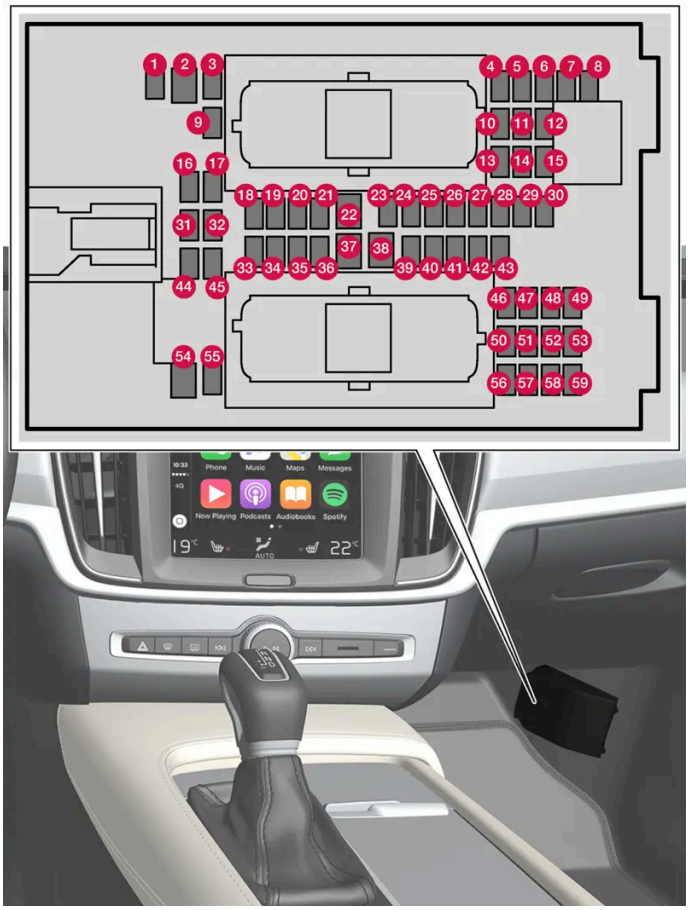
> **Warning**
>
> Never use a foreign object or a fuse with a higher amperage than that specified to replace a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to a fire.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

> **Warning**
>
> Contact an authorized Volvo workshop for assistance replacing fuses not listed in the Owner's Manual. If fuse replacement is performed incorrectly, significant damage can be caused to the electrical system.

# 17.6.3. Fuses under the glove compartment

Fuses under the glove compartment provide protection for e.g. electrical outlets, displays and door modules.




The fuse box is located behind the floor mat/side panel.

Fuse pliers are provided on the inside of the fuse box cover to assist in removing and inserting fuses.

There are also spaces for several extra fuses in the **distribution box in the engine compartment**.

## Positions

There is a decal with a diagram of the locations of the fuses on the inside of the cover. Functions and components in the fuse table cover several different models and engine variants. A fuse described there may be used for fewer or no components, depending on how the vehicle is equipped.

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 48 V battery control module [1] | 10 | Micro |

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | – | – | MCase [2] |
| 3 | – | – | Micro |
| 4 | Movement sensor* | 5 | Micro |
| 5 | – | – | Micro |
| 6 | Instrument panel | 5 | Micro |
| 7 | Center console keypad | 5 | Micro |
| 8 | Sun sensor | 5 | Micro |
| 9 | – | – | Micro |
| 10 | – | – | Micro |
| 11 | Steering wheel module | 5 | Micro |
| 12 | Control module, start knob and parking brake | 5 | Micro |
| 13 | Heated steering wheel* | 15 | Micro |
| 14 | – | – | Micro |
| 15 | – | – | Micro |
| 16 | – | – | Micro |
| 17 | – | – | Micro |
| 18 | Climate system control module | 10 | Micro |
| 19 | – | – | Micro |
| 20 | Diagnostics port | 10 | Micro |
| 21 | Center display | 5 | Micro |
| 22 | Climate system blower module, front | 40 | MCase [2] |
| 23 | USB hub | 5 | Micro |
| 24 | Instrument lighting<br>Passenger compartment lighting<br>Rearview mirror auto-dimming*<br>Rain and light sensors*<br>Power front seats*<br>Rear door control panels<br>Climate system blower module<br>Keypad in tunnel console, rear seat footwell* | 7.5 | Micro |
| 25 | Driver support functions control module | 5 | Micro |
| 26 | Overhead console | 20 | Micro |
| 27 | Head-up display* | 5 | Micro |
| 28 | Passenger compartment lighting | 5 | Micro |
| 29 | Wireless charging pad | 5 | Micro |
| 30 | Overhead console display | 5 | Micro |
| 31 | – | – | Micro |
| 32 | – | – | Micro |
| 33 | Door module, right side, rear | 20 | Micro |
| 34 | Fuse box trunk/cargo compartment | 10 | Micro |
| 35 | Control module for Internet-connected vehicle<br>Volvo On Call control module | 5 | Micro |
| 36 | Door module, left side, rear | 20 | Micro |

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 37 | Infotainment control module (amplifier) | 40 | MCase [2] |
| 38 | – | – | MCase [2] |
| 39 | Multi-band antenna | 5 | Micro |
| 40 | Seat comfort control module, front* | 5 | Micro |
| 41 | – | – | Micro |
| 42 | Rear window wiper | 15 | Micro |
| 43 | Fuel pump control module | 15 | Micro |
| 44 | Relay windings for transmission oil pump<br>48 V converter [1]<br>Engine start module [1] | 5 | Micro |
| 45 | Opening trunk/tailgate with foot movement* | – | Micro |
| 46 | Driver's seat heating | 15 | Micro |
| 47 | Front passenger's seat heating | 15 | Micro |
| 48 | Coolant pump | 7.5 | Micro |
| 49 | – | – | Micro |
| 50 | Door module, left side, front | 20 | Micro |
| 51 | Active suspension module* | 20 | Micro |
| 52 | – | 5 | Micro |
| 53 | Infotainment module | 10 | Micro |
| 54 | – | – | MCase [2] |
| 55 | – | – | Micro |
| 56 | Door module, right door | 20 | Micro |
| 57 | – | – | Micro |
| 58 | TV* (certain markets only) | 5 | Micro |
| 59 | Primary fuse for fuses 52, 53, 57 and 58 | 15 | Micro |

[1] Only mild hybrid vehicles.

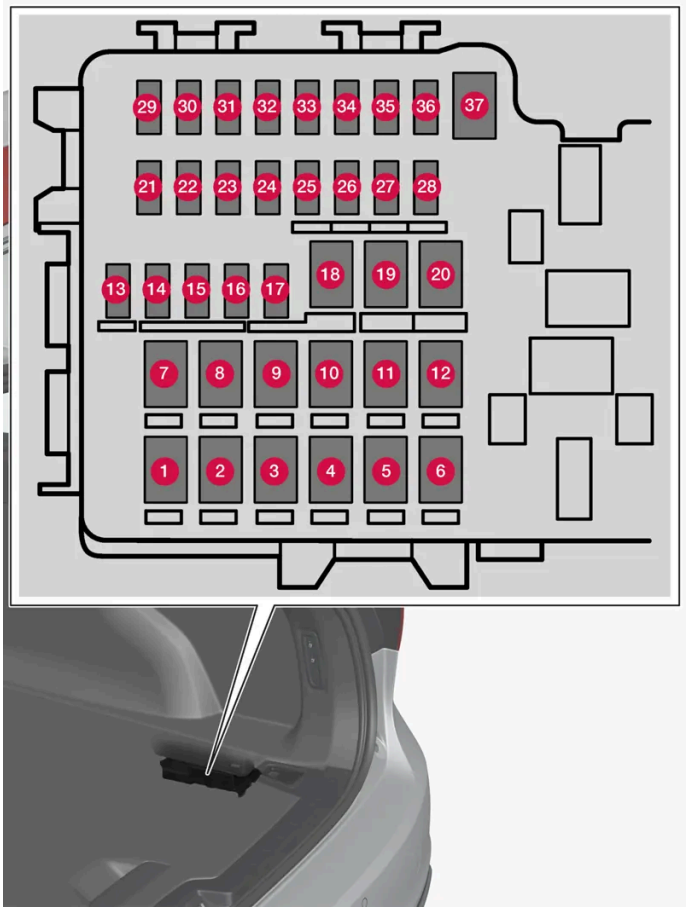
[2] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

# 17.6.4. Fuses in the cargo compartment

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The fuses in the cargo compartment help protect electrical components such as the power seats*, airbags and seat belt tensioners.




The fuse box is located behind the panel on the right-hand side.

Fuse pliers are provided on the inside of the fuse box cover to assist in removing and inserting fuses.

There are also spaces for several extra fuses in the **distribution box in the engine compartment**.

## Positions

Functions and components in the fuse table cover several different models and engine variants. A fuse described there may be used for fewer or no components, depending on how the vehicle is equipped.

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Heated rear window | 30 | MCase [1] |
| 2 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 3 | Compressor for pneumatic suspension* | 40 | MCase [1] |
| 4 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 5 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 6 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 7 | Door module, right side, rear [2] | 20 | MCase [1] |
| 8 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| | – | – | |
| 9 | Power tailgate* | 25 | MCase [1] |

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 10 | Power front passenger seat*<br>Door module, right side, front [2] | 20 | MCase [1] |
| 11 | Towbar* control module | 40 | MCase [1] |
| 12 | Seat belt tensioner, right | 40 | MCase [1] |
| 13 | Internal relay windings | 5 | Micro |
| 14 | – | – | Micro |
| 15 | Door module, left side, rear | 20 | Micro |
| 16 | – | – | Micro |
| 17 | – | – | Micro |
| 18 | Towbar* control module | 25 | MCase [1] |
| | Accessory module | 40 | |
| 19 | Power driver seat*<br>Door module, left side, front [2] | 20 | MCase [1] |
| 20 | Seat belt tensioner, left side | 40 | MCase [1] |
| 21 | Park Assist Camera* | 5 | Micro |
| 22 | – | – | Micro |
| 23 | – | – | Micro |
| 24 | – | – | Micro |
| 25 | – | – | Micro |
| 26 | – | – | Micro |
| 27 | – | – | Micro |
| 28 | Heated rear seat, left* | 15 | Micro |
| 29 | – | – | Micro |
| 30 | Blind Spot Information (BLIS)* | 5 | Micro |
| 31 | – | – | Micro |
| 32 | | 5 | Micro |
| 33 | Actuator, exhaust system (gasoline) | 5 | Micro |
| 34 | – | – | Micro |
| 35 | All Wheel Drive (AWD)* control module | 15 | Micro |
| 36 | Heated rear seat, right* | 15 | Micro |
| 37 | – | – | MCase [1] |

* Option/accessory.

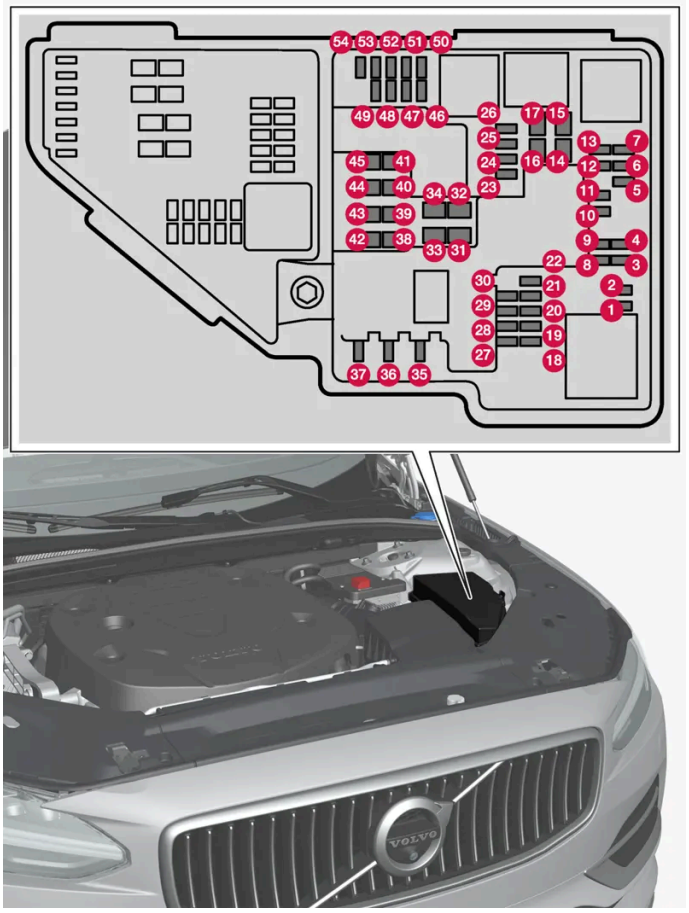
[1] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[2] Only mild hybrid vehicles.

# 17.6.5. Fuses in the engine compartment

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The fuses in the engine compartment help protect electrical components such as engine and brake functions.




Fuse pliers are provided on the inside of the fuse box cover to assist in removing and inserting fuses.

There are also spaces for several extra fuses in the fusebox.

## Positions

There is a decal with a diagram of the locations of the fuses on the inside of the cover. Functions and components in the fuse table cover several different models and engine variants. A fuse described there may be used for fewer or no components, depending on how the vehicle is equipped.

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | – | – | Micro |
| 2 | – | – | Micro |
| 3 | Turbo charge pressure module<br>Heated oxygen sensor group | 15 | Micro |
| 4 | Spark plug/ignition coils (gasoline)<br>Exhaust sensor group, diesel particulates/nitrous oxides (diesel) | 15 | Micro |
| 5 | Engine oil pump solenoid<br>Heated oxygen sensor group<br>Air conditioning compressor solenoid | 15 | Micro |
| 6 | Oil level and temperature sensors<br>Glow plug control module (diesel)<br>Engine component group 1 (Components related to engine function, including turbo/compressor. Content depends on engine variant). | 7.5 | Micro |

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | Engine control module<br>Throttle control module<br>Engine component group 2 (Components related to engine function, including turbo/compressor. Content depends on engine variant). | 20 | Micro |
| 8 | Engine control module | 5 | Micro |
| 9 | – | – | Micro |
| 10 | Glow plug control module (diesel)<br>Engine component group 3 (Components related to engine function, including turbo/compressor and cooling/temperature regulation of drive-line. Content depends on engine variant.) | 10 | Micro |
| 11 | Spoiler damper control module<br>Cooler damper control module<br>Relay windings power pulse (PowerPulse) (diesel)<br>Coolant changeover valve<br>Fuel leakage control pump | 5 | Micro |
| 12 | Coolant pump | 15 | Micro |
| 13 | Engine control module | 20 | Micro |
| 14 | Starter motor | 40 | MCase [1] |
| 15 | Starter motor | Shunt | MCase [1] |
| 16 | Fuel filter heater (diesel) | 30 | MCase [1] |
| 17 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 18 | Calculation module | 5 | Micro |
| 19 | – | – | Micro |
| 20 | – | – | Micro |
| 21 | Camshaft engine control module (gasoline) | 15 | Micro |
| 22 | – | – | Micro |
| 23 | USB port in tunnel console, rear* | 7.5 | Micro |
| 24 | 12 V outlet tunnel console, front | 15 | Micro |
| 25 | – | – | Micro |
| 26 | 12 V outlet in trunk/cargo compartment* | 15 | Micro |
| 27 | – | – | Micro |
| 28 | Headlight, left | 15 | Micro |
| 29 | Headlight, right | 15 | Micro |
| 30 | – | – | Micro |
| 31 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 32 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 33 | Headlight washers* | 25 | MCase [1] |
| 34 | Washer fluid pump, front | 25 | MCase [1] |
| 35 | Transmission control module<br>Electric gear selector | 15 | Micro |
| 36 | Horn (honk) | 20 | Micro |
| 37 | Alarm siren* | 5 | Micro |
| 38 | Brake system control module (valves, parking brake) | 40 | MCase [1] |
| | Brake assist control module [2] | 30 | MCase [1] |
| 39 | Wipers | 30 | MCase [1] |
| 40 | Washer fluid pump, rear | 25 | MCase [1] |

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

| | Function | Ampere | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| 41 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 42 | Parking heater* | 20 | MCase [1] |
| 43 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 44 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 45 | – | – | MCase [1] |
| 46 | Fed when ignition is on: engine control module, transmission components, electrical power steering, central electrical module, brake system control module | 5 | Micro |
| 47 | – | – | Micro |
| 48 | Headlight, right | 15 | Micro |
| 49 | – | – | Micro |
| 50 | Transmission control module | 10 | Micro |
| 51 | Battery connection control module | 5 | Micro |
| 52 | Collision module (SRS)<br>Occupant weight sensor (OWS) | 5 | Micro |
| 53 | Headlight, left | 15 | Micro |
| 54 | Accelerator pedal sensor | 5 | Micro |

[1] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Only mild hybrid vehicles.

# 17.7. Battery

## 17.7.1. Replacing the remote key's battery

The battery in the remote key must be replaced when it is discharged.

**Note**

All batteries have a limited service life and must eventually be replaced (does not apply for Key Tag). The battery's service life varies depending on how often the vehicle/key is used.

The remote key battery should be replaced if

- the information symbol illuminates and the message **Vehicle key bat. low** is displayed in the instrument panel
- the locks do not react after several attempts to lock or unlock the vehicle using the remote key within approx. 20 meter (65 feet) from the vehicle.

**Note**

Move closer to the vehicle and try to unlock it again.

The battery in the smaller key without buttons[1] (the Key Tag) cannot be replaced. A new key can be ordered from an authorized Volvo workshop.

**Important**

An end-of-life Key Tag must be turned in to an authorized Volvo workshop. The key must be deleted from the vehicle because it can still be used to start the vehicle via backup start.

## Opening the key and replacing the battery

1. 1

1

1 Hold the remote key with the front side (with the Volvo logo) facing up and move the button on the key ring section to the right. Slide the front cover slightly upward.

2. The cover will loosen and can be removed from the key.

2. **2**

2

1. Turn the key over, move the button to the side and slide the rear cover slightly upward.
2. The cover will loosen and can be removed from the key.

3. **3**

3

Use a screwdriver or similar object to turn the battery cover counterclockwise so the markers point to OPEN.

Remove the cover carefully by pressing e.g. a fingernail into the indentation.

Pry the cover up.

4. **4**

4

The battery's positive side (+) faces upward. Carefully pry out the battery as shown in the illustration.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

> **Important**
>
> Avoid touching new batteries and their contact surfaces with your fingers as this will impair their function.

5. 5

5

Insert a new battery with the positive side (+) facing upward. Do not touch the contact surfaces of the remote key battery.

1 Place the edge of the battery downward into the holder. Slide the battery forward until it locks into place under the two plastic catches.

2 Press the battery downward until it locks into place under the upper black plastic catch.

> **Note**
>
> Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.

> **Note**
>
> Volvo recommends that batteries used in the remote control key satisfy UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, sub-section 38.3. The factory installed batteries and batteries replaced by an authorized Volvo workshop satisfy the above criterion.

6. 6

6

Replace the battery cover and turn it clockwise until it points to CLOSE.

7. 7

7

1. Put the rear cover back into position and press it down until it clicks into place.
2. Slide the cover back.

> A second click indicates that the cover is correctly positioned and locked into place.

8. 8

8

1. Turn the remote key over and press the front cover down until it clicks into place.
2. Slide the cover back.

> An additional click indicates that the cover is correctly in place.

**Warning**

Make sure the battery is positioned correctly with the right polarity. If the remote key will not be used for a prolonged period of time, remove the battery to avoid battery leakage and damage. Wear protective gloves when handling damaged batteries, as batteries that are damaged or leaking can cause corrosive damage in contact with the skin.

- Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
- Do not leave batteries lying out where they could be swallowed by children or pets.
- Never disassemble, short-circuit or place a battery into open fire.
- Do not charge non-rechargeable batteries, as this could cause an explosion.

Check the remote key for damage before using it. If any damage is detected, e.g. if the battery cover cannot be closed properly, do not use the product. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Important**

Be sure to dispose of end-of-life batteries in a way that protects the environment.

**Warning**

**California Proposition 65**

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle [https://www.p65warnings.ca.gov/products/passenger-vehicle] .

* Option/accessory.

[1] Included in vehicles equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*.

---

# 17.7.2. Battery drain

Using a lot of electrical current without allowing the vehicle to charge the start battery results in a low charge level and some electrical functions will be reduced or switched off. If the charge level drops below a certain level, it will no longer be possible to start the vehicle without jump-starting or charging with an external charger.

Several measures can be taken to reduce power consumption. Avoid using ignition mode II when the engine is switched off. Instead, use ignition mode I, which uses less electrical current. Do not use functions that use a lot of electrical current when the vehicle is not being driven. Examples of such functions are:

- blower
- headlights
- windshield wipers
- audio system
- accessories plugged into the vehicle.

If the starter battery voltage is low, a message is shown in the driver display. The vehicle's energy-saving function will then turn off or reduce certain functions, such as the blower and the audio system.

1. To charge the battery, start the engine and let it run for at least 15 minutes (driving charges the battery faster than letting the engine idle).

If the battery's charge level is still low, or completely discharged, after taking these measures, the vehicle should be checked by a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

> **Note**
>
> High electrical current consumption may cause the battery capacity to drop below the minimum permitted level, which will temporarily limit the Start/Stop function. The engine will then start automatically without the driver lifting their foot from the brake pedal.

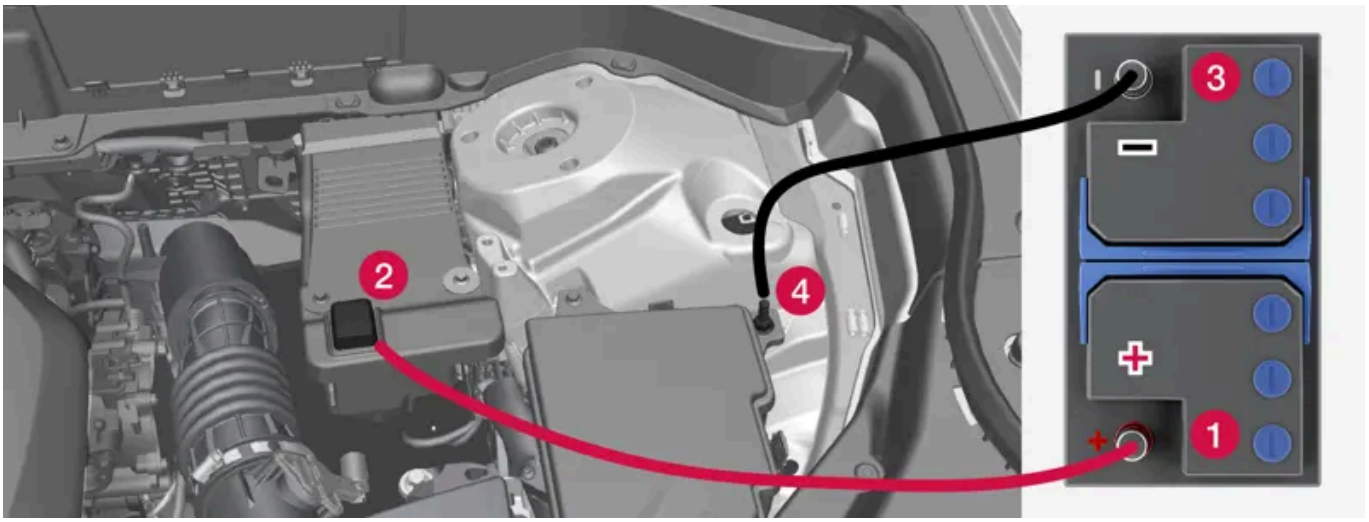
---

# 17.7.3. Jump starting using another battery

If the start battery is discharged, current from another battery can be used to start the vehicle.

> **Important**
>
> The charging point in mild hybrid vehicles is only intended for jump-starting your own vehicle. The charging point is not intended for jump-starting another vehicle. Using the charging point to start another vehicle could cause a fuse to blow, which would cause the charging point to stop working.

In mild hybrid vehicles[1], a discharged start battery can be caused by a blown fuse that is preventing charging. If a fuse has blown, **12 V Battery Fuse failure Service required** will be displayed in the instrument panel. Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop.




Jumper cable connecting points. Engine compartment appearance may vary depending on vehicle model and equipment level.

To avoid short circuits or other damage, the following steps are recommended when jump starting the battery using another battery:

1. Put the ignition in mode 0.
2. Make sure the auxiliary battery (the battery used to jump start the discharged battery) has a voltage of 12 volts.

3. If the auxiliary battery is in another vehicle, turn off that vehicle's engine and make sure that the vehicles are not touching each other.
4. Clamp the red jumper cable onto the auxiliary battery's positive (+) terminal (1).

> **Important**
>
> Connect the jump cable carefully to prevent short circuits with other components in the engine compartment.

5. Fold back the cover over your vehicle's positive (+) jump start terminal (2).
6. Clamp the other end of the red jumper cable to your vehicle's positive (+) jump start terminal (2).
7. Clamp the black jumper cable onto the auxiliary battery's negative (-) terminal (3).
8. Clamp the other end of the black jumper cable to your vehicle's negative (-) ground point (4).
9. Make sure the jumper cables are securely attached to help prevent sparks while jump starting.
10. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for a few minutes at a higher idling speed than normal, about 1500 rpm.
11. Start the engine of the vehicle with the dead battery.

> **Important**
>
> Do not touch the connections between the cable and the vehicle during the start attempt. Risk of sparking.

12. Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order – first the black cables and then the red cables.

    Make sure that none of the clamps of the black jumper cables come into contact with either vehicle's positive (+) jump start terminals or either of the red jumper cable's connected clamps.

> **Warning**
>
> 48 V voltage may be dangerous if handled incorrectly. Do not touch anything on batteries that is not clearly described in this Owner's Manual.
>
> - Never use a 48 V support battery to jump start the vehicle.
> - External electrical equipment may not under any circumstance be connected to the 48 V battery.
> - Only a workshop may replace or perform service on the 48 V battery – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

> **Warning**
>
> **PROPOSITION 65 WARNING!** Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

**Warning**

- Batteries generate hydrogen gas, which is flammable and explosive.
- Do not connect the jumper cable to any part of the fuel system or to any moving parts. Avoid touching hot manifolds.
- Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, fabrics or painted surfaces.
- If contact occurs, flush the affected area immediately with water. Obtain medical help immediately if eyes are affected.
- Never expose the battery to open flame or electric spark. Do not smoke near the battery. Failure to follow the instructions for jump starting can lead to injury.

**Note**

If the starter battery has such a low charge level that the vehicle does not have normal electrical functions and the engine must then be jump-started with an external battery or a battery charger, the Start/Stop function may remain activated. If the Start/Stop function shortly thereafter auto-stops the engine, there is a huge risk that auto-start of the engine will fail since the battery had not had time to recharge sufficiently.

If the vehicle has been jump-started or if there has not been enough time for the battery to be charged with a battery charger, the Start/Stop function should be temporarily deactivated until the battery has been recharged sufficiently. At an ambient temperature of about +15 °C (about 60 °F), the battery must be charged by the vehicle for at least 1 hour. At lower ambient temperatures, the charging time can increase to 3-4 hours. The recommendation is to charge the battery with an external battery charger, if possible.

[1] Vehicles with engine variants B4, B5 or B6 are mild hybrids.

---

# 17.7.4. Power supply

The vehicle's own power supply is connected to several different components and enables their electrical functions.

The vehicle's primary electrical system operates with 12 V voltage and powers electrical equipment.

Mild hybrid[1] vehicles are equipped with a 48 V system in addition to the primary electrical system.

## Batteries

To supply power to various components, your vehicle is equipped with:

- a 12 V start battery that powers the vehicle's primary electrical system
- a support battery that helps during the Start/Stop function's start sequence. The battery is either a 12 V battery or, if the vehicle is a mild hybrid[1], a 48 V battery that also enables regenerative braking while driving.

**Warning**

48 V voltage may be dangerous if handled incorrectly. Do not touch anything on batteries that is not clearly described in this Owner's Manual.

- Never use a 48 V support battery to jump start the vehicle.
- External electrical equipment may not under any circumstance be connected to the 48 V battery.
- Only a workshop may replace or perform service on the 48 V battery – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Vehicles with engine variants B4, B5 or B6 are mild hybrids.

---

## 17.7.5. Recycling of batteries

Batteries must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner at the end of their service life.

Consult a workshop if you are uncertain of how to dispose of this type of waste – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended. 48 V batteries in mild hybrid vehicles [1] may only be handled by authorized workshop personnel.

[1] Vehicles with engine variants B4, B5 or B6 are mild hybrids.

---

## 17.7.6. Battery symbols

There are warning symbols and information on the batteries.

| | |
|---|---|
| | Wear protective goggles. |
| | See the Owner's Manual for additional information. |
| | Keep batteries away from children. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Batteries contain corrosive acid. |
| | Avoid smoking, open flames, and/or sparks. |
| | Risk of explosion. |
| | Recycle properly. |

## 17.7.7. Start battery

This battery powers the vehicle's primary electrical system, which includes electrical equipment and engine start. If the vehicle is a mild hybrid [1], the engine is instead started by the support battery.

The start battery is a 12 V battery that is dimensioned to power the vehicle's specific electrical systems and functions.

- Never disconnect the start battery while the engine is running.
- Make sure the cables to the start battery are correctly connected and the clamps are securely tightened.

> **Important**
>
> On certain models, the battery is secured with a tensioning strap. Make sure that the tensioning strap is always securely tightened.

> **Important**
>
> If replacing the battery, make sure you replace it with a battery of the same size, cold start capacity and type as the original battery (see the decal on the battery). Volvo recommends having an authorized Volvo workshop change batteries.

**Warning**

If the starter battery is disconnected, the function for automatic opening and closing must be reset to function correctly. A reset is required in order for the pinch protection to work.

**Warning**

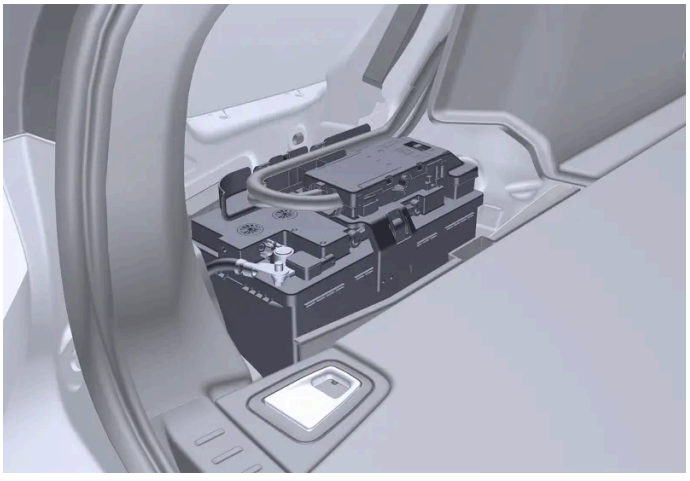
- Batteries generate hydrogen gas, which is flammable and explosive.
- Do not connect the jumper cable to any part of the fuel system or to any moving parts. Avoid touching hot manifolds.
- Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, fabrics or painted surfaces.
- If contact occurs, flush the affected area immediately with water. Obtain medical help immediately if eyes are affected.
- Never expose the battery to open flame or electric spark. Do not smoke near the battery. Failure to follow the instructions for jump starting can lead to injury.

## Starter battery service life and capacity

The service life of the start battery is influenced by a number of factors, including the number of starts, discharges, driving style, driving conditions and climate conditions. The starting capacity of the battery decreases gradually over time and therefore needs to be charged if the vehicle is not used for a prolonged period of time or if it is only driven short distances. Severe cold further limits starting capacity. If the starter battery becomes discharged too many times, its service life will be shortened.

To keep the start battery in good condition, drive the vehicle at least 15 minutes a week or connect the battery to a battery charger with automatic maintenance charging. A starter battery that is always kept fully charged has the maximum service life.

## Location



The start battery is located in the cargo compartment.

## Specifications for start battery

| Battery type | H7 AGM | H8 AGM |
|---|---|---|
| Voltage (V) | 12 | 12 |
| Cold start capacity[2] - CCA[3] (A) | 800 | 850 |

| Battery type | H7 AGM | H8 AGM |
|---|---|---|
| Dimensions, L×W×H | 315×175×190 mm (12.4×6.9×7.5 inches) | 353×175×190 mm (13.9×6.9×7.5 inches) |
| Capacity (Ah) | 80 | 95 |

[1] Vehicles with engine variants B4, B5 or B6 are mild hybrids.

[2] According to EN standard.

[3] Cold Cranking Amperes.

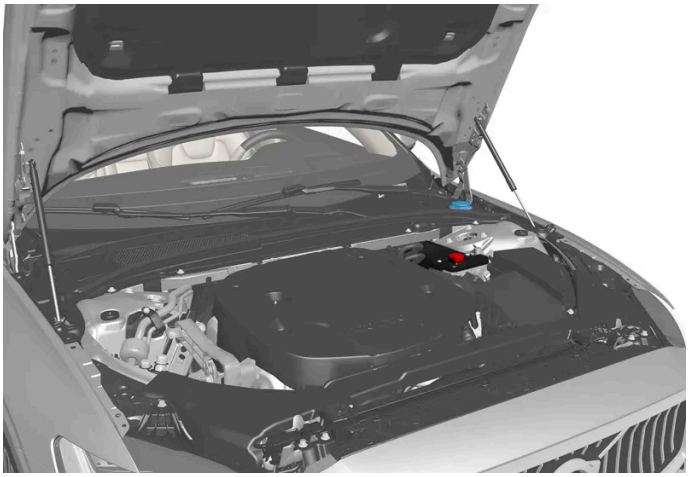
---

# 17.7.8. Support battery

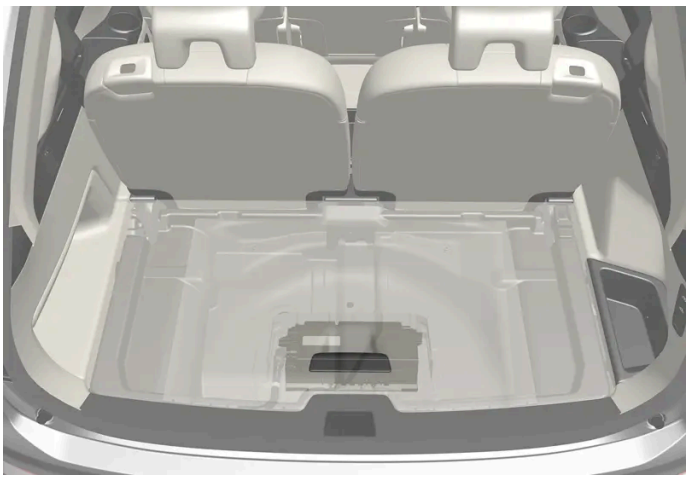
The vehicle is equipped with a support battery that helps during the Start/Stop function's start sequence.

The battery is either a 12 V battery or, if the vehicle is a mild hybrid[1], a 48 V battery that also enables regenerative braking while driving.

## Location



The 12 V support battery is located in the engine compartment.



If the vehicle is a mild hybrid, it instead has a 48 V support battery located under the cargo compartment. The box over the 48 V support battery may only be handled by an authorized workshop.

## Maintenance of support battery

The support battery does not normally require more service than the start battery. If you have any questions or concerns, consult a workshop – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

> **Important**
>
> If replacing the 12 V battery, make sure you replace it with a battery of the same size, cold start capacity and type as the original battery. Volvo recommends having an authorized Volvo workshop change batteries.

> **Warning**
>
> 48 V voltage may be dangerous if handled incorrectly. Do not touch anything on batteries that is not clearly described in this Owner's Manual.
>
> - Never use a 48 V support battery to jump start the vehicle.
> - External electrical equipment may not under any circumstance be connected to the 48 V battery.
> - Only a workshop may replace or perform service on the 48 V battery – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

## Specifications for support battery

| Battery type | AGM |
|---|---|
| Voltage (V) | 12 |
| Cold start capacity[2] - CCA[3] (A) | 170 |
| Dimensions, L×W×H | 150×90×130 mm (5.9×3.5×5.1 inches) |
| Capacity (Ah) | 10 |

If the vehicle is a mild hybrid[1], it is instead equipped with a 48 V lithium-ion battery.

[1] Vehicles with engine variants B4, B5 or B6 are mild hybrids.

[2] According to EN standard.

[3] Cold Cranking Amperes.

# 17.8. Service

# 17.8.1. Climate control system service

Service and repairs on the air conditioning system should only be done by an authorized workshop.

## Troubleshooting and repairs

The air conditioning system contains a fluorescent tracer substance. Ultraviolet light is used to search for leaks in the system.

Volvo recommends contacting an authorized Volvo workshop.

The climate system in the vehicle uses a freon-free R1234yf refrigerant. For information regarding the refrigerant, refer to the decal located on the inside of the frunk.

> **Warning**
>
> The air conditioning system contains the refrigerant R1234yf under pressure. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repairs to the refrigerant system may only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

---

# 17.8.2. Volvo's service program

To keep the vehicle as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service schedule specified in the Warranty and Maintenance Records Information booklet.

> **Warning**
>
> **California Proposition 65**
>
> Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle [https://www.p65warnings.ca.gov/products/passenger-vehicle] .

Volvo recommends having an authorized Volvo workshop perform service and maintenance. Volvo workshops have the staff, service literature and special tools that can provide the highest quality of service.

> **Important**
>
> To ensure the Volvo warranty is not invalidated, check and follow the Warranty and Service Records Information booklet.

## Introduction

The maintenance services contain several checks that require special instruments and tools and therefore must be performed by a qualified technician. To keep your Volvo in top condition, specify time-tested and proven Genuine Volvo Parts and

Accessories.

#### The Federal Clean Air Act - U.S.

The Federal Clean Air Act requires vehicle manufacturers to furnish written instructions to the ultimate purchaser to assure the proper servicing and function of the components that control emissions. These services, which are listed in the "Warranty and Service Records Information" booklet, are not covered by the warranty. You will be required to pay for labor and material used.

#### Maintenance

Your Volvo passed several major inspections before it was delivered to you, in accordance with Volvo specifications. The maintenance procedures outlined in the Warranty and Service Records Information booklet, many of which will positively affect your vehicle's emissions, should be performed as indicated. It is recommended that receipts for vehicle emission maintenance be retained in case questions arise concerning maintenance. Inspection and maintenance should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected.

#### Applicable warranties - U.S./Canada

In accordance with applicable U.S. and Canadian regulations, the following list of warranties is provided.

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Parts and Accessories Limited Warranty
- Corrosion Protection Limited Warranty
- Seat Belt and Supplemental Restraint Systems Limited Warranty
- Emission Design and Defect Warranty
- Emission Performance Warranty

These are the federal warranties; other warranties are provided as required by state/provincial law. Refer to your separate Warranty and Service Records Information booklet for detailed information concerning each of the warranties.

#### Periodic maintenance helps minimize emissions

**Note**

- Refer to your Service and Warranty Booklet for a comprehensive service and maintenance schedule up to 240,000 km (150,000 miles). This program contains inspections and services necessary for the proper function of your vehicle and includes components that affect vehicle emissions.
- The Warranty and Service Records Information booklet also contains detailed information concerning the warranties that apply to your vehicle.

## On-board Diagnostic System

OBD II is part of your vehicle's computerized engine management system. It stores diagnostic information about your vehicle's emission controls. It can light the Check Engine light (MIL) if it detects an emission control "fault." A "fault" is a component or system that is not performing within an expected range. A fault may be permanent or temporary. OBD II will store a message about any fault.

## Emission inspection readiness

**How do states use OBD II for emission inspections?**

Many states connect a computer directly to a vehicle's OBD II system. The inspector can then read "faults." In some states, this type of inspection has replaced the tailpipe emission test.

**How can my vehicle fail OBD II emission inspection?**

Your vehicle can fail OBD II emission inspection for any of the following reasons:

- If your Check Engine (MIL) light is lit, your vehicle may fail inspection.
- If your vehicle's Check Engine light was lit, but went out without any action on your part, OBD II will still have a recorded fault. Your vehicle may pass or fail, depending on the inspection practices in your area.
- If you had recent service that required disconnecting the battery, OBD II diagnostic information may be incomplete and "not ready" for inspection. A vehicle that is not ready may fail inspection.

**How can I prepare for my next OBD II emission inspection?**

- If your Check Engine (MIL) light is lit or was lit but went out without service, have your vehicle diagnosed and, if necessary, serviced by a qualified Volvo technician.
- If you recently had service for a lit Check Engine light, or if you had service that required disconnecting the battery, a period of driving is necessary to bring the OBD II system to "ready" for inspection. Two half-hour trips of mixed stop-and-go/highway driving are typically needed to allow OBD II to reach readiness. Your Volvo retailer can provide you with more information on planning a trip.
- Maintain your vehicle in accordance with your vehicle's maintenance schedule.

## Owner maintenance

Periodic maintenance requirements and intervals are described in your vehicle's Warranty and Service Records Information booklet.

The following points can be carried out between the normally scheduled maintenance services.

**Each time the vehicle is refueled:**

- Check the engine oil level.
- Clean the windshield, windshield wipers, headlights, and taillights.

**Monthly:**

- Check cold tire pressure in all tires. Inspect the tires for wear.
- Check that engine coolant and other fluid levels are between the indicated "min" and "max" markings.
- Clean interior glass surfaces with a glass cleaner and soft paper towels.
- Wipe driver information displays with a soft cloth.
- Visually inspect battery terminals for corrosion. Corrosion may indicate a loose terminal connector, or a battery near the end of its useful service life. Consult your Volvo retailer for additional information.

**As needed:**

Wash the vehicle, including the undercarriage, to reduce wear that can be caused by a buildup of dirt, and corrosion that can be caused by salt residues.

Clean leaves and twigs from air intake vents at the base of the windshield, and from other places where they may collect.

> **Note**
>
> Complete service information for qualified technicians is available online for purchase or subscription at www.volvotechinfo.com.

# 17.9. Vehicle status

## 17.9.1. Vehicle status

The general status of the vehicle can be viewed in the center display.

The **Car Status** app is started from the center display's App view and has four tabs:

- **Messages** - status messages
- **Status** – checking engine oil level and AdBlue level[1]
- **TPMS** - tire inflation pressure check
- **Appointments** - appointment information and vehicle information[2]

[1] AdBlue Diesel models only.

[2] Certain markets only.

## 17.9.2. Sending vehicle information to the workshop

Vehicle-related information can be sent at any time from the vehicle[1], e.g. if you schedule a visit to a workshop and would like to assist your workshop by providing additional basic information. Sending vehicle information is not the same as scheduling service.

1. Open the **Car Status** app from App view in the center display.
2. Tap **Appointments**.

3. Tap **Send vehicle data**.

> A message confirming that vehicle-related information has been sent will appear at the top of the center display. You can cancel data transmission by tapping the checkbox in the activity indicator.
> Information is sent via the vehicle's Internet connection [2].

Vehicle information can be accessed by any retailer if they are provided with your vehicle identification number (VIN [3]).

### Vehicle information contents

The most recently saved vehicle-related information will be sent (the last time the vehicle was turned on). This includes information regarding:

- service requirements
- time since last service was performed
- function status
- fluid levels
- mileage (odometer reading)
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN [3])
- software version
- diagnostic information.

[1] Certain markets only.

[2] There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

[3] Vehicle Identification Number.

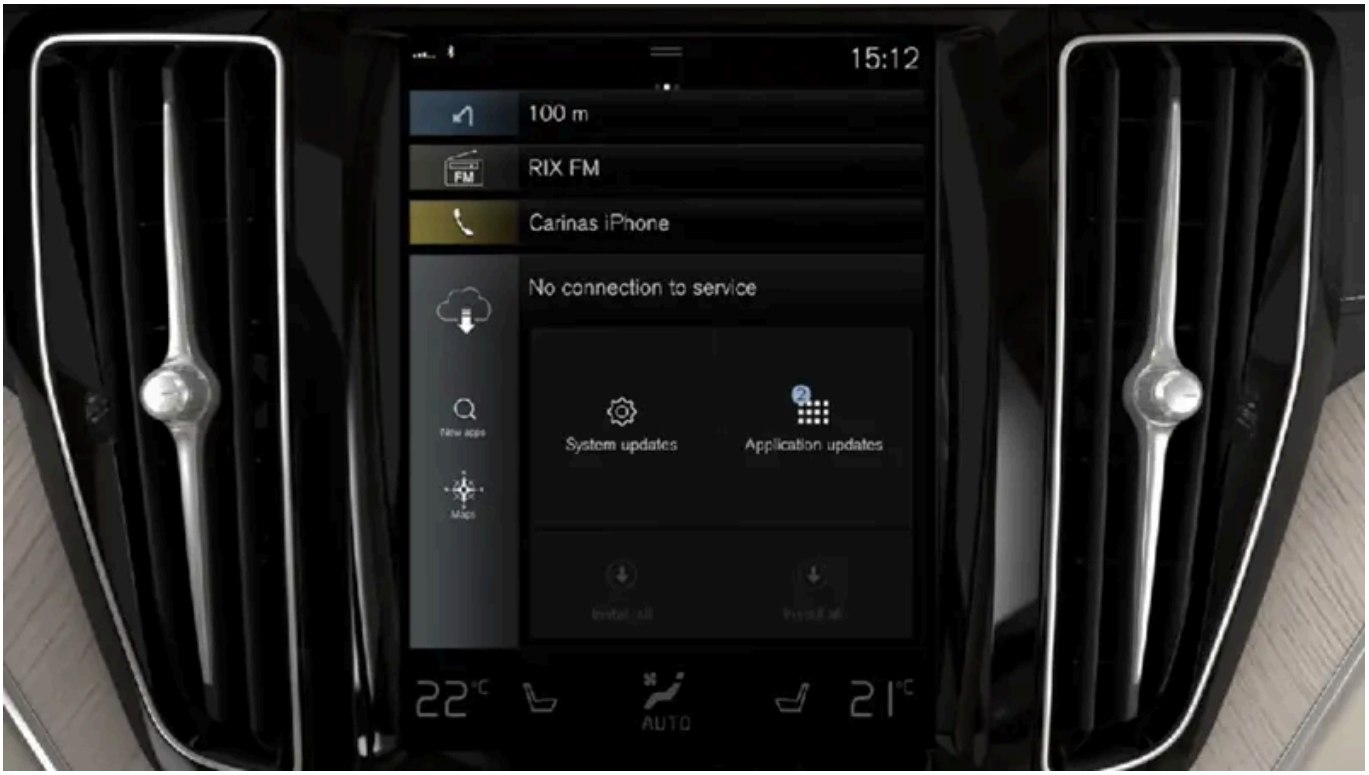
---

# 17.10. Download Center

---

# 17.10.1. Download Center

The Download Center app in the vehicle's center display is used to manage software[1] such as apps and maps.



**Download Center** is started from App view in the center display and makes it possible to:

- search for and update certain software
- update Sensus Navigation* map data
- download, update and delete apps.

[1] There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

* Option/accessory.

---

# 17.10.2. Updating software via Download Center

Certain software, e.g. apps and maps, can be updated via Download Center if the vehicle is connected to the Internet[1].

The message **New software updates available See Download Center** is shown in the center display's status bar when there is a new software update.

## Searching for updates

1. Go to **Download Center** in the center display's App view.

> A search begins. If a search has already been performed since startup, the system will need to be restarted before a new search can be performed. If an installation is already in progress, no search is performed.
> Select software area to see available updates.

## Starting updates

1. Select one of the installation options in Download Center's list of available updates.

> The selected software begins downloading.
> During the download phase, the update can be canceled by tapping the X next to the selected software. Once the download is finished and the installation has started, it will no longer be possible to cancel the update.

**Note**

The speed of other connected services may be affected during the download. The download can be canceled and started again at a later time, or the update can be prioritized by switching off other connected services, such as Internet radio.

**Note**

If the ignition is switched off and the vehicle is exited, the update will resume the next time the vehicle is used.

[1] There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

---

# 17.10.3. Tips in the event of problems updating via the Download Center

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet[1], it is possible to update several of the vehicle's systems directly from the center display. Here are some frequently asked questions and answers.

## No connection to the service

The message **No connection to service** means that the connection to the service is not working. There may be several reasons for the connection not working. Below are some possible causes and solutions.

#### Your vehicle has no internet connection

Ensure that your vehicle is connected to the internet by one of the following:

- Wi-Fi
- Bluetooth-connected phones
- Vehicle modem (P-SIM)

Then restart the app by going back to the home view and pressing **Download Center**.

#### Connection to the internet works but the service of remote updates is temporarily unavailable

Restart the app by going back to the home view and pressing **Download Center**. A new search is triggered and the request is sent to the remote updates function. If the error message appears repeatedly for more than 12 hours, the service may be temporarily unavailable or down for maintenance. If the fault persists for more than 48 hours, contact your Volvo retailer or Volvo Cars customer service for further assistance.

## The service has been inactive for 12 months

If the **Download Center** service has not been used in 12 months, the service will take longer the next time it is used (approx. 60 seconds). The next time remote updates is started, if the service has been used within 12 months, the service will be faster to start.

## The vehicle loses internet connection during updating

The vehicle loses internet connection when updating is in progress, check the internet connection and restart the function.

## If an update or download in progress stops responding despite restarting the vehicle

If you experience that an update or download in progress stops responding despite having restarted the vehicle, please visit a workshop[2] to have this rectified.

## Installation of too many apps

The space for apps is a maximum of 10 GB. If the memory has been filled it is not possible to perform updates from the vehicle. The memory may be full if you store a lot of music offline, for example. Free up memory by deleting an app or stored offline music lists, for example.

## If the infotainment system restarts by itself during an ongoing installation/update

If the vehicle's infotainment system restarts by itself during an ongoing installation of an app or a system update, try to reinstall the app or system update. If you find that this doesn't help, visit a workshop[2] for further assistance.

## If a map update stops in the message Leave vehicle with engine off to finalize

If you get the message **Leave vehicle with engine off to finalize** after completing a map update and the message does not disappear after a restart, visit a workshop[2] for further assistance. If possible, wait 14 days and the message will disappear by

itself.

### Further assistance

If you have not received a response to your questions and need further assistance, contact your Volvo retailer or Volvo Cars customer service.

> **Note**
>
> An update can be interrupted when the ignition is switched off and the vehicle is left. However, the update does not have to be completed before the vehicle is left as the update is resumed the next time the vehicle is used.

> **Note**
>
> Data downloading can affect other services such as transfer data, e.g. web radio. If the affect on other services is experienced as problematic, the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or cancel other services.

[1] There may be a charge for transmitting data over the Internet, depending on your service plan.

[2] An authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

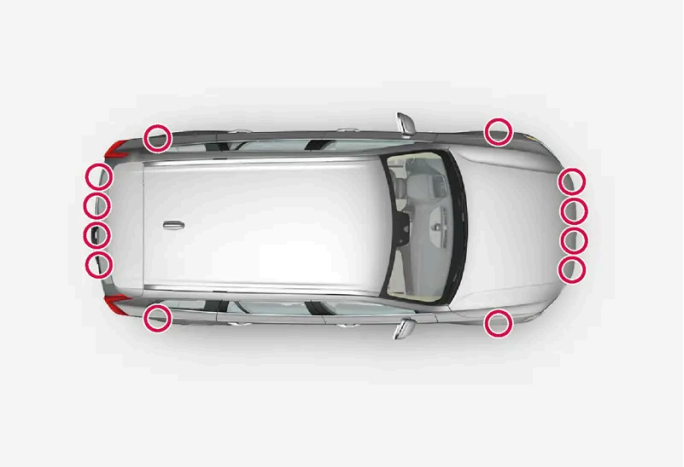
---

## 17.11. Recommended maintenance for the camera and radar units

In order for the camera and radar units to function properly, they must be kept free of dirt, ice, snow, etc. and should be washed regularly with water and car washing detergent.

> **Note**
>
> Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors could cause false warnings, reduced function, or no function.

The areas that should be kept clean, on both the left and right sides of the vehicle, are marked in the following illustrations.



Location of the parking sensors around the vehicle

Location of front camera and radar sensor

Location of rear radar sensors

- For best possible performance, it is important to keep the areas in front of the sensors clean.
- Do not attach any objects, tape or decals to the surface of the sensors.
- Clean the camera lenses regularly using lukewarm water and car washing detergent. Wash gently to avoid scratching the lens.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

**Important**

Only a workshop may perform maintenance on driver support components – an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 17.12. Maintenance of the brake system

Regularly check the brake system components for wear.

To keep the vehicle as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service schedule specified in the Warranty and Maintenance Records Information booklet. After replacing brake pads and brake discs, braking effect is not adapted until they are "broken in" by driving a few hundred kilometers (miles). Compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying greater pressure to the brake pedal. Volvo recommends only using brake pads approved for your Volvo.

**Important**

The brake system's components should be regularly checked for wear.

Contact a workshop for advice on how to do this or let a workshop perform the inspection - an authorized Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

# 17.13. Data transfer between vehicle and workshop over Wi-Fi

Volvo workshops have a designated Wi-Fi network for data transfer between your vehicle and the workshop. Your visit to the workshop will be easier and more effective when diagnostics information and software can be transferred over the workshop's network.

At the workshop, your service technician can connect your vehicle to the workshop's Wi-Fi network to perform troubleshooting and update software. For this type of communication, the vehicle only connects to a workshop's network. It is not possible to connect the vehicle to another Wi-Fi network (e.g. your home network) in the same way as to a workshop's network.

## Connecting with remote key

Connection is usually managed by the service technician, who will use the remote key buttons. It is therefore important to bring a key with buttons with you when you visit the workshop. Pressing the lock button on the remote key three times will connect the vehicle to the workshop's Wi-Fi network.

When the car is connected to a Wi-Fi network, the symbol appears in the center display.

**Warning**

The vehicle may not be driven when it is connected to the workshop's networks and systems.

# 17.14. Hoisting the vehicle

When hoisting the vehicle, it is important that the jack is positioned on the designated points under the vehicle.

The triangles in the plastic covering indicate where the jack attachment points/lifting points (red areas) are located.

**Note**

Volvo recommends only using the jack intended for your specific vehicle model. If a jack other than that recommended by Volvo is used, follow the instructions included with the equipment.

The vehicle's ordinary jack is only intended to be used in temporary situations for short periods of time, such as when changing wheels in the event of a flat tire. If the vehicle needs to be lifted more frequently, or for a longer period of time than for a wheel change, a garage jack or hoist is recommended. Always follow the instructions for use provided with the equipment.

**Warning**

- Apply the parking brake and put the gear selector in the Park (P) position.
- Block the wheels standing on the ground, use rigid wooden blocks or large stones.
- Check that the jack is not damaged, the threads are properly lubricated and it is free from dirt.
- Be sure the jack is on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and that it is upright and not leaning.
- The jack must correctly engage in the jack attachment.
- No objects should be placed between the base of the jack and the ground, or between the jack and the attachment bar on the vehicle.
- Never let anyone remain in the vehicle when it is raised on a jack.
- If a tire must be changed near passing traffic, make sure all passengers move to a safe location.
- Use a jack intended for the vehicle when changing a tire. For any other job, use stands to support the vehicle.
- Never crawl under or allow any part of your body to be extended under a vehicle supported by a jack.

> **Warning**
>
> If the vehicle is lifted on a garage jack, the jack must be placed under one of the four lifting points. Make sure that the vehicle is correctly positioned on the jack and that it cannot slide off. Make sure the jack plate has a rubber pad to help keep the vehicle stable and prevent damage. Always use axle stands or similar.

When not in use, the jack* should be kept in its storage compartment under the cargo compartment floor.

Read through all instructions before starting. Before raising the vehicle using a jack or lift, take out all the tools you will need.

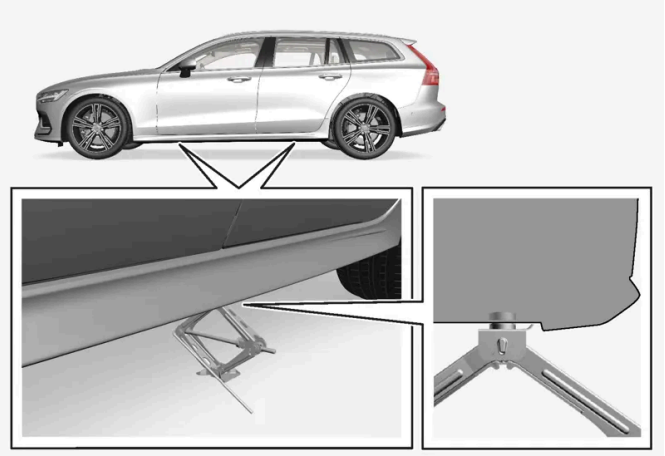
1. Turn on the vehicle's hazard warning flashers if e.g. a wheel change must be performed in an area with traffic.

2. Apply the parking brake and put the gear selector in P, or first gear if the vehicle has a manual transmission.

> **Note**
>
> For vehicles with leveling control*: If the vehicle is equipped with pneumatic suspension, this feature must be turned off before the vehicle is lifted onto a tow truck.

3. Place chocks in front of and behind the wheels that are still on the ground. For example, use heavy wooden blocks or large stones.

4. Position the jack or garage lift arms at the designated points under the vehicle. The triangle markings on the plastic cover indicate where the jack attachment points/lifting points are located. There are two jack attachment points on each side of the vehicle. There is a groove for the jack at each attachment point.



5. Position the jack under the attachment point being used, ensuring that the surface is firm, flat and not slippery.

6. Crank it up until it is properly aligned and it is in contact with the vehicle's jack attachment point. Make sure the top of the jack (or the garage lift arms) is correctly positioned in the attachment point, with the bump on the top of the jack in the recess in the attachment point and its base positioned vertically under the attachment point.

7. Turn the jack so that the crank is as far as possible from the side of the vehicle, which will position the jack's arms perpendicular to the vehicle's direction of movement.

8. Raise the vehicle to a suitable height for the operation to be performed.

* Option/accessory.

# 18. Specifications

## 18.1. Dimensions and weights

### 18.1.1. Towing capacity and tongue weight

Towing capacity and tongue weight are shown in the table.

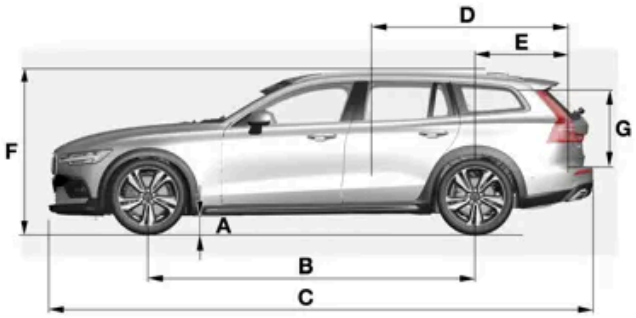
| Category | | USA (lbs) | Canada (kg) |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Max. trailer weights** | Without brakes: | 1650 | 750 |
| | With brakes: | 2000 | 900 |
| **Max. tongue weight** | – | 200 | 90 |

**Important**

- The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for altitudes up to 3280 ft(1,000 m) above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the car's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density, so the maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by 10% for every further 3280 ft(1,000 m) (or part thereof).

### 18.1.2. Dimensions

The vehicle's length, height, etc. are shown in the table.



| | Dimensions | mm | inches |
|---|---|---|---|
| A | Ground clearance [1] | 203 | 8.0 |
| B | Wheelbase | 2875 | 113,2 |
| C | Length | 4784 | 188.3 |
| D | Load length, floor, folded backrest | 1821 | 71.7 |
| E | Load length, floor | 1033 | 40.7 |
| F | Height [2] | 1504 | 59.2 |
| G | Load height | 644 | 25.4 |
| H | Wheel track, front | 1649 [3]<br>1640 [4]<br>1636 [5] | 64.9 [3]<br>64.6 [4]<br>64.4 [5] |
| I | Wheel track, rear | 1633 [3]<br>1625 [4]<br>1621 [5] | 64,3 [3]<br>64.0 [4]<br>63,8 [5] |
| J | Load width, floor | 1064 | 41.9 |
| K | Width | 1893 (1850 [6]) | 74,5 (72,8 [6]) |
| L | Width incl. rearview mirrors | 2040 | 80.3 |
| M | Width incl. folded rearview mirrors | 1916 | 75.4 |

[1] For curb weight plus 1 person. (Varies slightly depending on tire dimensions, chassis variant, etc.).

[2] Including roof antenna, at curb weight.

[3] Vehicles with 18-inch wheels.

[4] Vehicles with 19-inch wheels.

[5] Vehicles with 20-inch wheels.

[6] Chassis width.

**The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.**

# 18.1.3. Weights

The following table lists important weight data for your vehicle.

| Category | USA (lbs) | Canada (kg) |
|---|---|---|
| **Gross vehicle weight** | 5115 | 2320 |
| **Capacity weight** | 900 | 410 |
| **Permissible axle weights, front** | 2535 | 1150 |
| **Permissible axle weights, rear** | 2665 | 1210 |
| **Curb weight** | 4010–4060 | 1820–1840 |
| **Max. roof load** | 165 | 75 |

**Important**

- When loading the vehicle, the maximum gross vehicle weight and permissible axle weights may not be exceeded.

# 18.2. Engine specifications

# 18.2.1. Engine specifications

Engine specifications (output, etc.) for each engine variant are shown in the table below. The specifications for Special Edition vehicles may vary.

**Note**

Not all engines are available on all markets.

| Engine | Engine code[1] | Output (kW/rps) | Output (hp/rpm) | Torque (Nm/rps) | Torque (ft. lbs./rpm) | Number of cylinders |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| T5 AWD | B4204T23 | 187/92 | 250/5500 | 350/25–80 | 258/1500-4800 | 4 |

[1] The engine code, component and manufacturer serial numbers can be found on the engine.

# 18.2.2. Engine oil specifications

Engine oil of type VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20 must be used. Lower oil grades may not offer the same fuel economy, engine performance or engine protection.

Volvo recommends:

## General

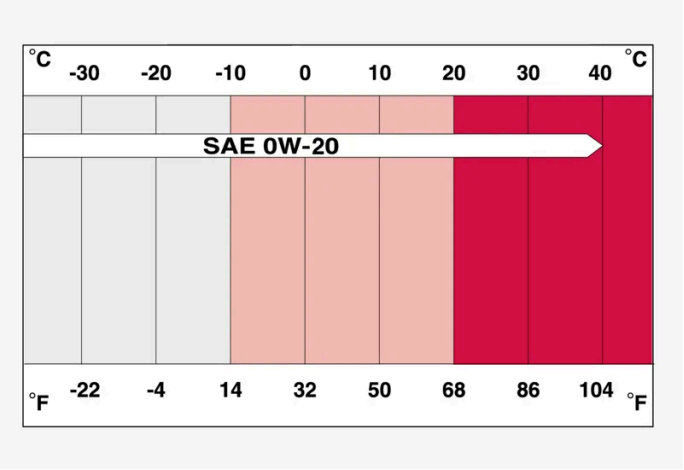
See the Service and warranty booklet for information about oil change intervals.

> **Note**
>
> This vehicle is delivered from the factory with synthetic oil.

**Do not use oil additives.**

## Oil viscosity

The wrong oil viscosity can shorten engine service life during normal use. VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20 provides good fuel economy and engine protection. See the viscosity chart.




Viscosity chart

## Oil volume

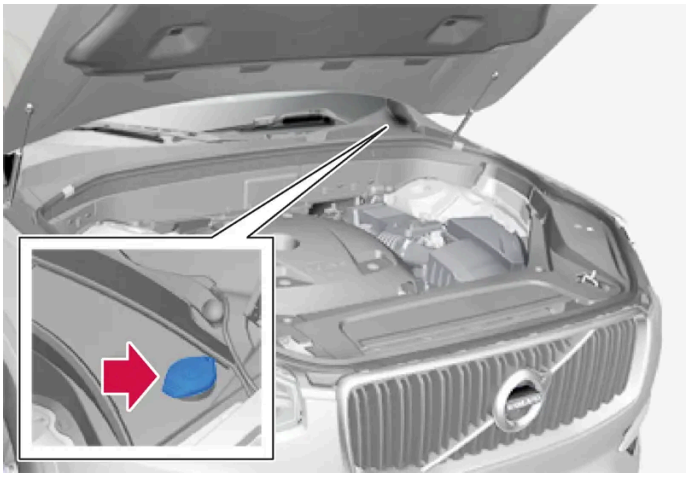
Engine oil volumes (including oil filter) are shown in the table.

| | |
|---|---|
| Liter (approx) | 5.6 |
| US qts (approx) | 5.9 |

# 18.3. Specifications for fluids and lubricants

## 18.3.1. Refilling washer fluid

Washer fluid is used to keep the headlights, windshield and rear window clean. Washer fluid containing anti-freeze should be used in very cold weather (below-freezing temperatures).



Fill washer fluid into the reservoir with the blue cover. The reservoir is used for the windshield washer, tailgate window washer and headlight washer*.

> **Note**
>
> When there is approximately 1 liter (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining, the message **Washer fluid Level low, refill** and the symbol will be displayed in the instrument panel.

**Recommended grade:** Washer fluid recommended by Volvo, with frost protection during cold weather and temperatures below the freezing point.

> **Important**
>
> Use Volvo's original washer fluid or an equivalent fluid with the recommended pH value between 6 and 8, diluted as recommended, e.g. in a 1:1 solution with pH-neutral water.

> **Important**
>
> Use washer fluid with anti-freeze when temperatures are below the freezing point to help keep the pump, reservoir and hoses from freezing.

**Volume:**

- Vehicles **with** headlight washing: 5.5 liters (5.8 qts).

- Vehicles **without** headlight washing: 3.5 liters (3.7 qts).

* Option/accessory.

---

# 18.3.2. Air conditioning specifications

The climate system in the vehicle uses a freon-free R1234yf refrigerant. For information regarding the refrigerant, refer to the decal located on the underside of the hood.

Refrigerant and compressor oil are used in the air conditioning system. Information about the refrigerant decals, including amounts, is shown below. The table shows the prescribed grade and volume of the compressor oil.

## A/C Decal

**Decal for R1234yf**

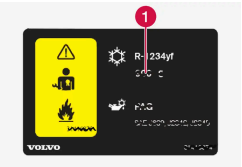
**Explanation of symbols for R1234yf**

| Symbol | Explanation |
|---|---|
| | Caution |
| | Mobile air condition system (MAC) |
| | Lubricant |
| | Only a trained and certified technician can perform service on the mobile air conditioning system (MAC) |
| | Flammable refrigerant |

## Refrigerant

The refrigerant amount (charge level) is printed on a decal on the underside of the hood.

**Vehicles with R1234yf refrigerant**




1 Refrigerant amount.

> **Warning**
>
> The air conditioning system contains the refrigerant R1234yf under pressure. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repairs to the refrigerant system may only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

### Compressor oil

| Volume | Prescribed grade |
|---|---|
| 130 ml (4.40 fl. oz.) | PAG SP-A2 |

### Evaporator

> **Important**
>
> The A/C system evaporator must never be repaired or replaced with a previously used evaporator. The new evaporator must be certified and labeled in accordance with SAE J2842.

---

## 18.3.3. Brake fluid specifications

The medium in the hydraulic brake system is called brake fluid and is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder, which in turn actuates the brake calipers.

**Recommended grade:** Volvo Original or similar fluid that meets a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

> **Note**
>
> Changing or filling brake fluid should be entrusted to an authorized Volvo workshop.

---

## 18.3.4. Transmission fluid specifications

Under normal driving conditions, the transmission fluid will not need to be changed during the transmission's service life. However, it may need to be changed if the vehicle is driven frequently in adverse driving conditions.

### Automatic transmission

| | |
|---|---|
| **Prescribed transmission fluid:** | AW-1 |

## 18.3.5. Fuel tank volume

The fuel tank's refillable volume is shown in the table below.

| | All engines |
|---|---|
| Liter (approx) | 60 |
| US gallons (approx) | 15.9 |

## 18.3.6. Engine oil specifications

Engine oil of type VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20 must be used. Lower oil grades may not offer the same fuel economy, engine performance or engine protection.

Volvo recommends:

### General

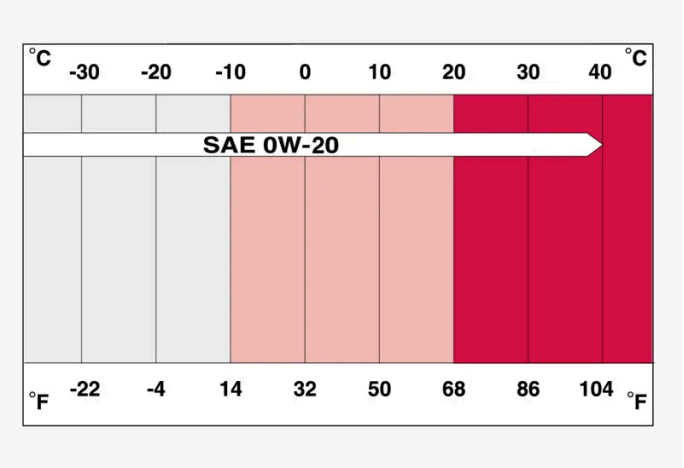
See the Service and warranty booklet for information about oil change intervals.

> **Note**
>
> This vehicle is delivered from the factory with synthetic oil.

**Do not use oil additives.**

### Oil viscosity

The wrong oil viscosity can shorten engine service life during normal use. VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20 provides good fuel economy and engine protection. See the viscosity chart.




Viscosity chart

### Oil volume

Engine oil volumes (including oil filter) are shown in the table.

| | |
|---|---|
| Liter (approx) | 5.6 |
| US qts (approx) | 5.9 |

# 18.4. Specifications for wheels and tires

# 18.4.1. Approved tire pressure

The following tire pressures are recommended by Volvo for your vehicle. Refer to the tire inflation placard for information specific to the tires installed on your vehicle at the factory.

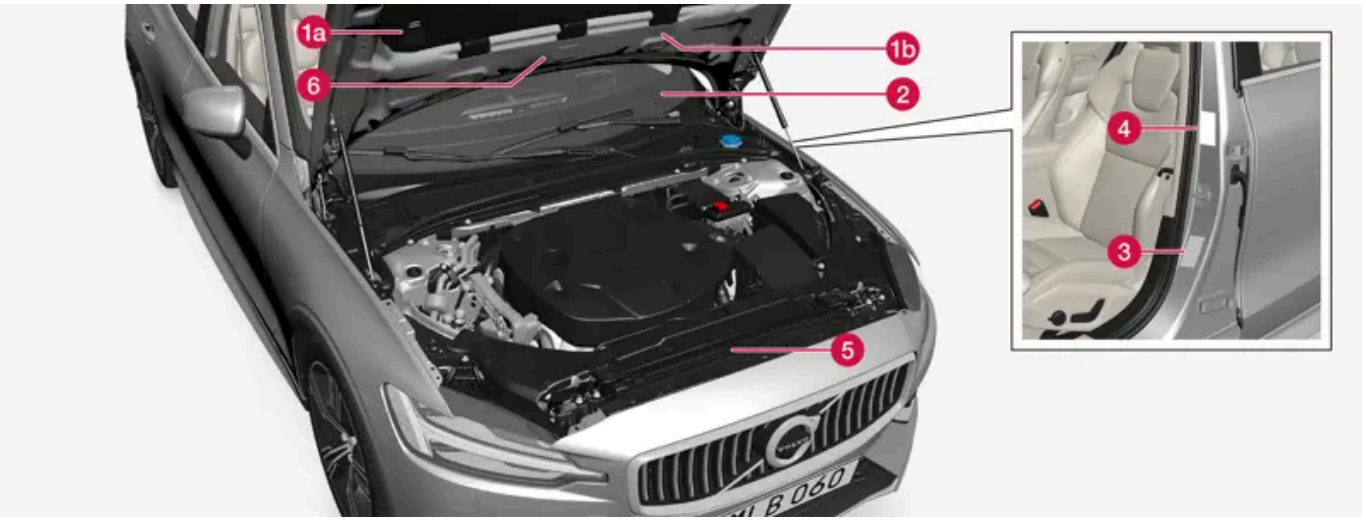
| Tire dimensions | Cold tire pressure for up to five persons<br><br>Front<br>psi (kPa) | <br><br>Rear<br>psi (kPa) |
|---|---|---|
| 215/55 R18<br>235/45 R19<br>245/40 R20 | 38 (260) | 38 (260) |
| Temporary spare tire<br>T125/80 R17<br>T125/70 R18<br>T125/60 R19 | 60 (420) | 60 (420) |

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

# 18.5. Type designations

The decals in the vehicle contain information such as chassis number, type designation, color code, etc.

## Location of decals




The illustration is generic - details may vary according to market and model.

1a **Vehicle Emission Control Information. US models.** Your Volvo is designed to meet all applicable emission standards, as evidenced by the certification label on the underside of the hood. For further information regarding these regulations, please consult your Volvo retailer.

1b **Vehicle Emission Control Information. Canadian models.** Your Volvo is designed to meet all applicable emission standards, as evidenced by the certification label on the underside of the hood. For further information regarding these regulations, please consult your Volvo retailer.

2 **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).** The VIN plate is located on the top left surface of the dashboard. The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) should always be quoted in all correspondence concerning your vehicle with the retailer and when ordering parts.

3 **Tire inflation pressures.** This label indicates the correct inflation pressures for the tires that were on the vehicle when it left the factory.

4 **Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) specifications (USA) and Ministry of Transport (CMVSS) standards (Canada).** Your Volvo is designed to meet all applicable safety standards, as evidenced by the certification label on the driver's side B-pillar (the structural member at the side of the vehicle, at the rear of the driver's door opening). This label also includes codes for paint color, etc. For further information regarding these regulations, please consult your Volvo retailer. U.S. models have the upper decal; Canadian models have the lower one.

5 **Engine oil.** This label contains the recommended engine oil specifications.

6 **Decal A/C.** Refrigerant R1234yf.

**Note**

The decals shown in the Owner's Manual do not claim to be exact reproductions of those found in the vehicle. The purpose is to show approximately how they look and about where they are located on the vehicle. The information that applies for your vehicle in particular is found on the decal on the vehicle.